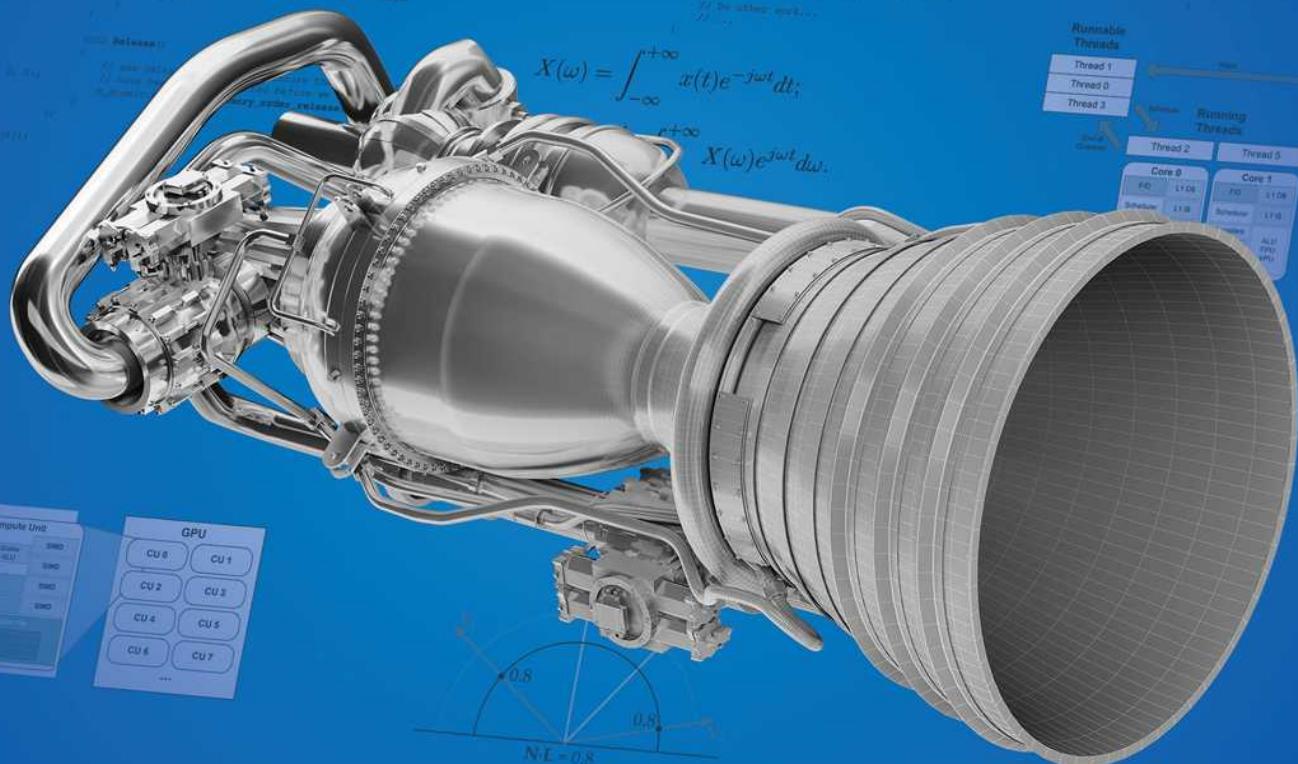


THIRD EDITION

# Game Engine Architecture



Jason Gregory



CRC Press  
Taylor & Francis Group

# Game Engine Architecture



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Game Engine Architecture

## Third Edition

Jason Gregory



CRC Press

Taylor & Francis Group

Boca Raton London New York

---

CRC Press is an imprint of the  
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business  
AN A K PETERS BOOK

Cover image: 3D model of SpaceX Merlin rocket engine created by Brian Hauger ([www.bionic3d.com](http://www.bionic3d.com)).

CRC Press  
Taylor & Francis Group  
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300  
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

© 2019 by Taylor & Francis Group, LLC  
CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, an Informa business

No claim to original U.S. Government works

Printed on acid-free paper  
Version Date: 20180529

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-1380-3545-4 (Hardback)

This book contains information obtained from authentic and highly regarded sources. Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or the consequences of their use. The authors and publishers have attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, please access [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com) (<http://www.copyright.com/>) or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. CCC is a not-for-profit organization that provides licenses and registration for a variety of users. For organizations that have been granted a photocopy license by the CCC, a separate system of payment has been arranged.

**Trademark Notice:** Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

---

#### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

---

Names: Gregory, Jason, 1970- author.

Title: Game engine architecture / Jason Gregory.

Description: Third edition. | Boca Raton : Taylor & Francis, CRC Press, 2018.

| Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2018004893 | ISBN 9781138035454 (hardback : alk. paper)

Subjects: LCSH: Computer games--Programming--Computer programs. | Software architecture. | Computer games--Design.

Classification: LCC QA76.76.C672 G77 2018 | DDC 794.8/1525--dc23

LC record available at <https://lccn.loc.gov/2018004893>

---

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at  
<http://www.taylorandfrancis.com>

and the CRC Press Web site at  
<http://www.crcpress.com>

Dedicated to  
Trina, Evan and Quinn Gregory,

in memory of our heroes,  
Joyce Osterhus, Kenneth Gregory and Erica Gregory.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Contents

Preface	xiii
<b>I Foundations</b>	<b>1</b>
1 Introduction	3
1.1 Structure of a Typical Game Team	5
1.2 What Is a Game?	8
1.3 What Is a Game Engine?	11
1.4 Engine Differences across Genres	13
1.5 Game Engine Survey	31
1.6 Runtime Engine Architecture	38
1.7 Tools and the Asset Pipeline	59
2 Tools of the Trade	69
2.1 Version Control	69
2.2 Compilers, Linkers and IDEs	78
2.3 Profiling Tools	99

---

2.4	Memory Leak and Corruption Detection	101
2.5	Other Tools	102
3	Fundamentals of Software Engineering for Games	105
3.1	C++ Review and Best Practices	105
3.2	Catching and Handling Errors	119
3.3	Data, Code and Memory Layout	131
3.4	Computer Hardware Fundamentals	164
3.5	Memory Architectures	181
4	Parallelism and Concurrent Programming	203
4.1	Defining Concurrency and Parallelism	204
4.2	Implicit Parallelism	211
4.3	Explicit Parallelism	225
4.4	Operating System Fundamentals	230
4.5	Introduction to Concurrent Programming	256
4.6	Thread Synchronization Primitives	267
4.7	Problems with Lock-Based Concurrency	281
4.8	Some Rules of Thumb for Concurrency	286
4.9	Lock-Free Concurrency	289
4.10	SIMD/Vector Processing	331
4.11	Introduction to GPGPU Programming	348
5	3D Math for Games	359
5.1	Solving 3D Problems in 2D	359
5.2	Points and Vectors	360
5.3	Matrices	375
5.4	Quaternions	394
5.5	Comparison of Rotational Representations	403
5.6	Other Useful Mathematical Objects	407
5.7	Random Number Generation	412

---

<b>II Low-Level Engine Systems</b>	<b>415</b>
<b>6 Engine Support Systems</b>	<b>417</b>
6.1 Subsystem Start-Up and Shut-Down	417
6.2 Memory Management	426
6.3 Containers	441
6.4 Strings	456
6.5 Engine Configuration	470
<b>7 Resources and the File System</b>	<b>481</b>
7.1 File System	482
7.2 The Resource Manager	493
<b>8 The Game Loop and Real-Time Simulation</b>	<b>525</b>
8.1 The Rendering Loop	525
8.2 The Game Loop	526
8.3 Game Loop Architectural Styles	529
8.4 Abstract Timelines	532
8.5 Measuring and Dealing with Time	534
8.6 Multiprocessor Game Loops	544
<b>9 Human Interface Devices</b>	<b>559</b>
9.1 Types of Human Interface Devices	559
9.2 Interfacing with a HID	561
9.3 Types of Inputs	563
9.4 Types of Outputs	569
9.5 Game Engine HID Systems	570
9.6 Human Interface Devices in Practice	587
<b>10 Tools for Debugging and Development</b>	<b>589</b>
10.1 Logging and Tracing	589
10.2 Debug Drawing Facilities	594
10.3 In-Game Menus	601
10.4 In-Game Console	604
10.5 Debug Cameras and Pausing the Game	605
10.6 Cheats	606

---

10.7	Screenshots and Movie Capture	606
10.8	In-Game Profiling	608
10.9	In-Game Memory Stats and Leak Detection	615
<b>III</b>	<b>Graphics, Motion and Sound</b>	<b>619</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>The Rendering Engine</b>	<b>621</b>
11.1	Foundations of Depth-Buffered Triangle Rasterization	622
11.2	The Rendering Pipeline	667
11.3	Advanced Lighting and Global Illumination	697
11.4	Visual Effects and Overlays	710
11.5	Further Reading	719
<b>II</b>	<b>Animation Systems</b>	<b>721</b>
12.1	Types of Character Animation	721
12.2	Skeletons	727
12.3	Poses	729
12.4	Clips	734
12.5	Skinning and Matrix Palette Generation	750
12.6	Animation Blending	755
12.7	Post-Processing	774
12.8	Compression Techniques	777
12.9	The Animation Pipeline	784
12.10	Action State Machines	786
12.11	Constraints	806
<b>II</b>	<b>Collision and Rigid Body Dynamics</b>	<b>817</b>
13.1	Do You Want Physics in Your Game?	818
13.2	Collision/Physics Middleware	823
13.3	The Collision Detection System	825
13.4	Rigid Body Dynamics	854
13.5	Integrating a Physics Engine into Your Game	892
13.6	Advanced Physics Features	909

---

14	Audio	911
14.1	The Physics of Sound	912
14.2	The Mathematics of Sound	924
14.3	The Technology of Sound	941
14.4	Rendering Audio in 3D	955
14.5	Audio Engine Architecture	974
14.6	Game-Specific Audio Features	995
IV	Gameplay	1013
15	Introduction to Gameplay Systems	1015
15.1	Anatomy of a Game World	1016
15.2	Implementing Dynamic Elements: Game Objects	1021
15.3	Data-Driven Game Engines	1024
15.4	The Game World Editor	1025
16	Runtime Gameplay Foundation Systems	1039
16.1	Components of the Gameplay Foundation System	1039
16.2	Runtime Object Model Architectures	1043
16.3	World Chunk Data Formats	1062
16.4	Loading and Streaming Game Worlds	1069
16.5	Object References and World Queries	1079
16.6	Updating Game Objects in Real Time	1086
16.7	Applying Concurrency to Game Object Updates	1101
16.8	Events and Message-Passing	1114
16.9	Scripting	1134
16.10	High-Level Game Flow	1157
V	Conclusion	1159
17	You Mean There's More?	1161
17.1	Some Engine Systems We Didn't Cover	1161
17.2	Gameplay Systems	1162
	Bibliography	1167
	Index	1171



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Preface

Welcome to *Game Engine Architecture*. This book aims to present a complete discussion of the major components that make up a typical commercial game engine. Game programming is an immense topic, so we have a lot of ground to cover. Nevertheless, I trust you'll find that the depth of our discussions is sufficient to give you a solid understanding of both the theory and the common practices employed within each of the engineering disciplines we'll cover. That said, this book is really just the beginning of a fascinating and potentially lifelong journey. A wealth of information is available on all aspects of game technology, and this text serves both as a foundation-laying device and as a jumping-off point for further learning.

Our focus in this book will be on game engine technologies and architecture. This means we'll cover the theory underlying the various subsystems that comprise a commercial game engine, the data structures, algorithms and software interfaces that are typically used to implement them, and how these subsystems function together within a game engine as a whole. The line between the game engine and the game is rather blurry. We'll focus primarily on the engine itself, including a host of low-level foundation systems, the rendering engine, the collision system, the physics simulation, character animation, audio, and an in-depth discussion of what I call the *gameplay foundation layer*. This layer includes the game's object model, world editor, event system and scripting system. We'll also touch on some aspects of *gameplay program-*

ming, including player mechanics, cameras and AI. However, by necessity, the scope of these discussions will be limited mainly to the ways in which gameplay systems interface with the engine.

This book is intended to be used as a course text for a two- or three-course college-level series in intermediate game programming. It can also be used by amateur software engineers, hobbyists, self-taught game programmers and existing members of the game industry alike. Junior engineers can use this text to solidify their understanding of game mathematics, engine architecture and game technology. And some senior engineers who have devoted their careers to one particular specialty may benefit from the bigger picture presented in these pages as well.

To get the most out of this book, you should have a working knowledge of basic object-oriented programming concepts and at least some experience programming in C++. The game industry routinely makes use of a wide range of programming languages, but industrial-strength 3D game engines are still written primarily in C++. As such, any serious game programmer needs to be able to code in C++. We'll review the basic tenets of object-oriented programming in Chapter 3, and you will no doubt pick up a few new C++ tricks as you read this book, but a solid foundation in the C++ language is best obtained from [46], [36] and [37]. If your C++ is a bit rusty, I recommend you refer to these or similar books to refresh your knowledge as you read this text. If you have no prior C++ experience, you may want to consider reading at least the first few chapters of [46] and/or working through a few C++ tutorials online, before diving into this book.

The best way to learn computer programming of any kind is to actually write some code. As you read through this book, I strongly encourage you to select a few topic areas that are of particular interest to you and come up with some projects for yourself in those areas. For example, if you find character animation interesting, you could start by installing OGRE and exploring its skinned animation demo. Then you could try to implement some of the animation blending techniques described in this book, using OGRE. Next you might decide to implement a simple joypad-controlled animated character that can run around on a flat plane. Once you have something relatively simple working, expand upon it! Then move on to another area of game technology. Rinse and repeat. It doesn't particularly matter what the projects are, as long as you're practicing the art of game programming, not just reading about it.

Game technology is a living, breathing thing that can never be entirely captured within the pages of a book. As such, additional resources, errata, updates, sample code and project ideas will be posted from time to time on

this book’s website at <http://www.gameenginebook.com>. You can also follow me on Twitter @jqgregory.

## New to the Third Edition

The computing hardware that lies at the heart of today’s game consoles, mobile devices and personal computers makes heavy use of *parallelism*. Deep within the CPUs and GPUs in these devices, multiple functional units operate simultaneously, employing a “divide and conquer” approach to high-speed computation. While parallel computing hardware can make traditional single-threaded programs run faster, programmers need to write *concurrent software* to truly take advantage of the hardware parallelism that has become ubiquitous in modern computing platforms.

In prior editions of *Game Engine Architecture*, the topics of parallelism and concurrency were touched on in the context of game engine design. However, they weren’t given the in-depth treatment they deserved. In this, the third edition of the book, this problem has been remedied via the addition of a brand new chapter on concurrency and parallelism. Chapters 8 and 16 have also been augmented to include detailed discussions of how concurrent programming techniques are typically applied to game engine subsystem and game object model updates, and how a general-purpose job system can be used to unlock the power of concurrency within a game engine.

I’ve already mentioned that every good game programmer must have a strong working knowledge of C++ (in addition to the wide variety of other useful languages used regularly in the game industry). In my view, a programmer’s knowledge of high-level languages should rest upon a solid understanding of the software and hardware systems that underlie them. As such, in this edition I’ve expanded Chapter 3 to include a treatment of the fundamentals of computer hardware, assembly language, and the operating system kernel.

This third edition of *Game Engine Architecture* also improves upon the treatment of various topics covered in prior editions. A discussion of local and global compiler optimizations has been added. Fuller coverage of the various C++ language standards is included. The section on memory caching and cache coherency has been expanded. The animation chapter has been streamlined. And, as with the second edition, various errata have been repaired that were brought to my attention by you, my devoted readers. Thank you! I hope you’ll find that the mistakes you found have all been fixed. (Although no doubt they have been replaced by a slew of *new* mistakes, about which you can feel free to inform me, so that I may correct them in the fourth edition of the book!)

Of course, as I've said before, the field of game engine programming is almost unimaginably broad and deep. There's no way to cover every topic in one book. As such, the primary purpose of this book remains to serve as an awareness-building tool and a jumping-off point for further learning. I hope you find this edition helpful on your journey through the fascinating and multifaceted landscape of game engine architecture.

## Acknowledgments

No book is created in a vacuum, and this one is certainly no exception. This book—and its third edition, which you now hold in your hands—would not have been possible without the help of my family, friends and colleagues in the game industry, and I'd like to extend warm thanks to everyone who helped me to bring this project to fruition.

Of course, the ones most impacted by a project like this are invariably the author's family. So I'd like to start by offering, for a *third time*, a special thank-you to my wife Trina. She was a pillar of strength during the writing of the original book, and she was as supportive and invaluablely helpful as ever during my work on the second and third editions. While I was busy tapping away on my keyboard, Trina was always there to take care of our two boys, Evan (now age 15) and Quinn (age 12), day after day and night after night, often forgoing her own plans, doing my chores as well as her own (more often than I'd like to admit), and always giving me kind words of encouragement when I needed them the most.

I would also like to extend special thanks to my editors for the first edition, Matt Whiting and Jeff Lander. Their insightful, targeted and timely feedback was always right on the money, and their vast experience in the game industry helped to give me confidence that the information presented in these pages is as accurate and up-to-date as humanly possible. Matt and Jeff were both a pleasure to work with, and I am honored to have had the opportunity to collaborate with such consummate professionals on this project. I'd like to extend a special thank-you to Jeff for putting me in touch with Alice Peters and helping me to get this project off the ground in the first place. Matt, thank you also for stepping up to the plate once again and providing me with valuable feedback on the new concurrency chapter in the third edition.

A number of my colleagues at Naughty Dog also contributed to this book, either by providing feedback or by helping me with the structure and topic content of one of the chapters. I'd like to thank Marshall Robin and Carlos Gonzalez-Ochoa for their guidance and tutelage as I wrote the rendering chapter, and Pål-Kristian Engstad for his excellent and insightful feedback

on the content of that chapter. My thanks go to Christian Gyrling for his feedback on various sections of the book, including the chapter on animation, and the new chapter on parallelism and concurrency. I want to extend a special thank-you to Jonathan Lanier, Naughty Dog’s resident senior audio programmer extraordinaire, for providing me with a great deal of the raw information you’ll find in the audio chapter, for always being available to chat when I had questions, and for providing laser-focused and invaluable feedback after reading the initial draft. I’d also like to thank one of the newest members of our Naughty Dog programming team, Kareem Omar, for his valuable insights and feedback on the new concurrency chapter. My thanks also go to the entire Naughty Dog engineering team for creating all of the incredible game engine systems that I highlight in this book.

Additional thanks go to Keith Schaeffer of Electronic Arts for providing me with much of the raw content regarding the impact of physics on a game, found in Section 13.1. I’d also like to extend a warm thank-you to Christophe Balestra (who was co-president of Naughty Dog during my first ten years there), Paul Keet (who was a lead engineer on the *Medal of Honor* franchise during my time at Electronic Arts), and Steve Ranck (the lead engineer on the *Hydro Thunder* project at Midway San Diego), for their mentorship and guidance over the years. While they did not contribute to the book directly, they did help to make me the engineer that I am today, and their influences are echoed on virtually every page in one way or another.

This book arose out of the notes I developed for a course entitled ITP-485: Programming Game Engines, which I taught under the auspices of the Information Technology Program at the University of Southern California for approximately four years. I would like to thank Dr. Anthony Borquez, the director of the ITP department at the time, for hiring me to develop the ITP-485 course curriculum in the first place.

My extended family and friends also deserve thanks, in part for their unwavering encouragement, and in part for entertaining my wife and our two boys on so many occasions while I was working. I’d like to thank my sister- and brother-in-law, Tracy Lee and Doug Provins, my cousin-in-law Matt Glenn, and all of our incredible friends, including Kim and Drew Clark, Sherilyn and Jim Kritzer, Anne and Michael Scherer, Kim and Mike Warner, and Kendra and Andy Walther. When I was a teenager, my father Kenneth Gregory wrote *Extraordinary Stock Profits*—a book on investing in the stock market—and in doing so, he inspired me to write this book. For this and so much more, I am eternally grateful to him. I’d also like to thank my mother Erica Gregory, in part for her insistence that I embark on this project, and in part for spending countless hours with me when I was a child, beating the art

of writing into my cranium. I owe my writing skills, my work ethic, and my rather twisted sense of humor entirely to her!

I'd like to thank Alice Peters and Kevin Jackson-Mead, as well as the entire A K Peters staff, for their Herculean efforts in publishing the first edition of this book. Since that time, A K Peters has been acquired by the CRC Press, the principal science and technology book division of the Taylor & Francis Group. I'd like to wish Alice and Klaus Peters all the best in their future endeavors. I'd also like to thank Rick Adams, Jennifer Ahringer, Jessica Vega and Cynthia Klivecka of Taylor & Francis for their patient support and help throughout the process of creating the second and third editions of *Game Engine Architecture*, Jonathan Pennell for his work on the cover for the second edition, Scott Shamblin for his work on the third edition's cover art, and Brian Haeger (<http://www.bionic3d.com>) for graciously permitting me to use his beautiful 3D model of the Space X Merlin rocket engine on the cover of the third edition.

I am thrilled to be able to say that both the first and second editions of *Game Engine Architecture* have been or are being translated into Japanese, Chinese and Korean! I would like to extend my sincere thanks to Kazuhisa Minato and his team at Namco Bandai Games for taking on the incredibly daunting task of the Japanese translation, and for doing such a great job with both editions. I'd also like to thank the folks at Softbank Creative, Inc. for publishing the Japanese version of the book. I would also like to extend my warmest thanks to Milo Yip for his hard work and dedication to the Chinese translation project. My sincere appreciation goes to the Publishing House of the Electronics Industry for publishing the Chinese translation of the book, and to both the Acorn Publishing Company and Hongreung Science Publishing Co. for their publication of the Korean translations of the first and second editions, respectively.

Many of my readers took the time to send me feedback and alert me to errors in the first and second editions, and for that I'd like to extend my sincere thanks to all of you who contributed. I'd like to give a special thank-you to Milo Yip, Joe Conley and Zachary Turner for going above and beyond the call of duty in this regard. All three of you provided me with many-page documents, chock full of errata and incredibly valuable and insightful suggestions. I've tried my best to incorporate all of this feedback into the third edition—please keep it coming!

Jason Gregory  
April 2018

# Part I

## Foundations



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## 1

# Introduction

When I got my first game console in 1979—a way-cool Intellivision system by Mattel—the term “game engine” did not exist. Back then, video and arcade games were considered by most adults to be nothing more than toys, and the software that made them tick was highly specialized to both the game in question and the hardware on which it ran. Today, games are a multi-billion-dollar mainstream industry rivaling Hollywood in size and popularity. And the software that drives these now-ubiquitous three-dimensional worlds—*game engines* like Epic Games’ Unreal Engine 4, Valve’s Source engine and, Crytek’s CRYENGINE® 3, Electronic Arts DICE’s Frostbite™ engine, and the Unity game engine—have become fully featured reusable software development kits that can be licensed and used to build almost any game imaginable.

While game engines vary widely in the details of their architecture and implementation, recognizable coarse-grained patterns have emerged across both publicly licensed game engines and their proprietary in-house counterparts. Virtually all game engines contain a familiar set of core components, including the rendering engine, the collision and physics engine, the animation system, the audio system, the game world object model, the artificial intelligence system and so on. Within each of these components, a relatively small number of semi-standard design alternatives are also beginning to emerge.

There are a great many books that cover individual game engine subsystems, such as three-dimensional graphics, in exhaustive detail. Other books cobble together valuable tips and tricks across a wide variety of game technology areas. However, I have been unable to find a book that provides its reader with a reasonably complete picture of the entire gamut of components that make up a modern game engine. The goal of this book, then, is to take the reader on a guided hands-on tour of the vast and complex landscape of game engine architecture.

In this book you will learn:

- how real industrial-strength production game engines are architected;
- how game development teams are organized and work in the real world;
- which major subsystems and design patterns appear again and again in virtually every game engine;
- the typical requirements for each major subsystem;
- which subsystems are genre- or game-agnostic, and which ones are typically designed explicitly for a specific genre or game; and
- where the engine normally ends and the game begins.

We'll also get a first-hand glimpse into the inner workings of some popular game engines, such as Quake, Unreal and Unity, and some well-known middleware packages, such as the Havok Physics library, the OGRE rendering engine and Rad Game Tools' Granny 3D animation and geometry management toolkit. And we'll explore a number of proprietary game engines that I've had the pleasure to work with, including the engine Naughty Dog developed for its *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* game series.

Before we get started, we'll review some techniques and tools for large-scale software engineering in a game engine context, including:

- the difference between logical and physical software architecture;
- configuration management, revision control and build systems; and
- some tips and tricks for dealing with one of the common development environments for C and C++, Microsoft Visual Studio.

In this book I assume that you have a solid understanding of C++ (the language of choice among most modern game developers) and that you understand basic software engineering principles. I also assume you have some

exposure to linear algebra, three-dimensional vector and matrix math and trigonometry (although we'll review the core concepts in Chapter 5). Ideally, you should have some prior exposure to the basic concepts of real time and event-driven programming. But never fear—I will review these topics briefly, and I'll also point you in the right direction if you feel you need to hone your skills further before we embark.

## I.I Structure of a Typical Game Team

Before we delve into the structure of a typical game engine, let's first take a brief look at the structure of a typical game development team. Game studios are usually composed of five basic disciplines: engineers, artists, game designers, producers and other management and support staff (marketing, legal, information technology/technical support, administrative, etc.). Each discipline can be divided into various subdisciplines. We'll take a brief look at each below.

### I.I.I Engineers

The engineers design and implement the software that makes the game, and the tools, work. Engineers are often categorized into two basic groups: *runtime* programmers (who work on the engine and the game itself) and *tools* programmers (who work on the offline tools that allow the rest of the development team to work effectively). On both sides of the runtime/tools line, engineers have various specialties. Some engineers focus their careers on a single engine system, such as rendering, artificial intelligence, audio or collision and physics. Some focus on gameplay programming and scripting, while others prefer to work at the systems level and not get too involved in how the game actually plays. Some engineers are generalists—jacks of all trades who can jump around and tackle whatever problems might arise during development.

Senior engineers are sometimes asked to take on a technical leadership role. Lead engineers usually still design and write code, but they also help to manage the team's schedule, make decisions regarding the overall technical direction of the project, and sometimes also directly manage people from a human resources perspective.

Some companies also have one or more technical directors (TD), whose job it is to oversee one or more projects from a high level, ensuring that the teams are aware of potential technical challenges, upcoming industry developments, new technologies and so on. The highest engineering-related position at a game studio is the chief technical officer (CTO), if the studio has one. The

CTO's job is to serve as a sort of technical director for the entire studio, as well as serving a key executive role in the company.

### 1.1.2 Artists

As we say in the game industry, “Content is king.” The artists produce all of the visual and audio content in the game, and the quality of their work can literally make or break a game. Artists come in all sorts of flavors:

- *Concept artists* produce sketches and paintings that provide the team with a vision of what the final game will look like. They start their work early in the concept phase of development, but usually continue to provide visual direction throughout a project’s life cycle. It is common for screenshots taken from a shipping game to bear an uncanny resemblance to the concept art.
- *3D modelers* produce the three-dimensional geometry for everything in the virtual game world. This discipline is typically divided into two sub-disciplines: foreground modelers and background modelers. The former create objects, characters, vehicles, weapons and the other objects that populate the game world, while the latter build the world’s static background geometry (terrain, buildings, bridges, etc.).
- *Texture artists* create the two-dimensional images known as textures, which are applied to the surfaces of 3D models in order to provide detail and realism.
- *Lighting artists* lay out all of the light sources in the game world, both static and dynamic, and work with color, intensity and light direction to maximize the artfulness and emotional impact of each scene.
- *Animators* imbue the characters and objects in the game with motion. The animators serve quite literally as actors in a game production, just as they do in a CG film production. However, a game animator must have a unique set of skills in order to produce animations that mesh seamlessly with the technological underpinnings of the game engine.
- *Motion capture actors* are often used to provide a rough set of motion data, which are then cleaned up and tweaked by the animators before being integrated into the game.
- *Sound designers* work closely with the engineers in order to produce and mix the sound effects and music in the game.

- *Voice actors* provide the voices of the characters in many games.
- Many games have one or more *composers*, who compose an original score for the game.

As with engineers, senior artists are often called upon to be team leaders. Some game teams have one or more *art directors*—very senior artists who manage the look of the entire game and ensure consistency across the work of all team members.

### I.I.3 Game Designers

The game designers' job is to design the interactive portion of the player's experience, typically known as *gameplay*. Different kinds of designers work at different levels of detail. Some (usually senior) game designers work at the macro level, determining the story arc, the overall sequence of chapters or levels, and the high-level goals and objectives of the player. Other designers work on individual levels or geographical areas within the virtual game world, laying out the static background geometry, determining where and when enemies will emerge, placing supplies like weapons and health packs, designing puzzle elements and so on. Still other designers operate at a highly technical level, working closely with gameplay engineers and/or writing code (often in a high-level scripting language). Some game designers are ex-engineers, who decided they wanted to play a more active role in determining how the game will play.

Some game teams employ one or more *writers*. A game writer's job can range from collaborating with the senior game designers to construct the story arc of the entire game, to writing individual lines of dialogue.

As with other disciplines, some senior designers play management roles. Many game teams have a game director, whose job it is to oversee all aspects of a game's design, help manage schedules, and ensure that the work of individual designers is consistent across the entire product. Senior designers also sometimes evolve into producers.

### I.I.4 Producers

The role of producer is defined differently by different studios. In some game companies, the producer's job is to manage the schedule and serve as a human resources manager. In other companies, producers serve in a senior game design capacity. Still other studios ask their producers to serve as liaisons between the development team and the business unit of the company (finance, legal, marketing, etc.). Some smaller studios don't have producers at all. For

example, at Naughty Dog, literally everyone in the company, including the two co-presidents, plays a direct role in constructing the game; team management and business duties are shared between the senior members of the studio.

### 1.1.5 Other Staff

The team of people who directly construct the game is typically supported by a crucial team of support staff. This includes the studio's executive management team, the marketing department (or a team that liaises with an external marketing group), administrative staff and the IT department, whose job is to purchase, install and configure hardware and software for the team and to provide technical support.

### 1.1.6 Publishers and Studios

The marketing, manufacture and distribution of a game title are usually handled by a *publisher*, not by the game studio itself. A publisher is typically a large corporation, like Electronic Arts, THQ, Vivendi, Sony, Nintendo, etc. Many game studios are not affiliated with a particular publisher. They sell each game that they produce to whichever publisher strikes the best deal with them. Other studios work exclusively with a single publisher, either via a long-term publishing contract or as a fully owned subsidiary of the publishing company. For example, THQ's game studios are independently managed, but they are owned and ultimately controlled by THQ. Electronic Arts takes this relationship one step further, by directly managing its studios. *First-party developers* are game studios owned directly by the console manufacturers (Sony, Nintendo and Microsoft). For example, Naughty Dog is a first-party Sony developer. These studios produce games exclusively for the gaming hardware manufactured by their parent company.

## 1.2 What Is a Game?

We probably all have a pretty good intuitive notion of what a game is. The general term "game" encompasses board games like chess and *Monopoly*, card games like poker and blackjack, casino games like roulette and slot machines, military war games, computer games, various kinds of play among children, and the list goes on. In academia we sometimes speak of *game theory*, in which multiple agents select strategies and tactics in order to maximize their gains within the framework of a well-defined set of game rules. When used in the context of console or computer-based entertainment, the word "game"

usually conjures images of a three-dimensional virtual world featuring a humanoid, animal or vehicle as the main character under player control. (Or for the old geezers among us, perhaps it brings to mind images of two-dimensional classics like *Pong*, *Pac-Man*, or *Donkey Kong*.) In his excellent book, *A Theory of Fun for Game Design*, Raph Koster defines a game to be an interactive experience that provides the player with an increasingly challenging sequence of patterns which he or she learns and eventually masters [30]. Koster’s assertion is that the activities of learning and mastering are at the heart of what we call “fun,” just as a joke becomes funny at the moment we “get it” by recognizing the pattern.

For the purposes of this book, we’ll focus on the subset of games that comprise two- and three-dimensional virtual worlds with a small number of players (between one and 16 or thereabouts). Much of what we’ll learn can also be applied to HTML5/JavaScript games on the Internet, pure puzzle games like *Tetris*, or massively multiplayer online games (MMOG). But our primary focus will be on game engines capable of producing first-person shooters, third-person action/platform games, racing games, fighting games and the like.

### 1.2.1 Video Games as Soft Real-Time Simulations

Most two- and three-dimensional video games are examples of what computer scientists would call *soft real-time interactive agent-based computer simulations*. Let’s break this phrase down in order to better understand what it means.

In most video games, some subset of the real world—or an imaginary world—is *modeled* mathematically so that it can be manipulated by a computer. The model is an approximation to and a simplification of reality (even if it’s an *imaginary* reality), because it is clearly impractical to include every detail down to the level of atoms or quarks. Hence, the mathematical model is a *simulation* of the real or imagined game world. Approximation and simplification are two of the game developer’s most powerful tools. When used skillfully, even a greatly simplified model can sometimes be almost indistinguishable from reality—and a lot more fun.

An *agent-based* simulation is one in which a number of distinct entities known as “agents” interact. This fits the description of most three-dimensional computer games very well, where the agents are vehicles, characters, fireballs, power dots and so on. Given the agent-based nature of most games, it should come as no surprise that most games nowadays are implemented in an object-oriented, or at least loosely object-based, programming language.

All interactive video games are *temporal simulations*, meaning that the virtual game world model is *dynamic*—the state of the game world changes over time as the game’s events and story unfold. A video game must also respond to unpredictable inputs from its human player(s)—thus *interactive temporal simulations*. Finally, most video games present their stories and respond to player input in real time, making them *interactive real-time simulations*. One notable exception is in the category of turn-based games like computerized chess or turn-based strategy games. But even these types of games usually provide the user with some form of real-time graphical user interface. So for the purposes of this book, we’ll assume that all video games have at least *some* real-time constraints.

At the core of every real-time system is the concept of a *deadline*. An obvious example in video games is the requirement that the screen be updated at least 24 times per second in order to provide the illusion of motion. (Most games render the screen at 30 or 60 frames per second because these are multiples of an NTSC monitor’s refresh rate.) Of course, there are many other kinds of deadlines in video games as well. A physics simulation may need to be updated 120 times per second in order to remain stable. A character’s artificial intelligence system may need to “think” at least once every second to prevent the appearance of stupidity. The audio library may need to be called at least once every 1/60 second in order to keep the audio buffers filled and prevent audible glitches.

A “soft” real-time system is one in which missed deadlines are not catastrophic. Hence, all video games are *soft real-time systems*—if the frame rate dies, the human player generally doesn’t! Contrast this with a *hard real-time system*, in which a missed deadline could mean severe injury to or even the death of a human operator. The avionics system in a helicopter or the control-rod system in a nuclear power plant are examples of hard real-time systems.

Mathematical models can be *analytic* or *numerical*. For example, the analytic (closed-form) mathematical model of a rigid body falling under the influence of constant acceleration due to gravity is typically written as follows:

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + v_0t + y_0. \quad (1.1)$$

An analytic model can be evaluated for any value of its independent variables, such as the time  $t$  in the above equation, given only the initial conditions  $v_0$  and  $y_0$  and the constant  $g$ . Such models are very convenient when they can be found. However, many problems in mathematics have no closed-form solution. And in video games, where the user’s input is unpredictable, we cannot hope to model the entire game analytically.

A numerical model of the same rigid body under gravity can be expressed

as follows:

$$y(t + \Delta t) = F(y(t), \dot{y}(t), \ddot{y}(t), \dots). \quad (1.2)$$

That is, the height of the rigid body at some future time  $(t + \Delta t)$  can be found as a function of the height and its first, second, and possibly higher-order time derivatives at the current time  $t$ . Numerical simulations are typically implemented by running calculations repeatedly, in order to determine the state of the system at each discrete time step. Games work in the same way. A main “game loop” runs repeatedly, and during each iteration of the loop, various game systems such as artificial intelligence, game logic, physics simulations and so on are given a chance to calculate or update their state for the next discrete time step. The results are then “rendered” by displaying graphics, emitting sound and possibly producing other outputs such as force-feedback on the joypad.

## 1.3 What Is a Game Engine?

The term “game engine” arose in the mid-1990s in reference to first-person shooter (FPS) games like the insanely popular *Doom* by id Software. *Doom* was architected with a reasonably well-defined separation between its core software components (such as the three-dimensional graphics rendering system, the collision detection system or the audio system) and the art assets, game worlds and rules of play that comprised the player’s gaming experience. The value of this separation became evident as developers began licensing games and retooling them into new products by creating new art, world layouts, weapons, characters, vehicles and game rules with only minimal changes to the “engine” software. This marked the birth of the “mod community”—a group of individual gamers and small independent studios that built new games by modifying existing games, using free toolkits provided by the original developers.

Towards the end of the 1990s, some games like *Quake III Arena* and *Unreal* were designed with reuse and “modding” in mind. Engines were made highly customizable via scripting languages like id’s Quake C, and engine licensing began to be a viable secondary revenue stream for the developers who created them. Today, game developers can license a game engine and reuse significant portions of its key software components in order to build games. While this practice still involves considerable investment in custom software engineering, it can be much more economical than developing all of the core engine components in-house.

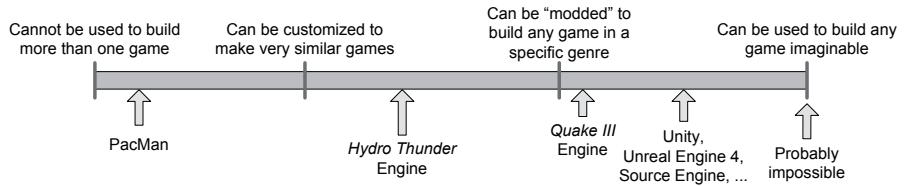


Figure I.I. Game engine reusability gamut.

The line between a game and its engine is often blurry. Some engines make a reasonably clear distinction, while others make almost no attempt to separate the two. In one game, the rendering code might “know” specifically how to draw an orc. In another game, the rendering engine might provide general-purpose material and shading facilities, and “orc-ness” might be defined entirely in data. No studio makes a perfectly clear separation between the game and the engine, which is understandable considering that the definitions of these two components often shift as the game’s design solidifies.

Arguably a *data-driven architecture* is what differentiates a game engine from a piece of software that is a game but not an engine. When a game contains hard-coded logic or game rules, or employs special-case code to render specific types of game objects, it becomes difficult or impossible to reuse that software to make a different game. We should probably reserve the term “game engine” for software that is extensible and can be used as the foundation for many different games without major modification.

Clearly this is not a black-and-white distinction. We can think of a gamut of reusability onto which every engine falls. Figure 1.1 takes a stab at the locations of some well-known games/engines along this gamut.

One would think that a game engine could be something akin to Apple QuickTime or Microsoft Windows Media Player—a general-purpose piece of software capable of playing virtually *any* game content imaginable. However, this ideal has not yet been achieved (and may never be). Most game engines are carefully crafted and fine-tuned to run a particular game on a particular hardware platform. And even the most general-purpose multiplatform engines are really only suitable for building games in one particular genre, such as first-person shooters or racing games. It’s safe to say that the more general-purpose a game engine or middleware component is, the less optimal it is for running a particular game on a particular platform.

This phenomenon occurs because designing any efficient piece of software invariably entails making trade-offs, and those trade-offs are based on assumptions about how the software will be used and/or about the target

hardware on which it will run. For example, a rendering engine that was designed to handle intimate indoor environments probably won't be very good at rendering vast outdoor environments. The indoor engine might use a binary space partitioning (BSP) tree or portal system to ensure that no geometry is drawn that is being occluded by walls or objects that are closer to the camera. The outdoor engine, on the other hand, might use a less-exact occlusion mechanism, or none at all, but it probably makes aggressive use of level-of-detail (LOD) techniques to ensure that distant objects are rendered with a minimum number of triangles, while using high-resolution triangle meshes for geometry that is close to the camera.

The advent of ever-faster computer hardware and specialized graphics cards, along with ever-more-efficient rendering algorithms and data structures, is beginning to soften the differences between the graphics engines of different genres. It is now possible to use a first-person shooter engine to build a strategy game, for example. However, the trade-off between generality and optimality still exists. A game can always be made more impressive by fine-tuning the engine to the specific requirements and constraints of a particular game and/or hardware platform.

## 1.4 Engine Differences across Genres

Game engines are typically somewhat genre specific. An engine designed for a two-person fighting game in a boxing ring will be very different from a massively multiplayer online game (MMOG) engine or a first-person shooter (FPS) engine or a real-time strategy (RTS) engine. However, there is also a great deal of overlap—all 3D games, regardless of genre, require some form of low-level user input from the joypad, keyboard and/or mouse, some form of 3D mesh rendering, some form of heads-up display (HUD) including text rendering in a variety of fonts, a powerful audio system, and the list goes on. So while the Unreal Engine, for example, was designed for first-person shooter games, it has been used successfully to construct games in a number of other genres as well, including the wildly popular third-person shooter franchise *Gears of War* by Epic Games, the hit action-adventure games in the *Batman: Arkham* series by Rocksteady Studios, the well-known fighting game *Tekken 7* by Bandai Namco Studios, and the first three role-playing third-person shooter games in the *Mass Effect* series by BioWare.

Let's take a look at some of the most common game genres and explore some examples of the technology requirements particular to each.



Figure 1.2. *Overwatch* by Blizzard Entertainment (Xbox One, PlayStation 4, Windows). (See Color Plate I.)

#### 1.4.1 First-Person Shooters (FPS)

The first-person shooter (FPS) genre is typified by games like *Quake*, *Unreal Tournament*, *Half-Life*, *Battlefield*, *Destiny*, *Titanfall* and *Overwatch* (see Figure 1.2). These games have historically involved relatively slow on-foot roaming of a potentially large but primarily corridor-based world. However, modern first-person shooters can take place in a wide variety of virtual environments including vast open outdoor areas and confined indoor areas. Modern FPS traversal mechanics can include on-foot locomotion, rail-confined or free-roaming ground vehicles, hovercraft, boats and aircraft. For an overview of this genre, see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First-person\\_shooter](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First-person_shooter).

First-person games are typically some of the most technologically challenging to build, probably rivaled in complexity only by third-person shooters, action-platformer games, and massively multiplayer games. This is because first-person shooters aim to provide their players with the illusion of being immersed in a detailed, hyperrealistic world. It is not surprising that many of the game industry's big technological innovations arose out of the games in this genre.

First-person shooters typically focus on technologies such as:

- efficient rendering of large 3D virtual worlds;

- a responsive camera control/aiming mechanic;
- high-fidelity animations of the player's virtual arms and weapons;
- a wide range of powerful handheld weaponry;
- a forgiving player character motion and collision model, which often gives these games a "floaty" feel;
- high-fidelity animations and artificial intelligence for the non-player characters (NPCs)—the player's enemies and allies; and
- small-scale online multiplayer capabilities (typically supporting between 10 and 100 simultaneous players), and the ubiquitous "death match" gameplay mode.

The rendering technology employed by first-person shooters is almost always highly optimized and carefully tuned to the particular type of environment being rendered. For example, indoor "dungeon crawl" games often employ binary space partitioning trees or portal-based rendering systems. Outdoor FPS games use other kinds of rendering optimizations such as occlusion culling, or an offline sectorization of the game world with manual or automated specification of which target sectors are visible from each source sector.

Of course, immersing a player in a hyperrealistic game world requires much more than just optimized high-quality graphics technology. The character animations, audio and music, rigid body physics, in-game cinematics and myriad other technologies must all be cutting-edge in a first-person shooter. So this genre has some of the most stringent and broad technology requirements in the industry.

#### 1.4.2 Platformers and Other Third-Person Games

"Platformer" is the term applied to third-person character-based action games where jumping from platform to platform is the primary gameplay mechanic. Typical games from the 2D era include *Space Panic*, *Donkey Kong*, *Pitfall!* and *Super Mario Brothers*. The 3D era includes platformers like *Super Mario 64*, *Crash Bandicoot*, *Rayman 2*, *Sonic the Hedgehog*, the *Jak and Daxter* series (Figure 1.3), the *Ratchet & Clank* series and *Super Mario Galaxy*. See <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Platformer> for an in-depth discussion of this genre.

In terms of their technological requirements, platformers can usually be lumped together with third-person shooters and third-person action/adventure games like *Just Cause 2*, *Gears of War 4* (Figure 1.4), the *Uncharted* series, the *Resident Evil* series, the *The Last of Us* series, *Red Dead Redemption 2*, and the list goes on.

Third-person character-based games have a lot in common with first-person shooters, but a great deal more emphasis is placed on the main character's abilities and locomotion modes. In addition, high-fidelity full-body character animations are required for the player's avatar, as opposed to the somewhat less-taxing animation requirements of the "floating arms" in a typical FPS game. It's important to note here that almost all first-person shooters have an online multiplayer component, so a full-body player avatar must be rendered in addition to the first-person arms. However, the fidelity of these FPS player avatars is usually not comparable to the fidelity of the non-player characters in these same games; nor can it be compared to the fidelity of the player avatar in a third-person game.

In a platformer, the main character is often cartoon-like and not particularly realistic or high-resolution. However, third-person shooters often feature a highly realistic humanoid player character. In both cases, the player character typically has a very rich set of actions and animations.

Some of the technologies specifically focused on by games in this genre include:



Figure I.3. *Jak II* by Naughty Dog (Jak, Daxter, Jak and Daxter, and Jak II © 2003, 2013/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 2.) (See Color Plate II.)



Figure I.4. *Gears of War 4* by The Coalition (Xbox One). (See Color Plate III.)

- moving platforms, ladders, ropes, trellises and other interesting locomotion modes;
- puzzle-like environmental elements;
- a third-person “follow camera” which stays focused on the player character and whose rotation is typically controlled by the human player via the right joypad stick (on a console) or the mouse (on a PC—note that while there are a number of popular third-person shooters on a PC, the platformer genre exists almost exclusively on consoles); and
- a complex camera collision system for ensuring that the view point never “clips” through background geometry or dynamic foreground objects.

### 1.4.3 Fighting Games

Fighting games are typically two-player games involving humanoid characters pummeling each other in a ring of some sort. The genre is typified by games like *Soul Calibur* and *Tekken 3* (see Figure 1.5). The Wikipedia page [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fighting\\_game](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fighting_game) provides an overview of this genre.

Traditionally games in the fighting genre have focused their technology efforts on:

- a rich set of fighting animations;
- accurate hit detection;
- a user input system capable of detecting complex button and joystick combinations; and
- crowds, but otherwise relatively static backgrounds.

Since the 3D world in these games is small and the camera is centered on the action at all times, historically these games have had little or no need for world subdivision or occlusion culling. They would likewise not be expected to employ advanced three-dimensional audio propagation models, for example.

Modern fighting games like EA's *Fight Night Round 4* and NetherRealm Studios' *Injustice 2* (Figure 1.6) have upped the technological ante with features like:

- high-definition character graphics;
- realistic skin shaders with subsurface scattering and sweat effects;
- photo-realistic lighting and particle effects;
- high-fidelity character animations; and



Figure 1.5. *Tekken 3* by Namco (PlayStation). (See Color Plate IV.)

- physics-based cloth and hair simulations for the characters.

It's important to note that some fighting games like Ninja Theory's *Heavily Sword* and *For Honor* by Ubisoft Montreal take place in a large-scale virtual world, not a confined arena. In fact, many people consider this to be a separate genre, sometimes called a *brawler*. This kind of fighting game can have technical requirements more akin to those of a third-person shooter or a strategy game.

#### 1.4.4 Racing Games

The racing genre encompasses all games whose primary task is driving a car or other vehicle on some kind of track. The genre has many subcategories. Simulation-focused racing games ("sims") aim to provide a driving experience that is as realistic as possible (e.g., *Gran Turismo*). Arcade racers favor over-the-top fun over realism (e.g., *San Francisco Rush*, *Cruis'n USA*, *Hydro Thunder*). One subgenre explores the subculture of street racing with tricked out consumer vehicles (e.g., *Need for Speed*, *Juiced*). Kart racing is a subcategory in which popular characters from platformer games or cartoon characters from TV are re-cast as the drivers of whacky vehicles (e.g., *Mario Kart*, *Jak X*, *Freaky Flyer*). Racing games need not always involve time-based competition. Some kart racing games, for example, offer



Figure I.6. *Injustice 2* by NetherRealm Studios (PlayStation 4, Xbox One, Android, iOS, Microsoft Windows). (See Color Plate V.)



Figure 1.7. *Gran Turismo Sport* by Polyphony Digital (PlayStation 4). (See Color Plate VI.)

modes in which players shoot at one another, collect loot or engage in a variety of other timed and untimed tasks. For a discussion of this genre, see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Racing\\_game](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Racing_game).

A racing game is often very linear, much like older FPS games. However, travel speed is generally much faster than in an FPS. Therefore, more focus is placed on very long corridor-based tracks, or looped tracks, sometimes with various alternate routes and secret short-cuts. Racing games usually focus all their graphic detail on the vehicles, track and immediate surroundings. As an example of this, Figure 1.7 shows a screenshot from the latest installment in the well-known *Gran Turismo* racing game series, *Gran Turismo Sport*, developed by Polyphony Digital and published by Sony Interactive Entertainment. However, kart racers also devote significant rendering and animation bandwidth to the characters driving the vehicles.

Some of the technological properties of a typical racing game include the following techniques:

- Various “tricks” are used when rendering distant background elements, such as employing two-dimensional cards for trees, hills and mountains.
- The track is often broken down into relatively simple two-dimensional regions called “sectors.” These data structures are used to optimize rendering and visibility determination, to aid in artificial intelligence and path finding for non-human-controlled vehicles, and to solve many other technical problems.
- The camera typically follows behind the vehicle for a third-person per-



Figure I.8. *Age of Empires* by Ensemble Studios (Windows). (See Color Plate VII.)

spective, or is sometimes situated inside the cockpit first-person style.

- When the track involves tunnels and other “tight” spaces, a good deal of effort is often put into ensuring that the camera does not collide with background geometry.

#### I.4.5 Strategy Games

The modern strategy game genre was arguably defined by *Dune II: The Building of a Dynasty* (1992). Other games in this genre include *Warcraft*, *Command & Conquer*, *Age of Empires* and *Starcraft*. In this genre, the player deploys the battle units in his or her arsenal strategically across a large playing field in an attempt to overwhelm his or her opponent. The game world is typically displayed at an oblique top-down viewing angle. A distinction is often made between turn-based strategy games and real-time strategy (RTS). For a discussion of this genre, see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strategy\\_video\\_game](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strategy_video_game).

The strategy game player is usually prevented from significantly changing the viewing angle in order to see across large distances. This restriction permits developers to employ various optimizations in the rendering engine of a strategy game.



Figure I.9. *Total War: Warhammer 2* by Creative Assembly (Windows). (See Color Plate VIII.)

Older games in the genre employed a grid-based (cell-based) world construction, and an orthographic projection was used to greatly simplify the renderer. For example, Figure 1.8 shows a screenshot from the classic strategy game *Age of Empires*.

Modern strategy games sometimes use perspective projection and a true 3D world, but they may still employ a grid layout system to ensure that units and background elements, such as buildings, align with one another properly. A popular example, *Total War: Warhammer 2*, is shown in Figure 1.9.

Some other common practices in strategy games include the following techniques:

- Each unit is relatively low-res, so that the game can support large numbers of them on-screen at once.
- Height-field terrain is usually the canvas upon which the game is designed and played.
- The player is often allowed to build new structures on the terrain in addition to deploying his or her forces.
- User interaction is typically via single-click and area-based selection of units, plus menus or toolbars containing commands, equipment, unit types, building types, etc.



Figure I.10. *World of Warcraft* by Blizzard Entertainment (Windows, MacOS). (See Color Plate IX.)

#### 1.4.6 Massively Multiplayer Online Games (MMOG)

The massively multiplayer online game (MMOG or just MMO) genre is typified by games like *Guild Wars 2* (AreaNet/NCsoft), *EverQuest* (989 Studios/SOE), *World of Warcraft* (Blizzard) and *Star Wars Galaxies* (SOE/Lucas Arts), to name a few. An MMO is defined as any game that supports huge numbers of simultaneous players (from thousands to hundreds of thousands), usually all playing in one very large, *persistent* virtual world (i.e., a world whose internal state persists for very long periods of time, far beyond that of any one player's gameplay session). Otherwise, the gameplay experience of an MMO is often similar to that of their small-scale multiplayer counterparts. Subcategories of this genre include MMO role-playing games (MMORPG), MMO real-time strategy games (MMORTS) and MMO first-person shooters (MMOFPS). For a discussion of this genre, see <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MMOG>. Figure 1.10 shows a screenshot from the hugely popular MMORPG *World of Warcraft*.

At the heart of all MMOGs is a very powerful battery of servers. These servers maintain the authoritative state of the game world, manage users signing in and out of the game, provide inter-user chat or voice-over-IP (VoIP) services and more. Almost all MMOGs require users to pay some kind of regular

subscription fee in order to play, and they may offer micro-transactions within the game world or out-of-game as well. Hence, perhaps the most important role of the central server is to handle the billing and micro-transactions which serve as the game developer's primary source of revenue.

Graphics fidelity in an MMO is almost always lower than its non-massively multiplayer counterparts, as a result of the huge world sizes and extremely large numbers of users supported by these kinds of games.

Figure 1.11 shows a screen from Bungie's latest FPS game, *Destiny 2*. This game has been called an MMOFPS because it incorporates some aspects of the MMO genre. However, Bungie prefers to call it a "shared world" game because unlike a traditional MMO, in which a player can see and interact with literally any other player on a particular server, *Destiny* provides "on-the-fly match-making." This permits the player to interact only with the other players with whom they have been matched by the server; this matchmaking system has been significantly improved for *Destiny 2*. Also unlike a traditional MMO, the graphics fidelity in *Destiny 2* is on par with first- and third-person shooters.

We should note here that the game *Player Unknown's Battlegrounds* (PUBG) has recently popularized a subgenre known as *battle royale*. This type of game blurs the line between regular multiplayer shooters and massively multiplayer online games, because they typically pit on the order of 100 players against each other in an online world, employing a survival-based "last man standing" gameplay style.



Figure 1.11. *Destiny 2* by Bungie, © 2018 Bungie Inc. (Xbox One, PlayStation 4, PC) (See Color Plate X.)

#### 1.4.7 Player-Authored Content

As social media takes off, games are becoming more and more collaborative in nature. A recent trend in game design is toward *player-authored content*. For example, Media Molecule's *LittleBigPlanet*,™ *LittleBigPlanet*™ 2 (Figure 1.12) and *LittleBigPlanet*™ 3: *The Journey Home* are technically *puzzle platformers*, but their most notable and unique feature is that they encourage players to create, publish and share their own game worlds. Media Molecule's latest installment in this engaging genre is *Dreams* for the PlayStation 4 (Figure 1.13).

Perhaps the most popular game today in the player-created content genre is *Minecraft* (Figure 1.14). The brilliance of this game lies in its simplicity: *Minecraft* game worlds are constructed from simple cubic voxel-like elements mapped with low-resolution textures to mimic various materials. Blocks can be solid, or they can contain items such as torches, anvils, signs, fences and panes of glass. The game world is populated with one or more player characters, animals such as chickens and pigs, and various "mobs"—good guys like villagers and bad guys like zombies and the ubiquitous *creepers* who sneak up on unsuspecting players and explode (only scant moments after warning the player with the "hiss" of a burning fuse).

Players can create a randomized world in *Minecraft* and then dig into the generated terrain to create tunnels and caverns. They can also construct their own structures, ranging from simple terrain and foliage to vast and complex



Figure 1.12. *LittleBigPlanet*™ 2 by Media Molecule, © 2014 Sony Interactive Entertainment (PlayStation 3). (See Color Plate XI.)



Figure I.13. *Dreams* by Media Molecule, © 2017 Sony Computer Computer Europe (PlayStation 4). (See Color Plate XII.)

buildings and machinery. Perhaps the biggest stroke of genius in *Minecraft* is *redstone*. This material serves as “wiring,” allowing players to lay down circuitry that controls pistons, hoppers, mine carts and other dynamic elements in the game. As a result, players can create virtually anything they can imagine, and then share their worlds with their friends by hosting a server and inviting them to play online.



Figure I.14. *Minecraft* by Markus “Notch” Persson / Mojang AB (Windows, MacOS, Xbox 360, PlayStation 3, PlayStation Vita, iOS). (See Color Plate XIII.)

### 1.4.8 Virtual, Augmented and Mixed Reality

Virtual, augmented and mixed reality are exciting new technologies that aim to immerse the viewer in a 3D world that is either entirely generated by a computer, or is augmented by computer-generated imagery. These technologies have many applications outside the game industry, but they have also become viable platforms for a wide range of gaming content.

#### 1.4.8.1 Virtual Reality

*Virtual reality* (VR) can be defined as an immersive multimedia or computer-simulated reality that simulates the user's presence in an environment that is either a place in the real world or in an imaginary world. Computer-generated VR (CG VR) is a subset of this technology in which the virtual world is exclusively generated via computer graphics. The user views this virtual environment by donning a headset such as HTC Vive, Oculus Rift, Sony PlayStation VR, Samsung Gear VR or Google Daydream View. The headset displays the content directly in front of the user's eyes; the system also tracks the movement of the headset in the real world, so that the virtual camera's movements can be perfectly matched to those of the person wearing the headset. The user typically holds devices in his or her hands which allow the system to track the movements of each hand. This allows the user to interact in the virtual world: Objects can be pushed, picked up or thrown, for example.

#### 1.4.8.2 Augmented and Mixed Reality

The terms *augmented reality* (AR) and *mixed reality* (MR) are often confused or used interchangeably. Both technologies present the user with a view of the real world, but with computer graphics used to enhance the experience. In both technologies, a viewing device like a smart phone, tablet or tech-enhanced pair of glasses displays a real-time or static view of a real-world scene, and computer graphics are overlaid on top of this image. In real-time AR and MR systems, accelerometers in the viewing device permit the virtual camera's movements to track the movements of the device, producing the illusion that the device is simply a window through which we are viewing the actual world, and hence giving the overlaid computer graphics a strong sense of realism.

Some people make a distinction between these two technologies by using the term "augmented reality" to describe technologies in which computer graphics are overlaid on a live, direct or indirect view of the real world, but are not anchored to it. The term "mixed reality," on the other hand, is more often

applied to the use of computer graphics to render imaginary objects which are anchored to the real world and appear to exist within it. However, this distinction is by no means universally accepted.

Here are a few examples of AR technology in action:

- The U.S. Army provides its soldiers with improved tactical awareness using a system dubbed “tactical augmented reality” (TAR)—it overlays a video-game-like heads-up display (HUD) complete with a mini-map and object markers onto the soldier’s view of the real world (<https://youtu.be/x8p19j8C6VI>).
- In 2015, Disney demonstrated some cool AR technology that renders a 3D cartoon character on top of a sheet of real-world paper on which a 2D version of the character is colored with a crayon (<https://youtu.be/SWzurBQ81CM>).
- PepsiCo also pranked commuting Londoners with an AR-enabled bus stop. People sitting in the bus stop enclosure were treated to AR images of a prowling tiger, a meteor crashing, and an alien tentacle grabbing unwitting passers by off the street (<https://youtu.be/Go9rf9GmYpM>).

And here are a few examples of MR:

- Starting with Android 8.1, the camera app on the Pixel 1 and Pixel 2 supports *AR Stickers*, a fun feature that allows users to place animated 3D objects and characters into videos and photos.
- Microsoft’s HoloLens is another example of mixed reality. It overlays world-anchored graphics onto a live video image, and can be used for a wide range of applications including education and training, engineering, health care, and entertainment.

#### 1.4.8.3 VR/AR/MR Games

The game industry is currently experimenting with VR and AR/MR technologies, and is trying to find its footing within these new media. Some traditional 3D games have been “ported” to VR, yielding very interesting, if not particularly innovative, experiences. But perhaps more exciting, entirely new game genres are starting to emerge, offering gameplay experiences that could not be achieved without VR or AR/MR.

For example, *Job Simulator* by Owlchemy Labs plunges the user into a virtual job museum run by robots, and asks them to perform tongue-in-cheek approximations of various real-world jobs, making use of game mechanics

that simply wouldn't work on a non-VR platform. Owlchemy's next installment, *Vacation Simulator*, applies the same whimsical sense of humour and art style to a world in which the robots of Job Simulator invite the player to relax and perform various tasks. Figure 1.15 shows a screenshot from another innovative (and somewhat disturbing!) game for HTC Vive called *Accounting*, from the creators of "Rick & Morty" and *The Stanley Parable*.

#### 1.4.8.4 VR Game Engines

VR game engines are technologically similar in many respects to first-person shooter engines, and in fact many FPS-capable engines such as Unity and Unreal Engine support VR "out of the box." However, VR games differ from FPS games in a number of significant ways:

- *Stereoscopic rendering*. A VR game needs to render the scene twice, once for each eye. This doubles the number of graphics primitives that must be rendered, although other aspects of the graphics pipeline such as visibility culling can be performed only once per frame, since the eyes are reasonably close together. As such, a VR game isn't quite as expensive to render as the same game would be to render in split-screen multiplayer mode, but the principle of rendering each frame twice from two (slightly) different virtual cameras is the same.
- *Very high frame rate*. Studies have shown that VR running at below 90



Figure I.15. *Accounting* by Squanchtendo and Crows Crows Crows (HTC Vive). (See Color Plate XIV.)

frames per second is likely to induce disorientation, nausea, and other negative user effects. This means that not only do VR systems need to render the scene twice per frame, they need to do so at 90+ FPS. This is why VR games and applications are generally required to run on high-powered CPU and GPU hardware.

- *Navigation issues.* In an FPS game, the player can simply walk around the game world with the joypad or the WASD keys. In a VR game, a small amount of movement can be realized by the user physically walking around in the real world, but the safe physical play area is typically quite small (the size of a small bathroom or closet). Travelling by “flying” tends to induce nausea as well, so most games opt for a point-and-click teleportation mechanism to move the virtual player/camera across larger distances. Various real-world devices have also been conceived that allow a VR user to “walk” in place with their feet in order to move around in a VR world.

Of course, VR makes up for these limitations somewhat by enabling new user interaction paradigms that aren’t possible in traditional video games. For example,

- users can reach in the real world to touch, pick up and throw objects in the virtual world;
- a player can dodge an attack in the virtual world by dodging physically in the real world;
- new user interface opportunities are possible, such as having floating menus attached to one’s virtual hands, or seeing a game’s credits written on a whiteboard in the virtual world;
- a player can even pick up a pair of virtual VR goggles and place them onto his or her head, thereby transporting them into a “nested” VR world—an effect that might best be called “VR-ception.”

#### I.4.8.5 Location-Based Entertainment

Games like *Pokémon Go* neither overlay graphics onto an image of the real world, nor do they generate a completely immersive virtual world. However, the user’s view of the computer-generated world of *Pokémon Go* does react to movements of the user’s phone or tablet, much like a 360-degree video. And the game is aware of your actual location in the real world, prompting you to go searching for *Pokémon* in nearby parks, malls and restaurants. This kind of game can’t really be called AR/MR, but neither does it fall into the VR category. Such a game might be better described as a form of *location-based*

*entertainment*, although some people do use the AR moniker for these kinds of games.

#### 1.4.9 Other Genres

There are of course many other game genres which we won't cover in depth here. Some examples include:

- sports, with subgenres for each major sport (football, baseball, soccer, golf, etc.);
- role-playing games (RPG);
- God games, like *Populous* and *Black & White*;
- environmental/social simulation games, like *SimCity* or *The Sims*;
- puzzle games like *Tetris*;
- conversions of non-electronic games, like chess, card games, go, etc.;
- web-based games, such as those offered at Electronic Arts' Pogo site;

and the list goes on.

We have seen that each game genre has its own particular technological requirements. This explains why game engines have traditionally differed quite a bit from genre to genre. However, there is also a great deal of technological overlap between genres, especially within the context of a single hardware platform. With the advent of more and more powerful hardware, differences between genres that arose because of optimization concerns are beginning to evaporate. It is therefore becoming increasingly possible to reuse the same engine technology across disparate genres, and even across disparate hardware platforms.

## 1.5 Game Engine Survey

### 1.5.1 The Quake Family of Engines

The first 3D first-person shooter (FPS) game is generally accepted to be *Castle Wolfenstein 3D* (1992). Written by id Software of Texas for the PC platform, this game led the game industry in a new and exciting direction. id Software went on to create *Doom*, *Quake*, *Quake II* and *Quake III*. All of these engines are very similar in architecture, and I will refer to them as the Quake family of engines. Quake technology has been used to create many other games and even other engines. For example, the lineage of *Medal of Honor* for the PC platform goes something like this:

- *Quake III* (id Software);
- *Sin* (Ritual);
- *F.A.K.K. 2* (Ritual);
- *Medal of Honor: Allied Assault* (2015 & Dreamworks Interactive); and
- *Medal of Honor: Pacific Assault* (Electronic Arts, Los Angeles).

Many other games based on Quake technology follow equally circuitous paths through many different games and studios. In fact, Valve’s Source engine (used to create the *Half-Life* games) also has distant roots in Quake technology.

The *Quake* and *Quake II* source code is freely available, and the original Quake engines are reasonably well architected and “clean” (although they are of course a bit outdated and written entirely in C). These code bases serve as great examples of how industrial-strength game engines are built. The full source code to *Quake* and *Quake II* is available at <https://github.com/id-Software/Quake-2>.

If you own the *Quake* and/or *Quake II* games, you can actually build the code using Microsoft Visual Studio and run the game under the debugger using the real game assets from the disk. This can be incredibly instructive. You can set breakpoints, run the game and then analyze how the engine actually works by stepping through the code. I highly recommend downloading one or both of these engines and analyzing the source code in this manner.

### 1.5.2 Unreal Engine

Epic Games, Inc. burst onto the FPS scene in 1998 with its legendary game *Unreal*. Since then, the Unreal Engine has become a major competitor to Quake technology in the FPS space. Unreal Engine 2 (UE2) is the basis for *Unreal Tournament 2004* (UT2004) and has been used for countless “mods,” university projects and commercial games. Unreal Engine 4 (UE4) is the latest evolutionary step, boasting some of the best tools and richest engine feature sets in the industry, including a convenient and powerful graphical user interface for creating shaders and a graphical user interface for game logic programming called *Blueprints* (previously known as Kismet).

The Unreal Engine has become known for its extensive feature set and cohesive, easy-to-use tools. The Unreal Engine is not perfect, and most developers modify it in various ways to run their game optimally on a particular hardware platform. However, Unreal is an incredibly powerful prototyping tool and commercial game development platform, and it can be used to build virtually any 3D first-person or third-person game (not to mention games in

other genres as well). Many exciting games in all sorts of genres have been developed with UE4, including *Rime* by Tequila Works, *Genesis: Alpha One* by Radiation Blue, *A Way Out* by Hazelight Studios, and *Crackdown 3* by Microsoft Studios.

The Unreal Developer Network (UDN) provides a rich set of documentation and other information about all released versions of the Unreal Engine (see <http://udn.epicgames.com/Main/WebHome.html>). Some documentation is freely available. However, access to the full documentation for the latest version of the Unreal Engine is generally restricted to licensees of the engine. There are plenty of other useful websites and wikis that cover the Unreal Engine. One popular one is <http://www.beyondunreal.com>.

Thankfully, Epic now offers full access to Unreal Engine 4, source code and all, for a low monthly subscription fee plus a cut of your game's profits if it ships. This makes UE4 a viable choice for small independent game studios.

### 1.5.3 The Half-Life Source Engine

Source is the game engine that drives the well-known *Half-Life 2* and its sequels *HL2: Episode One* and *HL2: Episode Two*, *Team Fortress 2* and *Portal* (shipped together under the title *The Orange Box*). Source is a high-quality engine, rivaling Unreal Engine 4 in terms of graphics capabilities and tool set.

### 1.5.4 DICE's Frostbite

The Frostbite engine grew out of DICE's efforts to create a game engine for *Battlefield Bad Company* in 2006. Since then, the Frostbite engine has become the most widely adopted engine within Electronic Arts (EA); it is used by many of EA's key franchises including *Mass Effect*, *Battlefield*, *Need for Speed*, *Dragon Age*, and *Star Wars Battlefront II*. Frostbite boasts a powerful unified asset creation tool called FrostEd, a powerful tools pipeline known as Backend Services, and a powerful runtime game engine. It is a proprietary engine, so it's unfortunately unavailable for use by developers outside EA.

### 1.5.5 Rockstar Advanced Game Engine (RAGE)

RAGE is the engine that drives the insanely popular *Grand Theft Auto V*. Developed by RAGE Technology Group, a division of Rockstar Games' Rockstar San Diego studio, RAGE has been used by Rockstar Games' internal studios to develop games for PlayStation 4, Xbox One, PlayStation 3, Xbox 360, Wii, Windows, and MacOS. Other games developed on this proprietary engine include *Grand Theft Auto IV*, *Red Dead Redemption* and *Max Payne 3*.

### 1.5.6 CRYENGINE

Crytek originally developed their powerful game engine known as CRYENGINE as a tech demo for NVIDIA. When the potential of the technology was recognized, Crytek turned the demo into a complete game and *Far Cry* was born. Since then, many games have been made with CRYENGINE including *Crysis*, *Codename Kingdoms*, *Ryse: Son of Rome*, and *Everyone's Gone to the Rapture*. Over the years the engine has evolved into what is now Crytek's latest offering, CRYENGINE V. This powerful game development platform offers a powerful suite of asset-creation tools and a feature-rich runtime engine featuring high-quality real-time graphics. CRYENGINE can be used to make games targeting a wide range of platforms including Xbox One, Xbox 360, PlayStation 4, PlayStation 3, Wii U, Linux, iOS and Android.

### 1.5.7 Sony's PhyreEngine

In an effort to make developing games for Sony's PlayStation 3 platform more accessible, Sony introduced PhyreEngine at the Game Developer's Conference (GDC) in 2008. As of 2013, PhyreEngine has evolved into a powerful and full-featured game engine, supporting an impressive array of features including advanced lighting and deferred rendering. It has been used by many studios to build over 90 published titles, including thatgamecompany's hits *flOw*, *Flower* and *Journey*, and Coldwood Interactive's *Unravel*. PhyreEngine now supports Sony's PlayStation 4, PlayStation 3, PlayStation 2, PlayStation Vita and PSP platforms. PhyreEngine gives developers access to the power of the highly parallel Cell architecture on PS3 and the advanced compute capabilities of the PS4, along with a streamlined new world editor and other powerful game development tools. It is available free of charge to any licensed Sony developer as part of the PlayStation SDK.

### 1.5.8 Microsoft's XNA Game Studio

Microsoft's XNA Game Studio is an easy-to-use and highly accessible game development platform based on the C# language and the Common Language Runtime (CLR), and aimed at encouraging players to create their own games and share them with the online gaming community, much as YouTube encourages the creation and sharing of home-made videos.

For better or worse, Microsoft officially retired XNA in 2014. However, developers can port their XNA games to iOS, Android, Mac OS X, Linux and Windows 8 Metro via an open-source implementation of XNA called MonoGame. For more details, see <https://www.windowscentral.com/xna-dead-long-live-xna>.

### 1.5.9 Unity

Unity is a powerful cross-platform game development environment and run-time engine supporting a wide range of platforms. Using Unity, developers can deploy their games on mobile platforms (e.g., Apple iOS, Google Android), consoles (Microsoft Xbox 360 and Xbox One, Sony PlayStation 3 and PlayStation 4, and Nintendo Wii, Wii U), handheld gaming platforms (e.g., Playstation Vita, Nintendo Switch), desktop computers (Microsoft Windows, Apple Macintosh and Linux), TV boxes (e.g., Android TV and tvOS) and virtual reality (VR) systems (e.g., Oculus Rift, Steam VR, Gear VR).

Unity's primary design goals are ease of development and cross-platform game deployment. As such, Unity provides an easy-to-use integrated editor environment, in which you can create and manipulate the assets and entities that make up your game world and quickly preview your game in action right there in the editor, or directly on your target hardware. Unity also provides a powerful suite of tools for analyzing and optimizing your game on each target platform, a comprehensive asset conditioning pipeline, and the ability to manage the performance-quality trade-off uniquely on each deployment platform. Unity supports scripting in JavaScript, C# or Boo; a powerful animation system supporting animation retargeting (the ability to play an animation authored for one character on a totally different character); and support for networked multiplayer games.

Unity has been used to create a wide variety of published games, including *Deus Ex: The Fall* by N-Fusion/Eidos Montreal, *Hollow Knight* by Team Cherry, and the subversive retro-style *Cuphead* by StudioMDHR. The Webby Award winning short film *Adam* was rendered in real time using Unity.

### 1.5.10 Other Commercial Game Engines

There are lots of other commercial game engines out there. Although indie developers may not have the budget to purchase an engine, many of these products have great online documentation and/or wikis that can serve as a great source of information about game engines and game programming in general. For example, check out the Tombstone engine (<http://tombstoneengine.com/>) by Terathon Software, the LeadWerks engine (<https://www.leadwerks.com/>), and HeroEngine by Idea Fabrik, PLC (<http://www.heroengine.com/>).

### 1.5.11 Proprietary In-House Engines

Many companies build and maintain proprietary in-house game engines. Electronic Arts built many of its RTS games on a proprietary engine called Sage, developed at Westwood Studios. Naughty Dog's *Crash Bandicoot* and

*Jak and Daxter* franchises were built on a proprietary engine custom tailored to the PlayStation and PlayStation 2. For the *Uncharted* series, Naughty Dog developed a brand new engine custom tailored to the PlayStation 3 hardware. This engine evolved and was ultimately used to create Naughty Dog's *The Last of Us* series on the PlayStation 3 and PlayStation 4, as well as its most recent releases, *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End* and *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy*. And of course, most commercially licensed game engines like Quake, Source, Unreal Engine 4 and CRYENGINE all started out as proprietary in-house engines.

### 1.5.12 Open Source Engines

Open source 3D game engines are engines built by amateur and professional game developers and provided online for free. The term "open source" typically implies that source code is freely available and that a somewhat open development model is employed, meaning almost anyone can contribute code. Licensing, if it exists at all, is often provided under the Gnu Public License (GPL) or Lesser Gnu Public License (LGPL). The former permits code to be freely used by anyone, as long as their code is also freely available; the latter allows the code to be used even in proprietary for-profit applications. Lots of other free and semi-free licensing schemes are also available for open source projects.

There are a staggering number of open source engines available on the web. Some are quite good, some are mediocre and some are just plain awful! The list of game engines provided online at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_game\\_engines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_game_engines) will give you a feel for the sheer number of engines that are out there. (The list at [http://www.worldofleveldesign.com/categories/level\\_design\\_tutorials/recommended-game-engines.php](http://www.worldofleveldesign.com/categories/level_design_tutorials/recommended-game-engines.php) is a bit more digestible.) Both of these lists include both open-source and commercial game engines.

OGRE is a well-architected, easy-to-learn and easy-to-use 3D rendering engine. It boasts a fully featured 3D renderer including advanced lighting and shadows, a good skeletal character animation system, a two-dimensional overlay system for heads-up displays and graphical user interfaces, and a post-processing system for full-screen effects like bloom. OGRE is, by its authors' own admission, not a full game engine, but it does provide many of the foundational components required by pretty much any game engine.

Some other well-known open source engines are listed here:

- Panda3D is a script-based engine. The engine's primary interface is the Python custom scripting language. It is designed to make prototyping

3D games and virtual worlds convenient and fast.

- Yake is a game engine built on top of OGRE.
- Crystal Space is a game engine with an extensible modular architecture.
- Torque and Irrlicht are also well-known open-source game engines.
- While not technically open-source, the Lumberyard engine does provide source code to its developers. It is a free cross-platform engine developed by Amazon, and based on the CRYENGINE architecture.

### 1.5.13 2D Game Engines for Non-programmers

Two-dimensional games have become incredibly popular with the recent explosion of casual web gaming and mobile gaming on platforms like Apple iPhone/iPad and Google Android. A number of popular game/multimedia authoring toolkits have become available, enabling small game studios and independent developers to create 2D games for these platforms. These toolkits emphasize ease of use and allow users to employ a graphical user interface to create a game rather than requiring the use of a programming language. Check out this YouTube video to get a feel for the kinds of games you can create with these toolkits: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3Zq1yo0lxOU>

- *Multimedia Fusion 2* (<http://www.clickteam.com/website/world>) is a 2D game/multimedia authoring toolkit developed by Clickteam. Fusion is used by industry professionals to create games, screen savers and other multimedia applications. Fusion and its simpler counterpart, The Games Factory 2, are also used by educational camps like PlanetBravo (<http://www.planetbravo.com>) to teach kids about game development and programming/logic concepts. Fusion supports the iOS, Android, Flash, and Java platforms.
- *Game Salad Creator* (<http://gamesalad.com/creator>) is another graphical game/multimedia authoring toolkit aimed at non-programmers, similar in many respects to Fusion.
- *Scratch* (<http://scratch.mit.edu>) is an authoring toolkit and graphical programming language that can be used to create interactive demos and simple games. It is a great way for young people to learn about programming concepts such as conditionals, loops and event-driven programming. Scratch was developed in 2003 by the Lifelong Kindergarten group, led by Mitchel Resnick at the MIT Media Lab.

## 1.6 Runtime Engine Architecture

A game engine generally consists of a tool suite and a runtime component. We'll explore the architecture of the runtime piece first and then get into tool architecture in the following section.

Figure 1.16 shows all of the major runtime components that make up a typical 3D game engine. Yeah, it's *big!* And this diagram doesn't even account for all the tools. Game engines are definitely large software systems.

Like all software systems, game engines are built in *layers*. Normally upper layers depend on lower layers, but not vice versa. When a lower layer depends upon a higher layer, we call this a *circular dependency*. Dependency cycles are to be avoided in any software system, because they lead to undesirable coupling between systems, make the software untestable and inhibit code reuse. This is especially true for a large-scale system like a game engine.

What follows is a brief overview of the components shown in the diagram in Figure 1.16. The rest of this book will be spent investigating each of these components in a great deal more depth and learning how these components are usually integrated into a functional whole.

### 1.6.1 Target Hardware

The target hardware layer represents the computer system or console on which the game will run. Typical platforms include Microsoft Windows, Linux and MacOS-based PCs; mobile platforms like the Apple iPhone and iPad, Android smart phones and tablets, Sony's PlayStation Vita and Amazon's Kindle Fire (among others); and game consoles like Microsoft's Xbox, Xbox 360 and Xbox One, Sony's PlayStation, PlayStation 2, PlayStation 3 and PlayStation 4, and Nintendo's DS, GameCube, Wii, Wii U and Switch. Most of the topics in this book are platform-agnostic, but we'll also touch on some of the design considerations peculiar to PC or console development, where the distinctions are relevant.

### 1.6.2 Device Drivers

Device drivers are low-level software components provided by the operating system or hardware vendor. Drivers manage hardware resources and shield the operating system and upper engine layers from the details of communicating with the myriad variants of hardware devices available.

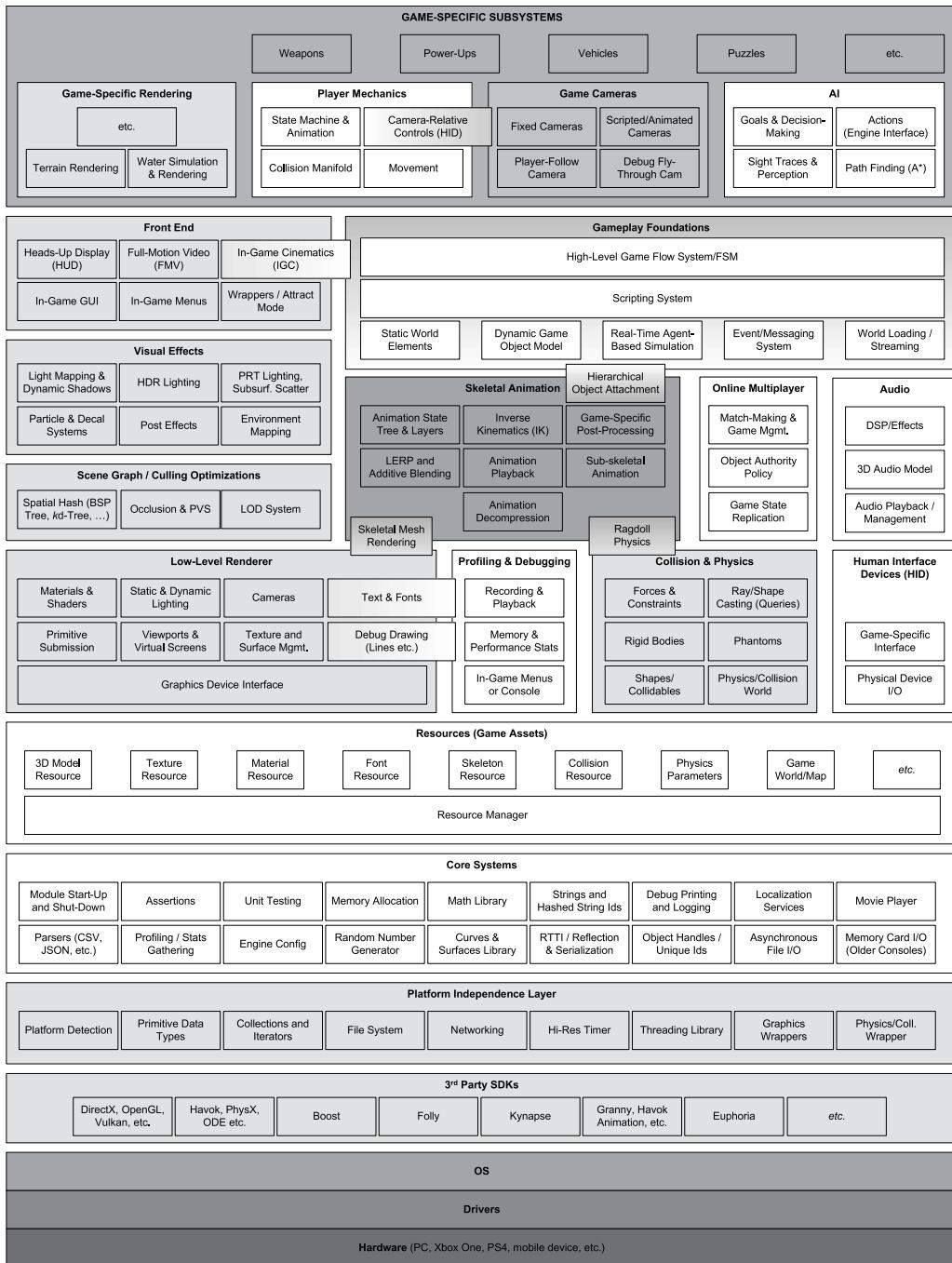


Figure I.16. Runtime game engine architecture.

### 1.6.3 Operating System

On a PC, the operating system (OS) is running all the time. It orchestrates the execution of multiple programs on a single computer, one of which is your game. Operating systems like Microsoft Windows employ a time-sliced approach to sharing the hardware with multiple running programs, known as preemptive multitasking. This means that a PC game can never assume it has full control of the hardware—it must “play nice” with other programs in the system.

On early consoles, the operating system, if one existed at all, was just a thin library layer that was compiled directly into your game executable. On those early systems, the game “owned” the entire machine while it was running. However, on modern consoles this is no longer the case. The operating system on the Xbox 360, PlayStation 3, Xbox One and PlayStation 4 can interrupt the execution of your game, or take over certain system resources, in order to display online messages, or to allow the player to pause the game and bring up the PS4’s “XMB” user interface or the Xbox One’s dashboard, for example. On the PS4 and Xbox One, the OS is continually running background tasks, such as recording video of your playthrough in case you decide to share it via the PS4’s Share button, or downloading games, patches and DLC, so you can have fun playing a game while you wait. So the gap between console and PC development is gradually closing (for better or for worse).

### 1.6.4 Third-Party SDKs and Middleware

Most game engines leverage a number of third-party software development kits (SDKs) and middleware, as shown in Figure 1.17. The functional or class-based interface provided by an SDK is often called an application programming interface (API). We will look at a few examples.



Figure 1.17. Third-party SDK layer.

#### 1.6.4.1 Data Structures and Algorithms

Like any software system, games depend heavily on *container* data structures and algorithms to manipulate them. Here are a few examples of third-party libraries that provide these kinds of services:

- *Boost*. Boost is a powerful data structures and algorithms library, designed in the style of the standard C++ library and its predecessor, the standard template library (STL). (The online documentation for Boost is also a great place to learn about computer science in general!)
- *Folly*. Folly is a library used at Facebook whose goal is to extend the standard C++ library and Boost with all sorts of useful facilities, with an emphasis on maximizing code performance.
- *Loki*. Loki is a powerful generic programming template library which is exceedingly good at making your brain hurt!

### *The C++ Standard Library and STL*

The C++ standard library also provides many of the same kinds of facilities found in third-party libraries like Boost. The subset of the standard library that implements generic container classes such as `std::vector` and `std::list` is often referred to as the *standard template library* (STL), although this is technically a bit of a misnomer: The standard template library was written by Alexander Stepanov and David Musser in the days before the C++ language was standardized. Much of this library's functionality was absorbed into what is now the C++ standard library. When we use the term STL in this book, it's usually in the context of the subset of the C++ standard library that provides generic container classes, not the original STL.

#### 1.6.4.2 Graphics

Most game rendering engines are built on top of a hardware interface library, such as the following:

- *Glide* is the 3D graphics SDK for the old Voodoo graphics cards. This SDK was popular prior to the era of hardware transform and lighting (hardware T&L) which began with DirectX 7.
- *OpenGL* is a widely used portable 3D graphics SDK.
- *DirectX* is Microsoft's 3D graphics SDK and primary rival to OpenGL.
- *libgcm* is a low-level direct interface to the PlayStation 3's RSX graphics hardware, which was provided by Sony as a more efficient alternative to OpenGL.
- *Edge* is a powerful and highly efficient rendering and animation engine produced by Naughty Dog and Sony for the PlayStation 3 and used by a number of first- and third-party game studios.

- *Vulkan* is a low-level library created by the Khronos™ Group which enables game programmers to submit rendering batches and GPGPU compute jobs directly to the GPU as command lists, and provides them with fine-grained control over memory and other resources that are shared between the CPU and GPU. (See Section 4.11 for more on GPGPU programming.)

#### 1.6.4.3 Collision and Physics

Collision detection and rigid body dynamics (known simply as “physics” in the game development community) are provided by the following well-known SDKs:

- *Havok* is a popular industrial-strength physics and collision engine.
- *PhysX* is another popular industrial-strength physics and collision engine, available for free download from NVIDIA.
- *Open Dynamics Engine (ODE)* is a well-known open source physics/collision package.

#### 1.6.4.4 Character Animation

A number of commercial animation packages exist, including but certainly not limited to the following:

- *Granny*. Rad Game Tools’ popular Granny toolkit includes robust 3D model and animation exporters for all the major 3D modeling and animation packages like Maya, 3D Studio MAX, etc., a runtime library for reading and manipulating the exported model and animation data, and a powerful runtime animation system. In my opinion, the Granny SDK has the best-designed and most logical animation API of any I’ve seen, commercial or proprietary, especially its excellent handling of time.
- *Havok Animation*. The line between physics and animation is becoming increasingly blurred as characters become more and more realistic. The company that makes the popular Havok physics SDK decided to create a complimentary animation SDK, which makes bridging the physics-animation gap much easier than it ever has been.
- *OrbisAnim*. The OrbisAnim library produced for the PS4 by SN Systems in conjunction with the ICE and game teams at Naughty Dog, the Tools and Technology group of Sony Interactive Entertainment, and Sony’s Advanced Technology Group in Europe includes a powerful and efficient animation engine and an efficient geometry-processing engine for rendering.

#### 1.6.4.5 Biomechanical Character Models

- *Endorphin and Euphoria.* These are animation packages that produce character motion using advanced biomechanical models of realistic human movement.

As we mentioned previously, the line between character animation and physics is beginning to blur. Packages like Havok Animation try to marry physics and animation in a traditional manner, with a human animator providing the majority of the motion through a tool like Maya and with physics augmenting that motion at runtime. But a firm called Natural Motion Ltd. has produced a product that attempts to redefine how character motion is handled in games and other forms of digital media.

Its first product, Endorphin, is a Maya plug-in that permits animators to run full biomechanical simulations on characters and export the resulting animations as if they had been hand animated. The biomechanical model accounts for center of gravity, the character's weight distribution, and detailed knowledge of how a real human balances and moves under the influence of gravity and other forces.

Its second product, Euphoria, is a real-time version of Endorphin intended to produce physically and biomechanically accurate character motion at runtime under the influence of unpredictable forces.

### 1.6.5 Platform Independence Layer

Most game engines are required to be capable of running on more than one hardware platform. Companies like Electronic Arts and ActivisionBlizzard Inc., for example, always target their games at a wide variety of platforms because it exposes their games to the largest possible market. Typically, the only game studios that do not target at least two different platforms per game are first-party studios, like Sony's Naughty Dog and Insomniac studios. Therefore, most game engines are architected with a platform independence layer, like the one shown in Figure 1.18. This layer sits atop the hardware, drivers, operating system and other third-party software and shields the rest of the engine from the majority of knowledge of the underlying platform by “wrapping” certain interface functions in custom functions over which you, the game developer, will have control on every target platform.

There are two primary reasons to “wrap” functions as part of your game engine’s platform independence layer like this: First, some application programming interfaces (APIs), like those provided by the operating system, or even some functions in older “standard” libraries like the C standard library,

differ significantly from platform to platform; wrapping these functions provides the rest of your engine with a consistent API across all of your targeted platforms. Second, even when using a fully cross-platform library such as Havok, you might want to insulate yourself from future changes, such as transitioning your engine to a different collision/physics library in the future.

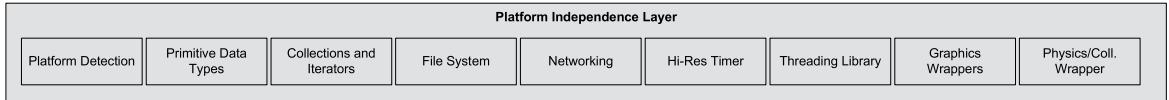


Figure I.I8. Platform independence layer.

### 1.6.6 Core Systems

Every game engine, and really every large, complex C++ software application, requires a grab bag of useful software utilities. We'll categorize these under the label "core systems." A typical core systems layer is shown in Figure 1.19. Here are a few examples of the facilities the core layer usually provides:

- *Assertions* are lines of error-checking code that are inserted to catch logical mistakes and violations of the programmer's original assumptions. Assertion checks are usually stripped out of the final production build of the game. (Assertions are covered in Section 3.2.3.3.)
- *Memory management*. Virtually every game engine implements its own custom memory allocation system(s) to ensure high-speed allocations and deallocations and to limit the negative effects of memory fragmentation (see Section 6.2.1).
- *Math library*. Games are by their nature highly mathematics-intensive. As such, every game engine has at least one, if not many, math libraries. These libraries provide facilities for vector and matrix math, quaternion rotations, trigonometry, geometric operations with lines, rays, spheres, frusta, etc., spline manipulation, numerical integration, solving systems of equations and whatever other facilities the game programmers require.
- *Custom data structures and algorithms*. Unless an engine's designers decided to rely entirely on third-party packages such as Boost and Folly, a suite of tools for managing fundamental data structures (linked lists, dynamic arrays, binary trees, hash maps, etc.) and algorithms (search, sort, etc.) is usually required. These are often hand coded to minimize or eliminate dynamic memory allocation and to ensure optimal runtime performance on the target platform(s).

Core Systems									
Module Start-Up and Shut-Down	Assertions	Unit Testing	Memory Allocation	Math Library	Strings and Hashed String Ids	Debug Printing and Logging	Localization Services	Movie Player	
Parsers (CSV, JSON, etc.)	Profiling / Stats Gathering	Engine Config	Random Number Generator	Curves & Surfaces Library	RTTI / Reflection & Serialization	Object Handles / Unique Ids	Asynchronous File I/O	Memory Card I/O (Older Consoles)	

Figure I.19. Core engine systems.

A detailed discussion of the most common core engine systems can be found in Part II.

### 1.6.7 Resource Manager

Present in every game engine in some form, the resource manager provides a unified interface (or suite of interfaces) for accessing any and all types of game assets and other engine input data. Some engines do this in a highly centralized and consistent manner (e.g., Unreal’s packages, OGRE’s Resource-Manager class). Other engines take an ad hoc approach, often leaving it up to the game programmer to directly access raw files on disk or within compressed archives such as Quake’s PAK files. A typical resource manager layer is depicted in Figure 1.20.

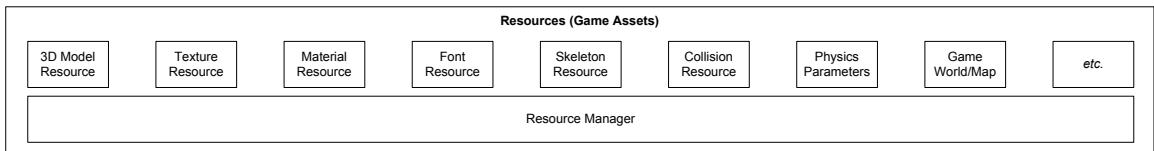


Figure I.20. Resource manager.

### 1.6.8 Rendering Engine

The rendering engine is one of the largest and most complex components of any game engine. Renderers can be architected in many different ways. There is no one accepted way to do it, although as we’ll see, most modern rendering engines share some fundamental design philosophies, driven in large part by the design of the 3D graphics hardware upon which they depend.

One common and effective approach to rendering engine design is to employ a layered architecture as follows.

### 1.6.8.1 Low-Level Renderer

The *low-level renderer*, shown in Figure 1.21, encompasses all of the raw rendering facilities of the engine. At this level, the design is focused on rendering a collection of geometric primitives as quickly and richly as possible, without much regard for which portions of a scene may be visible. This component is broken into various subcomponents, which are discussed below.

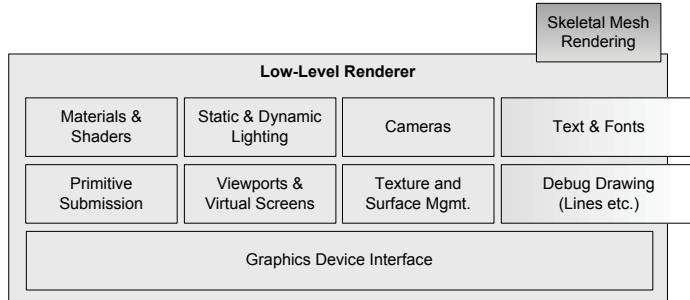


Figure 1.21. Low-level rendering engine.

### Graphics Device Interface

Graphics SDKs, such as DirectX, OpenGL or Vulkan, require a reasonable amount of code to be written just to enumerate the available graphics devices, initialize them, set up render surfaces (back-buffer, stencil buffer, etc.) and so on. This is typically handled by a component that I'll call the *graphics device interface* (although every engine uses its own terminology).

For a PC game engine, you also need code to integrate your renderer with the Windows message loop. You typically write a “message pump” that services Windows messages when they are pending and otherwise runs your render loop over and over as fast as it can. This ties the game’s keyboard polling loop to the renderer’s screen update loop. This coupling is undesirable, but with some effort it is possible to minimize the dependencies. We’ll explore this topic in more depth later.

### Other Renderer Components

The other components in the low-level renderer cooperate in order to collect submissions of *geometric primitives* (sometimes called *render packets*), such as meshes, line lists, point lists, particles, terrain patches, text strings and whatever else you want to draw, and render them as quickly as possible.

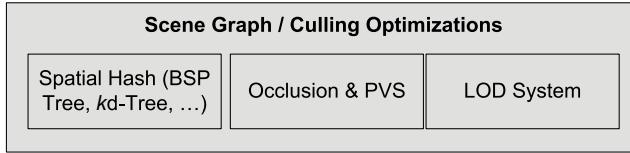


Figure I.22. A typical scene graph/spatial subdivision layer, for culling optimization.

The low-level renderer usually provides a viewport abstraction with an associated camera-to-world matrix and 3D projection parameters, such as field of view and the location of the near and far clip planes. The low-level renderer also manages the state of the graphics hardware and the game’s shaders via its *material system* and its *dynamic lighting system*. Each submitted primitive is associated with a material and is affected by  $n$  dynamic lights. The material describes the texture(s) used by the primitive, what device state settings need to be in force, and which vertex and pixel shader to use when rendering the primitive. The lights determine how dynamic lighting calculations will be applied to the primitive. Lighting and shading is a complex topic. We’ll discuss the fundamentals in Chapter 11, but these topics are covered in depth in many excellent books on computer graphics, including [16], [49] and [2].

### 1.6.8.2 Scene Graph/Culling Optimizations

The low-level renderer draws all of the geometry submitted to it, without much regard for whether or not that geometry is actually visible (other than back-face culling and clipping triangles to the camera frustum). A higher-level component is usually needed in order to limit the number of primitives submitted for rendering, based on some form of visibility determination. This layer is shown in Figure 1.22.

For very small game worlds, a simple *frustum cull* (i.e., removing objects that the camera cannot “see”) is probably all that is required. For larger game worlds, a more advanced *spatial subdivision* data structure might be used to improve rendering efficiency by allowing the potentially visible set (PVS) of objects to be determined very quickly. Spatial subdivisions can take many forms, including a binary space partitioning tree, a quadtree, an octree, a kd-tree or a sphere hierarchy. A spatial subdivision is sometimes called a scene graph, although technically the latter is a particular kind of data structure and does not subsume the former. Portals or occlusion culling methods might also be applied in this layer of the rendering engine.

Ideally, the low-level renderer should be completely agnostic to the type of spatial subdivision or scene graph being used. This permits different game

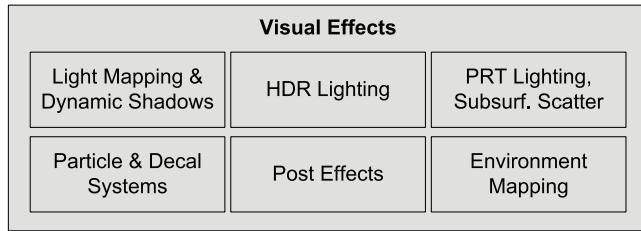


Figure 1.23. Visual effects.

teams to reuse the primitive submission code but to craft a PVS determination system that is specific to the needs of each team’s game. The design of the OGRE open source rendering engine (<http://www.ogre3d.org>) is a great example of this principle in action. OGRE provides a plug-and-play scene graph architecture. Game developers can either select from a number of preimplemented scene graph designs, or they can provide a custom scene graph implementation.

#### 1.6.8.3 Visual Effects

Modern game engines support a wide range of visual effects, as shown in Figure 1.23, including:

- particle systems (for smoke, fire, water splashes, etc.);
- decal systems (for bullet holes, foot prints, etc.);
- light mapping and environment mapping;
- dynamic shadows; and
- full-screen post effects, applied after the 3D scene has been rendered to an off-screen buffer.

Some examples of full-screen post effects include:

- high dynamic range (HDR) tone mapping and bloom;
- full-screen anti-aliasing (FSAA); and
- color correction and color-shift effects, including bleach bypass, saturation and desaturation effects, etc.

It is common for a game engine to have an *effects system* component that manages the specialized rendering needs of particles, decals and other visual effects. The particle and decal systems are usually distinct components of the rendering engine and act as inputs to the low-level renderer. On the other

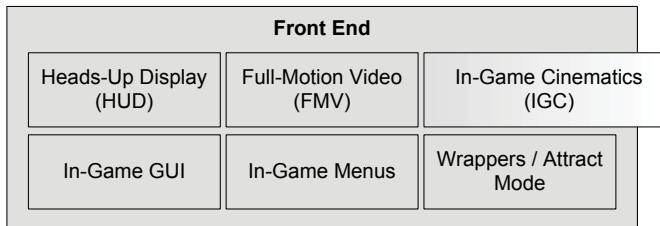


Figure 1.24. Front end graphics.

hand, light mapping, environment mapping and shadows are usually handled internally within the rendering engine proper. Full-screen post effects are either implemented as an integral part of the renderer or as a separate component that operates on the renderer's output buffers.

#### 1.6.8.4 Front End

Most games employ some kind of 2D graphics overlaid on the 3D scene for various purposes. These include:

- the game's *heads-up display* (HUD);
- in-game menus, a console and/or other *development tools*, which may or may not be shipped with the final product; and
- possibly an in-game *graphical user interface* (GUI), allowing the player to manipulate his or her character's inventory, configure units for battle or perform other complex in-game tasks.

This layer is shown in Figure 1.24. Two-dimensional graphics like these are usually implemented by drawing textured quads (pairs of triangles) with an orthographic projection. Or they may be rendered in full 3D, with the quads bill-boarded so they always face the camera.

We've also included the *full-motion video* (FMV) system in this layer. This system is responsible for playing full-screen movies that have been recorded earlier (either rendered with the game's rendering engine or using another rendering package).

A related system is the *in-game cinematics* (IGC) system. This component typically allows cinematic sequences to be choreographed within the game itself, in full 3D. For example, as the player walks through a city, a conversation between two key characters might be implemented as an in-game cinematic. IGCs may or may not include the player character(s). They may be done as a deliberate cut-away during which the player has no control, or they may be subtly integrated into the game without the human player even realizing that

an IGC is taking place. Some games, such as Naughty Dog's *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End*, have moved away from pre-rendered movies entirely, and display *all* cinematic moments in the game as real-time IGCs.

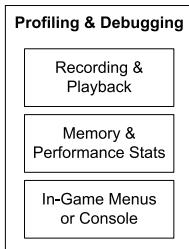


Figure 1.25. Profiling and debugging tools.

### 1.6.9 Profiling and Debugging Tools

Games are real-time systems and, as such, game engineers often need to profile the performance of their games in order to optimize performance. In addition, memory resources are usually scarce, so developers make heavy use of memory analysis tools as well. The profiling and debugging layer, shown in Figure 1.25, encompasses these tools and also includes in-game debugging facilities, such as debug drawing, an in-game menu system or console and the ability to record and play back gameplay for testing and debugging purposes.

There are plenty of good general-purpose software profiling tools available, including:

- Intel's *VTune*,
- IBM's *Quantify* and *Purify* (part of the *PurifyPlus* tool suite),
- *Insure++* by Parasoft, and
- *Valgrind* by Julian Seward and the Valgrind development team.

However, most game engines also incorporate a suite of custom profiling and debugging tools. For example, they might include one or more of the following:

- a mechanism for manually instrumenting the code, so that specific sections of code can be timed;
- a facility for displaying the profiling statistics on-screen while the game is running;
- a facility for dumping performance stats to a text file or to an Excel spreadsheet;
- a facility for determining how much memory is being used by the engine, and by each subsystem, including various on-screen displays;
- the ability to dump memory usage, high water mark and leakage stats when the game terminates and/or during gameplay;
- tools that allow debug print statements to be peppered throughout the code, along with an ability to turn on or off different categories of debug output and control the level of verbosity of the output; and

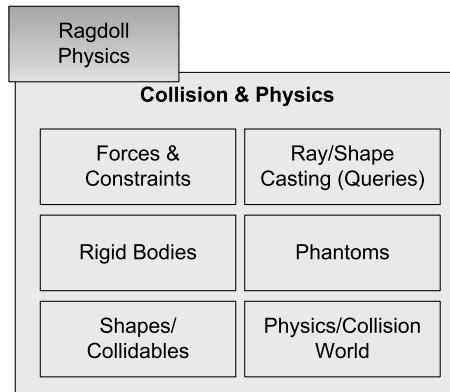


Figure I.26. Collision and physics subsystem.

- the ability to record game events and then play them back. This is tough to get right, but when done properly it can be a very valuable tool for tracking down bugs.

The PlayStation 4 provides a powerful core dump facility to aid programmers in debugging crashes. The PlayStation 4 is always recording the last 15 seconds of gameplay video, to allow players to share their experiences via the Share button on the controller. Because of this, the PS4's core dump facility automatically provides programmers not only with a complete call stack of what the program was doing when it crashed, but also with a screenshot of the moment of the crash and 15 seconds of video footage showing what was happening just prior to the crash. Core dumps can be automatically uploaded to the game developer's servers whenever the game crashes, even after the game has shipped. These facilities revolutionize the tasks of crash analysis and repair.

### 1.6.10 Collision and Physics

Collision detection is important for every game. Without it, objects would interpenetrate, and it would be impossible to interact with the virtual world in any reasonable way. Some games also include a realistic or semi-realistic dynamics simulation. We call this the “physics system” in the game industry, although the term *rigid body dynamics* is really more appropriate, because we are usually only concerned with the motion (kinematics) of rigid bodies and the forces and torques (dynamics) that cause this motion to occur. This layer is depicted in Figure 1.26.

Collision and physics are usually quite tightly coupled. This is because when collisions are detected, they are almost always resolved as part of the physics integration and constraint satisfaction logic. Nowadays, very few game companies write their own collision/physics engine. Instead, a third-party SDK is typically integrated into the engine.

- *Havok* is the gold standard in the industry today. It is feature-rich and performs well across the boards.
- *PhysX* by NVIDIA is another excellent collision and dynamics engine. It was integrated into Unreal Engine 4 and is also available for free as a stand-alone product for PC game development. PhysX was originally designed as the interface to Ageia's physics accelerator chip. The SDK is now owned and distributed by NVIDIA, and the company has adapted PhysX to run on its latest GPUs.

Open source physics and collision engines are also available. Perhaps the best-known of these is the Open Dynamics Engine (ODE). For more information, see <http://www.ode.org>. I-Collide, V-Collide and RAPID are other popular non-commercial collision detection engines. All three were developed at the University of North Carolina (UNC). For more information, see [http://www.cs.unc.edu/~geom/I\\_COLLIDE/index.html](http://www.cs.unc.edu/~geom/I_COLLIDE/index.html) and [http://www.cs.unc.edu/~geom/V\\_COLLIDE/index.html](http://www.cs.unc.edu/~geom/V_COLLIDE/index.html).

### 1.6.11 Animation

Any game that has organic or semi-organic characters (humans, animals, cartoon characters or even robots) needs an animation system. There are five basic types of animation used in games:

- sprite/texture animation,
- rigid body hierarchy animation,
- skeletal animation,
- vertex animation, and
- morph targets.

Skeletal animation permits a detailed 3D character mesh to be posed by an animator using a relatively simple system of bones. As the bones move, the vertices of the 3D mesh move with them. Although morph targets and vertex animation are used in some engines, skeletal animation is the most prevalent animation method in games today; as such, it will be our primary focus in this book. A typical skeletal animation system is shown in Figure 1.27.

You'll notice in Figure 1.16 that the skeletal mesh rendering component bridges the gap between the renderer and the animation system. There is a tight cooperation happening here, but the interface is very well defined. The animation system produces a pose for every bone in the skeleton, and then these poses are passed to the rendering engine as a palette of matrices. The renderer transforms each vertex by the matrix or matrices in the palette, in order to generate a final blended vertex position. This process is known as *skinning*.

There is also a tight coupling between the animation and physics systems when *rag dolls* are employed. A rag doll is a limp (often dead) animated character, whose bodily motion is simulated by the physics system. The physics system determines the positions and orientations of the various parts of the body by treating them as a constrained system of rigid bodies. The animation system calculates the palette of matrices required by the rendering engine in order to draw the character on-screen.

### 1.6.12 Human Interface Devices (HID)

Every game needs to process input from the player, obtained from various *human interface devices* (HIDs) including:

- the keyboard and mouse,
- a joypad, or
- other specialized game controllers, like steering wheels, fishing rods, dance pads, the Wiimote, etc.

We sometimes call this component the *player I/O* component, because

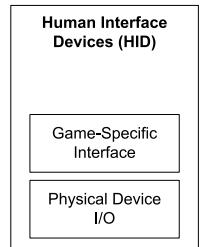


Figure 1.28. The player input/output system, also known as the human interface device (HID) layer.

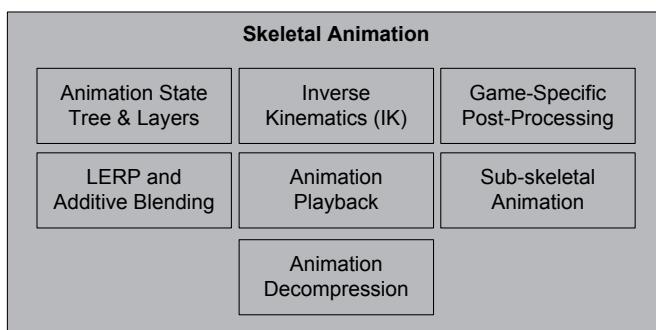


Figure 1.27. Skeletal animation subsystem.

we may also provide *output* to the player through the HID, such as force-feedback/ rumble on a joypad or the audio produced by the Wiimote. A typical HID layer is shown in Figure 1.28.

The HID engine component is sometimes architected to divorce the low-level details of the game controller(s) on a particular hardware platform from the high-level game controls. It massages the raw data coming from the hardware, introducing a dead zone around the center point of each joypad stick, debouncing button-press inputs, detecting button-down and button-up events, interpreting and smoothing accelerometer inputs (e.g., from the PlayStation Dualshock controller) and more. It often provides a mechanism allowing the player to customize the mapping between physical controls and logical game functions. It sometimes also includes a system for detecting chords (multiple buttons pressed together), sequences (buttons pressed in sequence within a certain time limit) and gestures (sequences of inputs from the buttons, sticks, accelerometers, etc.).

### 1.6.13 Audio

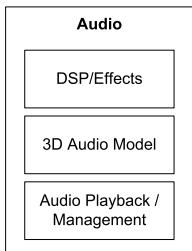


Figure 1.29. Audio subsystem.

Audio is just as important as graphics in any game engine. Unfortunately, audio often gets less attention than rendering, physics, animation, AI and gameplay. Case in point: Programmers often develop their code with their speakers turned off! (In fact, I've known quite a few game programmers who didn't even *have* speakers or headphones.) Nonetheless, no great game is complete without a stunning audio engine. The audio layer is depicted in Figure 1.29.

Audio engines vary greatly in sophistication. Quake's audio engine is pretty basic, and game teams usually augment it with custom functionality or replace it with an in-house solution. Unreal Engine 4 provides a reasonably robust 3D audio rendering engine (discussed in detail in [45]), although its feature set is limited and many game teams will probably want to augment and customize it to provide advanced game-specific features. For DirectX platforms (PC, Xbox 360, Xbox One), Microsoft provides an excellent runtime audio engine called XAudio2. Electronic Arts has developed an advanced, high-powered audio engine internally called SoundR!OT. In conjunction with first-party studios like Naughty Dog, Sony Interactive Entertainment (SIE) provides a powerful 3D audio engine called Scream, which has been used on a number of PS3 and PS4 titles including Naughty Dog's *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End* and *The Last of Us: Remastered*. However, even if a game team uses a preexisting audio engine, every game requires a great deal of custom software development, integration work, fine-tuning and attention to detail in order to produce high-quality audio in the final product.

### 1.6.14 Online Multiplayer/Networking

Many games permit multiple human players to play within a single virtual world. Multiplayer games come in at least four basic flavors:

- *Single-screen multiplayer*. Two or more human interface devices (joypads, keyboards, mice, etc.) are connected to a single arcade machine, PC or console. Multiple player characters inhabit a single virtual world, and a single camera keeps all player characters in frame simultaneously. Examples of this style of multiplayer gaming include *Smash Brothers*, *Lego Star Wars* and *Gauntlet*.
- *Split-screen multiplayer*. Multiple player characters inhabit a single virtual world, with multiple HIDs attached to a single game machine, but each with its own camera, and the screen is divided into sections so that each player can view his or her character.
- *Networked multiplayer*. Multiple computers or consoles are networked together, with each machine hosting one of the players.
- *Massively multiplayer online games (MMOG)*. Literally hundreds of thousands of users can be playing simultaneously within a giant, persistent, online virtual world hosted by a powerful battery of central servers.

The multiplayer networking layer is shown in Figure 1.30.

Multiplayer games are quite similar in many ways to their single-player counterparts. However, support for multiple players can have a profound impact on the design of certain game engine components. The game world object model, renderer, human input device system, player control system and animation systems are all affected. Retrofitting multiplayer features into a pre-existing single-player engine is certainly not impossible, although it can be a daunting task. Still, many game teams have done it successfully. That said, it is usually better to design multiplayer features from day one, if you have that luxury.

It is interesting to note that going the other way—converting a multiplayer game into a single-player game—is typically trivial. In fact, many game engines treat single-player mode as a special case of a multiplayer game, in which there happens to be only one player. The Quake engine is well known for its *client-on-top-of-server* mode, in which a single executable, running on a single PC, acts both as the client and the server in single-player campaigns.

### 1.6.15 Gameplay Foundation Systems

The term *gameplay* refers to the action that takes place in the game, the rules that govern the virtual world in which the game takes place, the abilities of the

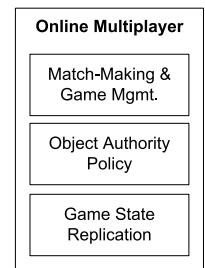


Figure 1.30. Online multiplayer networking subsystem.

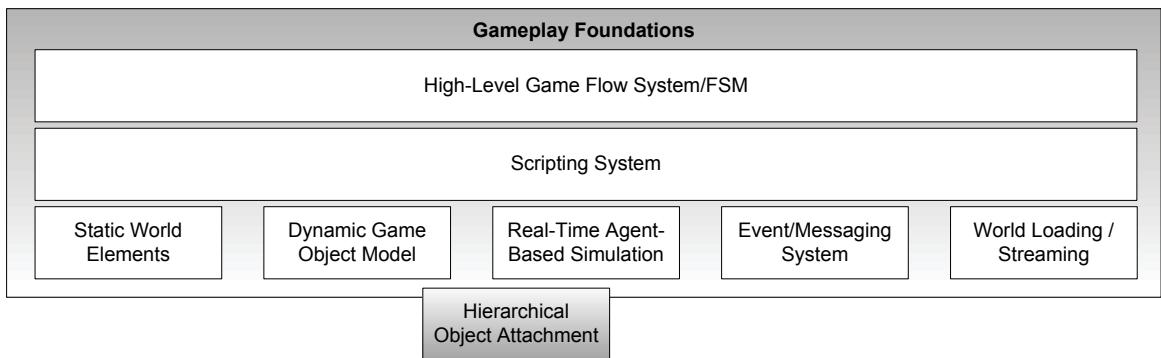


Figure 1.31. Gameplay foundation systems.

player character(s) (known as *player mechanics*) and of the other characters and objects in the world, and the goals and objectives of the player(s). Gameplay is typically implemented either in the native language in which the rest of the engine is written or in a high-level scripting language—or sometimes both. To bridge the gap between the gameplay code and the low-level engine systems that we've discussed thus far, most game engines introduce a layer that I'll call the *gameplay foundations* layer (for lack of a standardized name). Shown in Figure 1.31, this layer provides a suite of core facilities, upon which game-specific logic can be implemented conveniently.

#### 1.6.15.1 Game Worlds and Object Models

The gameplay foundations layer introduces the notion of a game world, containing both static and dynamic elements. The contents of the world are usually modeled in an object-oriented manner (often, but not always, using an object-oriented programming language). In this book, the collection of object types that make up a game is called the *game object model*. The game object model provides a real-time simulation of a heterogeneous collection of objects in the virtual game world.

Typical types of game objects include:

- static background geometry, like buildings, roads, terrain (often a special case), etc.;
- dynamic rigid bodies, such as rocks, soda cans, chairs, etc.;
- player characters (PC);
- non-player characters (NPC);

- weapons;
- projectiles;
- vehicles;
- lights (which may be present in the dynamic scene at runtime, or only used for static lighting offline);
- cameras;

and the list goes on.

The game world model is intimately tied to a *software object model*, and this model can end up pervading the entire engine. The term software object model refers to the set of language features, policies and conventions used to implement a piece of object-oriented software. In the context of game engines, the software object model answers questions, such as:

- Is your game engine designed in an object-oriented manner?
- What language will you use? C? C++? Java? OCaml?
- How will the static class hierarchy be organized? One giant monolithic hierarchy? Lots of loosely coupled components?
- Will you use templates and policy-based design, or traditional polymorphism?
- How are objects referenced? Straight old pointers? Smart pointers? Handles?
- How will objects be uniquely identified? By address in memory only? By name? By a global unique identifier (GUID)?
- How are the lifetimes of game objects managed?
- How are the states of the game objects simulated over time?

We'll explore software object models and game object models in considerable depth in Section 16.2.

#### 1.6.15.2 Event System

Game objects invariably need to communicate with one another. This can be accomplished in all sorts of ways. For example, the object sending the message might simply call a member function of the receiver object. An event-driven architecture, much like what one would find in a typical graphical user interface, is also a common approach to inter-object communication. In an event-driven system, the sender creates a little data structure called an *event* or *message*, containing the message's type and any argument data that are to be sent. The event is passed to the receiver object by calling its *event handler function*. Events can also be stored in a queue for handling at some future time.

### 1.6.15.3 Scripting System

Many game engines employ a scripting language in order to make development of game-specific gameplay rules and content easier and more rapid. Without a scripting language, you must recompile and relink your game executable every time a change is made to the logic or data structures used in the engine. But when a scripting language is integrated into your engine, changes to game logic and data can be made by modifying and reloading the script code. Some engines allow script to be reloaded while the game continues to run. Other engines require the game to be shut down prior to script recompilation. But either way, the turnaround time is still much faster than it would be if you had to recompile and relink the game's executable.

### 1.6.15.4 Artificial Intelligence Foundations

Traditionally, artificial intelligence has fallen squarely into the realm of game-specific software—it was usually not considered part of the game engine per se. More recently, however, game companies have recognized patterns that arise in almost every AI system, and these foundations are slowly starting to fall under the purview of the engine proper.

For example, a company called Kynogon developed a middleware SDK named Kynapse, which provides much of the low-level technology required to build commercially viable game AI. This technology was purchased by Autodesk and has been superseded by a totally redesigned AI middleware package called Gameware Navigation, designed by the same engineering team that invented Kynapse. This SDK provides low-level AI building blocks such as nav mesh generation, path finding, static and dynamic object avoidance, identification of vulnerabilities within a play space (e.g., an open window from which an ambush could come) and a well-defined interface between AI and animation.

## 1.6.16 Game-Specific Subsystems

On top of the gameplay foundation layer and the other low-level engine components, gameplay programmers and designers cooperate to implement the features of the game itself. Gameplay systems are usually numerous, highly varied and specific to the game being developed. As shown in Figure 1.32, these systems include, but are certainly not limited to the mechanics of the player character, various in-game camera systems, artificial intelligence for the control of non-player characters, weapon systems, vehicles and the list goes on. If a clear line could be drawn between the engine and the game,

it would lie between the game-specific subsystems and the gameplay foundations layer. Practically speaking, this line is never perfectly distinct. At least some game-specific knowledge invariably seeps down through the gameplay foundations layer and sometimes even extends into the core of the engine itself.

## 1.7 Tools and the Asset Pipeline

Any game engine must be fed a great deal of data, in the form of game assets, configuration files, scripts and so on. Figure 1.33 depicts some of the types of game assets typically found in modern game engines. The thicker dark-grey arrows show how data flows from the tools used to create the original source assets all the way through to the game engine itself. The thinner light-grey arrows show how the various types of assets refer to or use other assets.

### 1.7.1 Digital Content Creation Tools

Games are multimedia applications by nature. A game engine's input data comes in a wide variety of forms, from 3D mesh data to texture bitmaps to animation data to audio files. All of this source data must be created and manipulated by artists. The tools that the artists use are called *digital content creation* (DCC) applications.

A DCC application is usually targeted at the creation of one particular type of data—although some tools can produce multiple data types. For example, Autodesk's Maya and 3ds Max and Pixologic's ZBrush are prevalent in the creation of both 3D meshes and animation data. Adobe's Photoshop and its ilk are aimed at creating and editing bitmaps (textures). SoundForge is a popular tool for creating audio clips. Some types of game data cannot be created using an off-the-shelf DCC app. For example, most game engines provide a custom editor for laying out game worlds. Still, some engines do make use of

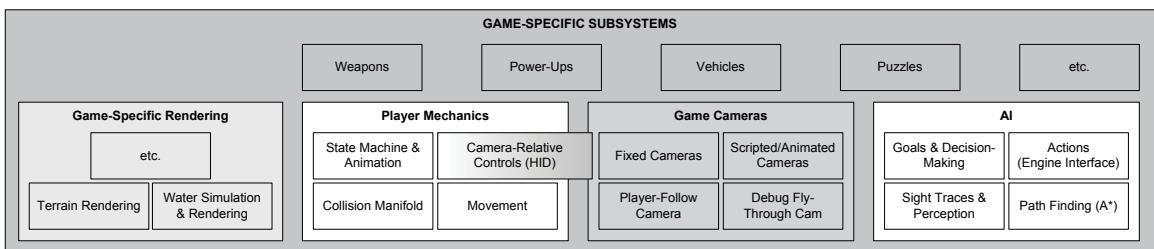


Figure I.32. Game-specific subsystems.

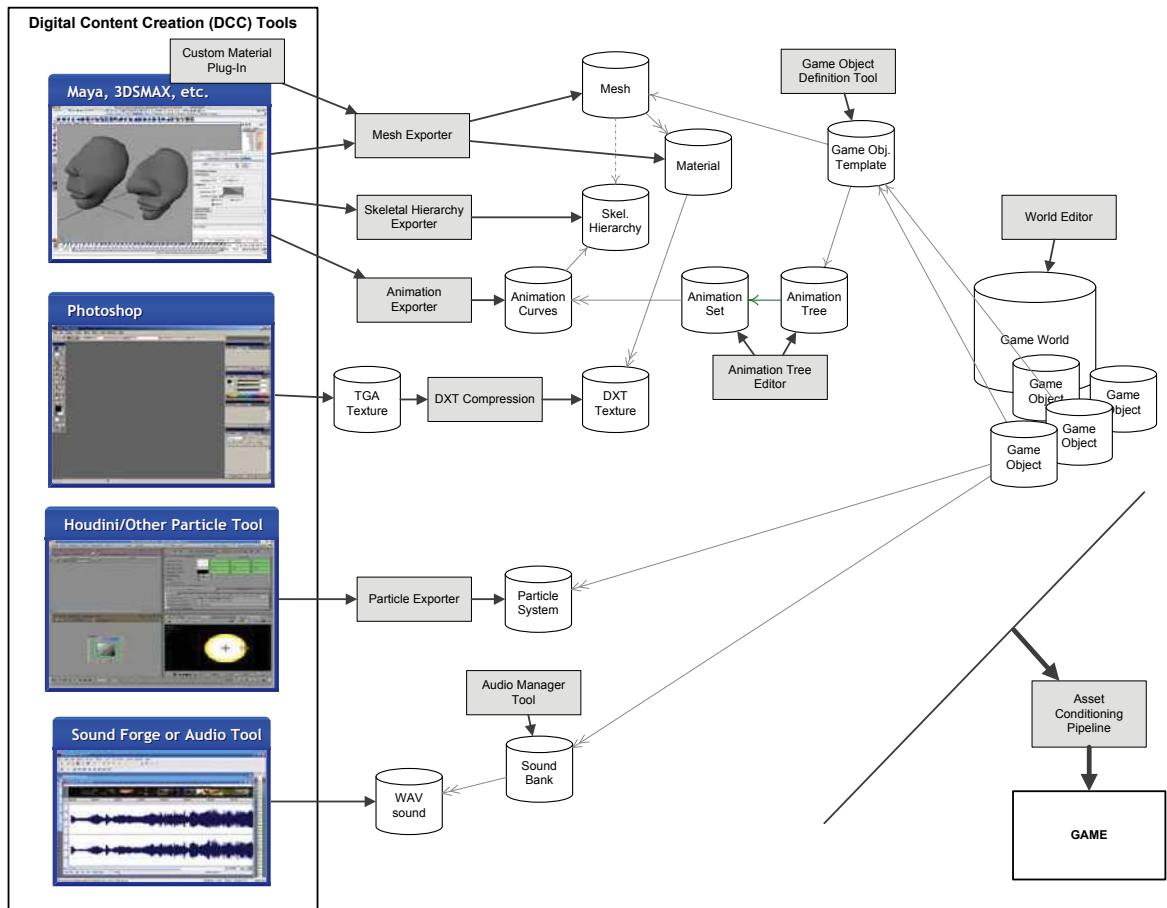


Figure I.33. Tools and the asset pipeline.

preexisting tools for game world layout. I've seen game teams use 3ds Max or Maya as a world layout tool, with or without custom plug-ins to aid the user. Ask most game developers, and they'll tell you they can remember a time when they laid out terrain height fields using a simple bitmap editor, or typed world layouts directly into a text file by hand. Tools don't have to be pretty—game teams will use whatever tools are available and get the job done. That said, tools must be relatively *easy to use*, and they absolutely must be *reliable*, if a game team is going to be able to develop a highly polished product in a timely manner.

## 1.7.2 The Asset Conditioning Pipeline

The data formats used by digital content creation (DCC) applications are rarely suitable for direct use in-game. There are two primary reasons for this.

1. The DCC app's in-memory model of the data is usually much more complex than what the game engine requires. For example, Maya stores a directed acyclic graph (DAG) of scene nodes, with a complex web of interconnections. It stores a history of all the edits that have been performed on the file. It represents the position, orientation and scale of every object in the scene as a full hierarchy of 3D transformations, decomposed into translation, rotation, scale and shear components. A game engine typically only needs a tiny fraction of this information in order to render the model in-game.
2. The DCC application's file format is often too slow to read at runtime, and in some cases it is a closed proprietary format.

Therefore, the data produced by a DCC app is usually exported to a more accessible standardized format, or a custom file format, for use in-game.

Once data has been exported from the DCC app, it often must be further processed before being sent to the game engine. And if a game studio is shipping its game on more than one platform, the intermediate files might be processed differently for each target platform. For example, 3D mesh data might be exported to an intermediate format, such as XML, JSON or a simple binary format. Then it might be processed to combine meshes that use the same material, or split up meshes that are too large for the engine to digest. The mesh data might then be organized and packed into a memory image suitable for loading on a specific hardware platform.

The pipeline from DCC app to game engine is sometimes called the *asset conditioning pipeline* (ACP). Every game engine has this in some form.

### 1.7.2.1 3D Model/Mesh Data

The visible geometry you see in a game is typically constructed from triangle meshes. Some older games also make use of volumetric geometry known as *brushes*. We'll discuss each type of geometric data briefly below. For an in-depth discussion of the techniques used to describe and render 3D geometry, see Chapter 11.

#### *3D Models (Meshes)*

A mesh is a complex shape composed of triangles and vertices. Renderable geometry can also be constructed from quads or higher-order subdivision

surfaces. But on today’s graphics hardware, which is almost exclusively geared toward rendering rasterized triangles, all shapes must eventually be translated into triangles prior to rendering.

A mesh typically has one or more *materials* applied to it in order to define visual surface properties (color, reflectivity, bumpiness, diffuse texture, etc.). In this book, I will use the term “mesh” to refer to a single renderable shape, and “model” to refer to a composite object that may contain multiple meshes, plus animation data and other metadata for use by the game.

Meshes are typically created in a 3D modeling package such as 3ds Max, Maya or SoftImage. A powerful and popular tool by Pixologic called ZBrush allows ultra high-resolution meshes to be built in a very intuitive way and then down-converted into a lower-resolution model with normal maps to approximate the high-frequency detail.

Exporters must be written to extract the data from the digital content creation (DCC) tool (Maya, Max, etc.) and store it on disk in a form that is digestible by the engine. The DCC apps provide a host of standard or semi-standard export formats, although none are perfectly suited for game development (with the possible exception of COLLADA). Therefore, game teams often create custom file formats and custom exporters to go with them.

### *Brush Geometry*

Brush geometry is defined as a collection of convex hulls, each of which is defined by multiple planes. Brushes are typically created and edited directly in the game world editor. This is essentially an “old school” approach to creating renderable geometry, but it is still used in some engines.

Pros:

- fast and easy to create;
- accessible to game designers—often used to “block out” a game level for prototyping purposes;
- can serve both as collision volumes and as renderable geometry.

Cons:

- low-resolution;
- difficult to create complex shapes;
- cannot support articulated objects or animated characters.

#### 1.7.2.2 Skeletal Animation Data

A *skeletal mesh* is a special kind of mesh that is bound to a skeletal hierarchy for the purposes of articulated animation. Such a mesh is sometimes called a

*skin* because it forms the skin that surrounds the invisible underlying skeleton. Each vertex of a skeletal mesh contains a list of indices indicating to which joint(s) in the skeleton it is bound. A vertex usually also includes a set of joint weights, specifying the amount of influence each joint has on the vertex.

In order to render a skeletal mesh, the game engine requires three distinct kinds of data:

1. the mesh itself,
2. the skeletal hierarchy (joint names, parent-child relationships and the base pose the skeleton was in when it was originally bound to the mesh), and
3. one or more animation clips, which specify how the joints should move over time.

The mesh and skeleton are often exported from the DCC application as a single data file. However, if multiple meshes are bound to a single skeleton, then it is better to export the skeleton as a distinct file. The animations are usually exported individually, allowing only those animations which are in use to be loaded into memory at any given time. However, some game engines allow a bank of animations to be exported as a single file, and some even lump the mesh, skeleton and animations into one monolithic file.

An unoptimized skeletal animation is defined by a stream of  $4 \times 3$  matrix samples, taken at a frequency of at least 30 frames per second, for each of the joints in a skeleton (of which there can be 500 or more for a realistic humanoid character). Thus, animation data is inherently memory-intensive. For this reason, animation data is almost always stored in a highly compressed format. Compression schemes vary from engine to engine, and some are proprietary. There is no one standardized format for game-ready animation data.

### 1.7.2.3 Audio Data

Audio clips are usually exported from Sound Forge or some other audio production tool in a variety of formats and at a number of different data sampling rates. Audio files may be in mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1 or other multi-channel configurations. Wave files (.wav) are common, but other file formats such as PlayStation ADPCM files (.vag) are also commonplace. Audio clips are often organized into banks for the purposes of organization, easy loading into the engine, and streaming.

#### 1.7.2.4 Particle Systems Data

Modern games make use of complex particle effects. These are authored by artists who specialize in the creation of visual effects. Third-party tools, such as Houdini, permit film-quality effects to be authored; however, most game engines are not capable of rendering the full gamut of effects that can be created with Houdini. For this reason, many game companies create a custom particle effect editing tool, which exposes only the effects that the engine actually supports. A custom tool might also let the artist see the effect exactly as it will appear in-game.

#### 1.7.3 The World Editor

The game world is where everything in a game engine comes together. To my knowledge, there are no commercially available game world editors (i.e., the game world equivalent of Maya or Max). However, a number of commercially available game engines provide good world editors:

- Some variant of the *Radiant* game editor is used by most game engines based on Quake technology.
- The *Half-Life 2* Source engine provides a world editor called *Hammer*.
- *UnrealEd* is the Unreal Engine's world editor. This powerful tool also serves as the asset manager for all data types that the engine can consume.
- *Sandbox* is the world editor in CRYENGINE.

Writing a good world editor is difficult, but it is an extremely important part of any good game engine.

#### 1.7.4 The Resource Database

Game engines deal with a wide range of asset types, from renderable geometry to materials and textures to animation data to audio. These assets are defined in part by the raw data produced by the artists when they use a tool like Maya, Photoshop or SoundForge. However, every asset also carries with it a great deal of *metadata*. For example, when an animator authors an animation clip in Maya, the metadata provides the asset conditioning pipeline, and ultimately the game engine, with the following information:

- A unique id that identifies the animation clip at runtime.
- The name and directory path of the source Maya (.ma or .mb) file.
- The *frame range*—on which frame the animation begins and ends.
- Whether or not the animation is intended to loop.

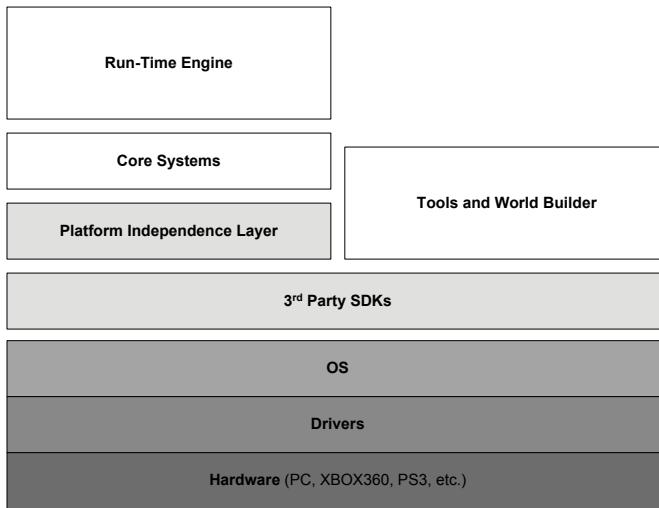


Figure 1.34. Stand-alone tools architecture.

- The animator's choice of compression technique and level. (Some assets can be highly compressed without noticeably degrading their quality, while others require less or no compression in order to look right in-game.)

Every game engine requires some kind of database to manage all of the metadata associated with the game's assets. This database might be implemented using an honest-to-goodness relational database such as MySQL or Oracle, or it might be implemented as a collection of text files, managed by a revision control system such as Subversion, Perforce or Git. We'll call this metadata the *resource database* in this book.

No matter in what format the resource database is stored and managed, some kind of user interface must be provided to allow users to author and edit the data. At Naughty Dog, we wrote a custom GUI in C# called Builder for this purpose. For more information on Builder and a few other resource database user interfaces, see Section 7.2.1.3.

## 1.7.5 Some Approaches to Tool Architecture

A game engine's tool suite may be architected in any number of ways. Some tools might be stand-alone pieces of software, as shown in Figure 1.34. Some tools may be built on top of some of the lower layers used by the runtime engine, as Figure 1.35 illustrates. Some tools might be built into the game itself.

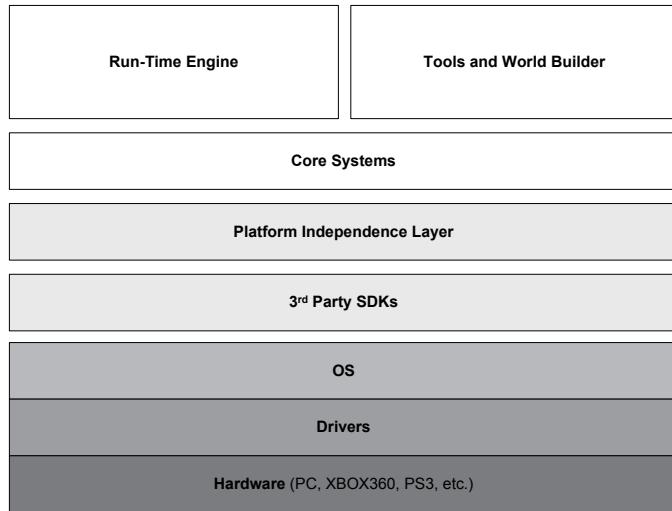


Figure I.35. Tools built on a framework shared with the game.

For example, Quake- and Unreal-based games both boast an in-game console that permits developers and “modders” to type debugging and configuration commands while running the game. Finally, web-based user interfaces are becoming more and more popular for certain kinds of tools.

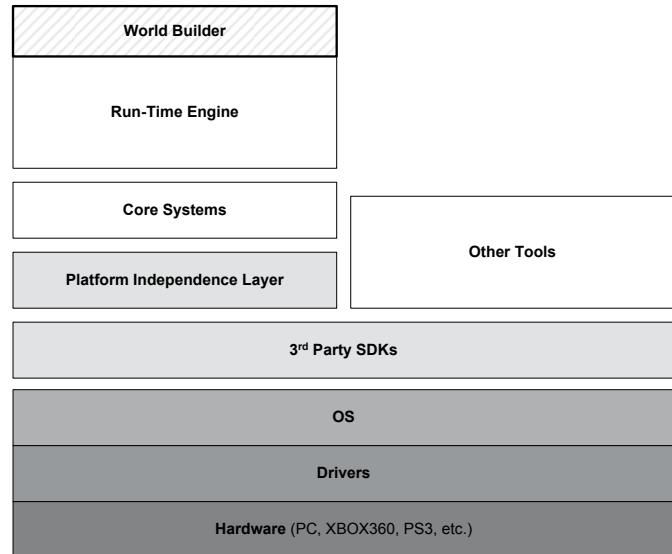


Figure I.36. Unreal Engine's tool architecture.

As an interesting and unique example, Unreal's world editor and asset manager, UnrealEd, is built right into the runtime game engine. To run the editor, you run your game with a command-line argument of "editor." This unique architectural style is depicted in Figure 1.36. It permits the tools to have total access to the full range of data structures used by the engine and avoids a common problem of having to have two representations of every data structure—one for the runtime engine and one for the tools. It also means that running the game from within the editor is very fast (because the game is actually already running). Live in-game editing, a feature that is normally very tricky to implement, can be developed relatively easily when the editor is a part of the game. However, an in-engine editor design like this does have its share of problems. For example, when the engine is crashing, the tools become unusable as well. Hence a tight coupling between engine and asset creation tools can tend to slow down production.

### 1.7.5.1 Web-Based User Interfaces

Web-based user interfaces are quickly becoming the norm for certain kinds of game development tools. At Naughty Dog, we use a number of web-based UIs. Naughty Dog's localization tool serves as the front-end portal into our localization database. *Tasker* is the web-based interface used by all Naughty Dog employees to create, manage, schedule, communicate and collaborate on game development tasks during production. A web-based interface known as *Connector* also serves as our window into the various streams of debugging information that are emitted by the game engine at runtime. The game spits out its debug text into various named channels, each associated with a different engine system (animation, rendering, AI, sound, etc.) These data streams are collected by a lightweight Redis database. The browser-based Connector interface allows users to view and filter this information in a convenient way.

Web-based UIs offer a number of advantages over stand-alone GUI applications. For one thing, web apps are typically easier and faster to develop and maintain than a stand-alone app written in a language like Java, C# or C++. Web apps require no special installation—all the user needs is a compatible web browser. Updates to a web-based interface can be pushed out to the users without the need for an installation step—they need only refresh or restart their browser to receive the update. Web interfaces also force us to design our tools using a client-server architecture. This opens up the possibility of distributing our tools to a wider audience. For example, Naughty Dog's localization tool is available directly to outsourcing partners around the globe

who provide language translation services to us. Stand-alone tools still have their place of course, especially when specialized GUIs such as 3D visualization are required. But if your tool only needs to present the user with editable forms and tabular data, a web-based tool may be your best bet.

# 2

## Tools of the Trade

Before we embark on our journey across the fascinating landscape of game engine architecture, it is important that we equip ourselves with some basic tools and provisions. In the next two chapters, we will review the software engineering concepts and practices that we will need during our voyage. In Chapter 2, we'll explore the tools used by the majority of professional game engineers. Then in Chapter 3, we'll round out our preparations by reviewing some key topics in the realms of object-oriented programming, design patterns and large-scale C++ programming.

Game development is one of the most demanding and broad areas of software engineering, so believe me, we'll want to be well equipped if we are to safely navigate the sometimes-treacherous terrain we'll be covering. For some readers, the contents of this chapter and the next will be very familiar. However, I encourage you not to skip these chapters entirely. I hope that they will serve as a pleasant refresher; and who knows, you might even pick up a new trick or two.

### 2.1 Version Control

A *version control* system is a tool that permits multiple users to work on a group of files collectively. It maintains a history of each file so that changes

can be tracked and reverted if necessary. It permits multiple users to modify files—even the same file—simultaneously, without everyone stomping on each other’s work. Version control gets its name from its ability to track the version history of files. It is sometimes called *source control*, because it is primarily used by computer programmers to manage their source code. However, version control can be used for other kinds of files as well. Version control systems are usually best at managing text files, for reasons we will discover below. However, many game studios use a single version control system to manage both source code files (which are text) and game assets like textures, 3D meshes, animations and audio files (which are usually binary).

### 2.1.1 Why Use Version Control?

Version control is crucial whenever software is developed by a team of multiple engineers. Version control

- provides a central repository from which engineers can share source code;
- keeps a history of the changes made to each source file;
- provides mechanisms allowing specific versions of the code base to be tagged and later retrieved; and
- permits versions of the code to be branched off from the main development line, a feature often used to produce demos or make patches to older versions of the software.

A source control system can be useful even on a single-engineer project. Although its multiuser capabilities won’t be relevant, its other abilities, such as maintaining a history of changes, tagging versions, creating branches for demos and patches, tracking bugs, etc., are still invaluable.

### 2.1.2 Common Version Control Systems

Here are the most common source control systems you’ll probably encounter during your career as a game engineer.

- *SCCS and RCS*. The Source Code Control System (SCCS) and the Revision Control System (RCS) are two of the oldest version control systems. Both employ a command-line interface. They are prevalent primarily on UNIX platforms.
- *CVS*. The Concurrent Version System (CVS) is a heavy-duty professional-grade command-line-based source control system, originally built on top

of RCS (but now implemented as a stand-alone tool). CVS is prevalent on UNIX systems but is also available on other development platforms such as Microsoft Windows. It is open source and licensed under the Gnu General Public License (GPL). CVSNT (also known as WinCVS) is a native Windows implementation that is based on, and compatible with, CVS.

- *Subversion*. Subversion is an open source version control system aimed at replacing and improving upon CVS. Because it is open source and hence free, it is a great choice for individual projects, student projects and small studios.
- *Git*. This is an open source revision control system that has been used for many venerable projects, including the Linux kernel. In the git development model, the programmer makes changes to files and commits the changes to a branch. The programmer can then merge his changes into any other code branch quickly and easily, because git “knows” how to rewind a sequence of diffs and reapply them onto a new base revision—a process git calls *rebasing*. The net result is a revision control system that is highly efficient and fast when dealing with multiple code branches. Git is a distributed version control system; individual programmers can work locally much of the time, yet they can merge their changes into a shared codebase easily. It’s also very easy to use on a one-person software project, because there’s zero server set-up to worry about. More information on git can be found at <http://git-scm.com/>.
- *Perforce*. Perforce is a professional-grade source control system, with both text-based and GUI interfaces. One of Perforce’s claims to fame is its concept of *change lists*. A change list is a collection of source files that have been modified as a logical unit. Change lists are checked into the repository atomically—either the entire change list is submitted, or none of it is. Perforce is used by many game companies, including *Naughty Dog* and *Electronic Arts*.
- *NxN Alienbrain*. Alienbrain is a powerful and feature-rich source control system designed explicitly for the game industry. Its biggest claim to fame is its support for very large databases containing both text source code files and binary game art assets, with a customizable user interface that can be targeted at specific disciplines such as artists, producers or programmers.
- *ClearCase*. Rational ClearCase is a professional-grade source control system aimed at very large-scale software projects. It is powerful and employs a unique user interface that extends the functionality of Windows

Explorer. I haven't seen ClearCase used much in the game industry, perhaps because it is one of the more expensive version control systems.

- *Microsoft Visual SourceSafe.* SourceSafe is a lightweight source control package that has been used successfully on some game projects.

### 2.1.3 Overview of Subversion and TortoiseSVN

I have chosen to highlight Subversion in this book for a few reasons. First off, it's free, which is always nice. It works well and is reliable, in my experience. A Subversion central repository is quite easy to set up, and as we'll see, there are already a number of free repository servers out there if you don't want to go to the trouble of setting one up yourself. There are also a number of good Windows and Mac Subversion clients, such as the freely available TortoiseSVN for Windows. So while Subversion may not be the best choice for a large commercial project (I personally prefer Perforce or git for that purpose), I find it perfectly suited to small personal and educational projects. Let's take a look at how to set up and use Subversion on a Microsoft Windows PC development platform. As we do so, we'll review core concepts that apply to virtually any version control system.

Subversion, like most other version control systems, employs a client-server architecture. The server manages a central repository, in which a version-controlled directory hierarchy is stored. Clients connect to the server and request operations, such as checking out the latest version of the directory tree, committing new changes to one or more files, tagging revisions, branching the repository and so on. We won't discuss setting up a server here; we'll assume you have a server, and instead we will focus on setting up and using the client. You can learn how to set up a Subversion server by reading Chapter 6 of [43]. However, you probably will never need to do so, because you can always find free Subversion servers. For example, HelixTeamHub provides Subversion code hosting at <http://info.perforce.com/try-perforce-helix-teamhub-free.html> that's free for projects of 5 users or fewer and up to 1 GB of storage. Beanstalk is another good hosting service, but they do charge a nominal monthly fee.

### 2.1.4 Setting up a Code Repository

The easiest way to get started with Subversion is to visit the website of HelixTeamHub or a similar SVN hosting service, and set up a Subversion repository. Create an account and you're off to the races. Most hosting sites offer easy-to-follow instructions.

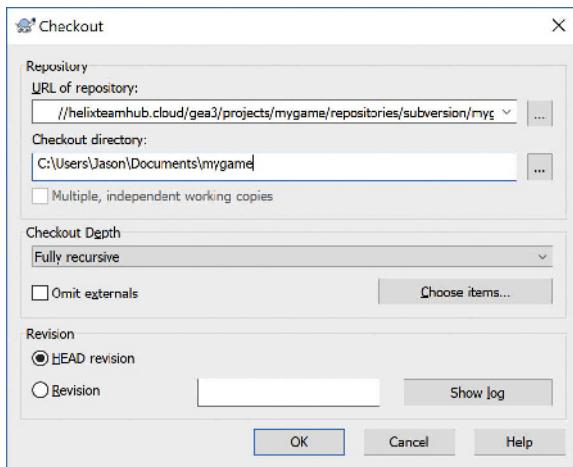


Figure 2.1. TortoiseSVN initial check-out dialog.

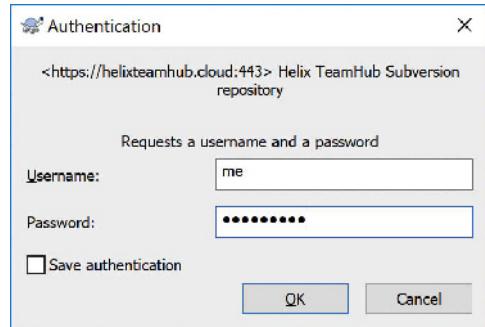


Figure 2.2. TortoiseSVN user authentication dialog.

Once you've created your repository, you can typically administer it on the hosting service's website. You can add and remove users, control options and perform a wealth of advanced tasks. But all you really need to do next is set up a Subversion client and start using your repository.

### 2.1.5 Installing TortoiseSVN

TortoiseSVN is a popular front end for Subversion. It extends the functionality of the Microsoft Windows Explorer via a convenient right-click menu and overlay icons to show you the status of your version-controlled files and folders.

To get TortoiseSVN, visit <http://tortoisessvn.tigris.org/>. Download the latest version from the download page. Install it by double-clicking the .msi file that you've downloaded and following the installation wizard's instructions.

Once TortoiseSVN is installed, you can go to any folder in Windows Explorer and right-click—TortoiseSVN's menu extensions should now be visible. To connect to an existing code repository (such as one you created on Helix-TeamHub), create a folder on your local hard disk and then right-click and select "SVN Checkout...." The dialog shown in Figure 2.1 will appear. In the "URL of repository" field, enter your repository's URL. If you are using Helix-TeamHub, it would be `https://helixteamhub.cloud/mr3/projects/myprojectname/repositories/subversion/myrepository`, where `myprojectname` is whatever you named your project when you first created it, and `myrepository` is the name of your SVN code repository.

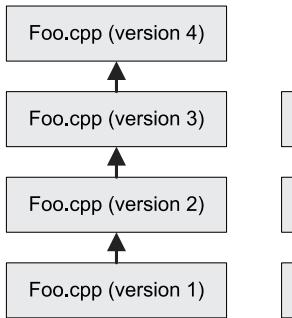


Figure 2.3. File version histories.

You should now see the dialog shown in Figure 2.2. Enter your user name and password; checking the “Save authentication” option on this dialog allows you to use your repository without ever having to log in again. Only select this option if you are working on your own personal machine—never on a machine that is shared by many users.

Once you’ve authenticated your user name, TortoiseSVN will download (“check out”) the entire contents of your repository to your local disk. If you have just set up your repository, this will be ...nothing! The folder you created will still be empty. But now it is connected to your Subversion repository on HelixTeamHub (or wherever your server is located). If you refresh your Windows Explorer window (hit F5), you should now see a little green and white checkmark on your folder. This icon indicates that the folder is connected to a Subversion repository via TortoiseSVN and that the local copy of the repository is up to date.

## 2.1.6 File Versions, Updating and Committing

As we’ve seen, one of the key purposes of any source control system like Subversion is to allow multiple programmers to work on a single software code base by maintaining a central repository or “master” version of all the source code on a server. The server maintains a version history for each file, as shown in Figure 2.3. This feature is crucial to large-scale multiprogrammer software development. For example, if someone makes a mistake and checks in code that “breaks the build,” you can easily go back in time to undo those changes (and check the log to see who the culprit was!). You can also grab a snapshot of the code as it existed at any point in time, allowing you to work with, demonstrate or patch previous versions of the software.

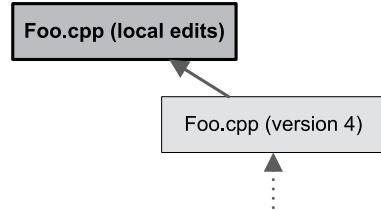


Figure 2.4. Editing the local copy of a version-controlled file.

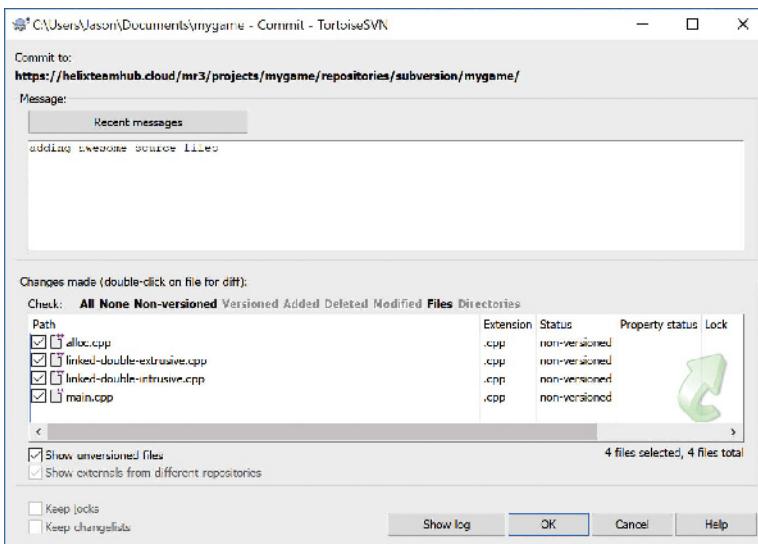


Figure 2.5. TortoiseSVN Commit dialog.

Each programmer gets a local copy of the code on his or her machine. In the case of TortoiseSVN, you obtain your initial working copy by “checking out” the repository, as described above. Periodically you should update your local copy to reflect any changes that may have been made by other programmers. You do this by right-clicking on a folder and selecting “SVN Update” from the pop-up menu.

You can work on your local copy of the code base without affecting the other programmers on the team (Figure 2.4). When you are ready to share your changes with everyone else, you *commit* your changes to the repository (also known as *submitting* or *checking in*). You do this by right-clicking on the folder you want to commit and selecting “SVN Commit...” from the pop-up menu. You will get a dialog like the one shown in Figure 2.5, asking you to confirm the changes.

During a commit operation, Subversion generates a *diff* between your local version of each file and the latest version of that same file in the repository. The term “diff” means difference, and it is typically produced by performing a line-by-line comparison of the two versions of the file. You can double-click on any file in the TortoiseSVN Commit dialog (Figure 2.5) to see the diffs between your version and the latest version on the server (i.e., the changes you made). Files that have changed (i.e., any files that “have diffs”) are committed. This replaces the latest version in the repository with your local version, adding a

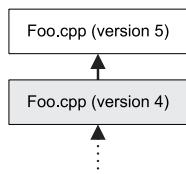


Figure 2.6. Committing local edits to the repository.

new entry to the file’s version history. Any files that have not changed (i.e., your local copy is identical to the latest version in the repository) are ignored by default during a commit. An example commit operation is shown in Figure 2.6.

If you created any new files prior to the commit, they will be listed as “non-versioned” in the Commit dialog. You can check the little check boxes beside them in order to add them to the repository. Any files that you deleted locally will likewise show up as “missing”—if you check their check boxes, they will be deleted from the repository. You can also type a comment in the Commit dialog. This comment is added to the repository’s history log, so that you and others on your team will know why these files were checked in.

### 2.1.7 Multiple Check-Out, Branching and Merging

Some version control systems require *exclusive check-out*. This means that you must first indicate your intentions to modify a file by *checking it out* and *locking* it. The file(s) that are checked out to you are writable on your local disk and cannot be checked out by anyone else. All other files in the repository are read-only on your local disk. Once you’re done editing the file, you can check it in, which releases the lock and commits the changes to the repository for everyone else to see. The process of exclusively locking files for editing ensures that no two people can edit the same file simultaneously.

Subversion, CVS, Perforce and many other high-quality version control systems also permit *multiple check-out*, i.e., you can edit a file while someone else is editing that same file. Whichever user’s changes are committed first become the latest version of the file in the repository. Any subsequent commits by other users require that programmer to merge his or her changes with the changes made by the programmer(s) who committed previously.

Because more than one set of changes (diffs) have been made to the same file, the version control system must *merge* the changes in order to produce a final version of the file. This is often not a big deal, and in fact many conflicts can be resolved automatically by the version control system. For example, if you changed function `f()` and another programmer changed function `g()`, then your edits would have been to a different range of lines in the file than those of the other programmer. In this case, the merge between your changes and his or her changes will usually resolve automatically without any conflicts. However, if you were both making changes to the same function `f()`, then the second programmer to commit his or her changes will need to do a *three-way merge* (see Figure 2.7).

For three-way merges to work, the version control server has to be smart

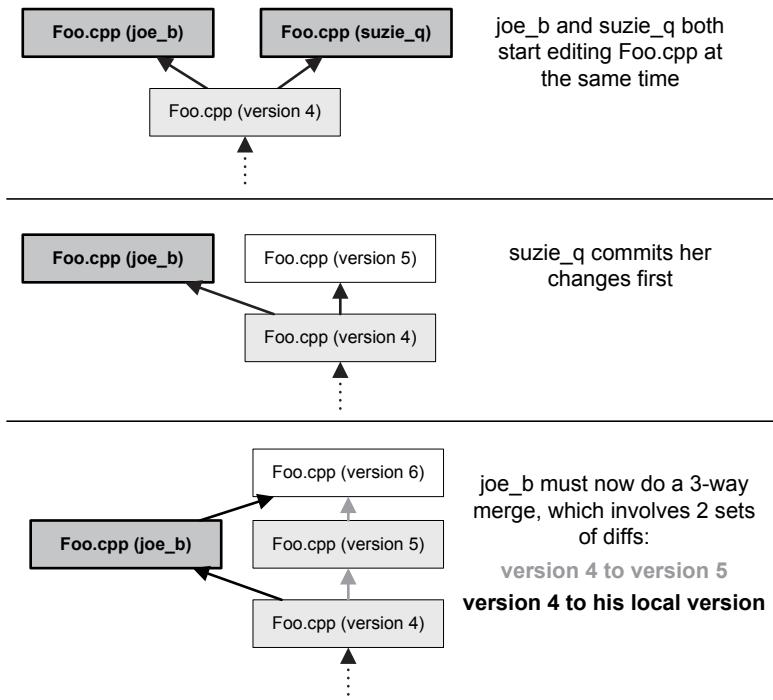


Figure 2.7. Three-way merge due to local edits by two different users.

enough to keep track of which version of each file you currently have on your local disk. That way, when you merge the files, the system will know which version is the base version (the common ancestor, such as version 4 in Figure 2.7).

Subversion permits multiple check-out, and in fact it doesn't require you to check out files explicitly at all. You simply start editing the files locally—all files are writable on your local disk at all times. (By the way, this is one reason that Subversion doesn't scale well to large projects, in my opinion. To determine which files you have changed, Subversion must search the entire tree of source files, which can be slow. Version control systems like Perforce, which explicitly keep track of which files you have modified, are usually easier to work with when dealing with large amounts of code. But for small projects, Subversion's approach works just fine.)

When you perform a commit operation by right-clicking on any folder and selecting “SVN Commit...” from the pop-up menu, you may be prompted to *merge* your changes with changes made by someone else. But if no one has changed the file since you last updated your local copy, then your changes

will be committed without any further action on your part. This is a very convenient feature, but it can also be dangerous. It's a good idea to always check your commits carefully to be sure you aren't committing any files that you didn't intend to modify. When TortoiseSVN displays its Commit Files dialog, you can double-click on an individual file in order to see the diffs you made prior to hitting the "OK" button.

### 2.1.8 Deleting Files

When a file is deleted from the repository, it's not really gone. The file still exists in the repository, but its latest version is simply marked "deleted" so that users will no longer see the file in their local directory trees. You can still see and access previous versions of a deleted file by right-clicking on the folder in which the file was contained and selecting "Show log" from the TortoiseSVN menu.

You can undelete a deleted file by updating your local directory to the version immediately before the version in which the file was marked deleted. Then simply commit the file again. This replaces the latest deleted version of the file with the version just prior to the deletion, effectively undeleting the file.

## 2.2 Compilers, Linkers and IDEs

Compiled languages, such as C++, require a *compiler* and *linker* in order to transform source code into an executable program. There are many compilers/linkers available for C++, but for the Microsoft Windows platform, the most commonly used package is probably Microsoft Visual Studio. The fully-featured Professional and Enterprise Editions of the product can be purchased online from the Microsoft store, and its lighter-weight cousin Visual Studio Community Edition (previously known as Visual Studio Express) is available for free download at <https://www.visualstudio.com/downloads>. Documentation on Visual Studio and the standard C and C++ libraries is available online at the Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) site (<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us>).

Visual Studio is more than just a compiler and linker. It is an *integrated development environment* (IDE), including a slick and fully featured *text editor* for source code and a powerful source-level and machine-level *debugger*. In this book, our primary focus is the Windows platform, so we'll investigate Visual Studio in some depth. Much of what you learn below will be applicable to other compilers, linkers and debuggers such as LLVM/Clang, gcc/gdb, and

the Intel C/C++ compiler. So even if you’re not planning on ever using Visual Studio, I suggest you read this section carefully. You’ll find all sorts of useful tips on using compilers, linkers and debuggers in general.

### 2.2.1 Source Files, Headers and Translation Units

A program written in C++ is comprised of *source files*. These typically have a .c, .cc, .cxx or .cpp extension, and they contain the bulk of your program’s source code. Source files are technically known as *translation units*, because the compiler *translates* one source file at a time from C++ into machine code.

A special kind of source file, known as a *header file*, is often used in order to share information, such as type declarations and function prototypes, between translation units. Header files are not seen by the compiler. Instead, the C++ *preprocessor* replaces each `#include` statement with the contents of the corresponding header file prior to sending the translation unit to the compiler. This is a subtle but very important distinction to make. Header files exist as distinct files from the point of view of the programmer—but thanks to the preprocessor’s header file expansion, all the compiler ever sees are translation units.

### 2.2.2 Libraries, Executables and Dynamic Link Libraries

When a translation unit is compiled, the resulting machine code is placed in an object file (files with a .obj extension under Windows or .o under UNIX-based operating systems). The machine code in an object file is:

- *relocatable*, meaning that the memory addresses at which the code resides have not yet been determined, and
- *unlinked*, meaning that any external references to functions and global data that are defined outside the translation unit have not yet been resolved.

Object files can be collected into groups called *libraries*. A library is simply an archive, much like a ZIP or tar file, containing zero or more object files. Libraries exist merely as a convenience, permitting a large number of object files to be collected into a single easy-to-use file.

Object files and libraries are *linked* into an executable by the linker. The executable file contains fully resolved machine code that can be loaded and run by the operating system. The linker’s jobs are:

- to calculate the final relative addresses of all the machine code, as it will appear in memory when the program is run, and
- to ensure that all external references to functions and global data made by each translation unit (object file) are properly resolved.

It's important to remember that the machine code in an executable file is still relocatable, meaning that the addresses of all instructions and data in the file are still *relative* to an arbitrary base address, not absolute. The final absolute base address of the program is not known until the program is actually loaded into memory, just prior to running it.

A *dynamic link library* (DLL) is a special kind of library that acts like a hybrid between a regular static library and an executable. The DLL acts like a library, because it contains functions that can be called by any number of different executables. However, a DLL also acts like an executable, because it can be loaded by the operating system independently, and it contains some start-up and shut-down code that runs much the way the `main()` function in a C++ executable does.

The executables that use a DLL contain *partially linked* machine code. Most of the function and data references are fully resolved within the final executable, but any references to external functions or data that exist in a DLL remain unlinked. When the executable is run, the operating system resolves the addresses of all unlinked functions by locating the appropriate DLLs, loading them into memory if they are not already loaded, and patching in the necessary memory addresses. Dynamically linked libraries are a very useful operating system feature, because individual DLLs can be updated without changing the executable(s) that use them.

### 2.2.3 Projects and Solutions

Now that we understand the difference between libraries, executables and dynamic link libraries (DLLs), let's see how to create them. In Visual Studio, a *project* is a collection of *source files* which, when compiled, produce a library, an executable or a DLL. In all versions of Visual Studio since VS 2013, projects are stored in project files with a `.vcxproj` extension. These files are in XML format, so they are reasonably easy for a human to read and even edit by hand if necessary.

All versions of Visual Studio since version 7 (Visual Studio 2003) employ *solution files* (files with a `.sln` extension) as a means of containing and managing collections of projects. A solution is a collection of dependent and/or independent projects intended to build one or more libraries, executables and/or DLLs. In the Visual Studio graphical user interface, the *Solution Explorer* is

usually displayed along the right or left side of the main window, as shown in Figure 2.8.

The Solution Explorer is a tree view. The solution itself is at the root, with the projects as its immediate children. Source files and headers are shown as children of each project. A project can contain any number of user-defined folders, nested to any depth. Folders are for organizational purposes only and have nothing to do with the folder structure in which the files may reside on-disk. However, it is common practice to mimic the on-disk folder structure when setting up a project's folders.

## 2.2.4 Build Configurations

The C/C++ preprocessor, compiler and linker offer a wide variety of options to control how your code will be built. These options are normally specified on the command line when the compiler is run. For example, a typical command to build a single translation unit with the Microsoft compiler might look like this:

```
> cl /c foo.cpp /Fo foo.obj /Wall /Od /Zi
```

This tells the compiler/linker to compile but not link (/c) the translation unit named foo.cpp, output the result to an object file named foo.obj (/Fo foo.obj), turn on all warnings (/Wall), turn off all optimizations (/Od) and generate debugging information (/Zi). A roughly equivalent command line for LLVM/Clang would look something like this:

```
> clang --std=c++14 foo.cpp -o foo.o --Wall -O0 -g
```

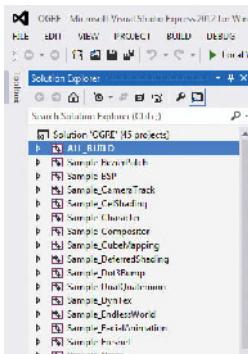


Figure 2.8. The VisualStudio Solution Explorer window.

Modern compilers provide so many options that it would be impractical and error prone to specify all of them every time you build your code. That's where *build configurations* come in. A build configuration is really just a collection of preprocessor, compiler and linker options associated with a particular project in your solution. You can define any number of build configurations, name them whatever you want, and configure the preprocessor, compiler and linker options differently in each configuration. By default, the same options are applied to every translation unit in the project, although you can override the global project settings on an individual translation unit basis. (I recommend avoiding this if at all possible, because it becomes difficult to tell which .cpp files have custom settings and which do not.)

When you create a new project/solution in Visual Studio, by default it creates two build configurations named "Debug" and "Release." The release build is intended for the final version of your software that you'll ship (release) to customers, while the debug build is for development purposes. A debug build runs more slowly than a non-debug build, but it provides the programmer with invaluable information for developing and debugging the program.

Professional software developers often set up more than two build configurations for their software. To understand why, we'll need to understand how local (compile-time) and global (link-time) optimizations work—we'll discuss these kinds of optimizations in Section 2.2.4.2. For now, let's drop the somewhat confusing term "release build" and stick with the terms "debug build" (meaning local and global optimizations are disabled) and "non-debug build" (meaning local and/or global optimizations are enabled).

#### 2.2.4.1 Common Build Options

This section lists some of the most common options you'll want to control via build configurations for a game engine project.

##### *Preprocessor Settings*

The C++ preprocessor handles the expansion of `#included` files and the definition and substitution of `#defined` macros. One extremely powerful feature of all modern C++ preprocessors is the ability to define preprocessor macros via command-line options (and hence via build configurations). Macros defined in this way act as though they had been written into your source code with a `#define` statement. For most compilers, the command line option for this is `-D` or `/D`, and any number of these directives can be used.

This feature allows you to communicate various build options to your code,

without having to modify the source code itself. As a ubiquitous example, the symbol `_DEBUG` is always defined for a debug build, while in non-debug builds, the symbol `NDEBUG` is defined instead. The source code can check these flags and in effect “know” whether it is being built in debug or non-debug mode. This is known as *conditional compilation*. For example,

```
void f()
{
#ifndef _DEBUG
    printf("Calling function f()\n");
#endif
    // ...
}
```

The compiler is also free to introduce “magic” preprocessor macros into your code, based on its knowledge of the compilation environment and target platform. For example, the macro `__cplusplus` is defined by most C/C++ compilers when compiling a C++ file. This allows code to be written that automatically adapts to being compiled for C or C++.

As another example, every compiler identifies itself to the source code via a “magic” preprocessor macro. When compiling code under the Microsoft compiler, the macro `_MSC_VER` is defined; when compiling under the GNU compiler (gcc), the macro `__GNUC__` is defined instead and so on for the other compilers. The target platform on which the code will be run is likewise identified via macros. For example, when building for a 32-bit Windows machine, the symbol `_WIN32` is always defined. These key features permit cross-platform code to be written, because they allow your code to “know” what compiler is compiling it and on which target platform it is destined to be run.

### *Compiler Settings*

One of the most common compiler options controls whether or not the compiler should include *debugging information* with the object files it produces. This information is used by debuggers to step through your code, display the values of variables and so on. Debugging information makes your executables larger on disk and also opens the door for hackers to reverse-engineer your code, so it is always stripped from the final shipping version of your executable. However, during development, debugging information is invaluable and should always be included in your builds.

The compiler can also be told whether or not to expand *inline functions*. When inline function expansion is turned off, every inline function appears only once in memory, at a distinct address. This makes the task of tracing

through the code in the debugger much simpler, but obviously comes at the expense of the execution speed improvements normally achieved by inlining.

Inline function expansion is but one example of generalized code transformations known as *optimizations*. The aggressiveness with which the compiler attempts to optimize your code, and the kinds of optimizations its uses, can be controlled via compiler options. Optimizations have a tendency to reorder the statements in your code, and they also cause variables to be stripped out of the code altogether, or moved around, and can cause CPU registers to be reused for new purposes later in the same function. Optimized code usually confuses most debuggers, causing them to “lie” to you in various ways, and making it difficult or impossible to see what’s really going on. As a result, all optimizations are usually turned off in a debug build. This permits every variable and every line of code to be scrutinized as it was originally coded. But, of course, such code will run much more slowly than its fully optimized counterpart.

### *Linker Settings*

The linker also exposes a number of options. You can control what type of output file to produce—an executable or a DLL. You can also specify which external libraries should be linked into your executable, and which directory paths to search in order to find them. A common practice is to link with debug libraries when building a debug executable and with optimized libraries when building in non-debug mode.

Linker options also control things like stack size, the preferred base address of your program in memory, what type of machine the code will run on (for machine-specific optimizations), whether or not global (link-time) optimizations are enabled, and some other minutia with which we will not concern ourselves here.

#### 2.2.4.2 Local and Global Optimizations

An optimizing compiler is one that can automatically optimize the machine code it generates. All of the C/C++ compilers commonly used today are optimizing compilers. These include Microsoft Visual Studio, gcc, LLVM/Clang and the Intel C/C++ compiler.

Optimizations can come in two basic forms:

- local optimizations and
- global optimizations,

although other kinds of optimizations are possible (e.g., *peep-hole optimizations*, which enable the optimizer to make platform- or CPU-specific optimizations).

Local optimizations operate only on small chunks of code known as *basic blocks*. Roughly speaking, a basic block is a sequence of assembly language instructions that doesn't involve a branch. Local optimizations include things like:

- *algebraic simplification*,
- *operator strength reduction* (e.g., converting  $x / 2$  into  $x \gg 1$  because the shift operator is “lower strength” and therefore less expensive than the integer division operator),
- *code inlining*,
- *constant folding* (recognizing expressions that are constant at compile time and replacing such expressions with their known value),
- *constant propagation* (replacing all instances of a variable whose value turns out to be constant with the literal constant itself),
- *loop unrolling* (e.g., converting a loop that always iterates exactly four times with four copies of the code within the loop, in order to eliminate conditional branching),
- *dead code elimination* (removal of code that has no effect, such as removing the assignment expression  $x = 5$ ; if it is immediately followed by another assignment to  $x$  like  $x = y + 1$ ), and
- *instruction reordering* (in order to minimize CPU pipeline stalls).

Global optimizations operate beyond the scope of basic code blocks—they take the whole control flow graph of a program into account. An example of this kind of optimization would be *common sub-expression elimination*. Global optimizations ideally operate across translation unit boundaries, and hence are performed by the linker rather than the compiler. Aptly, optimizations performed by the linker are known as *link-time optimizations* (LTO).

Some modern compilers like LLVM/Clang support *profile-guided optimizations* (PGO). As the name implies, these optimizations use profiling information obtained from previous runs of your software to iteratively identify and optimize its most performance-critical code paths. PGO and LTO optimizations can produce an impressive performance boost, but they come with a cost. LTO optimizations greatly increase the amount of time required to link an executable. And PGO optimizations, being iterative in nature, require the software to be run (via the QA team or an automated test suite) in order to generate the profiling information that drives further optimizations.

Most compilers offer various options controlling how aggressive its optimization efforts will be. Optimizations can be disabled entirely (useful for debug builds, where debuggability is more important than performance), or increasing “levels” of optimizations can be applied up to some predetermined maximum. For example, optimizations for gcc, Clang and Visual C++ all range from `-O0` (meaning no optimizations are performed) to `-O3` (all optimizations enabled). Individual optimizations can be turned on or off as well, via other command line options.

#### 2.2.4.3 Typical Build Configurations

Game projects often have more than just two build configurations. Here are a few of the common configurations I’ve seen used in game development.

- *Debug*. A debug build is a very slow version of your program, with all optimizations turned off, all function inlining disabled, and full debugging information included. This build is used when testing brand new code and also to debug all but the most trivial problems that arise during development.
- *Development*. A development build (or “dev build”) is a faster version of your program, with most or all local optimizations enabled, but with debugging information and assertions still turned on. (See Section 3.2.3.3 for a discussion of assertions.) This allows you to see your game running at a speed representative of the final product, but it still gives you some opportunity to debug problems.
- *Ship*. A ship configuration is intended for building the final game that you will ship to your customers. It is sometimes called a “final” build or “disk” build. Unlike a development build, all debugging information is stripped out of a ship build, most or all assertions are compiled out, and optimizations are cranked all the way up, including global optimizations (LTO and PGO). A ship build is very tricky to debug, but it is the fastest and leanest of all build types.

#### *Hybrid Builds*

A hybrid build is a build configuration in which the majority of the translation units are built in development mode, but a small subset of them is built in debug mode. This permits the segment of code that is currently under scrutiny to be easily debugged, while the rest of the code continues to run at close to full speed.

With a text-based build system like `make`, it is quite easy to set up a hybrid build that permits users to specify the use of debug mode on a per-

translation-unit basis. In a nutshell, we define a make variable called something like `$HYBRID_SOURCES`, which lists the names of all translation units (`.cpp` files) that should be compiled in debug mode for our hybrid build. We set up build rules for compiling both debug and development versions of every translation unit, and arrange for the resulting object files (`.obj/.o`) to be placed into two different folders, one for debug and one for development. The final link rule is set up to link with the debug versions of the object files listed in `$HYBRID_SOURCES` and with the non-debug versions of all other object files. If we've set it up properly, make's dependency rules will take care of the rest.

Unfortunately, this is not so easy to do in Visual Studio, because its build configurations are designed to be applied on a per-project basis, not per-translation unit. The crux of the problem is that we cannot easily define a list of the translation units that we want to build in debug mode. One solution to this problem is to write a script (in Python or another suitable language) that automatically generates Visual Studio `.vcxproj` files, given a list of the `.cpp` files you want to be built in debug mode in your hybrid configuration. Another alternative that works if your source code is already organized into libraries is to set up a "Hybrid" build configuration at the solution level, which picks and chooses between debug and development builds on a per-project (and hence per-library) basis. This isn't as flexible as having control on a per-translation-unit basis, but it does work reasonably well if your libraries are sufficiently granular.

### *Build Configurations and Testability*

The more build configurations your project supports, the more difficult testing becomes. Although the differences between the various configurations may be slight, there's a finite probability that a critical bug may exist in one of them but not in the others. Therefore, each build configuration must be tested equally thoroughly. Most game studios do not formally test their debug builds, because the debug configuration is primarily intended for internal use during initial development of a feature and for the debugging of problems found in one of the other configurations. However, if your testers spend most of their time testing your development build configuration, then you cannot simply make a ship build of your game the night before Gold Master and expect it to have an identical bug profile to that of the development build. Practically speaking, the test team must test both your development and ship builds equally throughout alpha and beta to ensure that there aren't any nasty surprises lurking in your ship build. In terms of testability, there is a clear advantage to keeping your build configurations to a minimum, and in

fact some studios don't have a separate ship build for this reason—they simply ship their *development* build once it has been thoroughly tested (but with the debugging information stripped out).

#### 2.2.4.4 Project Configuration Tutorial

Right-clicking on any project in the Solution Explorer and selecting “Properties...” from the menu brings up the project’s “Property Pages” dialog. The tree view on the left shows various categories of settings. Of these, the four we will use most are:

- Configuration Properties/General,
- Configuration Properties/Debugging,
- Configuration Properties/C++, and
- Configuration Properties/Linker.

##### *Configurations* Drop-Down Combo Box

Notice the drop-down combo box labeled “Configuration:” at the top-left corner of the window. All of the properties displayed on these property pages apply separately to each build configuration. If you set a property for the debug configuration, this does not necessarily mean that the same setting exists for the other configuration(s).

If you click on the combo box to drop down the list, you'll find that you can select a single configuration or multiple configurations, including “All configurations.” As a rule of thumb, try to do most of your build configuration editing with “All configurations” selected. That way, you won't have to make the same edits multiple times, once for each configuration—and you don't risk setting things up incorrectly in one of the configurations by accident. However, be aware that some settings *need* to be different between the debug and development configurations. For example, function inlining and code optimization settings should, of course, be different between debug and development builds.

##### *General* Property Page

On the *General* property page, shown in Figure 2.9, the most useful fields are the following:

- *Output directory*. This defines where the final product(s) of the build will go—namely, the executable, library or DLL that the compiler/linker ultimately outputs.

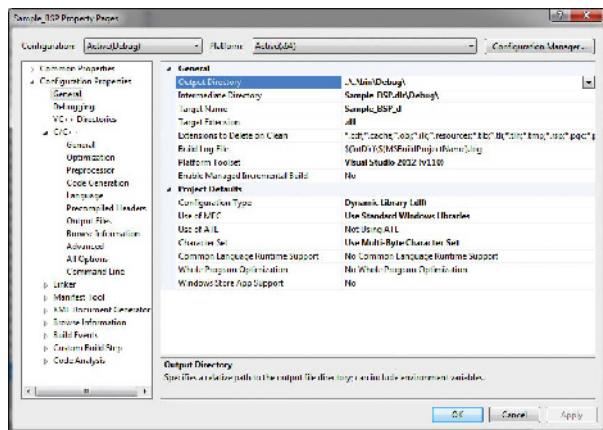


Figure 2.9. Visual Studio project property pages—General page.

- *Intermediate directory*. This defines where intermediate files, primarily object files (.obj extension), are placed during a build. Intermediate files are never shipped with your final program—they are only required during the process of building your executable, library or DLL. Hence, it is a good idea to place intermediate files in a different directory than the final products (.exe, .lib or .dll files).

Note that VisualStudio provides a macro facility, which may be used when specifying directories and other settings in the “Project Property Pages” dialog. A *macro* is essentially a named variable that contains a global value and that can be referred to in your project configuration settings.

Macros are invoked by writing the name of the macro enclosed in parentheses and prefixed with a dollar sign (e.g., \$(ConfigurationName)). Some commonly used macros are listed below.

- \$(TargetFileName). The name of the final executable, library or DLL file being built by this project.
- \$(TargetPath). The full path of the folder containing the final executable, library or DLL.
- \$(ConfigurationName). The name of the build config, which will be “Debug” or “Release” by default in Visual Studio, although as we’ve said, a real game project will probably have multiple configurations such as “Debug,” “Hybrid,” “Development” and “Ship.”
- \$(OutDir). The value of the “Output Directory” field specified in this dialog.

- `$(IntDir)`. The value of the “Intermediate Directory” field in this dialog.
- `$(VCInstallDir)`. The directory in which Visual Studio’s C++ standard library is currently installed.

The benefit of using macros instead of hard-wiring your configuration settings is that a simple change of the global macro’s value will automatically affect all configuration settings in which the macro is used. Also, some macros like `$(ConfigurationName)` automatically change their values depending on the build configuration, so using them can permit you to use identical settings across all your configurations.

To see a complete list of all available macros, click in either the “Output Directory” field or the “Intermediate Directory” field on the “General” property page, click the little arrow to the right of the text field, select “Edit...” and then click the “Macros” button in the dialog that comes up.

### *Debugging Property Page*

The “Debugging” property page is where the name and location of the executable to debug is specified. On this page, you can also specify the command-line argument(s) that should be passed to the program when it runs. We’ll discuss debugging your program in more depth below.

### *C/C++ Property Page*

The C/C++ property page controls compile-time language settings—things that affect how your source files will be compiled into object files (.obj extension). The settings on this page do *not* affect how your object files are linked into a final executable or DLL.

You are encouraged to explore the various subpages of the C/C++ page to see what kinds of settings are available. Some of the most commonly used settings include the following:

- *General Property Page/Additional Include Directories*. This field lists the on-disk directories that will be searched when looking for `#include` header files.

***Important:*** It is always best to specify these directories using *relative paths* and/or with Visual Studio macros like `$(OutDir)` or `$(IntDir)`. That way, if you move your build tree to a different location on disk or to another computer with a different root folder, everything will continue to work properly.

- *General Property Page/Debug Information Format.* This field controls whether or not debug information is generated and in what format. Typically both debug and development configurations include debugging information so that you can track down problems during the development of your game. The ship build will have all the debug info stripped out to prevent hacking.
- *Preprocessor Property Page/Preprocessor Definitions.* This very handy field lists any number of C/C++ preprocessor symbols that should be defined in the code when it is compiled. See *Preprocessor Settings* in Section 2.2.4.1 for a discussion of preprocessor-defined symbols.

### *Linker Property Page*

The “Linker” property page lists properties that affect how your object code files will be linked into an executable or DLL. Again, you are encouraged to explore the various subpages. Some commonly used settings follow:

- *General Property Page/Output File.* This setting lists the name and location of the final product of the build, usually an executable or DLL.
- *General Property Page/Additional Library Directories.* Much like the C/C++ Additional Include Directories field, this field lists zero or more directories that will be searched when looking for libraries and object files to link into the final executable.
- *Input Property Page/Additional Dependencies.* This field lists external libraries that you want linked into your executable or DLL. For example, the OGRE libraries would be listed here if you are building an OGRE-enabled application.

Note that Visual Studio employs various “magic spells” to specify libraries that should be linked into an executable. For example, a special `#pragma` instruction in your source code can be used to instruct the linker to automatically link with a particular library. For this reason, you may not see all of the libraries you’re actually linking to in the “Additional Dependencies” field. (In fact, that’s why they are called *additional* dependencies.) You may have noticed, for example, that Direct X applications do not list all of the DirectX libraries manually in their “Additional Dependencies” field. Now you know why.

## 2.2.5 Debugging Your Code

One of the most important skills any programmer can learn is how to effectively debug code. This section provides some useful debugging tips and

tricks. Some are applicable to any debugger and some are specific to Microsoft Visual Studio. However, you can usually find an equivalent to Visual Studio's debugging features in other debuggers, so this section should prove useful even if you don't use Visual Studio to debug your code.

### 2.2.5.1 The Start-Up Project

A Visual Studio solution can contain more than one project. Some of these projects build executables, while others build libraries or DLLs. It's possible to have more than one project that builds an executable in a single solution. Visual Studio provides a setting known as the "Start-Up Project." This is the project that is considered "current" for the purposes of the debugger. Typically a programmer will debug one project at a time by setting a single start-up project. However, it is possible to debug multiple projects simultaneously (see [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/0s590bew\(v=vs.100\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/0s590bew(v=vs.100).aspx) for details).

The start-up project is highlighted in bold in the Solution Explorer. By default, hitting F5 will run the .exe built by the start-up project, if the start-up project builds an executable. (Technically speaking, F5 runs whatever command you type into the Command field in the Debugging property page, so it's not limited to running the .exe built by your project.)

### 2.2.5.2 Breakpoints

*Breakpoints* are the bread and butter of code debugging. A breakpoint instructs the program to stop at a particular line in your source code so that you can inspect what's going on.

In Visual Studio, select a line and hit F9 to toggle a breakpoint. When you run your program and the line of code containing the breakpoint is about to be executed, the debugger will stop the program. We say that the breakpoint has been "hit." A little arrow will show you which line of code the CPU's program counter is currently on. This is shown in Figure 2.10.

### 2.2.5.3 Stepping through Your Code

Once a breakpoint has been hit, you can single-step your code by hitting the F10 key. The yellow program-counter arrow moves to show you the lines as they execute. Hitting F11 steps *into* a function call (i.e., the next line of code you'll see is the first line of the called function), while F10 steps *over* that function call (i.e., the debugger calls the function at full speed and then breaks again on the line right after the call).

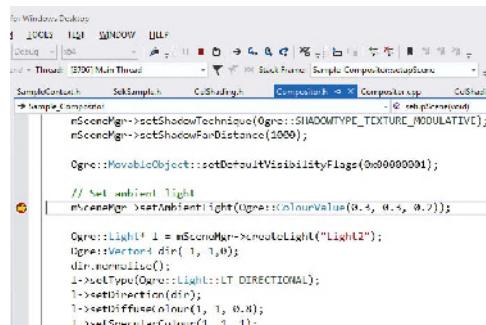


Figure 2.10. Setting a breakpoint in Visual Studio.

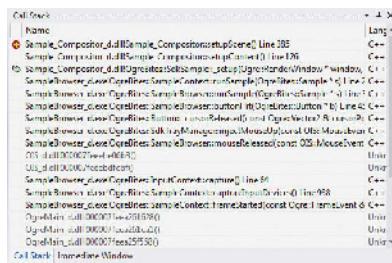


Figure 2.11. The call stack window.

#### 2.2.5.4 The Call Stack

The *call stack* window, shown in Figure 2.11, shows you the stack of functions that have been called at any given moment during the execution of your code. (See Section 3.3.5.2 for more details on a program's stack.) To display the call stack (if it is not already visible), go to the “Debug” menu on the main menu bar, select “Windows” and then “Call Stack.”

Once a breakpoint has been hit (or the program is manually paused), you can move up and down the call stack by double-clicking on entries in the “Call Stack” window. This is very useful for inspecting the chain of function calls that were made between `main()` and the current line of code. For example, you might trace back to the root cause of a bug in a parent function that has manifested itself in a deeply nested child function.

### 2.2.5.5 The Watch Window

As you step through your code and move up and down the call stack, you will want to be able to inspect the values of the variables in your program. This is what *watch windows* are for. To open a watch window, go to the “Debug” menu, select “Windows...,” then select “Watch...,” and finally select one of

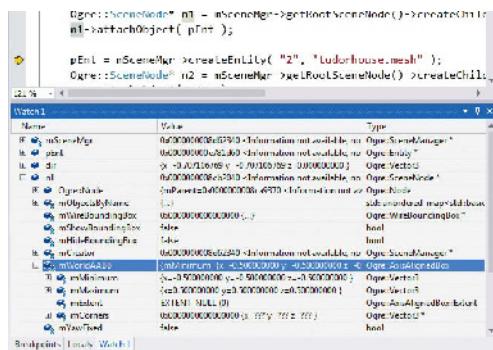


Figure 2.12. Visual Studio's watch window.

“Watch 1” through “Watch 4.” (Visual Studio allows you to open up to four watch windows simultaneously.) Once a watch window is open, you can type the names of variables into the window or drag expressions in directly from your source code.

As you can see in Figure 2.12, variables with simple data types are shown with their values listed immediately to the right of their names. Complex data types are shown as little tree views that can be easily expanded to “drill down” into virtually any nested structure. The base class of a class is always shown as the first child of an instance of a derived class. This allows you to inspect not only the class’ data members, but also the data members of its base class(es).

You can type virtually any valid C/C++ *expression* into the watch window, and Visual Studio will evaluate that expression and attempt to display the resulting value. For example, you could type “5 + 3” and Visual Studio will display “8.” You can cast variables from one type to another by using C or C++ casting syntax. For example, typing “(float)intVar1/(float)intVar2” in the watch window will display the ratio of two integer variables as a floating-point value.

You can even *call functions in your program* from within the watch window. Visual Studio reevaluates the expressions typed into the watch window(s) automatically, so if you invoke a function in the watch window, it will be called every time you hit a breakpoint or single-step your code. This allows you to leverage the functionality of your program in order to save yourself work when trying to interpret the data that you're inspecting in the debugger. For example, let's say that your game engine provides a function called `quatToAngleDeg()`, which converts a quaternion to an angle of rotation in degrees. You can call this function in the watch window in order to easily

inspect the rotation angle of any quaternion within the debugger.

You can also use various suffixes on the expressions in the watch window in order to change the way Visual Studio displays the data, as shown in Figure 2.13.

- The “, d” suffix forces values to be displayed in decimal notation.
- The “, x” suffix forces values to be displayed in hexadecimal notation.
- The “, n” suffix (where  $n$  is any positive integer) forces Visual Studio to treat the value as an array with  $n$  elements. This allows you to expand array data that is referenced through a pointer.
- You can also write simple expressions in square brackets that *calculate* the value of  $n$  in a “, n” suffix. For example, you can type something like this:

```
my_array, [my_array_count]
```

to ask the debugger to show `my_array_count` elements of the array named `my_array`.

Be careful when expanding very large data structures in the watch window, because it can sometimes slow the debugger down to the point of being unusable.

#### 2.2.5.6 Data Breakpoints

Regular breakpoints trip when the CPU’s program counter hits a particular machine instruction or line of code. However, another incredibly useful feature of modern debuggers is the ability to set a breakpoint that trips whenever a specific memory address is *written to* (i.e., changed). These are called *data breakpoints*, because they are triggered by changes to data, or sometimes *hardware breakpoints*, because they are implemented via a special feature of the CPU’s hardware—namely, the ability to raise an interrupt when a predefined memory address is written to.

Watch 1		
Name	Type	Value
↳ i	int	0x00000000
↳ i.d	int	1
↳ mCubeCamera.J	float	0x0000000000000000
↳ mCubeCamera.J[0]	float	0x0000000000000000
↳ mCubeCamera.J[1]	float	0x0000000000000000
↳ mCubeCamera.J[2]	float	0x0000000000000000

Figure 2.13. Comma suffixes in the Visual Studio watch window.

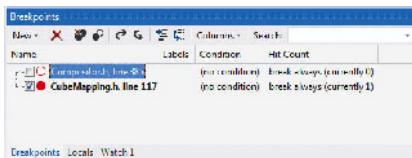


Figure 2.14. The Visual Studio breakpoints window.

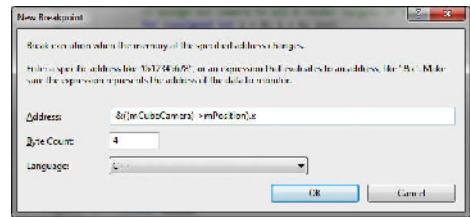


Figure 2.15. Defining a data breakpoint.

Here's how data breakpoints are typically used. Let's say you are tracking down a bug that manifests itself as a zero (0.0f) value mysteriously appearing inside a member variable of a particular object called `m_angle` that *should* always contain a nonzero angle. You have no idea which function might be writing that zero into your variable. However, you do know the address of the variable. (You can just type "`&object.m_angle`" into the watch window to find its address.) To track down the culprit, you can set a data breakpoint on the address of `object.m_angle`, and then simply let the program run. When the value changes, the debugger will stop automatically. You can then inspect the call stack to catch the offending function red-handed.

To set a data breakpoint in Visual Studio, take the following steps.

- Bring up the "Breakpoints" window found on the "Debug" menu under "Windows" and then "Breakpoints" (Figure 2.14).
- Select the "New" drop-down button in the upper-left corner of the window.
- Select "New Data Breakpoint."
- Type in the raw address or an address-valued expression, such as "`&myVariable`" (Figure 2.15).

#### 2.2.5.7 Conditional Breakpoints

You'll also notice in the "Breakpoints" window that you can set conditions and hit counts on any type breakpoint—data breakpoints or regular line-of-code breakpoints.

A *conditional breakpoint* causes the debugger to evaluate the C/C++ expression you provide every time the breakpoint is hit. If the expression is true, the debugger stops your program and gives you a chance to see what's going on. If the expression is false, the breakpoint is ignored and the program continues. This is very useful for setting breakpoints that only trip when a function is called on a particular instance of a class. For example,

let's say you have a game level with 20 tanks on-screen, and you want to stop your program when the third tank, whose memory address you know to be 0x12345678, is running. By setting the breakpoint's condition expression to something like "`(uintptr_t)this == 0x12345678`", you can restrict the breakpoint only to the class instance whose memory address (`this` pointer) is 0x12345678.

Specifying a *hit count* for a breakpoint causes the debugger to decrement a counter every time the breakpoint is hit, and only actually stop the program when that counter reaches zero. This is really useful for situations where your breakpoint is inside a loop, and you need to inspect what's happening during the 376th iteration of the loop (e.g., the 376th element in an array). You can't very well sit there and hit the F5 key 375 times! But you *can* let the hit count feature of Visual Studio do it for you.

One note of caution: conditional breakpoints cause the debugger to evaluate the conditional expression every time the breakpoint is hit, so they can bog down the performance of the debugger and your game.

#### 2.2.5.8 Debugging Optimized Builds

I mentioned above that it can be very tricky to debug problems using a development or ship build, due primarily to the way the compiler optimizes the code. Ideally, every programmer would prefer to do all of his or her debugging in a debug build. However, this is often not possible. Sometimes a bug occurs so rarely that you'll jump at any chance to debug the problem, even if it occurs in a non-debug build on someone else's machine. Other bugs only occur in your non-debug builds, but they magically disappear whenever you run the debug build. These dreaded *non-debug-only bugs* are sometimes caused by uninitialized variables, because variables and dynamically allocated memory blocks are often set to zero in debug mode but are left containing garbage in a non-debug build. Other common causes of non-debug-only bugs include code that has been accidentally omitted from the non-debug build(s) (e.g., when important code is erroneously placed inside an assertion statement), data structures whose size or data member packing changes between debug and development/ship builds, bugs that are only triggered by inlining or compiler-introduced optimizations, and (in rare cases) bugs in the compiler's optimizer itself, causing it to emit incorrect code in a fully optimized build.

Clearly, it behooves every programmer to be capable of debugging problems in a non-debug build, unpleasant as it may seem. The best ways to reduce the pain of debugging optimized code is to practice doing it and to expand your skill set in this area whenever you have the opportunity. Here are a few tips.

- *Learn to read and step through disassembly in the debugger.* In a non-debug build, the debugger often has trouble keeping track of which line of source code is currently being executed. Thanks to instruction reordering, you'll often see the program counter jump around erratically within the function when viewed in source code mode. However, things become sane again when you work with the code in disassembly mode (i.e., step through the assembly language instructions individually). Every C/C++ programmer should be at least a little bit familiar with the architecture and assembly language of their target CPU(s). That way, even if the debugger is confused, you won't be. (For an introduction to assembly language, see Section 3.4.7.3.)
- *Use registers to deduce variables' values or addresses.* The debugger will sometimes be unable to display the value of a variable or the contents of an object in a non-debug build. However, if the program counter is not too far away from the initial use of the variable, there's a good chance its address or value is still stored in one of the CPU's registers. If you can trace back through the disassembly to where the variable is first loaded into a register, you can often discover its value or its address by inspecting that register. Use the register window, or type the name of the register into a watch window, to see its contents.
- *Inspect variables and object contents by address.* Given the address of a variable or data structure, you can usually see its contents by casting the address to the appropriate type in a watch window. For example, if we know that an instance of the `Foo` class resides at address `0x1378A0C0`, we can type `"(Foo*) 0x1378A0C0"` in a watch window, and the debugger will interpret that memory address as if it were a pointer to a `Foo` object.
- *Leverage static and global variables.* Even in an optimized build, the debugger can usually inspect global and static variables. If you cannot deduce the address of a variable or object, keep your eye open for a static or global that might contain its address, either directly or indirectly. For example, if we want to find the address of an internal object within the physics system, we might discover that it is in fact stored in a member variable of the global `PhysicsWorld` object.
- *Modify the code.* If you can reproduce a non-debug-only bug relatively easily, consider modifying the source code to help you debug the problem. Add print statements so you can see what's going on. Introduce a global variable to make it easier to inspect a problematic variable or

object in the debugger. Add code to detect a problem condition or to isolate a particular instance of a class.

## 2.3 Profiling Tools

Games are typically high-performance real-time programs. As such, game engine programmers are always looking for ways to speed up their code. In this section, we'll investigate some of the tools we can use to measure the performance of our software. We'll have more to say about how to use this profiling data in order to optimize our software in Chapter 4.

There is a well-known, albeit rather unscientific, rule of thumb known as the *Pareto principle* (see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pareto\\_principle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pareto_principle)). It is also known as the *80/20 rule*, because it states that in many situations, 80% of the effects of some event come from only 20% of the possible causes. In computer science, this principle has been applied both to bug-fixing (80% of the perceived bugs in a piece of software can be eliminated by fixing bugs in only 20% of the code), and to software optimization, where as a rule of thumb 80% (or more) of the wall clock time spent running any piece of software is accounted for by only 20% (or less) of the code. In other words, if you optimize 20% of your code, you can potentially realize 80% of all the gains in execution speed you'll ever realize.

So, how do you know *which* 20% of your code to optimize? For that, you need a *profiler*. A profiler is a tool that measures the execution time of your code. It can tell you how much time is spent in each function. You can then direct your optimizations toward only those functions that account for the lion's share of the execution time.

Some profilers also tell you how many *times* each function is called. This is an important dimension to understand. A function can eat up time for two reasons: (a) it takes a long time to execute on its own, or (b) it is called frequently. For example, a function that runs an A\* algorithm to compute the optimal paths through the game world might only be called a few times each frame

Even more information can be obtained if you use the right profiler. Some profilers report the call graph, meaning that for any given function, you can see which functions called it (these are known as *parent functions*) and which functions it called (these are known as *child functions* or *descendants*). You can even see what *percentage* of the function's time was spent calling each of its descendants and the percentage of the overall running time accounted for by each individual function.

Profilers fall into two broad categories.

1. *Statistical profilers.* This kind of profiler is designed to be unobtrusive, meaning that the target code runs at almost the same speed, whether or not profiling is enabled. These profilers work by sampling the CPU's program counter register periodically and noting which function is currently running. The number of samples taken within each function yields an approximate percentage of the total running time that is eaten up by that function. Intel's *VTune* is the gold standard in statistical profilers for Windows machines employing Intel Pentium processors, and it is now also available for Linux. See <https://software.intel.com/en-us/intel-vtune-amplifier-xe> for details.
2. *Instrumenting profilers.* This kind of profiler is aimed at providing the most accurate and comprehensive timing data possible, but at the expense of real-time execution of the target program—when profiling is turned on, the target program usually slows to a crawl. These profilers work by preprocessing your executable and inserting special prologue and epilogue code into every function. The prologue and epilogue code calls into a profiling library, which in turn inspects the program's call stack and records all sorts of details, including which parent function called the function in question and how many times that parent has called the child. This kind of profiler can even be set up to monitor every line of code in your source program, allowing it to report how long each line is taking to execute. The results are stunningly accurate and comprehensive, but turning on profiling can make a game virtually unplayable. IBM's Rational Quantify, available as part of the Rational Purify Plus tool suite, is an excellent instrumenting profiler. See <http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/rational/library/957.html> for an introduction to profiling with Quantify.

Microsoft has also published a profiler that is a hybrid between the two approaches. It is called LOP, which stands for low-overhead profiler. LOP uses a statistical approach, sampling the state of the processor periodically, which means it has a low impact on the speed of the program's execution. However, with each sample, it analyzes the call stack, thereby determining the chain of parent functions that resulted in each sample. This allows LOP to provide information normally not available with a statistical profiler, such as the distribution of calls across parent functions.

On the PlayStation 4, SN Systems' *Razor CPU* is the profiler of choice for measuring game software running on the PS4's CPU. It supports both statis-

tical and instrumenting methods of profiling. (See <https://www.snsystems.com/tech-blog/2014/02/14/function-level-profiling/> for some more details.) Its counterpart, *Razor GPU*, provides profiling and debugging facilities for shaders and compute jobs running on the PS4’s GPU.

### 2.3.1 List of Profilers

There are a great many profiling tools available. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_performance\\_analysis\\_tool](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_performance_analysis_tool) for a reasonably comprehensive list.

## 2.4 Memory Leak and Corruption Detection

Two other problems that plague C and C++ programmers are memory leaks and memory corruption. A memory leak occurs when memory is allocated but never freed. This wastes memory and eventually leads to a potentially fatal out-of-memory condition. Memory corruption occurs when the program inadvertently writes data to the wrong memory location, overwriting the important data that was there—while simultaneously failing to update the memory location where that data *should* have been written. Blame for both of these problems falls squarely on the language feature known as the *pointer*.

A pointer is a powerful tool. It can be an agent of good when used properly—but it can also be all-too-easily transformed into an agent of evil. If a pointer points to memory that has been freed, or if it is accidentally assigned a nonzero integer or floating-point value, it becomes a dangerous tool for corrupting memory, because data written through it can quite literally end up anywhere. Likewise, when pointers are used to keep track of allocated memory, it is all too easy to forget to free the memory when it is no longer needed. This leads to memory leaks.

Clearly, good coding practices are one approach to avoiding pointer-related memory problems. And it is certainly possible to write solid code that essentially never corrupts or leaks memory. Nonetheless, having a tool to help you detect potential memory corruption and leak problems certainly can’t hurt. Thankfully, many such tools exist.

My personal favorite is IBM’s Rational Purify, which comes as part of the Purify Plus toolkit. Purify instruments your code prior to running it, in order to hook into all pointer dereferences and all memory allocations and deallocations made by your code. When you run your code under Purify, you get a live report of the problems—real and potential—encountered by your code. And when the program exits, you get a detailed memory leak report. Each problem is linked directly to the source code that caused the problem, mak-

ing tracking down and fixing these kinds of problems relatively easy. You can find more information on Purify at <http://www-306.ibm.com/software/awdtools/purify>.

Two other popular tools are Insure++ by Parasoft, and Valgrind by Julian Seward and the Valgrind development team. These tools provide both memory debugging and profiling facilities.

## 2.5 Other Tools

There are a number of other commonly used tools in a game programmer's toolkit. We won't cover them in any depth here, but the following list will make you aware of their existence and point you in the right direction if you want to learn more.

- *Difference tools.* A difference tool, or *diff tool*, is a program that compares two versions of a text file and determines what has changed between them. (See <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diff> for a discussion of diff tools.) Diffs are usually calculated on a line-by-line basis, although modern diff tools can also show you a range of characters on a changed line that have been modified. Most version control systems come with a diff tool. Some programmers like a particular diff tool and configure their version control software to use the tool of their choice. Popular tools include ExamDiff ([http://www.prestosoft.com/edp\\_examdiff.asp](http://www.prestosoft.com/edp_examdiff.asp)), AraxisMerge (<http://www.araxis.com>), WinDiff (available in the Options Packs for most Windows versions and available from many independent websites as well), and the GNU diff tools package (<http://www.gnu.org/software/diffutils/diffutils.html>).
- *Three-way merge tools.* When two people edit the same file, two independent sets of diffs are generated. A tool that can merge two sets of diffs into a final version of the file that contains both person's changes is called a three-way merge tool. The name "three-way" refers to the fact that three versions of the file are involved: the original, user A's version and user B's version. (See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/3-way\\_merge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/3-way_merge) #Three-way\_merge for a discussion of two-way and three-way merge technologies.) Many merge tools come with an associated diff tool. Some popular merge tools include AraxisMerge (<http://www.araxis.com>) and WinMerge (<http://winmerge.org>). Perforce also comes with an excellent three-way merge tool (<http://www.perforce.com/perforce/products/merge.html>).

- *Hex editors.* A hex editor is a program used for inspecting and modifying the contents of binary files. The data are usually displayed as integers in hexadecimal format, hence the name. Most good hex editors can display data as integers from one byte to 16 bytes each, in 32- and 64-bit floating-point format and as ASCII text. Hex editors are particularly useful when tracking down problems with binary file formats or when reverse-engineering an unknown binary format—both of which are relatively common endeavors in game engine development circles. There are quite literally a million different hex editors out there; I've had good luck with HexEdit by Expert Commercial Software (<http://www.expertcomsoft.com/index.html>), but your mileage may vary.

As a game engine programmer you will undoubtedly come across other tools that make your life easier, but I hope this chapter has covered the main tools you'll use on a day-to-day basis.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 3

## Fundamentals of Software Engineering for Games

In this chapter, we'll discuss the foundational knowledge needed by any professional game programmer. We'll explore numeric bases and representations, the components and architecture of a typical computer and its CPU, machine and assembly language, and the C++ programming language. We'll review some key concepts in object-oriented programming (OOP), and then delve into some advanced topics that should prove invaluable in any software engineering endeavor (and especially when creating games). As with Chapter 2, some of this material may already be familiar to some readers. However, I highly recommend that all readers at least skim this chapter, so that we all embark on our journey with the same set of tools and supplies.

### 3.1 C++ Review and Best Practices

Because C++ is arguably the most commonly used language in the game industry, we will focus primarily on C++ in this book. However, most of the concepts we'll cover apply equally well to *any* object-oriented programming language. Certainly a great many other languages are used in the game industry—imperative languages like C; object-oriented languages like C# and

Java; scripting languages like Python, Lua and Perl; functional languages like Lisp, Scheme and F#, and the list goes on. I highly recommend that every programmer learn at least two high-level languages (the more the merrier), as well as learning at least some *assembly language* programming (see Section 3.4.7.3). Every new language that you learn further expands your horizons and allows you to think in a more profound and proficient way about programming overall. That being said, let's turn our attention now to object-oriented programming concepts in general, and C++ in particular.

### 3.1.1 Brief Review of Object-Oriented Programming

Much of what we'll discuss in this book assumes you have a solid understanding of the principles of object-oriented design. If you're a bit rusty, the following section should serve as a pleasant and quick review. If you have no idea what I'm talking about in this section, I recommend you pick up a book or two on object-oriented programming (e.g., [7]) and C++ in particular (e.g., [46] and [36]) before continuing.

#### 3.1.1.1 Classes and Objects

A *class* is a collection of attributes (data) and behaviors (code) that together form a useful, meaningful whole. A class is a *specification* describing how individual *instances* of the class, known as *objects*, should be constructed. For example, your pet Rover is an instance of the class "dog." Thus, there is a one-to-many relationship between a class and its instances.

#### 3.1.1.2 Encapsulation

*Encapsulation* means that an object presents only a limited interface to the outside world; the object's internal state and implementation details are kept hidden. Encapsulation simplifies life for the user of the class, because he or she need only understand the class' limited interface, not the potentially intricate details of its implementation. It also allows the programmer who wrote the class to ensure that its instances are always in a logically consistent state.

#### 3.1.1.3 Inheritance

*Inheritance* allows new classes to be defined as *extensions* to preexisting classes. The new class modifies or extends the data, interface and/or behavior of the existing class. If class *Child* extends class *Parent*, we say that *Child* *inherits from* or is *derived from* *Parent*. In this relationship, the class *Parent* is known as the *base class* or *superclass*, and the class *Child* is the *derived class*.

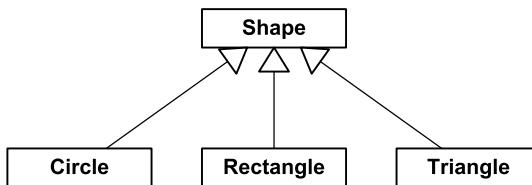


Figure 3.1. UML static class diagram depicting a simple class hierarchy.

or *subclass*. Clearly, inheritance leads to hierarchical (tree-structured) relationships between classes.

Inheritance creates an “is-a” relationship between classes. For example, a circle *is a type of* shape. So, if we were writing a 2D drawing application, it would probably make sense to derive our `Circle` class from a base class called `Shape`.

We can draw diagrams of class hierarchies using the conventions defined by the Unified Modeling Language (UML). In this notation, a rectangle represents a class, and an arrow with a hollow triangular head represents inheritance. The inheritance arrow points from child class to parent. See Figure 3.1 for an example of a simple class hierarchy represented as a UML *static class diagram*.

### *Multiple Inheritance*

Some languages support *multiple inheritance* (MI), meaning that a class can have more than one parent class. In theory MI can be quite elegant, but in practice this kind of design usually gives rise to a lot of confusion and technical difficulties (see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Multiple\\_inheritance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Multiple_inheritance)). This is because multiple inheritance transforms a simple *tree* of classes into a potentially complex *graph*. A class graph can have all sorts of problems that never plague a simple tree—for example, the *deadly diamond* ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diamond\\_problem](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diamond_problem)), in which a derived class ends up containing *two copies* of a grandparent base class (see Figure 3.2). (In C++, *virtual inheritance* allows one to avoid this doubling of the grandparent’s data.) Multiple inheritance also complicates casting, because the actual address of a pointer may change depending on which base class it is cast to. This happens because of the presence of multiple vtable pointers within the object.

Most C++ software developers avoid multiple inheritance completely or only permit it in a limited form. A common rule of thumb is to allow only simple, parentless classes to be multiply inherited into an otherwise strictly single-inheritance hierarchy. Such classes are sometimes called *mix-in classes*

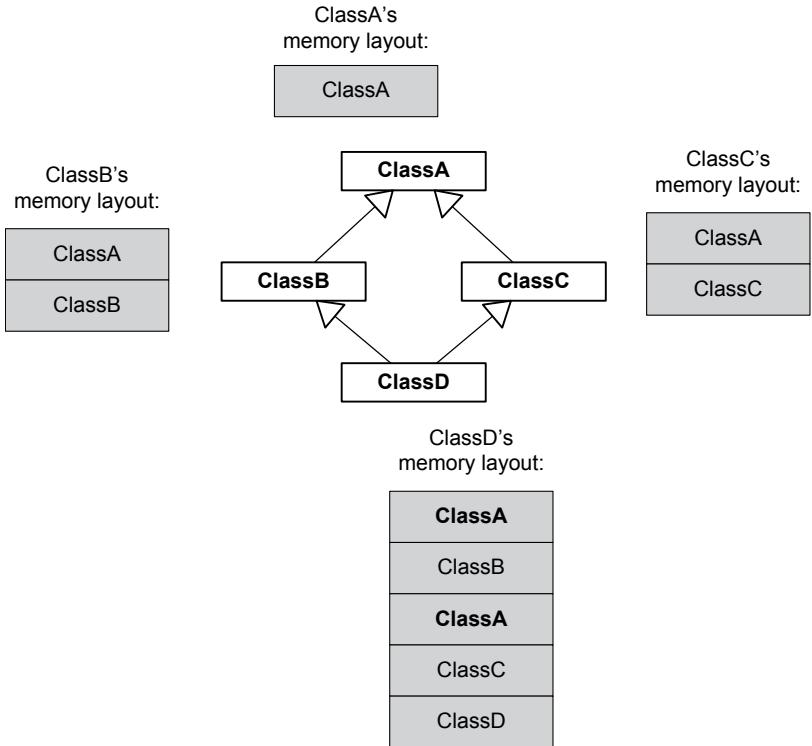


Figure 3.2. "Deadly diamond" in a multiple inheritance hierarchy.

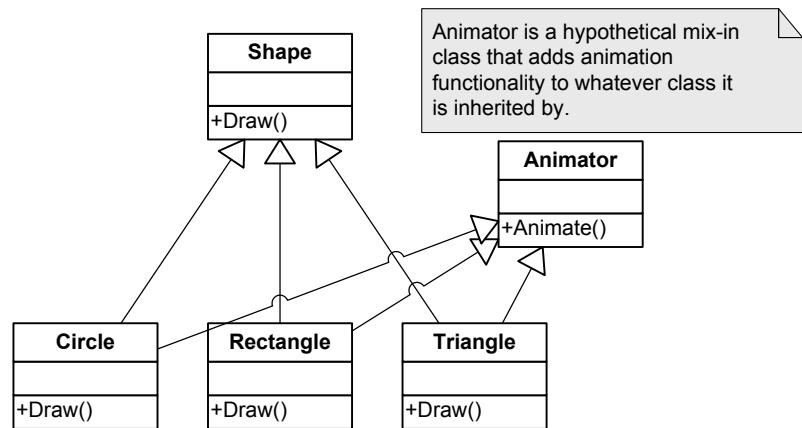


Figure 3.3. Example of a mix-in class.

because they can be used to introduce new functionality at arbitrary points in a class tree. See Figure 3.3 for a somewhat contrived example of a mix-in class.

#### 3.I.I.4 Polymorphism

*Polymorphism* is a language feature that allows a collection of objects of different types to be manipulated through a single *common interface*. The common interface makes a heterogeneous collection of objects *appear* to be homogeneous, from the point of view of the code using the interface.

For example, a 2D painting program might be given a list of various shapes to draw on-screen. One way to draw this heterogeneous collection of shapes is to use a switch statement to perform different drawing commands for each distinct type of shape.

```
void drawShapes(std::list<Shape*>& shapes)
{
    std::list<Shape*>::iterator pShape = shapes.begin();
    std::list<Shape*>::iterator pEnd = shapes.end();

    for ( ; pShape != pEnd; pShape++)
    {
        switch (pShape->mType)
        {
            case CIRCLE:
                // draw shape as a circle
                break;

            case RECTANGLE:
                // draw shape as a rectangle
                break;

            case TRIANGLE:
                // draw shape as a triangle
                break;

            //...
        }
    }
}
```

The problem with this approach is that the `drawShapes()` function needs to “know” about all of the kinds of shapes that can be drawn. This is fine in a simple example, but as our code grows in size and complexity, it can become difficult to add new types of shapes to the system. Whenever a new shape

type is added, one must find every place in the code base where knowledge of the set of shape types is embedded—like this switch statement—and add a case to handle the new type.

The solution is to insulate the majority of our code from any knowledge of the types of objects with which it might be dealing. To accomplish this, we can define classes for each of the types of shapes we wish to support. All of these classes would inherit from the common base class `Shape`. A *virtual function*—the C++ language’s primary polymorphism mechanism—would be defined called `Draw()`, and each distinct shape class would implement this function in a different way. Without “knowing” what specific types of shapes it has been given, the drawing function can now simply call each shape’s `Draw()` function in turn.

```
struct Shape
{
    virtual void Draw() = 0; // pure virtual function
    virtual ~Shape() { } // ensure derived dtors are virtual
};

struct Circle : public Shape
{
    virtual void Draw()
    {
        // draw shape as a circle
    }
};

struct Rectangle : public Shape
{
    virtual void Draw()
    {
        // draw shape as a rectangle
    }
};

struct Triangle : public Shape
{
    virtual void Draw()
    {
        // draw shape as a triangle
    }
};
```

```
void drawShapes(std::list<Shape*>& shapes)
{
    std::list<Shape*>::iterator pShape = shapes.begin();
    std::list<Shape*>::iterator pEnd = shapes.end();

    for ( ; pShape != pEnd; pShape++)
    {
        pShape->Draw(); // call virtual function
    }
}
```

### 3.I.I.5 Composition and Aggregation

*Composition* is the practice of using a *group* of *interacting* objects to accomplish a high-level task. Composition creates a “has-a” or “uses-a” relationship between classes. (Technically speaking, the “has-a” relationship is called *composition*, while the “uses-a” relationship is called *aggregation*.) For example, a spaceship *has an* engine, which in turn *has a* fuel tank. Composition/aggregation usually results in the individual classes being simpler and more focused. Inexperienced object-oriented programmers often rely too heavily on inheritance and tend to underutilize aggregation and composition.

As an example, imagine that we are designing a graphical user interface for our game’s front end. We have a class `Window` that represents any rectangular GUI element. We also have a class called `Rectangle` that encapsulates the mathematical concept of a rectangle. A naïve programmer might derive the `Window` class from the `Rectangle` class (using an “is-a” relationship). But in a more flexible and well-encapsulated design, the `Window` class would *refer to* or *contain* a `Rectangle` (employing a “has-a” or “uses-a” relationship). This makes both classes simpler and more focused and allows the classes to be more easily tested, debugged and reused.

### 3.I.I.6 Design Patterns

When the same type of problem arises over and over, and many different programmers employ a very similar solution to that problem, we say that a *design pattern* has arisen. In object-oriented programming, a number of common design patterns have been identified and described by various authors. The most well-known book on this topic is probably the “Gang of Four” book [19].

Here are a few examples of common general-purpose design patterns.

- *Singleton*. This pattern ensures that a particular class has only one instance (the *singleton instance*) and provides a global point of access to it.
- *Iterator*. An iterator provides an efficient means of accessing the individual elements of a collection, without exposing the collection’s underlying

implementation. The iterator “knows” the implementation details of the collection so that its users don’t have to.

- *Abstract factory*. An abstract factory provides an interface for creating families of related or dependent classes without specifying their concrete classes.

The game industry has its own set of design patterns for addressing problems in every realm from rendering to collision to animation to audio. In a sense, this book is all about the high-level design patterns prevalent in modern 3D game engine design.

### *Janitors and RAII*

As one very useful example of a design pattern, let’s have a brief look at the “resource acquisition is initialization” pattern (RAII). In this pattern, the acquisition and release of a resource (such as a file, a block of dynamically allocated memory, or a mutex lock) are bound to the constructor and destructor of a class, respectively. This prevents programmers from accidentally forgetting to release the resource—you simply construct a local instance of the class to acquire the resource, and let it fall out of scope to release it automatically. At Naughty Dog, we call such classes *janitors* because they “clean up” after you.

For example, whenever we need to allocate memory from a particular type of allocator, we *push* that allocator onto a global *allocator stack*, and when we’re done allocating we must always remember to *pop* the allocator off the stack. To make this more convenient and less error-prone, we use an *allocation janitor*. This tiny class’s constructor pushes the allocator, and its destructor pops the allocator:

```
class AllocJanitor
{
public:
    explicit AllocJanitor(mem::Context context)
    {
        mem::PushAllocator(context);
    }
    ~AllocJanitor()
    {
        mem::PopAllocator();
    }
};
```

To use the janitor class, we simply construct a local instance of it. When this instance drops out of scope, the allocator will be popped automatically:

```
void f()
{
    // do some work...

    // allocate temp buffers from single-frame allocator
    {
        AllocJanitor janitor(mem::Context::kSingleFrame);

        U8* pByteBuffer = new U8[SIZE];
        float* pFloatBuffer = new float[SIZE];

        // use buffers...

        // (NOTE: no need to free the memory because we
        // used a single-frame allocator)
    } // janitor pops allocator when it drops out of scope

    // do more work...
}
```

See <http://en.cppreference.com/w/cpp/language/raii> for more information on the highly useful RAII pattern.

### 3.I.2 C++ Language Standardization

Since its inception in 1979, the C++ language has been continually evolving. Bjarne Stroustrup, its inventor, originally named the language “C with Classes”, but it was renamed “C++” in 1983. The International Organization for Standardization (ISO, [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org)) first standardized the language in 1998—this version is known today as C++98. Since then, the ISO has been periodically publishing updated standards for the C++ language, with the goals of making the language more powerful, easier to use, and less ambiguous. These goals are achieved by refining the semantics and rules of the language, by adding new, more-powerful language features, and by deprecating, or removing entirely, those aspects of the language which have proven problematic or unpopular.

The most-recent variant of the C++ programming language standard is called C++17, which was published on July 31, 2017. The next iteration of the standard, C++2a, was in development at the time of this publication. The various versions of the C++ standard are summarized in chronological order below.

- C++98 was the first official C++ standard, established by the ISO in 1998.
- C++03 was introduced in 2003, to address various problems that had been identified in the C++98 standard.

- C++11 (also known as C++0x during much of its development) was approved by the ISO on August 12, 2011. C++11 added a large number of powerful new features to the language, including:
  - a type-safe `nullptr` literal, to replace the bug-prone `NULL` macro that had been inherited from the C language;
  - the `auto` and `decltype` keywords for type inference;
  - a “trailing return type” syntax, which allows a `decltype` of a function’s input arguments to be used to describe the return type of that function;
  - the `override` and `final` keywords for improved expressiveness when defining and overriding virtual functions;
  - defaulted and deleted functions (allowing the programmer to explicitly request that a compiler-generated default implementation be used, or that a function’s implementation should be undefined);
  - delegating constructors—the ability of one constructor to invoke another within the same class;
  - strongly-typed enumerations;
  - the `constexpr` keyword for defining compile-time constant values by evaluating expressions at compile time;
  - a uniform initialization syntax that extends the original braces-based POD initializers to cover non-POD types as well;
  - support for lambda functions and variable capture (closures);
  - the introduction of rvalue references and move semantics for more efficient handling of temporary objects; and
  - standardized attribute specifiers, to replace compiler-specific specifiers such as `__attribute__ ( . . . )` and `__declspec()`.

C++11 also introduced an improved and expanded standard library, including support for threading (concurrent programming), improved smart pointer facilities and an expanded set of generic algorithms.

- C++14 was approved by the ISO on August 18, 2014 and released on December 15, 2014. Its additions and improvements to C++11 include:
  - return type deduction, which in many situations allows function return types to be declared using a simple `auto` keyword, without the need for the verbose trailing `decltype` expression required by C++11;

- generic lambdas, allowing a lambda to act like a templated function by using `auto` to declare its input arguments;
- the ability to initialize “captured” variables in lambdas;
- binary literals prefaced with `0b` (e.g., `0b10110110`);
- support for digit separators in numeric literals, for improved readability (e.g., `1'000'000` instead of `1000000`);
- variable templates, which allow template syntax to be used when declaring variables; and
- relaxation of some restrictions on `constexpr`, including the ability to use `if`, `switch` and loops within constant expressions.
- C++17 was published by the ISO on July 31, 2017. It extends and improves C++14 in many ways, including but not limited to the following:
  - removed a number of out-dated and/or dangerous language features, including trigraphs, the `register` keyword, and the already-deprecated `auto_ptr` smart pointer class;
  - guarantees *copy elision*, the omission of unnecessary object copying;
  - exception specifications are now part of the type system, meaning that `void f() noexcept(true);` and `void f() noexcept(false);` are now distinct types;
  - adds two new literals to the language: UTF-8 character literals (e.g., `u8'x'`), and floating-point literals with a hexadecimal base and decimal exponent (e.g., `0xC.68p+2`);
  - introduces *structured bindings* to C++, allowing the values in a collection data type to be “unpacked” into individual variables (e.g., `auto [a, b] = func_that_returns_a_pair();`)—a syntax that is strikingly similar to that of returning multiple values from a function via a tuple in Python;
  - adds some useful standardized attributes, including `[[fallthrough]]` which allows you to explicitly document the fact that a missing `break` statement in a `switch` is intentional, thereby suppressing the warning that would otherwise be generated.

### 3.I.2.1 Further Reading

There are plenty of great online resources and books that describe the features of C++11, C++14 and C++17 in detail, so we won’t attempt to cover them here. Here are a few useful references:

- The site <http://en.cppreference.com/w/cpp> provides an excellent C++ reference manual, including call-outs such as “since C++11” or “until C++17” to indicate when certain language features were added to or removed from the standard, respectively.
- Information about the ISO’s standardization efforts can be found at <https://isocpp.org/std>.
- See the following sites for good summaries of C++11’s major new features:
  - <https://www.codeproject.com/Articles/570638/Ten-Cplusplus-Features-Every-Cplusplus-Developer>, and
  - <https://blog.smartbear.com/development/the-biggest-changes-in-c11-and-why-you-should-care>.
- See [http://thbecker.net/articles/auto\\_and\\_decltype/section\\_01.html](http://thbecker.net/articles/auto_and_decltype/section_01.html) for a great treatment of `auto` and `decltype`.
- See <http://www.drdobbs.com/cpp/the-c14-standard-what-you-need-to-know/240169034> for a good treatment of C++14’s changes to the C++11 standard.
- See <https://isocpp.org/files/papers/p0636r0.html> for a complete list of how the C++17 standard differs from C++14.

### 3.1.2.2 Which Language Features to Use?

As you read about all the cool new features being added to C++, it’s tempting to think that you need to use *all* of these features in your engine or game. However, just because a feature exists doesn’t mean your team needs to immediately start making use of it.

At Naughty Dog, we tend to take a conservative approach to adopting new language features into our codebase. As part of our studio’s coding standards, we have a list of those C++ language features that are approved for use in our runtime code, and another somewhat more liberal list of language features that are allowed in our offline tools code. There are a number of reasons for this cautious approach, which I’ll outline in the following sections.

#### *Lack of Full Feature Support*

The “bleeding edge” features may not be fully supported by your compiler. For example, LLVM/Clang, the C++ compiler used on the Sony Playstation

4, currently supports the entire C++11 standard in versions 3.3 and later, and all of C++14 in versions 3.4 and later. But its support for C++17 is spread across Clang versions 3.5 through 4.0, and it currently has no support for the draft C++2a standard. Also, Clang compiles code in C++98 mode by default—support for some of the more-advanced standards are accepted as extensions, but in order to enable full support one must pass specific command-line arguments to the compiler. See [https://clang.llvm.org/cxx\\_status.html](https://clang.llvm.org/cxx_status.html) for details.

### *Cost of Switching between Standards*

There's a non-zero cost to switching your codebase from one standard to another. Because of this, it's important for a game studio to decide on the most-advanced C++ standard to support, and then stick with it for a reasonable length of time (e.g., for the duration of one project). At Naughty Dog, we adopted the C++11 standard only relatively recently, and we only allowed its use in the code branch in which *The Last of Us Part II* is being developed. The code in the branch used for *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End* and *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy* had been written originally using the C++98 standard, and we decided that the relatively minor benefits of adopting C++11 features in that codebase did not outweigh the cost and risks of doing so.

### *Risk versus Reward*

Not every C++ language feature is created equal. Some features are useful and pretty much universally acceptable, like `nullptr`. Others may have benefits, but also associated negatives. Still other language features may be deemed inappropriate for use in runtime engine code altogether.

As an example of a language feature with both benefits and downsides, consider the new C++11 interpretation of the `auto` keyword. This keyword certainly makes variables and functions more convenient to write. But the Naughty Dog programmers recognized that over-use of `auto` can lead to obfuscated code: As an extreme example, imagine trying to read a .cpp file written by somebody else, in which virtually every variable, function argument and return value is declared `auto`. It would be like reading a typeless language such as Python or Lisp. One of the benefits of a strongly-typed language like C++ is the programmer's ability to quickly and easily determine the types of all variables. As such, we decided to adopt a simple rule: `auto` may only be used when declaring iterators, in situations where no other approach works (such as within template definitions), or in special cases when code clarity, readability and maintainability is significantly improved by its use. In all other cases, we require the use of explicit type declarations.

As an example of a language feature that could be deemed inappropriate for use in a commercial product like a game, consider *template metaprogramming*. Andrei Alexandrescu's Loki library [3] makes heavy use of template metaprogramming to do some pretty interesting and amazing things. However, the resulting code is tough to read, is sometimes non-portable, and presents programmers with an extremely high barrier to understanding. The programming leads at Naughty Dog believe that any programmer should be able to jump in and debug a problem on short notice, even in code with which he or she may not be very familiar. As such, Naughty Dog prohibits complex template metaprogramming in runtime engine code, with exceptions made only on a case-by-case basis where the benefits are deemed to outweigh the costs.

In summary, remember that when you have a hammer, everything can tend to look like a nail. Don't be tempted to use features of your language just because they're there (or because they're new). A judicious and carefully considered approach will result in a stable codebase that's as easy as possible to understand, reason about, debug and maintain.

### 3.1.3 Coding Standards: Why and How Much?

Discussions of coding conventions among engineers can often lead to heated "religious" debates. I do not wish to spark any such debate here, but I will go so far as to suggest that following at least a minimal set of coding standards is a good idea. Coding standards exist for two primary reasons.

1. Some standards make the code more readable, understandable and maintainable.
2. Other conventions help to prevent programmers from shooting themselves in the foot. For example, a coding standard might encourage the programmer to use only a smaller, more testable and less error-prone subset of the whole language. The C++ language is rife with possibilities for abuse, so this kind of coding standard is particularly important when using C++.

In my opinion, the most important things to achieve in your coding conventions are the following.

- *Interfaces are king.* Keep your interfaces (.h files) clean, simple, minimal, easy to understand and well-commented.
- *Good names encourage understanding and avoid confusion.* Stick to intuitive names that map directly to the purpose of the class, function or variable in question. Spend time up-front identifying a good name. Avoid

a naming scheme that requires programmers to use a look-up table in order to decipher the meaning of your code. Remember that high-level programming languages like C++ are intended for *humans* to read. (If you disagree, just ask yourself why you don't write all your software directly in machine language.)

- *Don't clutter the global namespace.* Use C++ namespaces or a common naming prefix to ensure that your symbols don't collide with symbols in other libraries. (But be careful not to overuse namespaces, or nest them too deeply.) Name `#defined` symbols with extra care; remember that C++ preprocessor macros are really just text substitutions, so they cut across all C/C++ scope and namespace boundaries.
- *Follow C++ best practices.* Books like the *Effective C++* series by Scott Meyers [36,37], Meyers' *Effective STL* [38] and *Large-Scale C++ Software Design* by John Lakos [31] provide excellent guidelines that will help keep you out of trouble.
- *Be consistent.* The rule I try to use is as follows: If you're writing a body of code from scratch, feel free to invent any convention you like—then stick to it. When editing preexisting code, try to follow whatever conventions have already been established.
- *Make errors stick out.* Joel Spolsky wrote an excellent article on coding conventions, which can be found at <http://www.joelonsoftware.com/articles/Wrong.html>. Joel suggests that the “cleanest” code is not necessarily code that looks neat and tidy on a superficial level, but rather the code that is written in a way that makes common programming errors *easier to see*. Joel's articles are always fun and educational, and I highly recommend this one.

## 3.2 Catching and Handling Errors

There are a number of ways to catch and handle error conditions in a game engine. As a game programmer, it's important to understand these different mechanisms, their pros and cons and when to use each one.

### 3.2.1 Types of Errors

In any software project there are two basic kinds of error conditions: *user errors* and *programmer errors*. A user error occurs when the user of the program does something incorrect, such as typing an invalid input, attempting to open a file that does not exist, etc. A programmer error is the result of a *bug* in the code itself. Although it may be triggered by something the user has done, the

essence of a programmer error is that the problem could have been avoided if the programmer had not made a mistake, and the user has a reasonable expectation that the program *should* have handled the situation gracefully.

Of course, the definition of “user” changes depending on context. In the context of a game project, user errors can be roughly divided into two categories: errors caused by the person playing the game and errors caused by the people who are making the game during development. It is important to keep track of which type of user is affected by a particular error and handle the error appropriately.

There’s actually a third kind of user—the other programmers on your team. (And if you are writing a piece of game middleware software, like Havok or OpenGL, this third category extends to other programmers all over the world who are using your library.) This is where the line between *user errors* and *programmer errors* gets blurry. Let’s imagine that programmer A writes a function `f()`, and programmer B tries to call it. If B calls `f()` with invalid arguments (e.g., a null pointer, or an out-of-range array index), then this could be seen as a user error by programmer A, but it would be a programmer error from B’s point of view. (Of course, one can also argue that programmer A should have anticipated the passing of invalid arguments and should have handled them gracefully, so the problem really is a programmer error, on A’s part.) The key thing to remember here is that the line between user and programmer can shift depending on context—it is rarely a black-and-white distinction.

### 3.2.2 Handling Errors

When handling errors, the requirements differ significantly between the two types. It is best to handle *user errors* as gracefully as possible, displaying some helpful information to the user and then allowing him or her to continue working—or in the case of a game, to continue playing. Programmer errors, on the other hand, should *not* be handled with a graceful “inform and continue” policy. Instead, it is usually best to halt the program and provide detailed low-level debugging information, so that a programmer can quickly identify and fix the problem. In an ideal world, *all* programmer errors would be caught and fixed before the software ships to the public.

#### 3.2.2.1 Handling Player Errors

When the “user” is the person playing your game, errors should obviously be handled within the context of gameplay. For example, if the player attempts to reload a weapon when no ammo is available, an audio cue and/or an animation can indicate this problem to the player without taking him or her “out of the game.”

### 3.2.2.2 Handling Developer Errors

When the “user” is someone who is making the game, such as an artist, animator or game designer, errors may be caused by an invalid asset of some sort. For example, an animation might be associated with the wrong skeleton, or a texture might be the wrong size, or an audio file might have been sampled at an unsupported sample rate. For these kinds of *developer errors*, there are two competing camps of thought.

On the one hand, it seems important to prevent bad game assets from persisting for too long. A game typically contains literally thousands of assets, and a problem asset might get “lost,” in which case one risks the possibility of the bad asset surviving all the way into the final shipping game. If one takes this point of view to an extreme, then the best way to handle bad game assets is to prevent the entire game from running whenever even a single problematic asset is encountered. This is certainly a strong incentive for the developer who created the invalid asset to remove or fix it immediately.

On the other hand, game development is a messy and iterative process, and generating “perfect” assets the first time around is rare indeed. By this line of thought, a game engine should be robust to almost any kind of problem imaginable, so that work can continue even in the face of totally invalid game asset data. But this too is not ideal, because the game engine would become bloated with error-catching and error-handling code that won’t be needed once the development pace settles down and the game ships. And the probability of shipping the product with “bad” assets becomes too high.

In my experience, the best approach is to find a middle ground between these two extremes. When a developer error occurs, I like to *make the error obvious* and then allow the team to continue to work in the presence of the problem. It is extremely costly to prevent all the other developers on the team from working, just because one developer tried to add an invalid asset to the game. A game studio pays its employees well, and when multiple team members experience downtime, the costs are multiplied by the number of people who are prevented from working. Of course, we should only handle errors in this way when it is practical to do so, without spending inordinate amounts of engineering time, or bloating the code.

As an example, let’s suppose that a particular mesh cannot be loaded. In my view, it’s best to draw a big red box in the game world at the places that mesh would have been located, perhaps with a text string hovering over each one that reads, “Mesh *blah-dee-blah* failed to load.” This is superior to printing an easy-to-miss message to an error log. And it’s *far* better than just crashing the game, because then no one will be able to work until that one mesh

reference has been repaired. Of course, for particularly egregious problems it's fine to just spew an error message and crash. There's no silver bullet for all kinds of problems, and your judgment about what type of error handling approach to apply to a given situation will improve with experience.

### 3.2.2.3 Handling Programmer Errors

The best way to detect and handle programmer errors (a.k.a. bugs) is often to embed error-checking code into your source code and arrange for failed error checks to halt the program. Such a mechanism is known as an *assertion system*; we'll investigate assertions in detail in Section 3.2.3.3. Of course, as we said above, one programmer's user error is another programmer's bug; hence, assertions are not always the right way to handle every programmer error. Making a judicious choice between an assertion and a more graceful error-handling technique is a skill that one develops over time.

## 3.2.3 Implementation of Error Detection and Handling

We've looked at some philosophical approaches to handling errors. Now let's turn our attention to the choices we have as programmers when it comes to implementing error detection and handling code.

### 3.2.3.1 Error Return Codes

A common approach to handling errors is to return some kind of failure code from the function in which the problem is first detected. This could be a Boolean value indicating success or failure, or it could be an "impossible" value, one that is outside the range of normally returned results. For example, a function that returns a positive integer or floating-point value could return a negative value to indicate that an error occurred. Even better than a Boolean or an "impossible" return value, the function could be designed to return an enumerated value to indicate success or failure. This clearly separates the error code from the output(s) of the function, and the exact nature of the problem can be indicated on failure (e.g., `enum Error { kSuccess, kAssetNotFound, kInvalidRange, ... }.`).

The calling function should intercept error return codes and act appropriately. It might handle the error immediately. Or, it might work around the problem, complete its own execution and then pass the error code on to whatever function called *it*.

### 3.2.3.2 Exceptions

Error return codes are a simple and reliable way to communicate and respond to error conditions. However, error return codes have their drawbacks. Perhaps the biggest problem with error return codes is that the function that detects an error may be totally unrelated to the function that is capable of handling the problem. In the worst-case scenario, a function that is 40 calls deep in the call stack might detect a problem that can only be handled by the top-level game loop, or by `main()`. In this scenario, every one of the 40 functions on the call stack would need to be written so that it can pass an appropriate error code all the way back up to the top-level error-handling function.

One way to solve this problem is to throw an exception. *Exception handling* is a very powerful feature of C++. It allows the function that detects a problem to communicate the error to the rest of the code without knowing anything about which function might handle the error. When an exception is thrown, relevant information about the error is placed into a data object of the programmer's choice known as an *exception object*. The call stack is then automatically unwound, in search of a calling function that has wrapped its call in a `try-catch` block. If a `try-catch` block is found, the exception object is matched against all possible `catch` clauses, and if a match is found, the corresponding `catch`'s code block is executed. The destructors of any automatic variables are called as needed during the stack unwinding process.

The ability to separate error detection from error handling in such a clean way is certainly attractive, and exception handling is an excellent choice for some software projects. However, exception handling does add some overhead to the program. The stack frame of any function that contains a `try-catch` block must be augmented to contain additional information required by the stack unwinding process. Also, if even one function in your program (or a library that your program links with) uses exception handling, your entire program must use exception handling—the compiler can't know which functions might be above you on the call stack when you throw an exception.

That said, it is possible to “sandbox” a library or libraries that make use of exception handling, in order to avoid your entire game engine having to be written with exceptions enabled. To do this, you would wrap all the API calls into the libraries in question in functions that are implemented in a translation unit that has exception handling enabled. Each of these functions would catch all possible exceptions in a `try/catch` block and convert them into error return codes. Any code that links with your wrapper library can therefore safely disable exception handling.

Arguably more important than the overhead issue is the fact that excep-

tions are in some ways no better than `goto` statements. Joel Spolsky of Microsoft and Fog Creek Software fame argues that exceptions are in fact *worse* than `goto`s because they aren't easily seen in the source code. A function that neither throws nor catches exceptions may nevertheless become involved in the stack-unwinding process, if it finds itself sandwiched between such functions in the call stack. And the unwinding process is itself imperfect: Your software can easily be left in an invalid state unless the programmer considers every possible way that an exception can be thrown, and handles it appropriately. This can make writing robust software difficult. When the possibility for exception throwing exists, pretty much every function in your codebase needs to be robust to the carpet being pulled out from under it and all its local objects destroyed whenever it makes a function call.

Another issue with exception handling is its cost. Although in theory modern exception handling frameworks don't introduce additional runtime overhead in the error-free case, this is not necessarily true in practice. For example, the code that the compiler adds to your functions for unwinding the call stack when an exception occurs tends to produce an overall increase in code size. This might degrade L1-cache performance, or cause the compiler to decide not to inline a function that it otherwise would have.

Clearly there are some pretty strong arguments for turning *off* exception handling in your game engine altogether. This is the approach employed at Naughty Dog and also on most of the projects I've worked on at Electronic Arts and Midway. In his capacity as Engine Director at Insomniac Games, Mike Acton has clearly stated his objection to the use of exception handling in runtime game code on numerous occasions. JPL and NASA also disallow exception handling in their mission-critical embedded software, presumably for the same reasons we tend to avoid it in the game industry. That said, your mileage certainly may vary. There is no perfect tool and no one right way to do anything. When used judiciously, exceptions *can* make your code easier to write and work with; just be careful out there!

There are many interesting articles on this topic on the web. Here's one good thread that covers most of the key issues on both sides of the debate:

- <http://www.joelonsoftware.com/items/2003/10/13.html>
- <http://www.nedbatchelder.com/text/exceptions-vs-status.html>
- <http://www.joelonsoftware.com/items/2003/10/15.html>

### *Exceptions and RAI*

The “resource acquisition is initialization” pattern (RAI, see Section 3.1.1.6) is often used in conjunction with *exception handling*: The constructor attempts to

acquire the desired resource, and throws an exception if it fails to do so. This is done to avoid the need for an if check to test the status of the object after it has been created—if the constructor returns without throwing an exception, we know for certain that the resource was successfully acquired.

However, the RAII pattern can be used even without exceptions. All it requires is a little discipline to check the status of each new resource object when it is first created. After that, all of the other benefits of RAII can be reaped. (Exceptions can also be replaced by assertion failures to signal the failure of some kinds of resource acquisitions.)

### 3.2.3.3 Assertions

An *assertion* is a line of code that checks an expression. If the expression evaluates to true, nothing happens. But if the expression evaluates to false, the program is stopped, a message is printed and the debugger is invoked if possible.

Assertions check a programmer’s assumptions. They act like *land mines* for bugs. They check the code when it is first written to ensure that it is functioning properly. They also ensure that the original assumptions continue to hold for long periods of time, even when the code around them is constantly changing and evolving. For example, if a programmer changes code that used to work, but accidentally violates its original assumptions, they’ll hit the land mine. This immediately informs the programmer of the problem and permits him or her to rectify the situation with minimum fuss. Without assertions, bugs have a tendency to “hide out” and manifest themselves later in ways that are difficult and time-consuming to track down. But with assertions embedded in the code, bugs announce themselves the moment they are introduced—which is usually the best moment to fix the problem, while the code changes that caused the problem are fresh in the programmer’s mind. Steve Maguire provides an in-depth discussion of assertions in his must-read book, *Writing Solid Code* [35].

The cost of the assertion checks can usually be tolerated during development, but stripping out the assertions prior to shipping the game can buy back that little bit of crucial performance if necessary. For this reason assertions are generally implemented in such a way as to allow the checks to be stripped out of the executable in non-debug build configurations. In C, an `assert()` macro is provided by the standard library header file `<assert.h>`; in C++, it’s provided by the `<cassert>` header.

The standard library’s definition of `assert()` causes it to be defined in debug builds (builds with the `DEBUG` preprocessor symbol defined) and

stripped in non-debug builds (builds with the `NDEBUG` preprocessor symbol defined). In a game engine, you may want finer-grained control over which build configurations retain assertions, and which configurations strip them out. For example, your game might support more than just a debug and development build configuration—you might also have a shipping build with global optimizations enabled, and perhaps even a PGO build for use by profile-guided optimization tools (see Section 2.2.4). Or you might also want to define different “flavors” of assertions—some that are always retained even in the shipping version of your game, and others that are stripped out of the non-shipping build. For these reasons, let’s take a look at how you can implement your own `ASSERT()` macro using the C/C++ preprocessor.

### *Assertion Implementation*

Assertions are usually implemented via a combination of a `#defined` macro that evaluates to an `if/else` clause, a function that is called when the assertion fails (the expression evaluates to `false`), and a bit of assembly code that halts the program and breaks into the debugger when one is attached. Here’s a typical implementation:

```
#if ASSERTIONS_ENABLED

    // define some inline assembly that causes a break
    // into the debugger -- this will be different on each
    // target CPU
    #define debugBreak() asm { int 3 }

    // check the expression and fail if it is false
    #define ASSERT(expr) \
        if (expr) {} \
        else \
        { \
            reportAssertionFailure(#expr, \
                __FILE__, __LINE__); \
            debugBreak(); \
        }

    #else

        #define ASSERT(expr) // evaluates to nothing

    #endif
```

Let’s break down this definition so we can see how it works:

- The outer `#if/#else/#endif` is used to strip assertions from the code base. When `ASSERTIONS_ENABLED` is nonzero, the `ASSERT()` macro is defined in its full glory, and all assertion checks in the code will be included in the program. But when assertions are turned off, `ASSERT(expr)` evaluates to nothing, and all instances of it in the code are effectively removed.
- The `debugBreak()` macro evaluates to whatever assembly-language instructions are required in order to cause the program to halt and the debugger to take charge (if one is connected). This differs from CPU to CPU, but it is usually a single assembly instruction.
- The `ASSERT()` macro itself is defined using a full `if/else` statement (as opposed to a lone `if`). This is done so that the macro can be used in any context, even within *other* unbracketed `if/else` statements.

Here's an example of what would happen if `ASSERT()` were defined using a solitary `if`:

```
// WARNING: NOT A GOOD IDEA!
#define ASSERT(expr)  if (!(expr)) debugBreak()

void f()
{
    if (a < 5)
        ASSERT(a >= 0);
    else
        doSomething(a);
}
```

This expands to the following *incorrect* code:

```
void f()
{
    if (a < 5)
        if (!(a >= 0))
            debugBreak();
    else // oops! bound to the wrong if()!
        doSomething(a);
}
```

- The `else` clause of an `ASSERT()` macro does two things. It displays some kind of message to the programmer indicating what went wrong, and then it breaks into the debugger. Notice the use of `#expr` as the first argument to the message display function. The pound (#) preprocessor operator causes the expression `expr` to be turned into a string, thereby allowing it to be printed out as part of the assertion failure message.

- Notice also the use of `__FILE__` and `__LINE__`. These compiler-defined macros magically contain the .cpp file name and line number of the line of code on which they appear. By passing them into our message display function, we can print the exact location of the problem.

I highly recommend the use of assertions in your code. However, it's important to be aware of their performance cost. You may want to consider defining two kinds of assertion macros. The regular `ASSERT()` macro can be left active in *all* builds, so that errors are easily caught even when not running in debug mode. A second assertion macro, perhaps called `SLOW_ASSERT()`, could be activated only in debug builds. This macro could then be used in places where the cost of assertion checking is too high to permit inclusion in release builds. Obviously `SLOW_ASSERT()` is of lower utility, because it is stripped out of the version of the game that your testers play every day. But at least these assertions become active when programmers are debugging their code.

It's also extremely important to use assertions properly. They should be used to catch bugs in the program itself—*never* to catch user errors. Also, assertions should always cause the entire game to halt when they fail. It's usually a bad idea to allow assertions to be skipped by testers, artists, designers and other non-engineers. (This is a bit like the boy who cried wolf: if assertions can be skipped, then they cease to have any significance, rendering them ineffective.) In other words, assertions should only be used to catch fatal errors. If it's OK to continue past an assertion, then it's probably better to notify the user of the error in some other way, such as with an on-screen message, or some ugly bright-orange 3D graphics.

### *Compile-Time Assertions*

One weakness of assertions, as we've discussed them thus far, is that the conditions encoded within them are only checked at runtime. We have to run the program, *and* the code path in question must actually *execute*, in order for an assertion's condition to be checked.

Sometimes the condition we're checking within an assertion involves information that is entirely known at compile time. For example, let's say we're defining a struct that for some reason needs to be exactly 128 bytes in size. We want to add an assertion so that if another programmer (or a future version of yourself) decides to change the size of the struct, the compiler will give us an error message. In other words, we'd like to write something like this:

```
struct NeedsToBe128Bytes
{
    U32    m_a;
    F32    m_b;
    // etc.
};

// sadly this doesn't work...
ASSERT(sizeof(NeedsToBe128Bytes) == 128);
```

The problem of course is that the `ASSERT()` (or `assert()`) macro needs to be executable at runtime, and one can't even put executable code at global scope in a .cpp file outside of a function definition. The solution to this problem is a *compile-time assertion*, also known as a *static assertion*.

Starting with C++11, the standard library defines a macro named `static_assert()` for us. So we can re-write the example above as follows:

```
struct NeedsToBe128Bytes
{
    U32    m_a;
    F32    m_b;
    // etc.
};

static_assert(sizeof(NeedsToBe128Bytes) == 128,
               "wrong size");
```

If you're not using C++11, you can always roll your own `STATIC_ASSERT()` macro. It can be implemented in a number of different ways, but the basic idea is always the same: The macro places a declaration into your code that (a) is legal at file scope, (b) evaluates the desired expression at compile time rather than runtime, and (c) produces a compile error if and only if the expression is false. Some methods of defining `STATIC_ASSERT()` rely on compiler-specific details, but here's one reasonably portable way to define it:

```
#define _ASSERT_GLUE(a, b)  a ## b
#define ASSERT_GLUE(a, b)    _ASSERT_GLUE(a, b)

#define STATIC_ASSERT(expr) \
    enum \
    { \
        ASSERT_GLUE(g_assert_fail_, __LINE__) \
        = 1 / (int)(!!(expr)) \
    }

STATIC_ASSERT(sizeof(int) == 4);    // should pass
STATIC_ASSERT(sizeof(float) == 1); // should fail
```

This works by defining an anonymous enumeration containing a single enumerator. The name of the enumerator is made unique (within the translation unit) by “gluing” a fixed prefix such as `g_assert_fail_` to a unique suffix—in this case, the line number on which the `STATIC_ASSERT()` macro is invoked. The value of the enumerator is set to `1 / (!!(expr))`. The double negation `!!` ensures that `expr` has a Boolean value. This value is then cast to an `int`, yielding either 1 or 0 depending on whether the expression is `true` or `false`, respectively. If the expression is `true`, the enumerator will be set to the value `1/1` which is one. But if the expression is `false`, we’ll be asking the compiler to set the enumerator to the value `1/0` which is illegal, and will trigger a compile error.

When our `STATIC_ASSERT()` macro as defined above fails, Visual Studio 2015 produces a compile-time error message like this:

```
1>test.cpp(48): error C2131: expression did not evaluate to
   a constant
1>  test.cpp(48): note: failure was caused by an undefined
   arithmetic operation
```

Here’s another way to define `STATIC_ASSERT()` using template specialization. In this example, we first check to see if we’re using C++11 or beyond. If so, we use the standard library’s implementation of `static_assert()` for maximum portability. Otherwise we fall back to our custom implementation.

```
#ifdef __cplusplus
#if __cplusplus >= 201103L
#define STATIC_ASSERT(expr) \
    static_assert(expr, \
                 "static assert failed:" \
                 #expr)
#else
// declare a template but only define the
// true case (via specialization)
template<bool> class TStaticAssert;
template<> class TStaticAssert<true> {};

#define STATIC_ASSERT(expr) \
    enum \
    { \
        ASSERT_GLUE(g_assert_fail_, __LINE__) \
        = sizeof(TStaticAssert<!!(expr)>) \
    }
#endif
#endif
```

This implementation, using template specialization, may be preferable to the previous one using division by zero, because it produces a slightly better error message in Visual Studio 2015:

```
1>test.cpp(48): error C2027: use of undefined type
                  'TStaticAssert<false>'
1>test.cpp(48): note: see declaration of
                  'TStaticAssert<false>'
```

However, each compiler handles error reporting differently, so your mileage may vary. For more implementation ideas for compile-time assertions, one good reference is [http://www.pixelbeat.org/programming/gcc/static\\_assert.html](http://www.pixelbeat.org/programming/gcc/static_assert.html).

## 3.3 Data, Code and Memory Layout

### 3.3.1 Numeric Representations

Numbers are at the heart of everything that we do in game engine development (and software development in general). Every software engineer should understand how numbers are represented and stored by a computer. This section will provide you with the basics you'll need throughout the rest of the book.

#### 3.3.1.1 Numeric Bases

People think most naturally in *base ten*, also known as *decimal notation*. In this notation, ten distinct digits are used (0 through 9), and each digit from right to left represents the next highest power of 10. For example, the number  $7803 = (7 \times 10^3) + (8 \times 10^2) + (0 \times 10^1) + (3 \times 10^0) = 7000 + 800 + 0 + 3$ .

In computer science, mathematical quantities such as integers and real-valued numbers need to be stored in the computer's memory. And as we know, computers store numbers in *binary* format, meaning that only the two digits 0 and 1 are available. We call this a *base-two* representation, because each digit from right to left represents the next highest power of 2. Computer scientists sometimes use a prefix of "0b" to represent binary numbers. For example, the binary number 0b1101 is equivalent to decimal 13, because  $0b1101 = (1 \times 2^3) + (1 \times 2^2) + (0 \times 2^1) + (1 \times 2^0) = 8 + 4 + 0 + 1 = 13$ .

Another common notation popular in computing circles is *hexadecimal*, or *base 16*. In this notation, the 10 digits 0 through 9 and the six letters A through F are used; the letters A through F replace the decimal values 10 through 15, respectively. A prefix of "0x" is used to denote hex numbers in the C and C++

programming languages. This notation is popular because computers generally store data in groups of 8 bits known as *bytes*, and since a single hexadecimal digit represents 4 bits exactly, a *pair* of hex digits represents a byte. For example, the value  $0xFF = 0b1111111 = 255$  is the largest number that can be stored in 8 bits (1 byte). Each digit in a hexadecimal number, from right to left, represents the next power of 16. So, for example,  $0xB052 = (11 \times 16^3) + (0 \times 16^2) + (5 \times 16^1) + (2 \times 16^0) = (11 \times 4096) + (0 \times 256) + (5 \times 16) + (2 \times 1) = 45,138$ .

### 3.3.1.2 Signed and Unsigned Integers

In computer science, we use both signed and unsigned integers. Of course, the term “unsigned integer” is actually a bit of a misnomer—in mathematics, the *whole numbers* or *natural numbers* range from 0 (or 1) up to positive infinity, while the *integers* range from negative infinity to positive infinity. Nevertheless, we’ll use computer science lingo in this book and stick with the terms “signed integer” and “unsigned integer.”

Most modern personal computers and game consoles work most easily with integers that are 32 bits or 64 bits wide (although 8- and 16-bit integers are also used a great deal in game programming as well). To represent a 32-bit unsigned integer, we simply encode the value using binary notation (see above). The range of possible values for a 32-bit unsigned integer is 0x00000000 (0) to 0xFFFFFFFF (4,294,967,295).

To represent a *signed* integer in 32 bits, we need a way to differentiate between positive and negative values. One simple approach called the *sign and magnitude* encoding reserves the most significant bit as a *sign bit*. When this bit is zero, the value is positive, and when it is one, the value is negative. This leaves us 31 bits to represent the magnitude of the value, effectively cutting the range of possible magnitudes in half (but allowing both positive and negative forms of every distinct magnitude, including zero).

Most microprocessors use a slightly more efficient technique for encoding negative integers, called *two’s complement* notation. This notation has only one representation for the value zero, as opposed to the two representations possible with simple sign bit (positive zero and negative zero). In 32-bit two’s complement notation, the value 0xFFFFFFFF is interpreted to mean  $-1$ , and negative values count down from there. Any value with the most significant bit set is considered negative. So values from 0x00000000 (0) to 0x7FFFFFFF (2,147,483,647) represent positive integers, and 0x80000000 ( $-2,147,483,648$ ) to 0xFFFFFFFF ( $-1$ ) represent negative integers.

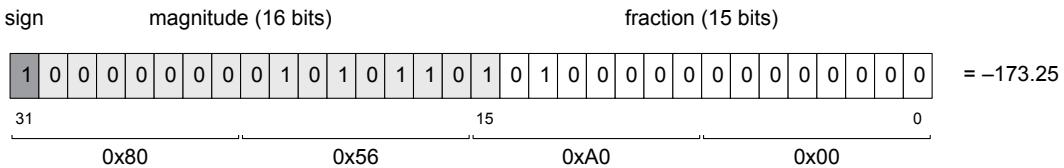


Figure 3.4. Fixed-point notation with 16-bit magnitude and 16-bit fraction.

### 3.3.1.3 Fixed-Point Notation

Integers are great for representing whole numbers, but to represent fractions and irrational numbers we need a different format that expresses the concept of a decimal point.

One early approach taken by computer scientists was to use *fixed-point* notation. In this notation, one arbitrarily chooses how many bits will be used to represent the whole part of the number, and the rest of the bits are used to represent the fractional part. As we move from left to right (i.e., from the most significant bit to the least significant bit), the magnitude bits represent decreasing powers of two (... , 16, 8, 4, 2, 1), while the fractional bits represent decreasing *inverse* powers of two ( $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{16}, \dots$ ). For example, to store the number  $-173.25$  in 32-bit fixed-point notation with one sign bit, 16 bits for the magnitude and 15 bits for the fraction, we first convert the sign, the whole part and the fractional part into their binary equivalents individually (negative = 0b1, 173 = 0b0000000010101101 and  $0.25 = \frac{1}{4} = 0b0100000000000000$ ). Then we pack those values together into a 32-bit integer. The final result is 0x8056A000. This is illustrated in Figure 3.4.

The problem with fixed-point notation is that it constrains both the range of magnitudes that can be represented and the amount of precision we can achieve in the fractional part. Consider a 32-bit fixed-point value with 16 bits for the magnitude, 15 bits for the fraction and a sign bit. This format can only represent magnitudes up to  $\pm 65,535$ , which isn't particularly large. To overcome this problem, we employ a *floating-point* representation.

### 3.3.1.4 Floating-Point Notation

In floating-point notation, the position of the decimal place is arbitrary and is specified with the help of an exponent. A floating-point number is broken into three parts: the *mantissa*, which contains the relevant digits of the number on both sides of the decimal point, the *exponent*, which indicates where in that string of digits the decimal point lies, and a *sign bit*, which of course indicates whether the value is positive or negative. There are all sorts of different ways

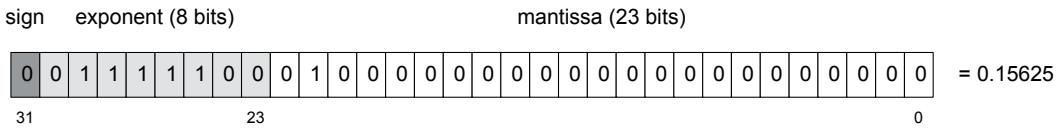


Figure 3.5. IEEE-754 32-bit floating-point format.

to lay out these three components in memory, but the most common standard is IEEE-754. It states that a 32-bit floating-point number will be represented with the sign in the most significant bit, followed by 8 bits of exponent and finally 23 bits of mantissa.

The value  $v$  represented by a sign bit  $s$ , an exponent  $e$  and a mantissa  $m$  is  $v = s \times 2^{(e-127)} \times (1 + m)$ .

The sign bit  $s$  has the value +1 or -1. The exponent  $e$  is biased by 127 so that negative exponents can be easily represented. The mantissa begins with an implicit 1 that is not actually stored in memory, and the rest of the bits are interpreted as inverse powers of two. Hence the value represented is really  $1 + m$ , where  $m$  is the fractional value stored in the mantissa.

For example, the bit pattern shown in Figure 3.5 represents the value 0.15625, because  $s = 0$  (indicating a positive number),  $e = 0b01111100 = 124$  and  $m = 0b0100\dots = 0 \times 2^{-1} + 1 \times 2^{-2} = \frac{1}{4}$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
 v &= s \times 2^{(e-127)} \times (1 + m) \\
 &= (+1) \times 2^{(124-127)} \times (1 + \frac{1}{4}) \\
 &= 2^{-3} \times \frac{5}{4} \\
 &= \frac{1}{8} \times \frac{5}{4} \\
 &= 0.125 \times 1.25 = 0.15625.
 \end{aligned}$$

### *The Trade-Off between Magnitude and Precision*

The *precision* of a floating-point number increases as the *magnitude* decreases, and vice versa. This is because there are a fixed number of bits in the mantissa, and these bits must be shared between the whole part and the fractional part of the number. If a large percentage of the bits are spent representing a large magnitude, then a small percentage of bits are available to provide fractional precision. In physics the term *significant digits* is typically used to describe this concept ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Significant\\_digits](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Significant_digits)).

To understand the trade-off between magnitude and precision, let's look at the largest possible floating-point value,  $\text{FLT\_MAX} \approx 3.403 \times 10^{38}$ , whose

representation in 32-bit IEEE floating-point format is 0x7F7FFFFFF. Let's break this down:

- The largest absolute value that we can represent with a 23-bit mantissa is 0x00FFFFFF in hexadecimal, or 24 consecutive binary ones—that's 23 ones in the mantissa, plus the implicit leading one.
- An exponent of 255 has a special meaning in the IEEE-754 format—it is used for values like not-a-number (NaN) and infinity—so it cannot be used for regular numbers. Hence the maximum eight-bit exponent is actually 254, which translates into 127 after subtracting the implicit bias of 127.

So `FLT_MAX` is  $0x00FFFFFF \times 2^{127} = 0xFFFFFFF00000000000000000000000000000000$ . In other words, our 24 binary ones were shifted up by 127 bit positions, leaving  $127 - 23 = 104$  binary zeros (or  $104/4 = 26$  hexadecimal zeros) after the least significant digit of the mantissa. Those trailing zeros don't correspond to any actual bits in our 32-bit floating-point value—they just appear out of thin air because of the exponent. If we were to subtract a small number (where "small" means any number composed of fewer than 26 hexadecimal digits) from `FLT_MAX`, the result would still be `FLT_MAX`, because those 26 least significant hexadecimal digits don't really exist!

The opposite effect occurs for floating-point values whose magnitudes are much less than one. In this case, the exponent is large but negative, and the significant digits are shifted in the opposite direction. We trade the ability to represent large magnitudes for high precision. In summary, we always have the same number of *significant digits* (or really *significant bits*) in our floating-point numbers, and the exponent can be used to shift those significant bits into higher or lower ranges of magnitude.

### Subnormal Values

Another subtlety to notice is that there is a finite gap between zero and the smallest nonzero value we can represent with floating-point notation (as it has been described thus far). The smallest nonzero magnitude we can represent is `FLT_MIN` =  $2^{-126} \approx 1.175 \times 10^{-38}$ , which has a binary representation of 0x00800000 (i.e., the exponent is 0x01, or  $-126$  after subtracting the bias, and the mantissa is all zeros except for the implicit leading one). The next smallest valid value is zero, so there is a finite gap between the values `-FLT_MIN` and `+FLT_MIN`. This underscores the fact that the real number line is *quantized* when using a floating-point representation. (Note that the C++ standard library exposes `FLT_MIN` as the rather more verbose `std::numeric_limits`

`<float>::min()`. We'll stick to `FLT_MIN` in this book for brevity.)

The gap around zero can be filled by employing an extension to the floating-point representation known as *denormalized values*, also known as *subnormal values*. With this extension, any floating-point value with a biased exponent of 0 is interpreted as a subnormal number. The exponent is treated as if it had been a 1 instead of a 0, and the implicit leading 1 that normally sits in front of the bits of the mantissa is changed to a 0. This has the effect of filling the gap between `-FLT_MIN` and `+FLT_MIN` with a linear sequence of evenly-spaced subnormal values. The positive subnormal `float` that is closest to zero is represented by the constant `FLT_TRUE_MIN`.

The benefit of using subnormal values is that it provides greater precision near zero. For example, it ensures that the following two expressions are equivalent, even for values of `a` and `b` that are very close to `FLT_MIN`:

```
if (a == b) { ... }
if (a - b == 0.0f) { ... }
```

Without subnormal values, the expression `a - b` could evaluate to zero even when `a != b`.

### *Machine Epsilon*

For a particular floating-point representation, the *machine epsilon* is defined to be the smallest floating-point value  $\epsilon$  that satisfies the equation,  $1 + \epsilon \neq 1$ . For an IEEE-754 floating-point number, with its 23 bits of precision, the value of  $\epsilon$  is  $2^{-23}$ , which is approximately  $1.192 \times 10^{-7}$ . The most significant digit of  $\epsilon$  falls *just inside* the range of significant digits in the value 1.0, so adding any value smaller than  $\epsilon$  to 1.0 has no effect. In other words, any new bits contributed adding a value smaller than  $\epsilon$  will get “chopped off” when we try to fit the sum into a mantissa with only 23 bits.

### *Units in the Last Place (ULP)*

Consider two floating-point numbers which are identical in all respects except for the value of the least-significant bit in their mantissas. These two values are said to differ by one *unit in the last place* (1 ULP). The actual value of 1 ULP changes depending on the exponent. For example, the floating-point value `1.0f` has an unbiased exponent of zero, and a mantissa in which all bits are zero (except for the implicit leading 1). At this exponent, 1 ULP is equal to the machine epsilon ( $2^{-23}$ ). If we change the exponent to a 1, yielding the value `2.0f`, the value of 1 ULP becomes equal to two times the machine epsilon. And if the exponent is 2, yielding the value `4.0f`, the value of 1 ULP is four

times the machine epsilon. In general, if a floating-point value's unbiased exponent is  $x$ , then 1 ULP =  $2^x \cdot \epsilon$ .

The concept of units in the last place illustrates the idea that the precision of a floating-point number depends on its exponent, and is useful for quantifying the error inherent in any floating-point calculation. It can also be useful for finding the floating-point value that is the next largest representable value relative to a known value, or conversely the next smallest representable value relative to that value. This in turn can be useful for converting a greater-than-or-equal comparison into a greater-than comparison. Mathematically, the condition  $a \geq b$  is equivalent to the condition  $a + 1 \text{ ULP} > b$ . We use this little "trick" in the Naughty Dog engine to simplify some logic in our character dialog system. In this system, simple comparisons can be used to select different lines of dialog for the characters to say. Rather than supporting all possible comparison operators, we only support greater-than and less-than checks, and we handle greater-than-or-equal-to and less-than-or-equal-to by adding or subtracting 1 ULP to or from the value being compared.

### *Impact of Floating-Point Precision on Software*

The concepts of limited precision and the machine epsilon have real impacts on game software. For example, let's say we use a floating-point variable to track absolute game time in seconds. How long can we run our game before the magnitude of our clock variable gets so large that adding  $1/30^{\text{th}}$  of a second to it no longer changes its value? The answer is 12.14 days or  $2^{20}$  seconds. That's longer than most games will be left running, so we can probably get away with using a 32-bit floating-point clock measured in seconds in a game. But clearly it's important to understand the limitations of the floating-point format so that we can predict potential problems and take steps to avoid them when necessary.

### *IEEE Floating-Point Bit Tricks*

See [9, Section 2.1] for a few really useful IEEE floating-point "bit tricks" that can make certain floating-point calculations lightning fast.

## 3.3.2 Primitive Data Types

C and C++ provide a number of primitive data types. The C and C++ standards provide guidelines on the relative sizes and signedness of these data types, but each compiler is free to define the types slightly differently in order to provide maximum performance on the target hardware.

- `char`. A `char` is usually 8 bits and is generally large enough to hold an ASCII or UTF-8 character (see Section 6.4.4.1). Some compilers define `char` to be signed, while others use unsigned `char`s by default.
- `int`, `short`, `long`. An `int` is supposed to hold a signed integer value that is the most efficient size for the target platform; it is usually defined to be 32 bits wide on a 32-bit CPU architecture, such as Pentium 4 or Xeon, and 64 bits wide on a 64-bit architecture, such as Intel Core i7, although the size of an `int` is also dependent upon other factors such as compiler options and the target operating system. A `short` is intended to be smaller than an `int` and is 16 bits on many machines. A `long` is as large as or larger than an `int` and may be 32 or 64 bits wide, or even wider, again depending on CPU architecture, compiler options and the target OS.
- `float`. On most modern compilers, a `float` is a 32-bit IEEE-754 floating-point value.
- `double`. A `double` is a double-precision (i.e., 64-bit) IEEE-754 floating-point value.
- `bool`. A `bool` is a true/false value. The size of a `bool` varies widely across different compilers and hardware architectures. It is never implemented as a single bit, but some compilers define it to be 8 bits while others use a full 32 bits.

### *Portable Sized Types*

The built-in primitive data types in C and C++ were designed to be portable and therefore nonspecific. However, in many software engineering endeavors, including game engine programming, it is often important to know exactly how wide a particular variable is.

Before C++11, programmers had to rely on non-portable sized types provided by their compiler. For example, the Visual Studio C/C++ compiler defined the following extended keywords for declaring variables that are an explicit number of bits wide: `_int8`, `_int16`, `_int32` and `_int64`. Most other compilers have their own “sized” data types, with similar semantics but slightly different syntax.

Because of these differences between compilers, most game engines achieved source code portability by defining their own custom sized types. For example, at Naughty Dog we use the following sized types:

- `F32` is a 32-bit IEEE-754 floating-point value.
- `U8`, `I8`, `U16`, `I16`, `U32`, `I32`, `U64` and `I64` are unsigned and signed 8-, 16-, 32- and 64-bit integers, respectively.

- `U32F` and `I32F` are “fast” unsigned and signed 32-bit values, respectively. Each of these data types contains a value that is at least 32 bits wide, but may be wider if that would result in faster code on the target CPU.

```
<cstdint>
```

The C++11 standard library introduces a set of standardized sized integer types. They are declared in the `<cstdint>` header, and they include the signed types `std::int8_t`, `std::int16_t`, `std::int32_t` and `std::int64_t` and the unsigned types `std::uint8_t`, `std::uint16_t`, `std::uint32_t` and `std::uint64_t`, along with “fast” variants (like the `I32F` and `U32F` types we defined at Naughty Dog). These types free the programmer from having to “wrap” compiler-specific types in order to achieve portability. For a complete list of these sized types, see <http://en.cppreference.com/w/cpp/types/integer>.

### *OGRE’s Primitive Data Types*

OGRE defines a number of sized types of its own. `Ogre::uint8`, `Ogre::uint16` and `Ogre::uint32` are the basic unsigned sized integral types.

`Ogre::Real` defines a real floating-point value. It is usually defined to be 32 bits wide (equivalent to a `float`), but it can be redefined globally to be 64 bits wide (like a `double`) by defining the preprocessor macro `OGRE_DOUBLE_PRECISION` to 1. This ability to change the meaning of `Ogre::Real` is generally only used if one’s game has a particular requirement for double-precision math, which is rare. Graphics chips (GPUs) always perform their math with 32-bit or 16-bit floats, the CPU/FPU is also usually faster when working in single-precision, and SIMD vector instructions operate on 128-bit registers that contain four 32-bit floats each. Hence, most games tend to stick to single-precision floating-point math.

The data types `Ogre::uchar`, `Ogre::ushort`, `Ogre::uint` and `Ogre::ulong` are just shorthand notations for C/C++’s `unsigned char`, `unsigned short` and `unsigned long`, respectively. As such, they are no more or less useful than their native C/C++ counterparts.

The types `Ogre::Radian` and `Ogre::Degree` are particularly interesting. These classes are wrappers around a simple `Ogre::Real` value. The primary role of these types is to permit the angular units of hard-coded literal constants to be documented and to provide automatic conversion between the two unit systems. In addition, the type `Ogre::Angle` represents an angle in the current “default” angle unit. The programmer can define whether the default will be radians or degrees when the OGRE application first starts up.

Perhaps surprisingly, OGRE does not provide a number of sized primitive data types that are commonplace in other game engines. For example, it defines no signed 8-, 16- or 64-bit integral types. If you are writing a game engine on top of OGRE, you will probably find yourself defining these types manually at some point.

### 3.3.2.1 Multibyte Values and Endianness

Values that are larger than eight bits (one byte) wide are called *multibyte quantities*. They're commonplace on any software project that makes use of integers and floating-point values that are 16 bits or wider. For example, the integer value  $4660 = 0x1234$  is represented by the two bytes 0x12 and 0x34. We call 0x12 the most significant byte and 0x34 the least significant byte. In a 32-bit value, such as 0xABCD1234, the most-significant byte is 0xAB and the least-significant is 0x34. The same concepts apply to 64-bit integers and to 32- and 64-bit floating-point values as well.

Multibyte integers can be stored into memory in one of two ways, and different microprocessors may differ in their choice of storage method (see Figure 3.6).

- *Little-endian*. If a microprocessor stores the least significant byte of a multibyte value at a lower memory address than the most significant byte, we say that the processor is *little-endian*. On a little-endian machine, the number 0xABCD1234 would be stored in memory using the consecutive bytes 0x34, 0x12, 0xCD, 0xAB.
- *Big-endian*. If a microprocessor stores the most significant byte of a multibyte value at a lower memory address than the least significant byte,

```
U32 value = 0xABCD1234;
U8* pBytes = (U8*)&value;
```

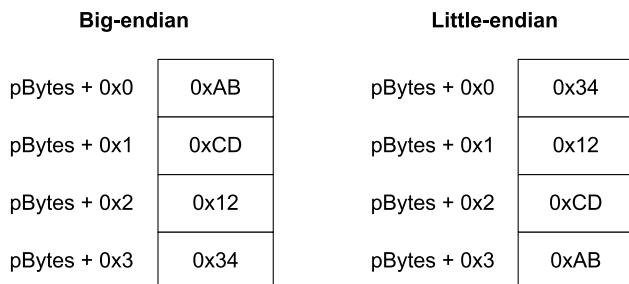


Figure 3.6. Big- and little-endian representations of the value 0xABCD1234.

we say that the processor is *big-endian*. On a big-endian machine, the number 0xABCD1234 would be stored in memory using the bytes 0xAB, 0xCD, 0x12, 0x34.

Most programmers don't need to think much about endianness. However, when you're a game programmer, endianness can become a bit of a thorn in your side. This is because games are usually *developed* on a Windows or Linux machine running an Intel Pentium processor (which is little-endian), but *run* on a console such as the Wii, Xbox 360 or PlayStation 3—all three of which utilize a variant of the PowerPC processor (which can be configured to use either endianness, but is big-endian by default). Now imagine what happens when you generate a data file for consumption by your game engine on an Intel processor and then try to load that data file into your engine running on a PowerPC processor. Any multibyte value that you wrote out into that data file will be stored in little-endian format. But when the game engine reads the file, it expects all of its data to be in big-endian format. The result? You'll write 0xABCD1234, but you'll read 0x3412CDAB, and that's clearly not what you intended!

There are at least two solutions to this problem.

1. You could write all your data files as text and store all multibyte numbers as sequences of decimal or hexadecimal digits, one character (one byte) per digit. This would be an inefficient use of disk space, but it would work.
2. You can have your tools endian-swap the data prior to writing it into a binary data file. In effect, you make sure that the data file uses the endianness of the target microprocessor (the game console), even if the tools are running on a machine that uses the opposite endianness.

### *Integer Endian-Swapping*

Endian-swapping an integer is not conceptually difficult. You simply start at the most significant byte of the value and swap it with the least significant byte; you continue this process until you reach the halfway point in the value. For example, 0xA7891023 would become 0x231089A7.

The only tricky part is knowing *which bytes* to swap. Let's say you're writing the contents of a C `struct` or C++ `class` from memory out to a file. To properly endian-swap this data, you need to keep track of the locations and sizes of each data member in the `struct` and swap each one appropriately based on its size. For example, the structure

```
struct Example
{
    U32    m_a;
    U16    m_b;
    U32    m_c;
};
```

might be written out to a data file as follows:

```
void writeExampleStruct(Example& ex, Stream& stream)
{
    stream.writeU32(swapU32(ex.m_a));
    stream.writeU16(swapU16(ex.m_b));
    stream.writeU32(swapU32(ex.m_c));
}
```

and the swap functions might be defined like this:

```
inline U16 swapU16(U16 value)
{
    return ((value & 0x00FF) << 8)
        | ((value & 0xFF00) >> 8);
}

inline U32 swapU32(U32 value)
{
    return ((value & 0x000000FF) << 24)
        | ((value & 0x0000FF00) << 8)
        | ((value & 0x00FF0000) >> 8)
        | ((value & 0xFF000000) >> 24);
}
```

You cannot simply cast the `Example` object into an array of bytes and blindly swap the bytes using a single general-purpose function. We need to know both *which data members* to swap and *how wide* each member is, and each data member must be swapped individually.

Some compilers provide built-in endian-swapping macros, freeing you from having to write your own. For example, gcc offers a family of macros named `__builtin_bswapXX()` for performing 16-, 32- and 64-bit endian swaps. However, such compiler-specific facilities are of course non-portable.

### *Floating-Point Endian-Swapping*

As we've seen, an IEEE-754 floating-point value has a detailed internal structure involving some bits for the mantissa, some bits for the exponent and a sign bit. However, you can endian-swap it just as if it were an integer, because bytes are bytes. You merely reinterpret the bit pattern of your `float`

as if it were a `std::int32_t`, perform the endian swapping operation, and then reinterpret the result as a `float` again.

You can reinterpret floats as integers by using C++'s `reinterpret_cast` operator on a pointer to the float, and then dereferencing the type-cast pointer; this is known as *type punning*. But punning can lead to optimization bugs when strict aliasing is enabled. (See <http://www.cocoawithlove.com/2008/04/using-pointers-to-recast-in-c-is-bad.html> for an excellent description of this problem.) One alternative that's guaranteed to be portable is to use a union, as follows:

```
union U32F32
{
    U32    m_asU32;
    F32    m_asF32;
};

inline F32 swapF32(F32 value)
{
    U32F32 u;
    u.m_asF32 = value;

    // endian-swap as integer
    u.m_asU32 = swapU32(u.m_asU32);

    return u.m_asF32;
}
```

### 3.3.3 Kilobytes versus Kibibytes

You've probably used metric (SI) units like kilobytes (kB) and megabytes (MB) to describe quantities of memory. However, the use of these units to describe quantities of memory that are measured in powers of two isn't strictly correct. When a computer programmer speaks of a "kilobyte," she or he usually means 1024 bytes. But SI units define the prefix "kilo" to mean  $10^3$  or 1000, not 1024.

To resolve this ambiguity, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) in 1998 established a new set of SI-like prefixes for use in computer science. These prefixes are defined in terms of powers of two rather than powers of ten, so that computer engineers can precisely and conveniently specify quantities that are powers of two. In this new system, instead of kilobyte (1000 bytes), we say kibibyte (1024 bytes, abbreviated KiB). And instead of megabyte (1,000,000 bytes), we say mebibyte ( $1024 \times 1024 = 1,048,576$  bytes, abbreviated MiB). Table 3.1 summarizes the sizes, prefixes and names of the

Metric (SI)			IEC		
Value	Unit	Name	Value	Unit	Name
1000	kB	kilobyte	1024	KiB	kibibyte
$1000^2$	MB	megabyte	$1024^2$	MiB	mebibyte
$1000^3$	GB	gigabyte	$1024^3$	GiB	gibibyte
$1000^4$	TB	terabyte	$1024^4$	TiB	tebibyte
$1000^5$	PB	petabyte	$1024^5$	PiB	pebibyte
$1000^6$	EB	exabyte	$1024^6$	EiB	exbibyte
$1000^7$	ZB	zettabyte	$1024^7$	ZiB	zebibyte
$1000^8$	YB	yottabyte	$1024^8$	YiB	yobibyte

Table 3.1. Comparison of metric (SI) units and IEC units for describing quantities of bytes.

most commonly used byte quantity units in both the SI and IEC systems. We'll use IEC units throughout this book.

### 3.3.4 Declarations, Definitions and Linkage

#### 3.3.4.1 Translation Units Revisited

As we saw in Chapter 2, a C or C++ program is comprised of *translation units*. The compiler translates one .cpp file at a time, and for each one it generates an output file called an object file (.o or .obj). A .cpp file is the smallest unit of translation operated on by the compiler; hence, the name "translation unit." An object file contains not only the compiled machine code for all of the functions defined in the .cpp file, but also all of its global and static variables. In addition, an object file may contain *unresolved references* to functions and global variables defined in *other* .cpp files.

The compiler only operates on one translation unit at a time, so whenever it encounters a reference to an external global variable or function, it must "go on faith" and assume that the entity in question really exists, as shown in Figure 3.7. It is the linker's job to combine all of the object files into a final executable image. In doing so, the linker reads all of the object files and attempts to resolve all of the unresolved cross-references between them. If it is successful, an executable image is generated containing all of the functions, global variables and static variables, with all cross-translation-unit references properly resolved. This is depicted in Figure 3.8.

The linker's primary job is to resolve external references, and in this

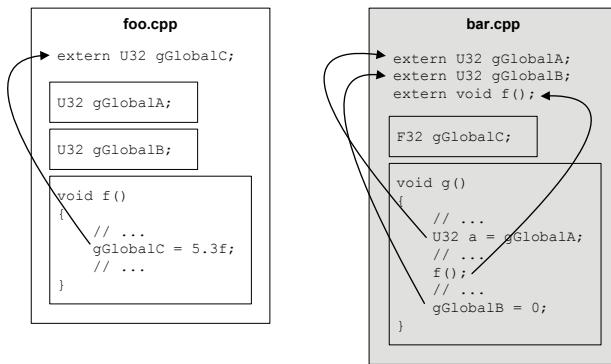


Figure 3.7. Unresolved external references in two translation units.

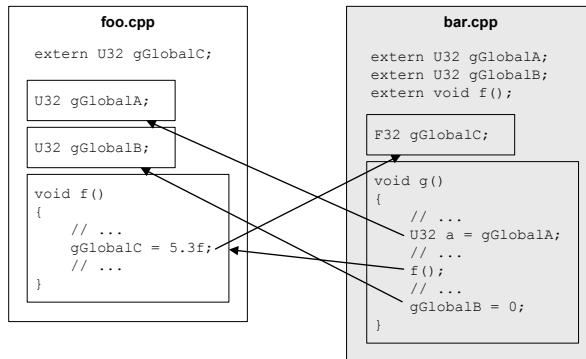


Figure 3.8. Fully resolved external references after successful linking.

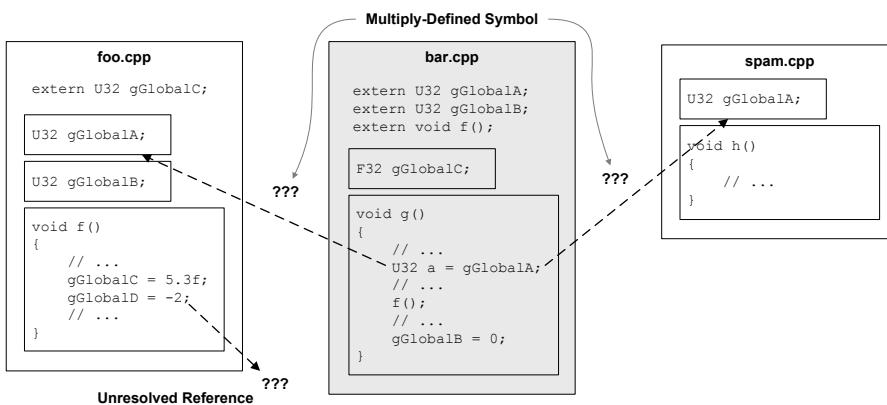


Figure 3.9. The two most common linker errors.

capacity it can generate only two kinds of errors:

1. The target of an `extern` reference might not be found, in which case the linker generates an “unresolved symbol” error.
2. The linker might find more than one variable or function with the same name, in which case it generates a “multiply defined symbol” error.

These two situations are shown in Figure 3.9.

### 3.3.4.2 Declaration versus Definition

In the C and C++ languages, variables and functions must be *declared* and *defined* before they can be used. It is important to understand the difference between a declaration and a definition in C and C++.

- A *declaration* is a description of a data object or function. It provides the compiler with the *name* of the entity and its *data type* or *function signature* (i.e., return type and argument type(s)).
- A *definition*, on the other hand, describes a unique region of memory in the program. This memory might contain a variable, an instance of a struct or class or the machine code of a function.

In other words, a declaration is a *reference to an entity*, while a definition is the *entity itself*. A definition is always a declaration, but the reverse is not always the case—it is possible to write a pure declaration in C and C++ that is not a definition.

Functions are *defined* by writing the body of the function immediately after the signature, enclosed in curly braces:

*foo.cpp*

```
// definition of the max() function
int max(int a, int b)
{
    return (a > b) ? a : b;
}

// definition of the min() function
int min(int a, int b)
{
    return (a <= b) ? a : b;
}
```

A pure declaration can be provided for a function so that it can be used in other translation units (or later in the same translation unit). This is done by writing a function signature followed by a semicolon, with an optional prefix of `extern`:

*foo.h*

```
extern int max(int a, int b); // a function declaration

int min(int a, int b); // also a declaration (the extern
                      // is optional/assumed)
```

Variables and instances of classes and `structs` are defined by writing the data type followed by the name of the variable or instance and an optional array specifier in square brackets:

*foo.cpp*

```
// All of these are variable definitions:
U32 gGlobalInteger = 5;
F32 gGlobalFloatArray[16];
MyClass gGlobalInstance;
```

A global variable defined in one translation unit can optionally be *declared* for use in other translation units by using the `extern` keyword:

*foo.h*

```
// These are all pure declarations:
extern U32 gGlobalInteger;
extern F32 gGlobalFloatArray[16];
extern MyClass gGlobalInstance;
```

### *Multiplicity of Declarations and Definitions*

Not surprisingly, any particular data object or function in a C/C++ program can have multiple identical *declarations*, but each can have only one *definition*. If two or more identical definitions exist in a single translation unit, the compiler will notice that multiple entities have the same name and flag an error. If two or more identical definitions exist in *different* translation units, the compiler will not be able to identify the problem, because it operates on one translation unit at a time. But in this case, the linker will give us a “multiply defined symbol” error when it tries to resolve the cross-references.

### *Definitions in Header Files and Inlining*

It is usually dangerous to place *definitions* in header files. The reason for this should be pretty obvious: if a header file containing a *definition* is #included into more than one .cpp file, it's a sure-fire way of generating a "multiply defined symbol" linker error.

Inline function definitions are an exception to this rule, because each invocation of an inline function gives rise to a brand new copy of that function's machine code, embedded directly into the calling function. In fact, inline function definitions *must* be placed in header files if they are to be used in more than one translation unit. Note that it is *not* sufficient to tag a function *declaration* with the `inline` keyword in a .h file and then place the body of that function in a .cpp file. The compiler must be able to "see" the body of the function in order to inline it. For example:

*foo.h*

```
// This function definition will be inlined properly.
inline int max(int a, int b)
{
    return (a > b) ? a : b;
}

// This declaration cannot be inlined because the
// compiler cannot "see" the body of the function.
inline int min(int a, int b);
```

*foo.cpp*

```
// The body of min() is effectively "hidden" from the
// compiler, so it can ONLY be inlined within foo.cpp.
int min(int a, int b)
{
    return (a <= b) ? a : b;
}
```

The `inline` keyword is really just a hint to the compiler. It does a cost/benefit analysis of each inline function, weighing the size of the function's code versus the potential performance benefits of inlining it, and the compiler gets the final say as to whether the function will really be inlined or not. Some compilers provide syntax like `__forceinline`, allowing the programmer to bypass the compiler's cost/benefit analysis and control function inlining directly.

### Templates and Header Files

The definition of a templated class or function must be visible to the compiler across all translation units in which it is used. As such, if you want a template to be usable in more than one translation unit, the template must be placed into a header file (just as inline function definitions must be). The declaration and definition of a template are therefore inseparable: You cannot declare templated functions or classes in a header but “hide” their definitions inside a .cpp file, because doing so would render those definitions invisible within any other .cpp file that includes that header.

#### 3.3.4.3 Linkage

Every definition in C and C++ has a property known as *linkage*. A definition with *external linkage* is visible to and can be referenced by translation units other than the one in which it appears. A definition with *internal linkage* can only be “seen” inside the translation unit in which it appears and thus cannot be referenced by other translation units. We call this property *linkage* because it dictates whether or not the linker is permitted to cross-reference the entity in question. So, in a sense, linkage is the translation unit’s equivalent of the `public:` and `private:` keywords in C++ class definitions.

By default, definitions have external linkage. The `static` keyword is used to change a definition’s linkage to internal. Note that two or more identical `static` definitions in two or more different .cpp files are considered to be *distinct entities* by the linker (just as if they had been given different names), so they will *not* generate a “multiply defined symbol” error. Here are some examples:

*foo.cpp*

```
// This variable can be used by other .cpp files
// (external linkage).
U32 gExternalVariable;

// This variable is only usable within foo.cpp (internal
// linkage).
static U32 gInternalVariable;

// This function can be called from other .cpp files
// (external linkage).
void externalFunction()
{
    // ...
}
```

```
// This function can only be called from within foo.cpp
// (internal linkage).
static void internalFunction()
{
    // ...
}
```

*bar.cpp*

```
// This declaration grants access to foo.cpp's variable.
extern U32 gExternalVariable;

// This 'gInternalVariable' is distinct from the one
// defined in foo.cpp -- no error. We could just as
// well have named it gInternalVariableForBarCpp -- the
// net effect is the same.
static U32 gInternalVariable;

// This function is distinct from foo.cpp's
// version -- no error. It acts as if we had named it
// internalFunctionForBarCpp().
static void internalFunction()
{
    // ...
}

// ERROR -- multiply defined symbol!
void externalFunction()
{
    // ...
}
```

Technically speaking, *declarations* don't have a linkage property at all, because they do not allocate any storage in the executable image; therefore, there is no question as to whether or not the linker should be permitted to cross-reference that storage. A declaration is merely a reference to an entity defined elsewhere. However, it is sometimes convenient to speak about declarations as having internal linkage, because a declaration only applies to the translation unit in which it appears. If we allow ourselves to loosen our terminology in this manner, then declarations *always* have internal linkage—there is no way to cross-reference a single declaration in multiple .cpp files. (If we put a declaration in a header file, then multiple .cpp files can “see” that declaration, but they are in effect each getting a distinct *copy* of the declaration, and each copy has internal linkage within that translation unit.)

This leads us to the real reason why inline function definitions are permitted in header files: it is because inline functions have *internal linkage* by default, just as if they had been declared `static`. If multiple .cpp files `#include` a header containing an inline function definition, each translation unit gets a private copy of that function's body, and no "multiply defined symbol" errors are generated. The linker sees each copy as a distinct entity.

### 3.3.5 Memory Layout of a C/C++ Program

A program written in C or C++ stores its data in a number of different places in memory. In order to understand how storage is allocated and how the various types of C/C++ variables work, we need to understand the memory layout of a C/C++ program.

#### 3.3.5.1 Executable Image

When a C/C++ program is built, the linker creates an *executable file*. Most UNIX-like operating systems, including many game consoles, employ a popular executable file format called the *executable and linking format* (ELF). Executable files on those systems therefore have a .elf extension. The Windows executable format is similar to the ELF format; executables under Windows have a .exe extension. Whatever its format, the executable file always contains a partial *image* of the program as it will exist in memory when it runs. I say a "partial" image because the program generally allocates memory at runtime in addition to the memory laid out in its executable image.

The executable image is divided into contiguous blocks called *segments* or *sections*. Every operating system lays things out a little differently, and the layout may also differ slightly from executable to executable on the same operating system. But the image is usually comprised of at least the following four segments:

1. *Text segment*. Sometimes called the *code segment*, this block contains executable machine code for all functions defined by the program.
2. *Data segment*. This segment contains all *initialized* global and static variables. The memory needed for each global variable is laid out exactly as it will appear when the program is run, and the proper initial values are all filled in. So when the executable file is loaded into memory, the initialized global and static variables are ready to go.
3. *BSS segment*. "BSS" is an outdated name which stands for "block started by symbol." This segment contains all of the *uninitialized* global and

static variables defined by the program. The C and C++ languages explicitly define the initial value of any uninitialized global or static variable to be zero. But rather than storing a potentially very large block of zeros in the BSS section, the linker simply stores a *count* of how many zero bytes are required to account for all of the uninitialized globals and statics in the segment. When the executable is loaded into memory, the operating system reserves the requested number of bytes for the BSS section and fills it with zeros prior to calling the program's entry point (e.g., `main()` or `WinMain()`).

4. *Read-only data segment.* Sometimes called the *rodata* segment, this segment contains any read-only (constant) global data defined by the program. For example, all floating-point constants (e.g., `const float kPi = 3.141592f;`) and all global object instances that have been declared with the `const` keyword (e.g., `const Foo gReadOnlyFoo;`) reside in this segment. Note that integer constants (e.g., `const int kMaxMonsters = 255;`) are often used as *manifest constants* by the compiler, meaning that they are inserted directly into the machine code wherever they are used. Such constants occupy storage in the text segment, but they are not present in the read-only data segment.

Global variables (variables defined at *file scope* outside any function or class declaration) are stored in either the data or BSS segments, depending on whether or not they have been initialized. The following global will be stored in the data segment, because it has been initialized:

*foo.cpp*

```
F32 gInitializedGlobal = -2.0f;
```

and the following global will be allocated and initialized to zero by the operating system, based on the specifications given in the BSS segment, because it has not been initialized by the programmer:

*foo.cpp*

```
F32 gUninitializedGlobal;
```

We've seen that the `static` keyword can be used to give a global variable or function definition *internal linkage*, meaning that it will be "hidden" from other translation units. The `static` keyword can also be used to declare a global variable *within a function*. A function-static variable is *lexically scoped* to the function in which it is declared (i.e., the variable's name can only be "seen" inside the function). It is initialized the first time the function is called (rather than before `main()` is called, as with file-scope statics). But in terms of memory layout in the executable image, a function-static variable acts identically

to a file-static global variable—it is stored in either the data or BSS segment based on whether or not it has been initialized.

```
void readHitchhikersGuide(U32 book)
{
    static U32 sBooksInTheTrilogy = 5; // data segment
    static U32 sBooksRead;           // BSS segment
    // ...
}
```

### 3.3.5.2 Program Stack

When an executable program is loaded into memory and run, the operating system reserves an area of memory for the *program stack*. Whenever a function is called, a contiguous area of stack memory is pushed onto the stack—we call this block of memory a *stack frame*. If function `a()` calls another function `b()`, a new stack frame for `b()` is pushed on top of `a()`'s frame. When `b()` returns, its stack frame is popped, and execution continues wherever `a()` left off.

A stack frame stores three kinds of data:

1. It stores the *return address* of the calling function so that execution may continue in the calling function when the called function returns.
2. The contents of all relevant *CPU registers* are saved in the stack frame. This allows the new function to use the registers in any way it sees fit, without fear of overwriting data needed by the calling function. Upon return to the calling function, the state of the registers is restored so that execution of the calling function may resume. The return value of the called function, if any, is usually left in a specific register so that the calling function can retrieve it, but the other registers are restored to their original values.
3. The stack frame also contains all *local variables* declared by the function; these are also known as *automatic variables*. This allows each distinct function invocation to maintain its own private copy of every local variable, even when a function calls itself recursively. (In practice, some local variables are actually allocated to CPU registers rather than being stored in the stack frame, but for the most part such variables operate as if they were allocated within the function's stack frame.)

Pushing and popping stack frames is usually implemented by adjusting the value of a single register in the CPU, known as the stack pointer. Figure 3.10 illustrates what happens when the functions shown below are executed.

```

void c()
{
    U32 localC1;
    // ...
}

F32 b()
{
    F32 localB1;
    I32 localB2;

    // ...

    c();
    // ...

    return localB1;
}

```

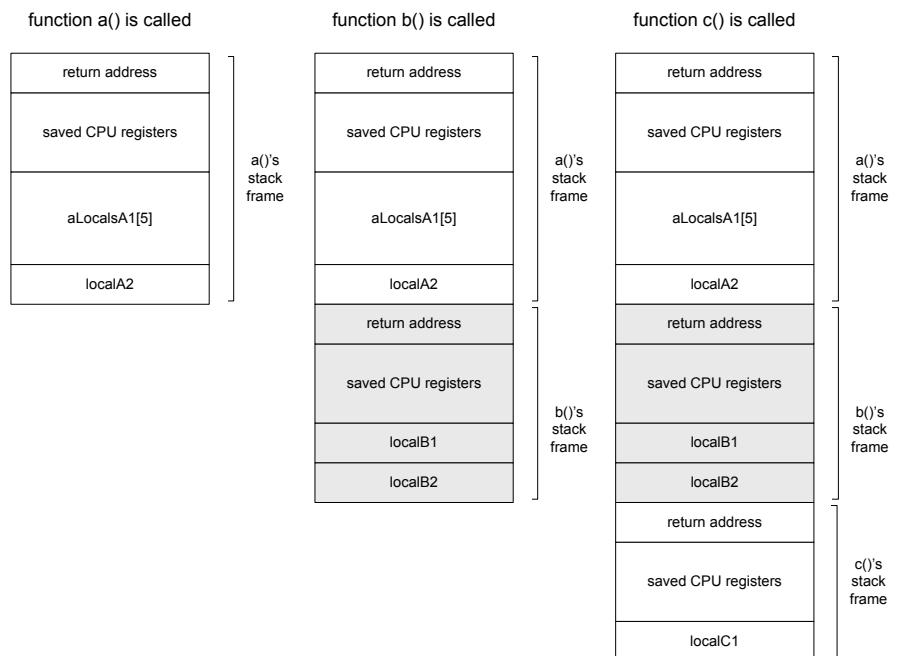


Figure 3.10. Stack frames.

```
void a()
{
    U32 aLocalsA1[5];

    // ...

    F32 localA2 = b();

    // ...
}
```

When a function containing automatic variables returns, its stack frame is abandoned and all automatic variables in the function should be treated as if they no longer exist. Technically, the memory occupied by those variables is still there in the abandoned stack frame—but that memory will very likely be overwritten as soon as another function is called. A common error involves returning the address of a local variable, like this:

```
U32* getMeaningOfLife()
{
    U32 anInteger = 42;
    return &anInteger;
}
```

You *might* get away with this if you use the returned pointer immediately and don't call any other functions in the interim. But more often than not, this kind of code will crash—sometimes in ways that can be difficult to debug.

### 3.3.5.3 Dynamic Allocation Heap

Thus far, we've seen that a program's data can be stored as global or static variables or as local variables. The globals and statics are allocated within the executable image, as defined by the data and BSS segments of the executable file. The locals are allocated on the program stack. Both of these kinds of storage are *statically* defined, meaning that the size and layout of the memory is known when the program is compiled and linked. However, a program's memory requirements are often not fully known at compile time. A program usually needs to allocate additional memory *dynamically*.

To allow for dynamic allocation, the operating system maintains a block of memory for each running process from which memory can be allocated by calling `malloc()` (or an OS-specific function like `HeapAlloc()` under Windows) and later returned for reuse by the process at some future time by calling `free()` (or an OS-specific function like `HeapFree()`). This memory block is

known as *heap memory*, or the *free store*. When we allocate memory dynamically, we sometimes say that this memory resides *on the heap*.

In C++, the global `new` and `delete` operators are used to allocate and free memory to and from the free store. Be wary, however—individual classes may overload these operators to allocate memory in custom ways, and even the *global* `new` and `delete` operators can be overloaded, so you cannot simply assume that `new` is always allocating from the global heap.

We will discuss dynamic memory allocation in more depth in Chapter 7. For additional information, see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dynamic\\_memory\\_allocation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dynamic_memory_allocation).

### 3.3.6 Member Variables

C `structs` and C++ `classes` allow variables to be grouped into logical units. It's important to remember that a `class` or `struct` *declaration* allocates no memory. It is merely a description of the layout of the data—a cookie cutter which can be used to stamp out *instances* of that `struct` or `class` later on. For example:

```
struct Foo // struct declaration
{
    U32 mUnsignedValue;
    F32 mFloatValue;
    bool mBooleanValue;
};
```

Once a `struct` or `class` has been declared, it can be allocated (defined) in any of the ways that a primitive data type can be allocated; for example,

- as an automatic variable, on the program stack;

```
void someFunction()
{
    Foo localFoo;
    // ...
}
```

- as a global, file-static or function-static;

```
Foo gFoo;
static Foo sFoo;

void someFunction()
{
    static Foo sLocalFoo;
    // ...
}
```

- dynamically allocated from the heap. In this case, the pointer or reference variable used to hold the address of the data can itself be allocated as an automatic, global, static or even dynamically.

```
Foo* gpFoo = nullptr; // global pointer to a Foo

void someFunction()
{
    // allocate a Foo instance from the heap
    gpFoo = new Foo;

    // ...

    // allocate another Foo, assign to local pointer
    Foo* pAnotherFoo = new Foo;

    // ...

    // allocate a POINTER to a Foo from the heap
    Foo** ppFoo = new Foo*;
    (*ppFoo) = pAnotherFoo;
}
```

### 3.3.6.1 Class-Static Members

As we've seen, the `static` keyword has many different meanings depending on context:

- When used at file scope, `static` means "restrict the visibility of this variable or function so it can only be seen inside this .cpp file."
- When used at function scope, `static` means "this variable is a global, not an automatic, but it can only be seen inside this function."
- When used inside a `struct` or `class` declaration, `static` means "this variable is not a regular member variable, but instead acts just like a global."

Notice that when `static` is used inside a class declaration, it does not control the *visibility* of the variable (as it does when used at file scope)—rather, it differentiates between regular per-instance member variables and per-class variables that act like globals. The *visibility* of a class-static variable is determined by the use of `public:`, `protected:` or `private:` keywords in the class declaration. Class-static variables are automatically included within the namespace of the `class` or `struct` in which they are declared. So the name of the `class` or `struct` must be used to disambiguate the variable whenever it is used outside that `class` or `struct` (e.g., `Foo::sVarName`).

Like an `extern` declaration for a regular global variable, the declaration of a class-static variable within a class allocates no memory. The memory for the class-static variable must be defined in a `.cpp` file. For example:

*foo.h*

```
class Foo
{
public:
    static F32 sClassStatic; // allocates no
                            // memory!
};
```

*foo.cpp*

```
F32 Foo::sClassStatic = -1.0f; // define memory and
                            // initialize
```

### 3.3.7 Object Layout in Memory

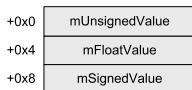


Figure 3.11. Memory layout of a simple struct.

It's useful to be able to visualize the memory layout of your classes and structs. This is usually pretty straightforward—we can simply draw a box for the struct or class, with horizontal lines separating data members. An example of such a diagram for the struct `Foo` listed below is shown in Figure 3.11.

```
struct Foo
{
    U32    mUnsignedValue;
    F32    mFloatValue;
    I32    mSignedValue;
};
```

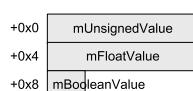


Figure 3.12. A memory layout using width to indicate member sizes.

The sizes of the data members are important and should be represented in your diagrams. This is easily done by using the width of each data member to indicate its size in bits—i.e., a 32-bit integer should be roughly four times the width of an eight-bit integer (see Figure 3.12).

```
struct Bar
{
    U32    mUnsignedValue;
    F32    mFloatValue;
    bool   mBooleanValue; // diagram assumes this is 8 bits
};
```

### 3.3.7.1 Alignment and Packing

As we start to think more carefully about the layout of our structs and classes in memory, we may start to wonder what happens when small data members are interspersed with larger members. For example:

```
struct InefficientPacking
{
    U32    mU1; // 32 bits
    F32    mF2; // 32 bits
    U8     mB3; // 8 bits
    I32    mI4; // 32 bits
    bool   mB5; // 8 bits
    char*  mP6; // 32 bits
};
```

You might imagine that the compiler simply packs the data members into memory as tightly as it can. However, this is not usually the case. Instead, the compiler will typically leave “holes” in the layout, as depicted in Figure 3.13. (Some compilers can be requested not to leave these holes by using a preprocessor directive like `#pragma pack`, or via command-line options; but the default behavior is to space out the members as shown in Figure 3.13.)

Why does the compiler leave these “holes”? The reason lies in the fact that every data type has a natural *alignment*, which must be respected in order to permit the CPU to read and write memory effectively. The *alignment* of a data object refers to whether its *address in memory* is a multiple of its *size* (which is generally a power of two):

- An object with 1-byte alignment resides at any memory address.
- An object with 2-byte alignment resides only at even addresses (i.e., addresses whose least significant nibble is 0x0, 0x2, 0x4, 0x8, 0xA, 0xC or 0xE).
- An object with 4-byte alignment resides only at addresses that are a multiple of four (i.e., addresses whose least significant nibble is 0x0, 0x4, 0x8 or 0xC).
- A 16-byte aligned object resides only at addresses that are a multiple of 16 (i.e., addresses whose least significant nibble is 0x0).

Alignment is important because many modern processors can actually only read and write properly aligned blocks of data. For example, if a program requests that a 32-bit (4-byte) integer be read from address 0x6A341174, the memory controller will load the data happily because the address is 4-byte aligned (in this case, its least significant nibble is 0x4). However, if a request is made to load a 32-bit integer from address 0x6A341173, the memory controller now has to read *two* 4-byte blocks: the one at 0x6A341170 and the one

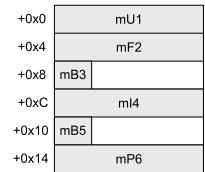


Figure 3.13. Inefficient struct packing due to mixed data member sizes.

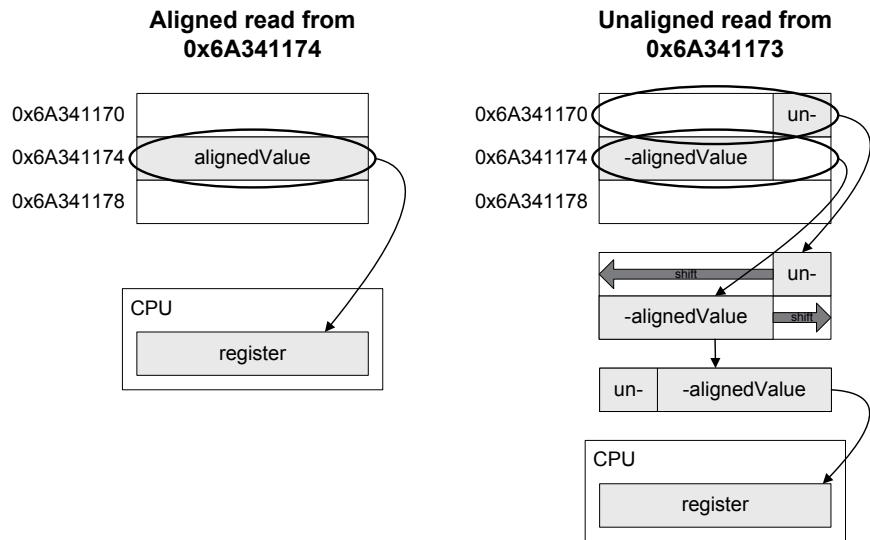


Figure 3.14. Aligned and unaligned reads of a 32-bit integer.

at 0x6A341174. It must then mask and shift the two parts of the 32-bit integer and logically OR them together into the destination register on the CPU. This is shown in Figure 3.14.

Some microprocessors don't even go this far. If you request a read or write of unaligned data, you might just get garbage. Or your program might just crash altogether! (The PlayStation 2 is a notable example of this kind of intolerance for unaligned data.)

Different data types have different alignment requirements. A good rule of thumb is that a data type should be aligned to a boundary equal to the width of the data type in bytes. For example, 32-bit values generally have a 4-byte alignment requirement, 16-bit values should be 2-byte aligned, and 8-bit values can be stored at any address (1-byte aligned). On CPUs that support SIMD vector math, the vector registers each contain four 32-bit floats, for a total of 128 bits or 16 bytes. And as you would guess, a four-float SIMD vector typically has a 16-byte alignment requirement.

This brings us back to those "holes" in the layout of `struct InefficientPacking` shown in Figure 3.13. When smaller data types like 8-bit bools are interspersed with larger types like 32-bit integers or floats in a structure or class, the compiler introduces padding (holes) in order to ensure that everything is properly aligned. It's a good idea to think about alignment and packing when declaring your data structures. By simply rearranging the members of `struct InefficientPacking` from the example above, we can eliminate some of the wasted padding space, as shown below and in Figure 3.15:

+0x0	mU1		
+0x4	mF2		
+0x8	mI4		
+0xC	mP6		
+0x10	mB3	mB5	(pad)

Figure 3.15. More efficient packing by grouping small members together.

```
struct MoreEfficientPacking
{
    U32    mU1; // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    F32    mF2; // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    I32    mI4; // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    char*  mP6; // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    U8     mB3; // 8 bits (1-byte aligned)
    bool   mB5; // 8 bits (1-byte aligned)
};
```

You'll notice in Figure 3.15 that the size of the structure as a whole is now 20 bytes, not 18 bytes as we might expect, because it has been padded by two bytes at the end. This padding is added by the compiler to ensure proper alignment of the structure in an *array context*. That is, if an array of these structs is defined and the first element of the array is aligned, then the padding at the end guarantees that *all subsequent elements* will also be aligned properly.

The alignment of a structure as a whole is equal to the largest alignment requirement among its members. In the example above, the largest member alignment is 4-byte, so the structure as a whole should be 4-byte aligned. I usually like to add explicit padding to the end of my structs to make the wasted space visible and explicit, like this:

```
struct BestPacking
{
    U32    mU1;      // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    F32    mF2;      // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    I32    mI4;      // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    char*  mP6;      // 32 bits (4-byte aligned)
    U8     mB3;      // 8 bits (1-byte aligned)
    bool   mB5;      // 8 bits (1-byte aligned)
    U8    _pad[2]; // explicit padding
};
```

### 3.3.7.2 Memory Layout of C++ Classes

Two things make C++ classes a little different from C structures in terms of memory layout: *inheritance* and *virtual functions*.

When class B inherits from class A, B's data members simply appear immediately after A's in memory, as shown in Figure 3.16. Each new derived class simply tacks its data members on at the end, although alignment requirements may introduce padding between the classes. (Multiple inheritance does some whacky things, like including multiple copies of a single base class in the memory layout of a derived class. We won't cover the details here, because game programmers usually prefer to avoid multiple inheritance altogether anyway.)

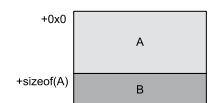


Figure 3.16. Effect of inheritance on class layout.

If a class contains or inherits one or more *virtual functions*, then four additional bytes (or eight bytes if the target hardware uses 64-bit addresses) are added to the class layout, typically at the very beginning of the class' layout. These four or eight bytes are collectively called the *virtual table pointer* or *vpointer*, because they contain a pointer to a data structure known as the *virtual function table* or *vtable*. The vtable for a particular class contains pointers to all the virtual functions that it declares or inherits. Each concrete class has its own virtual table, and every instance of that class has a pointer to it, stored in its vpointer.

The virtual function table is at the heart of polymorphism, because it allows code to be written that is ignorant of the specific concrete classes it is dealing with. Returning to the ubiquitous example of a `Shape` base class with derived classes for `Circle`, `Rectangle` and `Triangle`, let's imagine that `Shape` defines a virtual function called `Draw()`. The derived classes all override this function, providing distinct implementations named `Circle::Draw()`, `Rectangle::Draw()` and `Triangle::Draw()`. The virtual table for any class derived from `Shape` will contain an entry for the `Draw()` function, but that entry will point to different function implementations, depending on the concrete class. `Circle`'s vtable will contain a pointer to `Circle::Draw()`, while `Rectangle`'s virtual table will point to `Rectangle::Draw()`, and `Triangle`'s vtable will point to `Triangle::Draw()`. Given an arbitrary pointer to a `Shape` (`Shape*` `pShape`), the code can simply dereference the vtable pointer, look up the `Draw()` function's entry in the vtable, and call it. The result will be to call `Circle::Draw()` when `pShape` points to an instance of `Circle`, `Rectangle::Draw()` when `pShape` points to a `Rectangle`, and `Triangle::Draw()` when `pShape` points to a `Triangle`.

These ideas are illustrated by the following code excerpt. Notice that the base class `Shape` defines two virtual functions, `SetId()` and `Draw()`, the latter of which is declared to be *pure virtual*. (This means that `Shape` provides no default implementation of the `Draw()` function, and derived classes *must* override it if they want to be instantiable.) Class `Circle` derives from `Shape`, adds some data members and functions to manage its center and radius, and overrides the `Draw()` function; this is depicted in Figure 3.17. Class `Triangle` also derives from `Shape`. It adds an array of `Vector3` objects to store its three vertices and adds some functions to get and set the individual vertices. Class `Triangle` overrides `Draw()` as we'd expect, and for illustrative purposes it also overrides `SetId()`. The memory image generated by the `Triangle` class is shown in Figure 3.18.

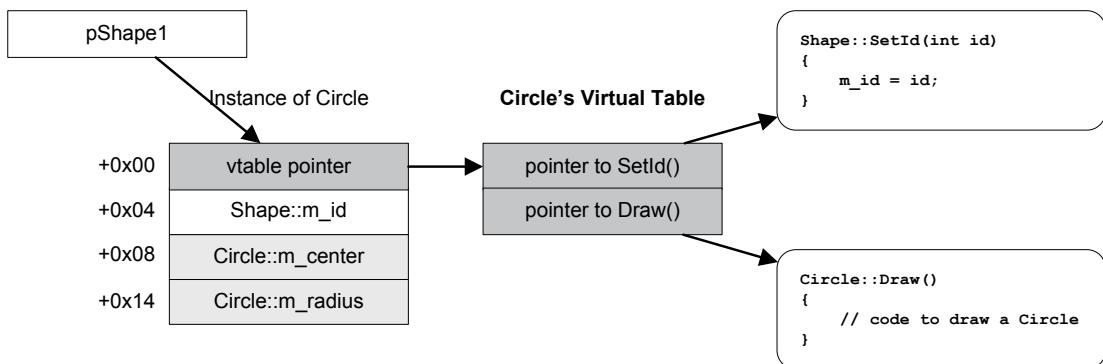


Figure 3.17. `pShape1` points to an instance of class `Circle`.

```

class Shape
{
public:
    virtual void SetId(int id) { m_id = id; }
    int GetId() const { return m_id; }

    virtual void Draw() = 0; // pure virtual -- no impl.

private:
    int m_id;
};

class Circle : public Shape
{
public:
    void SetCenter(const Vector3& c) { m_center=c; }
    Vector3 GetCenter() const { return m_center; }

    void SetRadius(float r) { m_radius = r; }
    float GetRadius() const { return m_radius; }

    virtual void Draw()
    {
        // code to draw a circle
    }

private:
    Vector3 m_center;
    float m_radius;
};

```

```
class Triangle : public Shape
{
public:
    void SetVertex(int i, const Vector3& v);
    Vector3 GetVertex(int i) const { return m_vtx[i]; }

    virtual void Draw()
    {
        // code to draw a triangle
    }

    virtual void SetId(int id)
    {
        // call base class' implementation
        Shape::SetId(id);

        // do additional work specific to Triangles...
    }

private:
    Vector3 m_vtx[3];
};

// -----
void main(int, char**)
{
    Shape* pShape1 = new Circle;
    Shape* pShape2 = new Triangle;

    pShape1->Draw();
    pShape2->Draw();

    // ...
}
```

## 3.4 Computer Hardware Fundamentals

Programming in a high-level language like C++, C# or Python is an efficient way to build software. But the higher-level your language is, the more it shields you from the underlying details of the hardware on which your code runs. To become a truly proficient programmer, it's important to understand the architecture of your target hardware. This knowledge can help you to op-

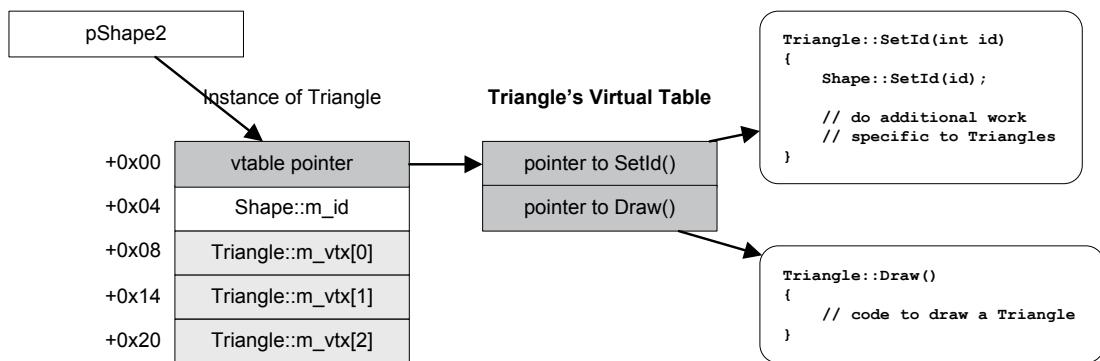


Figure 3.18. `pShape2` points to an instance of class `Triangle`.

timize your code. It's also crucial for concurrent programming—and all programmers must understand concurrency if they hope to take full advantage of the ever-increasing degree of parallelism in modern computing hardware.

### 3.4.1 Learning from the Simpler Computers of Yesteryear

In the following pages, we'll discuss the design of a simple, generic CPU, rather than diving into the specifics of any one particular processor. However, some readers may find it helpful to ground our somewhat theoretical discussion by reading about the specifics of a real CPU. I myself learned how computers work when I was a teenager, by programming my Apple II computer and the Commodore 64. Both of these machines had a simple CPU known as the 6502, which was designed and manufactured by MOS Technology Inc. I also learned some of what I know by reading about and working with the common ancestor to Intel's entire x86 line of CPUs, the 8086 (and its cousin the 8088). Both of these processors are great for learning purposes due to their simplicity. This is especially true of the 6502, which is the simplest CPU I've ever worked with. Once you understand how a 6502 and/or an 8086 works, modern CPUs will be a lot easier to understand.

To that end, here are a few great resources on the details of 6502 and 8086 architecture and programming:

- Chapters 1 and 2 of the book “Inside the Apple IIe” by Gary B. Little [33] provides a great overview of 6502 assembly language programming. The book is available online at <http://www.apple2scans.net/files/InsidetheIIe.pdf>.

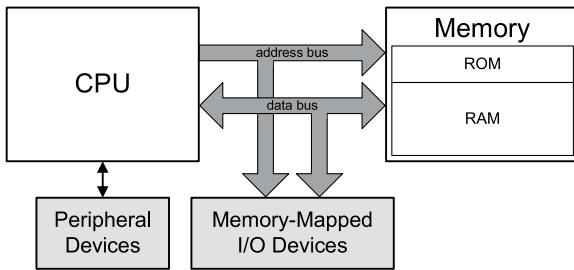


Figure 3.19. A simple serial von Neumann computer architecture.

- <http://flint.cs.yale.edu/cs421/papers/x86-asm/asm.html> gives a nice overview of the x86 instruction set architecture.
- You should also definitely check out *Michael Abrash's Graphics Programming Black Book* [1] for loads of useful information about assembly programming on the 8086, plus incredible tips for software optimization and graphics programming back in the early days of gaming.

### 3.4.2 Anatomy of a Computer

The simplest computer consists of a *central processing unit* (CPU) and a bank of *memory*, connected to one another on a circuit board called the *motherboard* via one or more *buses*, and connected to external peripheral devices by means of a set of *I/O ports* and/or *expansion slots*. This basic design is referred to as the *von Neumann architecture* because it was first described in 1945 by the mathematician and physicist John von Neumann and his colleagues while working on the classified ENIAC project. A simple serial computer architecture is illustrated in Figure 3.19.

### 3.4.3 CPU

The CPU is the “brains” of the computer. It consists of the following components:

- an *arithmetic/logic unit* (ALU) for performing integer arithmetic and bit shifting,
- a *floating-point unit* (FPU) for doing floating-point arithmetic (typically using the IEEE 754 floating-point standard representation),
- virtually all modern CPUs also contain a *vector processing unit* (VPU) which is capable of performing floating-point and integer operations on multiple data items in parallel,

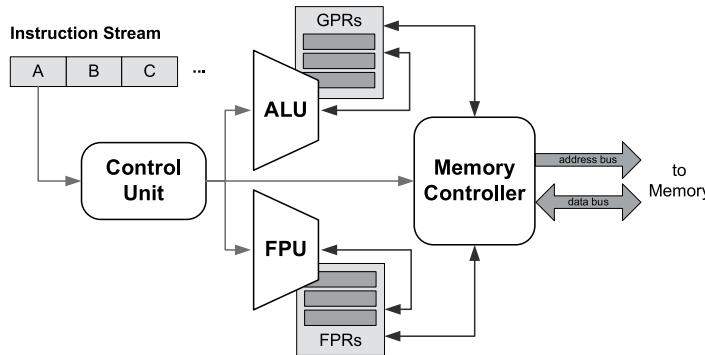


Figure 3.20. Typical components of a serial CPU.

- a *memory controller* (MC) or *memory management unit* (MMU) for interfacing with on-chip and off-chip memory devices,
- a bank of *registers* which act as temporary storage during calculations (among other things), and
- a *control unit* (CU) for decoding and dispatching machine language instructions to the other components on the chip, and routing data between them.

All of these components are driven by a periodic square wave signal known as the *clock*. The frequency of the clock determines the rate at which the CPU performs operations such as executing instructions or performing arithmetic. The typical components of a serial CPU are shown in Figure 3.20.

#### 3.4.3.1 ALU

The ALU performs unary and binary arithmetic operations such as negation, addition, subtraction, multiplication and division, and also performs logical operations such as AND, OR, exclusive OR (abbreviated XOR or EOR), bitwise complement and bit shifting. In some CPU designs, the ALU is physically split into an arithmetic unit (AU) and a logic unit (LU).

An ALU typically performs integer operations only. Floating-point calculations require very different circuitry, and are usually performed by a physically separate floating-point unit (FPU). Early CPUs like the Intel 8088/8086 had no on-chip FPU; if floating-point math support was desired, these CPUs had to be augmented with a separate FPU co-processor chip such as the Intel 8087. In later CPU designs, an FPU was typically included on the main CPU die.

### 3.4.3.2 VPU

A vector processing unit (VPU) acts a bit like a combination ALU/FPU, in that it can typically perform both integer and floating-point arithmetic. What differentiates a VPU is its ability to apply arithmetic operators to *vectors* of input data—each of which typically consists of between two and 16 floating-point values or up to 64 integer values of various widths—rather than to scalar inputs. Vector processing is also known as *single instruction multiple data* or SIMD, because a single arithmetic operator (e.g., multiplication) is applied to multiple pairs of inputs simultaneously. See Section 4.10 for more details.

Today's CPUs don't actually contain an FPU *per se*. Instead, all floating-point calculations, even those involving scalar `float` values, are performed by the VPU. Eliminating the FPU reduces the transistor count on the CPU die, allowing those transistors to be used to implement larger caches, more-complex out-of-order execution logic, and so on. And as we'll see in Section 4.10.6, optimizing compilers will typically convert math performed on `float` variables into *vectorized* code that uses the VPU anyway.

### 3.4.3.3 Registers

In order to maximize performance, an ALU or FPU can usually only perform calculations on data that exists in special high-speed memory cells called *registers*. Registers are typically physically separate from the computer's main memory, located on-chip and in close proximity to the components that access them. They're usually implemented using fast, high-cost multi-ported static RAM or SRAM. (See Section 3.4.5 for more information about memory technologies.) A bank of registers within a CPU is called a *register file*.

Because registers aren't part of main memory,<sup>1</sup> they typically don't have addresses but they do have names. These could be as simple as R0, R1, R2 etc., although early CPUs tended to use letters or short mnemonics as register names. For example, the Intel 8088/8086 had four 16-bit general-purpose registers named AX, BX, CX and DX. The 6502 by MOS Technology, Inc. performed all of its arithmetic operations using a register known as the *accumulator*<sup>2</sup> (A), and used two auxiliary registers called X and Y for other operations such as indexing into an array.

---

<sup>1</sup>Some early computers did use main RAM to implement registers. For example, the 32 registers in the IBM 7030 Stretch (IBM's first transistor-based supercomputer) were "overlaid" on the first 32 addresses in main RAM. In some early ALU designs, one of its inputs would come from a register while the other came from main RAM. These designs were practical because back then, RAM access latencies were low relative to the overall performance of the CPU.

<sup>2</sup>The term "accumulator" arose because early ALUs used to work one bit at a time, and would therefore *accumulate* the answer by masking and shifting the individual bits into the result register.

Some of the registers in a CPU are designed to be used for general calculations. They're appropriately named *general-purpose registers* (GPR). Every CPU also contains a number of *special-purpose registers* (SPR). These include:

- the *instruction pointer* (IP),
- the *stack pointer* (SP),
- the *base pointer* (BP) and
- the *status register*.

#### *Instruction Pointer*

The *instruction pointer* (IP) contains the address of the currently-executing instruction in a machine language program (more on machine language in Section 3.4.7.2).

#### *Stack Pointer*

In Section 3.3.5.2 we saw how a program's *call stack* serves both as the primary mechanism by which functions call one another, and as the means by which memory is allocated for local variables. The *stack pointer* (SP) contains the address of the top of the program's call stack. The stack can grow up or down in terms of memory addresses, but for the purpose of this discussion let's assume it grows downward. In this case, a data item may be *pushed* onto the stack by subtracting the size of the item from the value of the stack pointer, and then writing the item at the new address pointed to by SP. Likewise, an item can be *popped* off the stack by reading it from the address pointed to by SP, and then adding its size to SP.

#### *Base Pointer*

The *base pointer* (BP) contains the base address of the current function's *stack frame* on the call stack. Many of a function's local variables are allocated within its stack frame, although the optimizer may assign others exclusively to a register for the duration of the function. Stack-allocated variables occupy a range of memory addresses at a unique offset from the base pointer. Such a variable can be located in memory by simply subtracting its unique offset from the address stored in BP (assuming the stack grows down).

#### *Status Register*

A special register known as the *status register*, *condition code register* or *flags*

*register* contains bits that reflect the results of the most-recent ALU operation. For instance, if the result of a subtraction is zero, the *zero bit* (typically named “Z”) is set within the status register, otherwise the bit is cleared. Likewise, if an add operation resulted in an overflow, meaning that a binary 1 must be “carried” to the next word of a multi-word addition, the *carry bit* (often named “C”) is set, otherwise it is cleared.

The flags in the status register can be used to control program flow via *conditional branching*, or they can be used to perform subsequent calculations, such as adding the carry bit to the next word in a multi-word addition.

### *Register Formats*

It’s important to understand that the FPU and VPU typically operate on their own private sets of registers, rather than making use of the ALU’s general-purpose integer registers. One reason for this is speed—the closer the registers are to the compute unit that uses them, the less time is needed to access the data they contain. Another reason is that the FPU’s and VPU’s registers are typically *wider* than the ALU’s GPRs.

For example, a 32-bit CPU has GPRs that are 32 bits wide each, but an FPU might operate on 64-bit double-precision floats, or even 80-bit “extended” double-precision values, meaning that its registers have to be 64 or 80 bits wide, respectively. Likewise, each register used by a VPU needs to contain a *vector* of input data, meaning that these registers must be much wider than a typical GPR. For example, Intel’s SSE2 (streaming SIMD extensions) vector processor can be configured to perform calculations on vectors containing either four single-precision (32-bit) floating-point values each, or two double-precision (64-bit) values each. Hence SSE2 vector registers are each 128 bits wide.

The physical separation of registers between ALU and FPU is one reason why conversions between `int` and `float` were very expensive, back in the days when FPUs were commonplace. Not only did the bit pattern of each value have to be converted back and forth between its two’s complement integer format and its IEEE 754 floating-point representation, but the data also had to be transferred physically between the general-purpose integer registers and the FPU’s registers. However, today’s CPUs no longer contain an FPU per se—all floating-point math is typically performed by a vector processing unit. A VPU can handle both integer and floating-point math, and conversions between the two are much less expensive, even when moving data from an integer GPU into a vector register or vice-versa. That said, it’s still a good idea to avoid converting data between `int` and `float` formats.

where possible, because even a low-cost conversion is still more expensive than no conversion.

#### 3.4.3.4 Control Unit

If the CPU is the “brains” of the computer, then the *control unit* (CU) is the “brains” of the CPU. Its job is to manage the flow of data within the CPU, and to orchestrate the operation of all of the CPU’s other components.

The CU runs a program by reading a stream of *machine language* instructions, decoding each instruction by breaking it into its opcode and operands, and then issuing work requests and/or routing data to the ALU, FPU, VPU, the registers and/or the memory controller as dictated by the current instruction’s opcode. In pipelined and superscalar CPUs, the CU also contains complex circuitry to handle branch prediction and the scheduling of instructions for out-of-order execution. We’ll look at the operation of the CU in more detail in Section 3.4.7.

#### 3.4.4 Clock

Every digital electronic circuit is essentially a state machine. In order for it to change states, the circuit must be driven to do so by a digital signal. Such a signal might be provided by *changing the voltage* on a line in the circuit from 0 volts to 3.3 volts, or vice-versa.

State changes within a CPU are typically driven by a periodic square wave signal known as the *system clock*. Each rising or falling edge of this signal is known as a *clock cycle*, and the CPU can perform at least one primitive operation on every cycle. To a CPU, time therefore appears to be *quantized*.<sup>3</sup>

The rate at which a CPU can perform its operations is governed by the *frequency* of the system clock. Clock speeds have increased significantly over the past few decades. Early CPUs developed in the 1970s, like the MOS Technology’s 6502 and Intel’s 8086/8088 CPUs, had clocks that ran in the 1–2 MHz range (millions of cycles per second). Today’s CPUs, like the Intel Core i7, are typically clocked in the 2–4 GHz range (*billions* of cycles per second).

It’s important to realize that one CPU instruction doesn’t necessarily take one clock cycle to execute. Not all instructions are created equal—some instructions are very simple, while others are more complex. Some instructions are implemented under the hood as a combination of simpler micro-operations ( $\mu$ -ops) and therefore take many more cycles to execute than their simpler counterparts.

---

<sup>3</sup>Contrast this to an *analog* electronic circuit, where time is treated as *continuous*. For example, an old-school signal generator can produce a true sine wave that smoothly varies between, say, –5 volts and 5 volts over time.

Also, while early CPUs could truly execute some instructions in a single clock cycle, today’s pipelined CPUs break even the simplest instruction down into multiple *stages*. Each stage in a pipelined CPU takes one clock cycle to execute, meaning that a CPU with an  $N$ -stage pipeline has a minimum *instruction latency* of  $N$  clock cycles. A simple pipelined CPU can retire instructions at a *rate* of one instruction per clock cycle, because a new instruction is fed into the pipeline each clock tick. But if you were to trace one particular instruction through the pipeline, it would take  $N$  cycles to move from start to finish through the pipeline. We’ll discuss pipelined CPUs in more depth in Section 4.2.

#### 3.4.4.1 Clock Speed versus Processing Power

The “processing power” of a CPU or computer can be defined in various ways. One common measure is the *throughput* of the machine—the number of operations it can perform during a given interval of time. Throughput is expressed either in units of millions of instructions per second (MIPS) or floating-point operations per second (FLOPS).

Because instructions or floating-point operations don’t generally complete in exactly one cycle, and because different instructions take differing numbers of cycles to run, the MIPS or FLOPS metrics of a CPU are just averages. As such, you cannot simply look at the clock frequency of a CPU and determine its processing power in MIPS or FLOPS. For example, a serial CPU running at 3 GHz, in which one floating-point multiply takes six cycles to complete on average, could theoretically achieve 0.5 GFLOPS. But many factors including pipelining, superscalar designs, vector processing, multicore CPUs and other forms of parallelism conspire to obfuscate the relationship between clock speed and processing power. Thus the only way to determine the true processing power of a CPU or computer is to measure it—typically by running standardized benchmarks.

#### 3.4.5 Memory

The *memory* in a computer acts like a bank of mailboxes at the post office, with each box or “cell” typically containing a single *byte* of data (an eight-bit value).<sup>4</sup> Each one-byte memory cell is identified by its *address*—a simple numbering

---

<sup>4</sup>Actually, early computers often accessed memory in units of “words” that were larger than 8 bits. For example, the IBM 701 (produced in 1952) addressed memory in units of 36-bit words, and the PDP-1 (made in 1959) could access up to 4096 18-bit memory words. Eight-bit bytes were popularized by the Intel 8008 in 1972. Seven bits are required to encode both lower- and uppercase English letters. By extending this to eight bits, a wide range of special characters could also be supported.

scheme ranging from 0 to  $N - 1$ , where  $N$  is the size of addressable memory in bytes.

Memory comes in two basic flavors:

- *read-only memory* (ROM), and
- read/write memory, known for historical reasons<sup>5</sup> as *random access memory* (RAM).

ROM modules retain their data even when power is not applied to them. Some types of ROM can be programmed only once. Others, known as *electronically erasable programmable ROM* or EEPROM, can be reprogrammed over and over again. (Flash drives are one example of EEPROM memory.)

RAM can be further divided into *static RAM* (SRAM) and *dynamic RAM* (DRAM). Both static and dynamic RAM retain their data as long as power is applied to them. But unlike static RAM, dynamic RAM also needs to be “refreshed” periodically (by reading the data and then re-writing it) in order to prevent its contents from disappearing. This is because DRAM memory cells are built from MOS capacitors that gradually lose their charge, and reading such memory cells is destructive to the data they contain.

RAM can also be categorized by various other design characteristics, such as:

- whether it is *multi-ported*, meaning that it be accessed simultaneously by more than one component within the CPU;
- whether it operates by being synchronized to a clock (SDRAM) or asynchronously;
- and whether or not it supports double data rate access (DDR), meaning the RAM can be read or written on both rising and falling clock edges.

### 3.4.6 Buses

Data is transferred between the CPU and memory over connections known as *buses*. A bus is just a bundle of parallel digital “wires” called *lines*, each of which can represent a single bit of data. When the line carries a voltage signal<sup>6</sup> it represents a binary one, and when the line has no voltage applied

<sup>5</sup>Random-access memory was so named because earlier memory technologies used delay loops to store data, meaning that it could only be read in the order it was written. RAM technology improved on this situation by permitting data to be accessed at random, i.e., in any order.

<sup>6</sup>Early *transistor-transistor logic* (TTL) devices operated at a supply voltage of 5 volts, so a 5-volt signal would represent a binary 1. Most of today’s digital electronic devices utilize *complementary metal oxide semiconductor* logic (CMOS) which can operate at a lower supply voltage, typically between 1.2 and 3.3 volts.

(0 volts) it represents a binary zero. A bundle of  $n$  single-bit lines arranged in parallel can transmit an  $n$ -bit number (i.e., any number in the range 0 through  $2^n - 1$ ).

A typical computer contains two buses: An *address bus* and a *data bus*. The CPU loads data from a memory cell into one of its registers by supplying an address to the memory controller via the address bus. The memory controller responds by presenting the bits of the data item stored in the cell(s) in question onto the data bus, where it can be “seen” by the CPU. Likewise, the CPU writes a data item to memory by broadcasting the destination address over the address bus and placing the bit pattern of the data item to write onto the data bus. The memory controller responds by writing the given data into the corresponding memory cell(s). We should note that the address and data buses are sometimes implemented as two physically separate sets of wires, and sometimes as a single set of wires which are multiplexed between address and data bus functions during different phases of the memory access cycle.

#### 3.4.6.1 Bus Widths

The *width* of the *address bus*, measured in bits, controls the range of possible addresses that can be accessed by the CPU (i.e., the size of *addressable memory* in the machine). For example, a computer with a 16-bit address bus can access at most 64 KiB of memory, using addresses in the range 0x0000 through 0xFFFF. A computer with a 32-bit address bus can access a 4 GiB memory, using addresses in the range 0x00000000 through 0xFFFFFFFF. And a machine with a 64-bit address bus can access a staggering 16 EiB (exbibytes) of memory. That’s  $2^{64} = 16 \times 1024^6 \approx 1.8 \times 10^{19}$  bytes!

The width of the *data bus* determines how much data can be transferred between CPU registers and memory at a time. (The data bus is typically the same width as the general-purpose registers in the CPU, although this isn’t always the case.) An 8-bit data bus means that data can be transferred one byte at a time—loading a 16-bit value from memory would require two separate memory cycles, one to fetch the least-significant byte and one to fetch the most-significant byte. At the other end of the spectrum, a 64-bit data bus can transfer data between memory and a 64-bit register as a single memory operation.

It’s possible to access data items that are narrower than the width of a machine’s data bus, but it’s typically more costly than accessing items whose widths match that of the data bus. For example, when reading a 16-bit value on a 64-bit machine, a full 64 bits worth of data must still be read from memory. The desired 16-bit field then has to be masked off and possibly shifted into place within the destination register. This is one reason why the C language

does not define an `int` to be a specific number of bits wide—it was purposefully defined to match the “natural” size of a word on the target machine, in an attempt to make source code more portable. (Ironically this policy has actually resulted in source code often being *less* portable due to implicit assumptions about the width of an `int`.)

#### 3.4.6.2 Words

The term “word” is often used to describe a multi-byte value. However, the number of bytes comprising a word is not universally defined. It depends to some degree on context.

Sometimes the term “word” refers to the smallest multi-byte value, namely 16 bits or two bytes. In that context, a double word would be 32 bits (four bytes) and a quad word would be 64 bits (eight bytes). This is the way the term “word” is used in the Windows API.

On the other hand, the term “word” is also used to refer to the “natural” size of data items on a particular machine. For example, a machine with 32-bit registers and a 32-bit data bus operates most naturally with 32-bit (four byte) values, and programmers and hardware folks will sometimes say that such a machine has a *word size* of 32 bits. The takeaway here is to be aware of context whenever you hear the term “word” being used to refer to the size of a data item.

#### 3.4.6.3 *n*-Bit Computers

You may have encountered the term “*n*-bit computer.” This usually means a machine with an *n*-bit data bus and/or registers. But the term is a bit ambiguous, because it might also refer to a computer whose address bus is *n* bits wide. Also, on some CPUs the data bus and register widths don’t match. For example, the 8088 had 16-bit registers and a 16-bit address bus, but it only had an 8-bit data bus. Hence it acted like a 16-bit machine internally, but its 8-bit data bus caused it to behave like an 8-bit machine in terms of memory accesses. Again, be aware of context when talking about an *n*-bit machine.

### 3.4.7 Machine and Assembly Language

As far as the CPU is concerned, a “program” is nothing more than a sequential stream of relatively simple *instructions*. Each instruction tells the control unit (CU), and ultimately the other components within the CPU such as the memory controller, ALU, FPU or VPU, to perform an operation. An instruction might move data around within the computer or within the CPU itself, or it might transform that data in some manner (e.g., by performing an arith-

metic or logical operation on the data). Normally the instructions in a program are executed sequentially, although some instructions can alter this sequential flow of control by “jumping” to a new spot within the program’s overall instruction stream.

### 3.4.7.1 Instruction Set Architecture (ISA)

CPU designs vary widely from one manufacturer to the next. The set of all instructions supported by a given CPU, along with various other details of the CPU’s design like its addressing modes and the in-memory instruction format, is called its *instruction set architecture* or ISA. (This is not to be confused with a programming language’s *application binary interface* or ABI, which defines higher-level protocols like calling conventions.) We won’t attempt to cover the details of any one CPU’s ISA here, but the following categories of instruction types are common to pretty much every ISA:

- *Move*. These instructions move data between registers, or between memory and a register. Some ISAs break the “move” instruction into separate “load” and “store” instructions.
- *Arithmetic operations*. These of course include addition, subtraction, multiplication and division, but may also include other operations like unary negation, inversion, square root, and so on.
- *Bitwise operators*. These include AND, OR, exclusive OR (abbreviated XOR or EOR) and bitwise complement.
- *Shift/rotate operators*. These instructions allow the bits within a data word to be shifted left or right, with or without affecting the carry bit in the status register, or rotated (where the bits rolling off one end of the word “wrap around” to the other end).
- *Comparison*. These instructions allow two values to be compared, in order to determine if one is less than, greater than or equal to the other. In most CPUs, the comparison instructions use the ALU to subtract the two input values, thereby setting the appropriate bits in the status register, but the result of the subtraction is simply discarded.
- *Jump and branch*. These allow program flow to be altered by storing a new address into the instruction pointer. This can be done either unconditionally (in which case it is called a “jump” instruction) or conditionally based on the state of various flags in the status register (in which case it is often called a “branch”). For example, a “branch if zero” instruction alters the contents of the IP if and only if the “Z” bit in the status register is set.

- *Push and pop.* Most CPUs provide special instructions for pushing the contents of a register onto the program stack and for popping the current value at the top of the stack into a register.
- *Function call and return.* Some ISAs provide explicit instructions for calling a function (also known as a procedure or subroutine) and returning from it. However, function call and return semantics can also be provided by a combination of push, pop and jump instructions.
- *Interrupts.* An “interrupt” instruction triggers a digital signal within the CPU that causes it to jump temporarily to a pre-installed *interrupt service routine* routine which is often not part of the program being run. Interrupts are used to notify the operating system or a user program of events such as an input becoming available on a peripheral device. Interrupts can also be triggered by user programs in order to “call” into the operating system kernel’s routines. See section 4.4.2 for more details.
- *Other instruction types.* Most ISAs support a variety of instruction types that don’t fall into one of the categories listed above. For example, the “no-op” instruction (often called NOP) is an instruction that has no effect other than to introduce a short delay. NOP instructions also consume memory, and on some ISAs they are used to align subsequent instructions properly in memory.

We can’t possibly list all instruction types here, but if you’re curious you can always read through the ISA documentation of a real processor like the Intel x86 (which is available at <http://intel.ly/2woVFQ8>).

#### 3.4.7.2 Machine Language

Computers can only deal with numbers. As such, each instruction in a program’s instruction stream must be encoded numerically. When a program is encoded in this way, we say it is written in *machine language*, or ML for short. Of course, machine language isn’t a single language—it’s really a multitude of languages, one for each distinct CPU/ISA.

Every machine language instruction is comprised of three basic parts:

- an *opcode*, which tells the CPU which operation to perform (add, subtract, move, jump, etc.),
- zero or more *operands* which specify the inputs and/or outputs of the instruction, and
- some kind of *options field*, specifying things like the *addressing mode* of the instruction and possibly other flags.

Variable Width Instruction Stream				
0x1000	Opcode	AM	Operand 0	Operand 1
0x1009	Opcode	AM		
0x100C	Opcode	AM	Operand 0	

Fixed Width Instruction Stream				
0x1000	Opcode	AM	Operand 0	Operand 1
0x100C	Opcode	AM	Operand 0	Operand 1
0x1018	Opcode	AM	Operand 0	Operand 1

Figure 3.21. Two hypothetical machine language instruction encoding schemes. Top: In a variable-width encoding scheme, different instructions may occupy different numbers of bytes in memory. Bottom: A fixed-width instruction encoding uses the same number of bytes for every instruction in an instruction stream.

Operands come in many flavors. Some instructions might take the names (encoded as numeric ids) of one or more registers as operands. Others might expect a literal value as an operand (e.g., “load the value 5 into register R2,” or “jump to address 0x0102ED5C”). The way in which an instruction’s operands are interpreted and used by the CPU is known as the instruction’s *addressing mode*. We’ll discuss addressing modes in more detail in Section 3.4.7.4.

The opcode and operands (if any) of an ML instruction are packed into a contiguous sequence of bits called an *instruction word*. A hypothetical CPU might encode its instructions as shown in Figure 3.21 with perhaps the first byte containing the opcode, addressing mode and various options flags, followed by some number of bytes for the operands. Each ISA defines the width of an instruction word (i.e., the number of bits occupied by each instruction) differently. In some ISAs, all instructions occupy a fixed number of bits; this is typical of *reduced instruction set computers* (RISC). In other ISAs, different types of instructions may be encoded into differently-sized instruction words; this is common in *complex instruction set computers* (CISC).

Instruction words can be as small as four bits in some microcontrollers, or they may be many bytes in size. Instruction words are often multiples of 32 or 64 bits, because this matches the width of the CPU’s registers and/or data bus. In *very long instruction word* (VLIW) CPU designs, parallelism is achieved by allowing multiple operations to be encoded into a single very wide instruction word, for the purpose of executing them in parallel. Instructions in a VLIW ISA can therefore be upwards of hundreds of bytes in width.

For a concrete example of machine language instruction encoding on the Intel x86 ISA, see <http://aturing.umcs.maine.edu/~meadow/courses/cos335/Asm07-MachineLanguage.pdf>.

### 3.4.7.3 Assembly Language

Writing a program directly in machine language is tedious and error-prone. To make life easier for programmers, a simple text-based version of machine language was developed called *assembly language*. In assembly language, each instruction within a given CPU's ISA is given a *mnemonic*—a short English word or abbreviation that is much easier to remember than corresponding numeric opcode. Instruction operands can be specified conveniently as well: Registers can be referred to by name (e.g., R0 or EAX), and memory addresses can be written in hex, or assigned symbolic names much like the global variables of higher-level languages. Locations in the assembly program can be tagged with human-readable labels, and jump/branch instructions refer to these labels rather than to raw memory addresses.

An assembly language program consists of a sequence of instructions, each comprised of a mnemonic and zero or more operands, listed in a text file with one instruction per line. A tool known as an *assembler* reads the program source file and converts it into the numeric ML representation understood by the CPU. For example, an assembly language program that implements the following snippet of C code:

```
if (a > b)
    return a + b;
else
    return 0;
```

could be implemented by an assembly language program that looks something like this:

```
; if (a > b)
cmp    eax, ebx    ; compare the values
jle   ReturnZero ; jump if less than or equal

; return a + b;
add    eax, ebx    ; add & store result in EAX
ret                ; (EAX is the return value)
```

```
ReturnZero:  
    ; else return 0;  
    xor    eax, eax    ; set EAX to zero  
    ret                ; (EAX is the return value)
```

Let's break this down. The `cmp` instruction compares the values in registers `EAX` and `EBX` (which we're assuming contain the values `a` and `b` from the C snippet). Next, the `jle` instruction branches to the label `ReturnZero`, but it does so if and *only if* the value in `EAX` is less than or equal to `EBX`. Otherwise it falls through.

If `EAX` is *greater* than `EBX` ( $a > b$ ), we fall through to the `add` instruction, which calculates  $a + b$  and stores the result back into `EAX`, which we're assuming serves as the return value. We issue a `ret` instruction, and control is returned to the calling function.

If `EAX` is less than or equal to `EBX` ( $a \leq b$ ), the branch is taken and we continue execution immediately after the label `ReturnZero`. Here, we use a little trick to set `EAX` to zero by XORing it with itself. Then we issue a `ret` instruction to return that zero to the caller.

For more details on Intel assembly language programming, see <http://www.cs.virginia.edu/~evans/cs216/guides/x86.html>.

#### 3.4.7.4 Addressing Modes

A seemingly simple instruction like “move” (which transfers data between registers and memory) has many different variants. Are we moving a value from one register to another? Are we loading a literal value like 5 into a register? Are we loading a value from memory into a register? Or are we storing a value in a register out to memory? All of these variants are called *addressing modes*. We won't go over all the possible addressing modes here, but the following list should give you a good feel for the kinds of addressing modes you will encounter on a real CPU:

- *Register addressing*. This mode allows values to be transferred from one register to another. In this case, the operands of the instruction specify which registers are involved in the operation.
- *Immediate addressing*. This mode allows a literal or “immediate” value to be loaded into a register. In this case, the operands are the target register and the immediate value to be loaded.
- *Direct addressing*. This mode allows data to be moved to or from memory. In this case, the operands specify the direction of the move (to or from memory) and the memory address in question.

- *Register indirect addressing.* In this mode, the target memory address is taken from a register, rather than being encoded as a literal value in the operands of the instruction. This is how pointer dereferences are implemented in languages like C and C++. The value of the pointer (an address) is loaded into a register, and then a register-indirect “move” instruction is used to dereference the pointer and either load the value it points to into a target register, or store a value in a source register into that memory address.
- *Relative addressing.* In this mode, the target memory address is specified as an operand, and the value stored in a specified register is used as an offset from that target memory address. This is how indexed array accesses are implemented in a language like C or C++.
- *Other addressing modes.* There are numerous other variations and combinations, some of which are common to virtually all CPUs, and some of which are specific to certain CPUs.

#### 3.4.7.5 Further Reading on Assembly Language

In the preceding sections, we’ve had just a tiny taste of assembly language. For an easy-to-digest description of x86 assembly programming, see <http://flint.cs.yale.edu/cs421/papers/x86-asm/asm.html>. For more on calling conventions and ABIs, see [https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/X86\\_Disassembly/Functions\\_and\\_Stack\\_Frames](https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/X86_Disassembly/Functions_and_Stack_Frames).

## 3.5 Memory Architectures

In a simple von Neumann computer architecture, memory is treated as a single homogeneous block, all of which is equally accessible to the CPU. In reality, a computer’s memory is almost never architected in such a simplistic manner. For one thing, the CPU’s registers are a form of memory, but registers are typically referenced by name in an assembly language program, rather than being addressed like ordinary ROM or RAM. Moreover, even “regular” memory is typically segregated into blocks with different characteristics and different purposes. This segregation is done for a variety of reasons, including cost management and optimization of overall system performance. In this section, we’ll investigate some of the memory architectures commonly found in today’s personal computers and gaming consoles, and explore some of the key reasons why they are architected the way they are.

### 3.5.1 Memory Mapping

An  $n$ -bit address bus gives the CPU access to a theoretical *address space* that is  $2^n$  bytes in size. An individual memory device (ROM or RAM) is always addressed as a contiguous block of memory cells. So a computer's address space is typically divided into various contiguous segments. One or more of these segments correspond to ROM memory modules, and others correspond to RAM modules. For example on the Apple II, the 16-bit addresses in the range 0xC100 through 0xFFFF were assigned to ROM chips (containing the computer's firmware), while the addresses from 0x0000 through 0xBFFF were assigned to RAM. Whenever a physical memory device is assigned to a range of addresses in a computer's address space, we say that the address range has been *mapped* to the memory device.

Of course a computer may not have as much memory installed as could be theoretically addressed by its address bus. A 64-bit address bus can access 16 EiB of memory, so we'd be unlikely to ever fully populate such an address space! (At 160 TiB, even HP's prototype supercomputer called "The Machine" isn't anywhere close to that amount of physical memory.) Therefore, it's commonplace for some segments of a computer's address space to remain unassigned.

#### 3.5.1.1 Memory-Mapped I/O

Address ranges needn't all map to memory devices—an address range might also be mapped to other *peripheral devices*, such as a joypad or a network interface card (NIC). This approach is called *memory-mapped I/O* because the CPU can perform I/O operations on a peripheral device by reading or writing to addresses, just as if they were ordinary RAM. Under the hood, special circuitry detects that the CPU is reading from or writing to a range of addresses that have been mapped to a non-memory device, and converts the read or write request into an I/O operation directed at the device in question. As a concrete example, the Apple II mapped I/O devices into the address range 0xC000 through 0xC0FF, allowing programs to do things like control bank-switched RAM, read and control voltages on the pins of a game controller socket on the motherboard, and perform other I/O operations by merely reading from and writing to the addresses in this range.

Alternatively, a CPU might communicate with non-memory devices via special registers known as *ports*. In this case, whenever the CPU requests that data be read from or written to a port register, the hardware converts the request into an I/O operation on the target device. This approach is called *port-mapped I/O*. In the Arduino line of microcontrollers, port-mapped I/O gives a

program direct control over the digital inputs and outputs at some of the pins of the chip.

### 3.5.1.2 Video RAM

Raster-based display devices typically read a hard-wired range of physical memory addresses in order to determine the brightness/color of each pixel on the screen. Likewise, early character-based displays would determine which character glyph to display at each location on the screen by reading ASCII codes from a block of memory. A range of memory addresses assigned for use by a video controller is known as *video RAM* (VRAM).

In early computers like the Apple II and early IBM PCs, video RAM used to correspond to memory chips on the motherboard, and memory addresses in VRAM could be read from and written to by the CPU in exactly the same way as any other memory location. This is also the case on game consoles like the PlayStation 4 and the Xbox One, where both the CPU and GPU share access to a single, large block of unified memory.

In personal computers, the GPU often lives on a separate circuit board, plugged into an expansion slot on the motherboard. Video RAM is typically located on the video card so that the GPU can access it as quickly as possible. A bus protocol such as PCI, AGP or PCI Express (PCIe) is used to transfer data back and forth between “main RAM” and VRAM, via the expansion slot’s bus. This physical separation between main RAM and VRAM can be a significant performance bottleneck, and is one of the primary contributors to the complexity of rendering engines and graphics APIs like OpenGL and DirectX 11.

### 3.5.1.3 Case Study: The Apple II Memory Map

To illustrate the concepts of memory mapping, let’s look at a simple real-world example. The Apple II had a 16-bit address bus, meaning that its address space was only 64 KiB in size. This address space was mapped to ROM, RAM, memory-mapped I/O devices and video RAM regions as follows:

0xC100	-	0xFFFF	ROM (Firmware)
0xC000	-	0xC0FF	Memory-Mapped I/O
0x6000	-	0xBFFF	General-purpose RAM
0x4000	-	0x5FFF	High-res video RAM (page 2)
0x2000	-	0x3FFF	High-res video RAM (page 1)
0x0C00	-	0x1FFF	General-purpose RAM
0x0800	-	0x0BFF	Text/lo-res video RAM (page 2)
0x0400	-	0x07FF	Text/lo-res video RAM (page 1)

---

0x0200 - 0x03FF	General-purpose and reserved RAM
0x0100 - 0x01FF	Program stack
0x0000 - 0x00FF	Zero page (mostly reserved for DOS)

We should note that the addresses in the Apple II memory map corresponded directly to memory chips on the motherboard. In today's operating systems, programs work in terms of *virtual* addresses rather than *physical* addresses. We'll explore virtual memory in the next section.

### 3.5.2 Virtual Memory

Most modern CPUs and operating systems support a memory remapping feature known as a *virtual memory system*. In these systems, the memory addresses used by a program don't map directly to the memory modules installed in the computer. Instead, whenever a program reads from or writes to an address, that address is first *remapped* by the CPU via a look-up table that's maintained by the OS. The remapped address might end up referring to an actual cell in memory (with a totally different numerical address). It might also end up referring to a block of data on-disk. Or it might turn out not to be mapped to any physical storage at all. In a virtual memory system, the addresses used by programs are called *virtual addresses*, and the bit patterns that are actually transmitted over the address bus by the memory controller in order to access a RAM or ROM module are called *physical addresses*.

Virtual memory is a powerful concept. It allows programs to make use of more memory than is actually installed in the computer, because data can overflow from physical RAM onto disk. Virtual memory also improves the stability and security of the operating system, because each program has its own private "view" of memory and is prevented from stomping on memory blocks that are owned by other programs or the operating system itself. We'll talk more about how the operating system manages the virtual memory spaces of running programs in Section 4.4.5.

#### 3.5.2.1 Virtual Memory Pages

To understand how this remapping takes place, we need to imagine that the entire addressable memory space (that's  $2^n$  byte-sized cells if the address bus is  $n$  bits wide) is conceptually divided into equally-sized contiguous chunks known as *pages*. Page sizes differ from OS to OS, but are always a power of two—a typical page size is 4 KiB or 8 KiB. Assuming a 4 KiB page size, a 32-bit address space would be divided up into 1,048,576 distinct pages, numbered from 0x0 to 0xFFFF, as shown in Table 3.2.

From Address	To Address	Page Index
0x00000000	0x00000FFF	Page 0x0
0x00001000	0x00001FFF	Page 0x1
0x00002000	0x00002FFF	Page 0x2
...		
0x7FFF2000	0x7FFF2FFF	Page 0x7FFF2
0x7FFF3000	0x7FFF3FFF	Page 0x7FFF3
...		
0xFFFFE000	0xFFFFEFFF	Page 0xFFFFE
0xFFFFF000	0xFFFFFFF	Page 0xFFFFF

Table 3.2. Division of a 32-bit address space into 4 KiB pages.

The mapping between virtual addresses and physical addresses is always done at the granularity of pages. One hypothetical mapping between virtual and physical addresses is illustrated in Figure 3.22.

### 3.5.2.2 Virtual to Physical Address Translation

Whenever the CPU detects a memory read or write operation, the address is split into two parts: the *page index* and an *offset* within that page (measured in bytes). For a page size of 4 KiB, the offset is just the lower 12 bits of the address, and the page index is the upper 20 bits, masked off and shifted to the right by 12 bits. For example, the virtual address 0x1A7C6310 corresponds to an offset of 0x310 and a page index of 0x1A7C6.

The page index is then looked up by the CPU's *memory management unit* (MMU) in a *page table* that maps virtual page indices to physical ones. (The page table is stored in RAM and is managed by the operating system.) If the page in question happens to be mapped to a physical memory page, the virtual page index is translated into the corresponding physical page index, the bits of this physical page index are shifted to the left as appropriate and ORed together with the bits of the original page offset, and voila! We have a physical address. So to continue our example, if virtual page 0x1A7C6 happens to map to physical page 0x73BB9, then the translated physical address would end up being 0x73BB9310. This is the address that would actually be transmitted over the address bus. Figure 3.23 illustrates the operation of the MMU.

If the page table indicates that a page is not mapped to physical RAM (either because it was never allocated, or because that page has since been

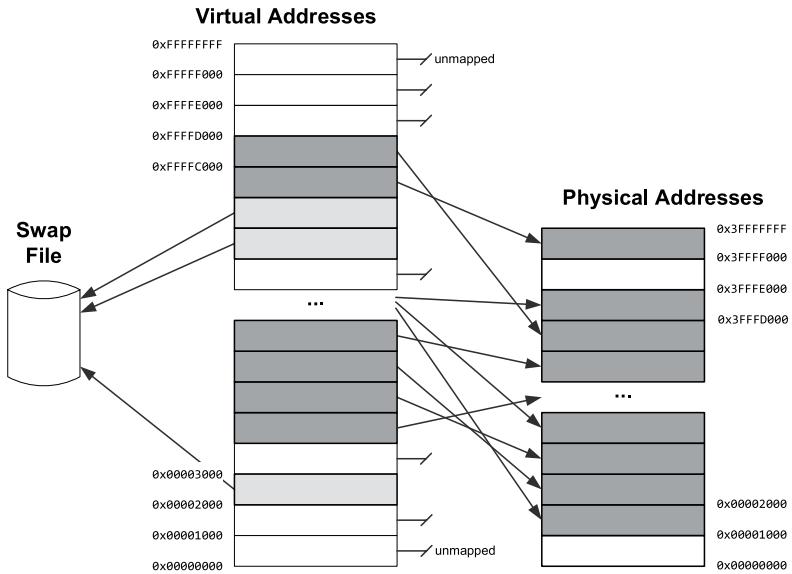


Figure 3.22. Page-sized address ranges in a virtual memory space are remapped either to physical memory pages, a swap file on disk, or they may remain unmapped.

swapped out to a disk file), the MMU raises an *interrupt*, which tells the operating system that the memory request can't be fulfilled. This is called a *page fault*. (See Section 4.4.2 for more on interrupts.)

### 3.5.2.3 Handling Page Faults

For accesses to unallocated pages, the OS normally responds to a page fault by crashing the program and generating a core dump. For accesses to pages that have been swapped out to disk, the OS temporarily suspends the currently-running program, reads the page from the swap file into a physical page of RAM, and then translates the virtual address to a physical address as usual. Finally it returns control back to the suspended program. From the point of view of the program, this operation is entirely seamless—it never “knows” whether a page was already in memory or had to be swapped in from disk.

Normally pages are swapped out to disk only when the load on the memory system is high, and physical pages are in short supply. The OS tries to swap out only the least-frequently-used pages of memory to avoid programs continually “thrashing” between memory-based and disk-based pages.

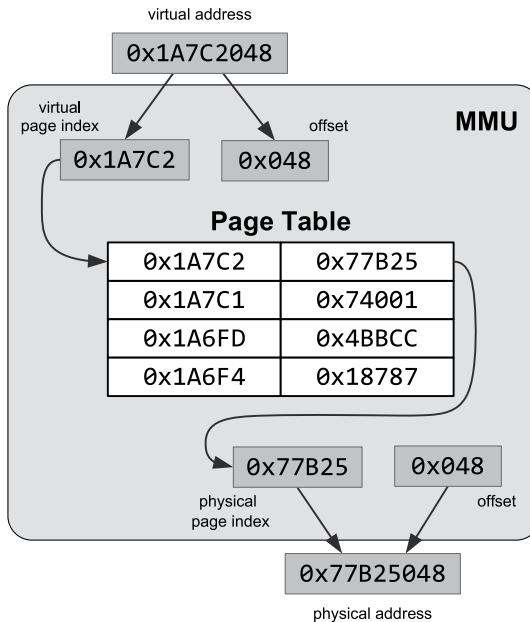


Figure 3.23. The MMU intercepts a memory read operation, and breaks the virtual address into a virtual page index and an offset. The virtual page index is converted to a physical page index via the page table, and the physical address is constructed from the physical page index and the original offset. Finally, the instruction is executed using the remapped physical address.

### 3.5.2.4 The Translation Lookaside Buffer (TLB)

Because page sizes tend to be small relative to the total size of addressable memory (typically 4 KiB or 8 KiB), the page table can become very large. Looking up physical addresses in the page table would be time-consuming if the entire table had to be scanned for every memory access a program makes.

To speed up access, a caching mechanism is used, based on the assumption that an average program will tend to reuse addresses within a relatively small number of pages, rather than read and write randomly across the entire address range. A small table known as the *translation lookaside buffer* (TLB) is maintained within the MMU on the CPU die, in which the virtual-to-physical address mappings of the most recently-used addresses are cached. Because this buffer is located in close proximity to the MMU, accessing it is very fast.

The TLB acts a lot like a general-purpose *memory cache hierarchy*, except that it is only used for caching page table entries. See Section 3.5.4 for a discussion of how cache hierarchies work.

### 3.5.2.5 Further Reading on Virtual Memory

See <https://www.cs.umd.edu/class/sum2003/cmsc311/Notes/Memory/virtual.html> and <https://gabrieletolomei.wordpress.com/miscellanea/operating-systems/virtual-memory-paging-and-swapping/> for two good discussions of virtual memory implementation details.

This paper by Ulrich Drepper entitled, “What Every Programmer Should Know About Memory” is also a must-read for all programmers: <https://www.akkadia.org/drepper/cpumemory.pdf>.

### 3.5.3 Memory Architectures for Latency Reduction

The speed with which data can be accessed from a memory device is an important characteristic. We often speak of *memory access latency*, which is defined as the length of time between the moment the CPU requests data from the memory system and the moment that that data is actually received by the CPU. Memory access latency is primarily dependent on three factors:

1. the technology used to implement the individual memory cells,
2. the number of read and/or write ports supported by the memory, and
3. the physical distance between those memory cells and the CPU core that uses them.

The access latency of *static RAM* (SRAM) is generally much lower than that of *dynamic RAM* (DRAM). SRAM achieves its lower latency by utilizing a more complex design which requires more transistors per bit of memory than does DRAM. This in turn makes SRAM more expensive than DRAM, both in terms of financial cost per bit, and in terms of the amount of real estate per bit that it consumes on the die.

The simplest memory cell has a single *port*, meaning only one read or write operation can be performed by it at any given time. *Multi-ported* RAM allows multiple read and/or write operations to be performed simultaneously, thereby reducing the latency caused by contention when multiple cores, or multiple components within a single core, attempt to access a bank of memory simultaneously. As you’d expect, a multi-ported RAM requires more transistors per bit than a single-ported design, and hence it costs more and uses more real estate on the die than a single-ported memory.

The physical distance between the CPU and a bank of RAM also plays a role in determining the access latency of that memory. This is because electronic signals travel at a finite speed within the computer. In theory, electronic

signals are comprised of electromagnetic waves, and hence travel at close<sup>7</sup> to the speed of light. Additional latencies are introduced by the various switching and logic circuits that a memory access signal encounters on its journey through the system. As such, the closer a memory cell is to the CPU core that uses it, the lower its access latency tends to be.

### 3.5.3.1 The Memory Gap

In the early days of computing, memory access latency and instruction execution latency were on roughly equal footing. For example, on the Intel 8086, register-based instructions could execute in two to four cycles, and a main memory access also took roughly four cycles. However, over the past few decades both raw clock speeds and the effective instruction throughput of CPUs have been improving at a much faster rate than memory access speeds. Today, the access latency of main memory is extremely high relative to the latency of executing a single instruction: Whereas a register-based instruction still takes between one and 10 cycles to complete on an Intel Core i7, an access to main RAM can take on the order of 500 cycles to complete! This ever-increasing discrepancy between CPU speeds and memory access latencies is often called the *memory gap*. Figure 3.24 illustrates the trend of an ever-increasing memory gap over time.

Programmers and hardware designers have together developed a wide range of techniques to work around the problems caused by high memory access latency. These techniques usually focus on one or more of the following:

1. *reducing* average memory latency by placing smaller, faster memory banks closer to the CPU core, so that frequently-used data can be accessed more quickly;
2. *“hiding”* memory access latency by arranging for the CPU to do other useful work while waiting for a memory operation to complete; and/or
3. *minimizing* accesses to main memory by arranging a program’s data in as efficient a manner as possible with respect to the work that needs to be done with that data.

In this section, we’ll have a closer look at memory architectures for average latency reduction. We’ll discuss the other two techniques (latency “hiding” and

---

<sup>7</sup>The speed that an electronic signal travels within a transmission medium such as copper wire or optical fiber is always somewhat lower than the speed of light in a vacuum. Each interconnect material has its own characteristic *velocity factor* (VF) ranging from less than 50% to 99% the speed of light in a vacuum.

the minimization of memory accesses via judicious data layout) while investigating parallel hardware design and concurrent programming techniques in Chapter 4.

### 3.5.3.2 Register Files

A CPU's register file is perhaps the most extreme example of a memory architecture designed to minimize access latency. Registers are typically implemented using multi-ported static RAM (SRAM), usually with dedicated ports for read and write operations, allowing these operations to occur in parallel rather than serially. What's more, the register file is typically located immediately adjacent to the circuitry for the ALU that uses it. Furthermore, registers are accessed pretty much directly by the ALU, whereas accesses to main RAM typically have to pass through the virtual address translation system, the memory cache hierarchy and cache coherence protocol (see Section 3.5.4), the address and data buses, and possibly also through crossbar switching logic. These facts explain why registers can be accessed so quickly, and also why the cost of register RAM is relatively high as compared to general-purpose RAM. This higher cost is justified because registers are by far the most frequently-used memory in any computer, and because the total size of the register file is very small when compared to the size of main RAM.

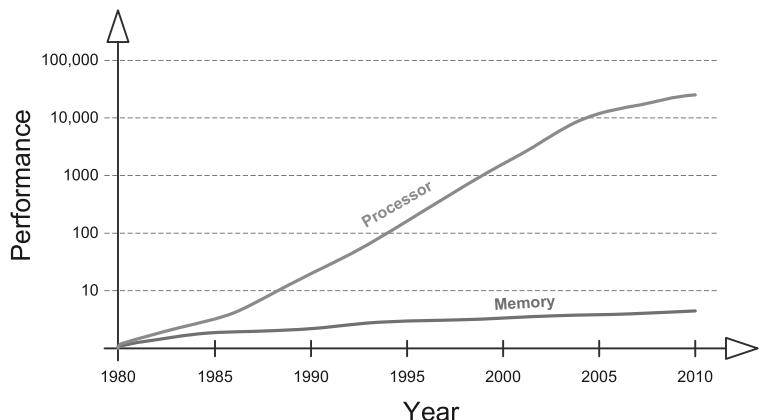


Figure 3.24. The ever-increasing difference between CPU performance and the performance of memory is called the *memory gap*. (Adapted from [23] *Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach* by John L. Hennessy and David A. Patterson.)

### 3.5.4 Memory Cache Hierarchies

A *memory cache hierarchy* is one of the primary mechanisms for mitigating the impacts of high memory access latencies in today's personal computers and game consoles. In a cache hierarchy, a small but fast bank of RAM called the *level 1* (L1) cache is placed very near to the CPU core (on the same die). Its access latency is almost as low as the CPU's register file, because it is so close to the CPU core. Some systems provide a larger but somewhat slower *level 2* (L2) cache, located further away from the core (usually also on-chip, and often shared between two or more cores on a multicore CPU). Some machines even have larger but more-distant L3 or L4 caches. These caches work in concert to automatically retain copies of the most frequently-used data, so that accesses to the very large but very slow bank of main RAM located on the system motherboard are kept to a minimum.

A caching system improves memory access performance by keeping *local copies* in the cache of those chunks of data that are most frequently accessed by the program. If the data requested by the CPU is already in the cache, it can be provided to the CPU very quickly—on the order of tens of cycles. This is called a *cache hit*. If the data is not already present in the cache, it must be fetched into the cache from main RAM. This is called a *cache miss*. Reading data from main RAM can take hundreds of cycles, so the cost of a cache miss is very high indeed.

#### 3.5.4.1 Cache Lines

Memory caching takes advantage of the fact that memory access patterns in real software tend to exhibit two kinds of *locality of reference*:

1. *Spatial locality*. If memory address  $N$  is accessed by a program, it's likely that nearby addresses such as  $N + 1$ ,  $N + 2$  and so on will also be accessed. Iterating sequentially through the data stored in an array is an example of a memory access pattern with a high degree of spatial locality.
2. *Temporal locality*. If memory address  $N$  is accessed by a program, it's likely that that same address will be accessed again in the near future. Reading data from a variable or data structure, performing a transformation on it, and then writing an updated result into the same variable or data structure is an example of a memory access pattern with a high degree of temporal locality.

To take advantage of locality of reference, memory caching systems move data into the cache in contiguous blocks called *cache lines* rather than caching data items individually.

For example, let's say the program is accessing the data members of an instance of a class or struct. When the first member is read, it might take hundreds of cycles for the memory controller to reach out into main RAM to retrieve the data. However, the cache controller doesn't just read that one member—it actually reads a larger contiguous block of RAM into the cache. That way, subsequent reads of the other data members of the instance will likely result in low-cost cache hits.

#### 3.5.4.2 Mapping Cache Lines to Main RAM Addresses

There is a simple one-to-many correspondence between memory addresses in the cache and memory addresses in main RAM. We can think of the address space of the cache as being “mapped” onto the main RAM address space in a repeating pattern, starting at address 0 in main RAM and continuing on up until all main RAM addresses have been “covered” by the cache.

As a concrete example, let's say that our cache is 32 KiB in size, and that cache lines are 128 bytes each. The cache can therefore hold 256 cache lines ( $256 \times 128 = 32,768 \text{ B} = 32 \text{ KiB}$ ). Let's further assume that main RAM is 256 MiB in size. So main RAM is 8192 times as big as the cache, because  $(256 \times 1024)/32 = 8192$ . That means we need to overlay the address space of the cache onto the main RAM address space 8192 times in order to cover all possible physical memory locations. Or put another way, a single line in the cache maps to 8192 distinct line-sized chunks of main RAM.

Given any address in main RAM, we can find its address in the cache by taking the main RAM address *modulo* the size of the cache. So for a 32 KiB cache and 256 MiB of main RAM, the cache addresses 0x0000 through 0x7FFF (that's 32 KiB) map to main RAM addresses 0x0000 through 0x7FFF. But this range of cache addresses *also* maps to main RAM addresses 0x8000 through 0xFFFF, 0x10000 through 0x17FFF, 0x18000 through 0x1FFFF and so on, all the way up to the last main RAM block at addresses 0xFFFF8000 through 0xFFFFFFFF. Figure 3.25 illustrates the mapping between main RAM and cache RAM.

#### 3.5.4.3 Addressing the Cache

Let's consider what happens when the CPU reads a single byte from memory. The address of the desired byte in main RAM is first converted into an address within the cache. The cache controller then checks whether or not the cache line containing that byte already exists in the cache. If it does, it's a cache hit, and the byte is read from the cache rather than from main RAM. If it doesn't, it's a cache miss, and the line-sized chunk of data is read from main RAM and

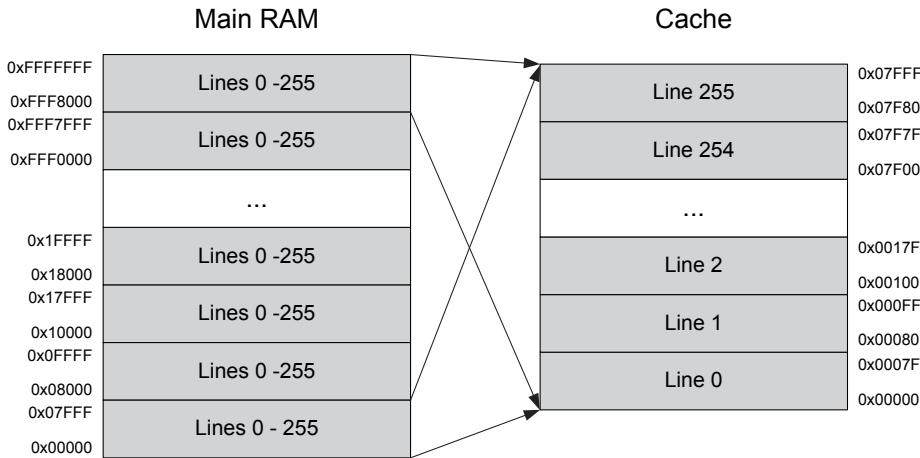


Figure 3.25. Direct mapping between main memory addresses and cache lines.

loaded into the cache so that subsequent reads of nearby addresses will be fast.

The cache can only deal with memory addresses that are *aligned* to a multiple of the cache line size (see Section 3.3.7.1 for a discussion of memory alignment). Put another way, the cache can really only be addressed in units of lines, not bytes. Hence we need to convert our byte's address into a *cache line index*.

Consider a cache that is  $2^M$  bytes in total size, containing lines that are  $2^n$  in size. The  $n$  least-significant bits of the main RAM address represent the *offset* of the byte within the cache line. We strip off these  $n$  least-significant bits to convert from units of bytes to units of lines (i.e., we divide the address by the cache line size, which is  $2^n$ ). Finally we split the resulting address into two pieces: The  $(M - n)$  least-significant bits become the *cache line index*, and all the remaining bits tell us from *which* cache-sized block in main RAM the cache line came from. The block index is known as the *tag*.

In the case of a cache miss, the cache controller loads a line-sized chunk of data from main RAM into the corresponding line within the cache. The cache also maintains a small table of tags, one for each cache line. This allows the caching system to keep track of from *which* main RAM block each line in the cache came. This is necessary because of the many-to-one relationship between memory addresses in the cache and memory addresses in main RAM. Figure 3.26 illustrates how the cache associates a tag with each active line within it.

Returning to our example of reading a byte from main RAM, the complete

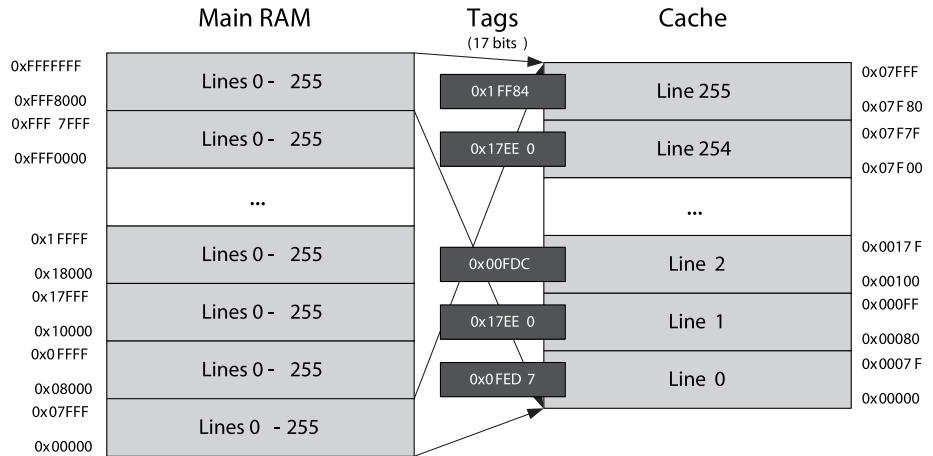


Figure 3.26. A *tag* is associated with each line in the cache, indicating from which cache-sized block of main RAM the corresponding line came.

sequence of events is as follows: The CPU issues a read operation. The main RAM address is converted into an offset, line index and tag. The corresponding tag in the cache is checked, using the line index to find it. If the tag in the cache matches the requested tag, it's a cache hit. In this case, the line index is used to retrieve the line-sized chunk of data from the cache, and the offset is used to locate the desired byte within the line. If the tags do not match, it's a cache miss. In this case, the appropriate line-sized chunk of main RAM is read into the cache, and the corresponding tag is stored in the cache's tag table. Subsequent reads of nearby addresses (those that reside within the same cache line) will therefore result in much faster cache hits.

#### 3.5.4.4 Set Associativity and Replacement Policy

The simple mapping between cache lines and main RAM addresses described above is known as a *direct-mapped* cache. It means that each address in main RAM maps to only *one* line in the cache. Using our 32 KiB cache with 128-byte lines as an example, the main RAM address 0x203 maps to cache line 4 (because 0x203 is 515, and  $\lfloor 515/128 \rfloor = 4$ ). However, in our example there are 8192 unique cache-line-sized blocks of main RAM that all map to cache line 4. Specifically, cache line 4 corresponds to main RAM addresses 0x200 through 0x27F, but also to addresses 0x8200 through 0x827F, and 0x10200 through 0x1027F, and 8189 *other* cache-line-sized address ranges as well.

When a cache miss occurs, the CPU must load the corresponding cache line from main memory into the cache. If the line in the cache contains no valid

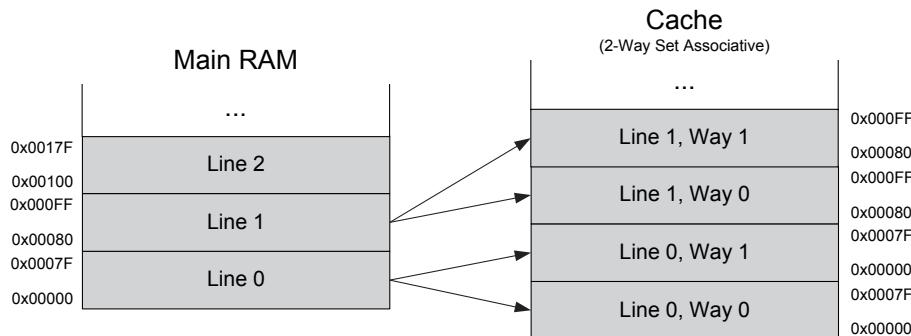


Figure 3.27. A 2-way set associative cache.

data, we simply copy the data into it and we're done. But if the line already contains data (from a different main memory block), we must overwrite it. This is known as *evicting* the cache line.

The problem with a direct-mapped cache is that it can result in pathological cases. For example, two unrelated main memory blocks might keep evicting one another in a ping-pong fashion. We can obtain better average performance if each main memory address can map to two or more distinct lines in the cache. In a *2-way set associative* cache, each main RAM address maps to two cache lines. This is illustrated in Figure 3.27. Obviously a 4-way set associative cache performs even better than a 2-way, and an 8-way or 16-way cache can outperform a 4-way cache and so on.

Once we have more than one “cache way,” the cache controller is faced with a dilemma: When a cache miss occurs, which of the “ways” should we evict and which ones should we allow to stay resident in the cache? The answer to this question differs between CPU designs, and is known as the CPU's *replacement policy*. One popular policy is *not most-recently used* (NMRU). In this scheme, the most-recently used “way” is kept track of, and eviction always affects the “way” or “ways” that are *not* the most-recently used one. Other policies include *first in first out* (FIFO), which is the only option in a direct-mapped cache, least-recently used (LRU), least-frequently used (LFU), and pseudorandom. For more on cache replacement policies, see <https://ece752.ece.wisc.edu/lect11-cache-replacement.pdf>.

### 3.5.4.5 Multilevel Caches

The *hit rate* is a measure of how often a program hits the cache, as opposed to incurring the large cost of a cache miss. The higher the hit rate, the better the program will perform (all other things being equal). There is a fundamental

trade-off between cache latency and hit rate. The larger the cache, the higher the hit rate—but larger caches cannot be located as close to the CPU, so they tend to be slower than smaller ones.

Most game consoles employ at least two *levels* of cache. The CPU first tries to find the data it's looking for in the *level 1* (L1) cache. This cache is small but has a very low access latency. If the data isn't there, it tries the larger but higher-latency *level 2* (L2) cache. Only if the data cannot be found in the L2 cache do we incur the full cost of a main memory access. Because the latency of main RAM can be so high relative to the CPU's clock rate, some PCs even include *level 3* (L3) and *level 4* (L4) caches.

#### 3.5.4.6 Instruction Cache and Data Cache

When writing high-performance code for a game engine or for any other performance-critical system, it is important to realize that both data and code are cached. The *instruction cache* (I-cache, often denoted I\$) is used to preload executable machine code before it runs, while the *data cache* (D-cache, or D\$) is used to speed up read and write operations performed by that machine code. In a level 1 (L1) cache, the two caches are always physically distinct, because it is undesirable for an instruction read to cause valid data to be bumped out of the cache or vice versa. So when optimizing our code, we must consider both D-cache and I-cache performance (although as we'll see, optimizing one tends to have a positive effect on the other). Higher-level caches (L2, L3, L4) typically do not make this distinction between code and data, because their larger size tends to mitigate the problems of code evicting data or data evicting code.

#### 3.5.4.7 Write Policy

We haven't talked yet about what happens when the CPU *writes* data to RAM. How the cache controller handles writes is known as its *write policy*. The simplest kind of cache is called a *write-through cache*; in this relatively simple cache design, all writes to the cache are mirrored to main RAM immediately. In a *write-back* (or *copy-back*) cache design, data is first written into the cache and the cache line is only flushed out to main RAM under certain circumstances, such as when a dirty cache line needs to be evicted in order to read in a new cache line from main RAM, or when the program explicitly requests a flush to occur.

#### 3.5.4.8 Cache Coherency: MESI, MOESI and MESIF

When multiple CPU cores share a single main memory store, things get more complicated. It's typical for each core to have its own L1 cache, but multiple cores might share an L2 cache, as well as sharing main RAM. See Figure 3.28

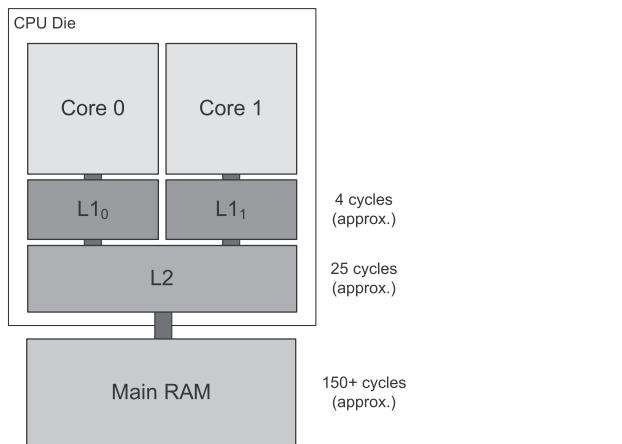


Figure 3.28. Level 1 and level 2 caches.

for an illustration of a two-level cache architecture with two CPU cores sharing one main memory store and an L2 cache.

In the presence of multiple cores, it's important for the system to maintain *cache coherency*. This amounts to making sure that the data in the caches belonging to multiple cores match one another and the contents of main RAM. Coherency doesn't have to be maintained at every moment—all that matters is that the running program can never *tell* that the contents of the caches are out of sync.

The three most common cache coherency protocols are known as MESI (modified, exclusive, shared, invalid), MOESI (modified, owned, exclusive, shared, invalid) and MESIF (modified, exclusive, shared, invalid and forward). We'll discuss the MESI protocol in more depth when we talk about multicore computing architectures in Section 4.9.4.2.

#### 3.5.4.9 Avoiding Cache Misses

Obviously cache misses cannot be totally avoided, since data has to move to and from main RAM eventually. The trick to writing high performance software in the presence of a memory cache hierarchy is to arrange your data in RAM, and design your data manipulation algorithms, in such a way that the minimum number of cache misses occur.

The best way to avoid D-cache misses is to organize your data in *contiguous* blocks that are as *small* as possible and then access them *sequentially*. When the data is contiguous (i.e., you don't "jump around" in memory a lot), a single cache miss will load the maximum amount of relevant data in one go. When

the data is small, it is more likely to fit into a single cache line (or at least a minimum number of cache lines). And when you access your data sequentially, you avoid evicting and reloading cache lines multiple times.

Avoiding I-cache misses follows the same basic principle as avoiding D-cache misses. However, the implementation requires a different approach. The easiest thing to do is to keep your high-performance loops as small as possible in terms of code size, and avoid calling functions within your innermost loops. If you do opt to call functions, try to keep their code size small too. This helps to ensure that the entire body of the loop, including all called functions, will remain in the I-cache the entire time the loop is running.

Use inline functions judiciously. Inlining a small function can be a big performance boost. However, too much inlining bloats the size of the code, which can cause a performance-critical section of code to no longer fit within the cache.

### 3.5.5 Nonuniform Memory Access (NUMA)

When designing a multiprocessor game console or personal computer, system architects must choose between two fundamentally different memory architectures: *uniform memory access* (UMA) and *nonuniform memory access* (NUMA).

In a UMA design, the computer contains a single large bank of main RAM which is visible to all CPU cores in the system. The physical address space looks the same to each core, and each can read from and write to all memory locations in main RAM. A UMA architecture typically makes use of a cache hierarchy to mitigate memory access latency issues.

One problem with a UMA architecture is that the cores often contend for access to main RAM and any shared caches. For example, the PS4 contains eight cores arranged into two clusters. Each core has its own private L1 cache, but each cluster of four cores shares a single L2 cache, and all cores share main RAM. As such, the cores often contend with one another for access to the L2 cache and main RAM.

One way to address core contention problems is to employ a *non-uniform memory access* (NUMA) design. In a NUMA system, each core is provided with a relatively small bank of high-speed dedicated RAM called a *local store*. Like an L1 cache, a local store is typically located on the same die as the core itself, and is only accessible by that core. But unlike an L1 cache, access to the local store is explicit. A local store might be mapped to part of a core's address space, with main RAM mapped to a different range of addresses. Alternatively, certain cores might *only* be able to see the physical addresses within its local store, and might rely on a *direct memory access controller* (DMAC) to

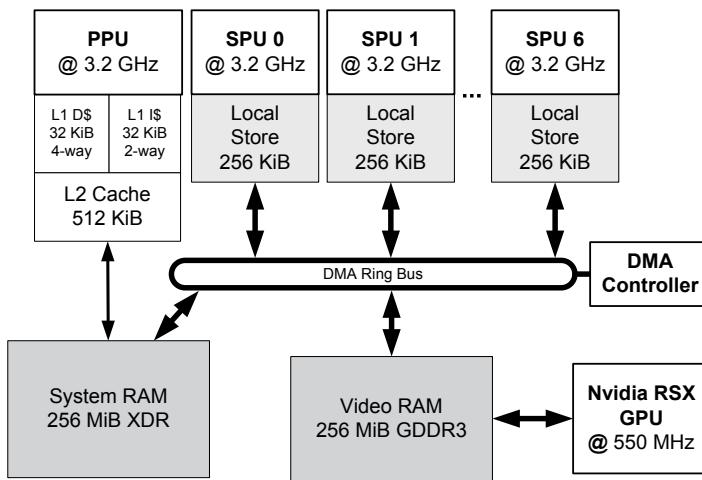


Figure 3.29. Simplified view of the PS3's cell broadband architecture.

transfer data between the local store and main RAM.

### 3.5.5.1 SPU Local Stores on the PS3

The PlayStation 3 is a classic example of a NUMA architecture. The PS3 contains a single main CPU known as the *Power processing unit* (PPU), eight<sup>8</sup> co-processors known as *synergistic processing units* (SPUs), and an NVIDIA RSX graphics processing unit (GPU). The PPU has exclusive access to 256 MiB of main system RAM (with an L1 and L2 cache), the GPU has exclusive access to 256 MiB of video RAM (VRAM), and each SPU has its own private 256 KiB local store.

The physical address spaces of main RAM, video RAM and the SPUs' local stores are all totally isolated from one another. This means that, for example, the PPU cannot directly address memory in VRAM or in any of the SPUs' local stores, and any given SPU cannot directly address main RAM, video RAM, or any of the other SPUs' local stores, only its own local store. The memory architecture of the PS3 is illustrated in Figure 3.29.

### 3.5.5.2 PS2 Scratchpad (SPR)

Looking even farther back to the PlayStation 2, we can learn about another memory architecture that was designed to improve overall system perfor-

<sup>8</sup>Only six of the SPUs are available for use by game applications—one SPU is reserved for use by the operating system, and one is entirely off-limits to account for inevitable flaws in the fabrication process.

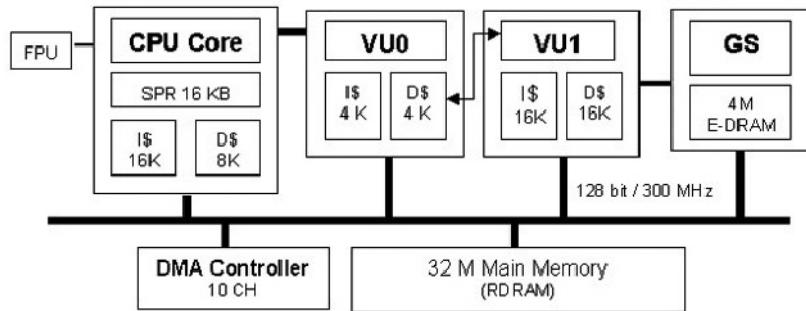


Figure 3.30. Simplified view of the PS2's memory architecture, illustrating the 16 KiB scratchpad (SPR), the L1 caches of the main CPU (EE) and the two vector units (VU0 and VU1), the 4 MiB bank of video RAM accessible to the graphics synthesizer (GS), the 32 MiB bank of main RAM, the DMA controller and the system buses.

mance. The main CPU on the PS2, called the emotion engine (EE), has a special 16 KiB area of memory called the *scratchpad* (abbreviated SPR), in addition to a 16 KiB L1 instruction cache (I-cache) and an 8 KiB L1 data cache (D-cache). The PS2 also contains two vector coprocessors known as VU0 and VU1, each with their own L1 I- and D-caches, and a GPU known as the *graphics synthesizer* (GS) connected to a 4 MiB bank of video RAM. The PS2's memory architecture is illustrated in Figure 3.30.

The scratchpad is located on the CPU die, and therefore enjoys the same low latency as L1 cache memory. But unlike the L1 cache, the scratchpad is memory-mapped so that it appears to the programmer to be a range of regular main RAM addresses. The scratchpad on the PS2 is itself uncached, meaning that reads and writes from and to it are direct; they bypass the EE's L1 cache entirely.

The scratchpad's main benefit isn't actually its low access latency—it's the fact that the CPU can access scratchpad memory without making use of the system buses. As such, reads and writes from and to the scratchpad can happen while the system's address and data bus are being used for other purposes. For example, a game might set up a chain of DMA requests to transfer data between main RAM and the two vector processing units (VUs) in the PS2. While these DMAs are being processed by the DMAC, and/or while the VUs are busy performing calculations (both of which would make heavy use of the system buses), the EE can be performing calculations on data that resides within the scratchpad, without interfering with the DMAs or the operation of the VUs. Moving data into and out of the scratchpad can be done via regular memory move instructions (or `memcpy()` in C/C++), but this task

can also be accomplished via DMA requests. The PS2's scratchpad therefore gives the programmer a lot of flexibility and power in order to maximize a game engine's data throughput.



Taylor & Francis  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 4

## Parallelism and Concurrent Programming

Computing performance—typically measured in millions of instructions per second (MIPS) or floating-point operations per second (FLOPS)—has been improving at a staggeringly rapid and consistent rate over the past four decades. In the late 1970s, the Intel 8087 floating-point coprocessor could muster only about 50 kFLOPS ( $5 \times 10^4$  FLOPS), while at roughly the same time a Cray-1 supercomputer the size of a large refrigerator could operate at a rate of roughly 160 MFLOPS ( $1.6 \times 10^8$  FLOPS). Today, the CPU in game consoles like the Playstation 4 or the Xbox One produces roughly 100 GFLOPS ( $10^{11}$  FLOPS) of processing power, and the fastest supercomputer, currently China’s Sunway TaihuLight, has a LINPACK benchmark score of 93 PFLOPS (peta-FLOPS, or a staggering  $9.3 \times 10^{16}$  floating-point operations per second). This is an improvement of seven orders of magnitude for personal computers, and eight orders of magnitude for supercomputers.

Many factors contributed to this rapid rate of improvement. In the early days, the move from vacuum tubes to solid-state transistors permitted the miniaturization of computing hardware. The number of transistors that could be etched onto a single chip rose dramatically as new kinds of transistors, new types of digital logic, new substrate materials and new manufacturing processes were developed. These advances also contributed to improvements in

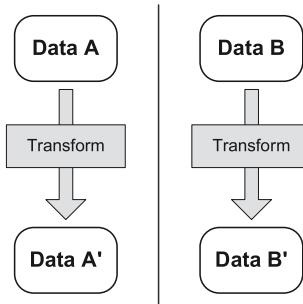


Figure 4.1. Two flows of control operating on *independent* data are not considered concurrent because they are not prone to data races.

power consumption and dramatic increases in CPU clock speeds. And starting in the 1990s, computer hardware manufacturers have increasingly turned to *parallelism* as a means of improving computing performance.

Writing software that runs *correctly* and *efficiently* on parallel computing hardware is significantly more difficult than writing software for the serial computers of yesteryear. It requires a deep understanding of how the hardware actually works. What's more, taking full advantage of the multicore CPUs found in modern computing platforms requires an approach to software design called *concurrent programming*. In a concurrent software system, multiple flows of control cooperate to solve a common problem. These flows of control must be carefully coordinated. Many of the techniques that work well in serial programs break down when applied to concurrent programs. As such, it's important for modern programmers (in all industries, including games) to have a solid understanding of parallel computing hardware, and to be well versed in concurrent programming techniques.

## 4.1 Defining Concurrency and Parallelism

### 4.1.1 Concurrency

A concurrent piece of software utilizes *multiple flows of control* to solve a problem. These flows of control might be implemented as multiple *threads* running within the context of a single process, or multiple cooperating processes running either on a single computer or multiple computers. Multiple flows of control can also be implemented within a process using other techniques such as *fibers* or *coroutines*.

The primary factor that distinguishes *concurrent programming* from *sequential programming* is the reading and/or writing of *shared data*. As shown in

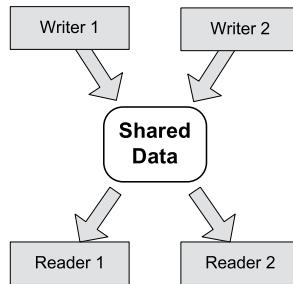


Figure 4.2. Two flows of control both reading from a shared data file and/or writing to a shared data file are examples of *concurrency*.

Figure 4.1, if we have two or more flows of control, each operating on a totally independent block of data, then this is not technically an example of concurrency—it's just “computing at the same time.”

The central problem of concurrent programming is how to coordinate multiple readers and/or multiple writers of a shared data file, in such a way as to ensure predictable, correct results. At the heart of this problem is a special kind of *race condition* known as a *data race*, in which two or more flows of control “compete” to be the first to read, modify and write a chunk of shared data. The crux of the concurrency problem is to identify and eliminate data races. Two examples of concurrency are illustrated in Figure 4.2.

We'll explore the techniques programmers use to avoid data races and thereby write reliable concurrent programs starting in Section 4.5. But before we do that, let's take a look at how parallel computer hardware can both provide an effective platform for running concurrent software, and improve the execution speed of sequential programs as well.

### 4.1.2 Parallelism

In computer engineering, the term *parallelism* refers to any situation in which two or more distinct hardware components are operating simultaneously. In other words, *parallel* computer hardware can perform more than one task at a time. In contrast, *serial* computer hardware is capable of doing only one thing at a time.

Prior to 1989, consumer-grade computing devices were exclusively serial machines. Examples include the MOS Technology 6502 CPU, which was used in the Apple II and Commodore 64 personal computers, and the Intel 8086, 80286 and 80386 CPUs which were at the heart of early IBM PCs and clones.

Today, parallel computing hardware is ubiquitous. One obvious example of hardware parallelism is a multicore CPU, such as the Intel Core™ i7 or the AMD Ryzen™ 7. But parallelism can be employed at a wide range of granularities. For example, a single CPU might contain multiple ALUs and therefore be capable of performing multiple independent calculations in parallel. And at the other end of the spectrum, a cluster of computers working in tandem to solve a common problem is also an example of hardware parallelism.

#### 4.1.2.1 Implicit versus Explicit Parallelism

One way to classify the various forms of parallelism in computer hardware design is to consider the *purpose* of parallelism in each. In other words, what problem does parallelism solve in a given design? Thinking along these lines, we can divide parallelism coarsely into two categories:

- implicit parallelism, and
- explicit parallelism.

*Implicit parallelism* refers to the use of parallel hardware components within a CPU for the purpose of improving the performance of a *single* instruction stream. This is also known as *instruction level parallelism* (ILP), because the CPU executes instructions from a single stream (a single thread) but each instruction is executed with some degree of hardware parallelism. Examples of implicit parallelism include:

- pipelining,
- superscalar architectures, and
- very long instruction word (VLIW) architectures.

We'll explore implicit parallelism in Section 4.2. GPUs also make extensive use of implicit parallelism; we'll take a closer look at the design and programming of GPUs in Section 4.11.

*Explicit parallelism* refers to the use of duplicated hardware components within a CPU, computer or computer system, for the purpose of running *more than one instruction stream* simultaneously. In other words, explicitly parallel hardware is designed to run *concurrent* software more efficiently than would be possible on a serial computing platform. The most common examples of explicit parallelism are:

- hyperthreaded CPUs,
- multicore CPUs,

- multiprocessor computers,
- computer clusters,
- grid computing, and
- cloud computing.

We'll investigate these explicitly parallel architectures further in Section 4.3.

### 4.1.3 Task versus Data Parallelism

Another way to understand parallelism is to divide it into two broad categories based on the kind of work being done in parallel.

- *Task parallelism*. When multiple heterogeneous operations are performed in parallel, we call this task parallelism. Performing animation calculations on one core while performing collision checks on another would be an example of this form of parallelism.
- *Data parallelism*. When a *single* operation is performed on multiple data items in parallel, it is called data parallelism. Calculating 1000 skinning matrices by running 250 matrix calculations on each of four cores would be an example of data parallelism.

Most real concurrent programs make use of both task and data parallelism to varying degrees.

### 4.1.4 Flynn's Taxonomy

Yet another way to classify the varying degrees of parallelism we'll encounter in computing hardware is to use *Flynn's Taxonomy*. Proposed by Michael J. Flynn of Stanford University in 1966, this approach breaks down parallelism into a two-dimensional space. Along one axis, we have the number of parallel flows of control (which Flynn refers to as the number of instructions running in parallel at any given moment). On the other axis, we have the number of distinct data streams being operated on by each instruction in the program. The space is thus divided into four quadrants:

- *Single instruction, single data (SISD)*: A single instruction stream operating on a single data stream.
- *Multiple instruction, multiple data (MIMD)*: Multiple instruction streams operating on multiple independent data streams.
- *Single instruction, multiple data (SIMD)*: A single instruction stream operating on multiple data streams (i.e., performing the same sequence of operations on multiple independent streams of data simultaneously).

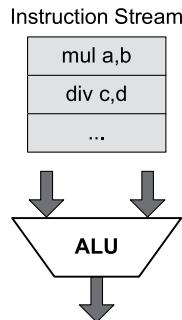


Figure 4.3. Example of SISD. A single ALU performs the multiply first, followed by the divide.

- *Multiple instruction, single data (MISD)*: Multiple instruction streams all operating on a single data stream. (MISD is rarely used in games, but one common application is to provide fault tolerance via redundancy.)

#### 4.1.4.1 Single versus Multiple Data

It's important to realize here that a "data stream" isn't just an array of numbers. Most arithmetic operators are binary—they operate on two inputs to produce a single output. When applied to binary arithmetic, the term "single data" refers to a single *pair* of inputs, with a single output. As an example, let's have a look at how two binary arithmetic operations, a multiply ( $a \times b$ ) and a divide ( $c/d$ ), might be accomplished under each of the four Flynn categories:

- In a SISD architecture, a single ALU performs the multiply first, followed by the divide. This is illustrated in Figure 4.3.
- In a MIMD architecture, two ALUs perform operations in parallel, operating on two independent instruction streams. This is shown in Figure 4.4.
- The MIMD classification also applies to the case in which a single ALU processes two independent instruction streams via *time-slicing*, as shown in Figure 4.5.
- In a SIMD architecture, a single "wide ALU" known as a vector processing unit (VPU) performs the multiply first, followed by the divide, but each instruction operates on a pair of four-element input vectors and produces a four-element output vector. Figure 4.6 illustrates this approach.

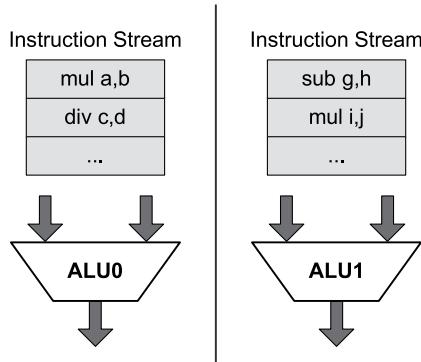


Figure 4.4. Example of MIMD. Two ALUs perform operations in parallel.

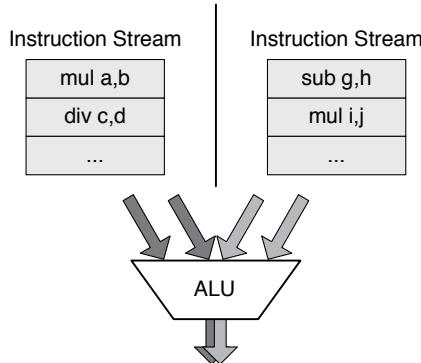


Figure 4.5. Example of time-sliced MIMD. A single ALU performs operations on behalf of two independent instruction streams, perhaps by alternating between them.

- In a MISD architecture, two ALUs process the same instruction stream (multiply first, followed by divide) and ideally produce identical results. Illustrated in Figure 4.7, this architecture is primarily useful for implementing fault tolerance via redundancy. ALU 1 acts as a “hot spare” for ALU 0 and vice-versa, meaning that if one of the ALUs experiences a failure, the system can seamlessly switch to the other.

#### 4.1.4.2 GPU Parallelism: SIMT

In recent years, a fifth classification has been added to Flynn’s taxonomy to account for the design of graphics processing units (GPU). *Single instruction multiple thread* (SIMT) is essentially a hybrid between SIMD and MIMD, used primarily in the design of GPUs. It mixes SIMD processing (a single instruc-

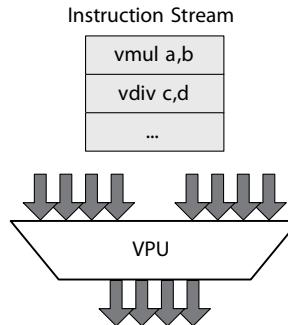


Figure 4.6. Example of SIMD. A single vector processing unit (VPU) performs the multiply first, followed by the divide, but each instruction operates on a pair of four-element input vectors and produces a four-element output vector.

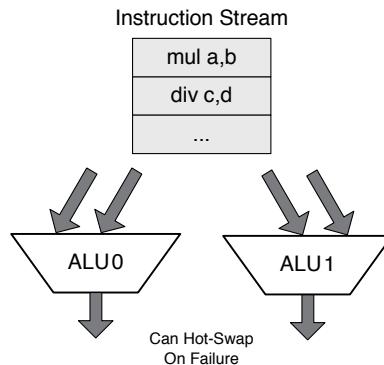


Figure 4.7. Example of MISD. Two ALUs process the same instruction stream (multiply first, followed by divide) and ideally produce identical results.

tion operating on multiple data streams simultaneously) with multithreading (more than one instruction stream sharing a processor via time-slicing).

The term “SIMT” was coined by NVIDIA, but it can be used to describe the design of any GPU. The term *manycore* is also often used to refer to a SIMT design (i.e., a GPU consisting of a relatively large number of lightweight SIMD cores) whereas the term *multicore* refers to MIMD designs (i.e., a CPU with a relatively smaller number of heavyweight general purpose cores). We’ll take a closer look at the SIMT design employed by GPUs in Section 4.11.

### 4.1.5 Orthogonality of Concurrency and Parallelism

We should stress here that concurrent software doesn't *require* parallel hardware, and parallel hardware isn't *only* for running concurrent software. For example, a concurrent multithreaded program can run on a single, serial CPU core via preemptive multitasking (see Section 4.4.4). Likewise, instruction level parallelism is intended to improve the performance of a single thread, and therefore benefits both concurrent and sequential software. So while they are closely related, concurrency and parallelism are really orthogonal concepts.

As long as our system involves *multiple readers* and/or *multiple writers* of a shared data object, we have a concurrent system. Concurrency can be achieved via preemptive multitasking (on serial *or* parallel hardware) or via true parallelism (in which each thread executes on a distinct core)—the techniques we'll learn in this chapter will be applicable either way.

### 4.1.6 Roadmap of the Chapter

In the following sections, we'll first turn our attention to implicit parallelism, and how best to optimize our software to take advantage of it. Next, we'll review the most common forms of explicit parallelism. Then we'll explore the various concurrent programming techniques used to harness explicitly parallel computing platforms. Finally, we'll round out the discussion of parallel programming by discussing SIMD vector processing, and how it applies to GPU design and general-purpose GPU programming (GPGPU) techniques.

## 4.2 Implicit Parallelism

In Section 4.1.2.1 we said that *implicit parallelism* is the use of parallel computing hardware for the purpose of improving the execution speed of a single thread. CPU manufacturers began using implicit parallelism in their consumer products in the late 1980s, in an attempt to make *existing code* run faster on each new generation of CPUs within a given product line.

There are a number of ways to apply parallelism to the problem of improving a CPU's single-threaded performance. The most common are *pipelined* CPU architectures, *superscalar* designs, and *very long instruction word* (VLIW) architectures. We'll begin by having a look at how a pipelined CPU functions, and then address the other two variants of implicit parallelism.

Clock Cycle	Fetch	Dec	Exec	Mem	WB
0	A				
1		A			
2			A		
3				A	
4					A
5	B				
6	B				

Figure 4.8. In a non-pipelined CPU, instruction stages are idle much of the time.

### 4.2.1 Pipelining

In order for a single machine language instruction to be executed by the CPU, it must pass through a number of distinct *stages*. Every CPU’s design is a bit different—some CPU designs employ a large number of granular stages, while others utilize a smaller number of coarse-grained stages. However every CPU implements the following basic stages in one way or another:

- *Fetch*. The instruction to be executed is read from the memory location pointed to by the instruction pointer register (IP).
- *Decode*. The instruction word is decomposed into its opcode, addressing mode and optional operands.
- *Execute*. Based on the opcode, the appropriate functional unit within the CPU is selected (ALU, FPU, memory controller, etc.). The instruction is dispatched to the selected component for processing, along with any relevant operand data. The functional unit then performs its operation.
- *Memory access*. If the instruction involves reading or writing memory, the memory controller performs the appropriate operation during this stage.
- *Register write-back*. The functional unit executing the instruction (ALU, FPU, etc.) writes its results back into the destination register.

Figure 4.8 traces the path of two instructions named “A” and “B” through the five execution phases of a serial CPU. You’ll notice right away that this diagram contains a lot of blank space: While one stage is busy doing its thing to an instruction, all the other stages are twiddling their thumbs, doing nothing.

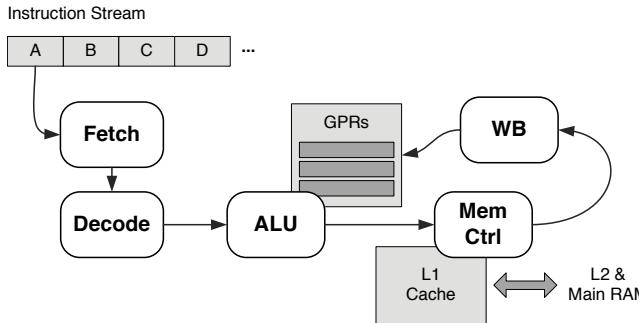


Figure 4.9. Components of a pipelined scalar CPU.

Clock Cycle	Fetch	Dec	Exec	Mem	WB
0	A				
1	B	A			
2	C	B	A		
3	D	C	B	A	
4	E	D	C	B	A
5	F	E	D	C	B
6	G	F	E	D	C

Figure 4.10. Ideal flow of instructions through a pipelined CPU.

Each of the stages of instruction execution is actually handled by different hardware within the CPU, as shown in Figure 4.9. The control unit (CU) and memory controller handle the instruction fetch stage. A different circuit within the CU then handles the decode stage. The ALU, FPU or VPU handles the lion's share of the execute stage. The memory stage is performed by the memory controller. And finally, the write-back stage primarily involves the registers. This division of labor amongst different circuits within the CPU is the key to making the CPU more efficient: We just need to keep all the stages' hardware busy all the time.

The solution is known as *pipelining*. Instead of waiting for each instruction to complete all five stages before starting to execute the next one, we begin the execution of a new instruction on *every* clock cycle. Multiple instructions are therefore "in flight" simultaneously. This process is illustrated in Figure 4.10.

Pipelining is a bit like doing laundry. If you have a large number of loads to do, it wouldn't be very efficient to wait until each load has been washed and

dried before starting the next one—while the washer is busy, the dryer would be sitting idle, and vice versa. It’s much better to keep both machines busy at all times, by starting the second load washing just as soon as the first load goes into the dryer, and so on.

Pipelining is a form of parallelism known as *instruction-level parallelism* (ILP). For the most part, ILP is designed to be transparent to the programmer. Ideally, at a given clock speed, a program that runs properly on a scalar CPU should be able to run correctly—but faster—on a pipelined CPU, as long as the two processors support the same instruction set architecture (ISA) of course. In theory, a CPU with a pipeline that is  $N$  stages deep can execute a program  $N$  times faster than its serial counterpart. However, as we’ll explore in Section 4.2.4, pipelining doesn’t always perform as well as we would expect, thanks to various kinds of *dependencies* between instructions in the instruction stream. Programmers who are interested in writing high-performance code therefore cannot remain oblivious to ILP. We must embrace it, understand it, and sometimes adjust the design of our code and/or data in order to get the most out of a pipelined CPU.

### 4.2.2 Latency versus Throughput

The *latency* of a pipeline is the amount of time required to completely process a single instruction. This is just the sum of the latencies of all the stages in the pipeline. Denoting latencies with the time variable  $T$ , we can write:

$$T_{\text{pipeline}} = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} T_i \quad (4.1)$$

for a pipeline with  $N$  stages.

The *throughput* or *bandwidth* of a pipeline is a measure of how many instructions it can process per unit time. The throughput of a pipeline is determined by the latency of its slowest stage—much as a chain is only as strong as its weakest link. The throughput can be thought of as a frequency  $f$ , measured in instructions per second. It can be written as follows:

$$f = \frac{1}{\max(T_i)}. \quad (4.2)$$

### 4.2.3 Pipeline Depths

We said that each stage in a CPU can potentially have a different latency ( $T_i$ ), and that the stage with the longest latency dictates the throughput of the entire processor. On each clock cycle, the other stages sit idle waiting for the longest

stage to complete. Ideally, then, we'd like all of the stages in our CPU to have roughly the same latency.

This goal can be achieved by increasing the total number of stages in the pipeline: If one stage is taking much longer than the others, it can be broken into two or more shorter stages in an attempt to make all the latencies roughly equal. However, we can't just keep subdividing stages forever. The larger the number of stages, the higher the overall instruction latency will be. This increases the cost of pipeline stalls (see Section 4.2.4). Therefore CPU manufacturers try to strike a balance between increasing throughput via deeper pipelines, and keeping the overall instruction latency in check. As a result, real CPU pipelines range from 4 or 5 stages at minimum, to something on the order of 30 stages at most.

#### 4.2.4 Stalls

Sometimes the CPU is unable to issue a new instruction on a particular clock cycles. This is called a *stall*. On such a clock cycle, the first stage in the pipeline lies idle. On the next clock cycle, the second stage will be idle, and so on. A stall can therefore be thought of as a “bubble” of idle time that propagates through the pipeline at a rate of one stage per clock cycle. These bubbles are sometimes called *delay slots*.

#### 4.2.5 Data Dependencies

Stalls are caused by *dependencies* between instructions in the instruction stream being executed. For example, consider the following sequence of instructions:

```
mov ebx,5      ; load the value 5 into register EBX
imul eax,10    ; multiply the contents of EAX by 10
                ; (result stored in EAX)
add eax,7      ; add 7 to EAX (result stored in EAX)
```

Ideally, we'd like to issue the `mov`, `imul` and `add` instructions on three consecutive clock cycles, to keep the pipeline as busy as possible. But in this case, the results of the `imul` instruction are used by the `add` instruction that follows it, so the CPU must wait until the `imul` has made it all the way through the pipeline before issuing the `add`. If the pipeline contains five stages, that means four cycles are wasted (see Figure 4.11). These kinds of dependencies between instructions are called *data dependencies*.

There are actually three kinds of dependencies between instructions that can cause stalls:

- data dependencies,

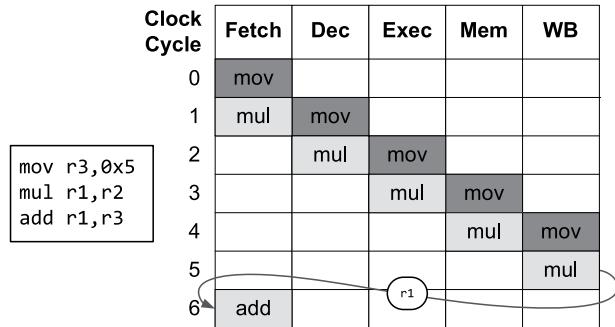


Figure 4.11. A data dependency between instructions causes a pipeline stall.

- control dependencies (also known as branch dependencies), and
- structural dependencies (also known as resource dependencies).

First we'll discuss how to avoid data dependencies, then we'll have a look at branch dependencies and how to mitigate their effects. Finally, we'll introduce superscalar CPU architectures and discuss how they can give rise to structural dependencies in a pipelined CPU.

#### 4.2.5.1 Instruction Reordering

To mitigate the effects of a data dependency, we need to find some other instructions for the CPU to execute while it waits for the dependent instruction to make its way through the pipeline. This can often be accomplished by *reordering* the instructions in the program (while taking care not to change the *behavior* of the program in the process). For any given pair of interdependent instructions, we want to find some nearby instructions that are *not* dependent on them, and move those instructions up or down so that they end up running *between* the dependent instruction pair, thus filling the “bubble” with useful work.

Instruction reordering may of course be done by hand, by an adventurous programmer who doesn't mind diving into assembly language programming. Thankfully, however, this is often not necessary: Today's optimizing compilers are very good at reordering instructions automatically to reduce or eliminate the impact of data dependencies.

As programmers, of course we shouldn't blindly trust the compiler to optimize our code perfectly—when writing high-performance code, it's always a good idea to have a look at the disassembly and verify that the compiler did a reasonable job. But that said, we should also remember the 80/20 rule

(Section 2.3) and only spend time optimizing the 20% or less of our code that actually has a noticeable impact on overall performance.

#### 4.2.5.2 Out-of-Order Execution

Compilers and programmers aren't the only ones capable of reordering a sequence of machine language instructions to prevent stalls. Many of today's CPUs support a feature known as *out-of-order execution*, which enables them to dynamically detect data dependencies between instructions, and automatically resolve them.

To accomplish this feat, the CPU looks ahead in the instruction stream and analyzes the instructions' register usage in order to detect dependencies between them. When a dependency is found, the "look-ahead window" is searched for another instruction that is *not* dependent on any of the currently-executing instructions. If one is found, it is issued (out of order!) to keep the pipeline busy. The details of how out-of-order execution works is beyond our scope here. Suffice it to say that as programmers, we cannot rely on the CPU to execute the instructions in the same order we (or the compiler) wrote them.

Both the compiler's optimizer and the CPU's out-of-order execution logic take great care to ensure that the behavior of the program doesn't change as a result of instruction reordering. However, as we'll see in Section 4.9.3, compiler optimizations and out-of-order execution *can* cause bugs in a concurrent program (i.e., a program consisting of multiple threads that share data). This is one of the many reasons why concurrent programming requires more care than serial programming.

#### 4.2.6 Branch Dependencies

What happens when a pipelined CPU encounters a conditional branch instruction (e.g., an `if` statement, or the conditional expression at the end of a `for` or `while` loop)? To answer this question, let's consider the following C/C++ code:

```
int SafeIntegerDivide(int a, int b, int defaultVal)
{
    return (b != 0) ? a / b : defaultVal;
}
```

If we looked at the disassembly for this function, it might look something like this on an Intel x86 CPU:

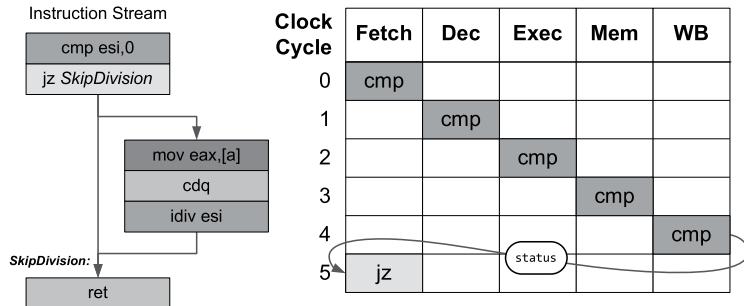


Figure 4.12. A dependency between a comparison instruction and a conditional branch instruction is called a branch dependency.

```

; function preamble omitted for clarity...

; first, put the default into the return register
mov eax,dword ptr [defaultVal]

mov esi,dword ptr [b] ; check (b != 0)
cmp esi,0
jz SkipDivision

mov eax, dword ptr[a] ; divisor (a) must be in EDX:EAX
cdq ; ... so sign-extend into EDX
idiv esi ; quotient lands in EAX

SkipDivision:
; function postamble omitted for clarity...
ret ; EAX is the return value

```

The dependency here is between the `cmp` (compare) instruction and the `jz` (jump if equal to zero) instruction. The CPU cannot issue the conditional jump until it knows the results of the comparison. This is called a *branch dependency* (also known as a *control dependency*). See Figure 4.12 for an illustration of a branch dependency.

#### 4.2.6.1 Speculative Execution

One way CPUs deal with branch dependencies is via a technique known as *speculative execution*, also known as *branch prediction*. Whenever a branch instruction is encountered, the CPU tries to guess at which branch is going to be taken. It continues to issue the instructions from the selected branch, in the hopes that its guess was correct. Of course, the CPU won't know for sure whether it guessed correctly until the dependent instruction pops out at the end of the pipeline. If the guess ends up being wrong, the CPU has executed

instructions that shouldn't have been executed at all. So the pipeline must be *flushed* and restarted at the first instruction of the correct branch. This is called a *branch penalty*.

The simplest guess a CPU can make is to assume that branches are never taken. The CPU just keeps executing instructions in sequential order, and only jumps the instruction pointer to a new location when its guess is proven wrong. This approach is I-cache friendly, in the sense that the CPU always prefers the branch whose instructions are most likely to be in the cache.

Another slightly more advanced approach to branch prediction is to assume that backward branches are always taken and forward branches are never taken. A backward branch is the kind found at the end of a `while` or `for` loop, so such branches tend to be more prevalent than forward branches.

Most high-quality CPUs include *branch prediction* hardware that can improve the quality of these “static” guesses significantly. A branch predictor can track the results of a branch instruction over multiple iterations of a loop and discover patterns that help it make better guesses on subsequent iterations.

PS3 game programmers had to deal with the poor performance of “branchy” code all the time, because the branch predictors on the Cell processor were frankly pretty terrible. But the AMD Jaguar CPU found in the PS4 and Xbox One has highly advanced branch prediction hardware, so game programmers can breathe a little easier when writing code for the PS4.

#### 4.2.6.2 Predication

Another way to mitigate the effects of branch dependencies is to simply avoid branching altogether. Consider again the `SafeIntegerDivide()` function, although we'll modify it slightly to work in terms of floating-point values instead of integers:

```
float SafeFloatDivide(float a, float b, float d)
{
    return (b != 0.0f) ? a / b : d;
}
```

This simple function calculates one of two answers, depending on the results of the conditional test `b != 0`. Instead of using a conditional branch statement to return one of these two answers, we can instead arrange for our conditional test to generate a *bit mask* consisting of all zeros (0x0U) if the condition is false, and all ones (0xFFFFFFFFU) if it is true. We can then execute *both* branches, generating two alternate answers. Finally, we use the mask to produce the final answer that we'll return from the function.

The following pseudocode illustrates the idea behind predication. (Note that this code won't run as-is. In particular, you can't mask a float with an unsigned int and obtain a float result—you'd need to use a union to reinterpret the bit patterns of the floats as if they were unsigned integers when applying the mask.)

```
int SafeFloatDivide_pred(float a, float b, float d)
{
    // convert Boolean (b != 0.0f) into either 1U or 0U
    const unsigned condition = (unsigned)(b != 0.0f);

    // convert 1U -> 0xFFFFFFFFU
    // convert 0U -> 0x00000000U
    const unsigned mask = 0U - condition;

    // calculate quotient (will be QNaN if b == 0.0f)
    const float q = a / b;

    // select quotient when mask is all ones, or default
    // value d when mask is all zeros (NOTE: this won't
    // work as written -- you'd need to use a union to
    // interpret the floats as unsigned for masking)
    const float result = (q & mask) | (d & ~mask);
    return result;
}
```

Let's take a closer look at how this works:

- The test `b != 0.0f` produces a bool result. We convert this into an unsigned integer by simply casting it. This results in either the value 1U (corresponding to `true`) or 0U (corresponding to `false`).
- We convert this unsigned result into a bit mask by subtracting it from 0U. Zero minus zero is still zero, and zero minus one is  $-1$ , which is 0xFFFFFFFFU in 32-bit unsigned integer arithmetic.
- Next, we go ahead and calculate the quotient. We run this code *regardless* of the result of the non-zero test, thereby side-stepping any branch dependency issues.
- We now have our two answers ready to go: The quotient `q` and the default value `d`. We want to apply the mask in order to "select" one or the other value. But to do this, we need to *reinterpret* the floating-point bit patterns of `q` and `d` as if they were unsigned integers. The most portable way to accomplish this in C/C++ is to use a union containing

two members, one of which interprets a 32-bit value as a `float`, the other of which interprets it as an `unsigned`.

- The mask is applied as follows: We bitwise AND the quotient `q` with the mask, producing a bit pattern that matches `q` if the mask is all ones, but is all zeros if the mask is all zeros. We bitwise AND the default value `d` with the *complement* of the mask, yielding all zeros if the mask is all ones, or the bit pattern of `d` if the mask is all zeros. Finally, we bitwise OR these two values together, effectively selecting *either* the value of `q` or the value of `d`.

The use of a mask to select one of two possible values like this is called *predication* because we run both code paths (the one that returns `a / b` and the one that returns `d`) but each code path is *predicated* on the results of the test `(a != 0)`, via the mask. Because we are selecting one of two possible values, this is also often called a *select* operation.

Going to all this trouble to avoid a branch may seem like overkill. And it can be—its usefulness depends on the relative cost of a branch versus the predicated alternative on your target hardware. Predication really shines when a CPU’s ISAs provide special machine language instructions for performing a select operation. For example, the PowerPC ISA offers an integer select instruction `isel`, a floating-point select instruction `fsel`, and even a SIMD vector select instruction `vecsel`, and their use can definitely result in performance improvements on PowerPC based platforms (like the PS3).

It’s important to realize that predication only works when both branches can be executed *safely*. Performing a divide by zero operation in floating-point generates a quiet not-a-number (QNaN), but an integer divide by zero throws an exception that will crash your game (unless it is caught). That’s why we converted this example to floating-point before applying predication to it.

#### 4.2.7 Superscalar CPUs

The pipelined CPU we described in Section 4.2.1 is what is called a *scalar* processor. This means that it can start executing at most one instruction per clock cycle. Yes, multiple instructions are “in flight” at any given moment, but only one *new* instruction is sent down the pipeline every clock cycle.

At its core, parallelism is about making use of multiple hardware components simultaneously. So one way to double the throughput of a CPU (at least in theory!) would be to *duplicate* most of the components on the chip, in such a way that *two* instructions could be launched each clock cycle. This is called a *superscalar* architecture.

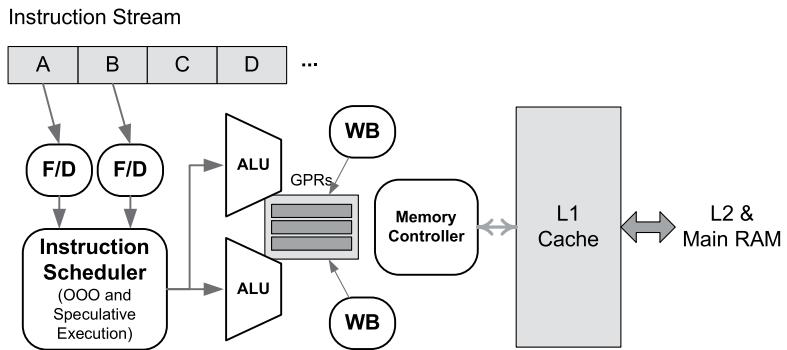


Figure 4.13. A pipelined superscalar CPU contains multiple execution components (ALUs, FPUs and/or VPUs) fed by a single instruction scheduler which typically supports out-of-order and speculative execution.

In a superscalar CPU, two (or more) instances of the circuitry that manages each stage of the pipeline<sup>1</sup> is present on-chip. The CPU still fetches instructions from a single instruction stream, but instead of issuing the one instruction pointed to by the IP during each clock cycle, the next *two* instructions are fetched and dispatched during each clock cycle. Figure 4.13 illustrates the hardware components found in a two-way superscalar CPU, and Figure 4.14 traces the path of ten instructions, “A” through “N,” as they move through this CPU’s two parallel pipelines.

#### 4.2.7.1 Complexity of Superscalar Designs

Implementing a superscalar CPU isn’t quite as simple as “copying and pasting” two identical CPU cores onto a die. Although it’s reasonable to envision a superscalar CPU as two parallel instruction pipelines, these two pipelines are fed from a single instruction stream. Some kind of control logic is therefore required at the front end of these parallel pipes. Just as on a CPU that supports out-of-order execution, a superscalar CPU’s control logic looks ahead in the instruction stream in an attempt to identify *dependencies* between instructions, and then issues instructions out of order in an attempt to mitigate their effects.

In addition to data and branch dependencies, a superscalar CPU is prone to a third kind of dependency known as a *resource dependency*. This kind of dependency arises when two or more consecutive instructions all require the

<sup>1</sup>Technically pipelining and superscalar designs are two independent forms of parallelism. A pipelined CPU needn’t be superscalar. Likewise, a superscalar CPU needn’t be pipelined, although the majority of them are.

Clock Cycle	F <sub>0</sub>	F <sub>1</sub>	D <sub>0</sub>	D <sub>1</sub>	E <sub>0</sub>	E <sub>1</sub>	M <sub>0</sub>	M <sub>1</sub>	W <sub>0</sub>	W <sub>1</sub>
0	A	B								
1	C	D	A	B						
2	E	F	C	D	A	B				
3	G	H	E	F	C	D	A	B		
4	I	J	G	H	E	F	C	D	A	B
5	K	L	I	J	G	H	E	F	C	D
6	M	N	K	L	I	J	G	H	E	F

Figure 4.14. Best-case execution of 14 instructions “A” through “N” on a superscalar pipelined CPU over seven clock cycles.

same functional unit within the CPU. For example, let’s imagine we have a superscalar CPU with two integer ALUs but only one FPU. Such a processor is capable of issuing two integer arithmetic instructions on each clock. But if two floating-point arithmetic instructions are encountered in the instruction stream, they cannot both be issued on the same clock cycle because the resource required by the second (the FPU) will already be in use by the first. As such, the control logic that manages instruction dispatch on a superscalar CPU is even more complex than that found on a scalar CPU that supports out-of-order execution.

#### 4.2.7.2 Superscalar and RISC

A two-way superscalar CPU requires roughly two times the silicon real-estate of a comparable scalar CPU design. In order to free up transistors, most superscalar CPUs are therefore *reduced instruction set* (RISC) processors. The ISA of a RISC processor provides a comparatively small set of instructions, each with a very focused purpose. More complex operations are performed by building up sequences of these simpler instructions. In contrast, the ISA of a *complex instruction set computer* (CISC) offers a much wider variety of instructions, each of which may be capable of performing more complex operations.

#### 4.2.8 Very Long Instruction Word (VLIW)

We saw in Section 4.2.7.1 that a superscalar CPU contains highly complex instruction dispatch logic. This logic takes up valuable real-estate on the CPU

die. Also, CPUs are only capable of looking ahead in the instruction stream by a relatively small number of instructions when analyzing dependencies and looking for opportunities for out-of-order and/or superscalar instruction dispatch. This limits the effectiveness of the dynamic optimizations a CPU can perform.

A somewhat simpler way to implement instruction level parallelism is to design a CPU that has multiple compute elements (ALUs, FPUs, VPUs) on-chip, but leaves the task of *dispatching* instructions to those compute elements entirely to the programmer and/or compiler. That way, all the complex instruction-dispatch logic can be eliminated, and those transistors devoted instead to implementing more compute elements or a larger cache. As a side benefit, programmers and compilers ought to be better at optimizing the dispatching of the instructions in their programs than the CPU could ever be, because they can select instructions for dispatch from a much wider window (typically an entire function's worth of instructions).

To allow programmers and/or compilers to dispatch instructions to multiple compute elements on each clock cycle, the instruction word is extended so that it contains two or more “slots,” each corresponding to a compute element on the chip. For example, if our hypothetical CPU contained two integer ALUs and two FPUs, a programmer or compiler would need to be able to encode up to two integer and two floating-point operations within each instruction word. We call this a *very long instruction word* (VLIW) design. The VLIW architecture is illustrated in Figure 4.15.

We can look to the Playstation 2 for a concrete example of VLIW architecture: The PS2 contained two coprocessors called *vector units* (VU0 and VU1), each of which was capable of dispatching two instructions per clock cycle. Each instruction word was comprised of two slots called *low* and *high*. It was often a challenge to fill both slots effectively when hand-coding in assembly language, although tools were developed that helped programmers to convert a one-instruction-per-clock program into an efficient two-instructions-per-clock format.

There are trade-offs between the superscalar and VLIW approaches. Because it lacks the complex scheduling, out-of-order execution and branch prediction logic of a superscalar CPU, a VLIW processor is much simpler, and can therefore potentially make heavier use of parallelism than its superscalar counterparts. However, it can be very tough to transform a serial program into a form that takes full advantage of the parallelism in a VLIW. This makes the job of the programmer and/or compiler more difficult. That said, a number of advances have been made to overcome some of these limitations, including variable-width VLIW designs. For example, see <http://researcher.watson>.

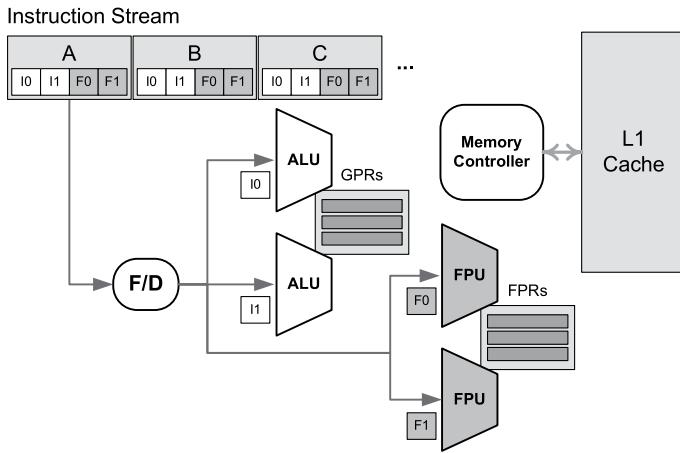


Figure 4.15. A pipelined VLIW CPU architecture consisting of two integer ALUs and two floating-point FPUs. Each very long instruction word consists of two integer and two floating-point operations, which are dispatched to the corresponding functional units. Notice the absence of the complex instruction scheduling logic that would be present in a superscalar CPU.

[ibm.com/researcher/view\\_group\\_subpage.php?id=2834](http://ibm.com/researcher/view_group_subpage.php?id=2834).

## 4.3 Explicit Parallelism

Explicit parallelism is designed to make concurrent software run more efficiently. Hence all explicitly parallel hardware designs permit more than one instruction stream to be processed in parallel. We'll list a few common explicitly parallel designs below, increasing in granularity from *hyperthreading* at the most fine-grained end of the spectrum to *cloud computing* at the most coarse-grained end.

### 4.3.1 Hyperthreading

As we saw in Section 4.2.5.2, some pipelined CPUs are capable of issuing instructions *out of order* as a means of reducing pipeline stalls. Normally a pipelined CPU executes instructions in program order; but sometimes the next instruction in the instruction stream cannot be issued due to a dependency on an in-flight instruction. This creates a *delay slot* into which another instruction could theoretically be issued. An OOO CPU can "look ahead" in the instruction stream and select an instruction to issue out-of-order into such a delay slot.

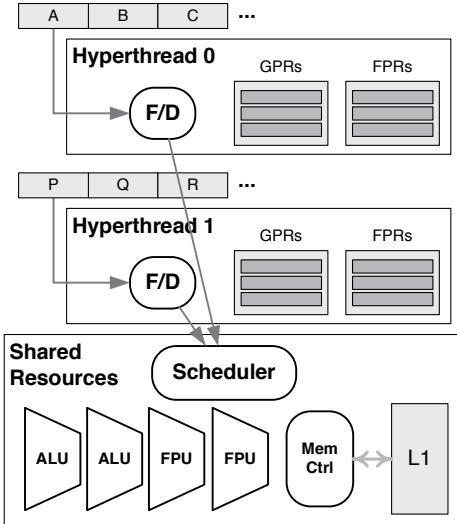


Figure 4.16. A hyperthreaded CPU containing two front ends (each consisting of a fetch/decode unit and a register file), but with a single back end containing ALUs, FPUs, a memory controller, an L1 cache, and an out-of-order instruction scheduler. The scheduler issues instructions from both front-end threads to the shared back-end components.

With only a single instruction stream, the CPU's options are somewhat limited when selecting an instruction to issue into a delay slot. But what if the CPU could select its instructions from two separate instruction streams at once? This is the principle behind a *hyperthreaded* (HT) CPU core.

Technically speaking, an HT core consists of two register files and two instruction decode units, but with a single "back end" for executing instructions, and a single shared L1 cache. This design enables an HT core to run two independent threads, while requiring fewer transistors than a dual core CPU, thanks to the shared back end and L1 cache. Of course, this sharing of hardware components also results in lower instruction throughput relative to a comparable dual core CPU, because the threads contend for these shared resources. Figure 4.16 illustrates the key components in a typical hyperthreaded CPU design.

### 4.3.2 Multicore CPUs

A CPU *core* can be defined as a self-contained unit capable of executing instructions from at least one instruction stream. Every CPU design we've looked at until now could therefore qualify as a "core." When more than one core is included on a single CPU die, we call it a *multicore* CPU.

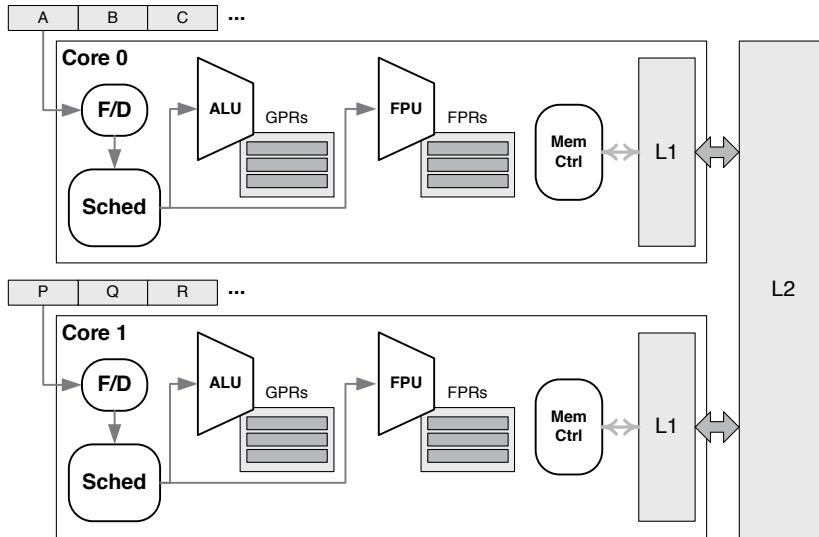


Figure 4.17. A simple multicore CPU design.

The specific design within each core can be any of the designs we've looked at thus far—each core might employ a simple serial design, a pipelined design, a superscalar architecture, a VLIW design, or might be a hyperthreaded core. Figure 4.17 illustrates a simple example of a multicore CPU design.

The PlayStation 4 and Xbox One game consoles both contain multicore CPUs. Each contains an *accelerated processing unit* (APU) consisting of two quad-core AMD Jaguar modules, integrated onto a single die with a GPU, memory controller and video codec. (Of these eight cores, seven are available for use by game applications. However, roughly half of the bandwidth on the seventh core is reserved for operating system use.) The Xbox One X also contains an eight-core APU, but its cores are based on proprietary technology developed in partnership with AMD, rather than on the Jaguar microarchitecture like its predecessor. Figure 4.18 shows a block diagram of the PS4 hardware architecture, and Figure 4.19 presents a block diagram of the Xbox One hardware architecture.

### 4.3.3 Symmetric versus Asymmetric Multiprocessing

The *symmetry* of a parallel computing platform has to do with how the CPU cores in the machine are treated by the operating system. In *symmetric multiprocessing* (SMP), the available CPU cores in the machine (provided by any combination of hyperthreading, multicore CPUs or multiple CPUs on a single

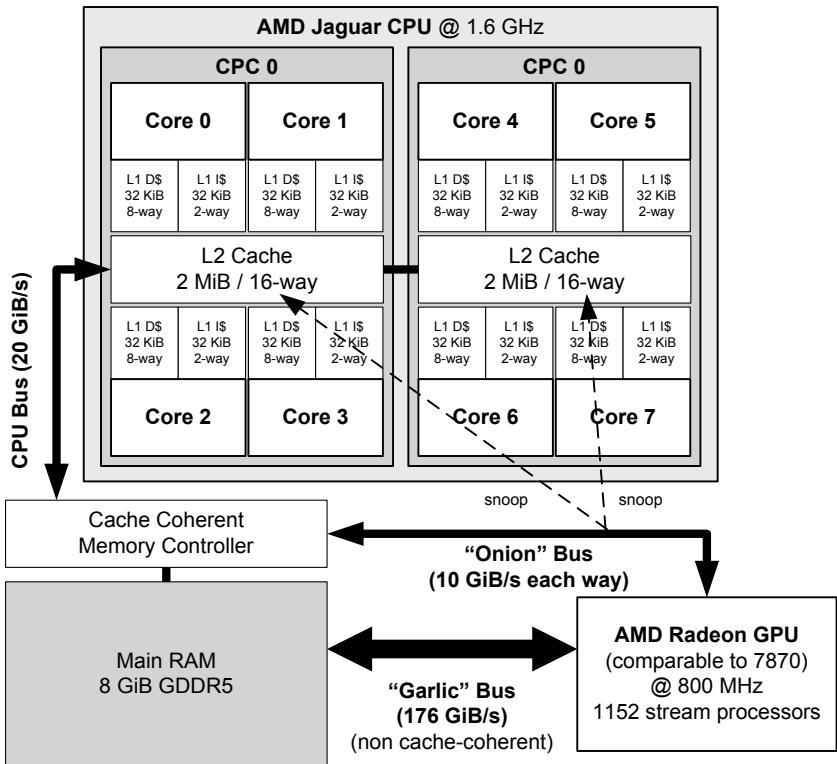


Figure 4.18. Simplified view of the PS4's architecture.

motherboard) are homogeneous in terms of design and ISA, and are treated equally by the operating system. Any thread can be scheduled to execute on any core. (Note, however, that it is possible in such systems to specify an *affinity* for a thread, causing it to be more likely, or even guaranteed, to be scheduled on a particular core.)

The PlayStation 4 and the Xbox One are examples of SMP. Both of these consoles contain eight cores, of which seven are available for use by the programmer, and the application is free to run threads on any of the available cores.

In *asymmetric multiprocessing* (AMP), the CPU cores are not necessarily homogeneous, and the operating system does not treat them equally. In AMP, one “master” CPU core typically runs the operating system, and the other cores are treated as “slaves” to which workloads are distributed by the master core.

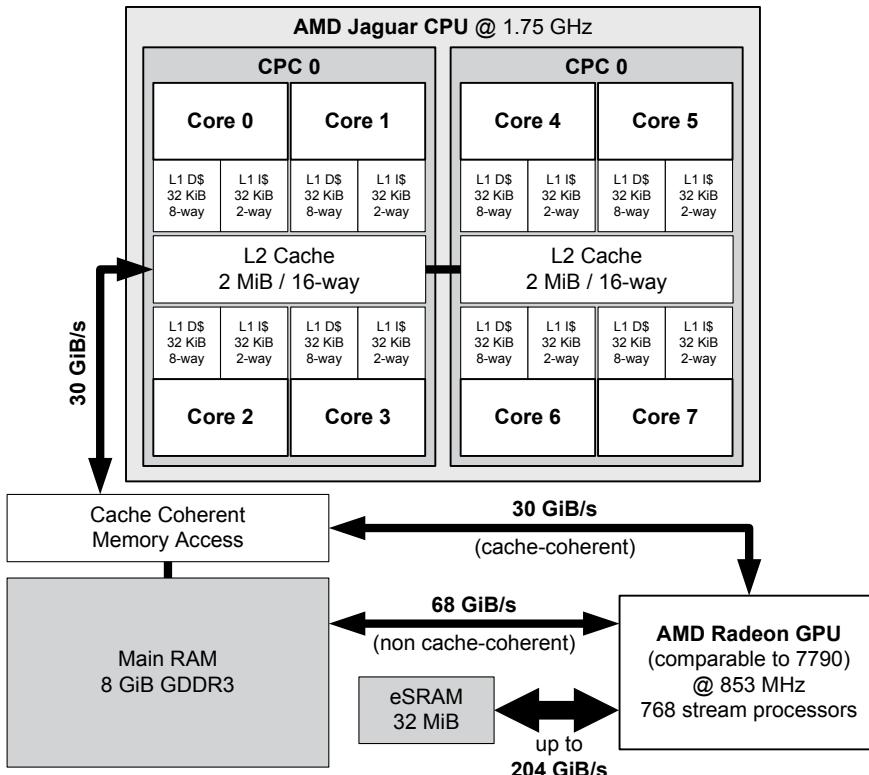


Figure 4.19. Simplified view of the Xbox One's architecture.

The *cell broadband engine* (CBE) used in the PlayStation 3 is an example of AMP; it employs a main CPU known as the “power processing unit” (PPU) which is based on the PowerPC ISA, along with eight coprocessors known as “synergistic processing units” (SPUs) which are based around a completely different ISA. (See Section 3.5.5 for more on the PS3’s hardware architecture.)

#### 4.3.4 Distributed Computing

Yet another way to achieve parallelism in computing is to make use of multiple stand-alone computers working in concert. This is known as *distributed computing* in the most general sense. There are various ways to architect a distributed computing system, including:

- computer clusters,
- grid computing, and

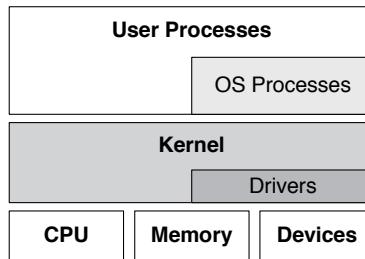


Figure 4.20. The kernel and device drivers sit directly on top of the hardware, and run in privileged mode. All other operating system software and all user programs are implemented on top of the kernel and driver layer, and run in a somewhat restricted user mode.

- cloud computing.

We'll focus exclusively on parallelism within a single computer in this book, but you can read more about distributed computing by searching for the above terms online.

## 4.4 Operating System Fundamentals

Now that we have a solid understanding of the basics of parallel computer hardware, let's turn our attention to the services provided by the operating system that make concurrent programming possible.

### 4.4.1 The Kernel

Modern operating systems handle a wide variety of tasks, across a wide range of granularities. These range from the handling of keyboard and mouse events or the scheduling of programs for *preemptive multitasking* at one end of the spectrum, to managing a printer queue or the network stack at the other end. The “core” of the operating system—the part that handles all of the most fundamental and lowest-level operations—is called the *kernel*. The rest of the operating system, and all user programs, are built atop the services provided by the kernel. This architecture is illustrated in Figure 4.20.

#### 4.4.1.1 Kernel Mode versus User Mode

The kernel and its device drivers run in a special mode called *protected mode*, *privileged mode* or *kernel mode*, while all other programs in the system (including all other parts of the operating system that aren't part of the kernel) operate in *user mode*. As the name suggests, software running in privileged mode has

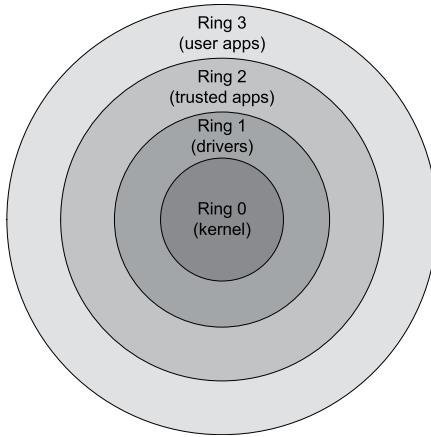


Figure 4.21. Example of CPU protection rings, showing four rings. The kernel runs in ring 0, device drivers run in ring 1, trusted programs with I/O permissions run in ring 2, and all other user programs run in ring 3.

full access to all of the hardware in the computer, whereas user mode software is *restricted* in various ways in order to ensure stability of the computer system as a whole. Software running in user mode can access low-level services only by making a special *kernel call*—a request for the kernel to perform a low-level operation on the user program’s behalf. This ensures that a program can’t inadvertently or maliciously destabilize the system.

In practice, operating systems may implement multiple *protection rings*. The kernel runs in ring 0, which is the most trusted ring and has all possible privileges within the system. Device drivers might run in ring 1, trusted programs with I/O permissions might run in ring 2, while all other “untrusted” user programs run in ring 3. But this is just one example—the number of rings varies from CPU to CPU and from OS to OS, as does the assignment of subsystems to the various rings. The protection ring concept is illustrated in Figure 4.21.

#### 4.4.1.2 Kernel Mode Privileges

Kernel mode (ring 0) software has access to *all* of the machine language instructions defined by the CPU’s ISA. This includes a powerful subset of instructions called *privileged* instructions. These privileged instructions might allow certain registers to be modified that are normally off-limits (e.g., to control virtual memory mapping, or to mask and unmask interrupts). Or they might allow certain regions of memory to be accessed, or allow other nor-

mally restricted operations to be performed. Examples of privileged instructions on the Intel x86 processor include `wrmsr` (write to model-specific register) and `cli` (clear interrupts). By restricting the use of these powerful instructions only to “trusted” software like the kernel, system stability and security is improved.

With these privileged ML instructions, the kernel can implement security measures. For example, the kernel typically locks down certain pages of virtual memory so that they cannot be written to by a user program. Both the kernel’s software and all of its internal record-keeping data are kept in protected memory pages. This ensures that a user program won’t stomp on the kernel, and thereby crash the entire system.

#### 4.4.2 Interrupts

An *interrupt* is a signal sent to the CPU in order to notify it of an important low-level event, such as a keypress on the keyboard, a signal from a peripheral device, or the expiration of a timer. When such an event occurs, an *interrupt request* (IRQ) is raised. If the operating system wishes to respond to the event, it pauses (interrupts) whatever processing had been going on, and calls a special kind of function called an *interrupt service routine* (ISR). The ISR function performs some operation in response to the event (ideally doing so as quickly as possible) and then control is returned back to whatever program had been running prior to the interrupt having been raised.

There are two kinds of interrupt: *hardware interrupts* and *software interrupts*. A hardware interrupt is requested by placing a non-zero voltage onto one of the pins of the CPU. Hardware interrupts might be raised by devices such as a keyboard or mouse, or by a periodic timer circuit on the motherboard or within the CPU itself. Because it’s triggered by an external device, a hardware interrupt can happen at any time—even right in the middle of executing a CPU instruction. As such, there may be a tiny delay between the moment when a hardware interrupt is physically raised and when the CPU is in a suitable state to handle it.

A software interrupt is triggered by software rather than by a voltage on a CPU pin. It has the same basic effect as a hardware interrupt, in that it causes the operation of the CPU to be interrupted and a service routine to be called. A software interrupt can be triggered explicitly by executing an “interrupt” machine language instruction. Or one may be triggered in response to an erroneous condition detected by the CPU while running a piece of software—these are called *traps* or sometimes *exceptions* (although the latter term should not be confused with language-level exception handling). For example, if an ALU is

instructed to perform a divide-by-zero operation, a software interrupt will be raised. The operating system normally handles such interrupts by crashing the program in question and producing a *core dump* file. However, a debugger attached to the program could catch this interrupt and instead cause the program to break into the debugger for inspection.

#### 4.4.3 Kernel Calls

In order for user software to perform a privileged operation, such as mapping or unmapping physical memory pages in the virtual memory system or accessing a raw network socket, the user program must make a request to the kernel. The kernel responds by performing the operation in a safe manner on behalf of the user program. Such a request is called a *kernel call* or *system call*.

On most systems, calling into the kernel is accomplished via a software interrupt.<sup>2</sup> In the case of an interrupt-triggered system call, the user program places any input arguments in a specific place (either in memory or in registers) and then issues a “software interrupt” instruction with an integer argument that specifies which kernel operation is being requested. This causes the CPU to be put into a mode with elevated privileges, staves the state of the calling program, and then causes the appropriate kernel interrupt service routine to be called. Presuming that the kernel allows the request to proceed, it performs the requested operation (in privileged mode) and then control is returned to the caller (after first restoring its execution state). This switch from a user mode program into the kernel is an example of *context switching*. See Section 4.4.6.5 for more on context switching.

On most modern operating systems, the user program doesn’t execute a software interrupt or system call instruction manually, for example via inline assembly code. That would be messy and error-prone. Instead, a user program calls a *kernel API* function, which in turn marshalls the arguments and trips the software interrupt. This is why system calls appear to be regular function calls from the point of view of the user program.

#### 4.4.4 Preemptive Multitasking

The earliest minicomputers and personal computers ran a single program at a time. They were inherently *serial* computers, capable of reading a program from a single instruction stream, and executing one instruction from this stream at a time. The *disk operating systems* (DOS) in those days weren’t much

---

<sup>2</sup>On some systems, a special variant of the `call` instruction is used to call into the kernel. For example, on MIPS processors this instruction is named `syscall`.

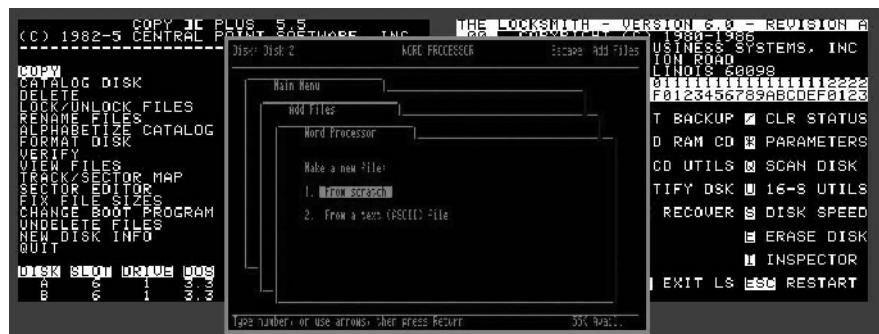


Figure 4.22. Three full-screen programs running on the Apple II computer. Programs on the Apple II were always full-screen because it could only run one program at a time. From left to right: Copy II Plus, the AppleWorks word processor, and The Locksmith.

more than glorified device drivers, allowing programs to interface with devices such as tape, floppy and hard disk drives. The entire computer would be devoted to running a single program at a time. Figure 4.22 shows a few full-screen programs running on an Apple II computer.

As operating systems and computer hardware became more advanced, it became possible to run more than one program on a serial computer at a time. On shared mainframe computer systems, a technique known as *multiprogramming* would allow one program to run while another was waiting for a time-consuming request to be satisfied by a peripheral device. Classic Mac OS and versions of Windows prior to Windows NT and Windows 95 used a technique known as *cooperative multitasking*, in which only one program would be running on the machine at a time, but each program would regularly *yield* the CPU so that another program could get a chance to run. In this way, each program ended up with a periodic “slice” of CPU time. Technically, this technique is known as *time division multiplexing* (TDM) or *temporal multithreading* (TMT). Informally it’s called *time-slicing*.

Cooperative multitasking suffered from one big problem: Time-slicing required the cooperation of each and every program in the system. One “rogue” program could consume all of the CPU’s time if it failed to yield to other programs periodically. The PDP-6 Monitor and Multics operating systems solved this problem by introducing a technique known as *preemptive multitasking*. This technology was later adopted by the UNIX operating system and all of its variants, along with later versions of Mac OS and Windows.

In preemptive multitasking, programs still share the CPU by time-slicing. However the scheduling of programs is controlled by the operating system, not via cooperation between the programs themselves. As a result, each pro-

gram gets a regular, consistent and reliable time slice on the CPU. The time slice during which one particular program is allowed to run on the CPU is sometimes called the program's *quantum*. To implement preemptive multitasking, the operating system responds to a regularly-timed hardware interrupt in order to periodically *context switch* between the different programs running on the system. We'll see how context switching works in more depth in the next section (4.4.6.5).

We should note here that preemptive multitasking is used even on multicore machines, because typically the number of threads is greater than the number of cores. For example, if we were to have 100 threads and only four CPU cores, then the kernel would use preemptive multitasking to time-slice between 25 threads on each core.

## 4.4.5 Processes

A *process* is the operating system's way of managing a *running instance* of a program contained in an *executable file* (.exe on Windows, .elf on Linux). A process only exists while its program is actually running—when an instance of a program exits, is killed, or crashes, the OS destroys the process associated with that instance. Multiple processes can be running on a computer system at any given time. This might include multiple instances of the *same* program.

Programmers interact with processes via an API provided by the operating system. The details of this API differ from OS to OS, but the key concepts are roughly the same across all of them. A complete discussion of any one operating system's process API is beyond the scope of this book, but for the purposes of illustrating the concepts we'll focus primarily on the API style of UNIX-like operating systems such as Linux, BSD and MacOS. But we'll make note of situations in which Windows or game console operating systems deviate significantly from the core ideas of a UNIX-like process API.

### 4.4.5.1 Anatomy of a Process

Under the hood, a process consists of:

- a *process id (PID)* that uniquely identifies the process within the operating system;
- a set of *permissions*, such as which user “owns” each process and to which user group it belongs;
- a reference to the process's *parent process*, if any,
- a *virtual memory space* containing the process's “view” of physical memory (see Section 4.4.5.2 for more information);

- the values of all defined *environment variables*;
- the set of all open *file handles* in use by the process;
- the current *working directory* for the process,
- resources for managing *synchronization* and *communication* between processes in the system, such as message queues, pipes, and semaphores;
- one or more *threads*.

A *thread* encapsulates a running instance of a single stream of machine language instructions. By default, a process contains a single thread. But as we'll discuss in depth in Section 4.4.6, more than one thread can be created within a process, allowing more than one instruction stream to run *concurrently*. The kernel schedules all of the threads in the system (from all currently-running processes) to run on the available cores. It uses preemptive multitasking to time-slice between threads when there are more threads than there are cores.

We should stress here that threads are the *fundamental unit of program execution* within an operating system, not processes. A process merely provides an *environment* within which its thread(s) can run, including a virtual memory map and a set of *resources* that are used by and shared between all threads within that process. Whenever a thread is scheduled to run on a core, its process becomes active, and that process's resources and environment become available for use by the thread while it runs. So when we say that a *thread* is running on a core, remember that it is always doing so within the *context* of exactly one process.

#### 4.4.5.2 Virtual Memory Map of a Process

You'll recall from Section 3.5.2 that a program generally never works directly with physical memory addresses.<sup>3</sup> Rather, the program accesses memory in terms of *virtual addresses*, and the CPU and operating system cooperate to *remap* these virtual addresses into physical addresses. We said that the remapping of virtual to physical addresses happens in terms of contiguous blocks of addresses called *pages*, and that a *page table* is used by the OS to map virtual page indices to physical page indices.

Every process has its own virtual page table. This means that every process has its own custom *view* of memory. This is one of the primary ways in which the operating system provides a secure and stable execution environment. Two processes cannot corrupt each other's memory, because the physical pages owned by one process are simply not mapped into the other process's address space (unless they explicitly share pages). Also, pages owned by the

<sup>3</sup>User programs always work in terms of virtual memory addresses, but the kernel can work directly with physical addresses.

kernel are protected from inadvertent or deliberate corruption by a user process because they are mapped to a special range of addresses known as *kernel space* which can only be accessed by code running in kernel mode.

A process's virtual page table effectively defines its *memory map*. The memory map typically contains:

- the text, data and BSS sections as read in from the program's executable file;
- a view of any shared libraries (DLLs, PRXs) used by the program;
- a *call stack* for each thread;
- a region of memory called the *heap* for dynamic memory allocation;
- possibly some pages of memory that are *shared* with other processes; and
- a range of *kernel space* addresses which are inaccessible to the process (but become accessible whenever a kernel call executes).

### *Text, Data and BSS Sections*

When a program is first run, the kernel creates a process internally and assigns it a unique PID. It then sets up a virtual page map for the process—in other words, it creates the virtual address space of the process. It then allocates physical pages as necessary and maps them into the virtual address space by adding entries to the process's page table.

The kernel reads the executable file (text, data and BSS sections) into memory by allocating virtual pages and loading the data into them. This allows the program's code and global data to be “visible” within the process's virtual address space. The machine code in an executable file is actually *relocatable*, meaning that its addresses are specified as relative offsets rather than absolute memory addresses. These relative addresses are *fixed up* by the operating system, meaning they are converted back into real (virtual) addresses, prior to running the program. (For more on the format of an executable file, see Section 3.3.5.1.)

### *Call Stack*

Every running thread needs a call stack (see Section 3.3.5.2). When a process is first run, the kernel creates a single default thread for it. The kernel allocates physical memory pages for this thread's call stack, and maps them into the process' virtual address space so the stack can be “seen” by the thread. The values of the stack pointer (SP) and base pointer (BP) are initialized to point to the bottom of the empty stack. Finally, the thread starts executing at the

*entry point* of the program. (In C/C++ this is typically `main()`, or `WinMain()` under Windows.)

### *Heap*

Processes can allocate memory *dynamically* via `malloc()` and `free()` in C, or `global new` and `delete` in C++. These requests come from a region of memory called the *heap*. Physical pages of memory are allocated on demand by the kernel in order to fulfill dynamic allocation requests; these pages are mapped into the virtual address space of the process as memory is allocated by it, and pages whose contents have been completely freed are unmapped and returned to the system.

### *Shared Libraries*

All non-trivial programs depend on external libraries. A library can be *statically* linked into a program, meaning that a *copy* of the library's code is placed into the executable file itself. Most operating systems also support the concept of *shared libraries*. In this case, the program contains only *references* to the library's API functions, not a copy of the library's machine code. Shared libraries are called *dynamic link libraries* (DLL) under Windows. On the PlayStation 4, the OS supports a kind of dynamically linked library called a PRX. (Interestingly, the name PRX comes from the PlayStation 3, where it stood for PPU Relocatable Executable, in reference to the main processor in the PS3 which was called the PPU.)

Shared libraries generally work as follows: The first time a shared library is needed by a process, the OS loads that library into physical memory, and maps a view of it into the process's virtual address space. The addresses of the functions and global variables provided by the shared library are patched into the program's machine code, allowing it to call them as if they had been statically linked into the executable.

The benefit of shared libraries only becomes evident when a second process is run that uses the same shared library. Rather than loading a *copy* of the library's code and global variables, the already-loaded physical pages are simply mapped into the virtual address space of the new process. This saves memory and speeds up the process of running all but the first process that uses a given shared library.

Shared libraries have other benefits, too. For example, a shared library can be updated, say to fix some bugs, and in theory all programs that use that shared library will immediately benefit (without having to be relinked and redistributed to users). That said, in practice updating shared libraries can

inadvertently cause compatibility problems amongst the programs that use them. This leads to a proliferation of different versions of each shared library within the system—a situation affectionately known as “DLL hell” amongst Windows developers. To work around these problems, Windows moved to a system of manifests that help to guarantee compatibility between shared libraries and the programs that use them.

### *Kernel Pages*

On most operating systems, the address space of a process is actually divided into two large contiguous blocks—user space and kernel space. For example, on 32-bit Windows, user space corresponds to the address range from address 0x0 through 0x7FFFFFFF (the lower 2 GiB of the address space), while kernel space corresponds to addresses between 0x80000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF (the upper 2 GiB of the space). On 64-bit Windows, user space corresponds to the 8 TiB range of addresses from 0x0 through 0x7FF'FFFFFF, and the gigantic 248 TiB range from 0xFFFF0800'00000000 through 0xFFFFFFF'FFFFFF is reserved for use by the kernel (although not all of it is actually used).

User space is mapped through a virtual page table that is unique to each process. However, kernel space uses a separate virtual page table that is shared between all processes. This is done so that all processes in the system have a consistent “view” of the kernel’s internal data.

Normally, user processes are prevented from accessing the kernel’s pages—if they try to do so, a page fault will occur and the program will crash. However, when a user process makes a system call, a *context switch* (see Section 4.4.6.5) is performed into the kernel. This puts the CPU into privileged mode, allowing the kernel to access the kernel space address ranges (as well as the virtual pages of the current process). The kernel runs its code in privileged mode, updates its internal data structures as necessary, and finally puts the CPU back into user mode and returns control to the user program. For more details on how user and kernel space memory mapping works under Windows, search for “virtual address spaces” on <https://docs.microsoft.com>.

It’s interesting (and a bit frightening!) to note that the recently-discovered “Meltdown” and “Spectre” exploits make use of a CPU’s *out-of-order* and *speculative* execution logic (respectively) to trick it into accessing data located in memory pages that are normally protected from a user-mode process. For more on these exploits and how operating systems are protecting themselves against them, see <https://meltdownattack.com/>.

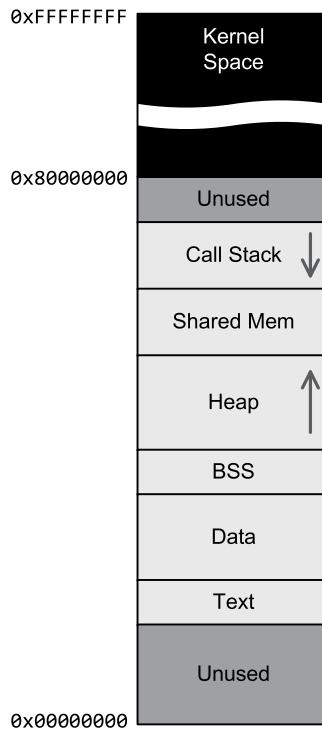


Figure 4.23. A process's memory map as it might look under 32-bit Windows.

#### *Example Process Memory Map*

Figure 4.23 depicts the memory map of a process as it might look under 32-bit Windows. All of the process's virtual pages are mapped into user space—the lower 2 GiB of the address space. The executable files' text, data and BSS segments are mapped at a low memory address, followed by the heap in a higher range, followed by any shared memory pages. The call stack is mapped at the high end of the user address space. Finally, the operating system's kernel pages are mapped into the upper 2 GiB of the address space.

The actual addresses for each of the regions in the memory map aren't predictable. This is partly because each program's segments are of different sizes and hence will map to different address ranges. Also, the numeric values of the addresses actually *change* between runs of the same executable program, thanks to a security measure known as *address space layout randomization* (ASLR).

## 4.4.6 Threads

A *thread* encapsulates a running instance of a single stream of machine language instructions. Each thread within a process is comprised of:

- a *thread id (TID)* which is unique within its process, but may or may not be unique across the entire operating system;
- the thread's *call stack*—a contiguous block of memory containing the stack frames of all currently-executing functions;
- the values of all special- and general-purpose *registers*<sup>4</sup> including the *instruction pointer (IP)*, which points at the current instruction in the thread's instruction stream, the *base pointer (BP)* and *stack pointer (SP)* which define the current function's stack frame;
- a block of general-purpose memory associated with each thread, known as *thread local storage (TLS)*.

By default, a process contains a single *main thread* and hence executes a single instruction stream. This thread begins executing at the entry point of the program—typically the `main()` function. However, all modern operating systems are capable of executing more than one *concurrent* instruction stream within the context of a single process.

You can think of a thread as the *fundamental unit of execution* within the operating system. A thread provides the minimum resources required to execute an instruction stream—a call stack and a set of registers. The process merely provides the *environment* in which one or more threads execute. This is illustrated in Figure 4.24.

### 4.4.6.1 Thread Libraries

All operating systems that support multithreading provide a collection of system calls for creating and manipulating threads. A few portable thread libraries are also available, the best known of which are the IEEE POSIX 1003.1c standard thread library (`pthread`) and the C11 and C++11 standard thread libraries. The Sony PlayStation 4 SDK provides a set of thread functions prefixed with `sce` that map pretty much directly to the POSIX thread API.

The various thread APIs differ in their details, but all of them support the following basic operations:

1. *Create*. A function or class constructor that spawns a new thread.

---

<sup>4</sup>Technically a thread's execution context only encompasses the values of registers that are visible in *user mode*; it excludes the values of certain privileged-mode registers.

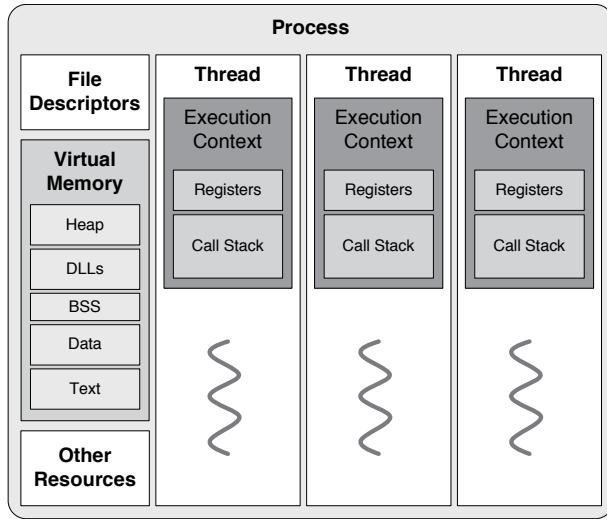


Figure 4.24. A process encapsulates the resources required to run one or more threads. Each thread encapsulates an *execution context* comprised of the contents of the CPU's registers and a call stack.

2. *Terminate*. A function that terminates the calling thread.
3. *Request to exit*. A function that allows one thread to request another thread to exit.
4. *Sleep*. A function that puts the current thread to sleep for a specified length of time.
5. *Yield*. A function that yields the remainder of the thread's time slice so other threads can get a chance to run.
6. *Join*. A function that puts the calling thread to sleep until another thread or group of threads has terminated.

#### 4.4.6.2 Thread Creation and Termination

When an executable file is run, the process created by the OS to encapsulate it automatically contains a single thread, and execution of this thread begins at the *entry point* of the program—in C/C++ this is the special function `main()`. This “main thread” can spawn new threads if desired, by making calls to an operating system specific function such as `pthread_create()` (POSIX threads), `CreateThread()` (Windows), or by instantiating an instance of a

thread class such as `std::thread` (C++11). The new thread begins execution at an entry point function whose address is provided by the caller.

Once created, a thread will continue to exist until it terminates. The execution of a thread can terminate in a number of ways:

- It can end “naturally” by *returning* from its entry point function. (In the special case of the main thread, returning from `main()` not only ends the thread, but also ends the entire process.)
- It can call a function such as `pthread_exit()` to *explicitly* terminate its execution *before* having returned from its entry point function.
- It can be *killed* externally by another thread. In this case, the external thread makes a *request* to cancel the thread in question, but the thread may not respond immediately to the request, or it may ignore the request entirely. The cancelability of a thread is determined when that thread is created.
- It can be forcibly killed because its process has ended. (A process terminates when the main thread returns from the `main()` entry point function, when any thread calls `exit()` to kill the process explicitly, or when an external actor kills the process.)

#### 4.4.6.3 Joining Threads

It’s common for one thread to spawn one or more child threads, do some useful work of its own, and then wait for the child threads to be done with their work before continuing. For example, let’s say the main thread wants to perform 1000 computations, and let’s assume further that this program is running on a quad-core machine. The most efficient approach would be to divide the work into four equally-sized chunks, and spawn four threads to do the processing in parallel. Once the computations are complete, let’s assume that the main thread wants to perform a checksum on the results. The resulting code might look something like this:

```
ComputationResult g_aResult[1000];

void Compute(void* arg)
{
    uintptr_t startIndex = (uintptr_t)arg;
    uintptr_t endIndex = startIndex + 250;
    for (uintptr_t i = startIndex; i < endIndex; ++i)
    {
        g_aResult[i] = ComputeOneResult(...);
```

```

        }

    }

    void main()
    {
        pthread_t  tid[4];

        for (int i = 0; i < 4; ++i)
        {
            const uintptr_t startIndex = i * 250;
            pthread_create(&tid[i], nullptr,
                           Compute, (void*)startIndex);
        }

        // perhaps do some other useful work...

        // wait for computations to be done
        for (int i = 0; i < 4; ++i)
        {
            pthread_join(&tid[i], nullptr);
        }

        // all threads are done, so we can do our checksum
        unsigned checksum = Sha1(g_aResult,
                               1000*sizeof(ComputationResult));
    }

    // ...
}

```

#### 4.4.6.4 Polling, Blocking and Yielding

Normally a thread runs until it terminates. But sometimes a running thread needs to wait for some future event to occur. For example, a thread might need to wait for a time-consuming operation to complete, or for some resource to become available. In such a situation, we have three options:

1. The thread can *poll*,
2. it can *block*, or
3. it can *yield* while polling.

#### *Polling*

*Polling* involves a thread sitting in a tight loop, waiting for a condition to be-

come true. It's a bit like kids in the back seat on a road trip, repeatedly asking, "Are we there yet? Are we there yet?" Here's an example:

```
// wait for condition to become true
while (!CheckCondition())
{
    // twiddle thumbs
}

// the condition is now true and we can continue...
```

It should be obvious that this approach, while simple, has the potential of burning CPU cycles unnecessarily. This approach is sometimes called a *spin-wait* or a *busy-wait*.

### *Blocking*

If we expect our thread to wait for a relatively long period of time for a condition to become true, busy-waiting is not a good option. Ideally we'd like to put our thread to sleep so that it doesn't waste CPU resources, and rely on the kernel to wake it back up when the condition becomes true at some future time. This is called *blocking* the thread.

A thread blocks by making a special kind of operating system call known as a *blocking function*. If the condition is already true at the moment a blocking function is called, the function won't actually block—it will simply return immediately. But if the condition is false, the kernel will put the thread to sleep, and add the thread and the condition on which it is waiting into a table. Later, when the condition becomes true, the kernel uses this internal table to identify and wake up any threads that are waiting on that condition.

There are all sorts of OS functions that block. Here are a few examples:

- *Opening a file.* Most functions that open a file such as `fopen()` will block the calling thread until the file has actually been opened (which may take hundreds or even thousands of cycles). Some functions, like `open()` under Linux, offer a non-blocking option (`O_NONBLOCK`) to support asynchronous file I/O.
- *Explicit sleeping.* Some functions explicitly put the calling thread to sleep for a specified length of time. Variants include `usleep()` (Linux), `Sleep()` (Windows) `std::this_thread::sleep_until()` (C++11 standard library) and `pthread_sleep()` (POSIX threads).
- *Joining with another thread.* A function such as `pthread_join()` blocks the calling thread until the thread being waited on has terminated.

- *Waiting for a mutex lock.* Functions like `pthread_mutex_wait()` attempt to obtain an exclusive lock on a resource via an operating system object known as a *mutex* (see Section 4.6). If no other thread holds the lock, the function grants the lock to the calling thread and returns immediately; otherwise, the calling thread is put to sleep until the lock can be obtained.

Operating system calls aren't the only functions that can block. Any user-space function that ultimately calls a blocking OS function is itself considered to be a blocking function. It's a good idea to document such a function, so that the programmers who use it will know that it has the potential to block.

### *Yielding*

This technique falls part-way between polling and blocking. The thread polls the condition in a loop, but on each iteration it relinquishes the remainder of its time slice by calling `pthread_yield()` (POSIX), `Sleep(0)` or `SwitchToThread()` (Windows), or an equivalent system call.

Here's an example:

```
// wait for condition to become true
while (!CheckCondition())
{
    // yield the remainder of my time slice
    pthread_yield(nullptr);
}

// the condition is now true and we can continue...
```

This approach tends to result in fewer wasted cycles and better power consumption than a pure busy-wait loop.

Yielding the CPU still involves a kernel call, and is therefore quite expensive. Some CPUs provide a lightweight “pause” instruction. (For example, on an Intel x86 ISA with SSE2, the `_mm_pause()` intrinsic emits such an instruction.) This kind of instruction reduces the power consumption of a busy-wait loop by simply waiting for the CPU's instruction pipeline to empty out before allowing execution to continue:

```
// wait for condition to become true
while (!CheckCondition())
{
    // Intel SSE2 only:
    // reduce power consumption by pausing for ~40 cycles
    _mm_pause();
}
```

```
}

// the condition is now true and we can continue...
```

See <https://software.intel.com/en-us/comment/1134767> and <http://software.intel.com/en-us/forums/topic/309231> for an in-depth discussion of how and why to use a pause instruction in a busy-wait loop.

#### 4.4.6.5 Context Switching

Every thread maintained by the kernel exists in one of three states:<sup>5</sup>

- *Running*. The thread is actively running on a core.
- *Runnable*. The thread is able to run, but it is waiting to receive a time slice on a core.
- *Blocked*. The thread is asleep, waiting for some condition to become true.

A *context switch* occurs whenever the kernel causes a thread to transition from one of these states to another.

A context switch always happens in privileged mode on the CPU—in response to the hardware interrupt that drives preemptive multitasking (i.e., transitions between Running and Runnable), in response to an explicit blocking kernel call made by a running thread (i.e., a transition from Running or Runnable to Blocked), or in response to a waited-on condition becoming true, thus “waking” a sleeping thread (i.e., transitioning it from Blocked to Runnable). The kernel’s thread state machine is illustrated in Figure 4.25.

When a thread is in the Running state, it is actively making use of a CPU core. The core’s registers contain information pertinent to the execution of that thread, such as its instruction pointer (IP), stack and base pointers (SP and BP), and the contents of various general-purpose registers (GPRs). The thread also maintains a call stack, which stores local variables and return addresses for the currently-running function and the entire stack of functions that ultimately called it. Together, this information is known as the thread’s *execution context*.

Whenever a thread transitions away from the Running state to either Runnable or Blocked, the contents of the CPU’s registers are saved to a memory block that has been reserved for the thread by the kernel. Later, when a Runnable thread transitions back to the Running state, the kernel repopulates the CPU’s registers with that thread’s saved register contents.

<sup>5</sup>Some operating systems make use of additional states, but such states are implementation details that we can safely ignore for our purposes.

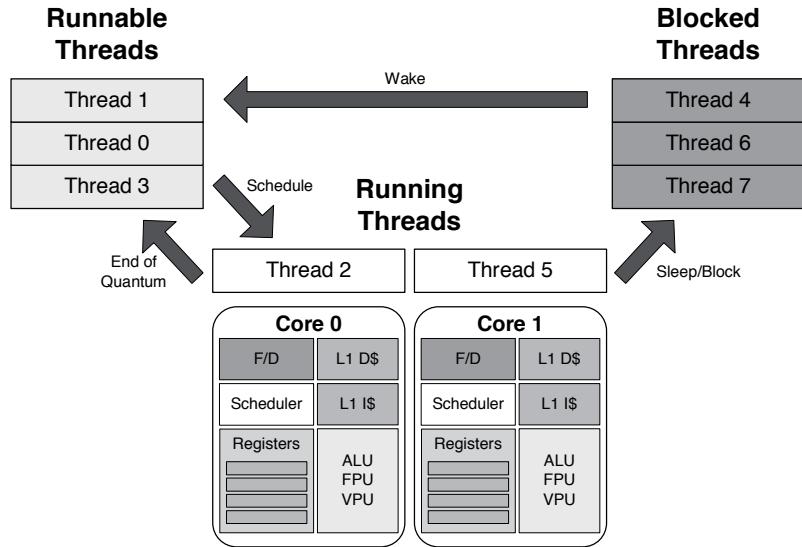


Figure 4.25. Every thread can be in one of three states: Running, Runnable or Blocked.

We should note here that a thread's call stack need not be saved or restored explicitly during a context switch. This is because each thread's call stack already resides in a distinct region within its process' virtual memory map. The act of saving and restoring the contents of the CPU's registers includes saving and restoring the stack and base pointers (SP and BP), and thereby effectively saves and restores the thread's call stack "for free."

During a context switch, if the incoming thread resides in a different process from that of the outgoing thread, the kernel also needs to save off the state of the outgoing process' virtual memory map, and set up the virtual memory map of the incoming process. You'll recall from Section 3.5.2 that a virtual memory map is defined by a virtual page table. The act of saving and restoring a virtual memory map therefore involves saving and restoring a pointer to this page table, which is usually maintained in a special privileged CPU register. The translation lookaside buffer (TLB) must also be flushed whenever an inter-process context switch occurs (see Section 3.5.2.4). These additional steps make context switching between processes more expensive than context switching between threads within a single process.

#### 4.4.6.6 Thread Priorities and Affinity

For the most part, the kernel handles the job of scheduling threads to run on the available cores in the machine. However, programmers do have two ways

to affect how threads are scheduled: *priority* and *affinity*.

A thread's priority controls how it is scheduled relative to other Runnable threads in the system. Higher-priority threads generally take precedence over lower-priority threads. Different operating systems offer different numbers of priority levels. For example, Windows threads can belong to one of six priority classes, and there are seven distinct priority levels within each class. These two values are combined to produce a total of 32 distinct "base priorities" which are used when scheduling threads.

The simplest thread scheduling rule is this: As long as at least one higher-priority Runnable thread exists, no lower-priority threads will be scheduled to run. The idea behind this approach is that most threads in the system will be created at some default priority level, and hence will share the processing resources fairly. But once in a while, a higher-priority thread can become Runnable. When it does, it runs as close to immediately as possible, hopefully exits after a relatively short period of time, and thereby returns control to all of the lower-priority threads.

Such a simple priority-based scheduling algorithm can lead to a situation in which a small number of high-priority threads run continually, thereby preventing any lower-priority threads from running. This is known as *starvation*. Some operating systems attempt to mitigate the ill effects of starvation by introducing exceptions to the simple scheduling rule that aim to give at least some CPU time to starving lower-priority threads.

Another way in which programmers can control thread scheduling is via a thread's *affinity*. This setting requests that the kernel either lock a thread to a particular core, or that it should at least *prefer* one or more cores over the others when scheduling the thread.

#### 4.4.6.7 Thread Local Storage

We said that all threads within a process share the process's resources, including its virtual memory space. There is one exception to this rule—each thread is given a private memory block known as *thread local storage* (TLS). This allows threads to keep track of data that shouldn't be shared with other processes. For example, each thread might maintain a private memory allocator. We can think of the TLS memory block as being a part of the thread's execution context.

In practice, TLS memory blocks are usually visible to all threads within a process. They're typically not protected, the way operating system virtual memory pages are. Instead, the OS grants each thread its own TLS block, all mapped into the process's virtual address space at different numerical addresses, and a system call is provided that allows any one thread to obtain

Threads						
	ID	Managed ID	Category	Name	Location	Priority
▲	SeqDotNetMandelbrot.vhost.exe (id = 54424) : C:\Users\Pavel\Documents\MatrixWorkshops\SeqDotNetMandelbrot\SeqDotNetMandelbrot.exe	0x00	0x00	Unknown Thread	[Thread Destroyed]	<not available>
▼	0x00005E8C	0x00	Worker Thread	<No Name>	<not available>	Highest
▼	0x0000F6EC	0x00000003	Worker Thread	<No Name>	<not available>	Normal
▼	0x00008B50	0x00000006	Worker Thread	vhost.RunParkingWindow	▼ [Managed thread]	Normal
▼ ↗	0x00008BF0	0x00000008	Main Thread	Main Thread	▼ DotNetManager	Normal
▼	0x0000EC54	0x00000007	Worker Thread	.NET SystemEvents	▼ [Managed thread]	Normal
▼	0x000067F8	0x00000009	Worker Thread	<No Name>	▼ DotNetManager	Normal
▼	0x000107C4	0x0000000A	Worker Thread	<No Name>	▼ DotNetManager	Normal
▼	0x00009B44	0x0000000B	Worker Thread	<No Name>	▼ DotNetManager	Normal
▼	0x00007158	0x0000000C	Worker Thread	<No Name>	▼ DotNetManager	Normal
▼	0x00007008	0x0000000D	Worker Thread	<No Name>	▼ DotNetManager	Normal
▼	0x00004DA4	0x0000000F	Worker Thread	<No Name>	<not available>	Normal
▼	0x000039B8	0x0000000E	Worker Thread	<No Name>	<not available>	Normal
▼	0x0001171C	0x00000010	Worker Thread	<No Name>	▼ DotNetManager	Normal

Figure 4.26. The Threads window in Visual Studio is the primary interface for debugging multithreaded programs.

the address of its private TLS block.

#### 4.4.6.8 Thread Debugging

All good debuggers nowadays provide tools for debugging multithreaded applications. In Microsoft Visual Studio, the *Threads Window* is the central tool for this purpose. Whenever you break into the debugger, this window lists all the threads currently in existence within the application. Double-clicking on a thread makes its execution context active within the debugger. Once a thread's context has been activated, you can walk up and down its call stack via the Call Stack window, and view local variables within each function's scope via the Watch windows. This works even if the thread is in its Runnable or Blocked state. The Visual Studio Threads window is shown in Figure 4.26.

#### 4.4.7 Fibers

In preemptive multitasking, thread scheduling is handled automatically by the kernel. This is often convenient, but sometimes programmers find it desirable to have control over the scheduling of workloads in their programs. For example, when implementing a *job system* for a game engine (discussed in Section 8.6.4), we might want to allow jobs to explicitly yield the CPU to other jobs, without worrying about the possibility of preemption “pulling the rug out” from under our jobs as they run. In other words, sometimes we want to use *cooperative* rather than preemptive multitasking.

Some operating systems provide just such a cooperative multitasking mechanism: They are known as *fibers*. A fiber is a lot like a thread, in that it represents a running instance of a stream of machine language instructions. A fiber has a call stack and register state (an execution context), just like a thread. However, the big difference is that a fiber is never scheduled directly by the kernel. Instead, fibers run within the context of a thread, and are scheduled cooperatively, by each other.

In this section, we'll talk about Windows fibers specifically. Some other operating systems, such as Sony's PlayStation 4 SDK, provide very similar fiber APIs.

#### 4.4.7.1 Fiber Creation and Destruction

How do we convert a thread-based process into a fiber-based one? Every process starts with a single thread when it first runs; hence processes are thread-based by default. When a thread calls the function `ConvertThreadToFiber()`, a new fiber is created within the context of the calling thread. This "bootstraps" the process so that it can create and schedule more fibers. Other fibers are created by calling `CreateFiber()` and passing it the address of a function that will serve as its entry point. Any running fiber can cooperatively schedule a different fiber to run within its thread by calling `SwitchToFiber()`. When a fiber is no longer needed, it can be destroyed by calling `DeleteFiber()`.

#### 4.4.7.2 Fiber States

A fiber can be in one of two states: Active or Inactive. When a fiber is in its Active state, it is assigned to a thread, and executes on its behalf. When a fiber is in its Inactive state, it is sitting on the sidelines, not consuming the resources of any thread, just waiting to be activated. Windows calls an Active fiber the "selected" fiber for a given thread.

An Active fiber can deactivate itself and make another fiber active by calling `SwitchToFiber()`. This is the only way that fibers can switch between the Active and Inactive states.

Whether or not an Active fiber is actively executing on a CPU core is determined by the state of its enclosing thread. When an Active fiber's thread is in the Running state, that fiber's machine language instructions are being executed on a core. When an Active fiber's thread is in the Runnable or Blocked state, its instructions of course cannot execute, because the entire thread is sitting on the sidelines, either waiting to be scheduled on a core or waiting for a condition to become true.

It's important to understand that fibers don't themselves have a Blocked state, the way threads do. In other words, it's not possible to put a fiber to sleep waiting on a condition. Only its thread can be put to sleep. Because of this restriction, whenever a fiber needs to wait for a condition to become true, it either busy-waits or it calls `SwitchToFiber` in order to yield control to another fiber while it waits. Making a blocking OS call from within a fiber is usually a pretty big no-no. Doing so would put the fiber's enclosing thread to sleep, thereby preventing that fiber from doing anything—including scheduling other fibers to run cooperatively.

#### 4.4.7.3 Fiber Migration

A fiber can migrate from thread to thread, but only by passing through its Inactive state. As an example, consider a fiber F that is running within the context of thread A. Fiber F calls `SwitchToFiber(G)` to activate a different fiber named G inside thread A. This puts fiber F into its Inactive state (meaning it is no longer associated with any thread). Now let's assume that another thread named B is running fiber H. If fiber H calls `SwitchToFiber(F)`, then fiber F has effectively migrated from thread A to thread B.

#### 4.4.7.4 Debugging with Fibers

Because fibers are provided by the OS, debugging tools and profiling tools should be able to "see" them, just the way they can "see" threads. For example, when debugging on the PS4 using SN Systems' Visual Studio debugger plugin for Clang, fibers automatically show up in the Threads window as if they were threads. You can double-click a fiber to activate it within the Watch and Call Stack windows, and then walk up and down its call stack just as you normally would with a thread.

If you're considering using fibers in your game engine, it's a good idea to check out your debugger's capabilities on your target platform before you commit a lot of time and effort to a fiber-based design. If your debugger and/or target platform doesn't provide good tools for debugging fibers, that could be a deal breaker.

#### 4.4.7.5 Further Reading on Fibers

You can read more about Windows fibers here: [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms682661\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/ms682661(v=vs.85).aspx).

#### 4.4.8 User-Level Threads and Coroutines

Both threads and fibers tend to be rather “heavy weight” because these facilities are provided by the kernel. This implies that most functions that you’d call to manipulate threads or fibers involve a context switch into kernel space—not a cheap operation. But there are lighter-weight alternatives to threads and fibers. These mechanisms allow programmers to code in terms of multiple independent flows of control, each with its own execution context, but without the high cost of making kernel calls. Collectively, these facilities are known as *user-level threads*.

User-level threads are implemented entirely in user space. The kernel knows nothing about them. Each user-level thread is represented by an ordinary data structure that keeps track of the thread’s id, possibly a human-readable name, and execution context information (the contents of CPU registers and a call stack). A user-level thread library provides API functions for creating and destroying threads, and context switching between them. Each user-level thread runs within the context of a “real” thread or fiber that has been provided by the operating system.

The trick to implementing a user-level thread library is figuring out how to implement a context switch. If you think about it, a context switch mostly boils down to swapping the contents of the CPU’s registers. After all, the registers contain all of the information needed to describe a thread’s execution context—including the instruction pointer and the call stack. So by writing some clever assembly language code, it’s possible to implement a context switch. And once you have a context switch, the rest of your user-level thread library is nothing more than data management.

User-level threads aren’t supported very well in C and C++, but some portable and non-portable solutions do exist. POSIX provided a collection of functions for managing lightweight thread execution contexts via its `ucontext.h` header file (<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Setcontext>), but this API has since been deprecated. The C++ Boost library provides a portable user-level thread library. (Search for “context” on <http://www.boost.org/> for documentation on this library.)

##### 4.4.8.1 Coroutines

Coroutines are a particular type of user-level thread that can prove very useful for writing inherently asynchronous programs, like web servers—and games! A coroutine is a generalization of the concept of a subroutine. Whereas a subroutine can only exit by returning control to its caller, a coroutine can also exit by *yielding* to another coroutine. When a coroutine yields, its execution

context is maintained in memory. The next time the coroutine is *called* (by being yielded *to* by some other coroutine) it continues from where it left off.

Subroutines call each other in a heirarchical fashion. Subroutine A calls B, which calls C, which returns to B, which returns to A. But coroutines call each other symmetrically. Coroutine A can yield to B, which can yield to A, ad infinitum. This back and forth calling pattern doesn't lead to an infinitely deepening call stack, because each coroutine maintains its own private execution context (call stack and register contents). Thus yielding from coroutine A to coroutine B acts more like a context switch between threads than like a function call. But because coroutines are implemented with *user-level* threads, these context switches are very efficient.

Here's a pseudocode example of a system in which one coroutine continually produces data that is consumed by another coroutine:

```
Queue g_queue;

coroutine void Produce()
{
    while (true)
    {
        while (!g_queue.IsFull())
        {
            CreateItemAndAddToQueue(g_queue);
        }
        YieldToCoroutine(Consume);
        // continues from here on next yield...
    }
}

coroutine void Consume()
{
    while (true)
    {
        while (!g_queue.IsEmpty())
        {
            ConsumeItemFromQueue(g_queue);
        }
        YieldToCoroutine(Produce);
        // continues from here on next yield...
    }
}
```

Coroutines are most often provided by high-level languages like Ruby, Lua

and Google’s Go. It’s also possible to use coroutines in C or C++. The C++ Boost library provides a solid implementation of coroutines, but Boost requires you to compile and link against a pretty huge codebase. If you want something leaner, you may want to try rolling your own coroutine library. The following blog post by Malte Skarupke demonstrates that doing so isn’t quite as onerous a task as you might at first imagine: <https://probablydance.com/2013/02/20/handmade-coroutines-for-windows/>.

#### 4.4.8.2 Kernel Threads versus User Threads

The term “kernel thread” has two very different meanings, and this can become a major source of confusion as you read more about multithreading. So let’s demystify the term. The two definitions are as follows:

1. On Linux, a “kernel thread” is a special kind of thread created for internal use by the kernel itself, which runs only while the CPU is in privileged mode. The kernel also creates threads for use by processes (via an API such as `pthread` or C++11’s `std::thread`). These threads run in user space within the context of a process. In this sense of the term, any thread that runs in privileged mode is a kernel thread, and any thread that runs in user mode (in the context of a single-threaded or multithreaded process) is a “user thread.”
2. The term “kernel thread” can also be used to refer to any thread that is *known to* and *scheduled by* the kernel. Using this definition, a kernel thread can execute in either kernel space or user space, and the term “user thread” only applies to a flow of control that is managed entirely by a user-space program *without* the kernel being involved at all, such as a coroutine.

Using definition #2, a fiber blurs the line between “kernel thread” and “user thread.” On the one hand, the kernel is aware of fibers and maintains a separate call stack for each one. On the other hand, a fiber is not scheduled by the kernel—it can run only when another fiber or thread explicitly hands control to it via a call such as `SwitchToFiber()`.

#### 4.4.9 Further Reading on Processes and Threads

We’ve covered the basics of processes, threads and fibers in the preceding sections, but really we’ve only just scratched the surface. For more information, check out some of the following websites:

- For an introduction to threads, see [https://www.cs.uic.edu/~jbell/CourseNotes/OperatingSystems/4\\_Threads.html](https://www.cs.uic.edu/~jbell/CourseNotes/OperatingSystems/4_Threads.html).
- The full pthread API docs are available online; just search for “pthread documentation.”
- For documentation on the Windows thread API, search for “Process and Thread Functions” on <https://msdn.microsoft.com/>.
- For more information on thread scheduling, search for Nikita Ishkov’s “A Complete Guide to Linux Process Scheduling” online.
- For a great introduction to Go’s implementation of coroutines (which are known as “goroutines”), watch this presentation by Rob Pike: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f6kdp27TYZs>.

## 4.5 Introduction to Concurrent Programming

There’s a wide range of explicitly parallel computing hardware out there, but how can we take advantage of it as programmers? The answer lies in *concurrent programming* techniques. In concurrent software, a workload is broken down into two or more flows of control that can run semi-independently. As we saw in Section 4.1, in order for a system to qualify as concurrent, it must involve multiple readers and/or multiple writers of *shared* data.

Rob Pike, a Distinguished Engineer at Google Inc. who specializes in distributed and concurrent systems and programming languages, defines concurrency as “the composition of independently executing computations.” This definition underscores the idea that the multiple flows of control in a concurrent system normally operate semi-independently, but their computations are composed by *sharing data* and by *synchronizing* their operations in various ways.

Concurrency can take many forms. Some examples include:

- a piped chain of commands running under Linux or Windows, such as `cat render.cpp | grep "light"`,
- a single process comprised of multiple threads that share a virtual memory space and operate on a common dataset,
- a thread group comprised of thousands of threads running on a GPU, all cooperating to render a scene,
- a multiplayer video game, sharing a common game state between clients running on multiple PCs or game consoles.

### 4.5.1 Why Write Concurrent Software?

Concurrent programs are sometimes written because a model of multiple semi-independent flows of control simply matches the problem better than a single flow-of-control design. A concurrent design might also be chosen to best make use of a multicore computing platform, even if the problem at hand might be more naturally suited to a sequential design.

### 4.5.2 Concurrent Programming Models

In order for the various threads within a concurrent program to cooperate, they need to *share data*, and they need to *synchronize* their activities. In other words, they need to *communicate*. There are two basic ways in which concurrent threads can communicate:

- *Message passing.* In this communication mode, concurrent threads pass *messages* between one another in order to share data and synchronize their activities. The messages might be sent across a network, passed between processes using a pipe, or transmitted via a message queue in memory that is accessible to both sender and receiver. This approach works both for threads running on a single computer (either within a single process or across multiple processes), and for threads within processes running on physically distinct computers (e.g., a computer cluster or a grid of machines spread across the globe).
- *Shared memory.* In this communication mode, two or more threads are granted access to the same block of physical memory, and can therefore operate directly on any data objects residing in that memory area. Direct access to shared memory only works when all threads are running on a single computer with a bank of physical RAM that can be “seen” by all CPU cores. Threads within a single process always share a virtual address space, so they can share memory “for free.” Threads within different processes can also share memory by mapping certain physical memory pages into all of the processes’ virtual address spaces.

It’s interesting to note that the *illusion* of shared memory between physically separate computers can be implemented on top of a message-passing system—this technique is known as *distributed shared memory*. Likewise, a message-passing mechanism can be implemented on top of a shared memory architecture, by implementing a message queue that resides in the shared memory pool.

Each approach has its pros and cons. Physically-shared memory is the most efficient way to share a large amount of data, because that data doesn't have to be copied for transmission between threads. On the other hand, as we'll see in Sections 4.5.3 and 4.7, the *sharing* of resources of any kind (memory or other resources) brings with it a host of synchronization problems that tend to be difficult to reason about, and are very tricky to account for in a manner that guarantees correctness of the program. A message-passing design tends to lessen the impacts of (but not eliminate) these kinds of problems.

In this book, we'll focus primarily on shared memory concurrency. We do this for two reasons: First, this is the kind of concurrency you're most likely to encounter as a game programmer, because game engines are typically implemented as single-process multithreaded programs. (Networked multiplayer games are a notable exception to this rule, since they make heavy use of message passing.) Second, shared memory concurrency is a more difficult topic to get your head around. Once you understand concurrency within a shared memory environment, message passing techniques should prove relatively easy to learn.

### 4.5.3 Race Conditions

A *race condition* is defined as any situation in which the behavior of a program is dependent on timing. In other words, in the presence of a race condition, the behavior of the program can *change* when the relative sequence of events occurring across the system changes, due to variability in the lengths of time taken by the various flows of control to perform their tasks.

#### 4.5.3.1 Critical Races

Sometimes race conditions are innocuous—the behavior of the program may change somewhat depending on timing, but the race causes no ill effects. On the other hand, a *critical race* is a race condition that has the potential to cause *incorrect* program behavior.

The kinds of bugs caused by critical races often seem “strange” or even “impossible” to programmers who aren’t experienced with them. Examples include:

- intermittent or seemingly random bugs or crashes,
- incorrect results,
- data structures that get into corrupted states,
- bugs that magically disappear when you switch to a debug build,

- bugs that are around for a while, and then go away for a few days, only to return again (usually the night before E3!),
- bugs that go away when logging (a.k.a., “`printf()` debugging”) is added to the program in an attempt to discover the source of the problem.

Programmers often call these kinds of issues Heisenbugs.

#### 4.5.3.2 Data Races

A *data race* is a critical race condition in which two or more flows of control interfere with one another while reading and/or writing a block of shared data, resulting in data corruption. Data races are *the* central problem of concurrent programming. Writing concurrent programs always boils down to eliminating data races, either by carefully controlling access to shared data, or by replacing shared data with private, independent copies of data (thereby transforming a concurrency problem into a sequential programming problem).

To better understand data races, consider the following simple snippet of C/C++ code:

```
int g_count = 0;

inline void IncrementCount()
{
    ++g_count;
}
```

If you compiled this code for an Intel x86 CPU and viewed the disassembly, it would look something like this:

```
mov    eax, [g_count]    ; read g_count into register EAX
inc    eax                ; increment the value
mov    [g_count], eax     ; write EAX back into g_count
```

This is an example of a *read-modify-write* (RMW) operation.

Now imagine that two threads A and B were both to call the `IncrementCount()` function concurrently (either in parallel or via preemptive multi-threading). Under normal operation, if each thread called the function exactly once, we'd expect the final value of `g_count` to be 2, because either thread A increments `g_count` and then thread B increments it, or vice-versa. This is illustrated in Table 4.1.

Next let's consider the case of our two threads running on a single-core machine with preemptive multitasking. Let's say that thread A runs first, and

Thread A		Thread B		Value of g_count
Action	EAX	Action	EAX	
	?		?	0
Read	0		?	0
Increment	1		?	0
Write	1		?	1
	1	Read	1	1
	1	Increment	2	1
	1	Write	2	2

Table 4.1. Example of correct operation of a simple two-threaded concurrent program. First thread A reads the contents of a shared variable, increments the value, and writes the results back into the shared variable. At a later time, thread B does the same steps. The final value of the shared variable is 2 as expected.

Thread A		Thread B		Value of g_count
Action	EAX	Action	EAX	
	?		?	0
Read	0		?	0
	0	Read	0	0
	0	Increment	1	0
	0	Write	1	1
Increment	1		1	1
Write	1		1	1

Table 4.2. Example of a race condition. Thread A reads the value of the shared variable, but then is preempted by thread B, which also reads the (same) value. By the time both threads have incremented the value and written their results back to the shared variable, the global variable contains the incorrect value 1 instead of the expected value of 2.

has just finished executing the first `mov` instruction when a context switch to thread B occurs. Instead of thread A executing its `inc` instruction, thread B runs its first `mov` instruction. After some time thread B's quantum expires, and the kernel context switches back to thread A, which continues where it left off and executes the `inc` instruction. Table 4.2 illustrates what happens. Hint: It's not good! The final value of `g_count` is no longer 2 as it should be.

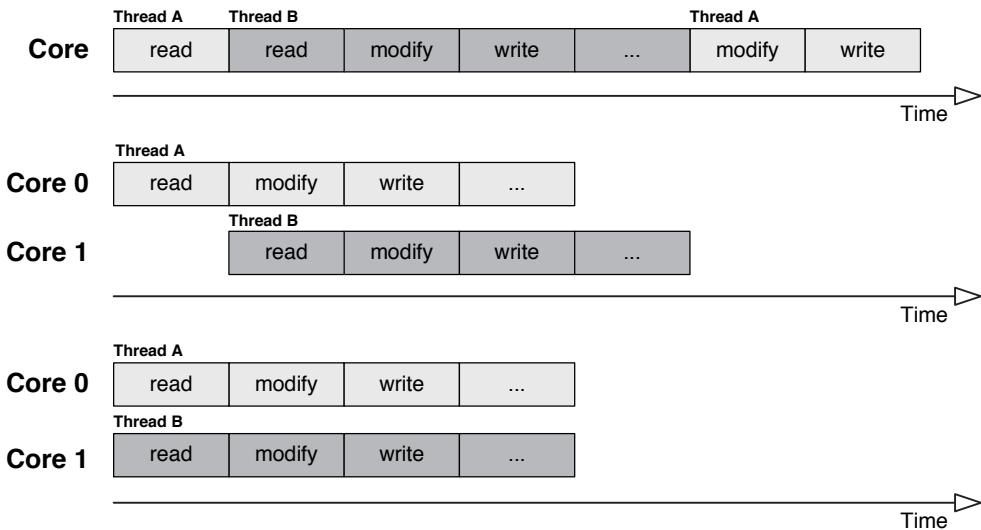


Figure 4.27. Three ways in which a data race can occur within a read-modify-write operation. Top: Two threads racing on a single CPU core. Middle: Two threads overlapping on two separate cores and offset by one instruction. Bottom: Two threads overlapping in perfect synchronization on two cores.

If we run our two threads on parallel hardware, a similar bug can occur, although for a slightly different reason. As in the single-core case, we might get lucky: The two read-modify-write operations might not overlap at all, and the result will be correct. However, if the two read-modify-write operations overlap, either offset from one another or in perfect synchronization, both threads can end up loading the same value of `g_count` into their respective EAX registers. Both will increment the value, and both will write it to memory. One thread will overwrite the results of the other, but it doesn't really matter—because they both loaded the same initial value, the final value of `g_count` will end up being incorrect, just as it was in the single-core scenario. The three data race scenarios (preemption, offset overlap, and perfect synchronization) are illustrated in Figure 4.27.

#### 4.5.4 Critical Operations and Atomicity

Whenever one operation is interrupted by another, we have the potential for a data race bug. However, not all interruptions actually cause bugs. For example, if a thread is performing an operation on a chunk of data that can only be “seen” by that one thread, no data race can occur. Such an operation can be interrupted at any moment by any other operation without consequence.

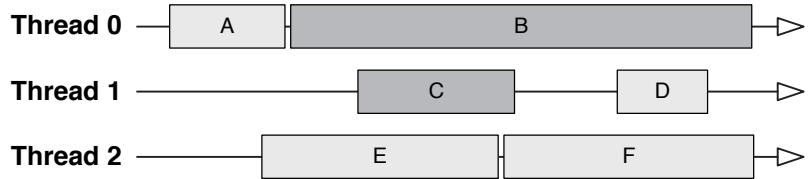


Figure 4.28. Because each step in an algorithm takes a finite amount of time to be performed, it becomes difficult to answer questions about the relative ordering of the steps in a multithreaded program. For example, does operation B happen before or after operation C?

Likewise, if an operation on one data object is interrupted by an operation on a different object, there's no way for those two operations to interfere with one another,<sup>6</sup> and hence no data race bugs are possible. Data race bugs only occur when an operation on a shared object is interrupted by another operation on that *same* object. So we can only talk meaningfully about data races in relation to a particular shared data object.

Let's use the term *critical operation* to refer to any operation that can possibly read or mutate one particular shared object. To guarantee that the shared object is free from data race bugs, we must ensure that none of its critical operations can interrupt one another. When a critical operation is made uninterruptable in this manner, it is called an *atomic operation*. Alternatively, we can say that such an operation has the property of *atomicity*.

#### 4.5.4.1 Invocation and Response

When we first learn to program, we're usually taught that the *time* required to perform each step in an algorithm is not relevant to the correctness of the algorithm—all that matters is that the steps are performed in the proper *order*. This simple model works well for sequential (single-threaded) programs. But in the presence of multiple threads, it's not possible to define the order of a set of operations when those operations each have a finite duration. This idea is illustrated in Figure 4.28.

In a concurrent system, the only way to define the notion of *order* is to restrict ourselves to talking about *instantaneous events*. Given any pair of instantaneous events, there are only three possibilities: event A happens before event B, event A happens after event B, or the two events are simultaneous. (Perfectly simultaneous events are rare, but they can occur in a multicore computer in which some or all cores share a synchronized clock.)

Any operation with a finite duration can be broken down into two instantaneous events—its *invocation* (the moment at which the operation begins) and

<sup>6</sup>This is only strictly true if the two objects reside on different cache lines.

```

int size = CalculateSize();
Item item = ProduceItem(size);      preamble
AddItemToQueue(&g_queue, item);    critical
FreeItem(item);
printf("success!\n");                postamble

```

Figure 4.29. Any code snippet that includes a critical operation can be partitioned into three sections. The critical operation itself is bounded above by its invocation, and below by its response.

```

call some_func
mov  ebx,5
mul  ebx,ecx
preamble

mov  eax,[g_count]
inc  eax
mov  [g_count],eax
critical

cmp  ebx,ecx
je   label
postamble

```

Figure 4.30. Another example, this time in assembly language, of a code snippet partitioned into three sections, bounded by the invocation and response of a critical operation.

its *response* (the moment at which it is considered to be complete). When we look at any code snippet that includes a critical operation on some shared data object, we can thus divide it into three sections, with the instantaneous invocation and response events demarking the boundaries between them. Note that we're talking here about the order in which events occur *as they were written* in the source code—this is known as *program order*.

- *Preamble section*: All code that occurs before the critical operation's invocation, in program order.
- *Critical section*: The code that comprises the critical operation itself.
- *Postamble section*: All code that occurs after the critical operation's response, in program order.

This notion of partitioning a block of code into three sections is illustrated in Figures 4.29 and 4.30.

#### 4.5.4.2 Atomicity Defined

As we saw in Section 4.5.3.2, a data race bug can occur when a critical operation is interrupted by another critical operation on the same shared object. This can happen:

- when one thread preempts another on a single core, or
- when two or more critical operations overlap across multiple cores.

Thinking in terms of invocation and response, we can pin down the general notion of interruption a bit more precisely: An *interruption* occurs whenever the invocation and/or response of one operation occurs *between* the invocation and response of another operation. But as we've said, not all interruptions lead to data race bugs. A critical operation on a particular shared object can only be affected by a data race if its invocation and response are interrupted by another critical operation on that *same* object. Therefore, we can define the *atomicity* of a critical operation as follows:

A critical operation can be said to have executed *atomically* if its invocation and response are not interrupted by another critical operation on that same object.

We should stress here that it's perfectly fine for a critical operation to be interrupted by other noncritical operations, or by critical operations affecting other unrelated data objects. Only when two critical operations on the *same* object interrupt one another does a data race bug occur. Figure 4.31 illustrates various cases—one in which a critical operation succeeds in executing atomically, and three in which it does not.

We can guarantee that a critical operation will be executed atomically if we can make it appear, from the point of view of all other threads in the system, to have occurred *instantaneously*. In other words, it must appear as though the invocation and response of the operation are simultaneous, or that the critical operation itself has a zero duration. That way, there can be no possibility of another critical operation's invocation or response "sneaking in" between the invocation and response of the operation in question.

#### 4.5.4.3 Making an Operation Atomic

But how can we transform a critical operation into an atomic operation? The easiest and most reliable way to accomplish this is to use a special object called a *mutex*. A mutex is an object provided by the operating system that acts like a padlock, in that it can be locked and unlocked by a thread. Given two critical

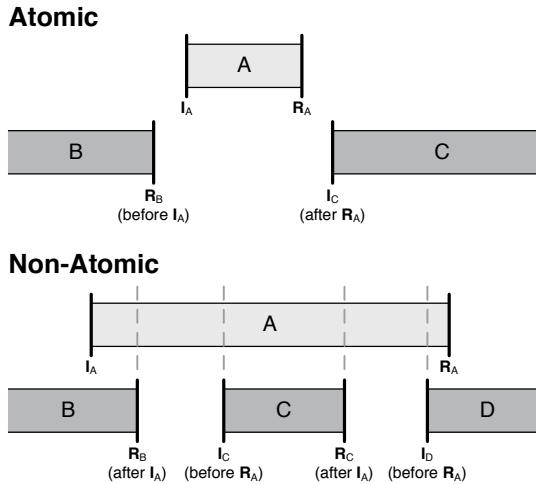


Figure 4.31. Top: Critical operation A can be said to have executed atomically, because it was not interrupted by any other invocations or responses from critical operations on the same shared object. Bottom: Three scenarios in which critical operation A executed nonatomically because it was interrupted by the invocation and/or response of another critical operation on the same object.

operations on a particular shared data object, we guard the invocation of each operation with the acquisition of the mutex, and release the mutex at each one's response. Because the OS guarantees that a mutex can only be acquired by one thread at a time, we can thus be certain that the invocation or response of one operation can never happen in between the invocation and response of the other. From the point of view of the global ordering of the events in a concurrent system, a critical operation guarded with a mutex lock *appears* to be instantaneous.

Mutexes are part of a collection of concurrency tools provided by the operating system known as *thread synchronization primitives*. We'll explore thread synchronization primitives in Section 4.6.

#### 4.5.4.4 Atomicity as Serialization

Consider a group of threads, all attempting to perform a single operation on a shared data object. Without atomicity, these operations might happen simultaneously, or they might overlap in all sorts of unpredictable ways over time. This is illustrated in Figure 4.32.

However, making the operation atomic guarantees that only one thread will ever be performing it at any given moment in time. This has the effect of *serializing* the operations—what used to be a jumble of overlapping opera-

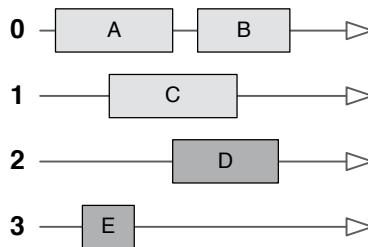


Figure 4.32. Without atomicity, operations performed by multiple threads can overlap in unpredictable ways over time.

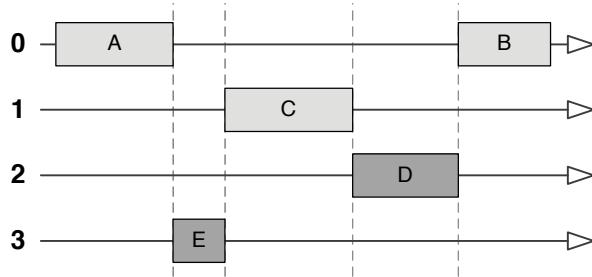


Figure 4.33. By wrapping each critical operation in a mutex lock-unlock pair, we force the operations to execute *sequentially*.

tions is transformed into an orderly sequential sequence of atomic operations. Making an operation atomic gives us no control over what the order will end up being; all we can say for certain is that the operations will be performed in *some* sequential order. This idea is illustrated in Figure 4.33.

#### 4.5.4.5 Data-Centric Consistency Models

The concepts of atomicity and the serialization of operations within a concurrent system are part of a larger topic known as *data-centric consistency models*. A consistency model is a *contract* between a data store, such as a shared data object in a concurrent system or a database in a distributed system, and a collection of threads that share that data store. It makes reasoning about the behavior of the data store easier—as long as the threads follow the rules of the contract, the programmer can be certain that the data store will behave in a consistent and predictable manner, and its data will not become corrupted.

A data store that provides a guarantee of atomicity can be said to be *linearizable*. The topic of data-centric consistency is a bit beyond our scope here, but you can read more about it online. Here are a few good places to start:

- Search for “consistency model” and “linearizability” on Wikipedia;
- <https://www.cse.buffalo.edu/~stevko/courses/cse486/spring13/lectures/26-consistency2.pdf>;
- <http://www.cs.cmu.edu/~srini/15-446/S09/lectures/10-consistency.pdf>.

## 4.6 Thread Synchronization Primitives

Every operating system that supports concurrency provides a suite of tools known as *thread synchronization primitives*. These tools provide two services to concurrent programmers:

1. The ability to share resources between threads by making critical operations *atomic*.
2. The ability to *synchronize* the operation of two or more threads:
  - a. by enabling a thread to *go to sleep* while it waits for a resource to become available or for one or more other threads to complete a task, and
  - b. by enabling a running thread to *notify* one or more sleeping threads by waking them up.

We should note here that while these thread synchronization primitives are robust and relatively easy to use, they are generally quite expensive. This is because these tools are provided by the kernel. Interacting with any of them therefore requires a *kernel call*, which involves a context switch into protected mode. Such context switches can cost upwards of 1000 clock cycles. Because of their high cost, some concurrent programmers prefer to implement their own atomicity and synchronization tools, or they turn to *lock-free programming* to improve the efficiency of their concurrent software. Nevertheless, a solid understanding of these synchronization primitives is an important part of any concurrent programmer’s toolkit.

### 4.6.1 Mutexes

A mutex is an operating system object that allows critical operations to be made atomic. A mutex can be in one of two states: *unlocked* or *locked*. (These two states are sometimes called *released* and *acquired*, or *signaled* and *nonsignaled*, respectively.)

The most important property of a mutex is that it guarantees that only one thread will ever be holding a lock on it at any given time. So, if we wrap all critical operations for a particular shared data object in a mutex lock, those operations become atomic relative to one another. In other words, the operations become *mutually exclusive*. This is where the name “mutex” comes from—it’s short for “mutual exclusion.”

A mutex is represented either by a regular C++ object or by a handle to an opaque kernel object. Its API is typically comprised of the following functions:

1. `create()` or `init()`. A function call or class constructor that creates the mutex.
2. `destroy()`. A function call or destructor that destroys the mutex.
3. `lock()` or `acquire()`. A blocking function that locks the mutex on behalf of the calling thread, but puts the thread to sleep (see Section 4.4.6.4) if the lock is currently held by another thread.
4. `try_lock()` or `try_acquire()`. A non-blocking function that attempts to lock the mutex, but returns immediately if the lock cannot be acquired.
5. `unlock()` or `release()`. A non-blocking function that releases the lock on the mutex. In most operating systems, only the thread that locked a mutex is permitted to unlock it.

When a mutex is locked by a thread in the system, we say it is in a *non-signaled* state. When the thread releases the lock, the mutex becomes *signaled*. If one or more other threads are asleep (blocked) waiting on the mutex, the act of signaling it causes the kernel to select one of these waiting threads and wake it up. In some operating systems, it’s possible for a thread to explicitly wait for a kernel object such as a mutex to become signaled. Under Windows, the `WaitForSingleObject()` and `WaitForMultipleObjects()` OS calls serve this purpose.

#### 4.6.1.1 POSIX

Now that we have an understanding of how mutexes work, let’s take a look at a few examples. The POSIX thread library exposes kernel mutex objects via a C-style functional interface. Here’s how we’d use it to turn our shared counter example from Section 4.5.3.2 into an atomic operation:

```
#include <pthread.h>

int g_count = 0;
pthread_mutex_t g_mutex;
```

```
inline void IncrementCount()
{
    pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);
    ++g_count;
    pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);
}
```

Note that in the interest of clarity and brevity, we've omitted the code, normally executed by the main thread, that calls `pthread_mutex_init()` to initialize the mutex prior to spawning the threads that will use it, and that calls `pthread_mutex_destroy()` to destroy the mutex once all other threads have exited.

#### 4.6.1.2 C++ Standard Library

Starting with C++11, the C++ standard library exposes kernel mutexes via the class `std::mutex`. Here's how we'd use it to make the increment of a shared counter atomic:

```
#include <mutex>

int g_count = 0;
std::mutex g_mutex;

inline void IncrementCount()
{
    g_mutex.lock();
    ++g_count;
    g_mutex.unlock();
}
```

The constructor and destructor of the `std::mutex` class handles the initialization and destruction of the underlying kernel mutex object, making it a little bit easier to use than `pthread_mutex_t`.

#### 4.6.1.3 Windows

Under Windows, a mutex is represented by an opaque kernel object and referenced through a handle. A mutex is "locked" by waiting for it to become signaled, using the general-purpose `WaitForSingleObject()` function. Unlocking a mutex is accomplished by calling `ReleaseMutex()`. Rewriting our simple example using Windows mutexes, and again omitting the details of the creation and destruction of the mutex object, we arrive at the following code:

```
#include <windows.h>

int g_count = 0;
HANDLE g_hMutex;

inline void IncrementCount()
{
    if (WaitForSingleObject(g_hMutex, INFINITE)
        == WAIT_OBJECT_0)
    {
        ++g_count;
        ReleaseMutex(g_hMutex);
    }
    else
    {
        // learn to deal with failure...
    }
}
```

#### 4.6.2 Critical Sections

In most operating systems, a mutex can be shared between processes. As such, it is a data structure that is managed internally by the kernel. This means that all operations performed on a mutex involve a kernel call, and hence a context switch into protected mode on the CPU. This makes mutexes relatively expensive, even when no other threads are contending for the lock.

Some operating systems provide less-expensive alternatives to a mutex. For example, Microsoft Windows provides a locking mechanism known as a *critical section*. The terminology and API look a bit different to that of a mutex, but a critical section under Windows is really just a low-cost mutex.

The API of a critical section looks like this:

1. `InitializeCriticalSection()`. Constructs a critical section object.
2. `DeleteCriticalSection()`. Destroys an initialized critical section object.
3. `EnterCriticalSection()`. A blocking function that locks a critical section on behalf of the calling thread, but busy-waits or puts the thread to sleep if the lock is currently held by another thread.
4. `TryEnterCriticalSection()`. A non-blocking function that attempts to lock a critical section, but returns immediately if the lock cannot be acquired.

5. `LeaveCriticalSection()`. A non-blocking function that releases the lock on a critical section object.

Here's how we'd implement an atomic increment using the Windows critical section API:

```
#include <windows.h>

int g_count = 0;
CRITICAL_SECTION g_critsec;

inline void IncrementCount()
{
    EnterCriticalSection(&g_critsec);
    ++g_count;
    LeaveCriticalSection(&g_critsec);
}
```

As before, we've omitted some details. The main thread normally initializes the critical section prior to spawning the threads that use it, and would of course clean it up once the threads have all exited.

How is the low cost of a critical section achieved? When a thread first attempts to enter (lock) a critical section that is already locked by another thread, an inexpensive *spin lock* is used to wait until the other thread has left (unlocked) that critical section. A spin lock does not require a context switch into the kernel, making it a few thousand clock cycles cheaper than a mutex. Only if the thread busy-waits for too long is the thread put to sleep, as it would be with a regular mutex. This less-expensive approach works because, unlike a mutex, a critical section cannot be shared across process boundaries. We'll discuss spin locks in more depth in Section 4.9.7.

Some other operating systems provide “cheap” mutex variants as well. For example, Linux supports a thing called a “futex” that acts somewhat like a critical section under Windows. Its use is beyond our scope here, but you can read more about futexes at <https://www.akkadia.org/drepper/futex.pdf>.

### 4.6.3 Condition Variables

In concurrent programming, we often need to send signals between threads in order to synchronize their activities. One example of this is the ubiquitous producer-consumer problem which we introduced in Section 4.4.8.1. In this problem, we have two threads: A *producer* thread calculates or otherwise generates some data, and that data is read and put to use by a *consumer* thread. Obviously the consumer thread cannot consume the data until the producer

has produced it. Hence the producer thread needs a way to notify the consumer that its data is ready for consumption.

We could consider using a global Boolean variable as a signalling mechanism. The following code snippet illustrates the idea, using POSIX threads. (Some details have been omitted for clarity.)

```
Queue           g_queue;
pthread_mutex_t g_mutex;
bool            g_ready = false;

void* ProducerThread(void*)
{
    // keep on producing forever...
    while (true)
    {
        pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);

        // fill the queue with data
        ProduceDataInto(&g_queue);

        g_ready = true;
        pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);

        // yield the remainder of my timeslice
        // to give the consumer a chance to run
        pthread_yield();
    }
    return nullptr;
}

void* ConsumerThread(void*)
{
    // keep on consuming forever...
    while (true)
    {
        // wait for the data to be ready
        while (true)
        {
            // read the value into a local,
            // making sure to lock the mutex
            pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);
            const bool ready = g_ready;
            pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);

            if (ready)
                break;
        }
    }
}
```

```
    }

    // consume the data
    pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);
    ConsumeDataFrom(&g_queue);
    g_ready = false;
    pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);

    // yield the remainder of my timeslice
    // to give the producer a chance to run
    pthread_yield();
}

return nullptr;
}
```

Besides the fact that this example is somewhat contrived, there's one big problem with it: The consumer thread spins in a tight loop, polling the value of `g_ready`. As we discussed in Section 4.4.6.4, busy-waiting like this wastes valuable CPU cycles.

Ideally, we'd like a way to *block* the consumer thread (put it to sleep) while the producer does its work, and then wake it up when the data is ready to be consumed. This can be accomplished by making use of a new kind of kernel object called a *condition variable* (CV).

A condition variable isn't actually a variable that stores a condition. Rather, it's a queue of waiting (sleeping) threads, combined with a mechanism that allows a running thread to wake up the sleeping threads at a time of its choosing. (Perhaps "wait queue" would have been a better name for these things.) The sleep and wake operations are performed in an atomic way with the help of a mutex provided by the program, plus a little help from the kernel.

The API for a condition variable typically looks something like this:

1. `create()` or `init()`. A function call or class constructor that creates a condition variable.
2. `destroy()`. A function call or destructor that destroys a condition variable.
3. `wait()`. A blocking function that puts the calling thread to sleep.
4. `notify()`. A non-blocking function that wakes up any threads that are currently asleep waiting on the condition variable.

Let's rewrite our simple producer-consumer example using a CV:

```
Queue          g_queue;
pthread_mutex_t g_mutex;
```

```
bool g_ready = false;
pthread_cond_t g_cv;

void* ProducerThreadCV(void*)
{
    // keep on producing forever...
    while (true)
    {
        pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);

        // fill the queue with data
        ProduceDataInto(&g_queue);

        // notify and wake up the consumer thread
        g_ready = true;
        pthread_cond_signal(&g_cv);
        pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);
    }
    return nullptr;
}

void* ConsumerThreadCV(void*)
{
    // keep on consuming forever...
    while (true)
    {
        // wait for the data to be ready
        pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);
        while (!g_ready)
        {
            // go to sleep until notified... the mutex
            // will be released for us by the kernel
            pthread_cond_wait(&g_cv, &g_mutex);

            // when it wakes up, the kernel makes sure
            // that this thread holds the mutex again
        }

        // consume the data
        ConsumeDataFrom(&g_queue);
        g_ready = false;
        pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);
    }
    return nullptr;
}
```

The consumer thread calls `pthread_cond_wait()` to go to sleep until

`g_ready` becomes true. The producer works for a while producing its data. When the data is ready, the producer sets the global `g_ready` flag to `true`, and then wakes up the sleeping consumer by calling `pthread_cond_signal()`. The consumer then consumes the data. In this example, the consumer and producer ping-pong back and forth like this indefinitely.

You probably noticed that the consumer thread locks its mutex before entering the while loop that checks the `g_ready` flag. When it waits on the condition variable, it apparently goes to sleep *while holding the mutex lock!* Normally this would be a big no-no: If a thread goes to sleep while holding a lock, it will almost certainly lead to a *deadlock* situation (see Section 4.7.1). However, this is not a problem when using a condition variable. That's because the kernel actually does a little slight of hand, *unlocking the mutex* after the thread has been safely put to bed. Later, when the sleeping thread is woken back up, the kernel does some more slight of hand to ensure that the lock will once again be held by the freshly awoken thread.

You may have noticed another oddity: The consumer thread still uses a while loop to check the value of `g_ready`, despite also using a condition variable to wait for the flag to become true. The reason that this loop is necessary is that threads can sometimes be awoken spuriously by the kernel. As a result, when the call to `pthread_cond_wait()` returns, the value of `g_ready` might *not* actually be true yet. So we must keep polling in a loop until the condition really is true.

#### 4.6.4 Semaphores

Just as a mutex acts like an atomic Boolean flag, a *semaphore* acts like an atomic counter whose value is never allowed to drop below zero. We can think of a semaphore as a special kind of mutex that allows *more than one thread* to acquire it simultaneously.

A semaphore can be used to permit a group of threads to share a limited set of resources. For example, let's suppose that we're implementing a rendering system that allows text and 2D images to be rendered to offscreen buffers, for the purposes of drawing the game's heads-up display (HUD) and in-game menus. Due to memory constraints, let's further assume that we can only afford to allocate four of these buffers. A semaphore can be used to ensure that no more than four threads are permitted to render into these buffers at any given moment.

The API of a semaphore is typically comprised of the following functions:

1. `init()`. Initializes a semaphore object, and sets its counter to a specified

- initial value.
2. `destroy()`. Destroys a semaphore object.
  3. `take()` or `wait()`. If the counter value encapsulated by a given semaphore is greater than zero, this function decrements the counter and returns immediately. If its counter value is currently zero, this function blocks (puts the thread to sleep) until the semaphore's counter rises above zero again.
  4. `give()`, `post()` or `signal()`. Increments the encapsulated counter value by one, thereby opening up a "slot" for another thread to `take()` the semaphore. If a thread is currently asleep waiting on the semaphore when `give()` is called, that thread will wake up from its call to `take()` or `wait()`.<sup>7</sup>

So, to implement a resource pool that can be accessed by up to  $N$  threads at a time, we would simply create a semaphore and initialize its counter to  $N$ . A thread gains access to the resource pool by calling `take()`, and releases its hold on the resource pool when it is done by calling `give()`.

We say that a semaphore is *signaled* whenever its count is greater than zero, and it is *nonsignaled* when its counter is equal to zero. This is why the functions that take and give a semaphore are named `wait()` and `signal()`, respectively, in some APIs: If the semaphore isn't signaled when a thread calls this function, the thread will *wait* for the semaphore to become signaled.

#### 4.6.4.1 Mutex versus Binary Semaphore

A semaphore whose initial value is set to 1 is called a *binary semaphore*. One might think that a binary semaphore is identical to a mutex. Certainly both objects permit only one thread to acquire it at a time. However, these two synchronization objects are not equivalent, and are typically used for quite different purposes.

The key difference between a mutex and a binary semaphore is that a mutex can only be unlocked by the thread that locked it. A semaphore's counter, on the other hand, can be incremented by one thread and later decremented by another thread. This implies that a binary semaphore can be "unlocked" by a different thread than the one that "locked" it. Or really, we should say that a binary semaphore can be *given* by a different thread than the one that *takes* it.

This seemingly subtle difference between mutexes and binary semaphores leads to very different use cases for these two kinds of synchronization object.

---

<sup>7</sup>When you read about semaphores, you may discover some authors using the function names `p()` and `v()` instead of `wait()` and `signal()`. These letters come from the Dutch names for these two operations.

A mutex is used to make an operation *atomic*. But a binary semaphore is typically used to send a *signal* from one thread to another.

Consider again our producer-consumer example, in which the producer needs to notify the consumer when the data it produces is ready for consumption. This notification mechanism can be implemented using two binary semaphores, one that allows the producer to wake the consumer, and one that allows the consumer to wake the producer. We can think of these semaphores as representing the number of elements that are used and free within a buffer that's shared between the two threads, although in this simple example the buffer can only hold a single item. As such, we'll call the semaphores `g_semUsed` and `g_semFree`, respectively. Here's what the code would look like, using POSIX semaphores:

```
Queue g_queue;
sem_t g_semUsed; // initialized to 0
sem_t g_semFree; // initialized to 1

void* ProducerThreadSem(void*)
{
    // keep on producing forever...
    while (true)
    {
        // produce an item (can be done non-
        // atomically because it's local data)
        Item item = ProduceItem();

        // decrement the free count
        // (wait until there's room)
        sem_wait(&g_semFree);

        AddItemToQueue(&g_queue, item);

        // increment the used count
        // (notify consumer that there's data)
        sem_post(&g_semUsed);
    }
    return nullptr;
}

void* ConsumerThreadSem(void*)
{
    // keep on consuming forever...
    while (true)
    {
        // decrement the used count
```

```

        // (wait for the data to be ready)
        sem_wait(&g_semUsed);

        Item item = RemoveItemFromQueue(&g_queue);

        // increment the free count
        // (notify producer that there's room)
        sem_post(&g_semFree);

        // consume the item (can be done non-
        // atomically because it's local data)
        ConsumeItem(item);
    }
    return nullptr;
}

```

#### 4.6.4.2 Implementing a Semaphore

It turns out that one can implement a semaphore in terms of a mutex, a condition variable and an integer. In that sense, a semaphore is a “higher-level” construct than either a mutex or a condition variable. Here’s what the implementation looks like:

```

class Semaphore
{
private:
    int             m_count;
    pthread_mutex_t m_mutex;
    pthread_cond_t  m_cv;

public:
    explicit Semaphore(int initialCount)
    {
        m_count = initialCount;
        pthread_mutex_init(&m_mutex, nullptr);
        pthread_cond_init(&m_cv, nullptr);
    }

    void TakeRelease()
    {
        pthread_mutex_lock(&m_mutex);
        m_count++;
        pthread_cond_signal(&m_cv);
        pthread_mutex_unlock(&m_mutex);
    }
}

```

```

    --m_count;
    pthread_mutex_unlock(&m_mutex);
}

void Give()
{
    pthread_mutex_lock(&m_mutex);
    ++m_count;
    // if the count was zero before the
    // increment, wake up a waiting thread
    if (m_count == 1)
        pthread_cond_signal(&m_cv);
    pthread_mutex_unlock(&m_mutex);
}

// aliases for other commonly-used function names
void Wait()    { Take(); }
void Post()    { Give(); }
void Signal()  { Give(); }
void Down()    { Take(); }
void Up()      { Give(); }
void P()        { Take(); } // Dutch "proberen" = "test"
void V()        { Give(); } // Dutch "verhogen" =
                           // "increment"
};

```

#### 4.6.5 Windows Events

Windows provides a mechanism called an *event object* that is similar in function to a condition variable, but much simpler to use. Once an event object has been created, a thread can go to sleep by calling `WaitForSingleObject()`, and that thread can be awoken by another thread by calling `SetEvent()`. Rewriting our producer-consumer example using event objects yields the following very simple implementation:

```

#include <windows.h>

Queue g_queue;
Handle g_hUsed; // initialized to false (nonsignaled)
Handle g_hFree; // initialized to true (signaled)

void* ProducerThreadEv(void*)
{
    // keep on producing forever...
    while (true)
    {
        // produce an item (can be done non-

```

```
// atomically because it's local data)
Item item = ProduceItem();

// wait until there's room
WaitForSingleObject(&g_hFree);

AddItemToQueue(&g_queue, item);

// notify consumer that there's data
SetEvent(&g_hUsed);
}

return nullptr;
}

void* ConsumerThreadEv(void*)
{
    // keep on consuming forever...
    while (true)
    {
        // wait for the data to be ready
        WaitForSingleObject(&g_hUsed);

        Item item = RemoveItemFromQueue(&g_queue);

        // notify producer that there's room
        SetEvent(&g_hFree);

        // consume the item (can be done non-
        // atomically because it's local data)
        ConsumeItem(item);
    }
    return nullptr;
}

void MainThread()
{
    // create event in the nonsignalled state
    g_hUsed = CreateEvent(nullptr, false,
                           false, nullptr);
    g_hFree = CreateEvent(nullptr, false,
                           true, nullptr);

    // spawn our threads
    CreateThread(nullptr, 0x2000, ConsumerThreadEv,
                 0, 0, nullptr);
    CreateThread(nullptr, 0x2000, ProducerThreadEv,
                 0, 0, nullptr);
}
```

```
    // ...
}
```

## 4.7 Problems with Lock-Based Concurrency

In Section 4.5.3.2, we learned that *data races* can lead to incorrect program behavior in a concurrent system. We saw that the solution to this problem is to make operations on *shared* data objects *atomic*. One way to achieve atomicity is to wrap these operations in *locks*, which are often implemented using operating-system provided thread synchronization primitives such as mutexes.

However, atomicity is only part of the concurrency story. There are other problems that can plague a concurrent system, even when all shared-data operations have been carefully protected by locks. In the following sections, we'll briefly explore the most common of these problems.

### 4.7.1 Deadlock

*Deadlock* is a situation in which no thread in the system can make progress, resulting in a hang. When a deadlock occurs, all threads are in their Blocked states, waiting on some resource to become available. But because no threads are Runnable, none of those resources can ever become available, so the entire program hangs.

For a deadlock to occur, we need at least two threads and two resources. For example, Thread 1 holds Resource A but is waiting for Resource B; and at the same time, Thread 2 holds Resource B but is waiting for Resource A. This situation is illustrated by the following code snippet:

```
void Thread1()
{
    g_mutexA.lock(); // holds lock for Resource A
    g_mutexB.lock(); // sleeps waiting for Resource B
    // ...
}

void Thread2()
{
    g_mutexB.lock(); // holds lock for Resource B
    g_mutexA.lock(); // sleeps waiting for Resource A
    // ...
}
```

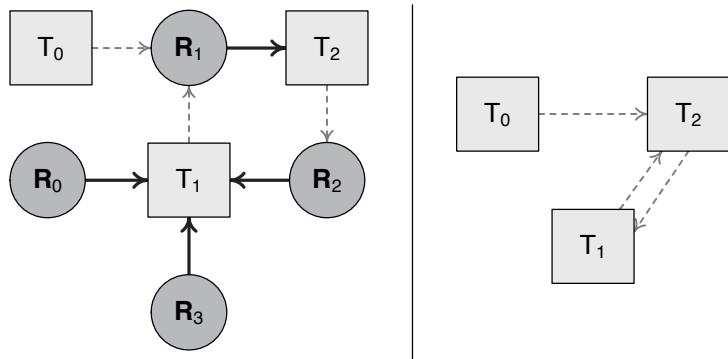


Figure 4.34. Left: Dark arrows show resources currently held by threads. Light dashed arrows show threads waiting on resources to become available. Right: We can eliminate the resources and simply draw the dependencies (light dashed arrows) between threads. A cycle in such a dependency graph indicates a deadlock.

Other more complex kinds of deadlock can of course occur as well, involving more threads and more resources. But the key factor that defines any deadlock situation is a *circular* dependency between threads and their resources.

To analyze a system for the possibility of deadlock, we can draw a graph of our threads, our resources, and the dependencies between them, as shown in Figure 4.34. In this graph, we've used squares to represent threads and circles to represent resources (or more precisely, the mutex locks that protect them). Solid arrows connect resources to the threads that currently hold locks on them. Dashed arrows connect threads to the resources they are waiting for. We can actually eliminate the resource nodes in the graph for simplicity if we like, leaving only the dashed lines connecting threads that are waiting on other threads. If such a dependency graph ever contains a *cycle*, we have a deadlock.

Actually a cycle in the dependency graph isn't quite enough to produce a deadlock. Strictly speaking, there are four necessary and sufficient conditions for deadlock, known as the *Coffman conditions*:

1. *Mutual exclusion*. A single thread can be granted exclusive access to a single resource via a mutex lock.
2. *Hold and wait*. A thread must be holding one lock when it goes to sleep waiting on another lock.
3. *No lock preemption*. No one (not even the kernel) is allowed to forcibly

break a lock held by a sleeping thread.

4. *Circular wait.* There must exist a cycle in the thread dependency graph.

Avoiding deadlock always boils down to preventing one or more of the Coffman conditions from holding true. Since violating conditions #1 and #3 would be “cheating,” solutions usually focus on avoiding conditions #2 and #4.

Hold and wait can be avoided by reducing the number of locks. In our simple example, if Resource A and Resource B were both protected by a single lock L, then deadlock could not occur. Either Thread 1 would obtain the lock, and gain exclusive access to both resources while Thread 2 waits, or Thread 2 would obtain the lock while Thread 1 waits.

The circular wait condition can be avoided by imposing a global order to all lock-taking in the system. In our simple two-threaded example, if we were to ensure that Resource A’s lock is always taken before Resource B’s lock, deadlock would be avoided. This would work because one thread will always obtain a lock on Resource A before attempting to take any other locks. This effectively puts all other contending threads to sleep, thereby ensuring that the attempt to take a lock on Resource B will always succeed.

## 4.7.2 Livelock

Another solution to the deadlock problem is for threads to *try* to take locks without going to sleep (using a function such as `pthread_mutex_trylock()`). If a lock cannot be obtained, the thread sleeps for some short period of time and then *retries* the lock.

When threads use an explicit strategy, such as timed retries, in order to avoid or resolve deadlocks, a new problem can arise: The threads can end up spending all of their time just trying to resolve the deadlock, rather than performing any real work. This is known as *livelock*.

As a simple example of livelock, consider again our example of two threads 1 and 2 contending over two resources A and B. Whenever a thread is unable to obtain a lock, it releases any locks it already holds and waits for a fixed timeout before trying again. If both threads use the same timeout, we can get into a situation in which the same degenerate situation simply repeats over and over. Our threads become “stuck” forever trying to resolve the conflict, and neither one ever gets a chance to do its real job. Livelock is akin to a stalemate in chess.

Livelock can be avoided by using an asymmetric deadlock resolution algorithm. For example, we could ensure that only one thread, either chosen at

random or based on priority, ever takes action to resolve a deadlock when one is detected.

### 4.7.3 Starvation

*Starvation* is defined as any situation in which one or more threads fail to receive any execution time on the CPU. Starvation can happen when one or more higher-priority threads fail to relinquish control of the CPU, thereby preventing lower-priority threads from running. Livelock is another kind of starvation, in which a deadlock-resolution algorithm effectively starves all threads of their ability to do “real” work.

Priority-based starvation is normally avoided by ensuring that high-priority threads never run for very long. Ideally a multithreaded program would consist of a pool of lower-priority threads that normally share the system’s CPU resources fairly. Once in a while, a higher-priority thread runs, takes care of its business quickly, and then ends, returning the CPU resources to the lower-priority threads.

### 4.7.4 Priority Inversion

Mutex locks can lead to a situation known as *priority inversion*, in which a low-priority thread acts as though it is the highest-priority thread in the system. Consider two threads, L and H, with a low and high priority, respectively. Thread L takes a mutex lock and then is preempted by H. If H attempts to take this same lock, then H will be put to sleep because L already holds the lock. This permits L to run even though it is lower priority than H—in violation of the principle that lower-priority threads should not run while a higher-priority thread is runnable.

Priority inversion can also occur if a medium-priority thread M preempts thread L while it is holding a lock needed by H. In this case, L goes to sleep while M runs, preventing it from releasing the lock. When H runs, it is therefore unable to obtain the lock; it goes to sleep, and now M’s priority has effectively been inverted with that of thread H.

The consequences of priority inversion may be negligible. For example, if the lower-priority thread immediately relinquishes the lock, the duration of the priority inversion may be short and it may go unnoticed or produce only minor ill effects. However, in extreme cases, priority inversion can lead to deadlock or other kinds of system failure. For example, a priority inversion can cause a high-priority thread to miss a critical deadline.

Solutions to the priority inversion problem include:

- Avoiding locks that can be taken by both low- and high-priority threads. (This solution is often not feasible.)
- Assigning a very high priority to the mutex itself. Any thread that takes the mutex has its priority temporarily raised to that of the mutex, thus ensuring it cannot be preempted while holding the lock.
- Random priority boosting. In this approach, threads that are actively holding locks are randomly boosted in priority until they exit their critical sections. This approach is used in the Windows scheduling model.

#### 4.7.5 The Dining Philosophers

The famous *dining philosophers* problem is a great illustration of the problems of deadlock, livelock and starvation. It describes a situation in which five philosophers sit around a circular table, each with a plate of spaghetti in front of her. Between each philosopher sits a single chopstick. The philosophers wish to alternate between thinking (which they can do without any chopsticks), and eating (a task for which a philosopher requires two chopsticks). The problem is to define a pattern of behavior for the philosophers that ensures they can all alternate between thinking and eating without experiencing deadlock, livelock or starvation. (Obviously the philosophers represent threads, and the chopsticks represent mutex locks.)

You can read about this well-known problem online, so we won't devote a lot of space to discussing it here. However, it will be instructive to consider a few of the most common solutions to the problem:

- *Global order*. A dependency cycle can occur if a philosopher were always to pick up the chopstick to her left first (or always the one to her right). One solution to this problem is to assign each chopstick a unique global index. Whenever a philosopher wishes to eat, he or she always picks up the chopstick with the lowest index first. This prevents the dependency cycle, and hence avoids deadlock.
- *Central arbiter*. In this solution, a central arbitor (the "waiter") either grants a philosopher two chopsticks or none. This avoids the hold and wait problem by ensuring that no philosopher ever gets into a situation in which he or she holds only one chopstick, thereby preventing deadlock.
- *Chandy-Misra*. In this solution, chopsticks are marked either dirty or clean, and the philosophers send each other messages requesting chopsticks. You can read more about this solution by searching for "chandy-misra" online.

- $N - 1$  *philosophers*. For a table with  $N$  philosophers and  $N$  chopsticks, an integer semaphore can be used to limit the number of philosophers who are permitted to pick up chopsticks at any given time to  $N - 1$ . This solves the deadlock and livelock problems, because even in degenerate situations, at least one philosopher will succeed in obtaining two chopsticks. It does, however, permit one of the philosophers to starve, unless an additional “fairness” criterion is introduced.

## 4.8 Some Rules of Thumb for Concurrency

The solutions to the dining philosophers problem we described in the preceding section hint at some general principles and rules of thumb which we can apply to virtually any concurrent programming problem. Let’s take a brief look at a few of them.

### 4.8.1 Global Ordering Rules

In a concurrent program, the *order* in which events occur is not dictated by the order of the instructions in the program, as it is in a single-threaded program. If ordering is required in a concurrent system, that ordering must be imposed *globally*, across all threads.

This is one reason why a doubly linked list is not a concurrent data structure. A doubly linked list is designed the way it is in order to provide fast ( $O(N)$ ) insertion and deletion of elements at any location within the list. Underlying this design is an assumption that *program order* is equivalent to *data order*—that when an ordered sequence of operations is performed on a list, the resulting list will contain correspondingly ordered elements. For example, let’s say we are given a linked list that contains the ordered elements { A, B, C }. If we execute the following two operations:

1. insert D before C,
2. insert E before C,

the assumption is that the resulting list will contain the ordered elements { A, B, D, E, C }.

In a single-threaded program, this assumption holds true. But in a multi-threaded system, program order no longer dictates data order. If one thread performs the insertion of D before C, and another thread performs the insertion of E before C, we have a race condition that could lead to any of the following results:

- { A, B, D, E, C },
- { A, B, E, D, C }, or
- { A, B, *corrupted data* }.

A corrupted list can occur if the data structure's operations aren't properly protected with critical sections. For example, both D's and E's "next" pointers might end up pointing to C.

A global ordering rule is the only viable solution to this problem. We first need to ask ourselves why the order of the elements in the list matters, and if it even matters at all. If order is unimportant, we can use a singly-linked list and always append the elements—an operation that can be implemented reliably either with locks or in a lock-free manner. And if a global ordering is required, we need to identify a stable and deterministic ordering criterion that does not depend on the order in which program events happen to occur. For example, we might sort the list alphabetically, or by priority, or some other useful criterion. The answers to these questions in turn dictate what kind of data structure we'll want to use. Attempting to use a doubly-linked list in a concurrent way (i.e., giving multiple threads mutable access to the list) is like trying to fit a square peg into a round hole.

## 4.8.2 Transaction-Based Algorithms

In the central arbiter solution to the dining philosophers problem, the arbiter or "waiter" hands out chopsticks in pairs: Either a philosopher receives all of the resources he needs (two chopsticks), or he receives none of them. This is known as a *transaction*.

A transaction can be more precisely defined as an indivisible bundle of resources and/or operations. Threads in a concurrent system submit transaction requests to a central arbiter of some kind. A transaction either succeeds in its entirety, or it fails in its entirety (because some other thread's transaction is actively being processed when the request arrives). If the transaction fails, its thread keeps resubmitting the transaction request until it succeeds (possibly waiting for a short time between retries).

Transaction-based algorithms are common in concurrent and distributed systems programming. And as we'll see in Section 4.9, the concept of a transaction underlies most *lock-free* data structures and algorithms.

## 4.8.3 Minimizing Contention

The most efficient concurrent system would be one in which all threads run without ever having to wait for a lock. This ideal can never be fully achieved,

of course, but concurrent systems programmers do attempt to minimize the amount of *contention* between threads.

As an example, consider a group of threads that are producing data and storing it into a central repository. Every time one of these threads attempts to store its data in the repository, it contends with all of the other threads for this shared resource. A simple solution that can sometimes work is to give each thread its own private repository. The threads can now produce data independently of one another, with no contention. When all of the threads are done producing their output, a central thread can collate the results.

The analog to this approach in the case of the dining philosophers problem would be to give each philosopher two chopsticks from the outset. Doing so would of course remove all concurrency from the problem—without any shared resources, there is no concurrency. In real-world concurrent systems we can't remove *all* sharing of resources, but we can certainly look for ways to *minimize* resource sharing in order to minimize lock contention.

#### 4.8.4 Thread Safety

Generally speaking, a class or functional API is called *thread-safe* when its functions can be safely called by any thread in a multithreaded process. For any one function, thread safety is typically achieved by entering a critical section at the top of the function's body, performing some work, and then leaving the critical section just prior to returning. A class whose functions are all thread-safe is sometimes called a *monitor*. (The term “monitor” is also used to refer to a class that uses condition variables internally to permit clients to sleep while waiting for its protected resources to become available.)

Thread-safety is a convenient feature for a class or interface to offer. But it also imposes overhead that is sometimes unnecessary. For example, this overhead would be wasteful if the interface is being used in a single-threaded program, or if it's being used exclusively by one thread in a multithreaded program.

Thread-safety can also become a problem when an interface function needs to be called reentrantly. For example, if a class provides two thread-safe functions `A()` and `B()`, then these functions cannot call one another because each one independently enters and leaves the critical section. One solution to this problem is to use reentrant locks (see Section 4.9.7.3). Another is to implement “unsafe” versions of the functions in an interface, and then “wrap” each of them in thread-safe variant that simply enters a critical section, calls the “unsafe” function, and then leaves the critical section. That way, we can call the “unsafe” functions internally to the system, but the external interface of the

system remains thread-safe.

In my view, it's a bad idea to attempt to handle concurrent programming by simply creating classes and APIs that are 100% thread-safe. Doing so leads to interfaces that are unnecessarily heavy-weight, and it encourages programmers to ignore the fact that they are working in a concurrent environment. Instead, we should recognize and embrace the presence of concurrency in our software, and aim to design data structures and algorithms that address this concurrency explicitly. The goal should be to produce a software system that minimizes contention and dependencies between threads, and minimizes the use of locks. Achieving a completely lock-free system is a lot of work and is tough to get right. (See Section 4.9.) But striving in the *direction* of lock-freedom (i.e., minimizing the use of locks) is a far better strategy than over-using locks in a futile attempt to create "water-tight" interfaces that allow programmers to be oblivious of concurrency.

## 4.9 Lock-Free Concurrency

Thus far, all of our solutions to the problem of race conditions in a concurrent system have revolved around using *mutex locks* to make critical operations atomic, and possibly leveraging *condition variables* and the kernel's ability to *put threads to sleep* to avoid them wasting valuable CPU cycles in a busy-wait loop. During that discussion, we mentioned that there's another way to avoid race conditions that can potentially be more efficient. That approach is known as *lock-free* concurrency.

Contrary to popular belief, the term "lock-free" doesn't actually refer to the elimination of mutex locks, although that is certainly a component of the approach. In fact, "lock-free" refers to the practice of preventing threads from going to sleep while waiting on a resource to become available. In other words, in lock-free programming we never allow a thread to *block*. So perhaps the term "blocking-free" would have been more descriptive.

Lock-free programming is actually just one of a collection of *non-blocking* concurrent programming techniques. When a thread is blocked, it ceases to make progress. The goal of all of these techniques is to provide guarantees about the *progress* that can be made by the threads in the system, and by the system as a whole. We can organize these techniques into the following categories, listed in order of increasing strength of the progress guarantees they provide:

- *Blocking*. A blocking algorithm is one in which a thread can be put to sleep while waiting for shared resources to become available. A block-

ing algorithm is prone to deadlock, livelock, starvation and priority inversion.

- *Obstruction freedom.* An algorithm is obstruction-free if we can guarantee that a single thread will always complete its work in a bounded number of steps, when all of the other threads in the system are suddenly suspended. The single thread that continues to run is said to be performing a *solo execution* in this scenario, and an obstruction-free algorithm is sometimes called *solo-terminating* because the solo thread eventually terminates while all other threads are suspended. No algorithm that uses a mutex lock or spin lock can be obstruction-free, because if any thread were to be suspended while it is holding a lock, the solo thread might become stuck forever waiting for that lock.
- *Lock freedom.* The technical definition of lock freedom is that in any infinitely-long run of the program, an infinite number of operations will be completed. Intuitively, a lock-free algorithm guarantees that *some* thread in the system can always make progress; in other words, if one thread is arbitrarily suspended, all others can still make progress. This again precludes the use of mutex or spin locks, because if a thread holding a lock is suspended, it can cause other threads to block. A lock-free algorithm is typically transaction-based: A transaction may fail if another thread interrupts it, in which case the transaction is rolled back and retried until it succeeds. This approach avoids deadlock, but it can allow some threads to starve. In other words, certain threads might get stuck in a loop of failing and retrying their transactions indefinitely, while other threads' transactions always succeed.
- *Wait freedom.* A wait-free algorithm provides all the guarantees of lock freedom, but also guarantees starvation freedom. In other words, all threads can make progress, and no thread is allowed to starve indefinitely.

The term “lock-free programming” is sometimes used loosely to refer to *any* algorithm that avoids blocking, but technically speaking the correct term for obstruction-free, lock-free and wait-free algorithms as a whole is “*non-blocking algorithm*.”

The topic of non-blocking algorithms is vast, and is still an open area of research. A complete discussion of the topic would require an entire book of its own. In this chapter, we'll introduce some of the basic principles of lock-free programming. We'll begin by exploring the true causes of data race bugs. Then we'll have a look at how mutexes are actually implemented under the

hood, and learn how to implement our own inexpensive *spin locks*. Finally, we'll present an implementation of a simple lock-free linked list. This discussion ought to be sufficient to give you a flavor for what lock-free data structures and algorithms tend to look like, and should provide a solid jumping off point for further reading and experimentation with lock-free techniques.

### 4.9.1 Causes of Data Race Bugs

In Section 4.5.3.2, we said that data race bugs occur when a critical operation is interrupted by another critical operation on the same shared data. As it turns out, there are two other ways in which data race bugs can arise, and if we're going to implement our own spin locks or write lock-free algorithms, we'll need to understand them all. Data race bugs can be introduced into a concurrent program:

- via the *interruption* of one critical operation by another,
- by the *instruction reordering* optimizations performed by the compiler and CPU, and
- as a result of hardware-specific *memory ordering semantics*.

Let's break these down a bit further:

- Threads interrupt one another all the time as a result of preemptive multitasking and/or by running them on multiple cores. However, when a *critical* operation is interrupted by another critical operation on the *same* shared data object, a data race bug can occur.
- Optimizing compilers often reorder instructions in an attempt to minimize pipeline stalls. Likewise, the out-of-order execution logic within the CPU can cause instructions to be executed in an order that differs from program order. Instruction reordering is guaranteed not to alter the observable behavior of a single-threaded program. But it *can* alter the way in which two or more threads *cooperate* to share data, thereby introducing bugs into a concurrent program.
- Thanks to aggressive optimizations within a computer's memory controller, the *effects* of a read or write instruction can sometimes become *delayed* relative to other reads and/or writes in the system. As with compiler optimizations and OOO execution, these memory controller optimizations are designed never to alter the observable behavior of a single-threaded program. However, these optimizations *can* change the order of a critical pair of reads and/or writes in a concurrent system,

thereby preventing threads from sharing data in a predictable way. In this book, we'll refer to these kinds of concurrency bugs as *memory ordering bugs*.

In order to guarantee that a critical operation is free from data races, and is therefore atomic, we must ensure that none of these three things can happen.

### 4.9.2 Implementing Atomicity

First, let's tackle the problem of making a critical operation atomic (i.e., uninterruptable). Before, we waved our hands a bit and said that by wrapping our critical operations in a *mutex* lock/unlock pair, we can magically transform them into atomic operations. But how does a mutex actually work?

#### 4.9.2.1 Atomicity by Disabling Interrupts

To prevent other threads from interrupting our operation, we could try disabling interrupts just prior to performing the operation, making sure to reenable them after the operation has been completed. That would certainly prevent the kernel from context-switching to another thread in the middle of our atomic operation. However, this approach only works on a single-core machine using preemptive multitasking.

Interrupts are disabled by executing a machine language instruction (such as `c1i`, “clear interrupt enable bit,” on an Intel x86 architecture). But this kind of instruction only affects the core that executed it. The other cores would continue to run their threads (with interrupts, and therefore preemptive multithreading, still enabled), and those threads could still interrupt our operation. So this approach has only limited applicability in the real world.

#### 4.9.2.2 Atomic Instructions

The term “atomic” suggests the notion of breaking an operation down into smaller and smaller pieces, until we reach a granularity that is indivisible. This idea raises the question: Are there any machine language instructions that are *naturally* atomic? In other words, does the CPU guarantee that some instructions are uninterruptable?

The answer to these questions is “yes,” but with a few caveats. There are most certainly some machine language instructions that can *never* be assumed to execute atomically. Other instructions are atomic, but only when operating on certain kinds of data. Some CPUs permit virtually any instruction to be *forced* to execute atomically by specifying a prefix on the instruction in assembly language. (The Intel x86 ISA's `lock` prefix is one example.)

This is good news for concurrent programmers. In fact, it is the existence of these *atomic instructions* that permits us to implement atomicity tools such as mutexes and spin locks, which in turn permit us to make larger-scale operations atomic.

Different CPUs and ISAs provide different sets of atomic instructions, governed by different rules. But we can generalize all atomic instructions as falling into two categories:

- atomic reads and writes, and
- atomic read-modify-write (RMW) instructions.

#### 4.9.2.3 Atomic Reads and Writes

On most CPUs, we can be reasonably certain that a read or write of a four-byte-aligned 32-bit integer will be atomic. That being said, every processor is different, so it's important to always consult your CPU's ISA documentation before relying on the atomicity of any particular instruction.

Some CPUs also support atomic reads and writes of smaller or larger objects, such as single bytes or 64-bit integers, again assuming they are aligned to a multiple of their own size. This is true because on most CPUs, reading and writing an aligned integer whose width in bits is equal to or smaller than the width of a register (or sometimes the width of a cache line) can be performed in a single *memory access cycle*. Because a CPU performs its operation in lock-step with a discrete clock, a memory cycle can't be interrupted, even by another core. As a result, the read or write is effectively atomic.

Misaligned reads and writes usually don't have this atomicity property. This is because in order to read or write a misaligned object, the CPU usually composes two aligned memory accesses. As such, the read or write might be interrupted, and we cannot assume it will be atomic. (See Section 3.3.7.1 for more details on alignment.)

#### 4.9.2.4 Atomic Read-Modify-Write

Atomic reads and writes aren't enough to implement atomic operations in a general sense. In order to implement a locking mechanism like a mutex, we need to be able to read a variable's contents from memory, perform some operation on that variable, and then write the results back to memory, all without being interrupted.

All modern CPUs support concurrency by providing at least one atomic read-modify-write (RMW) instruction. In the following sections, we'll have a look at a few different kinds of atomic RMW instructions. Each has its pros and cons. All of them can be used to implement a mutex or spin lock.

#### 4.9.2.5 Test and Set

The simplest RMW instruction is known as *test-and-set* (TAS). The TAS instruction doesn't actually test and set a value. Rather, it atomically sets a Boolean variable to 1 (true) and returns its *previous* value (so that the value can be tested).

```
// pseudocode for the test-and-set instruction
bool TAS(bool* pLock)
{
    // atomically...
    const bool old = *pLock;
    *pLock = true;
    return old;
}
```

The test-and-set instruction can be used to implement a simple kind of lock called a *spin lock*. Here's some pseudocode illustrating the idea. In this example, we're using a hypothetical *compiler intrinsic* called `_tas()` to emit a TAS machine language instruction into our code. Different compilers will provide different intrinsics for this instruction, if the target CPU supports it. For example, under Visual Studio the TAS intrinsic is named `_interlockedbittestandset()`.

```
void SpinLockTAS(bool* pLock)
{
    while (_tas(pLock) == true)
    {
        // someone else has lock -- busy-wait...
        PAUSE();
    }

    // when we get here, we know that we successfully
    // stored a value of true into *pLock AND that it
    // previously contained false, so no one else has
    // the lock -- we're done
}
```

Here, the `PAUSE()` macro indicates the use of a compiler intrinsic, such as Intel's SSE2 `_mm_pause()`, to reduce power consumption during the busy-wait loop. See Section 4.4.6.4 for details on why it's advisable to use a pause instruction inside a busy-wait loop where possible.

It's important to stress here that the above example is intended for illustrative purposes only. It is not 100% correct because it lacks proper memory

fencing. We'll present a complete working example of a spin lock in Section 4.9.7.

#### 4.9.2.6 Exchange

Some ISAs like Intel x86 offer an atomic *exchange* instruction. This instruction swaps the contents of two registers, or a register and a location in memory. On x86, it is atomic by default when exchanging a register with memory (meaning it acts as if the instruction had been preceded with the `lock` prefix).

Here's how to implement a spin lock using an atomic *exchange* instruction. In this example, we're using Visual Studio's `_InterlockedExchange()` compiler intrinsic to emit the Intel x86 `xchg` instruction into our code. (Again, note that without proper memory fencing this example is incomplete and won't work reliably. See Section 4.9.7 for a complete implementation.)

```
void SpinLockXCHG(bool* pLock)
{
    bool old = true;
    while (true)
    {
        // emit the xchg instruction for 8-bit words
        _InterlockedExchange8(old, pLock);
        if (!old)
        {
            // if we get back false,
            // then the lock succeeded
            break;
        }
        PAUSE();
    }
}
```

Under Microsoft Visual Studio, all of the "interlocked" functions named with a leading underscore are *compiler intrinsics*—they simply emit the appropriate assembly language instruction directly into your code. The Windows SDK provides a set of similarly-named functions *without* the leading underscore—those functions are implemented in terms of the intrinsic where possible, but they're much more expensive because they involve making a kernel call.

#### 4.9.2.7 Compare and Swap

Some CPUs provide an instruction known as *compare-and-swap* (CAS). This instruction checks the existing value in a memory location, and atomically swaps it with a new value *if and only if* the existing value matches an expected value

provided by the programmer. It returns true if the operation succeeded, meaning that the memory location contained the expected value. It returns false if the operation failed because the location's contents were not as expected.

CAS can operate on values larger than a Boolean. Variants are typically provided at least for 32- and 64-bit integers, although smaller word sizes may also be supported.

The behavior of the CAS instruction is illustrated by the following pseudocode:

```
// pseudocode for compare and swap
bool CAS(int* pValue, int expectedValue, int newValue)
{
    // atomically...
    if (*pValue == expectedValue)
    {
        *pValue = newValue;
        return true;
    }
    return false;
}
```

To implement any atomic read-modify-write operation using CAS, we generally apply the following strategy:

1. Read the old value of the variable we're attempting to update.
2. Modify the value in whatever way we see fit.
3. When writing the result, use the CAS instruction instead of a regular write.
4. Iterate until the CAS succeeds.

The CAS instruction allows us to detect data races, by comparing the value that's actually in the memory location at the time of the write with its value *before* the invocation of our read-modify-write operation. In the absence of a race, the CAS instruction acts just like a write instruction. But if the value in memory changes between the read and the write, we know that some other thread beat us to the punch. In that case, we back off and try again.

Implementing a spin lock via compare-and-swap would look something like this, again using a hypothetical compiler intrinsic called `_cas()` to emit the CAS instruction. (This example once again omits the memory fences that would be required to make it work reliably on all hardware—see Section 4.9.7 for a fully-functional spin lock.)

```

void SpinLockCAS(int* pValue)
{
    const int kLockValue = -1; // 0xFFFFFFFF
    while (!_cas(pValue, 0, kLockValue))
    {
        // must be locked by someone else -- retry
        PAUSE();
    }
}

```

And here's how we'd implement an atomic increment using CAS.

```

void AtomicIncrementCAS(int* pValue)
{
    while (true)
    {
        const int oldValue = *pValue; // atomic read
        const int newValue = oldValue + 1;
        if (_cas(pValue, oldValue, newValue))
        {
            break; // success!
        }
        PAUSE();
    }
}

```

On the Intel x86 ISA, the CAS instruction is called `cmpxchg`, and it can be emitted with Visual Studio's `_InterlockedCompareExchange()` compiler intrinsic.

#### 4.9.2.8 ABA Problem

We should mention that the CAS instruction suffers from an inability to detect one specific kind of data race. Consider an atomic RMW write operation in which the read sees the value A. Before we're able to issue the CAS instruction, another thread preempts us, or runs on another core, and writes two values into the location we're trying to atomically update: First it writes the value B, and then it writes the value A again. When our CAS instruction does finally execute, it won't be able to tell the difference between the first A it read and the A that was written by the other thread. Hence it will "think" that no data race occurred, when in fact one did. This is known as the *ABA problem*.

#### 4.9.2.9 Load Linked/Store Conditional

Some CPUs break the compare-and-swap operation into a *pair* of instructions known as *load linked* and *store conditional* (LL/SC). The *load linked* instruction

reads the value of a memory location atomically, and also stores the address in a special CPU register known as the *link register*. The *store conditional* instruction writes a value into the given address, but only if the address matches the contents of the link register. It returns true if the write succeeded, or false if it failed.

Any write operation on the bus (including a store conditional) clears the link register to zero. This means that an LL/SC instruction pair is capable of detecting data races, because if any write occurs between the LL and SC instructions, the SC will fail.

An LL/SC instruction pair is used in much the same way a regular read is paired with a CAS instruction. Specifically, an atomic read-modify-write operation would be implemented using the following strategy:

1. Read the old value of the variable via an LL instruction.
2. Modify the value in whatever way we see fit.
3. Write the result using the SC instruction.
4. Iterate until the SC succeeds.

Here's how we'd implement an atomic increment using LL/SC (using the hypothetical compiler intrinsics `_ll()` and `_sc()` to emit the LL and SC instructions, respectively):

```
void AtomicIncrementLLSC(int* pValue)
{
    while (true)
    {
        const int oldValue = _ll(*pValue);
        const int newValue = oldValue + 1;
        if (_sc(pValue, newValue))
        {
            break; // success!
        }
        PAUSE();
    }
}
```

Because the link register is cleared by *any* bus write, the SC instruction may fail spuriously. But that doesn't affect the correctness of an atomic RMW implemented with LL/SC—it just means that our busy-wait loop might end up executing a few more iterations than we'd expect.

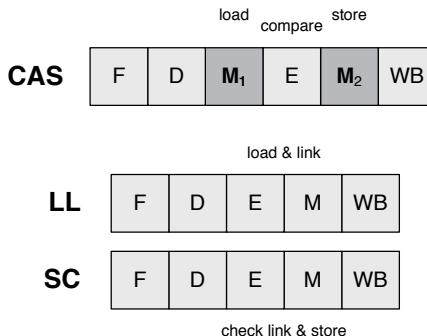


Figure 4.35. The compare and swap (CAS) instruction reads a memory location, performs a comparison, and then conditionally writes to that same location. It therefore requires two memory access stages, making it more difficult to implement within a simple pipelined CPU architecture than the linked/store conditional (LL/SC) instruction pair, each of which requires only a single memory access stage.

#### 4.9.2.10 Advantages of LL/SC over CAS

The LL/SC instruction pair offers two distinct advantages over the single CAS instruction.

First, because the SC instruction fails whenever *any* write is performed on the bus, an LL/SC pair is not prone to the ABA problem.

Second, an LL/SC pair is more pipeline-friendly than a CAS instruction. The simplest pipeline is comprised of five stages: fetch, decode, execute, memory access and register write-back. But a CAS instruction requires two memory access cycles: One to read the memory location so it can be compared to the expected value, and one to write the result if the comparison passes. This means that a pipeline that supports CAS has to include an additional memory access stage that goes unused most of the time. On the other hand, the LL and SC instructions each only require a single memory access cycle, so they fit more naturally into a pipeline with only one memory access stage. A comparison of CAS and LL/SC from a pipelining perspective is shown in Figure 4.35.

#### 4.9.2.11 Strong and Weak Compare-Exchange

The C++11 standard library provides portable functions for performing atomic compare-exchange operations. These may be implemented by a CAS instruction on some target hardware, or by an LL/SC instruction pair on other hardware. Because of the possibility of spurious failures of the store-conditional instruction, C++11 provides two varieties of compare-exchange: strong and weak. Strong compare-exchange “hides” spurious SC failures from the pro-

grammer, while weak compare-exchange does not. Search for “Strong Compare and Exchange Lawrence Crowl” online for a paper on the rationale behind strong and weak compare-exchange functions in C++11.

#### 4.9.2.12 Relative Strength of Atomic RMW Instructions

It’s interesting to note that the TAS instruction is *weaker* than the CAS and LL/SC instructions in terms of achieving *consensus* between multiple threads in a concurrent system. Consensus in this context refers to an agreement between threads about the value of a shared variable (even if some threads in the system experience a failure).

Because the TAS instruction only operates on a Boolean value, it can only solve a problem known as the *wait-free consensus problem* for two concurrent threads. The CAS instruction operates on a 32-bit value, so it can solve this problem for any number of threads.

The topic of wait-free consensus is well beyond our scope here; it’s mostly of interest when building fault-tolerant systems. If you’re interested in fault tolerance, you can read more about the consensus problem by searching for “consensus (computer science)” on Wikipedia.

### 4.9.3 Barriers

Interruptions aren’t the only cause of data race bugs. Compilers and CPUs also conspire to introduce subtle bugs into our concurrent programs by means of the *instruction reordering* optimizations they perform, as described in Section 4.2.5.1.

The cardinal rule of compiler optimizations and out-of-order execution is that their optimizations shall have no visible effects on the behavior of *a single thread*. However, neither the compiler nor the CPU’s control logic has any knowledge of what other threads might be running in the system, or what they might be doing. As a result, the cardinal rule isn’t sufficient to prevent instruction reordering optimizations from introducing bugs into concurrent programs.

The thread synchronization primitives provided by the operating system (mutexes et al.) are carefully crafted to avoid the concurrency bugs that can be caused by instruction reordering optimizations. But now that we’re investigating how mutexes are implemented, let’s take a look at how to avoid these problems manually.

### 4.9.3.1 How Instruction Reordering Causes Concurrency Bugs

As an example of the kinds of problems instruction reordering can cause in concurrent software, consider again the producer-consumer problem from Section 4.6.3. We've simplified the example, and removed the mutexes so we can expose the bugs that can be introduced by instruction reordering.

```
int32_t g_data = 0;
int32_t g_ready = 0;

void ProducerThread()
{
    // produce some data
    g_data = 42;

    // inform the consumer
    g_ready = 1;
}

void ConsumerThread()
{
    // wait for the data to be ready
    while (!g_ready)
        PAUSE();

    // consume the data
    ASSERT(g_data == 42);
}
```

On a CPU on which aligned reads and writes of 32-bit integers are atomic, this example doesn't actually require mutexes. However, there's nothing to prevent the compiler or the CPU's out-of-order execution logic from reordering the producer's write of 1 into `g_ready` so that it occurs *before* the write of 42 into `g_data`. Likewise, in theory the compiler could reorder the consumer's check that `g_data` is equal to 42 so that it happens *before* the while loop. So even though all of our reads and writes are atomic, this code may not behave reliably.

Instruction reordering really happens at the assembly language level, so it may be a lot more subtle than a reordering of the *statements* in a C/C++ program. For example, the following C/C++ code:

```
A = B + 1;
B = 0;
```

would produce the following Intel x86 assembly code:

```
mov  eax, [B]
add  eax, 1
mov  [A], eax
mov  [B], 0
```

The compiler could very well reorder the instructions as follows, without producing any noticeable effect in a single-threaded execution:

```
mov  eax, [B]
mov  [B], 0 ; write to B before A!
add  eax, 1
mov  [A], eax
```

If a second thread were waiting for B to become zero before reading the value of A, it would cease to function correctly if this compiler optimization were to be applied.

Jeff Preshing wrote a great blog post on this topic, available at <http://preshing.com/20120625/memory-ordering-at-compile-time/>. (This is where the assembly language example above comes from.) I highly recommend all of Jeff's posts on concurrent programming, so do be sure to check them out.

#### 4.9.3.2 Volatile in C/C++ (and Why It Doesn't Help Us)

How can we prevent the compiler from reordering critical sequences of reads and writes? In C and C++, the `volatile` type qualifier guarantees that consecutive reads or writes of a variable cannot be "optimized away" by the compiler, so this sounds like a promising idea. However, it doesn't work reliably for a number of reasons.

The `volatile` qualifier in C/C++ was really designed to make memory-mapped I/O and signal handlers work reliably. As such, the only guarantee it provides is that the contents of a variable marked `volatile` won't be cached in a register—the variable's value will be re-read directly from memory every time it's accessed. Some compilers do guarantee that instructions will not be reordered across a read or write of a `volatile` variable, but not all of them do, and some only provide this guarantee when targeting certain CPUs, or only when a particular command-line option is passed to the compiler. The C and C++ standards don't require this behavior, so we certainly cannot rely on it when writing portable code. (See <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine/dn973015.aspx> for an in-depth discussion of this topic.)

Moreover, the `volatile` keyword in C/C++ does nothing to prevent the CPU's out-of-order execution logic from reordering the instructions at runtime. And it cannot prevent cache coherency related issues either (see Section 4.9.3). So, at least in C and C++, the `volatile` keyword won't help us to write reliable concurrent software.<sup>8</sup>

### 4.9.3.3 Compiler Barriers

One reliable way of preventing the compiler from reordering read and write instructions across critical operation boundaries is to explicitly instruct it not to do so. This can be accomplished by inserting a special pseudoinstruction into our code known as a *compiler barrier*.

Different compilers express barriers with different syntax. With GCC, a compiler barrier can be inserted via some inline assembly syntax as shown below; under Microsoft Visual C++, the compiler intrinsic `_ReadWriteBarrier()` has the same effect.

```
int32_t g_data = 0;
int32_t g_ready = 0;

void ProducerThread()
{
    // produce some data
    g_data = 42;

    // dear compiler: please don't reorder
    // instructions across this barrier!
    asm volatile("::: "memory")

    // inform the consumer
    g_ready = 1;
}

void ConsumerThread()
{
    // wait for the data to be ready
    while (!g_ready)
        PAUSE();

    // dear compiler: please don't reorder
    // instructions across this barrier!
    asm volatile("::: "memory")
```

<sup>8</sup>In some languages including Java and C#, the `volatile` type qualifier *does* guarantee atomicity, and can be used to implement concurrent data structures and algorithms. See Section 4.9.6 for more on this topic.

```

    // consume the data
    ASSERT(g_data == 42);
}

```

There are other ways to prevent the compiler from reordering instructions. For example, most function calls serve as an implicit compiler barrier. This makes sense, because the compiler doesn't know anything<sup>9</sup> about the side effects of a function call. As such, it can't assume that the state of memory will be the same before and after the call, which means most optimizations aren't permitted across a function call. Some optimizing compilers do make an exception to this rule for inline functions.

Unfortunately, compiler barriers don't prevent the CPU's out-of-order execution logic from reordering instructions at runtime. Some ISAs provide a special instruction for this purpose (e.g., PowerPC's `isync` instruction). In Section 4.9.4.5, we'll learn about a collection of machine language instructions known as *memory fences* which serve as instruction reordering barriers for both the compiler and the CPU, but more importantly also prevent *memory reordering* bugs. So atomic instructions and fences are all we really need to write reliable mutexes, as well as spin locks and other *lock-free* algorithms.

#### 4.9.4 Memory Ordering Semantics

In Section 4.9.1, we said that in addition to the compiler or CPU actually reordering the machine language instructions in our programs, it's possible for read and write instructions to become *effectively reordered* in a concurrent system. Specifically, in a multicore machine with a multilevel memory cache, two or more cores can sometimes *disagree* about the apparent order in which a sequence of read and write instructions occurred, even when the instructions were *actually* executed in the order we intended. Obviously, such disagreements can cause subtle bugs in concurrent software.

These mysterious and vexing problems can only occur on a multicore machine with a multilevel cache. A single CPU core always "sees" the effects of its own read and write instructions in the order they were executed; only when there are two or more cores can disagreements arise. What's more, different CPUs have different memory ordering behavior, meaning that these

---

<sup>9</sup>Function calls only serve as implicit barriers when the compiler is unable to "see" the definition of the function, such as when the function is defined in a separate translation unit. Link time optimizations (LTO) can introduce concurrency bugs by providing a way for the compiler's optimizer to see the definitions of functions it otherwise could not have seen, thereby effectively eliminating these implicit barriers.

strange effects can differ from machine to machine when running the exact same source program!

Thankfully, all is not lost. Every CPU is governed by a strict set of rules known as its *memory ordering semantics*. These rules provide various guarantees about how reads and writes propagate between cores, and they provide programmers with the tools necessary to enforce a particular ordering, when the default semantics are insufficient.

Some CPUs offer only weak guarantees by default, while others provide stronger guarantees and hence require less intervention on the part of the programmer. So, if we can understand how to overcome memory ordering issues on a CPU with the weakest memory ordering semantics, we can be pretty sure those techniques will also work on CPUs with stronger default semantics.

#### 4.9.4.1 Memory Caching Revisited

In order to understand how these mysterious memory reordering effects can occur, we need to look more closely at how a multilevel memory cache works.

In Section 3.5.4, we described in detail how a memory cache avoids the very high memory access latency of main RAM by keeping frequently-used data in the cache. This means that as long as a data object is present in the cache, the CPU will always try to work with that cached copy, rather than reaching out to access the copy in main RAM.

Let's briefly review how this works by considering the following simple (and totally contrived) function:

```
constexpr int      COUNT = 16;
alignas(64) float g_values [COUNT];
float             g_sum = 0.0f;

void CalculateSum()
{
    g_sum = 0.0f;
    for (int i = 0; i < COUNT; ++i)
    {
        g_sum += g_values[i];
    }
}
```

The first statement sets `g_sum` to zero. Presuming that the contents of `g_sum` aren't already in the L1 cache, the cache line containing it will be read into L1 at this point. Likewise, on the first iteration of the loop, the cache line containing all of the elements of the `g_values` array will be loaded into L1. (They should all fit presuming our cache lines are at least 64 bytes wide, because we aligned

the array to a 64-byte boundary with C++11’s `alignas` specifier.) Subsequent iterations will read the copy of `g_values` that resides in the L1 cache, rather than reading them from main RAM.

During each iteration, `g_sum` is updated. The compiler might optimize this by keeping the sum in a register until the end of the loop. But whether or not this optimization is performed, we know that the `g_sum` variable will be written to at some point during this function. When that happens, again the CPU will write to the *copy* of `g_sum` that exists in the L1 cache, rather than writing directly to main RAM.

Eventually, of course, the “master” copy of `g_sum` has to be updated. The memory cache hardware does this automatically by triggering a *write-back* operation that copies the cache line from L1 back to main RAM. But the write-back doesn’t usually happen right away; it’s typically deferred until the modified variable is read again.<sup>10</sup>

#### 4.9.4.2 Multicore Cache Coherency Protocols

In a multicore machine, memory caching gets a lot more complicated. Figure 4.36 illustrates a simple dual-core machine, in which each core has its own private L1 cache, and the two cores share an L2 cache and a large bank of main RAM. To keep the following discussion as simple as possible, let’s ignore the L2 cache and treat it as being roughly equivalent to main RAM.

Suppose that the simplified producer-consumer example shown in Section 4.9.3.3 is running on this dual-core machine. The producer thread runs on Core 1, and the consumer thread runs on Core 2. Let’s further assume for the purposes of this discussion that none of the instructions in either thread have been reordered.

```
int32_t g_data = 0;
int32_t g_ready = 0;

void ProducerThread() // running on Core 1
{
    g_data = 42;
    // assume no instruction reordering across this line
    g_ready = 1;
}
```

---

<sup>10</sup>Some memory cache hardware does allow cached writes to *write-through* to main RAM immediately. We can safely ignore write-through caches for the purposes of the present discussion.

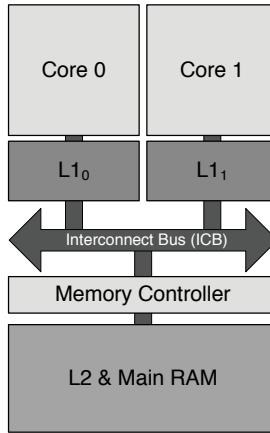


Figure 4.36. A dual core machine with a local L1 cache per core, connected to a memory controller via the interconnect bus (ICB). The memory controller implements a cache coherency protocol such as MESI to ensure that both cores have a consistent view of the contents of memory within the CPU's cache coherency domain.

```
void ConsumerThread() // running on Core 2
{
    while (!g_ready)
        PAUSE();
    // assume no instruction reordering across this line
    ASSERT(g_data == 42);
}
```

Now consider what happens when the producer (on Core 1) writes to `g_ready`. In the name of efficiency, this write causes Core 1's L1 cache to be updated, but it won't trigger a *write-back* to main RAM until some time later. This means that for some finite amount of time after the write has occurred, the most up-to-date value of `g_ready` don't exist anywhere but inside Core 1's L1 cache.

Let's say that the consumer (running on Core 2) attempts to read `g_ready` at some time after the producer set it to 1. Like Core 1, Core 2 prefers to read from the cache whenever possible, to avoid the high cost of reading main RAM. Core 2's local L1 cache does not contain a copy of `g_ready`, but Core 1's L1 cache *does*. So ideally Core 2 would like to ask Core 1 for its copy, because that would still be a lot less expensive than getting the data from main RAM. And in this particular case, doing so would also have the distinct advantage of returning the most up-to-date value.

A *cache coherency protocol* is a communication mechanism that permits cores to share data between their local L1 caches in this way. Most CPUs use either the MESI or MOESI protocol.

#### 4.9.4.3 The MESI Protocol

Under the MESI protocol, each cache line can be in one of four states:

- **Modified.** This cache line has been modified (written to) locally.
- **Exclusive.** The main RAM memory block corresponding to this cache line exists *only* in this core's L1 cache—no other core has a copy of it.
- **Shared.** The main RAM memory block corresponding to this cache line exists in *more than one* core's L1 cache, and all cores have an identical copy of it.
- **Invalid.** This cache line no longer contains valid data—the next read will need to obtain the line either from another core's L1 cache, or from main RAM.

The MOESI protocol adds another state named **Owned**, which allows cores to share modified data without writing it back to main RAM first. We'll focus on MESI here in the name of simplicity.

Under the MESI protocol, all cores' L1 caches are connected via a special bus called the *interconnect bus* (ICB). Collectively, the L1 caches, any higher-level caches, and main RAM form what is known as a *cache coherency domain*. The protocol ensures that all cores have a consistent “view” of the data in this domain.

We can get a feel for how the MESI state machine works by returning to our example.

- Let's assume that Core 1 (the producer) first tries to read the current value of `g_ready` for some reason. Presuming that this variable doesn't already exist in any core's L1 cache, the cache line that contains it is loaded into Core 1's L1 cache. The cache line is put into the **Exclusive** state, meaning that no other core has this line.
- Now let's say that Core 2 (the consumer) attempts to read `g_ready`. A *Read* message is sent over the ICB. Core 1 has this cache line, so it responds with a copy of the data. At this point, the cache line is put into the **Shared** state on both cores, indicating that both have an identical copy of the line.
- Next, the producer on Core 1 writes a 1 into `g_ready`. This updates the value in Core 1's L1 cache, and puts its copy of the line into the **Modified** state. An *Invalidate* message is sent across the ICB, causing Core 2's copy of the line to be put into the **Invalid** state. This indicates that Core 2's copy of the line containing `g_ready` is no longer up-to-date.

- The next time that Core 2 (the consumer) tries to read `g_ready`, it finds that its locally-cached copy is Invalid. It sends a *Read* message across the ICB and obtains the newly-modified line from Core 1's L1 cache. This causes both cores' cache lines to be put into the Shared state once again. It also triggers a *write-back* of the line to main RAM.

A complete discussion of the MESI protocol is beyond our scope, but this example should give you a good feel for how it works to allow multiple cores to share data between their L1 caches while minimizing accesses to main RAM.

#### 4.9.4.4 How MESI Can Go Wrong

Based on the discussion of the MESI protocol in the preceding section, it would seem that the problem of data sharing between L1 caches in a multicore machine has been solved in a watertight way. How, then, can the memory ordering bugs we've hinted at actually happen?

There's a one-word answer to that question: Optimization. On most hardware, the MESI protocol is highly optimized to minimize latency. This means that some operations aren't actually performed immediately when messages are received over the ICB. Instead, they are deferred to save time. As with compiler optimizations and CPU out-of-order execution optimizations, MESI optimizations are carefully crafted so as to be undetectable by a single thread. But, as you might expect, concurrent programs once again get the raw end of this deal.

For example, our producer (running on Core 1) writes 42 into `g_data` and then immediately writes 1 into `g_ready`. Under certain circumstances, optimizations in the MESI protocol can cause the new value of `g_ready` to become visible to other cores within the cache coherency domain *before* the updated value of `g_data` becomes visible. This can happen, for example, if Core 1 already has `g_ready`'s cache line in its local L1 cache, but does *not* have `g_data`'s line yet. This means that the consumer (on Core 2) can potentially see a value of 1 for `g_ready` *before* it sees a value of 42 in `g_data`, resulting in a data race bug.

This state of affairs can be summarized as follows:

Optimizations within a cache coherency protocol can make two read and/or write instructions *appear* to happen, from the point of view of other cores in the system, in an order that is opposite to the order in which the instructions were actually executed.

#### 4.9.4.5 Memory Fences

When the apparent order of two instructions gets reversed by our cache coherency protocol, we say that the first instruction (in program order) has *passed* the second. There are four ways in which one instruction can pass another:

1. A read can pass another read,
2. a read can pass a write,
3. a write can pass another write, or
4. a write can pass a read.

To prevent the memory effects of a read or write instruction passing other reads and/or writes, modern CPUs provide special machine language instructions known as *memory fences*, also known as *memory barriers*.

In theory, a CPU could provide individual fence instructions to prevent each of these four cases from happening. For example, a *ReadRead* fence would only prevent reads from passing other reads, but would not prevent any of the other cases. Also, a fence instruction could be unidirectional or bidirectional. A one-way fence would guarantee that no reads or writes that precede it in program order can end up having an effect after it, but not vice-versa. A bidirectional fence, on the other hand, would prevent “leakage” of memory effects in either direction across the fence. Theoretically, then, we could imagine a CPU that provides twelve distinct fence instructions—a bidirectional, forward, and reverse variant of each of the four basic fence types listed above.

Thankfully real CPUs don’t usually provide all twelve kinds of fences. Instead, an ISA typically specifies a handful of fence instructions which serve as combinations of these theoretical fence types.

The strongest kind of fence is called a *full fence*. It ensures that all reads and writes occurring before the fence in program order will never appear to have occurred after it, and likewise that all reads and writes occurring after it will never appear to have happened before it. In other words, a full fence is a two-way barrier that affects both reads and writes.

A full fence is actually very expensive to realize in hardware. CPU designers don’t like forcing programmers to use an expensive construct when a cheaper one will do, so most CPUs provide a variety of less-expensive fence instructions which provide weaker guarantees than those provided by a full fence.

All fence instructions have two very useful side-effects:

1. They serve as compiler barriers, and

2. they prevent the CPU's out-of-order logic from reordering instructions across the fence.

This means that when we use a fence to prevent the memory ordering bugs that are caused by our CPU's cache coherency protocol, it also serves to prevent instruction reordering. So atomic instructions and memory fences are all we really need to write reliable mutexes and spin locks, and to write other *lock-free* algorithms as well.

#### 4.9.4.6 Acquire and Release Semantics

No matter what the specific fence instructions look like under a particular ISA, we can reason about their effects by thinking in terms of the *semantics* they provide—in other words, the guarantees they enforce about the behavior of reads and writes in the system.

Memory ordering semantics are really properties of read or write instructions, not properties of the fences themselves. The fences merely provide a way for programmers to ensure that a read or write instruction has a particular memory ordering semantic. There are really only three memory ordering semantics we typically need to worry about:

- *Release* semantics. This semantic guarantees that a *write* to shared memory can never be passed by any other read or write that *precedes* it in program order. When this semantic is applied to a shared write, we call it a *write-release*. This semantic operates in the *forward* direction only—it says nothing about preventing memory operations that occur after the write-release from appearing to happen before it.
- *Acquire* semantics. This semantic guarantees that a *read* from shared memory can never be passed by any other read or write that occurs *after* it in program order. When this semantic is applied to a shared read, we call it a *read-acquire*. This semantic operates in the *reverse* direction only—it does nothing to prevent memory operations that occur before the read-acquire from having their effects seen after it.
- *Full fence* semantics. This bidirectional semantic ensures that all memory operations appear to occur in program order across the boundary created by a fence instruction in the code. No read or write that occurs before the fence in program order can appear to have occurred after the fence, and likewise no read or write that is after the fence in program order can appear to have occurred before it.

The individual fence instructions provided by any particular ISA typically provide at least one of these three memory ordering semantics. The details of how each fence instruction actually provides these semantic guarantees are CPU-specific, and for the most part as concurrent programmers, we don't care. As long as we can express the concept of write-release, read-acquire and full fence in our source code, we should be able to write a reliable spin lock or code other lock-free algorithms.

#### 4.9.4.7 When to Use Acquire and Release Semantics

A *write-release* is most often used in a producer scenario—in which a thread performs two consecutive writes (e.g., writing to `g_data` and then `g_ready`), and we need to ensure that all other threads will see the two writes in the correct order. We can enforce this ordering by making the second of these two writes a write-release. To implement this, a fence instruction that provides *release semantics* is placed *before* the write-release instruction. Technically speaking, when a core executes a fence instruction with release semantics, it waits until all prior writes have been fully committed to memory within the cache coherency domain before executing the second write (the write-release).

A *read-acquire* is typically used in a consumer scenario—in which a thread performs two consecutive reads in which the second is conditional on the first (e.g., only reading `g_data` after a read of the flag `g_ready` comes back `true`). We enforce this ordering by making sure that the first read is a read-acquire. To implement this, a fence instruction that provides *acquire semantics* is placed *after* the read-acquire instruction. Technically speaking, when a core executes a fence instruction with acquire semantics, it waits until all writes from other cores have been fully flushed into the cache coherency domain before it continues on to execute the second read. This ensures that the second read will never appear to have occurred before the read-acquire.

Here's our producer-consumer example again, in full lock-free glory, using acquire and release fences to impose the necessary memory ordering semantics:

```
int32_t g_data = 0;
int32_t g_ready = 0;

void ProducerThread() // running on Core 1
{
    g_data = 42;

    // make the write to g_ready into a write-release
    // by placing a release fence *before* it
    RELEASE_FENCE();
```

```
    g_ready = 1;
}

void ConsumerThread() // running on Core 2
{
    // make the read of g_ready into a read-acquire
    // by placing an acquire fence *after* it
    while (!g_ready)
        PAUSE();
    ACQUIRE_FENCE();

    // we can now read g_data safely...
    ASSERT(g_data == 42);
}
```

For an excellent in-depth presentation of exactly why acquire and release fences are required under the MESI cache coherency protocol, see <http://www.swedishcoding.com/2017/11/10/multi-core-programming-and-cache-coherency/>.

#### 4.9.4.8 CPU Memory Models

We mentioned in Section 4.9.4 that some CPUs provide stronger memory order semantics by default than others. On a CPU with strong memory semantics, read and/or write instructions behave like a certain kind of fence by default, without the programmer having to specify a fence instruction explicitly. For example, the DEC Alpha has notoriously weak semantics by default, requiring careful fencing in almost all situations. At the other end of the spectrum, an Intel x86 CPU has quite strong memory ordering semantics by default. For a great discussion of weak and strong memory ordering, see <http://preshing.com/20120930/weak-vs-strong-memory-models/>.

#### 4.9.4.9 Fence Instructions on Real CPUs

Now that we understand the theory behind memory ordering semantics, let's take a very brief look at memory fence instructions on some real CPUs.

The Intel x86 ISA specifies three fence instructions: `sfence` provides release semantics, `lfence` provides acquire semantics, and `mfence` acts as a full fence. Certain x86 instructions may also be prefixed by a `lock` modifier to make them behave atomically, and to provide a memory fence prior to execution of the instruction. The x86 ISA is strongly ordered by default, meaning that fences aren't actually required in many cases where they would be on CPUs with weaker default ordering semantics. But there are some cases in which these fence instructions *are* required. For an example, see the post

entitled, “Who ordered memory fences on an x86?” by Bartosz Milewski (<https://bit.ly/2HuXpfo>).

The PowerPC ISA is quite weakly ordered, so explicit fence instructions are usually required to ensure correct semantics. The PowerPC makes a distinction between reads and writes to memory versus reads and writes to I/O devices, and hence it offers a variety of fence instructions that differ primarily in how they handle memory versus I/O. A full fence on PowerPC is provided by the `sync` instruction, but there’s also a “lightweight” fence called `lwsync`, a fence for I/O operations called `eieio` (ensure in-order execution of I/O), and even a pure instruction reordering barrier `isync` that does not provide any memory ordering semantics. You can read more about the PowerPC’s fence instructions here: <https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/systems/articles/powerpc.html>.

The ARM ISA provides a pure instruction reordering barrier called `isb`, two full memory fence instructions `dmb` and `dsb`, a one-way read-acquire instruction `ldar` and a one-way write-release instruction `stlr`. Interestingly, this ISA rolls acquire and release semantics into the read and write instructions themselves, rather than as separate fence instructions. For more information, see <http://infocenter.arm.com/help/index.jsp?topic=/com.arm.doc.den0024a/CJAIAJFI.html>.

#### 4.9.5 Atomic Variables

Using atomic instructions and memory fences directly can be tedious and error-prone, not to mention being totally non-portable. Thankfully, as of C++11, the class template `std::atomic<T>` allows virtually any data type to be converted into an *atomic variable*. (A specialized class called `std::atomic_flag` encapsulates an atomic Boolean variable.) In addition to atomicity, the `std::atomic` family of templates provides its variables with “full fence” memory ordering semantics by default (although weaker semantics can be specified if desired). This frees us to write lock-free code without having to worry about any of the three causes of data race bugs.

Using these facilities, our producer-consumer example can be written as follows:

```
std::atomic<float> g_data;
std::atomic_flag g_ready = false;

void ProducerThread()
{
    // produce some data
    g_data = 42;
```

```
// inform the consumer
g_ready = true;
}

void ConsumerThread()
{
    // wait for the data to be ready
    while (!g_ready)
        PAUSE();

    // consume the data
    ASSERT(g_data == 42);
}
```

Notice that this code looks nearly identical to the erroneous code we first presented when talking about race conditions in Section 4.5.3. By simply wrapping our variables in `std::atomic`, we've converted a concurrent program that is prone to data race bugs into one that is race-free.

Under the hood, the implementations of `std::atomic<T>` and `std::atomic_flag` are, of course, complex. The standard C++ library has to be portable, so its implementation makes use of whichever atomic and barrier machine language instructions happen to be available on the target platform. What's more, the `std::atomic<T>` template can wrap any type imaginable, but of course CPUs don't provide atomic instructions for manipulating arbitrarily-sized data objects. As such, the `std::atomic<T>` template must be specialized by size: When the template is applied to a 32- or 64-bit type, it can be implemented without locks, using atomic machine language instructions directly. But when it is applied to larger types, mutex locks are used to ensure correct atomic behavior. (You can call `is_lock_free()` on any atomic variable to find out whether its implementation really is lock-free on your target hardware.)

#### 4.9.5.1 C++ Memory Order

By default, C++ atomic variables make use of full memory barriers, to ensure that they will work correctly in all possible use cases. However, it is possible to *relax* these guarantees, by passing a *memory order semantic* (an optional argument of type `std::memory_order`) to functions that manipulate atomic variables. The documentation regarding `std::memory_order` is pretty confusing, so let's demystify it. Here are the possible memory order settings, and what they mean:

1. *Relaxed*. An atomic operation performed with relaxed memory order

semantics guarantees *only* atomicity. No barrier or fence is used.

2. *Consume*. A read performed with *consume* semantics guarantees that no other read or write *within the same thread* can be reordered before this read. In other words, this semantic only serves to prevent *compiler optimizations* and *out-of-order execution* from reordering the instructions—it does nothing to ensure any particular memory ordering semantics within the cache coherency domain. It is typically implemented with an instruction reordering barrier like the PowerPC's `isync` instruction.
3. *Release*. A write performed with *release* semantics guarantees that no other read or write in this thread can be reordered after it, and the write is guaranteed to be visible by other threads reading the same address. It employs a *release fence* in the CPU's cache coherency domain to accomplish this.
4. *Acquire*. A read performed with *acquire* semantics guarantees *consume* semantics, and in addition it guarantees that writes to the same address by other threads will be visible to this thread. It does this via an *acquire fence* in the CPU's cache coherency domain.
5. *Acquire/Release*. This semantic (the default) is the safest, because it applies a *full* memory fence.

It's important to realize that using a memory ordering specifier doesn't guarantee that a particular semantic will actually be used on every platform. All it does is to guarantee that the semantics will be *at least* that strong—a stronger semantic might be employed on some target hardware. For example, on Intel x86, the relaxed memory order isn't possible because the CPU's default memory ordering semantics are relatively strong. On an Intel CPU, any request for a relaxed read operation will actually end up having *acquire* semantics.

Using these memory order specifiers requires switching from `std::atomic`'s overloaded assignment and cast operators to explicit calls to `store()` and `load()`. Here's our simple producer-consumer example again, this time using `std::memory_order` specifiers to provide our release and acquire barriers:

```
std::atomic<float> g_data;
std::atomic<bool> g_ready = false;

void ProducerThread()
{
    // produce some data
```

```
    g_data.store(42, std::memory_order_relaxed);

    // inform the consumer
    g_ready.store(true, std::memory_order_release);
}

void ConsumerThread()
{
    // wait for the data to be ready
    while (!g_ready.load(std::memory_order_acquire))
        PAUSE();

    // consume the data
    ASSERT(g_data.load(std::memory_order_relaxed) == 42);
}
```

It's important to remember the 80/20 rule when using "relaxed" memory ordering semantics like this. These semantics are easy to get wrong, so you should probably only use non-default memory ordering with `std::atomic` when you can prove, via profiling, that the performance improvement is really necessary—and that changing your code to use explicit memory ordering semantics does, in fact, produce the benefits you expect!

A complete discussion of how to use memory ordering semantics in C++11 is beyond our scope, but you can read more by searching online for the article entitled, "Implementing Scalable Atomic Locks for Multi-Core Intel® EM64T and IA32 Architectures" by Michael Chynoweth. This forum discussion offers some interesting insights as well, and illustrates just how complex this kind of programming can get: <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!topic/boost-developers-archive/Qlrat5ASrnM>.

#### 4.9.6 Concurrency in Interpreted Programming Languages

Thus far we've only discussed concurrency in the context of compiled languages like C and C++, and in assembly language. These languages compile or assemble down to raw machine code that is executed directly by the CPU. As such, atomic operations and locks must be implemented with the aid of special machine language instructions that provide atomic operations and cache coherent memory barriers, with additional help from the kernel (which makes sure threads are put to sleep and awoken appropriately) and the compiler (which respects barrier instructions when optimizing the code).

The story is somewhat different for interpreted programming languages like Java and C#. Programs written in these languages execute in the context of a *virtual machine* (VM): Java programs run inside the Java Virtual Machine

(JVM), and C# programs run within the context of the Common Language Runtime (CLR). A virtual machine is essentially a software emulation of a CPU, reading bytecoded instructions one by one and executing them. A VM also acts a bit like an emulated operating system kernel: It provides its own notion of “threads” (comprised of bytecoded instructions), and it handles all of the details of scheduling those threads itself. Because the operation of a VM is implemented entirely in software, an interpreted language like Java or C# can provide powerful concurrent synchronization facilities that are not as constrained by the hardware as they would be in a compiled language like C or C++.

One example of this principle in action is the `volatile` type qualifier. We said in Section 4.6 that in C/C++ a `volatile` variable is not atomic. However, in Java and C#, the `volatile` type qualifier *does* guarantee atomicity. Operations on `volatile` variables in these languages cannot be optimized, and they cannot be interrupted by another thread. Moreover, all reads of a `volatile` variable in Java and C# are effectively performed directly from main memory rather than from the cache, and likewise all writes are effectively written to main RAM rather than to the cache. All of these guarantees can be provided in part because the virtual machine has full control over the execution of the bytecoded instruction streams that comprise each app.

A full discussion of the atomicity and thread synchronization facilities provided by interpreted languages like C# and Java is well beyond the scope of this book. But now that you have a solid understanding of the principles behind atomicity at the lowest levels, understanding these facilities in other higher-level languages should be a snap. For further reading, the following websites are a good start:

- C#: Search for “Parallel Processing and Concurrency in the .NET Framework” on <https://docs.microsoft.com>.
- Java: <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/essential/concurrency/>.

#### 4.9.7 Spin Locks

When discussing atomic machine language instructions in Section 4.9.2.2, we presented some code snippets illustrating how a spin lock might be implemented using each of those instructions. But because of instruction reordering and memory ordering semantics, those examples weren’t 100% correct. In this section, we’ll present an industrial-strength spin lock, and then explore a few useful variants.

### 4.9.7.1 Basic Spin Lock

A spin lock can be implemented using a `std::atomic_flag`, either wrapped in a C++ class or accessed via a simple functional API. The spin lock is acquired by using a TAS instruction to atomically set the flag to `true`, retrying in a while loop until the TAS succeeds. It is unlocked by atomically writing a value of `false` into the flag.

When acquiring a spin lock, it's important to use *read-acquire* memory ordering semantics to read the lock's current contents as part of the TAS operation. This fence guards against the rare scenario in which the lock is observed as having been released when in reality some other thread hasn't *completely* exited its critical section yet. In C++11, this can be accomplished by passing `std::memory_order_acquire` to the `test_and_set()` call. In raw assembly language, we'd place an acquire fence instruction after the TAS instruction.

When releasing a spin lock, it's likewise important to use *write-release* semantics to ensure that all writes performed *after* the call to `Unlock()` aren't observed by other threads as if they had happened *before* the lock was released.

Here's a complete implementation of a TAS-based spin lock, using correct and minimal memory ordering semantics:

```
class SpinLock
{
    std::atomic_flag m_atomic;

public:
    SpinLock() : m_atomic(false) { }

    bool TryAcquire()
    {
        // use an acquire fence to ensure all subsequent
        // reads by this thread will be valid
        bool alreadyLocked = m_atomic.test_and_set(
            std::memory_order_acquire);

        return !alreadyLocked;
    }

    void Acquire()
    {
        // spin until successful acquire
        while (!TryAcquire())
        {

```

```

        // reduce power consumption on Intel CPUs
        // (can substitute with std::this_thread::yield()
        // on platforms that don't support CPU pause, if
        // thread contention is expected to be high)
        PAUSE();
    }
}

void Release()
{
    // use release semantics to ensure that all prior
    // writes have been fully committed before we unlock
    m_atomic.clear(std::memory_order_release);
}
;

```

#### 4.9.7.2 Scoped Locks

It's often inconvenient and error-prone to manually unlock a mutex or spin lock, especially when the function using the lock has multiple return sites. In C++ we can use a simple wrapper class called a *scoped lock* to ensure that a lock is automatically released when a particular scope is exited. It works by simply acquiring the lock in the constructor, and releasing it in the destructor.

```

template<class LOCK>
class ScopedLock
{
    typedef LOCK lock_t;
    lock_t* m_pLock;

public:
    explicit ScopedLock(lock_t& lock) : m_pLock(&lock)
    {
        m_pLock->Acquire();
    }

    ~ScopedLock()
    {
        m_pLock->Release();
    }
};

```

This scoped lock class can be used with any spin lock or mutex that has a conformant interface (i.e., any lock class that supports the functions `Acquire()` and `Release()`). Here's how it might be used:

```
SpinLock g_lock;

int ThreadSafeFunction()
{
    // the scoped lock acts like a "janitor"
    // because it cleans up for us!
    ScopedLock<decltype(g_lock)> janitor(g_lock);

    // do some work...

    if (SomethingWentWrong())
    {
        // lock will be released here
        return -1;
    }

    // do some more work...

    // lock will also be released here
    return 0;
}
```

#### 4.9.7.3 Reentrant Locks

A vanilla spin lock will cause a thread to deadlock if it ever tries to reacquire a lock that it already holds. This can happen whenever two or more *thread-safe* functions attempt to call one another reentrantly from within the same thread. For example, given two functions:

```
SpinLock g_lock;

void A()
{
    ScopedLock<decltype(g_lock)> janitor(g_lock);

    // do some work...
}

void B()
{
    ScopedLock<decltype(g_lock)> janitor(g_lock);

    // do some work...

    // make a call to A() while holding the lock
    A(); // deadlock!
```

```
    // do some more work...
}
```

We can relax this reentrancy restriction if we can arrange for our spin lock class to cache the id of the thread that has locked it. That way, the lock can “know” the difference between a thread trying to reacquire its own lock (which we wish to allow) versus a thread trying to grab a lock that’s already held by a different thread (which should cause the caller to wait). To make sure that calls to `Acquire()` and `Release()` are done in matching pairs, we’ll also want to add a reference count to the class. Here’s a functional implementation, using appropriate memory fencing:

```
class ReentrantLock32
{
    std::atomic<std::size_t> m_atomic;
    std::int32_t mRefCount;

public:
    ReentrantLock32() : m_atomic(0), mRefCount(0) { }

    void Acquire()
    {
        std::hash<std::thread::id> hasher;
        std::size_t tid = hasher(std::this_thread::get_id());

        // if this thread doesn't already hold the lock...
        if (m_atomic.load(std::memory_order_relaxed) != tid)
        {
            // ... spin wait until we do hold it
            std::size_t unlockValue = 0;
            while (!m_atomic.compare_exchange_weak(
                unlockValue,
                tid,
                std::memory_order_relaxed, // fence below!
                std::memory_order_relaxed))
            {
                unlockValue = 0;
                PAUSE();
            }
        }

        // increment reference count so we can verify that
        // Acquire() and Release() are called in pairs
        ++mRefCount;
    }
}
```

```
// use an acquire fence to ensure all subsequent
// reads by this thread will be valid
std::atomic_thread_fence(std::memory_order_acquire);
}

void Release()
{
    // use release semantics to ensure that all prior
    // writes have been fully committed before we unlock
std::atomic_thread_fence(std::memory_order_release);

    std::hash<std::thread::id> hasher;
    std::size_t tid = hasher(std::this_thread::get_id());
    std::size_t actual = m_atomic.load(std::memory_order_relaxed);
    assert(actual == tid);

    --mRefCount;
    if (mRefCount == 0)
    {
        // release lock, which is safe because we own it
        m_atomic.store(0, std::memory_order_relaxed);
    }
}

bool TryAcquire()
{
    std::hash<std::thread::id> hasher;
    std::size_t tid = hasher(std::this_thread::get_id());

    bool acquired = false;

    if (m_atomic.load(std::memory_order_relaxed) == tid)
    {
        acquired = true;
    }
    else
    {
        std::size_t unlockValue = 0;
        acquired = m_atomic.compare_exchange_strong(
            unlockValue,
            tid,
            std::memory_order_relaxed, // fence below!
            std::memory_order_relaxed);
    }
    if (acquired)
    {
        ++mRefCount;
    }
}
```

```
        std::atomic_thread_fence(
            std::memory_order_acquire);
    }
    return acquired;
}
};
```

#### 4.9.7.4 Readers-Writer Locks

In a system in which multiple threads can read and write a shared data object, we could control access to the object using a mutex or a spin lock. However, multiple threads should be allowed to *read* the shared object concurrently. It's only when the shared object is being *mutated* that we need to ensure mutual exclusivity. What we'd like is a kind of lock that allows any number of readers to acquire it concurrently. Whenever a writer thread attempts to acquire the lock, it should wait until all readers are finished, and then it should acquire the lock in a special "exclusive" mode that prevents any other readers or writers from gaining access until it has completed its mutation of the shared object. This kind of lock is called a *readers-writer lock* (also known as a *shared-exclusive lock* or a *push lock*).

We can implement a readers-writer lock in a manner similar to how we implemented our reentrant lock. However, instead of storing the thread id in the atomic variable, we'll store a reference count indicating how many readers currently hold the lock. Each time a reader acquires the lock, the count is incremented; each time a reader releases the lock, the count is decremented.

But how, then, can we also provide an "exclusive" lock mode for the writer? All we need to do is to reserve one (very high) reference count value and use it to denote that a writer currently holds the lock. If our reference count is an unsigned 32-bit integer, the value 0xFFFFFFFFU could do nicely as the reserved value. Even easier, we can simply reserve the most-significant bit, meaning that reference counts from 0 to 0xFFFFFFFFU represent reader locks, and the reserved value 0x80000000U represents a writer lock (with no other values being valid).

A readers-writer lock suffers from starvation problems: A writer that holds the lock too long can cause all of the readers to starve, and likewise a lot of readers can cause the writers to starve. A *sequential lock* is one possible alternative that tackles the starvation issue (see <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seqlock> for details). Check out <https://lwn.net/Articles/262464> for a description of yet another interesting locking technique, used in the Linux kernel, that supports multiple concurrent readers and writers, called *read-copy-update* (RCU).

We'll leave the implementation of a readers-writer lock up to you as an exercise! However, if you'd like to compare notes, you can find a fully-functional implementation on this book's website ([www.gameenginebook.com](http://www.gameenginebook.com)).

#### 4.9.7.5 Lock-Not-Needed Assertions

No matter how you slice it, locks are expensive. Mutexes are expensive even in the absence of contention. In a low-contention scenario, spin locks are relatively cheap, but they still introduce a non-zero cost into any piece of software.

It's often the case that the programmer knows *a priori* that a lock isn't required. In a game engine, for example, each iteration of the game loop is usually performed in distinct stages. If a shared data structure is accessed exclusively by a single thread early in the frame, and that same data is accessed again by a single thread later in the frame, then we don't actually need a lock. Yes, in theory those two threads could overlap, and if they were to do so a lock would definitely be needed. But in practice, given the way our game loop is structured, we might know that such overlap can never occur.

In this kind of situation, we have a few choices. We could put the locks in, just in case. That way, if someone rearranges the order in which things are done during the frame, and ends up making these threads overlap, we'd be covered. Another option is to just ignore the possibility of overlap and not lock anything.

There is a third option which I find more appealing in such scenarios: We can *assert* that a lock isn't required. This has two benefits. First, it can be done very cheaply, and in fact the assertions can be stripped prior to shipping your game. Second, it automatically detects problems if our assumptions about the overlap of the threads proves to be incorrect—or if the assumptions are broken later on by a refactor of the code. There's no standardized name for this kind of assertion, so we'll call them *lock-not-needed assertions* in this book.

So how do we detect that a lock is needed? One way would be to use an atomic Boolean variable, complete with proper memory fencing, and use it like a mutex. Except that instead of actually acquiring a mutex lock, we would simply assert that the Boolean is false, and then set it to true atomically. And instead of releasing a lock, we assert that our Boolean is true, and then set it to false atomically. This approach would work, but it would be just as expensive as an uncontended spin lock. We can do better.

The "trick" is to realize that we only care about *detecting* overlaps between critical operations on a shared object. And that detection needn't be 100% reliable. A 90% hit rate is probably just fine. If two critical operations ever *do* overlap, there may be times when we fail to detect it. But if your game is being run multiple times a day, every day, by a team of 100 or more developers,

plus a QA department consisting of at least another 10 or 20 people, you can be pretty sure *someone* will detect the problem if one exists.

So, instead of an *atomic* Boolean, we'll just use a *volatile* Boolean. As we've stated, the *volatile* keyword doesn't do much to prevent concurrent race bugs. But it does guarantee that reads and writes of the Boolean won't be optimized away, and that's really all we need. We'll get a reasonably good detection rate, and the test is dirt cheap.

```
class UnnecessaryLock
{
    volatile bool      m_locked;

    public:
        void Acquire()
        {
            // assert no one already has the lock
            assert(!m_locked);

            // now lock (so we can detect overlapping
            // critical operations if they happen)
            m_locked = true;
        }
        void Release()
        {
            // assert correct usage (that Release()
            // is only called after Acquire())
            assert(m_locked);

            // unlock
            m_locked = false;
        }
};

#if ASSERTIONS_ENABLED
#define BEGIN_ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(L)  (L).Acquire()
#define END_ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(L)    (L).Release()
#else
#define BEGIN_ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(L)
#define END_ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(L)
#endif

// Example usage...

UnnecessaryLock g_lock;
```

```

void EveryCriticalOperation()
{
    BEGIN_ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(g_lock);

    printf("perform critical op...\n");

    END_ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(g_lock);
}

```

We could also wrap the locks in a janitor (see Section 3.1.1.6), like this:

```

class UnnecessaryLockJanitor
{
    UnnecessaryLock* m_pLock;
public:
    explicit
    UnnecessaryLockJanitor(UnnecessaryLock& lock)
        : m_pLock(&lock) { m_pLock->Acquire(); }
    ~UnnecessaryLockJanitor() { m_pLock->Release(); }
};

#if ASSERTIONS_ENABLED
#define ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(J,L) \
    UnnecessaryLockJanitor J(L)
#else
#define ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(J,L)
#endif

// Example usage...

UnnecessaryLock g_lock;

void EveryCriticalOperation()
{
    ASSERT_LOCK_NOT_NECESSARY(janitor, g_lock);

    printf("perform critical op...\n");
}

```

We implemented this at Naughty Dog and it successfully caught a number of cases of critical operations overlapping when the programmers had assumed they never could do so. So this little gem is tried and true.

#### 4.9.8 Lock-Free Transactions

This is supposed to be a section on lock-free programming, but thus far we've spent all of our time on writing spin locks! Perhaps counterintuitively, the

act of writing a spin lock is an example of lock-free programming, from the perspective of the implementation of the spin lock itself. We've also learned a lot about atomic instructions, compiler barriers and memory fences along the way. So this has been a useful exercise. However, we haven't really explored the principles of lock-free programming per se; for that purpose it will be instructive to look at an example other than a spin lock. The topic of lock-free and non-blocking algorithms is huge. It really deserves its own book, so we won't attempt to cover the topic in depth here. But we can at least get a feel for how lock-free approaches usually work.

The goal of lock-free programming is of course to avoid taking locks that will either put a thread to sleep, or cause it to get caught up in a busy-wait loop inside a spin lock. To perform a critical operation in a lock-free manner, we need to think of each such operation as a *transaction* that can either succeed in its entirety, or fail in its entirety. If it fails, the transaction is simply retried until it does succeed.

To implement any transaction, no matter how complex, we perform the majority of the work *locally* (i.e., using data that's visible only to the current thread, rather than operating directly on the shared data). When all of our ducks are in a row and the transaction is ready to *commit*, we execute a *single atomic instruction*, such as CAS or LL/SC. If this atomic instruction succeeds, we have successfully "published" our transaction globally—it becomes a permanent part of the shared data structure on which we're operating. But if the atomic instruction fails, that means some *other* thread was attempting to commit a transaction at the same time we were.

This fail-and-retry approach works because whenever one thread fails to commit its transaction, we know that it was because some *other* thread managed to *succeed*. As a result, one thread in the system is always making forward progress (just maybe not us). And that is the definition of *lock-free*.

#### 4.9.9 A Lock-Free Linked List

As a concrete example, let's look at a simple lock-free singly-linked list. The only operation we'll support in this discussion is `push_front()`.

To prepare the transaction, we allocate the new `Node` and populate it with data. We also set its next pointer to point to whichever node is currently at the head of the linked list. The transaction is now ready to commit atomically.

The commit itself consists of a call to `compare_exchange_weak()` on the head pointer, which we declared as an atomic pointer to a `Node`. If this call succeeds, we've inserted our new node at the head of the linked list and we're done. But if it fails, we need to retry. This involves re-initializing our

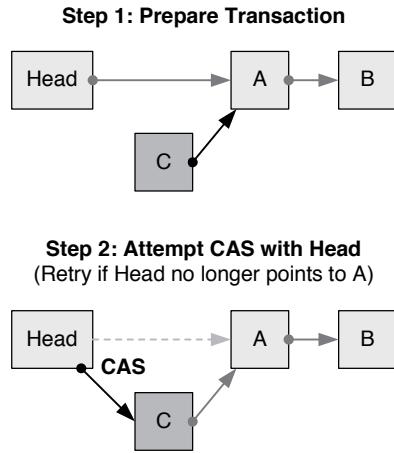


Figure 4.37. A lock-free implementation of insertion at the head of a singly-linked list. Top: The transaction is prepared by setting the next pointer of the new node to point to the current head of the list. Bottom: The transaction is committed by using an atomic CAS operation to swap the head pointer with a pointer to the new node. If the CAS fails, we return to the top and try again until it succeeds.

new node's next pointer to point to what is now potentially a *brand new* head node (presumably inserted by another thread—this is perhaps why we failed in the first place). This two-stage process is illustrated in Figure 4.37.

In the code below, you won't see an explicit re-initialization of the node's next pointer. That's because `compare_exchange_weak()` does the re-initialization step for us. (How convenient!) Here's what the code would look like:

```
template< class T >
class SList
{
    struct Node
    {
        T      m_data;
        Node* m_pNext;
    };
    std::atomic< Node* > m_head { nullptr };

public:
    void push_front(T data)
    {
        // prep the transaction locally
        auto pNode = new Node();
        pNode->m_data = data;
        pNode->m_pNext = m_head.load();
        if (!m_head.compare_exchange_weak(pNode, pNode))
            push_front(data);
    }
};
```

```
 pNode->m_pNext = m_head;

// commit the transaction atomically
// (retrying until it succeeds)
while (!m_head.compare_exchange_weak(
    pNode->m_pNext, pNode))
{
}

};
```

#### 4.9.10 Further Reading on Lock-Free Programming

Concurrency is a vast and profound topic, and in this chapter we've only just scratched the surface. As always, the goal of this book is merely to build awareness and serve as a jumping-off point for further learning.

- For a complete discussion of implementing a lock-free singly-linked list, check out Herb Sutter's talk at CppCon 2014, which is where the example above came from. The talk is available on YouTube in two parts:
  - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c1gO9aB9nbs>, and
  - <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CmxkPChOcvw>.
- This lecture by Geoff Langdale of CMU provides a great overview: [https://www.cs.cmu.edu/~410-s05/lectures/L31\\_LockFree.pdf](https://www.cs.cmu.edu/~410-s05/lectures/L31_LockFree.pdf).
- Also be sure to check out this presentation by Samy Al Bahra for a clear and easily digestible overview of pretty much every topic under the sun related to concurrent programming: [http://concurrencykit.org/presentations/lockfree\\_introduction/#/](http://concurrencykit.org/presentations/lockfree_introduction/#/).
- Mike Acton's excellent talk on concurrent thinking is a must-read; it is available at [http://cellperformance.beyond3d.com/articles/public/concurrency\\_rabbit\\_hole.pdf](http://cellperformance.beyond3d.com/articles/public/concurrency_rabbit_hole.pdf).
- These two online books are great resources for concurrent programming: <http://greenteapress.com/seaphores/LittleBookOfSemaphores.pdf> and <https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/people/paulmck/perfbook/perfbook.2011.01.02a.pdf>.
- Some excellent articles on lock-free programming and how atomics, barriers and fences work can be found on Jeff Preshing's blog: <http://preshing.com/20120612/an-introduction-to-lock-free-programming>.

- This page has great information about memory barriers on Linux: <https://www.mjmwired.net/kernel/Documentation/memory-barriers.txt#305>

## 4.10 SIMD/Vector Processing

In Section 4.1.4, we introduced a form of parallelism known as *single instruction multiple data* (SIMD). This refers to the ability of most modern microprocessors to perform a mathematical operation on multiple data items *in parallel*, using a single machine instruction. In this section, we'll explore SIMD techniques in some detail, and conclude the chapter with a brief discussion of how SIMD and multithreading are combined into a form of parallelism known *single instruction multiple thread* (SIMT), which forms the basis of all modern GPUs.

Intel first introduced its MMX<sup>11</sup> instruction set with their Pentium line of CPUs in 1994. These instructions permitted SIMD calculations to be performed on eight 8-bit integers, four 16-bit integers, or two 32-bit integers packed into special 64-bit MMX registers. Intel followed this up with various revisions of an extended instruction set called *streaming SIMD extensions*, or SSE, the first version of which appeared in the Pentium III processor.

The SSE instruction set utilizes 128-bit registers that can contain integer or IEEE floating-point data. The SSE mode most commonly used by game engines is called *packed 32-bit floating-point mode*. In this mode, four 32-bit float values are packed into a single 128-bit register. An operation such as addition or multiplication can thus be performed on four pairs of floats in parallel by taking two of these 128-bit registers as its inputs. Intel has since introduced various upgrades to the SSE instruction set, named SSE2, SSE3, SSSE3 and SSE4. In 2007, AMD introduced its own variants named XOP, FMA4 and CVT16.

In 2011, Intel introduced a new, wider SIMD register file and accompanying instruction set named *advanced vector extensions* (AVX). AVX registers are 256 bits wide, permitting a single instruction to operate on pairs of up to eight 32-bit floating-point operands in parallel. The AVX2 instruction set is an extension to AVX. Some Intel CPUs now support AVX-512, an extension to AVX permitting 16 32-bit floats to be packed into a 512-bit register.

---

<sup>11</sup>Officially, MMX is a meaningless initialism trademarked by Intel. Unofficially, developers consider it to stand for “multimedia extensions” or “matrix math extensions.”

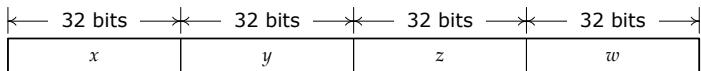


Figure 4.38. The four components of an SSE register in 32-bit floating-point mode.

#### 4.10.1 The SSE Instruction Set and Its Registers

The SSE instruction set includes a wide variety of operations, with many variants for operating on differently-sized data elements within SSE registers. For the purposes of the present discussion, however, we'll stick to the relatively small subset of instructions that deal with packed 32-bit floating-point data. These instructions are denoted with a `ps` suffix, indicating that we're dealing with *packed* data (`p`), and that each element is a *single*-precision `float` (`s`). However most of the upcoming discussions extend intuitively into AVX's 256- and 512-bit modes; see <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/introduction-to-intel-advanced-vector-extensions> for an overview of AVX.

The SSE registers are named `XMMi`, where  $i$  is an integer between 0 and 15 (e.g., `XMM0`, `XMM1`, and so on). In packed 32-bit floating-point mode, each 128-bit `XMMi` register contains four 32-bit floats. In AVX, the registers are 256 bits wide and are named `YMMi`; in AVX-512, they are 512 bits in width and are named `ZMMi`.

In this chapter, we'll often refer to the individual floats within an SSE register as  $[x \ y \ z \ w]$ , just as they would be when doing vector/matrix math in homogeneous coordinates on paper (see Figure 4.38). It doesn't usually matter what you call the elements of an SSE register, as long as you're consistent about how you *interpret* each element. The most general approach is to think of an SSE vector `r` as containing the elements  $[r_0 \ r_1 \ r_2 \ r_3]$ . Most SSE documentation uses this convention, although some documentation uses a  $[w \ x \ y \ z]$  convention, so be careful out there!

#### 4.10.1.1 The `__m128` Data Type

In order for SSE instructions to perform arithmetic on packed floating-point data, that data must reside in one of the `XMMi` registers. For long-term storage, packed floating-point data can of course reside in memory, but it must be transferred from RAM into an SSE register prior to being used for any calculations, and the results subsequently transferred back to RAM.

To make working with SSE and AVX data easier, C and C++ compilers provide special data types that represent packed arrays of `floats`. The `__m128` type encapsulates a packed array of four `floats` for use with the SSE intrinsics. (The `__m256` and `__m512` types likewise represent packed arrays of eight

and 16 `floats`, respectively, for use with AVX intrinsics.)

The `_m128` data type and its kin can be used to declare global variables, automatic variables, function arguments and return types, and even class and structure members. Declaring automatic variables and function arguments to be of type `_m128` often results in the compiler treating those values as direct proxies for SSE registers. But using the `_m128` type to declare global variables, structure/class members, and sometimes local variables results in the data being stored as a 16-byte aligned array of `float` in memory. Using a memory-based `_m128` variable in an SSE calculation will cause the compiler to implicitly emit instructions for loading the data from memory into an SSE register prior to performing the calculation on it, and likewise to emit instructions for storing the results of the calculation back into the memory that “backs” each such variable. As such, it’s a good idea to check the disassembly to make sure that you’re not doing unnecessary loads and stores of SSE registers when using the `_m128` type (and its AVX relatives).

#### 4.10.1.2 Alignment of SSE Data

Whenever data that is intended for use in an  $XMM_i$  register is stored in memory, it must be 16-byte (128-bit) aligned. (Likewise, data intended for use with AVX’s 256-bit  $YMM_i$  registers must be 32-byte (256-bit) aligned, and data for use with the 512-bit  $ZMM_i$  registers must be 64-byte (512-bit) aligned.)

The compiler ensures that global and local variables of type `_m128` are aligned automatically. It also pads `struct` and `class` members so that any `_m128` members are aligned properly *relative to* the start of the object, and ensures that the alignment of the entire struct or class is equal to the worst-case alignment of its members. This means that declaring a global or local variable instance of a struct or class that includes at least one `_m128` member will be 16-byte aligned by the compiler automatically.

However, all *dynamically allocated* instances of such a struct or class need to be aligned manually. Likewise, any array of `float` that you intend to use with SSE instructions must be properly aligned; you can ensure this via the C++11 `alignas` specifier. See Section 6.2.1.3 for more information on aligned memory allocations.

#### 4.10.1.3 SSE Compiler Intrinsics

We could work directly with the SSE and AVX assembly language instructions, perhaps using our compiler’s inline assembly syntax. However, writing code like this is not only non-portable, it’s also a big pain in the butt! To make life easier, modern compilers provide *intrinsics*—special syntax that looks and

behaves like a regular C function, but is actually boiled down to inline assembly code by the compiler. Many intrinsics translate into a single assembly language instruction, although some are *macros* that translate into a sequence of instructions.

In order to use SSE and AVX intrinsics, your .cpp file must `#include <xmmmintrin.h>` in Visual Studio, or `<x86intrin.h>` when compiling with Clang or gcc.

#### 4.10.1.4 Some Useful SSE Intrinsics

There are a lot of SSE intrinsics, but for the purposes of our discussion here we can start with only five of them:

- `__m128 _mm_set_ps(float w, float z, float y, float x);`  
This intrinsic initializes an `__m128` variable with the four floating-point values provided.
- `__m128 _mm_load_ps(const float* pData);`  
This intrinsic loads four floats from a C-style array into an `__m128` variable. The input array must be 16-byte aligned.
- `void _mm_store_ps(float* pData, __m128 v);`  
This intrinsic stores the contents of an `__m128` variable into a C-style array of four `floats`, which must be 16-byte aligned.
- `__m128 _mm_add_ps(__m128 a, __m128 b);`  
This intrinsic adds the four pairs of `floats` contained in the variables `a` and `b` in parallel and returns the result.
- `__m128 _mm_mul_ps(__m128 a, __m128 b);`  
This intrinsic multiplies the four pairs of `floats` contained in the variables `a` and `b` in parallel and returns the result.

You may have noticed that the arguments `x`, `y`, `z` and `w` are passed to the `_mm_set_ps()` function in reverse order. This strange convention probably arises from the fact that Intel CPUs are *little-endian*. Just as a single floating-point value with the bit pattern 0x12345678 would be stored in memory as the bytes 0x78, 0x56, 0x34, 0x12 in order of increasing addresses, so too are the contents of an SSE register stored in memory in an order that's opposite to the order those components actually appear within the register. In other words, not only are the four bytes comprising each float in an SSE register stored in little-endian order, but so too are the four floats themselves. All of this is just a question of naming convention: There's really no "most-significant"

or “least-significant” float within an SSE register. So we can either treat the in-memory order as the “correct” order and consider `_mm_set_ps()` to be “backwards,” or we can treat the arguments of `_mm_set_ps()` as being in the “correct” order and think of all in-memory vectors as being “backwards.” We’ll stick with the former convention, since it means that we’ll be able to read off our vectors more naturally: A homogeneous vector  $v$  consisting of members  $(v_x, v_y, v_z, v_w)$  would be stored in a C/C++ array as `float v[] = { vx, vy, vz, vw }`, but would be passed to `_mm_set_ps()` as  $w, z, y, x$ .

Here’s a small code snippet that loads two four-element floating-point vectors, adds them, and prints the results.

```
#include <xmmmintrin.h>

void TestAddSSE()
{
    alignas(16) float A[4];
    alignas(16) float B[4] = { 2.0f, 4.0f, 6.0f, 8.0f };

    // set a = (1, 2, 3, 4) from literal values, and
    // load b = (2, 4, 6, 8) from a floating-point array
    // just to illustrate the two ways of doing this
    // (remember that _mm_set_ps() is backwards!)
    __m128 a = _mm_set_ps(4.0f, 3.0f, 2.0f, 1.0f);
    __m128 b = _mm_load_ps(&B[0]);

    // add the vectors
    __m128 r = _mm_add_ps(a, b);

    // store '__m128 a' into a float array for printing
    _mm_store_ps(&A[0], a);

    // store result into a float array for printing
    alignas(16) float R[4];
    _mm_store_ps(&R[0], r);

    // inspect results
    printf("a = %.1f %.1f %.1f %.1f\n",
          A[0], A[1], A[2], A[3]);
    printf("b = %.1f %.1f %.1f %.1f\n",
          B[0], B[1], B[2], B[3]);
    printf("r = %.1f %.1f %.1f %.1f\n",
          R[0], R[1], R[2], R[3]);
}
```

#### 4.10.1.5 AltiVec vector Types

As a quick aside, the GNU C/C++ compiler *gcc* (used to compile code for the PS3, for example) provides support for the PowerPC's *AltiVec* instruction set, which provides support for SIMD operations, much as SSE does on Intel processors. 128-bit vector types can be declared like regular C/C++ types, but they are preceded by the keyword `vector`. For example, a SIMD variable containing four `floats` would be declared `vector float`. *gcc* also provides a means of writing *literal* SIMD values into your source code. For example, you can initialize a `vector float` with a value like this:

```
vector float v = (vector float)(-1.0f, 2.0f, 0.5f, 1.0f);
```

The corresponding Visual Studio code is a tad more clunky:

```
// use compiler intrinsic to load "literal" value
// (remember _mm_set_ps() is backwards!)
__m128 v = _mm_set_ps(1.0f, 0.5f, 2.0f, -1.0f);
```

We won't cover AltiVec explicitly in this chapter, but once you understand SSE it'll be very easy to learn.

#### 4.10.2 Using SSE to Vectorize a Loop

SIMD offers the potential to speed up certain kinds of calculations by a factor of four, because a single machine language instruction can perform an arithmetic operation on four floating-point values in parallel. Let's see how this can be done using SSE intrinsics.

First, consider a simple loop that adds two arrays of `floats` pairwise, storing each result into an output array:

```
void AddArrays_ref(int count,
                  float* results,
                  const float* dataA,
                  const float* dataB,
{
    for (int i = 0; i < count; ++i)
    {
        results[i] = dataA[i] + dataB[i];
    }
}
```

We can speed up this loop significantly using SSE intrinsics, like this:

```

void AddArrays_sse(int count,
                   float* results,
                   const float* dataA,
                   const float* dataB)
{
    // NOTE: the caller needs to ensure that the size of
    // all 3 arrays are equal, and a multiple of four!
    assert(count % 4 == 0);

    for (int i = 0; i < count; i += 4)
    {
        __m128 a = _mm_load_ps(&dataA[i]);
        __m128 b = _mm_load_ps(&dataB[i]);
        __m128 r = _mm_add_ps(a, b);
        _mm_store_ps(&results[i], r);
    }
}

```

In this version, we loop over the values four at a time. We load blocks of four floats into SSE registers, add them in parallel, and store the results into a corresponding block of four floats within the result array. This is called *vectorizing* our loop. (In this example, we're assuming that the sizes of the three arrays are equal, and that the size is a multiple of four. The caller is responsible for *padding* the arrays with one, two or three dummy values each, as necessary, in order to meet this requirement.)

Vectorization can lead to a significant speed improvement. This particular example isn't quite four times faster, due to the overhead of having to load the values in groups of four and store the results on each iteration; but when I measured these functions running on very large arrays of floats, the non-vectorized loop took roughly 3.8 times as long to do its work as the vectorized loop.

#### 4.10.3 Vectorized Dot Products

Let's apply vectorization to a somewhat more interesting task: Calculating dot products. Given two arrays of four-element vectors, the goal is to calculate their dot products pairwise, and store the results into an output array of floats.

Here's a reference implementation without using SSE. In this implementation, each contiguous block of four floats within the `a []` and `b []` input arrays is interpreted as one homogeneous four-element vector.

```

void DotArrays_ref(int count,
                   float r [],
                   const float a [],

```

```

        const float b[])
{
    for (int i = 0; i < count; ++i)
    {
        // treat each block of four floats as a
        // single four-element vector
        const int j = i * 4;

        r[i] = a[j+0]*b[j+0] // ax*bx
            + a[j+1]*b[j+1] // ay*by
            + a[j+2]*b[j+2] // az*bz
            + a[j+3]*b[j+3]; // aw*bw
    }
}

```

#### 4.10.3.1 A First Attempt (That's Slow)

Here's a first attempt at using SSE intrinsics for this task:

```

void DotArrays_sse_horizontal(int count,
                             float r[],
                             const float a[],
                             const float b[])
{
    for (int i = 0; i < count; ++i)
    {
        // treat each block of four floats as a
        // single four-element vector
        const int j = i * 4;

        __m128 va = _mm_load_ps(&a[j]); // ax,ay,az,aw
        __m128 vb = _mm_load_ps(&b[j]); // bx,by,bz,bw

        __m128 v0 = _mm_mul_ps(va, vb);

        // add across the register...
        __m128 v1 = _mm_hadd_ps(v0, v0);
        // (v0w+v0z, v0y+v0x, v0w+v0z, v0y+v0x)
        __m128 vr = _mm_hadd_ps(v1, v1);
        // (v0w+v0z+v0y+v0x, v0w+v0z+v0y+v0x,
        // v0w+v0z+v0y+v0x, v0w+v0z+v0y+v0x)

        _mm_store_ss(&r[i], vr); // extract vr.x as a float
    }
}

```

This implementation required a new instruction: `_mm_hadd_ps()` (*horizontal*

*add*). This intrinsic operates on a single input register  $(x, y, z, w)$  and calculates two sums:  $s = x + y$  and  $t = z + w$ . It stores these two sums into the four slots of the destination register as  $(t, s, t, s)$ . Performing this operation twice allows us to calculate the sum  $d = x + y + z + w$ . This is called *adding across a register*.

Adding across a register is not usually a good idea because it's a very *slow* operation. Profiling the `DotArrays_sse()` implementation shows that it actually takes a little bit *more* time than the reference implementation. Using SSE here has actually slowed us down!<sup>12</sup>

#### 4.10.3.2 A Better Approach

The key to realizing the power of SIMD parallelism for dot products is to figure out a way to avoid having to add across a register. This can be done, but we'll have to *transpose* our input vectors first. By storing them in transposed order, we can calculate our dot product in just the same way that we calculated it when using floats: We multiply the  $x$  components, then add that result to the product of the  $y$  components, then add that result to the product of the  $z$  components, and finally add that result to the product of the  $w$  components. Here's what the code looks like:

```
void DotArrays_sse(int count,
                   float r[],
                   const float a[],
                   const float b[])
{
    for (int i = 0; i < count; i += 4)
    {
        __m128 vaX = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+0)*4]); // a[0,4,8,12]
        __m128 vaY = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+1)*4]); // a[1,5,9,13]
        __m128 vaZ = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+2)*4]); // a[2,6,10,14]
        __m128 vaW = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+3)*4]); // a[3,7,11,15]

        __m128 vbX = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+0)*4]); // b[0,4,8,12]
        __m128 vbY = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+1)*4]); // b[1,5,9,13]
        __m128 vbZ = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+2)*4]); // b[2,6,10,14]
        __m128 vbW = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+3)*4]); // b[3,7,11,15]

        __m128 result;
        result = _mm_mul_ps(vaX, vbX);
        result = _mm_add_ps(result, _mm_mul_ps(vaY, vbY));
        result = _mm_add_ps(result, _mm_mul_ps(vaZ, vbZ));
    }
}
```

<sup>12</sup>With SSE4, Intel introduced the intrinsic `_mm_dp_ps()` (and the corresponding `dpps` instruction) which calculates a dot product with somewhat lower latency than the version involving two invocations of `_mm_hadd_ps()`. But all horizontal adds are very expensive, and should be avoided wherever possible.

```

        result = _mm_add_ps(result, _mm_mul_ps(vaW, vbW));

        _mm_store_ps(&r[i], result);
    }
}

```

### The MADD Instruction

It's interesting to note that a multiply followed by an add is such a common operation that it has its own name—*madd*. Some CPUs provide a single SIMD instruction for performing a *madd* operation. For example, the PowerPC AltiVec intrinsic `vec_madd()` performs this operation. So in AltiVec, the guts of our `DotArrays()` function could be made just a little bit simpler:

```

vector float result = vec_mul(vaX, vbX);
result = vec_madd(vaY, vbY, result));
result = vec_madd(vaZ, vbZ, result));
result = vec_madd(vaW, vbW, result));

```

#### 4.10.3.3 Transpose as We Go

The above implementation *assumes* that the input data has already been transposed by the caller. In other words, the `a []` array is assumed to contain the components  $\{a_0, a_4, a_8, a_{12}, a_1, a_5, a_9, a_{13}, \dots\}$  and likewise for the `b []` array. If we want to operate on input data that's in the same format as it was for the reference implementation, we'll have to do the transposition within our function. Here's how:

```

void DotArrays_sse_transpose(int count,
                           float r[],
                           const float a[],
                           const float b[])
{
    for (int i = 0; i < count; i += 4)
    {
        __m128 vaX = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+0)*4]); // a[0,1,2,3]
        __m128 vaY = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+1)*4]); // a[4,5,6,7]
        __m128 vaZ = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+2)*4]); // a[8,9,10,11]
        __m128 vaW = _mm_load_ps(&a[(i+3)*4]); // a[12,13,14,15]

        __m128 vbX = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+0)*4]); // b[0,1,2,3]
        __m128 vbY = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+1)*4]); // b[4,5,6,7]
        __m128 vbZ = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+2)*4]); // b[8,9,10,11]
        __m128 vbW = _mm_load_ps(&b[(i+3)*4]); // b[12,13,14,15]
    }
}

```

```

_MM_TRANSPOSE4_PS(vaX, vaY, vaZ, vaW);
// vaX = a[0,4,8,12]
// vaY = a[1,5,9,13]
// ...
_MM_TRANSPOSE4_PS(vbX, vbY, vbZ, vbW);
// vbX = b[0,4,8,12]
// vbY = b[1,5,9,13]
// ...

__m128 result;
result = _mm_mul_ps(vaX, vbX);
result = _mm_add_ps(result, _mm_mul_ps(vaY, vbY));
result = _mm_add_ps(result, _mm_mul_ps(vaZ, vbZ));
result = _mm_add_ps(result, _mm_mul_ps(vaW, vbW));

_mm_store_ps(&r[i], result);
}
}

```

Those two calls to `_MM_TRANSPOSE()` are actually invocations of a somewhat complex macro that uses *shuffle* instructions to move the components of the four input registers around. Thankfully shuffling isn't a particularly expensive operation, so transposing our vectors as we calculate the dot products doesn't introduce too much overhead. Profiling all three implementations of `DotArrays()` shows that our final version (the one that transposes the vectors as it goes) is roughly 3.5 times faster than the reference implementation.

#### 4.10.3.4 Shuffle and Transpose

For the curious reader, here's what the `_MM_TRANSPOSE()` macro looks like:

```

#define _MM_TRANSPOSE4_PS(row0, row1, row2, row3) \
{ __m128 tmp3, tmp2, tmp1, tmp0; \
  \
  tmp0 = _mm_shuffle_ps((row0), (row1), 0x44); \
  tmp2 = _mm_shuffle_ps((row0), (row1), 0xEE); \
  tmp1 = _mm_shuffle_ps((row2), (row3), 0x44); \
  tmp3 = _mm_shuffle_ps((row2), (row3), 0xEE); \
  \
  (row0) = _mm_shuffle_ps(tmp0, tmp1, 0x88); \
  (row1) = _mm_shuffle_ps(tmp0, tmp1, 0xDD); \
  (row2) = _mm_shuffle_ps(tmp2, tmp3, 0x88); \
  (row3) = _mm_shuffle_ps(tmp2, tmp3, 0xDD); \
}

```

Those crazy hexadecimal numbers are bit-packed four-element fields called

*shuffle masks*. They tell the `_mm_shuffle()` intrinsic how exactly to shuffle the components. These bit-packed fields are a common source of confusion, possibly because of the naming conventions used in most documentation. But it's actually pretty simple: A shuffle mask is constructed out of four integers, each of which represents one of the components of an SSE register (and hence can have a value between 0 and 3).

```
#define SHUFMASK(p,q,r,s) \
    (p | (q<<2) | (r<<4) | (s<<6))
```

Passing two SSE registers `a` and `b` along with a shuffle mask to the `_mm_shuffle_ps()` intrinsic results in the specified components of `a` and `b` appearing in the output register `r` as follows:

```
__m128 a = ...;
__m128 b = ...;
__m128 r = _mm_shuffle_ps(a, b,
                           SHUFMASK(p,q,r,s));
// r == ( a[p], a[q], b[r], b[s] )
```

#### 4.10.4 Vector-Matrix Multiplication with SSE

Now that we understand how to perform a dot product, we can multiply a four-element vector with a  $4 \times 4$  matrix. To do it, we simply need to perform four dot products between the input vector and each of the four rows of the input matrix.

We'll start by defining a `Mat44` class that encapsulates four SSE vectors, representing its four rows. We'll use a union so that we can easily access the individual members of the matrix as floats. (This works because instances of our `Mat44` class will always reside in memory, never directly in SSE registers.)

```
union Mat44
{
    float c[4][4]; // components
    __m128 row[4]; // rows
};
```

The function to multiply a vector and a matrix looks like this:

```
__m128 MulVecMat_sse(const __m128& v, const Mat44& M)
{
    // first transpose v
    __m128 vX = _mm_shuffle_ps(v, v, 0x00); // (vx,vx,vx,vx)
```

```

__m128 vY = _mm_shuffle_ps(v, v, 0x55); // (vy,vy,vy,vy)
__m128 vZ = _mm_shuffle_ps(v, v, 0xAA); // (vz,vz,vz,vz)
__m128 vW = _mm_shuffle_ps(v, v, 0xFF); // (vw,vw,vw,vw)

__m128 r = _mm_mul_ps(vX, M.row[0]);
r = _mm_add_ps(r, _mm_mul_ps(vY, M.row[1]));
r = _mm_add_ps(r, _mm_mul_ps(vZ, M.row[2]));
r = _mm_add_ps(r, _mm_mul_ps(vW, M.row[3]));
return r;
}

```

The shuffles are used to replicate *one* component of **v** (either  $v_x$ ,  $v_y$ ,  $v_z$  or  $v_w$ ) across *all four* lanes of an SSE register. This has the effect of transposing **v** prior to performing the dot product with the rows of **M**, which are already transposed. (Remember that vector-matrix multiplication normally involves taking dot products between an input vector and the *columns* of the matrix. Here, we're transposing **v** into four SSE registers, and then doing our math, component-wise, with the *rows* of the matrix.)

#### 4.10.5 Matrix-Matrix Multiplication with SSE

Multiplying two  $4 \times 4$  matrices with SSE intrinsics is trivial once we have a function to multiply a vector and a matrix. Here's what the code looks like:

```

void MulMatMat_sse(Mat44& R, const Mat44& A, const Mat44& B)
{
    R.row[0] = MulVecMat_sse(A.row[0], B);
    R.row[1] = MulVecMat_sse(A.row[1], B);
    R.row[2] = MulVecMat_sse(A.row[2], B);
    R.row[3] = MulVecMat_sse(A.row[3], B);
}

```

#### 4.10.6 Generalized Vectorizaton

Because an SSE register contains four floating-point values, it's tempting to think of it as a natural "fit" for the components of a four-element homogeneous vector **v**, and to think that the best use of SSE is for doing 3D vector math. However, this is a very limiting way of thinking about SIMD parallelism.

Most "batched" operations, in which a single computation is performed repeatedly on a large dataset, can be vectorized using SIMD parallelism. If you think about it, the components of a SIMD register really function like parallel "lanes" in which arbitrary processing can be performed. Working with `float`

variables gives us a single lane, but working with 128-bit (four-element) SIMD variables allows us to do that same calculation in parallel across four lanes—in other words, we can perform our calculations four at a time. Working with 256-bit AVX registers gives us eight lanes, allowing us to perform our calculations eight at a time. And AVX-512 gives us 16 lanes, letting us do 16 calculations at a time.

The easiest way to write *vectorized* code is to start out by writing it as a single-lane algorithm (just using `floats`). Once it works, we can convert it to operate  $N$  elements at a time, using SIMD registers that have an  $N$ -lane capacity. We've already seen this process in action: In Section 4.10.3, we first wrote a loop that performed a large batch of dot products one at a time, and then we converted to use SSE so that we could perform those dot products four at a time.

One nice side-effect of vectorizing your code in this way is that you can reap the benefits of wider SIMD hardware with little adjustment to your code. On a machine with only SSE support, you perform four operations per iteration of your loop; on a machine that supports AVX, you simply change it to do eight operations per iteration; and on an AVX-512 system, you can do 16 operations per iteration.

Interestingly, most optimizing compilers can *vectorize* some kinds of single-lane loops automatically. In fact, when writing the above examples, it took some doing to force the compiler *not* to vectorize my single-lane code, so that I could compare its performance to my SIMD implementation! Once again, it's always a good idea to look at the disassembly when writing optimized code—you may discover the compiler is doing more (or less) than you thought!

#### 4.10.7 Vector Predication

Let's take a look at another (totally contrived) example. This example will reinforce the ideas of generalized vectorization, but it will also serve to illustrate another useful technique: *vector predication*.

Imagine that we needed to take the square roots of a large array of `floats`. We'd start out by writing it as a single-lane loop, like this:

```
#include <cmath>

void SqrtArray_ref(float* __restrict__ r,
                     const float* __restrict__ a,
                     int count)
{
    for (unsigned i = 0; i < count; ++i)
    {
```

```

        if (a[i] >= 0.0f)
            r[i] = std::sqrt(a[i]);
        else
            r[i] = 0.0f;
    }
}

```

Next, let's convert this loop into SSE, performing four square roots at a time:

```

#include <xmmmintrin.h>

void SqrtArray_sse_broken(float* __restrict__ r,
                           const float* __restrict__ a,
                           int count)
{
    assert(count % 4 == 0);
    __m128 vz = _mm_set1_ps(0.0f); // all zeros

    for (int i = 0; i < count; i += 4)
    {
        __m128 va = _mm_load_ps(a + i);

        __m128 vr;
        if (_mm_cmpge_ps(va, vz)) // ???
            vr = _mm_sqrt_ps(va);
        else
            vr = vz;

        _mm_store_ps(r + i, vr);
    }
}

```

This seems simple enough: We simply stride through the input array four floats at a time, load groups of four floats into an SSE register, and then perform four parallel square roots with `_mm_sqrt_ps()`.

However, there's one small gotcha in this loop. We need to check whether the input values are greater than or equal to zero, because the square root of a negative number is imaginary (and will therefore produce QNaN). The intrinsic `_mm_cmpge_ps()` compares the values of two SSE registers, component-wise, to see if they are greater than or equal to a vector of values supplied by the caller. However, this function doesn't return a `bool`. How can it? We're comparing four values to four other values, so some of them may pass the test while others fail it. That means we can't just do an `if` check against the results of `_mm_cmpge_ps()`.<sup>13</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup>The if check in the single-lane reference implementation also prevents the compiler from automatically vectorizing the loop.

Does this spell doom for our vectorized implementation? Thankfully not. All SSE comparison intrinsics like `_mm_cmpge_ps()` produce a four-component result, stored in an SSE register. But instead of containing four floating-point values, the result consists of four 32-bit masks. Each mask contains all binary 1s (0xFFFFFFFFU) if the corresponding component in the input register passed the test, and all binary 0s (0x0U) if that component failed the test.

We can use the results of an SSE comparison intrinsic by applying it as a bit mask in order to *select* between one of two possible results. In our example, when the input value passes the test (is greater than or equal to zero), we want to select the square root of that input value; when it fails the test (is negative), we want to select a value of zero. This is called *predication*, and because we're applying it to SIMD vectors, it's called *vector predication*.

In Section 4.2.6.2, we saw how to do predication with floating-point values, using bitwise AND, OR and NOT operators. Here's an excerpt from that example:

```
// ...

// select quotient when mask is all ones, or default
// value d when mask is all zeros (NOTE: this won't
// work as written -- you'd need to use a union to
// interpret the floats as unsigned for masking)
const float result = (q & mask) | (d & ~mask);
return result;
}
```

It's no different here, we just need to use SSE versions of these bitwise operators:

```
#include <xmmmintrin.h>

void SqrtArray_sse(float* __restrict__ r,
                     const float* __restrict__ a,
                     int count)
{
    assert(count % 4 == 0);
    __m128 vz = _mm_set1_ps(0.0f);

    for (int i = 0; i < count; i += 4)
    {
        __m128 va = _mm_load_ps(a + i);
        __m128 vq = _mm_sqrt_ps(va);
        __m128 vd = _mm_and_ps(vz, vq);
        __m128 v0 = _mm_and_ps(va, vq);
        __m128 v1 = _mm_and_ps(va, vd);
        __m128 v2 = _mm_and_ps(va, vd);
        __m128 v3 = _mm_and_ps(va, vd);
        _mm_store_ps(r + i, v0);
        r += 4;
    }
}
```

```

// always do the quotient, but it may end
// up producing QNaN in some or all lanes
__m128 vq = _mm_sqrt_ps(va);

// now select between vq and vz, depending
// on whether the input was greater than
// or equal to zero or not
__m128 mask = _mm_cmpge_ps(va, zero);

// (vq & mask) | (vz & ~mask)
__m128 qmask = _mm_and_ps(mask, vq);
__m128 znotmask = _mm_andnot_ps(mask, vz);
__m128 vr = _mm_or_ps(qmask, znotmask);

_mm_store_ps(r + i, vr);
}
}

```

It's convenient and commonplace to encapsulate this *vector predication* operation in a function, which is typically called *vector select*. PowerPC's AltiVec ISA provides an intrinsic called `vec_sel()` for this purpose. It works like this:

```

// pseudocode illustrating how AltiVec's vec_sel() intrinsic
// works
vector float vec_sel(vector float falseVec,
                      vector float trueVec,
                      vector bool mask)
{
    vector float r;
    for (each lane i)
    {
        if (mask[i] == 0)
            r[i] = falseVec[i];
        else
            r[i] = trueVec[i];
    }
    return r;
}

```

SSE2 provided no vector select instruction, but thankfully one was introduced in SSE4—it is emitted by the intrinsic `_mm_blendv_ps()`.

Let's take a look at how we might implement a vector select operation ourselves. We can write it like this:

```

__m128 _mm_select_ps(const __m128 a,
                      const __m128 b,
                      const __m128 mask)
{
    // (b & mask) | (a & ~mask)
    __m128 bmask = _mm_and_ps(mask, b);
    __m128 anotmask = _mm_andnot_ps(mask, a);
    return _mm_or_ps(bmask, anotmask);
}

```

Or if we're feeling brave, we can accomplish the same thing with exclusive OR:

```

__m128 _mm_select_ps(const __m128 a,
                      const __m128 b,
                      const __m128 mask)
{
    // (((a ^ b) & mask) ^ a)
    __m128 diff = _mm_xor_ps(a, b);
    return _mm_xor_ps(a, _mm_and_ps(mask, diff));
}

```

See if you can figure out how this works. Here are two hints: The exclusive OR operator calculates the *bitwise difference* between two values. Two XORs in a row leave the input value unchanged  $((a ^ b) ^ b == a)$ .

## 4.11 Introduction to GPGPU Programming

We said in the preceding section that most optimizing compilers can *vectorize* some code automatically, if the target CPU includes a SIMD vector processing unit, and if the source code meets certain requirements (such as not involving complex branching). Vectorization is also one of the pillars of *general-purpose GPU* programming (GPGPU). In this section, we'll take a brief introductory look at how a GPU differs from a CPU in terms of its hardware architecture, and how the concepts of SIMD parallelism and vectorization enable programmers to write *compute shaders* that are capable of processing large amounts of data in parallel on a GPU.

### 4.11.1 Data-Parallel Computations

A GPU is a specialized coprocessor designed specifically to accelerate those computations that involve a high degree of *data parallelism*. It does so by combining SIMD parallelism (vectorized ALUs) with MIMD parallelism (by employing a form of preemptive multithreading). NVIDIA coined the term *single instruction multiple thread* (SIMT) to describe this SIMD/MIMD hybrid design,

although the design is not unique to NVIDIA GPUs—although the specifics of GPU designs vary from vendor to vendor and from product line to product line in significant ways, all GPUs employ the general principles of SIMT parallelism in their designs.

GPUs are designed specifically to perform *data-parallel* computations on very large datasets. In order for a computational task to be well-suited to execution on a GPU, the computations performed on any one element of the dataset must be *independent* of the results of computations on other elements. In other words, it must be possible to process the elements in any order.

The simple examples of SIMD vectorization that we presented starting in Section 4.10.3 are all examples of data-parallel computations. Recall this function, which processes two potentially very large arrays of input vectors and produces an output array containing the scalar dot products of those vectors:

```
void DotArrays_ref(unsigned count,
                   float r[],
                   const float a[],
                   const float b[])
{
    for (unsigned i = 0; i < count; ++i)
    {
        // treat each block of four floats as a
        // single four-element vector
        const unsigned j = i * 4;

        r[i] = a[j+0]*b[j+0] // ax*bx
              + a[j+1]*b[j+1] // ay*by
              + a[j+2]*b[j+2] // az*bz
              + a[j+3]*b[j+3]; // aw*bw
    }
}
```

The computation performed by each iteration of this loop is independent of the computations performed by the other iterations. That means that we are free to perform the computations in any order we see fit. Moreover, this property is what allows us to apply SSE or AVX intrinsics to vectorize the loop—instead of performing the computations one-at-a-time, we can use SIMD parallelism to perform four, eight or 16 computations simultaneously, thereby reducing the iteration count by a factor of four, eight or 16, respectively.

Now imagine taking SIMD parallelization to an extreme. What if we had a SIMD VPU with 1024 lanes? In that case, we could divide the total number of iterations by 1024—and when the input arrays contain 1024 elements or fewer, we could literally execute the entire loop in a single iteration!

This is, roughly speaking, what a GPU does. However, it doesn't use SIMDs that are *actually* 1024 lanes wide each. A GPU's *SIMD units* are typically eight or 16 lanes wide, but they process workloads in batches of 32 or 64 elements at a time. What's more, a GPU contains *many* such SIMD units. So a large workload can be dispatched across these SIMD units in parallel, resulting in the GPU being capable of processing literally thousands of data elements in parallel.

Data-parallel computations are just what the doctor ordered when applying a pixel shader (also known as a fragment shader) to millions of pixels, or a vertex shader to hundreds of thousands or even millions of 3D mesh vertices, every frame at 30 or 60 FPS. But modern GPUs expose their computational power to programmers, allowing us to write general-purpose *compute shaders*. As long as the computations we wish to perform on a large dataset have the property of being largely independent of one another, they can probably be executed by a GPU more efficiently than they could be on a CPU.

#### 4.11.2 Compute Kernels

In Section 4.10.3, we saw that in order to vectorize a loop like the one in the `DotArrays_ref()` function, we must rewrite the code. The vectorized version of the function makes use of SSE or AVX intrinsics; our *scalar* data types are replaced by *vector* types such as SSE's `__m128` or AltiVec's `vector float`; and the loop is hard-coded to iterate four, eight or 16 elements at a time.

When writing a GPGPU compute shader, we take a different tack. Instead of hard-coding the loop to operate in fixed-size batches, we leave the loop as a "single-lane" computation using scalar data types. Then, we extract the body of the loop into a separate function known as a *kernel*. Here's what the example above would look like as a kernel:

```
void DotKernel(unsigned i,
               float r[],
               const float a[],
               const float b[])
{
    // treat each block of four floats as a
    // single four-element vector
    const unsigned j = i * 4;

    r[i] = a[j+0]*b[j+0] // ax*bx
        + a[j+1]*b[j+1] // ay*by
        + a[j+2]*b[j+2] // az*bz
        + a[j+3]*b[j+3]; // aw*bw
}
```

```
void DotArrays_gpgpu1(unsigned count,
                      float r[],
                      const float a[],
                      const float b[])
{
    for (unsigned i = 0; i < count; ++i)
    {
        DotKernel(i, r, a, b);
    }
}
```

The `DotKernel()` function is now in a form that's suitable for conversion into a *compute shader*. It processes just one element of the input data, and produces a single output element. This is analogous to how a pixel/fragment shader receives a single input pixel/fragment color and transforms it into a single output color, or to how a vertex shader receives a single input vertex and produces a single output vertex. The GPU effectively runs the `for` loop for us, calling our kernel function once for each element of our dataset.

GPGPU compute kernels are typically written in a special *shading language* which can be compiled into machine code that's understandable by the GPU. Shading languages are usually very close to C in syntax, so converting a C or C++ loop into a GPU compute kernel isn't usually a particularly difficult undertaking. Some examples of shading languages include DirectX's HLSL (high-level shader language), OpenGL's GLSL, NVIDIA's Cg and CUDA C languages, and OpenCL.

Some shading languages require you to move your kernel code into special source files, separate from your C++ application code. OpenCL and CUDA C, however, are extensions to the C++ language itself. As such, they permit programmers to write compute kernels as regular C/C++ functions, with only minor syntactic adjustments, and to invoke those kernels on the GPU with relatively simple syntax.

As a concrete example, here's our `DotKernel()` function written in CUDA C:

```
__global__ void DotKernel_CUDA(int count,
                                 float* r,
                                 const float* a,
                                 const float* b)
{
    // CUDA provides a magic "thread index" to each
    // invocation of the kernel -- this serves as
    // our loop index i
```

```

size_t i = threadIdx.x;

// make sure the index is valid
if (i < count)
{
    // treat each block of four floats as a
    // single four-element vector
    const unsigned j = i * 4;

    r[i] = a[j+0]*b[j+0] // ax*bx
        + a[j+1]*b[j+1] // ay*by
        + a[j+2]*b[j+2] // az*bz
        + a[j+3]*b[j+3]; // aw*bw
}
}

```

You'll notice that the loop index *i* is taken from a variable called `threadIdx` within the kernel function itself. The thread index is a "magic" input provided by the compiler, in much the same way that the `this` pointer "magically" points to the current instance within a C++ class member function. We'll talk more about the thread index in the next section.

#### 4.11.3 Executing a Kernel

Given that we've written a compute kernel, let's see how to execute it on the GPU. The details differ from shading language to shading language, but the key concepts are roughly equivalent. For example, here's how we'd kick off our compute kernel in CUDA C:

```

void DotArrays_gpgpu2(unsigned count,
                      float r[],
                      const float a[],
                      const float b[])
{
    // allocate "managed" buffers that are visible
    // to both CPU and GPU
    int *cr, *ca, *cb;
    cudaMallocManaged(&cr, count * sizeof(float));
    cudaMallocManaged(&ca, count * sizeof(float) * 4);
    cudaMallocManaged(&cb, count * sizeof(float) * 4);

    // transfer the data into GPU-visible memory
    memcpy(ca, a, count * sizeof(float) * 4);
    memcpy(cb, b, count * sizeof(float) * 4);
}

```

```
// run the kernel on the GPU
DotKernel_CUDA <<<1, count>>> (cr, ca, cb, count);

// wait for GPU to finish
cudaDeviceSynchronize();

// return results and clean up
memcpy(r, cr, count * sizeof(float));
cudaFree(cr);
cudaFree(ca);
cudaFree(cb);
}
```

A bit of set-up code is required to allocate the input and output buffers as “managed” memory that is visible to both CPU and GPU, and to copy the input data into them. The CUDA-specific triple angled brackets notation ( $<<<G, N>>>$ ) then executes the compute kernel on the GPU, by submitting a request to the driver. The call to `cudaDeviceSynchronize()` forces the CPU to wait until the GPU has done its work (in much the same way that `pthread_join()` forces one thread to wait for the completion of another). Finally, we free the GPU-visible data buffers.

Let’s have a closer look at the  $<<<G, N>>>$  angled bracket notation. The second argument  $N$  within the angled brackets allows us to specify the *dimensions* of our input data. This corresponds to the number of *iterations* of our loop that we want the GPU to perform. It can actually be a one-, two- or three-dimensional quantity, allowing us to process one-, two- or three-dimensional input arrays. However, just like in C/C++, a multidimensional array is really just a one-dimensional array that’s indexed in a special way. For example, in C/C++ a two-dimensional array access written like `[row] [column]` is really equivalent to a one-dimensional array access `[row*numColumns + column]`. The same principle applies to multidimensional GPU buffers.

The first argument  $G$  in the angled brackets tells the driver how many *thread groups* (known as *thread blocks* in NVIDIA terminology) to use when running this compute kernel. A compute job with a single thread group is constrained to run on a single *compute unit* on the GPU. A compute unit is essentially a *core* within the GPU—a hardware component that is capable of executing an instruction stream. Passing a larger number for  $G$  allows the driver to divide the workload up across more than one compute unit.

#### 4.II.4 GPU Threads and Thread Groups

The  $G$  argument tells the GPU driver into how many *thread groups* to divide our work. As you might expect, a thread group is comprised of some number

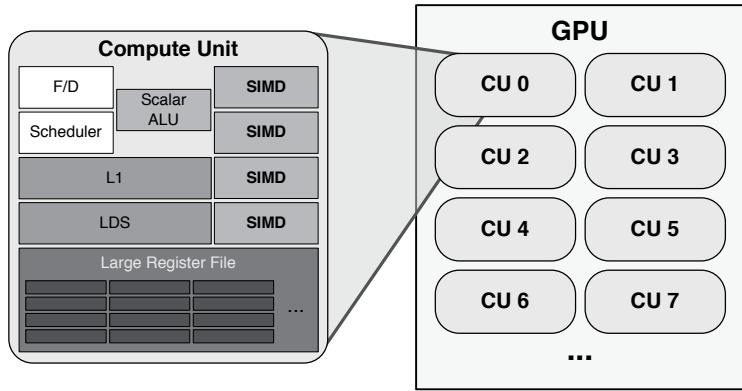


Figure 4.39. A typical GPU is comprised of multiple compute units (CU), each of which acts like a stripped down CPU core. A CU contains an instruction fetch/decode unit, an L1 cache, possibly a block of local data storage RAM (LDS), a scalar ALU, and a number of SIMD units for executing vectorized code.

of *GPU threads*. But what exactly does the term “thread” mean in the context of a GPU?

Every GPU kernel is compiled into an *instruction stream* consisting of a sequence of GPU machine language instructions, in much the same way that a C/C++ function is compiled down into a stream of CPU instructions. So a GPU “thread” is equivalent to a CPU “thread,” in the sense that both kinds of threads represent a stream of machine language instructions that can be executed by one or more cores. However, a GPU executes its threads in a manner that is somewhat different from the way in which a CPU executes its threads. As a result, the term “thread” has a subtly different meaning when applied to GPU compute kernels than it has when applied to running programs on a CPU.

In order to understand this difference in terminology, let’s take a brief glimpse at the architecture of a GPU. We said in Section 4.11.1 that a GPU is comprised of multiple *compute units*, each of which contains some number of *SIMD units*. We can think of a compute unit like a stripped down CPU core: It contains an instruction fetch/decode unit, possibly some memory caches, a regular “scalar” ALU, and usually somewhere in the neighborhood of four SIMD units, which serve much the same function as the vector processing unit (VPU) in a SIMD-enabled CPU. This architecture is illustrated in Figure 4.39.

The SIMD units in a CU have different lane widths on different GPUs, but for the sake of this discussion let’s assume we’re working on an AMD

Radeon™ Graphics Core Next (GCN) architecture, in which the SIMDs are 16 lanes wide. The CU is not capable of speculative or out-of-order execution—it simply reads a stream of instructions and executes them one by one, using the SIMD units to apply each instruction<sup>14</sup> to 16 elements of input data in parallel.

To execute a compute kernel on a CU, the driver first subdivides the input data buffers into blocks consisting of 64 elements each. For each of these 64-element blocks of data, the compute kernel is invoked on one CU. Such an invocation is called a *wavefront* (also known as a *warp* in NVIDIA speak). When executing a wavefront, the CU fetches and decodes the instructions of the kernel one by one. Each instruction is applied to 16 data elements in *lock step* using a SIMD unit. Internally, the SIMD unit consists of a four-*stage* pipeline, so it takes four clock cycles to complete. So rather than allow the stages of this pipeline to sit idle for three clock cycles out of every four, the CU applies the same instruction three more times, to three more blocks of 16 data elements. This is why a wavefront consists of 64 data elements, even though the SIMDs in the CU are only 16 lanes wide.

Because of this somewhat peculiar way in which a CU executes an instruction stream, the term “*GPU thread*” actually refers to a single SIMD *lane*. You can think of a GPU thread, therefore, as a single iteration of the original non-vectorized loop that we started with, before we converted its body into a compute kernel. Alternatively, you can think of a GPU thread as a single invocation of the kernel function, operating on a single input datum and producing a single output datum. The fact that the GPU actually runs multiple GPU threads in parallel (i.e., the fact that it really runs the kernel once per wavefront, but processes 64 data elements at a time) is just an implementation detail. By insulating the programmer from having to think about the details of how the computation is vectorized on any particular GPU, compute kernels (and graphics shaders as well) can be written in a portable manner.

#### 4.II.4.1 From SIMD to SIMT

The term *single instruction multiple thread* (SIMT) was introduced to underscore the fact that a GPU doesn’t just use SIMD parallelism—it also uses a form of preemptive multithreading to time-slice between wavefronts. Let’s take a brief look at why this is done.

A SIMD unit runs a wavefront by applying each instruction in the shader program to 64 data elements at a time, essentially in lock-step. (We can ignore the fact that the wavefront is processed in subgroups of 16 elements each for the purposes of the present discussion.) However, any one instruction in the

<sup>14</sup>The compute units on a GPU do contain a scalar ALU and therefore can perform some instructions in “single lane” fashion, operating on a single input datum at a time.

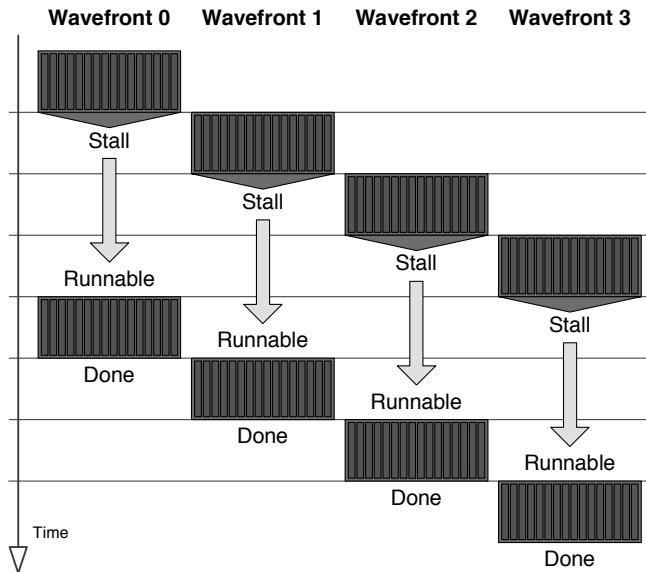


Figure 4.40. Whenever one wavefront stalls, for example due to memory access latency, the SIMD unit context switches to another wavefront to fill the delay slot.

program might end up having to access memory, and that introduces a large stall while the SIMD unit waits for the memory controller to respond.

To fill these large delay slots, a SIMD unit time-slices between multiple wavefronts (taken from a single shader program, or potentially from many unrelated shader programs). Whenever one wavefront stalls, the SIMD unit context switches to another wavefront, thereby keeping the unit busy (as long as there are runnable wavefronts to switch to). This strategy is illustrated in Figure 4.40.

As you might well imagine, the SIMD units in a GPU need to perform context switches at a very high frequency. During a context switch on a CPU, the state of the outgoing thread's registers are saved to memory so they won't be lost, and then the state of the incoming thread's registers are read from memory into the CPU's registers so that it can continue executing where it left off. However, on a GPU it would take too much time to save the state of each wavefront's SIMD registers every time a context switch occurred.

To eliminate the cost of saving registers during context switches, each SIMD unit contains a very large register file. The number of *physical* registers in this register file is many times larger than the number of *logical* registers available to any one wavefront (typically on the order of ten times larger).

This means that the contents of the logical registers for up to ten wavefronts can be maintained at all times in these physical registers. And that in turn implies that context switches can be performed between wavefronts without saving or restoring any registers whatsoever.

#### 4.II.5 Further Reading

Obviously GPGPU programming is a huge topic, and as always we've only just scratched the surface in this book. For more information on GPGPU and graphics shader programming, check out the following online tutorials and resources:

- Introduction to CUDA programming: <https://developer.nvidia.com/how-to-cuda-c-cpp>
- OpenCL learning resources: <https://developer.nvidia.com/opencl>
- HLSL programming guide and reference manual: [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb509561\(v=VS.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb509561(v=VS.85).aspx)
- Introduction to the OpenGL shading language: [https://www.khronos.org/opengl/wiki/OpenGL\\_Shading\\_Language](https://www.khronos.org/opengl/wiki/OpenGL_Shading_Language)
- AMD Radeon™ GCN architecture whitepaper: [https://www.amd.com/Documents/GCN\\_Architecture\\_whitepaper.pdf](https://www.amd.com/Documents/GCN_Architecture_whitepaper.pdf)



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 5

## 3D Math for Games

A game is a mathematical model of a virtual world simulated in real time on a computer of some kind. Therefore, mathematics pervades everything we do in the game industry. Game programmers make use of virtually all branches of mathematics, from trigonometry to algebra to statistics to calculus. However, by far the most prevalent kind of mathematics you'll be doing as a game programmer is 3D vector and matrix math (i.e., 3D *linear algebra*).

Even this one branch of mathematics is very broad and very deep, so we cannot hope to cover it in any great depth in a single chapter. Instead, I will attempt to provide an overview of the mathematical tools needed by a typical game programmer. Along the way, I'll offer some tips and tricks, which should help you keep all of the rather confusing concepts and rules straight in your head. For an excellent in-depth coverage of 3D math for games, I highly recommend Eric Lengyel's book [32] on the topic. Chapter 3 of Christer Ericson's book [14] on real-time collision detection is also an excellent resource.

### 5.1 Solving 3D Problems in 2D

Many of the mathematical operations we're going to learn about in the following chapter work equally well in 2D and 3D. This is very good news, because

it means you can *sometimes* solve a 3D vector problem by thinking and drawing pictures in 2D (which is considerably easier to do!) Sadly, this equivalence between 2D and 3D does not hold all the time. Some operations, like the cross product, are only defined in 3D, and some problems only make sense when all three dimensions are considered. Nonetheless, it almost never hurts to start by thinking about a simplified two-dimensional version of the problem at hand. Once you understand the solution in 2D, you can think about how the problem extends into three dimensions. In some cases, you'll happily discover that your 2D result works in 3D as well. In others, you'll be able to find a coordinate system in which the problem really *is* two-dimensional. In this book, we'll employ two-dimensional diagrams wherever the distinction between 2D and 3D is not relevant.

## 5.2 Points and Vectors

The majority of modern 3D games are made up of three-dimensional objects in a virtual world. A game engine needs to keep track of the positions, orientations and scales of all these objects, animate them in the game world, and transform them into screen space so they can be rendered on screen. In games, 3D objects are almost always made up of triangles, the vertices of which are represented by points. So, before we learn how to represent whole objects in a game engine, let's first take a look at the point and its closely related cousin, the vector.

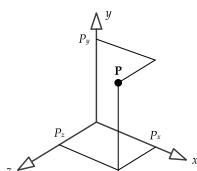


Figure 5.1. A point represented in Cartesian coordinates.

### 5.2.1 Points and Cartesian Coordinates

Technically speaking, a *point* is a location in  $n$ -dimensional space. (In games,  $n$  is usually equal to 2 or 3.) The Cartesian coordinate system is by far the most common coordinate system employed by game programmers. It uses two or three mutually perpendicular axes to specify a position in 2D or 3D space. So, a point  $\mathbf{P}$  is represented by a pair or triple of real numbers,  $(P_x, P_y)$  or  $(P_x, P_y, P_z)$  (see Figure 5.1).

Of course, the Cartesian coordinate system is not our only choice. Some other common systems include:

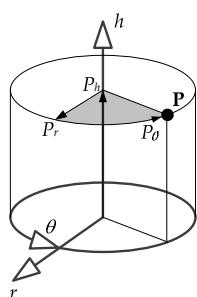


Figure 5.2. A point represented in cylindrical coordinates.

- *Cylindrical coordinates.* This system employs a vertical “height” axis  $h$ , a radial axis  $r$  emanating out from the vertical, and a yaw angle  $\theta$  (theta). In cylindrical coordinates, a point  $\mathbf{P}$  is represented by the triple of numbers  $(P_h, P_r, P_\theta)$ . This is illustrated in Figure 5.2.

- *Spherical coordinates.* This system employs a pitch angle phi ( $\phi$ ), a yaw angle theta ( $\theta$ ) and a radial measurement  $r$ . Points are therefore represented by the triple of numbers  $(P_r, P_\phi, P_\theta)$ . This is illustrated in Figure 5.3.

Cartesian coordinates are by far the most widely used coordinate system in game programming. However, always remember to select the coordinate system that best maps to the problem at hand. For example, in the game *Crank the Weasel* by Midway Home Entertainment, the main character Crank runs around an art-deco city picking up loot. I wanted to make the items of loot swirl around Crank's body in a spiral, getting closer and closer to him until they disappeared. I represented the position of the loot in cylindrical coordinates relative to the Crank character's current position. To implement the spiral animation, I simply gave the loot a constant angular speed in  $\theta$ , a small constant linear speed inward along its radial axis  $r$  and a very slight constant linear speed upward along the  $h$ -axis so the loot would gradually rise up to the level of Crank's pants pockets. This extremely simple animation looked great, and it was much easier to model using cylindrical coordinates than it would have been using a Cartesian system.

### 5.2.2 Left-Handed versus Right-Handed Coordinate Systems

In three-dimensional Cartesian coordinates, we have two choices when arranging our three mutually perpendicular axes: right-handed (RH) and left-handed (LH). In a right-handed coordinate system, when you curl the fingers of your right hand around the  $z$ -axis with the thumb pointing toward positive  $z$  coordinates, your fingers point from the  $x$ -axis toward the  $y$ -axis. In a left-handed coordinate system the same thing is true using your left hand.

The only difference between a left-handed coordinate system and a right-

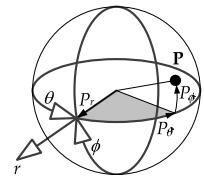


Figure 5.3. A point represented in spherical coordinates.

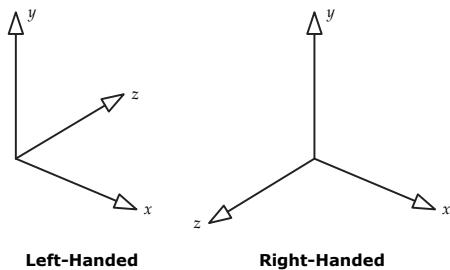


Figure 5.4. Left- and right-handed Cartesian coordinate systems.

handed coordinate system is the direction in which one of the three axes is pointing. For example, if the  $y$ -axis points upward and  $x$  points to the right, then  $z$  comes toward us (out of the page) in a right-handed system, and away from us (into the page) in a left-handed system. Left- and right-handed Cartesian coordinate systems are depicted in Figure 5.4.

It is easy to convert from left-handed to right-handed coordinates and vice versa. We simply flip the direction of any one axis, leaving the other two axes alone. It's important to remember that the rules of mathematics do not change between left-handed and right-handed coordinate systems. Only our *interpretation* of the numbers—our mental image of how the numbers map into 3D space—changes. Left-handed and right-handed conventions apply to visualization only, not to the underlying mathematics. (Actually, handedness does matter when dealing with cross products in physical simulations, because a cross product is not actually a vector—it's a special mathematical object known as a *pseudovector*. We'll discuss pseudovectors in a little more depth in Section 5.2.4.9.)

The mapping between the numerical representation and the visual representation is entirely up to us as mathematicians and programmers. We could choose to have the  $y$ -axis pointing up, with  $z$  forward and  $x$  to the left (RH) or right (LH). Or we could choose to have the  $z$ -axis point up. Or the  $x$ -axis could point up instead—or down. All that matters is that we decide upon a mapping, and then stick with it consistently.

That being said, some conventions do tend to work better than others for certain applications. For example, 3D graphics programmers typically work with a left-handed coordinate system, with the  $y$ -axis pointing up,  $x$  to the right and positive  $z$  pointing away from the viewer (i.e., in the direction the virtual camera is pointing). When 3D graphics are rendered onto a 2D screen using this particular coordinate system, increasing  $z$ -coordinates correspond to increasing *depth* into the scene (i.e., increasing distance away from the virtual camera). As we will see in subsequent chapters, this is exactly what is required when using a  $z$ -buffering scheme for depth occlusion.

### 5.2.3 Vectors

A *vector* is a quantity that has both a *magnitude* and a *direction* in  $n$ -dimensional space. A vector can be visualized as a *directed line segment* extending from a point called the *tail* to a point called the *head*. Contrast this to a *scalar* (i.e., an ordinary real-valued number), which represents a magnitude but has no direction. Usually scalars are written in italics (e.g.,  $v$ ) while vectors are written in boldface (e.g.,  $\mathbf{v}$ ).

A 3D vector can be represented by a triple of scalars  $(x, y, z)$ , just as a point

can be. The distinction between points and vectors is actually quite subtle. Technically, a vector is just an offset *relative to* some known point. A vector can be moved anywhere in 3D space—as long as its magnitude and direction don’t change, it is the same vector.

A vector can be used to represent a point, provided that we fix the tail of the vector to the origin of our coordinate system. Such a vector is sometimes called a *position vector* or *radius vector*. For our purposes, we can interpret any triple of scalars as either a point or a vector, provided that we remember that a *position vector* is constrained such that its tail remains at the origin of the chosen coordinate system. This implies that points and vectors are treated in subtly different ways mathematically. One might say that points are *absolute*, while vectors are *relative*.

The vast majority of game programmers use the term “vector” to refer both to points (position vectors) and to vectors in the strict linear algebra sense (purely directional vectors). Most 3D math libraries also use the term “vector” in this way. In this book, we’ll use the term “direction vector” or just “direction” when the distinction is important. Be careful to always keep the difference between points and directions clear in your mind (even if your math library doesn’t). As we’ll see in Section 5.3.6.1, directions need to be treated differently from points when converting them into homogeneous coordinates for manipulation with  $4 \times 4$  matrices, so getting the two types of vector mixed up can and will lead to bugs in your code.

### 5.2.3.1 Cartesian Basis Vectors

It is often useful to define three *orthogonal unit vectors* (i.e., vectors that are mutually perpendicular and each with a length equal to one), corresponding to the three principal Cartesian axes. The unit vector along the  $x$ -axis is typically called **i**, the  $y$ -axis unit vector is called **j**, and the  $z$ -axis unit vector is called **k**. The vectors **i**, **j** and **k** are sometimes called Cartesian *basis vectors*.

Any point or vector can be expressed as a sum of scalars (real numbers) multiplied by these unit basis vectors. For example,

$$(5, 3, -2) = 5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}.$$

### 5.2.4 Vector Operations

Most of the mathematical operations that you can perform on scalars can be applied to vectors as well. There are also some new operations that apply only to vectors.

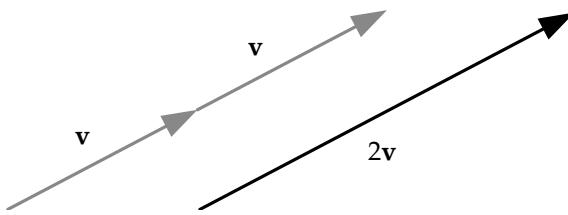


Figure 5.5. Multiplication of a vector by the scalar 2.

#### 5.2.4.1 Multiplication by a Scalar

Multiplication of a vector  $\mathbf{a}$  by a scalar  $s$  is accomplished by multiplying the individual components of  $\mathbf{a}$  by  $s$ :

$$s\mathbf{a} = (sa_x, sa_y, sa_z).$$

Multiplication by a scalar has the effect of scaling the magnitude of the vector, while leaving its direction unchanged, as shown in Figure 5.5. Multiplication by  $-1$  flips the direction of the vector (the head becomes the tail and vice versa).

The scale factor can be different along each axis. We call this *nonuniform scale*, and it can be represented as the *component-wise product* of a scaling vector  $\mathbf{s}$  and the vector in question, which we'll denote with the  $\otimes$  operator. Technically speaking, this special kind of product between two vectors is known as the *Hadamard product*. It is rarely used in the game industry—in fact, nonuniform scaling is one of its *only* commonplace uses in games:

$$\mathbf{s} \otimes \mathbf{a} = (s_x a_x, s_y a_y, s_z a_z). \quad (5.1)$$

As we'll see in Section 5.3.7.3, a scaling vector  $\mathbf{s}$  is really just a compact way to represent a  $3 \times 3$  diagonal scaling matrix  $\mathbf{S}$ . So another way to write Equation (5.1) is as follows:

$$\mathbf{aS} = [a_x \ a_y \ a_z] \begin{bmatrix} s_x & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & s_y & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_z \end{bmatrix} = [s_x a_x \ s_y a_y \ s_z a_z].$$

We'll explore matrices in more depth in Section 5.3.

#### 5.2.4.2 Addition and Subtraction

The addition of two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  is defined as the vector whose components are the sums of the *components* of  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ . This can be visualized by placing

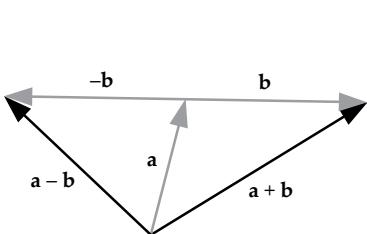


Figure 5.6. Vector addition and subtraction.

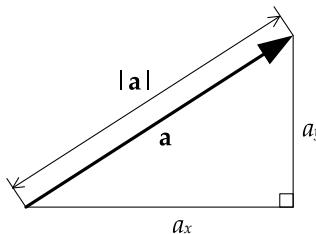


Figure 5.7. Magnitude of a vector (shown in 2D for ease of illustration).

the head of vector  $\mathbf{a}$  onto the tail of vector  $\mathbf{b}$ —the sum is then the vector from the tail of  $\mathbf{a}$  to the head of  $\mathbf{b}$  (see also Figure 5.6):

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = [(a_x + b_x), (a_y + b_y), (a_z + b_z)].$$

Vector subtraction  $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$  is nothing more than addition of  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $-\mathbf{b}$  (i.e., the result of scaling  $\mathbf{b}$  by  $-1$ , which flips it around). This corresponds to the vector whose components are the difference between the components of  $\mathbf{a}$  and the components of  $\mathbf{b}$ :

$$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = [(a_x - b_x), (a_y - b_y), (a_z - b_z)].$$

Vector addition and subtraction are depicted in Figure 5.6.

### *Adding and Subtracting Points and Directions*

You can add and subtract direction vectors freely. However, technically speaking, points cannot be added to one another—you can only add a direction vector to a point, the result of which is another point. Likewise, you can take the difference between two points, resulting in a direction vector. These operations are summarized below:

- direction + direction = direction
- direction - direction = direction
- point + direction = point
- point - point = direction
- point + point = *nonsense*

#### 5.2.4.3 Magnitude

The magnitude of a vector is a scalar representing the length of the vector as it would be measured in 2D or 3D space. It is denoted by placing vertical bars

around the vector's boldface symbol. We can use the Pythagorean theorem to calculate a vector's magnitude, as shown in Figure 5.7:

$$|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{a_x^2 + a_y^2 + a_z^2}.$$

#### 5.2.4.4 Vector Operations in Action

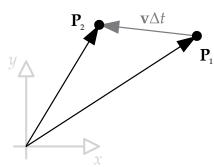


Figure 5.8. Simple vector addition can be used to find a character's position in the next frame, given her position and velocity in the current frame.

Believe it or not, we can already solve all sorts of real-world game problems given just the vector operations we've learned thus far. When trying to solve a problem, we can use operations like addition, subtraction, scaling and magnitude to generate new data out of the things we already know. For example, if we have the current position vector of an AI character  $\mathbf{P}_1$ , and a vector  $\mathbf{v}$  representing her current velocity, we can find her position on the next frame  $\mathbf{P}_2$  by scaling the velocity vector by the frame time interval  $\Delta t$ , and then adding it to the current position. As shown in Figure 5.8, the resulting vector equation is  $\mathbf{P}_2 = \mathbf{P}_1 + \mathbf{v} \Delta t$ . (This is known as *explicit Euler integration*—it's actually only valid when the velocity is constant, but you get the idea.)

As another example, let's say we have two spheres, and we want to know whether they intersect. Given that we know the center points of the two spheres,  $\mathbf{C}_1$  and  $\mathbf{C}_2$ , we can find a direction vector between them by simply subtracting the points,  $\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{C}_2 - \mathbf{C}_1$ . The magnitude of this vector  $d = |\mathbf{d}|$  determines how far apart the spheres' centers are. If this distance is less than the sum of the spheres' radii, they are intersecting; otherwise they're not. This is shown in Figure 5.9.

Square roots are expensive to calculate on most computers, so game programmers should always use the *squared magnitude* whenever it is valid to do

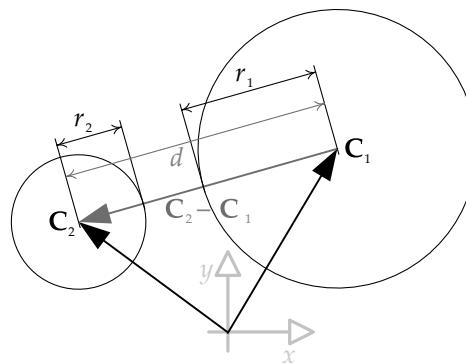


Figure 5.9. A sphere-sphere intersection test involves only vector subtraction, vector magnitude and floating-point comparison operations.

so:

$$|\mathbf{a}|^2 = (a_x^2 + a_y^2 + a_z^2).$$

Using the squared magnitude is valid when comparing the *relative lengths* of two vectors (“is vector  $\mathbf{a}$  longer than vector  $\mathbf{b}$ ?”), or when comparing a vector’s magnitude to some other (squared) scalar quantity. So in our sphere-sphere intersection test, we should calculate  $d^2 = |\mathbf{d}|^2$  and compare this to the squared sum of the radii,  $(r_1 + r_2)^2$  for maximum speed. When writing high-performance software, never take a square root when you don’t have to!

#### 5.2.4.5 Normalization and Unit Vectors

A *unit vector* is a vector with a magnitude (length) of one. Unit vectors are very useful in 3D mathematics and game programming, for reasons we’ll see below.

Given an arbitrary vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $v = |\mathbf{v}|$ , we can convert it to a unit vector  $\mathbf{u}$  that points in the same direction as  $\mathbf{v}$ , but has unit length. To do this, we simply multiply  $\mathbf{v}$  by the reciprocal of its magnitude. We call this *normalization*:

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} = \frac{1}{v} \mathbf{v}.$$

#### 5.2.4.6 Normal Vectors

A vector is said to be *normal* to a surface if it is *perpendicular* to that surface. Normal vectors are highly useful in games and computer graphics. For example, a *plane* can be defined by a point and a normal vector. And in 3D graphics, lighting calculations make heavy use of normal vectors to define the direction of surfaces relative to the direction of the light rays impinging upon them.

Normal vectors are usually of unit length, but they do not need to be. Be careful not to confuse the term “normalization” with the term “normal vector.” A normalized vector is any vector of unit length. A normal vector is any vector that is perpendicular to a surface, whether or not it is of unit length.

#### 5.2.4.7 Dot Product and Projection

Vectors can be multiplied, but unlike scalars there are a number of different kinds of vector multiplication. In game programming, we most often work with the following two kinds of multiplication:

- the *dot product* (a.k.a. scalar product or inner product), and
- the *cross product* (a.k.a. vector product or outer product).

The dot product of two vectors yields a scalar; it is defined by adding the products of the individual components of the two vectors:

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_x b_x + a_y b_y + a_z b_z = d \quad (\text{a scalar}).$$

The dot product can also be written as the product of the magnitudes of the two vectors and the cosine of the angle between them:

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta.$$

The dot product is *commutative* (i.e., the order of the two vectors can be reversed) and *distributive* over addition:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} &= \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a}; \\ \mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) &= \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}. \end{aligned}$$

And the dot product combines with scalar multiplication as follows:

$$s\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot s\mathbf{b} = s(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}).$$

### Vector Projection

If  $\mathbf{u}$  is a unit vector ( $|\mathbf{u}| = 1$ ), then the dot product  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u})$  represents the length of the *projection* of vector  $\mathbf{a}$  onto the infinite line defined by the direction of  $\mathbf{u}$ , as shown in Figure 5.10. This projection concept works equally well in 2D or 3D and is highly useful for solving a wide variety of three-dimensional problems.

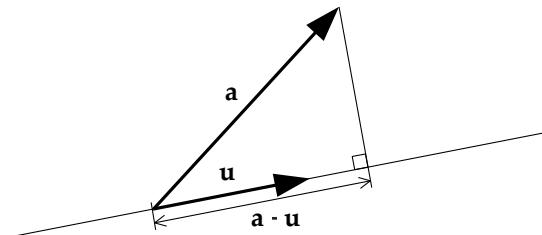


Figure 5.10. Vector projection using the dot product.

### Magnitude as a Dot Product

The squared magnitude of a vector can be found by taking the dot product of

that vector with itself. Its magnitude is then easily found by taking the square root:

$$|\mathbf{a}|^2 = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a};$$

$$|\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a}}.$$

This works because the cosine of zero degrees is 1, so  $|\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{a}|^2$ .

### Dot Product Tests

Dot products are great for testing if two vectors are collinear or perpendicular, or whether they point in roughly the same or roughly opposite directions. For any two arbitrary vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , game programmers often use the following tests, as shown in Figure 5.11:

- *Collinear.*  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| = ab$  (i.e., the angle between them is exactly 0 degrees—this dot product equals +1 when  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are *unit vectors*).
- *Collinear but opposite.*  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = -ab$  (i.e., the angle between them is 180 degrees—this dot product equals -1 when  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  are unit vectors).
- *Perpendicular.*  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = 0$  (i.e., the angle between them is 90 degrees).
- *Same direction.*  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) > 0$  (i.e., the angle between them is less than 90 degrees).
- *Opposite directions.*  $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) < 0$  (i.e., the angle between them is greater than 90 degrees).

### Some Other Applications of the Dot Product

Dot products can be used for all sorts of things in game programming. For example, let's say we want to find out whether an enemy is in front of the player character or behind him. We can find a vector from the player's position  $\mathbf{P}$  to the enemy's position  $\mathbf{E}$  by simple vector subtraction ( $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{P}$ ). Let's assume we have a vector  $\mathbf{f}$  pointing in the direction that the player is *facing*. (As we'll see in Section 5.3.10.3, the vector  $\mathbf{f}$  can be extracted directly from the player's model-to-world matrix.) The dot product  $d = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{f}$  can be used to test whether the enemy is in front of or behind the player—it will be positive when the enemy is in front and negative when the enemy is behind.

The dot product can also be used to find the height of a point above or below a plane (which might be useful when writing a moon-landing game for example). We can define a plane with two vector quantities: a point  $\mathbf{Q}$  lying anywhere on the plane, and a unit vector  $\mathbf{n}$  that is perpendicular (i.e., normal)

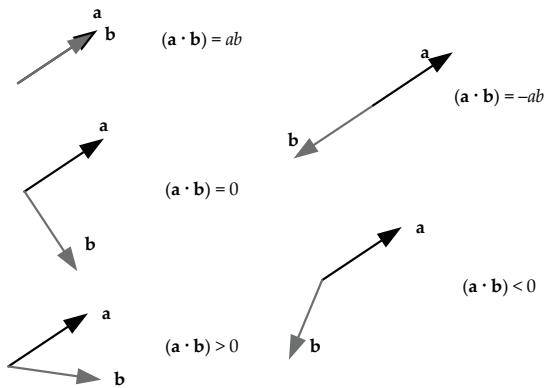


Figure 5.11. Some common dot product tests.

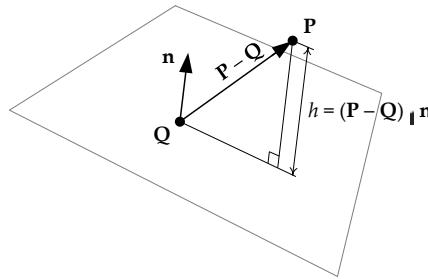


Figure 5.12. The dot product can be used to find the height of a point above or below a plane.

to the plane. To find the height  $h$  of a point  $\mathbf{P}$  above the plane, we first calculate a vector from any point on the plane ( $\mathbf{Q}$  will do nicely) to the point in question  $\mathbf{P}$ . So we have  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q}$ . The dot product of vector  $\mathbf{v}$  with the unit-length normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$  is just the projection of  $\mathbf{v}$  onto the line defined by  $\mathbf{n}$ . But that is exactly the height we're looking for. Therefore,

$$h = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} = (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q}) \cdot \mathbf{n}. \quad (5.2)$$

This is illustrated in Figure 5.12.

#### 5.2.4.8 Cross Product

The *cross product* (also known as the *outer product* or *vector product*) of two vectors yields another *vector* that is *perpendicular* to the two vectors being multiplied, as shown in Figure 5.13. The cross product operation is only defined in

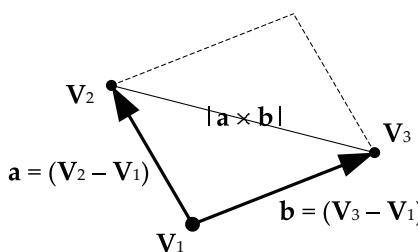


Figure 5.14. Area of a parallelogram expressed as the magnitude of a cross product.

three dimensions:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} &= [(a_y b_z - a_z b_y), (a_z b_x - a_x b_z), (a_x b_y - a_y b_x)] \\ &= (a_y b_z - a_z b_y) \mathbf{i} + (a_z b_x - a_x b_z) \mathbf{j} + (a_x b_y - a_y b_x) \mathbf{k}.\end{aligned}$$

#### *Magnitude of the Cross Product*

The magnitude of the cross product vector is the product of the magnitudes of the two vectors and the sine of the angle between them. (This is similar to the definition of the dot product, but it replaces the cosine with the sine.)

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \sin \theta.$$

The magnitude of the cross product  $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$  is equal to the area of the parallelogram whose sides are  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , as shown in Figure 5.14. Since a triangle is one half of a parallelogram, the area of a triangle whose vertices are specified by the position vectors  $\mathbf{V}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{V}_2$  and  $\mathbf{V}_3$  can be calculated as one half of the magnitude of the cross product of any two of its sides:

$$A_{\text{triangle}} = \frac{1}{2} |(\mathbf{V}_2 - \mathbf{V}_1) \times (\mathbf{V}_3 - \mathbf{V}_1)|.$$

#### *Direction of the Cross Product*

When using a right-handed coordinate system, you can use the *right-hand rule* to determine the direction of the cross product. Simply cup your fingers such that they point in the direction you'd rotate vector  $\mathbf{a}$  to move it on top of vector  $\mathbf{b}$ , and the cross product ( $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ ) will be in the direction of your thumb.

Note that the cross product is defined by the *left-hand rule* when using a left-handed coordinate system. This means that the direction of the cross product changes depending on the choice of coordinate system. This might seem odd

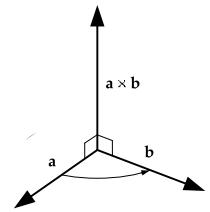


Figure 5.13. The cross product of vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$  (right-handed).

at first, but remember that the handedness of a coordinate system does *not* affect the mathematical calculations we carry out—it only changes our *visualization* of what the numbers look like in 3D space. When converting from a right-handed system to a left-handed system or vice versa, the numerical representations of all the points and vectors stay the same, but one axis flips. Our visualization of everything is therefore mirrored along that flipped axis. So if a cross product just happens to align with the axis we’re flipping (e.g., the  $z$ -axis), it needs to flip when the axis flips. If it didn’t, the mathematical definition of the cross product itself would have to be changed so that the  $z$ -coordinate of the cross product comes out negative in the new coordinate system. I wouldn’t lose too much sleep over all of this. Just remember: when *visualizing* a cross product, use the right-hand rule in a right-handed coordinate system and the left-hand rule in a left-handed coordinate system.

### *Properties of the Cross Product*

The cross product is *not commutative* (i.e., order matters):

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} \neq \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}.$$

However, it is *anti-commutative*:

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = -(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}).$$

The cross product is distributive over addition:

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}).$$

And it combines with scalar multiplication as follows:

$$(s\mathbf{a}) \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \times (s\mathbf{b}) = s(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}).$$

The Cartesian basis vectors are related by cross products as follows:

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = -(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}) = \mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = -(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j}) = \mathbf{i}$$

$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = -(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{j}$$

These three cross products define the direction of *positive rotations* about the Cartesian axes. The positive rotations go from  $x$  to  $y$  (about  $z$ ), from  $y$  to  $z$  (about  $x$ ) and from  $z$  to  $x$  (about  $y$ ). Notice how the rotation about the  $y$ -axis “reversed” alphabetically, in that it goes from  $z$  to  $x$  (not from  $x$  to  $z$ ). As we’ll

see below, this gives us a hint as to why the matrix for rotation about the  $y$ -axis looks *inverted* when compared to the matrices for rotation about the  $x$ - and  $z$ -axes.

### *The Cross Product in Action*

The cross product has a number of applications in games. One of its most common uses is for finding a vector that is perpendicular to two other vectors. As we'll see in Section 5.3.10.2, if we know an object's local unit basis vectors, ( $\mathbf{i}_{\text{local}}$ ,  $\mathbf{j}_{\text{local}}$  and  $\mathbf{k}_{\text{local}}$ ), we can easily find a matrix representing the object's orientation. Let's assume that all we know is the object's  $\mathbf{k}_{\text{local}}$  vector—i.e., the direction in which the object is facing. If we assume that the object has no roll about  $\mathbf{k}_{\text{local}}$ , then we can find  $\mathbf{i}_{\text{local}}$  by taking the cross product between  $\mathbf{k}_{\text{local}}$  (which we already know) and the world-space up vector  $\mathbf{j}_{\text{world}}$  (which equals  $[0\ 1\ 0]$ ). We do so as follows:  $\mathbf{i}_{\text{local}} = \text{normalize}(\mathbf{j}_{\text{world}} \times \mathbf{k}_{\text{local}})$ . We can then find  $\mathbf{j}_{\text{local}}$  by simply crossing  $\mathbf{i}_{\text{local}}$  and  $\mathbf{k}_{\text{local}}$  as follows:  $\mathbf{j}_{\text{local}} = \mathbf{k}_{\text{local}} \times \mathbf{i}_{\text{local}}$ .

A very similar technique can be used to find a unit vector normal to the surface of a triangle or some other plane. Given three points on the plane,  $\mathbf{P}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{P}_2$  and  $\mathbf{P}_3$ , the normal vector is just  $\mathbf{n} = \text{normalize}((\mathbf{P}_2 - \mathbf{P}_1) \times (\mathbf{P}_3 - \mathbf{P}_1))$ .

Cross products are also used in physics simulations. When a force is applied to an object, it will give rise to rotational motion if and only if it is applied off-center. This rotational force is known as a *torque*, and it is calculated as follows. Given a force  $\mathbf{F}$ , and a vector  $\mathbf{r}$  from the center of mass to the point at which the force is applied, the torque  $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ .

#### 5.2.4.9 Pseudovectors and Exterior Algebra

We mentioned in Section 5.2.2 that the cross product doesn't actually produce a vector—it produces a special kind of mathematical object known as a *pseudovector*. The difference between a vector and a pseudovector is pretty subtle. In fact, you can't tell the difference between them at all when performing the kinds of transformations we normally encounter in game programming—translation, rotation and scaling. It's only when you *reflect* the coordinate system (as happens when you move from a left-handed coordinate system to a right-handed system) that the special nature of pseudovectors becomes apparent. Under reflection, a vector transforms into its mirror image, as you'd probably expect. But when a pseudovector is reflected, it transforms into its mirror image and also *changes direction*.

Positions and all of the derivatives thereof (linear velocity, acceleration, jerk) are represented by true vectors (also known as *polar vectors* or *contravariant vectors*). Angular velocities and magnetic fields are represented by pseu-

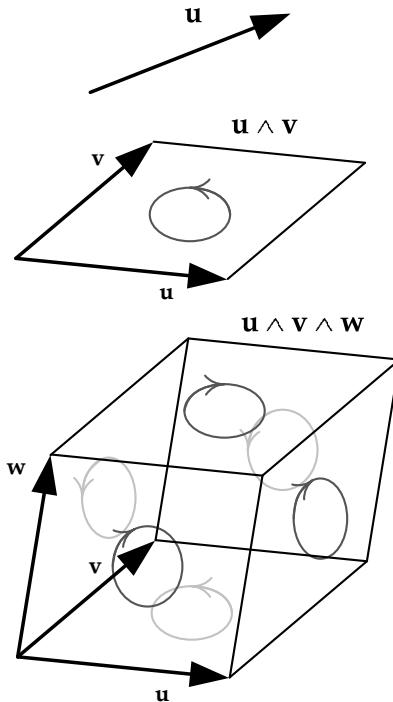


Figure 5.15. In the exterior algebra (Grassman algebra), a single wedge product yields a pseudovector or bivector, and two wedge products yield a pseudoscalar or trivector.

dovectors (also known as *axial vectors*, *covariant vectors*, *bivectors* or *2-blades*). The surface normal of a triangle (which is calculated using a cross product) is also a pseudovector.

It's pretty interesting to note that the cross product ( $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ ), the scalar triple product ( $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C})$ ) and the determinant of a matrix are all inter-related, and pseudovectors lie at the heart of it all. Mathematicians have come up with a set of algebraic rules, called an *exterior algebra* or *Grassman algebra*, which describe how vectors and pseudovectors work and allow us to calculate areas of parallelograms (in 2D), volumes of parallelepipeds (in 3D), and so on in higher dimensions.

We won't get into all the details here, but the basic idea of Grassman algebra is to introduce a special kind of vector product known as the *wedge product*, denoted  $\mathbf{A} \wedge \mathbf{B}$ . A pairwise wedge product yields a pseudovector and is equivalent to a cross product, which also represents the *signed area* of the parallelogram formed by the two vectors (where the sign tells us whether we're rotating from  $\mathbf{A}$  to  $\mathbf{B}$  or vice versa). Doing two wedge products in a row,  $\mathbf{A} \wedge \mathbf{B} \wedge \mathbf{C}$ ,

is equivalent to the scalar triple product  $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C})$  and produces another strange mathematical object known as a *pseudoscalar* (also known as a *trivector* or a *3-blade*), which can be interpreted as the *signed volume* of the parallelepiped formed by the three vectors (see Figure 5.15). This extends into higher dimensions as well.

What does all this mean for us as game programmers? Not too much. All we really need to keep in mind is that some vectors in our code are actually pseudovectors, so that we can transform them properly when changing handedness, for example. Of course if you really want to geek out, you can impress your friends by talking about *exterior algebras* and *wedge products* and explaining how cross products aren't really vectors. Which might make you look cool at your next social engagement ...or not.

For more information, see <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pseudovector>, [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Exterior\\_algebra](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Exterior_algebra), and [http://www.terathon.com/gdc12\\_lengyel.pdf](http://www.terathon.com/gdc12_lengyel.pdf).

## 5.2.5 Linear Interpolation of Points and Vectors

In games, we often need to find a vector that is midway between two known vectors. For example, if we want to smoothly animate an object from point **A** to point **B** over the course of two seconds at 30 frames per second, we would need to find 60 intermediate positions between **A** and **B**.

A *linear interpolation* is a simple mathematical operation that finds an intermediate point between two known points. The name of this operation is often shortened to LERP. The operation is defined as follows, where  $\beta$  ranges from 0 to 1 inclusive:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{L} = \text{LERP}(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \beta) &= (1 - \beta)\mathbf{A} + \beta\mathbf{B} \\ &= [(1 - \beta)A_x + \beta B_x, \quad (1 - \beta)A_y + \beta B_y, \quad (1 - \beta)A_z + \beta B_z]\end{aligned}$$

Geometrically,  $\mathbf{L} = \text{LERP}(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \beta)$  is the position vector of a point that lies  $\beta$  percent of the way along the line segment from point **A** to point **B**, as shown in Figure 5.16. Mathematically, the LERP function is just a *weighted average* of the two input vectors, with weights  $(1 - \beta)$  and  $\beta$ , respectively. Notice that the weights always add to 1, which is a general requirement for any weighted average.

## 5.3 Matrices

A *matrix* is a rectangular array of  $m \times n$  scalars. Matrices are a convenient way of representing linear transformations such as translation, rotation and scale.

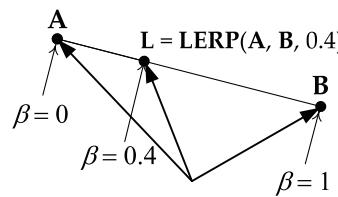


Figure 5.16. Linear interpolation (LERP) between points **A** and **B**, with  $\beta = 0.4$ .

A matrix **M** is usually written as a grid of scalars  $M_{rc}$  enclosed in square brackets, where the subscripts  $r$  and  $c$  represent the row and column indices of the entry, respectively. For example, if **M** is a  $3 \times 3$  matrix, it could be written as follows:

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} M_{11} & M_{12} & M_{13} \\ M_{21} & M_{22} & M_{23} \\ M_{31} & M_{32} & M_{33} \end{bmatrix}.$$

We can think of the rows and/or columns of a  $3 \times 3$  matrix as 3D vectors. When all of the row and column vectors of a  $3 \times 3$  matrix are of unit magnitude, we call it a *special orthogonal* matrix. This is also known as an *isotropic* matrix, or an *orthonormal* matrix. Such matrices represent pure rotations.

Under certain constraints, a  $4 \times 4$  matrix can represent arbitrary 3D *transformations*, including *translations*, *rotations*, and changes in *scale*. These are called *transformation matrices*, and they are the kinds of matrices that will be most useful to us as game engineers. The transformations represented by a matrix are applied to a point or vector via matrix multiplication. We'll investigate how this works below.

An *affine* matrix is a  $4 \times 4$  transformation matrix that preserves parallelism of lines and relative distance ratios, but not necessarily absolute lengths and angles. An affine matrix is any combination of the following operations: rotation, translation, scale and/or shear.

### 5.3.1 Matrix Multiplication

The product **P** of two matrices **A** and **B** is written  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{AB}$ . If **A** and **B** are transformation matrices, then the product **P** is another transformation matrix that performs *both* of the original transformations. For example, if **A** is a scale matrix and **B** is a rotation, the matrix **P** would both scale *and* rotate the points or vectors to which it is applied. This is particularly useful in game programming, because we can precalculate a single matrix that performs a whole sequence of transformations and then apply all of those transformations to a large number of vectors efficiently.

To calculate a matrix product, we simply take dot products between the rows of the  $n_A \times m_A$  matrix **A** and the columns of the  $n_B \times m_B$  matrix **B**. Each dot product becomes one component of the resulting matrix **P**. The two matrices can be multiplied as long as the *inner dimensions* are equal (i.e.,  $m_A = n_B$ ). For example, if **A** and **B** are  $3 \times 3$  matrices, then  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{AB}$  may be expressed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{P} &= \begin{bmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} & P_{13} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} & P_{23} \\ P_{31} & P_{32} & P_{33} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}1} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}1} & \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}1} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}2} & \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}1} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}3} \\ \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}2} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}1} & \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}2} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}2} & \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}2} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}3} \\ \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}3} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}1} & \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}3} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}2} & \mathbf{A}_{\text{row}3} \cdot \mathbf{B}_{\text{col}3} \end{bmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

Matrix multiplication is not commutative. In other words, the order in which matrix multiplication is done matters:

$$\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}$$

We'll see exactly why this matters in Section 5.3.2.

Matrix multiplication is often called *concatenation*, because the product of  $n$  transformation matrices is a matrix that concatenates, or chains together, the original sequence of transformations in the order the matrices were multiplied.

### 5.3.2 Representing Points and Vectors as Matrices

Points and vectors can be represented as *row matrices* ( $1 \times n$ ) or *column matrices* ( $n \times 1$ ), where  $n$  is the dimension of the space we're working with (usually 2 or 3). For example, the vector  $\mathbf{v} = (3, 4, -1)$  can be written either as

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = [3 \ 4 \ -1]$$

or as

$$\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{v}_1^T.$$

Here, the superscripted T represents matrix *transposition* (see Section 5.3.5).

The choice between column and row vectors is a completely arbitrary one, but it does affect the order in which matrix multiplications are written. This happens because when multiplying matrices, the inner dimensions of the two matrices must be equal, so

- to multiply a  $1 \times n$  row vector by an  $n \times n$  matrix, the vector must appear to the *left* of the matrix ( $\mathbf{v}'_{1 \times n} = \mathbf{v}_{1 \times n} \mathbf{M}_{n \times n}$ ), whereas
- to multiply an  $n \times n$  matrix by an  $n \times 1$  column vector, the vector must appear to the *right* of the matrix ( $\mathbf{v}'_{n \times 1} = \mathbf{M}_{n \times n} \mathbf{v}_{n \times 1}$ ).

If multiple transformation matrices  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  are applied in order to a vector  $\mathbf{v}$ , the transformations “read” from *left to right* when using *row* vectors, but from *right to left* when using *column* vectors. The easiest way to remember this is to realize that the matrix *closest* to the vector is applied first. This is illustrated by the parentheses below:

$$\mathbf{v}' = (((\mathbf{v}\mathbf{A})\mathbf{B})\mathbf{C}) \quad \text{Row vectors: read left-to-right;} \\ \mathbf{v}'^T = (\mathbf{C}^T(\mathbf{B}^T(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{v}^T))) \quad \text{Column vectors: read right-to-left.}$$

In this book we’ll adopt the *row vector convention*, because the left-to-right order of transformations is most intuitive to read for English-speaking people. That said, be very careful to check which convention is used by your game engine, and by other books, papers or web pages you may read. You can usually tell by seeing whether vector-matrix multiplications are written with the vector on the left (for row vectors) or the right (for column vectors) of the matrix. When using column vectors, you’ll need to *transpose* all the matrices shown in this book.

### 5.3.3 The Identity Matrix

The *identity matrix* is a matrix that, when multiplied by any other matrix, yields the very same matrix. It is usually represented by the symbol  $\mathbf{I}$ . The identity matrix is always a square matrix with 1’s along the diagonal and 0’s everywhere else:

$$\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} ;$$

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{I} = \mathbf{I}\mathbf{A} \equiv \mathbf{A}.$$

### 5.3.4 Matrix Inversion

The *inverse* of a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is another matrix (denoted  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ ) that *undoes* the effects of matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ . So, for example, if  $\mathbf{A}$  rotates objects by 37 degrees about the  $z$ -axis, then  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  will rotate by  $-37$  degrees about the  $z$ -axis. Likewise, if  $\mathbf{A}$  scales objects to be twice their original size, then  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  scales objects to be half-sized. When a matrix is multiplied by its own inverse, the result is *always* the identity matrix, so  $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{A}^{-1}) \equiv (\mathbf{A}^{-1})\mathbf{A} \equiv \mathbf{I}$ . Not all matrices have

inverses. However, all *affine* matrices (combinations of pure rotations, translations, scales and shears) do have inverses. Gaussian elimination or lower-upper (LU) decomposition can be used to find the inverse, if one exists.

Since we'll be dealing with matrix multiplication a lot, it's important to note here that the inverse of a sequence of concatenated matrices can be written as the *reverse concatenation* of the individual matrices' inverses. For example,

$$(\mathbf{ABC})^{-1} = \mathbf{C}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{A}^{-1}.$$

### 5.3.5 Transposition

The *transpose* of a matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  is denoted  $\mathbf{M}^T$ . It is obtained by reflecting the entries of the original matrix across its diagonal. In other words, the rows of the original matrix become the columns of the transposed matrix, and vice versa:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} a & d & g \\ b & e & h \\ c & f & i \end{bmatrix}.$$

The transpose is useful for a number of reasons. For one thing, the inverse of an orthonormal (pure rotation) matrix is exactly equal to its transpose—which is good news, because it's much cheaper to transpose a matrix than it is to find its inverse in general. Transposition can also be important when moving data from one math library to another, because some libraries use column vectors while others expect row vectors. The matrices used by a row-vector-based library will be *transposed* relative to those used by a library that employs the column vector convention.

As with the inverse, the transpose of a sequence of concatenated matrices can be rewritten as the reverse concatenation of the individual matrices' transposes. For example,

$$(\mathbf{ABC})^T = \mathbf{C}^T\mathbf{B}^T\mathbf{A}^T.$$

This will prove useful when we consider how to apply transformation matrices to points and vectors.

### 5.3.6 Homogeneous Coordinates

You may recall from high-school algebra that a  $2 \times 2$  matrix can represent a rotation in two dimensions. To rotate a vector  $\mathbf{r}$  through an angle of  $\phi$  degrees (where positive rotations are counterclockwise), we can write

$$\begin{bmatrix} r'_x & r'_y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} r_x & r_y \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi & \sin \phi \\ -\sin \phi & \cos \phi \end{bmatrix}.$$

It's probably no surprise that rotations in three dimensions can be represented by a  $3 \times 3$  matrix. The two-dimensional example above is really just a three-dimensional rotation about the  $z$ -axis, so we can write

$$\begin{bmatrix} r'_x & r'_y & r'_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} r_x & r_y & r_z \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi & \sin \phi & 0 \\ -\sin \phi & \cos \phi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The question naturally arises: Can a  $3 \times 3$  matrix be used to represent *translations*? Sadly, the answer is no. The result of translating a point  $\mathbf{r}$  by a translation  $\mathbf{t}$  requires adding the components of  $\mathbf{t}$  to the components of  $\mathbf{r}$  individually:

$$\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{t} = [(r_x + t_x) \quad (r_y + t_y) \quad (r_z + t_z)].$$

Matrix multiplication involves multiplication and addition of matrix elements, so the idea of using multiplication for translation seems promising. But, unfortunately, there is no way to arrange the components of  $\mathbf{t}$  within a  $3 \times 3$  matrix such that the result of multiplying it with the column vector  $\mathbf{r}$  yields sums like  $(r_x + t_x)$ .

The good news is that we *can* obtain sums like this if we use a  $4 \times 4$  matrix. What would such a matrix look like? Well, we know that we don't want any rotational effects, so the upper  $3 \times 3$  should contain an identity matrix. If we arrange the components of  $\mathbf{t}$  across the bottom-most row of the matrix and set the fourth element of the  $\mathbf{r}$  vector (usually called  $w$ ) equal to 1, then taking the dot product of the vector  $\mathbf{r}$  with column 1 of the matrix will yield  $(1 \cdot r_x) + (0 \cdot r_y) + (0 \cdot r_z) + (t_x \cdot 1)$ , which is exactly what we want. If the bottom right-hand corner of the matrix contains a 1 and the rest of the fourth column contains zeros, then the resulting vector will also have a 1 in its  $w$  component. Here's what the final  $4 \times 4$  translation matrix looks like:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r} + \mathbf{t} &= \begin{bmatrix} r_x & r_y & r_z & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ t_x & t_y & t_z & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= [(r_x + t_x) \quad (r_y + t_y) \quad (r_z + t_z) \quad 1]. \end{aligned}$$

When a point or vector is extended from three dimensions to four in this manner, we say that it has been written in *homogeneous coordinates*. A point in homogeneous coordinates always has  $w = 1$ . Most of the 3D matrix math done by game engines is performed using  $4 \times 4$  matrices with four-element points and vectors written in homogeneous coordinates.

### 5.3.6.1 Transforming Direction Vectors

Mathematically, points (position vectors) and direction vectors are treated in subtly different ways. When transforming a point by a matrix, the translation, rotation and scale of the matrix are all applied to the point. But when transforming a direction by a matrix, the *translational* effects of the matrix are ignored. This is because direction vectors have no translation per se—applying a translation to a direction would alter its magnitude, which is usually not what we want.

In homogeneous coordinates, we achieve this by defining points to have their  $w$  components equal to one, while direction vectors have their  $w$  components equal to zero. In the example below, notice how the  $w = 0$  component of the vector  $\mathbf{v}$  multiplies with the  $\mathbf{t}$  vector in the matrix, thereby eliminating translation in the final result:

$$[\mathbf{v} \ 0] \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U} & 0 \\ \mathbf{t} & 1 \end{bmatrix} = [(\mathbf{v}\mathbf{U} + 0\mathbf{t}) \ 0] = [\mathbf{v}\mathbf{U} \ 0].$$

Technically, a point in homogeneous (four-dimensional) coordinates can be converted into non-homogeneous (three-dimensional) coordinates by dividing the  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  components by the  $w$  component:

$$[x \ y \ z \ w] \equiv \left[ \frac{x}{w} \ \frac{y}{w} \ \frac{z}{w} \right].$$

This sheds some light on why we set a point's  $w$  component to one and a vector's  $w$  component to zero. Dividing by  $w = 1$  has no effect on the coordinates of a point, but dividing a pure direction vector's components by  $w = 0$  would yield infinity. A point at infinity in 4D can be rotated but not translated, because no matter what translation we try to apply, the point will remain at infinity. So in effect, a pure direction vector in three-dimensional space acts like a point at infinity in four-dimensional homogeneous space.

### 5.3.7 Atomic Transformation Matrices

Any affine transformation matrix can be created by simply concatenating a sequence of  $4 \times 4$  matrices representing pure translations, pure rotations, pure scale operations and/or pure shears. These atomic transformation building blocks are presented below. (We'll omit shear from these discussions, as it tends to be used only rarely in games.)

Notice that all affine  $4 \times 4$  transformation matrices can be partitioned into four components:

$$\mathbf{M}_{\text{affine}} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \\ \mathbf{t}_{1 \times 3} & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

- the upper  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $\mathbf{U}$ , which represents the rotation and/or scale,
- a  $1 \times 3$  translation vector  $\mathbf{t}$ ,
- a  $3 \times 1$  vector of zeros  $\mathbf{0} = [0 \ 0 \ 0]^T$ , and
- a scalar 1 in the bottom-right corner of the matrix.

When a point is multiplied by a matrix that has been partitioned like this, the result is as follows:

$$[\mathbf{r}'_{1 \times 3} \ 1] = [\mathbf{r}_{1 \times 3} \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \\ \mathbf{t}_{1 \times 3} & 1 \end{bmatrix} = [(\mathbf{r}\mathbf{U} + \mathbf{t}) \ 1].$$

### 5.3.7.1 Translation

The following matrix translates a point by the vector  $\mathbf{t}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r} + \mathbf{t} &= [r_x \ r_y \ r_z \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ t_x & t_y & t_z & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= [(r_x + t_x) \ (r_y + t_y) \ (r_z + t_z) \ 1], \end{aligned} \tag{5.3}$$

or in partitioned shorthand:

$$[\mathbf{r} \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{t} & 1 \end{bmatrix} = [(\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{t}) \ 1].$$

To invert a pure translation matrix, simply negate the vector  $\mathbf{t}$  (i.e., negate  $t_x$ ,  $t_y$  and  $t_z$ ).

### 5.3.7.2 Rotation

All  $4 \times 4$  pure rotation matrices have the form

$$[\mathbf{r} \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & 1 \end{bmatrix} = [\mathbf{r}\mathbf{R} \ 1].$$

The  $\mathbf{t}$  vector is zero, and the upper  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  contains cosines and sines of the rotation angle, measured in radians.

The following matrix represents rotation about the  $x$ -axis by an angle  $\phi$ .

$$\text{rotate}_x(\mathbf{r}, \phi) = [r_x \ r_y \ r_z \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos \phi & \sin \phi & 0 \\ 0 & -\sin \phi & \cos \phi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{5.4}$$

The matrix below represents rotation about the  $y$ -axis by an angle  $\theta$ . (Notice that this one is *transposed* relative to the other two—the positive and negative sine terms have been reflected across the diagonal.)

$$\text{rotate}_y(\mathbf{r}, \theta) = [r_x \ r_y \ r_z \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & 0 & -\sin \theta & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \sin \theta & 0 & \cos \theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.5)$$

The following matrix represents rotation about the  $z$ -axis by an angle  $\gamma$ :

$$\text{rotate}_z(\mathbf{r}, \gamma) = [r_x \ r_y \ r_z \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma & 0 & 0 \\ -\sin \gamma & \cos \gamma & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.6)$$

Here are a few observations about these matrices:

- The 1 within the upper  $3 \times 3$  always appears on the axis we're rotating about, while the sine and cosine terms are off-axis.
- Positive rotations go from  $x$  to  $y$  (about  $z$ ), from  $y$  to  $z$  (about  $x$ ) and from  $z$  to  $x$  (about  $y$ ). The  $z$  to  $x$  rotation “wraps around,” which is why the rotation matrix about the  $y$ -axis is transposed relative to the other two. (Use the right-hand or left-hand rule to remember this.)
- The inverse of a pure rotation is just its transpose. This works because inverting a rotation is equivalent to rotating by the negative angle. You may recall that  $\cos(-\theta) = \cos(\theta)$  while  $\sin(-\theta) = -\sin(\theta)$ , so negating the angle causes the two sine terms to effectively switch places, while the cosine terms stay put.

### 5.3.7.3 Scale

The following matrix scales the point  $\mathbf{r}$  by a factor of  $s_x$  along the  $x$ -axis,  $s_y$  along the  $y$ -axis and  $s_z$  along the  $z$ -axis:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{rS} &= [r_x \ r_y \ r_z \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} s_x & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & s_y & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_z & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= [s_x r_x \ s_y r_y \ s_z r_z \ 1], \end{aligned} \quad (5.7)$$

or in partitioned shorthand:

$$[\mathbf{r} \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_{3 \times 3} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = [\mathbf{rS}_{3 \times 3} \ 1].$$

Here are some observations about this kind of matrix:

- To invert a scaling matrix, simply substitute  $s_x$ ,  $s_y$  and  $s_z$  with their reciprocals (i.e.,  $1/s_x$ ,  $1/s_y$  and  $1/s_z$ ).
- When the scale factor along all three axes is the same ( $s_x = s_y = s_z$ ), we call this *uniform scale*. Spheres remain spheres under uniform scale, whereas under nonuniform scale they become ellipsoids. To keep the mathematics of bounding sphere checks simple and fast, many game engines impose the restriction that only uniform scale may be applied to renderable geometry or collision primitives.
- When a uniform scale matrix  $\mathbf{S}_u$  and a rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  are concatenated, the order of multiplication is unimportant (i.e.,  $\mathbf{S}_u\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}\mathbf{S}_u$ ). This only works for *uniform scale*!

### 5.3.8 $4 \times 3$ Matrices

The rightmost column of an affine  $4 \times 4$  matrix always contains the vector  $[0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1]^T$ . As such, game programmers often omit the fourth column to save memory. You'll encounter  $4 \times 3$  affine matrices frequently in game math libraries.

### 5.3.9 Coordinate Spaces

We've seen how to apply transformations to points and direction vectors using  $4 \times 4$  matrices. We can extend this idea to rigid objects by realizing that such an object can be thought of as an infinite collection of points. Applying a transformation to a rigid object is like applying that same transformation to every point within the object. For example, in computer graphics an object is usually represented by a mesh of triangles, each of which has three vertices represented by points. In this case, the object can be transformed by applying a transformation matrix to all of its vertices in turn.

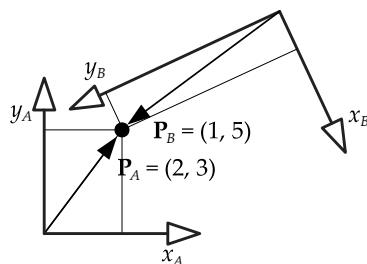


Figure 5.17. Position vectors for the point  $P$  relative to different coordinate axes.

We said above that a point is a vector whose tail is fixed to the origin of some coordinate system. This is another way of saying that a point (position vector) is always expressed *relative* to a set of coordinate axes. The triplet of numbers representing a point changes numerically whenever we select a new set of coordinate axes. In Figure 5.17, we see a point  $P$  represented by two different position vectors—the vector  $P_A$  gives the position of  $P$  relative to the “A” axes, while the vector  $P_B$  gives the position of that same point relative to a different set of axes “B.”

In physics, a set of coordinate axes represents a frame of reference, so we sometimes refer to a set of axes as a *coordinate frame* (or just a *frame*). People in the game industry also use the term *coordinate space* (or simply *space*) to refer to a set of coordinate axes. In the following sections, we’ll look at a few of the most common coordinate spaces used in games and computer graphics.

### 5.3.9.1 Model Space

When a triangle mesh is created in a tool such as Maya or 3DStudioMAX, the positions of the triangles’ vertices are specified relative to a Cartesian coordinate system, which we call *model space* (also known as *object space* or *local space*). The model-space origin is usually placed at a central location within the object, such as at its center of mass, or on the ground between the feet of a humanoid or animal character.

Most game objects have an inherent directionality. For example, an airplane has a nose, a tail fin and wings that correspond to the front, up and left/right directions. The model-space axes are usually aligned to these natural directions on the model, and they’re given intuitive names to indicate their directionality as illustrated in Figure 5.18.

- *Front*. This name is given to the axis that points in the direction that the object naturally travels or faces. In this book, we’ll use the symbol  $F$  to

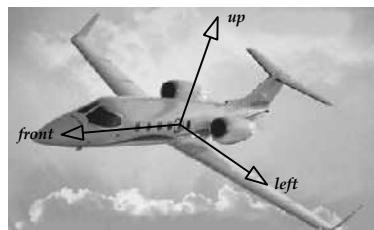


Figure 5.18. One possible choice of the model-space front, left and up axis basis vectors for an airplane.

refer to a unit basis vector along the front axis.

- *Up*. This name is given to the axis that points towards the top of the object. The unit basis vector along this axis will be denoted  $\mathbf{U}$ .
- *Left or right*. The name “left” or “right” is given to the axis that points toward the left or right side of the object. Which name is chosen depends on whether your game engine uses left-handed or right-handed coordinates. The unit basis vector along this axis will be denoted  $\mathbf{L}$  or  $\mathbf{R}$ , as appropriate.

The mapping between the (*front*, *up*, *left*) labels and the ( $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ ) axes is completely arbitrary. A common choice when working with right-handed axes is to assign the label *front* to the positive  $z$ -axis, the label *left* to the positive  $x$ -axis and the label *up* to the positive  $y$ -axis (or in terms of unit basis vectors,  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{i}$  and  $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{j}$ ). However, it’s equally common for  $+x$  to be *front* and  $+z$  to be *right* ( $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{j}$ ). I’ve also worked with engines in which the  $z$ -axis is oriented vertically. The only real requirement is that you stick to one convention consistently throughout your engine.

As an example of how intuitive axis names can reduce confusion, consider *Euler angles* (*pitch*, *yaw*, *roll*), which are often used to describe an aircraft’s orientation. It’s not possible to define pitch, yaw, and roll angles in terms of the ( $\mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{j}$ ,  $\mathbf{k}$ ) basis vectors because their orientation is arbitrary. However, we *can* define pitch, yaw and roll in terms of the ( $\mathbf{L}$ ,  $\mathbf{U}$ ,  $\mathbf{F}$ ) basis vectors, because their orientations are clearly defined. Specifically,

- *pitch* is rotation about  $\mathbf{L}$  or  $\mathbf{R}$ ,
- *yaw* is rotation about  $\mathbf{U}$ , and
- *roll* is rotation about  $\mathbf{F}$ .

### 5.3.9.2 World Space

*World space* is a fixed coordinate space, in which the positions, orientations and scales of all objects in the game world are expressed. This coordinate space ties all the individual objects together into a cohesive virtual world.

The location of the world-space origin is arbitrary, but it is often placed near the center of the playable game space to minimize the reduction in floating-point precision that can occur when ( $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ ) coordinates grow very large. Likewise, the orientation of the  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -axes is arbitrary, although most of the engines I’ve encountered use either a  $y$ -up or a  $z$ -up convention. The  $y$ -up convention was probably an extension of the two-dimensional convention found in most mathematics textbooks, where the  $y$ -axis is shown going up and the  $x$ -axis going to the right. The  $z$ -up convention is also common,

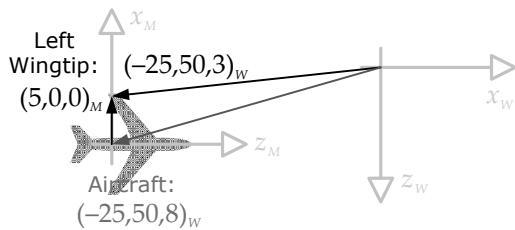


Figure 5.19. A Learjet whose left wingtip is at  $(5, 0, 0)$  in model space. If the jet is rotated by 90 degrees about the world-space  $y$ -axis, and its model-space origin translated to  $(-25, 50, 8)$  in world space, then its left wingtip would end up at  $(-25, 50, 3)$  when expressed in world-space coordinates.

because it allows a top-down orthographic view of the game world to look like a traditional two-dimensional  $xy$ -plot.

As an example, let's say that our aircraft's left wingtip is at  $(5, 0, 0)$  in model space. (In our game, front vectors correspond to the positive  $z$ -axis in model space with  $y$  up, as shown in Figure 5.18.) Now imagine that the jet is facing down the positive  $x$ -axis in world space, with its model-space origin at some arbitrary location, such as  $(-25, 50, 8)$ . Because the  $F$  vector of the airplane, which corresponds to  $+z$  in model space, is facing down the  $+x$ -axis in world space, we know that the jet has been rotated by 90 degrees about the world  $y$ -axis. So, if the aircraft were sitting at the world-space origin, its left wingtip would be at  $(0, 0, -5)$  in world space. But because the aircraft's origin has been translated to  $(-25, 50, 8)$ , the final position of the jet's left wingtip in world space is  $(-25, 50, [8 - 5]) = (-25, 50, 3)$ . This is illustrated in Figure 5.19.

We could of course populate our friendly skies with more than one Learjet. In that case, all of their left wingtips would have coordinates of  $(5, 0, 0)$  in model space. But in world space, the left wingtips would have all sorts of interesting coordinates, depending on the orientation and translation of each aircraft.

### 5.3.9.3 View Space

*View space* (also known as *camera space*) is a coordinate frame fixed to the camera. The view space origin is placed at the focal point of the camera. Again, any axis orientation scheme is possible. However, a  $y$ -up convention with  $z$  increasing in the direction the camera is facing (left-handed) is typical because it allows  $z$  coordinates to represent depths into the screen. Other engines and APIs, such as OpenGL, define view space to be right-handed, in which case the camera faces towards *negative z*, and  $z$  coordinates represent negative depths.

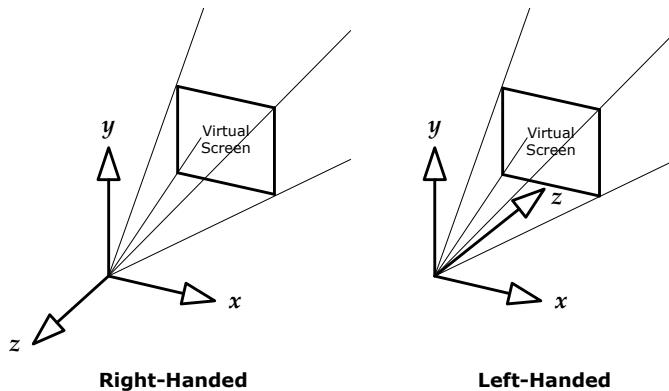


Figure 5.20. Left- and right-handed examples of view space, also known as camera space.

Two possible definitions of view space are illustrated in Figure 5.20.

### 5.3.10 Change of Basis

In games and computer graphics, it is often quite useful to convert an object's position, orientation and scale from one coordinate system into another. We call this operation a *change of basis*.

#### 5.3.10.1 Coordinate Space Hierarchies

Coordinate frames are relative. That is, if you want to quantify the position, orientation and scale of a set of axes in three-dimensional space, you must specify these quantities *relative to* some other set of axes (otherwise the numbers would have no meaning). This implies that coordinate spaces form a *hierarchy*—every coordinate space is a *child* of some other coordinate space, and the other space acts as its *parent*. World space has no parent; it is at the root of the coordinate-space tree, and all other coordinate systems are ultimately specified relative to it, either as direct children or more-distant relatives.

#### 5.3.10.2 Building a Change of Basis Matrix

The matrix that transforms points and directions from any child coordinate system  $C$  to its parent coordinate system  $P$  can be written  $\mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P}$  (pronounced "C to P"). The subscript indicates that this matrix transforms points and directions from child space to parent space. Any child-space position vector  $\mathbf{P}_C$  can

be transformed into a parent-space position vector  $\mathbf{P}_P$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{P}_P &= \mathbf{P}_C \mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P}; \\ \mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P} &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{i}_C & 0 \\ \mathbf{j}_C & 0 \\ \mathbf{k}_C & 0 \\ \mathbf{t}_C & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} i_{Cx} & i_{Cy} & i_{Cz} & 0 \\ j_{Cx} & j_{Cy} & j_{Cz} & 0 \\ k_{Cx} & k_{Cy} & k_{Cz} & 0 \\ t_{Cx} & t_{Cy} & t_{Cz} & 1 \end{bmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

In this equation,

- $\mathbf{i}_C$  is the unit basis vector along the child space  $x$ -axis, expressed in parent-space coordinates;
- $\mathbf{j}_C$  is the unit basis vector along the child space  $y$ -axis, in parent space;
- $\mathbf{k}_C$  is the unit basis vector along the child space  $z$ -axis, in parent space; and
- $\mathbf{t}_C$  is the translation of the child coordinate system relative to parent space.

This result should not be too surprising. The  $\mathbf{t}_C$  vector is just the translation of the child-space axes relative to parent space, so if the rest of the matrix were identity, the point  $(0, 0, 0)$  in child space would become  $\mathbf{t}_C$  in parent space, just as we'd expect. The  $\mathbf{i}_C$ ,  $\mathbf{j}_C$  and  $\mathbf{k}_C$  unit vectors form the upper  $3 \times 3$  of the matrix, which is a pure rotation matrix because these vectors are of unit length. We can see this more clearly by considering a simple example, such as a situation in which child space is rotated by an angle  $\gamma$  about the  $z$ -axis, with no translation. Recall from Equation (5.6) that the matrix for such a rotation is given by

$$\text{rotate}_z(\mathbf{r}, \gamma) = [r_x \ r_y \ r_z \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma & 0 & 0 \\ -\sin \gamma & \cos \gamma & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

But in Figure 5.21, we can see that the coordinates of the  $\mathbf{i}_C$  and  $\mathbf{j}_C$  vectors, expressed in parent space, are  $\mathbf{i}_C = [\cos \gamma \ \sin \gamma \ 0]$  and  $\mathbf{j}_C = [-\sin \gamma \ \cos \gamma \ 0]$ . When we plug these vectors into our formula for  $\mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P}$ , with  $\mathbf{k}_C = [0 \ 0 \ 1]$ , it exactly matches the matrix  $\text{rotate}_z(\mathbf{r}, \gamma)$  from Equation (5.6).

### Scaling the Child Axes

Scaling of the child coordinate system is accomplished by simply scaling the unit basis vectors appropriately. For example, if child space is scaled up by a factor of two, then the basis vectors  $\mathbf{i}_C$ ,  $\mathbf{j}_C$  and  $\mathbf{k}_C$  will be of length 2 instead of unit length.

#### 5.3.10.3 Extracting Unit Basis Vectors from a Matrix

The fact that we can build a change of basis matrix out of a translation and three Cartesian basis vectors gives us another powerful tool: Given *any* affine  $4 \times 4$  transformation matrix, we can go in the other direction and extract the child-space basis vectors  $\mathbf{i}_C$ ,  $\mathbf{j}_C$  and  $\mathbf{k}_C$  from it by simply isolating the appropriate rows of the matrix (or columns if your math library uses column vectors).

This can be incredibly useful. Let's say we are given a vehicle's model-to-world transform as an affine  $4 \times 4$  matrix (a very common representation). This is really just a change of basis matrix, transforming points in model space into their equivalents in world space. Let's further assume that in our game, the positive z-axis always points in the direction that an object is facing. So, to find a unit vector representing the vehicle's facing direction, we can simply extract  $\mathbf{k}_C$  directly from the model-to-world matrix (by grabbing its third row). This vector will already be normalized and ready to go.

#### 5.3.10.4 Transforming Coordinate Systems versus Vectors

We've said that the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P}$  transforms points and directions from child space into parent space. Recall that the fourth row of  $\mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P}$  contains  $\mathbf{t}_C$ , the translation of the child coordinate axes relative to the world-space axes. Therefore, another way to visualize the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow P}$  is to imagine it taking the parent *coordinate axes* and transforming them *into* the child axes. This is the

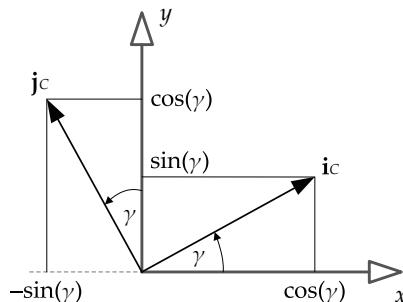


Figure 5.21. Change of basis when child axes are rotated by an angle  $\gamma$  relative to parent.

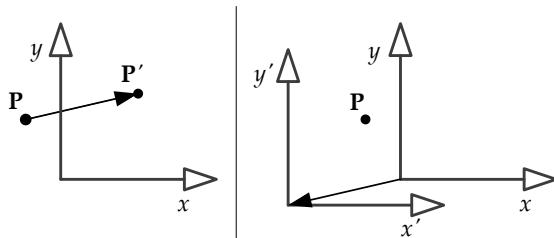


Figure 5.22. Two ways to interpret a transformation matrix. On the left, the point moves against a fixed set of axes. On the right, the axes move in the opposite direction while the point remains fixed.

reverse of what happens to points and direction vectors. In other words, if a matrix transforms *vectors* from child space to parent space, then it also transforms *coordinate axes* from parent space to child space. This makes sense when you think about it—moving a point 20 units to the right with the coordinate axes fixed is the same as moving the coordinate axes 20 units to the left with the point fixed. This concept is illustrated in Figure 5.22.

Of course, this is just another point of potential confusion. If you’re thinking in terms of coordinate axes, then transformations go in one direction, but if you’re thinking in terms of points and vectors, they go in the other direction! As with many confusing things in life, your best bet is probably to choose a single “canonical” way of thinking about things and stick with it. For example, in this book we’ve chosen the following conventions:

- Transformations apply to vectors (not coordinate axes).
- Vectors are written as rows (not columns).

Taken together, these two conventions allow us to read sequences of matrix multiplications from left to right and have them make sense (e.g., in the expression  $\mathbf{r}_D = \mathbf{r}_A \mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B} \mathbf{M}_{B \rightarrow C} \mathbf{M}_{C \rightarrow D}$ , the B’s and C’s in effect “cancel out,” leaving only  $\mathbf{r}_D = \mathbf{r}_A \mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow D}$ ). Obviously if you start thinking about the coordinate axes moving around rather than the points and vectors, you either have to read the transforms from right to left, or flip one of these two conventions around. It doesn’t really matter what conventions you choose as long as *you* find them easy to remember and work with.

That said, it’s important to note that certain problems are easier to think about in terms of vectors being transformed, while others are easier to work with when you imagine the coordinate axes moving around. Once you get good at thinking about 3D vector and matrix math, you’ll find it pretty easy to flip back and forth between conventions as needed to suit the problem at hand.

### 5.3.11 Transforming Normal Vectors

A *normal vector* is a special kind of vector, because in addition to (usually!) being of unit length, it carries with it the additional requirement that it should always remain *perpendicular* to whatever surface or plane it is associated with. Special care must be taken when transforming a normal vector to ensure that both its length and perpendicularity properties are maintained.

In general, if a point or (non-normal) vector can be rotated from space A to space B via the  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}$ , then a normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$  will be transformed from space A to space B via the *inverse transpose* of that matrix,  $(\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}^{-1})^T$ . We will not prove or derive this result here (see [32, Section 3.5] for an excellent derivation). However, we will observe that if the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}$  contains only uniform scale and no shear, then the angles between all surfaces and vectors in space B will be the same as they were in space A. In this case, the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}$  will actually work just fine for any vector, normal or non-normal. However, if  $\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}$  contains nonuniform scale or shear (i.e., is *non-orthogonal*), then the angles between surfaces and vectors are *not* preserved when moving from space A to space B. A vector that was normal to a surface in space A will not necessarily be perpendicular to that surface in space B. The inverse transpose operation accounts for this distortion, bringing normal vectors back into perpendicularity with their surfaces even when the transformation involves nonuniform scale or shear. Another way of looking at this is that the inverse transpose is required because a surface normal is really a *pseudovector* rather than a regular vector (see Section 5.2.4.9).

### 5.3.12 Storing Matrices in Memory

In the C and C++ languages, a two-dimensional array is often used to store a matrix. Recall that in C/C++ two-dimensional array syntax, the first subscript is the row and the second is the column, and the column index varies fastest as you move through memory sequentially.

```
float m[4][4]; // [row] [col], col varies fastest

// "flatten" the array to demonstrate ordering
float* pm = &m[0][0];
ASSERT( &pm[0] == &m[0][0] );
ASSERT( &pm[1] == &m[0][1] );
ASSERT( &pm[2] == &m[0][2] );
// etc.
```

We have two choices when storing a matrix in a two-dimensional C/C++ array. We can either

1. store the vectors  $(\mathbf{i}_C, \mathbf{j}_C, \mathbf{k}_C, \mathbf{t}_C)$  *contiguously* in memory (i.e., each row contains a single vector), or
2. store the vectors *strided* in memory (i.e., each column contains one vector).

The benefit of approach (1) is that we can address any one of the four vectors by simply indexing into the matrix and interpreting the four contiguous values we find there as a 4-element vector. This layout also has the benefit of matching up exactly with *row vector* matrix equations (which is another reason why I've selected row vector notation for this book). Approach (2) is sometimes necessary when doing fast matrix-vector multiplies using a vector-enabled (SIMD) microprocessor, as we'll see later in this chapter. In most game engines I've personally encountered, matrices are stored using approach (1), with the *vectors* in the *rows* of the two-dimensional C/C++ array. This is shown below:

```
float M[4][4];  
  
M[0][0]=ix;  M[0][1]=iy;  M[0][2]=iz;  M[0][3]=0.0f;  
M[1][0]=jx;  M[1][1]=jy;  M[1][2]=jz;  M[1][3]=0.0f;  
M[2][0]=kx;  M[2][1]=ky;  M[2][2]=kz;  M[2][3]=0.0f;  
M[3][0]=tx;  M[3][1]=ty;  M[3][2]=tz;  M[3][3]=1.0f;
```

The matrix looks like this when viewed in a debugger:

```
M[][]  
[0]  
  [0] ix  
  [1] iy  
  [2] iz  
  [3] 0.0000  
[1]  
  [0] jx  
  [1] jy  
  [2] jz  
  [3] 0.0000  
[2]  
  [0] kx  
  [1] ky  
  [2] kz  
  [3] 0.0000  
[3]  
  [0] tx  
  [1] ty  
  [2] tz  
  [3] 1.0000
```

One easy way to determine which layout your engine uses is to find a function that builds a  $4 \times 4$  translation matrix. (Every good 3D math library provides such a function.) You can then inspect the source code to see where the elements of the  $\mathbf{t}$  vector are being stored. If you don't have access to the source code of your math library (which is pretty rare in the game industry), you can always call the function with an easy-to-recognize translation like  $(4, 3, 2)$ , and then inspect the resulting matrix. If row 3 contains the values  $4.0f$ ,  $3.0f$ ,  $2.0f$ ,  $1.0f$ , then the vectors are in the rows, otherwise the vectors are in the columns.

## 5.4 Quaternions

We've seen that a  $3 \times 3$  matrix can be used to represent an arbitrary rotation in three dimensions. However, a matrix is not always an ideal representation of a rotation, for a number of reasons:

1. We need nine floating-point values to represent a rotation, which seems excessive considering that we only have three degrees of freedom—pitch, yaw and roll.
2. Rotating a vector requires a vector-matrix multiplication, which involves three dot products, or a total of nine multiplications and six additions. We would like to find a rotational representation that is less expensive to calculate, if possible.
3. In games and computer graphics, it's often important to be able to find rotations that are some percentage of the way between two known rotations. For example, if we are to smoothly animate a camera from some starting orientation A to some final orientation B over the course of a few seconds, we need to be able to find lots of intermediate rotations between A and B over the course of the animation. It turns out to be difficult to do this when the A and B orientations are expressed as matrices.

Thankfully, there is a rotational representation that overcomes these three problems. It is a mathematical object known as a *quaternion*. A quaternion looks a lot like a four-dimensional vector, but it *behaves* quite differently. We usually write quaternions using non-italic, non-boldface type, like this:  $\mathbf{q} = [q_x \ q_y \ q_z \ q_w]$ .

Quaternions were developed by Sir William Rowan Hamilton in 1843 as an extension to the complex numbers. (Specifically, a quaternion may be interpreted as a four-dimensional complex number, with a single real axis

and three imaginary axes represented by the imaginary numbers  $i$ ,  $j$  and  $k$ . As such, a quaternion can be written in “complex form” as follows:  $\mathbf{q} = iq_x + jq_y + kq_z + q_w$ .) Quaternions were first used to solve problems in the area of mechanics. Technically speaking, a quaternion obeys a set of rules known as a four-dimensional *normed division algebra* over the real numbers. Thankfully, we won’t need to understand the details of these rather esoteric algebraic rules. For our purposes, it will suffice to know that the *unit-length* quaternions (i.e., all quaternions obeying the constraint  $q_x^2 + q_y^2 + q_z^2 + q_w^2 = 1$ ) represent three-dimensional rotations.

There are a lot of great papers, web pages and presentations on quaternions available on the web for further reading. Here’s one of my favorites: [http://graphics.ucsd.edu/courses/cse169\\_w05/CSE169\\_04.ppt](http://graphics.ucsd.edu/courses/cse169_w05/CSE169_04.ppt).

#### 5.4.1 Unit Quaternions as 3D Rotations

A unit quaternion can be visualized as a three-dimensional vector plus a fourth scalar coordinate. The vector part  $\mathbf{q}_V$  is the unit axis of rotation, scaled by the sine of the half-angle of the rotation. The scalar part  $q_S$  is the cosine of the half-angle. So the unit quaternion  $\mathbf{q}$  can be written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{q} &= [\mathbf{q}_V \quad q_S] \\ &= [\mathbf{a} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \quad \cos \frac{\theta}{2}],\end{aligned}$$

where  $\mathbf{a}$  is a unit vector along the axis of rotation, and  $\theta$  is the angle of rotation. The direction of the rotation follows the *right-hand rule*, so if your thumb points in the direction of  $\mathbf{a}$ , positive rotations will be in the direction of your curved fingers.

Of course, we can also write  $\mathbf{q}$  as a simple four-element vector:

$$\mathbf{q} = [q_x \quad q_y \quad q_z \quad q_w], \text{ where}$$

$$\begin{aligned}q_x &= q_{V_x} = a_x \sin \frac{\theta}{2}, \\ q_y &= q_{V_y} = a_y \sin \frac{\theta}{2}, \\ q_z &= q_{V_z} = a_z \sin \frac{\theta}{2}, \\ q_w &= q_S = \cos \frac{\theta}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

A unit quaternion is very much like an axis+angle representation of a rotation (i.e., a four-element vector of the form  $[\mathbf{a} \quad \theta]$ ). However, quaternions are more convenient mathematically than their axis+angle counterparts, as we shall see below.

## 5.4.2 Quaternion Operations

Quaternions support some of the familiar operations from vector algebra, such as magnitude and vector addition. However, we must remember that the sum of two unit quaternions does not represent a 3D rotation, because such a quaternion would not be of unit length. As a result, you won't see any quaternion sums in a game engine, unless they are scaled in some way to preserve the unit length requirement.

### 5.4.2.1 Quaternion Multiplication

One of the most important operations we will perform on quaternions is that of multiplication. Given two quaternions  $p$  and  $q$  representing two rotations  $P$  and  $Q$ , respectively, the product  $pq$  represents the composite rotation (i.e., rotation  $Q$  followed by rotation  $P$ ). There are actually quite a few different kinds of quaternion multiplication, but we'll restrict this discussion to the variety used in conjunction with 3D rotations, namely the Grassman product. Using this definition, the product  $pq$  is defined as follows:

$$pq = [(p_S \mathbf{q}_V + q_S \mathbf{p}_V + \mathbf{p}_V \times \mathbf{q}_V) \quad (p_S q_S - \mathbf{p}_V \cdot \mathbf{q}_V)].$$

Notice how the Grassman product is defined in terms of a vector part, which ends up in the  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  components of the resultant quaternion, and a scalar part, which ends up in the  $w$  component.

### 5.4.2.2 Conjugate and Inverse

The *inverse* of a quaternion  $q$  is denoted  $q^{-1}$  and is defined as a quaternion that, when multiplied by the original, yields the scalar 1 (i.e.,  $qq^{-1} = 0\mathbf{i} + 0\mathbf{j} + 0\mathbf{k} + 1$ ). The quaternion  $[0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1]$  represents a zero rotation (which makes sense since  $\sin(0) = 0$  for the first three components, and  $\cos(0) = 1$  for the last component).

In order to calculate the inverse of a quaternion, we must first define a quantity known as the *conjugate*. This is usually denoted  $q^*$  and it is defined as follows:

$$q^* = [-\mathbf{q}_V \quad q_S].$$

In other words, we negate the vector part but leave the scalar part unchanged.

Given this definition of the quaternion conjugate, the inverse quaternion  $q^{-1}$  is defined as follows:

$$q^{-1} = \frac{q^*}{|q|^2}.$$

Our quaternions are always of unit length (i.e.,  $|q| = 1$ ), because they represent 3D rotations. So, for our purposes, the inverse and the conjugate are identical:

$$q^{-1} = q^* = [-\mathbf{q}_V \quad q_S] \quad \text{when} \quad |q| = 1.$$

This fact is incredibly useful, because it means we can always avoid doing the (relatively expensive) division by the squared magnitude when inverting a quaternion, as long as we know a priori that the quaternion is normalized. This also means that inverting a quaternion is generally much faster than inverting a  $3 \times 3$  matrix—a fact that you may be able to leverage in some situations when optimizing your engine.

### Conjugate and Inverse of a Product

The conjugate of a quaternion product ( $pq$ ) is equal to the reverse product of the conjugates of the individual quaternions:

$$(pq)^* = q^*p^*.$$

Likewise, the inverse of a quaternion product is equal to the reverse product of the inverses of the individual quaternions:

$$(pq)^{-1} = q^{-1}p^{-1}. \quad (5.8)$$

This is analogous to the reversal that occurs when transposing or inverting matrix products.

### 5.4.3 Rotating Vectors with Quaternions

How can we apply a quaternion rotation to a vector? The first step is to rewrite the vector in *quaternion form*. A vector is a sum involving the unit basis vectors  $\mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{j}$  and  $\mathbf{k}$ . A quaternion is a sum involving  $\mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{j}$  and  $\mathbf{k}$ , but with a fourth scalar term as well. So it makes sense that a vector can be written as a quaternion with its scalar term  $q_S$  equal to zero. Given the vector  $\mathbf{v}$ , we can write a corresponding quaternion  $\mathbf{v} = [\mathbf{v} \quad 0] = [v_x \quad v_y \quad v_z \quad 0]$ .

In order to rotate a vector  $\mathbf{v}$  by a quaternion  $q$ , we premultiply the vector (written in its quaternion form  $\mathbf{v}$ ) by  $q$  and then post-multiply it by the *inverse* quaternion  $q^{-1}$ . Therefore, the rotated vector  $\mathbf{v}'$  can be found as follows:

$$\mathbf{v}' = \text{rotate}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{q}\mathbf{v}\mathbf{q}^{-1}.$$

This is equivalent to using the quaternion conjugate, because our quaternions are always unit length:

$$\mathbf{v}' = \text{rotate}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{q}\mathbf{v}\mathbf{q}^*. \quad (5.9)$$

The rotated vector  $\mathbf{v}'$  is obtained by simply extracting it from its quaternion form  $\mathbf{v}'$ .

Quaternion multiplication can be useful in all sorts of situations in real games. For example, let's say that we want to find a unit vector describing the direction in which an aircraft is flying. We'll further assume that in our game, the positive  $z$ -axis always points toward the front of an object by convention. So the forward unit vector of any object *in model space* is always  $\mathbf{F}_M \equiv [0 \ 0 \ 1]$  by definition. To transform this vector into world space, we can simply take our aircraft's orientation quaternion  $\mathbf{q}$  and use it with Equation (5.9) to rotate our model-space vector  $\mathbf{F}_M$  into its world-space equivalent  $\mathbf{F}_W$  (after converting these vectors into quaternion form, of course):

$$\mathbf{F}_W = \mathbf{q} \mathbf{F}_M \mathbf{q}^{-1} = \mathbf{q} [0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0] \mathbf{q}^{-1}.$$

#### 5.4.3.1 Quaternion Concatenation

Rotations can be *concatenated* in exactly the same way that matrix-based transformations can, by multiplying the quaternions together. For example, consider three distinct rotations, represented by the quaternions  $\mathbf{q}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{q}_2$  and  $\mathbf{q}_3$ , with matrix equivalents  $\mathbf{R}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{R}_2$  and  $\mathbf{R}_3$ . We want to apply rotation 1 first, followed by rotation 2 and finally rotation 3. The composite rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_{\text{net}}$  can be found and applied to a vector  $\mathbf{v}$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{R}_{\text{net}} &= \mathbf{R}_1 \mathbf{R}_2 \mathbf{R}_3; \\ \mathbf{v}' &= \mathbf{v} \mathbf{R}_1 \mathbf{R}_2 \mathbf{R}_3 \\ &= \mathbf{v} \mathbf{R}_{\text{net}}.\end{aligned}$$

Likewise, the composite rotation quaternion  $\mathbf{q}_{\text{net}}$  can be found and applied to vector  $\mathbf{v}$  (in its quaternion form,  $\mathbf{v}$ ) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{q}_{\text{net}} &= \mathbf{q}_3 \mathbf{q}_2 \mathbf{q}_1; \\ \mathbf{v}' &= \mathbf{q}_3 \mathbf{q}_2 \mathbf{q}_1 \mathbf{v} \mathbf{q}_1^{-1} \mathbf{q}_2^{-1} \mathbf{q}_3^{-1} \\ &= \mathbf{q}_{\text{net}} \mathbf{v} \mathbf{q}_{\text{net}}^{-1}.\end{aligned}$$

Notice how the quaternion product must be performed in an order *opposite* to that in which the rotations are applied ( $\mathbf{q}_3 \mathbf{q}_2 \mathbf{q}_1$ ). This is because quaternion rotations always multiply on *both* sides of the vector, with the uninverted quaternions on the left and the inverted quaternions on the right. As we saw in Equation (5.8), the inverse of a quaternion product is the reverse product of the individual inverses, so the uninverted quaternions read right-to-left while the inverted quaternions read left-to-right.

#### 5.4.4 Quaternion-Matrix Equivalence

We can convert any 3D rotation freely between a  $3 \times 3$  matrix representation  $\mathbf{R}$  and a quaternion representation  $\mathbf{q}$ . If we let  $\mathbf{q} = [\mathbf{q}_V \ \mathbf{q}_S] = [q_{Vx} \ q_{Vy} \ q_{Vz} \ q_S] = [x \ y \ z \ w]$ , then we can find  $\mathbf{R}$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{R} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 - 2y^2 - 2z^2 & 2xy + 2zw & 2xz - 2yw \\ 2xy - 2zw & 1 - 2x^2 - 2z^2 & 2yz + 2xw \\ 2xz + 2yw & 2yz - 2xw & 1 - 2x^2 - 2y^2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Likewise, given  $\mathbf{R}$ , we can find  $\mathbf{q}$  as follows (where  $\mathbf{q}[0] = q_{Vx}$ ,  $\mathbf{q}[1] = q_{Vy}$ ,  $\mathbf{q}[2] = q_{Vz}$  and  $\mathbf{q}[3] = q_S$ ). This code assumes that we are using row vectors in C/C++ (i.e., that the rows of the matrix correspond to the rows of the matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  shown above). The code was adapted from a *Gamasutra* article by Nick Bobic, published on July 5, 1998, which is available here: [http://www.gamasutra.com/view/feature/3278/rotating\\_objects\\_using\\_quaternions.php](http://www.gamasutra.com/view/feature/3278/rotating_objects_using_quaternions.php). For a discussion of some even faster methods for converting a matrix to a quaternion, leveraging various assumptions about the nature of the matrix, see <http://www.euclideanspace.com/maths/geometry/rotations/conversions/matrixToQuaternion/index.htm>.

```

void matrixToQuaternion(
    const float  R[3][3],
    float        q[/*4*/])
{
    float trace = R[0][0] + R[1][1] + R[2][2];

    // check the diagonal
    if (trace > 0.0f)
    {
        float s = sqrt(trace + 1.0f);
        q[3] = s * 0.5f;

        float t = 0.5f / s;
        q[0] = (R[2][1] - R[1][2]) * t;
        q[1] = (R[0][2] - R[2][0]) * t;
        q[2] = (R[1][0] - R[0][1]) * t;
    }
    else
    {
        // diagonal is negative
        int i = 0;
        if (R[1][1] > R[0][0]) i = 1;
        if (R[2][2] > R[i][i]) i = 2;

        static const int NEXT[3] = {1, 2, 0};

```

```

int j = NEXT[i];
int k = NEXT[j];

float s = sqrt((R[i][j]
- (R[j][j] + R[k][k]))
+ 1.0f);

q[i] = s * 0.5f;

float t;
if (s != 0.0) t = 0.5f / s;
else t = s;

q[3] = (R[k][j] - R[j][k]) * t;
q[j] = (R[j][i] + R[i][j]) * t;
q[k] = (R[k][i] + R[i][k]) * t;
}
}
}

```

Let's pause for a moment to consider notational conventions. In this book, we write our quaternions like this:  $[x \ y \ z \ w]$ . This differs from the  $[w \ x \ y \ z]$  convention found in many academic papers on quaternions as an extension of the complex numbers. Our convention arises from an effort to be consistent with the common practice of writing homogeneous vectors as  $[x \ y \ z \ 1]$  (with the  $w = 1$  at the end). The academic convention arises from the parallels between quaternions and complex numbers. Regular two-dimensional complex numbers are typically written in the form  $c = a + jb$ , and the corresponding quaternion notation is  $q = w + ix + jy + kz$ . So be careful out there—make sure you know which convention is being used before you dive into a paper head first!

#### 5.4.5 Rotational Linear Interpolation

Rotational interpolation has many applications in the animation, dynamics and camera systems of a game engine. With the help of quaternions, rotations can be easily interpolated just as vectors and points can.

The easiest and least computationally intensive approach is to perform a four-dimensional vector LERP on the quaternions you wish to interpolate. Given two quaternions  $q_A$  and  $q_B$  representing rotations A and B, we can find an intermediate rotation  $q_{LERP}$  that is  $\beta$  percent of the way from A to B as fol-

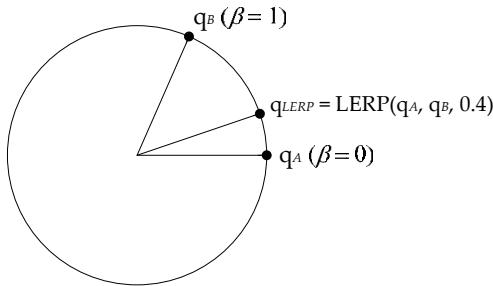


Figure 5.23. Linear interpolation (LERP) between two quaternions  $q_A$  and  $q_B$ .

lows:

$$q_{\text{LERP}} = \text{LERP}(q_A, q_B, \beta) = \frac{(1 - \beta)q_A + \beta q_B}{|(1 - \beta)q_A + \beta q_B|}$$

$$= \text{normalize} \left( \begin{bmatrix} (1 - \beta)q_{Ax} + \beta q_{Bx} \\ (1 - \beta)q_{Ay} + \beta q_{By} \\ (1 - \beta)q_{Az} + \beta q_{Bz} \\ (1 - \beta)q_{Aw} + \beta q_{Bw} \end{bmatrix}^T \right).$$

Notice that the resultant interpolated quaternion had to be renormalized. This is necessary because the LERP operation does not preserve a vector's length in general.

Geometrically,  $q_{\text{LERP}} = \text{LERP}(q_A, q_B, \beta)$  is the quaternion whose orientation lies  $\beta$  percent of the way from orientation A to orientation B, as shown (in two dimensions for clarity) in Figure 5.23. Mathematically, the LERP operation results in a *weighted average* of the two quaternions, with weights  $(1 - \beta)$  and  $\beta$  (notice that these two weights sum to 1).

#### 5.4.5.1 Spherical Linear Interpolation

The problem with the LERP operation is that it does not take account of the fact that quaternions are really points on a four-dimensional *hypersphere*. A LERP effectively interpolates along a *chord* of the hypersphere, rather than along the surface of the hypersphere itself. This leads to rotation animations that do not have a constant angular speed when the parameter  $\beta$  is changing at a constant rate. The rotation will appear slower at the end points and faster in the middle of the animation.

To solve this problem, we can use a variant of the LERP operation known as *spherical linear interpolation*, or SLERP for short. The SLERP operation uses sines and cosines to interpolate along a *great circle* of the 4D hypersphere,

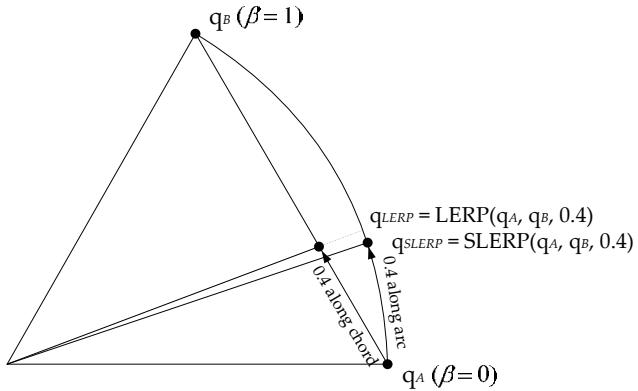


Figure 5.24. Spherical linear interpolation along a great circle arc of a 4D hypersphere.

rather than along a chord, as shown in Figure 5.24. This results in a constant angular speed when  $\beta$  varies at a constant rate.

The formula for SLERP is similar to the LERP formula, but the weights  $(1 - \beta)$  and  $\beta$  are replaced with weights  $w_p$  and  $w_q$  involving sines of the angle between the two quaternions.

$$\text{SLERP}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \beta) = w_p \mathbf{p} + w_q \mathbf{q},$$

where

$$w_p = \frac{\sin(1 - \beta)\theta}{\sin \theta},$$

$$w_q = \frac{\sin \beta\theta}{\sin \theta}.$$

The cosine of the angle between any two unit-length quaternions can be found by taking their four-dimensional dot product. Once we know  $\cos \theta$ , we can calculate the angle  $\theta$  and the various sines we need quite easily:

$$\cos \theta = \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q} = p_x q_x + p_y q_y + p_z q_z + p_w q_w;$$

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}(\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{q}).$$

#### 5.4.5.2 To SLERP or Not to SLERP (That's Still the Question)

The jury is still out on whether or not to use SLERP in a game engine. Jonathan Blow wrote a great article positing that SLERP is too expensive, and LERP's quality is not really that bad—therefore, he suggests, we should understand SLERP but avoid it in our game engines (see <http://number-none.com/product/Understanding%20Slerp,%20Then%20Not%20Using%20It/index.html>).

On the other hand, some of my colleagues at Naughty Dog have found that a good SLERP implementation performs nearly as well as LERP. (For example, on the PS3’s SPUs, Naughty Dog’s Ice team’s implementation of SLERP takes 20 cycles per joint, while its LERP implementation takes 16.25 cycles per joint.) Therefore, I’d personally recommend that you profile your SLERP and LERP implementations before making any decisions. If the performance hit for SLERP isn’t unacceptable, I say go for it, because it may result in slightly better-looking animations. But if your SLERP is slow (and you cannot speed it up, or you just don’t have the time to do so), then LERP is usually good enough for most purposes.

## 5.5 Comparison of Rotational Representations

We’ve seen that rotations can be represented in quite a few different ways. This section summarizes the most common rotational representations and outlines their pros and cons. No one representation is ideal in all situations. Using the information in this section, you should be able to select the best representation for a particular application.

### 5.5.1 Euler Angles

We briefly explored *Euler angles* in Section 5.3.9.1. A rotation represented via Euler angles consists of three scalar values: yaw, pitch and roll. These quantities are sometimes represented by a 3D vector  $[\theta_Y \ \theta_P \ \theta_R]$ .

The benefits of this representation are its simplicity, its small size (three floating-point numbers) and its intuitive nature—yaw, pitch and roll are easy to visualize. You can also easily interpolate simple rotations about a single axis. For example, it’s trivial to find intermediate rotations between two distinct yaw angles by linearly interpolating the scalar  $\theta_Y$ . However, Euler angles cannot be interpolated easily when the rotation is about an arbitrarily oriented axis.

In addition, Euler angles are prone to a condition known as *gimbal lock*. This occurs when a 90-degree rotation causes one of the three principal axes to “collapse” onto another principal axis. For example, if you rotate by 90 degrees about the  $x$ -axis, the  $y$ -axis collapses onto the  $z$ -axis. This prevents any further rotations about the original  $y$ -axis, because rotations about  $y$  and  $z$  have effectively become equivalent.

Another problem with Euler angles is that the order in which the rotations are performed around each axis matters. The order could be PYR, YPR, RYP and so on, and each ordering may produce a different composite rotation. No

one standard rotation order exists for Euler angles across all disciplines (although certain disciplines do follow specific conventions). So the rotation angles  $[\theta_Y \ \theta_P \ \theta_R]$  do not uniquely define a particular rotation—you need to know the rotation order to interpret these numbers properly.

A final problem with Euler angles is that they depend upon the mapping from the  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -axes onto the natural *front*, *left/right* and *up* directions for the object being rotated. For example, yaw is always defined as rotation about the *up* axis, but without additional information we cannot tell whether this corresponds to a rotation about  $x$ ,  $y$  or  $z$ .

### 5.5.2 $3 \times 3$ Matrices

A  $3 \times 3$  matrix is a convenient and effective rotational representation for a number of reasons. It does not suffer from gimbal lock, and it can represent arbitrary rotations uniquely. Rotations can be applied to points and vectors in a straightforward manner via matrix multiplication (i.e., a series of dot products). Most CPUs and all GPUs now have built-in support for hardware-accelerated dot products and matrix multiplication. Rotations can also be reversed by finding an inverse matrix, which for a pure rotation matrix is the same thing as finding the transpose—a trivial operation. And  $4 \times 4$  matrices offer a way to represent arbitrary affine transformations—rotations, translations and scaling—in a totally consistent way.

However, rotation matrices are not particularly intuitive. Looking at a big table of numbers doesn't help one picture the corresponding transformation in three-dimensional space. Also, rotation matrices are not easily interpolated. Finally, a rotation matrix takes up a lot of storage (nine floating-point numbers) relative to Euler angles (three floats).

### 5.5.3 Axis + Angle

We can represent rotations as a unit vector, defining the axis of rotation plus a scalar for the angle of rotation. This is known as an *axis+angle* representation, and it is sometimes denoted by the four-dimensional vector  $[\mathbf{a} \ \theta] = [a_x \ a_y \ a_z \ \theta]$ , where  $\mathbf{a}$  is the axis of rotation and  $\theta$  the angle in radians. In a right-handed coordinate system, the direction of a positive rotation is defined by the right-hand rule, while in a left-handed system, we use the left-hand rule instead.

The benefits of the axis+angle representation are that it is reasonably intuitive and also compact. (It only requires four floating-point numbers, as opposed to the nine required for a  $3 \times 3$  matrix.)

One important limitation of the axis+angle representation is that rotations cannot be easily interpolated. Also, rotations in this format cannot be applied to points and vectors in a straightforward way—one needs to convert the axis+angle representation into a matrix or quaternion first.

### 5.5.4 Quaternions

As we've seen, a unit-length quaternion can represent 3D rotations in a manner analogous to the axis+angle representation. The primary difference between the two representations is that a quaternion's axis of rotation is scaled by the sine of the half-angle of rotation, and instead of storing the angle in the fourth component of the vector, we store the cosine of the half-angle.

The quaternion formulation provides two immense benefits over the axis+angle representation. First, it permits rotations to be concatenated and applied directly to points and vectors via quaternion multiplication. Second, it permits rotations to be easily interpolated via simple LERP or SLERP operations. Its small size (four floating-point numbers) is also a benefit over the matrix formulation.

### 5.5.5 SRT Transformations

By itself, a quaternion can only represent a rotation, whereas a  $4 \times 4$  matrix can represent an arbitrary affine transformation (rotation, translation and scale). When a quaternion is combined with a *translation vector* and a *scale factor* (either a scalar for uniform scaling or a vector for nonuniform scaling), then we have a viable alternative to the  $4 \times 4$  matrix representation of affine transformations. We sometimes call this an *SRT transform*, because it contains a scale factor, a rotation quaternion and a translation vector. (It's also sometimes called an *SQT*, because the rotation is a quaternion.)

$$\text{SRT} = [s \quad \mathbf{q} \quad \mathbf{t}] \quad (\text{uniform scale } s),$$

or

$$\text{SRT} = [\mathbf{s} \quad \mathbf{q} \quad \mathbf{t}] \quad (\text{nonuniform scale vector } \mathbf{s}).$$

SRT transforms are widely used in computer animation because of their smaller size (eight floats for uniform scale, or ten floats for nonuniform scale, as opposed to the 12 floating-point numbers needed for a  $4 \times 3$  matrix) and their ability to be easily interpolated. The translation vector and scale factor are interpolated via LERP, and the quaternion can be interpolated with either LERP or SLERP.

### 5.5.6 Dual Quaternions

A *rigid transformation* is a transformation involving a rotation and a translation—a “corkscrew” motion. Such transformations are prevalent in animation and robotics. A rigid transformation can be represented using a mathematical object known as a *dual quaternion*. The dual quaternion representation offers a number of benefits over the typical vector-quaternion representation. The key benefit is that linear interpolation blending can be performed in a constant-speed, shortest-path, coordinate-invariant manner, similar to using LERP for translation vectors and SLERP for rotational quaternions (see Section 5.4.5.1), but in a way that is easily generalizable to blends involving three or more transforms.

A dual quaternion is like an ordinary quaternion, except that its four components are *dual numbers* instead of regular real-valued numbers. A dual number can be written as the sum of a non-dual part and a dual part as follows:  $\hat{a} = a + \varepsilon b$ . Here  $\varepsilon$  is a magical number called the *dual unit*, defined in such a way that  $\varepsilon^2 = 0$  (yet without  $\varepsilon$  itself being zero). This is analogous to the imaginary number  $j = \sqrt{-1}$  used when writing a complex number as the sum of a real and an imaginary part:  $c = a + jb$ .

Because each dual number can be represented by two real numbers (the non-dual and dual parts,  $a$  and  $b$ ), a dual quaternion can be represented by an eight-element vector. It can also be represented as the sum of two ordinary quaternions, where the second one is multiplied by the dual unit, as follows:  $\hat{q} = q_a + \varepsilon q_b$ .

A full discussion of dual numbers and dual quaternions is beyond our scope here. However, the excellent paper entitled, “Dual Quaternions for Rigid Transformation Blending” by Kavan et al. outlines the theory and practice of using dual quaternions to represent rigid transformations—it is available online at <https://bit.ly/2vjD5sz>. Note that in this paper, a dual number is written in the form  $\hat{a} = a_0 + \varepsilon a_\varepsilon$ , whereas I have used  $a + \varepsilon b$  above to underscore the similarity between dual numbers and complex numbers.<sup>1</sup>

### 5.5.7 Rotations and Degrees of Freedom

The term “*degrees of freedom*” (or *DOF* for short) refers to the number of mutually independent ways in which an object’s physical state (position and orientation) can change. You may have encountered the phrase “six degrees of

---

<sup>1</sup>Personally I would have preferred the symbol  $a_1$  over  $a_0$ , so that a dual number would be written  $\hat{a} = (1)a_1 + (\varepsilon)a_\varepsilon$ . Just as when we plot a complex number in the complex plane, we can think of the real unit as a “basis vector” along the real axis, and the dual unit  $\varepsilon$  as a “basis vector” along the dual axis.

“freedom” in fields such as mechanics, robotics and aeronautics. This refers to the fact that a three-dimensional object (whose motion is not artificially constrained) has three degrees of freedom in its translation (along the  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -axes) and three degrees of freedom in its rotation (about the  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -axes), for a total of six degrees of freedom.

The DOF concept will help us to understand how different rotational representations can employ different numbers of floating-point parameters, yet all specify rotations with only three degrees of freedom. For example, Euler angles require three floats, but axis+angle and quaternion representations use four floats, and a  $3 \times 3$  matrix takes up nine floats. How can these representations all describe 3-DOF rotations?

The answer lies in *constraints*. All 3D rotational representations employ three or more floating-point parameters, but some representations also have one or more constraints on those parameters. The constraints indicate that the parameters are not *independent*—a change to one parameter induces changes to the other parameters in order to maintain the validity of the constraint(s). If we subtract the number of constraints from the number of floating-point parameters, we arrive at the number of degrees of freedom—and this number should always be three for a 3D rotation:

$$N_{\text{DOF}} = N_{\text{parameters}} - N_{\text{constraints}}. \quad (5.10)$$

The following list shows Equation (5.10) in action for each of the rotational representations we’ve encountered in this book.

- *Euler Angles*. 3 parameters – 0 constraints = 3 DOF.
- *Axis+Angle*. 4 parameters – 1 constraint = 3 DOF.  
Constraint: Axis is constrained to be unit length.
- *Quaternion*. 4 parameters – 1 constraint = 3 DOF.  
Constraint: Quaternion is constrained to be unit length.
- *$3 \times 3$  Matrix*. 9 parameters – 6 constraints = 3 DOF.  
Constraints: All three rows and all three columns must be of unit length (when treated as three-element vectors).

## 5.6 Other Useful Mathematical Objects

As game engineers, we will encounter a host of other mathematical objects in addition to points, vectors, matrices and quaternions. This section briefly outlines the most common of these.

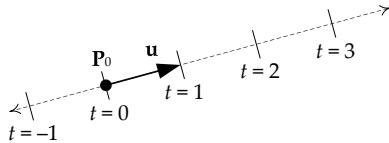


Figure 5.25. Parametric equation of a line.

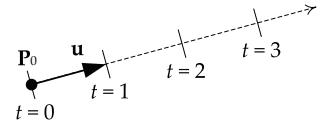


Figure 5.26. Parametric equation of a ray.

### 5.6.1 Lines, Rays and Line Segments

An infinite line can be represented by a point  $\mathbf{P}_0$  plus a unit vector  $\mathbf{u}$  in the direction of the line. A *parametric equation* of a line traces out every possible point  $\mathbf{P}$  along the line by starting at the initial point  $\mathbf{P}_0$  and moving an arbitrary distance  $t$  along the direction of the unit vector  $\mathbf{v}$ . The infinitely large set of points  $\mathbf{P}$  becomes a *vector function* of the scalar parameter  $t$ :

$$\mathbf{P}(t) = \mathbf{P}_0 + t \mathbf{u}, \quad \text{where } -\infty < t < \infty. \quad (5.11)$$

This is depicted in Figure 5.25.

A *ray* is a line that extends to infinity in only one direction. This is easily expressed as  $\mathbf{P}(t)$  with the constraint  $t \geq 0$ , as shown in Figure 5.26.

A *line segment* is bounded at both ends by  $\mathbf{P}_0$  and  $\mathbf{P}_1$ . It too can be represented by  $\mathbf{P}(t)$ , in either one of the following two ways (where  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{P}_1 - \mathbf{P}_0$ ,  $L = |\mathbf{L}|$  is the length of the line segment, and  $\mathbf{u} = (1/L)\mathbf{L}$  is a unit vector in the direction of  $\mathbf{L}$ ):

1.  $\mathbf{P}(t) = \mathbf{P}_0 + t \mathbf{u}$ , where  $0 \leq t \leq L$ , or
2.  $\mathbf{P}(t) = \mathbf{P}_0 + t \mathbf{L}$ , where  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ .

The latter format, depicted in Figure 5.27, is particularly convenient because the parameter  $t$  is normalized; in other words,  $t$  always goes from zero to one, no matter which particular line segment we are dealing with. This means we do not have to store the constraint  $L$  in a separate floating-point parameter; it is already encoded in the vector  $\mathbf{L} = L \mathbf{u}$  (which we have to store anyway).

### 5.6.2 Spheres

Spheres are ubiquitous in game engine programming. A sphere is typically defined as a center point  $\mathbf{C}$  plus a radius  $r$ , as shown in Figure 5.28. This packs nicely into a four-element vector,  $[C_x \ C_y \ C_z \ r]$ . As we saw when we discussed SIMD vector processing, there are distinct benefits to being able to pack data into a vector containing four 32-bit floats (i.e., a 128-bit package).

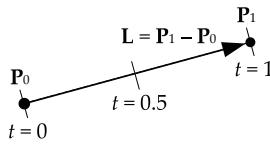
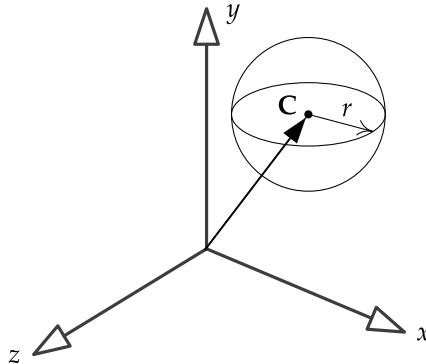
Figure 5.27. Parametric equation of a line segment, with normalized parameter  $t$ .

Figure 5.28. Point-radius representation of a sphere.

### 5.6.3 Planes

A *plane* is a 2D surface in 3D space. As you may recall from high-school algebra, the equation of a plane is often written as follows:

$$Ax + By + Cz + D = 0.$$

This equation is satisfied only for the locus of points  $\mathbf{P} = [x \ y \ z]$  that lie on the plane.

Planes can be represented by a point  $\mathbf{P}_0$  and a unit vector  $\mathbf{n}$  that is normal to the plane. This is sometimes called *point-normal form*, as depicted in Figure 5.29.

It's interesting to note that when the parameters  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  from the traditional plane equation are interpreted as a 3D vector, that vector lies in the direction of the plane normal. If the vector  $[A \ B \ C]$  is normalized to unit length, then the normalized vector  $[a \ b \ c] = \mathbf{n}$ , and the normalized parameter  $d = D/\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}$  is just the distance from the plane to the origin. The sign of  $d$  is positive if the plane's normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$  is pointing toward the origin (i.e., the origin is on the "front" side of the plane) and negative if the normal is pointing away from the origin (i.e., the origin is "behind" the plane).

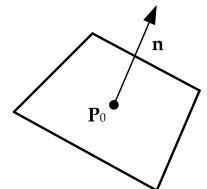


Figure 5.29. A plane in point-normal form.

Another way of looking at this is that the plane equation and the point-normal form are really just two ways of writing the same equation. Imagine testing whether or not an arbitrary point  $\mathbf{P} = [x \ y \ z]$  lies on the plane. To do this, we find the signed distance from point  $\mathbf{P}$  to the origin along the normal  $\mathbf{n} = [a \ b \ c]$ , and if this signed distance is equal to the signed distance  $d = -\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}_0$  from the plane from the origin, then  $\mathbf{P}$  must lie on the plane. So let's set them equal and expand some terms:

$$(\text{signed distance } \mathbf{P} \text{ to origin}) = (\text{signed distance plane to origin})$$

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}_0$$

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}_0 = 0$$

$$ax + by + cz - \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}_0 = 0$$

$$ax + by + cz + d = 0.$$

(5.12)

Equation (5.12) only holds when the point  $\mathbf{P}$  lies on the plane. But what happens when the point  $\mathbf{P}$  does *not* lie on the plane? In this case, the left-hand side of the plane equation ( $ax + by + cz$ , which is equal to  $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}$ ) tells how far “off” the point is from being on the plane. This expression calculates the difference between the distance from  $\mathbf{P}$  to the origin and the distance from the plane to the origin. In other words, the left-hand side of Equation (5.12) gives us the perpendicular distance  $h$  between the point and the plane! This is just another way to write Equation (5.2) from Section 5.2.4.7.

$$h = (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}_0) \cdot \mathbf{n};$$

$$h = ax + by + cz + d.$$

(5.13)

A plane can actually be packed into a four-element vector, much like a sphere can. To do so, we observe that to describe a plane uniquely, we need only the normal vector  $\mathbf{n} = [a \ b \ c]$  and the distance from the origin  $d$ . The four-element vector  $\mathbf{L} = [\mathbf{n} \ d] = [a \ b \ c \ d]$  is a compact and convenient way to represent and store a plane in memory. Note that when  $\mathbf{P}$  is written in homogeneous coordinates with  $w = 1$ , the equation  $(\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{P}) = 0$  is yet another way of writing  $(\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}) = -d$ . These equations are satisfied for all points  $\mathbf{P}$  that lie on the plane  $\mathbf{L}$ .

Planes defined in four-element vector form can be easily transformed from one coordinate space to another. Given a matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}$  that transforms points and (non-normal) vectors from space A to space B, we already know that to transform a *normal vector* such as the plane's  $\mathbf{n}$  vector, we need to use the inverse transpose of that matrix,  $(\mathbf{M}_{A \rightarrow B}^{-1})^T$ . So it shouldn't be a big surprise to learn that applying the inverse transpose of a matrix to a four-element plane vector  $\mathbf{L}$  will, in fact, correctly transform that plane from space A to space B. We won't derive or prove this result any further here, but a thorough explanation of why this little “trick” works is provided in Section 4.2.3 of [32].

### 5.6.4 Axis-Aligned Bounding Boxes (AABB)

An axis-aligned bounding box (AABB) is a 3D *cuboid* whose six rectangular faces are aligned with a particular coordinate frame's mutually orthogonal axes. As such, an AABB can be represented by a six-element vector containing the minimum and maximum coordinates along each of the 3 principal axes,  $[x_{\min}, y_{\min}, z_{\min}, x_{\max}, y_{\max}, z_{\max}]$ , or two points  $\mathbf{P}_{\min}$  and  $\mathbf{P}_{\max}$ .

This simple representation allows for a particularly convenient and inexpensive method of testing whether a point  $\mathbf{P}$  is inside or outside any given AABB. We simply test if all of the following conditions are true:

$$P_x \geq x_{\min} \text{ and } P_x \leq x_{\max} \text{ and}$$

$$P_y \geq y_{\min} \text{ and } P_y \leq y_{\max} \text{ and}$$

$$P_z \geq z_{\min} \text{ and } P_z \leq z_{\max}.$$

Because intersection tests are so speedy, AABBs are often used as an “early out” collision check; if the AABBs of two objects do not intersect, then there is no need to do a more detailed (and more expensive) collision test.

### 5.6.5 Oriented Bounding Boxes (OBB)

An oriented bounding box (OBB) is a *cuboid* that has been oriented so as to align in some logical way with the object it bounds. Usually an OBB aligns with the local-space axes of the object. Hence, it acts like an AABB in local space, although it may not necessarily align with the world-space axes.

Various techniques exist for testing whether or not a point lies within an OBB, but one common approach is to transform the point into the OBB's “aligned” coordinate system and then use an AABB intersection test as presented above.

### 5.6.6 Frusta

As shown in Figure 5.30, a *frustum* is a group of six planes that define a *truncated pyramid* shape. Frusta are commonplace in 3D rendering because they conveniently define the viewable region of the 3D world when rendered via a perspective projection from the point of view of a virtual camera. Four of the planes bound the edges of the screen space, while the other two planes represent the the near and far clipping planes (i.e., they define the minimum and maximum  $z$  coordinates possible for any visible point).

One convenient representation of a frustum is as an array of six planes, each of which is represented in point-normal form (i.e., one point and one normal vector per plane).

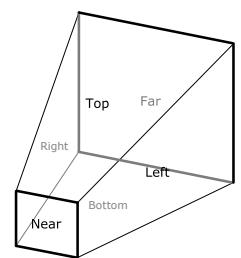


Figure 5.30. A frustum.

Testing whether a point lies inside a frustum is a bit involved, but the basic idea is to use dot products to determine whether the point lies on the front or back side of each plane. If it lies inside all six planes, it is inside the frustum.

A helpful trick is to transform the world-space point being tested by applying the camera's perspective projection to it. This takes the point from world space into a space known as *homogeneous clip space*. In this space, the frustum is just an axis-aligned cuboid (AABB). This permits much simpler in/out tests to be performed.

### 5.6.7 Convex Polyhedral Regions

A *convex polyhedral region* is defined by an arbitrary set of planes, all with normals pointing inward (or outward). The test for whether a point lies inside or outside the volume defined by the planes is relatively straightforward; it is similar to a frustum test, but with possibly more planes. Convex regions are very useful for implementing arbitrarily shaped trigger regions in games. Many engines employ this technique; for example, the Quake engine's ubiquitous *brushes* are just volumes bounded by planes in exactly this way.

## 5.7 Random Number Generation

Random numbers are ubiquitous in game engines, so it behooves us to have a brief look at the two most common random number generators (RNG), the linear congruential generator and the Mersenne Twister. It's important to realize that random number generators don't actually generate random numbers—they merely produce a complex, but totally deterministic, predefined sequence of values. For this reason, we call the sequences they produce *pseudorandom*, and technically speaking we should really call them “pseudorandom number generators” (PRNG). What differentiates a good generator from a bad one is how long the sequence of numbers is before it repeats (its *period*), and how well the sequences hold up under various well-known randomness tests.

### 5.7.1 Linear Congruential Generators

Linear congruential generators are a very fast and simple way to generate a sequence of pseudorandom numbers. Depending on the platform, this algorithm is sometimes used in the C standard library's `rand()` function. However, your mileage may vary, so don't count on `rand()` being based on any particular algorithm. If you want to be sure, you'll be better off implementing your own random number generator.

The linear congruential algorithm is explained in detail in the book *Numerical Recipes in C*, so I won't go into the details of it here.

What I will say is that this random number generator does not produce particularly high-quality pseudorandom sequences. Given the same initial seed value, the sequence is always exactly the same. The numbers produced do not meet many of the criteria widely accepted as desirable, such as a long period, low- and high-order bits that have similarly long periods, and absence of sequential or spatial correlation between the generated values.

## 5.7.2 Mersenne Twister

The Mersenne Twister pseudorandom number generator algorithm was designed specifically to improve upon the various problems of the linear congruential algorithm. Wikipedia provides the following description of the benefits of the algorithm:

1. It was designed to have a colossal period of  $2^{19937} - 1$  (the creators of the algorithm proved this property). In practice, there is little reason to use larger ones, as most applications do not require  $2^{19937}$  unique combinations ( $2^{19937} \approx 4.3 \times 10^{6001}$ ).
2. It has a very high order of dimensional equidistribution. Note that this means, by default, that there is negligible serial correlation between successive values in the output sequence.
3. It passes numerous tests for statistical randomness, including the stringent Diehard tests.
4. It is fast.

Various implementations of the Twister are available on the web, including a particularly cool one that uses SIMD vector instructions for an extra speed boost, called *SFMT* (SIMD-oriented fast Mersenne Twister). SFMT can be downloaded from <http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~m-mat/MT/SFMT/index.html>.

## 5.7.3 Mother-of-All, Xorshift and KISS99

In 1994, George Marsaglia, a computer scientist and mathematician best known for developing the Diehard battery of tests of randomness (<http://www.stat.fsu.edu/pub/diehard>), published a pseudorandom number generation algorithm that is much simpler to implement and runs faster than the Mersenne Twister algorithm. He claimed that it could produce a sequence

of 32-bit pseudorandom numbers with a period of non-repetition of  $2^{250}$ . It passed all of the Diehard tests and still stands today as one of the best pseudorandom number generators for high-speed applications. He called his algorithm the *Mother of All Pseudorandom Number Generators*, because it seemed to him to be the only random number generator one would ever need.

Later, Marsaglia published another generator called Xorshift, which is between Mersenne and Mother-of-All in terms of randomness, but runs slightly faster than Mother.

Marsaglia also developed a series of random number generators that are collectively called KISS (Keep It Simple Stupid). The KISS99 algorithm is a popular choice, because it has a large period ( $2^{123}$ ) and passes all tests in the TestU01 test suite (<https://bit.ly/2r5FmSP>).

You can read about George Marsaglia at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George\\_Marsaglia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Marsaglia), and about the Mother-of-All generator at <ftp://ftp.forth.org/pub/C/mother.c> and at <http://www.agner.org/random>. You can download a PDF of George's paper on Xorshift at <http://www.jstatsoft.org/v08/i14/paper>.

#### 5.7.4 PCG

Another very popular and high-quality family of pseudorandom number generators is called PCG. It works by combining a congruential generator for its state transitions (the "CG" in PCG) with permutation functions to generate its output (the "P" in PCG). You can read more about this family of PRNGs at <http://www.pcg-random.org/>.

# Part II

## Low-Level

### Engine Systems



Taylor & Francis  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 6

## Engine Support Systems

Every game engine requires some low-level support systems that manage mundane but crucial tasks, such as starting up and shutting down the engine, configuring engine and game features, managing the engine's memory usage, handling access to file system(s), providing access to the wide range of heterogeneous asset types used by the game (meshes, textures, animations, audio, etc.), and providing debugging tools for use by the game development team. This chapter will focus on the lowest-level support systems found in most game engines. In the chapters that follow, we will explore some of the larger core systems, including resource management, human interface devices and in-game debugging tools.

### 6.1 Subsystem Start-Up and Shut-Down

A game engine is a complex piece of software consisting of many interacting subsystems. When the engine first starts up, each subsystem must be configured and initialized in a specific order. Interdependencies between subsystems implicitly define the order in which they must be started—i.e., if subsystem B depends on subsystem A, then A will need to be started up before B can be initialized. Shut-down typically occurs in the reverse order, so B would shut down first, followed by A.

### 6.1.1 C++ Static Initialization Order (or Lack Thereof)

Since the programming language used in most modern game engines is C++, we should briefly consider whether C++'s native start-up and shut-down semantics can be leveraged in order to start up and shut down our engine's subsystems. In C++, global and static objects are constructed before the program's entry point (`main()`, or `WinMain()` under Windows) is called. However, these constructors are called in a totally unpredictable order. The destructors of global and static class instances are called after `main()` (or `WinMain()`) returns, and once again they are called in an unpredictable order. Clearly this behavior is not desirable for initializing and shutting down the subsystems of a game engine, or indeed any software system that has interdependencies between its global objects.

This is somewhat unfortunate, because a common design pattern for implementing major subsystems such as the ones that make up a game engine is to define a *singleton class* (often called a *manager*) for each subsystem. If C++ gave us more control over the order in which global and static class instances were constructed and destroyed, we could define our singleton instances as globals, without the need for dynamic memory allocation. For example, we could write:

```
class RenderManager
{
public:
    RenderManager()
    {
        // start up the manager...
    }

    ~RenderManager()
    {
        // shut down the manager...
    }

    // ...
};

// singleton instance
static RenderManager gRenderManager;
```

Alas, with no way to directly control construction and destruction order, this approach won't work.

### 6.1.1.1 Construct On Demand

There is one C++ “trick” we can leverage here. A static variable that is declared within a function will not be constructed before `main()` is called, but rather on the first invocation of that function. So if our global singleton is function-static, we can control the order of construction for our global singletons.

```
class RenderManager
{
public:
    // Get the one and only instance.
    static RenderManager& get()
    {
        // This function-static will be constructed on the
        // first call to this function.
        static RenderManager sSingleton;
        return sSingleton;
    }

    RenderManager()
    {
        // Start up other managers we depend on, by
        // calling their get() functions first...
        VideoManager::get();
        TextureManager::get();

        // Now start up the render manager.
        // ...
    }

    ~RenderManager()
    {
        // Shut down the manager.
        // ...
    }
};
```

You'll find that many software engineering textbooks suggest this design or a variant that involves dynamic allocation of the singleton as shown below.

```
static RenderManager& get()
{
    static RenderManager* gpSingleton = nullptr;
    if (gpSingleton == nullptr)
    {
        gpSingleton = new RenderManager;
```

```
    }
    ASSERT(gpSingleton);
    return *gpSingleton;
}
```

Unfortunately, this still gives us no way to control destruction order. It is possible that C++ will destroy one of the managers upon which the `RenderManager` depends for its shut-down procedure, prior to the `RenderManager`'s destructor being called. In addition, it's difficult to predict exactly when the `RenderManager` singleton will be constructed, because the construction will happen on the first call to `RenderManager::get()`—and who knows when that might be? Moreover, the programmers using the class may not be expecting an innocuous-looking `get()` function to do something expensive, like allocating and initializing a heavyweight singleton. This is an unpredictable and dangerous design. Therefore, we are prompted to resort to a more direct approach that gives us greater control.

### 6.1.2 A Simple Approach That Works

Let's presume that we want to stick with the idea of singleton managers for our subsystems. In this case, the simplest "brute-force" approach is to define explicit start-up and shut-down functions for each singleton manager class. These functions take the place of the constructor and destructor, and in fact we should arrange for the constructor and destructor to do *absolutely nothing*. That way, the start-up and shut-down functions can be explicitly called *in the required order* from within `main()` (or from some overarching singleton object that manages the engine as a whole). For example:

```
class RenderManager
{
public:
    RenderManager()
    {
        // do nothing
    }

    ~RenderManager()
    {
        // do nothing
    }

    void startUp()
    {
        // start up the manager...
    }
}
```

```
}

void shutDown()
{
    // shut down the manager...
}

// ...
};

class PhysicsManager    { /* similar... */ };
class AnimationManager  { /* similar... */ };
class MemoryManager     { /* similar... */ };
class FileSystemManager { /* similar... */ };

// ...

RenderManager           gRenderManager;
PhysicsManager          gPhysicsManager;
AnimationManager        gAnimationManager;
TextureManager          gTextureManager;
VideoManager             gVideoManager;
MemoryManager            gMemoryManager;
FileSystemManager        gFileSystemManager;
// ...

int main(int argc, const char* argv)
{
    // Start up engine systems in the correct order.
    gMemoryManager.startUp();
    gFileSystemManager.startUp();
    gVideoManager.startUp();
    gTextureManager.startUp();
    gRenderManager.startUp();
    gAnimationManager.startUp();
    gPhysicsManager.startUp();
    // ...

    // Run the game.
    gSimulationManager.run();

    // Shut everything down, in reverse order.
    // ...
    gPhysicsManager.shutDown();
}
```

```
    gAnimationManager.shutDown() ;  
    gRenderManager.shutDown() ;  
    gFileSystemManager.shutDown() ;  
    gMemoryManager.shutDown() ;  
  
    return 0;  
}
```

There are “more elegant” ways to accomplish this. For example, you could have each manager register itself into a global priority queue and then walk this queue to start up all the managers in the proper order. You could define the manager-to-manager dependency graph by having each manager explicitly list the other managers upon which it depends and then write some code to calculate the optimal start-up order given their interdependencies. You could use the construct-on-demand approach outlined above. In my experience, the brute-force approach always wins out, because of the following:

- It’s simple and easy to implement.
- It’s explicit. You can see and understand the start-up order immediately by just looking at the code.
- It’s easy to debug and maintain. If something isn’t starting early enough, or is starting too early, you can just move one line of code.

One minor disadvantage to the brute-force manual start-up and shut-down method is that you might accidentally shut things down in an order that isn’t strictly the reverse of the start-up order. But I wouldn’t lose any sleep over it. As long as you can start up and shut down your engine’s subsystems successfully, you’re golden.

### 6.1.3 Some Examples from Real Engines

Let’s take a brief look at some examples of engine start-up and shut-down taken from real game engines.

#### 6.1.3.1 OGRE

OGRE is by its authors’ admission a rendering engine, not a game engine per se. But by necessity it provides many of the low-level features found in full-fledged game engines, including a simple and elegant start-up and shut-down mechanism. Everything in OGRE is controlled by the singleton object `Ogre::Root`. It contains pointers to every other subsystem in OGRE and manages their creation and destruction. This makes it very easy for a programmer to start up OGRE—just new an instance of `Ogre::Root` and you’re done.

Here are a few excerpts from the OGRE source code so we can see what it's doing:

*OgreRoot.h*

```
class _OgreExport Root : public Singleton<Root>
{
    // <some code omitted...>

    // Singletons
    LogManager* mLogManager;
    ControllerManager* mControllerManager;
    SceneManagerEnumerator* mSceneManagerEnum;
    SceneManager* mCurrentSceneManager;
    DynLibManager* mDynLibManager;
    ArchiveManager* mArchiveManager;
    MaterialManager* mMaterialManager;
    MeshManager* mMeshManager;
    ParticleSystemManager* mParticleManager;
    SkeletonManager* mSkeletonManager;
    OverlayElementFactory* mPanelFactory;
    OverlayElementFactory* mBorderPanelFactory;
    OverlayElementFactory* mTextAreaFactory;
    OverlayManager* mOverlayManager;
    FontManager* mFontManager;
    ArchiveFactory *mZipArchiveFactory;
    ArchiveFactory *mFileSystemArchiveFactory;
    ResourceGroupManager* mResourceGroupManager;
    ResourceBackgroundQueue* mResourceBackgroundQueue;
    ShadowTextureManager* mShadowTextureManager;

    // etc.
};
```

*OgreRoot.cpp*

```
Root::Root(const String& pluginFileName,
           const String& configFileName,
           const String& logFileName) :
    mLogManager(0),
    mCurrentFrame(0),
    mFrameSmoothingTime(0.0f),
    mNextMovableObjectTypeFlag(1),
    mIsInitialised(false)
{
    // superclass will do singleton checking
    String msg;

    // Init
    mActiveRenderer = 0;
```

```
mVersion
    = StringConverter::toString(OGRE_VERSION_MAJOR)
    + "."
    + StringConverter::toString(OGRE_VERSION_MINOR)
    + "."
    + StringConverter::toString(OGRE_VERSION_PATCH)
    + OGRE_VERSION_SUFFIX + " "
    + "(" + OGRE_VERSION_NAME + ")";
mConfigFileName = configFileName;

// create log manager and default log file if there
// is no log manager yet
if(LogManager::getSingletonPtr() == 0)
{
    mLogManager = new LogManager();
    mLogManager->createLog(logFileName, true, true);
}

// dynamic library manager
mDynLibManager = new DynLibManager();
mArchiveManager = new ArchiveManager();

// ResourceGroupManager
mResourceGroupManager = new ResourceGroupManager();

// ResourceBackgroundQueue
mResourceBackgroundQueue
    = new ResourceBackgroundQueue();

// and so on...
}
```

OGRE provides a templated `Ogre::Singleton` base class from which all of its singleton (manager) classes derive. If you look at its implementation, you'll see that `Ogre::Singleton` does not use deferred construction but instead relies on `Ogre::Root` to explicitly new each singleton. As we discussed above, this is done to ensure that the singletons are created and destroyed in a well-defined order.

### 6.1.3.2 Naughty Dog's *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* Series

The engine created by Naughty Dog, Inc. for its *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series of games uses a similar explicit technique for starting up its subsystems. You'll notice by looking at the following code that engine start-up is not always a simple sequence of allocating singleton instances. A wide range of operating system services, third-party libraries and so on must all be started

up during engine initialization. Also, dynamic memory allocation is avoided wherever possible, so many of the singletons are statically allocated objects (e.g., `g_fileSystem`, `g_languageMgr`, etc.) It's not always pretty, but it gets the job done.

```
Err BigInit()
{
    init_exception_handler();

    U8* pPhysicsHeap = new(kAllocGlobal, kAlign16)
        U8 [ALLOCATION_GLOBAL_PHYS_HEAP];
    PhysicsAllocatorInit(pPhysicsHeap,
        ALLOCATION_GLOBAL_PHYS_HEAP);

    g_textDb.Init();
    g_textSubDb.Init();
    g_spuMgr.Init();

    g_drawScript.InitPlatform();

    PlatformUpdate();

    thread_t init_thr;
    thread_create(&init_thr, threadInit, 0, 30,
        64*1024, 0, "Init");

    char masterConfigFileName[256];
    snprintf(masterConfigFileName,
        sizeof(masterConfigFileName),
        MASTER_CFG_PATH);
    {
        Err err = ReadConfigFromFile(
            masterConfigFileName);
        if (err.Failed())
        {
            MsgErr("Config file not found (%s).\n",
                masterConfigFileName);
        }
    }

    memset(&g_discInfo, 0, sizeof(BootDiscInfo));
    int err1 = GetBootDiscInfo(&g_discInfo);
    Msg("GetBootDiscInfo() : 0x%x\n", err1);
    if (err1 == BOOTDISCINFO_RET_OK)
    {
        printf("titleId      : [%s]\n",
            g_discInfo.titleId);
```

```
    printf("parentalLevel : [%d] \n",
           g_discInfo.parentalLevel);
}

g_fileSystem.Init(g_gameInfo.m_onDisc);

g_languageMgr.Init();
if (g_shouldQuit) return Err::kOK;

// and so on...
```

## 6.2 Memory Management

As game developers, we are always trying to make our code run more quickly. The performance of any piece of software is dictated not only by the algorithms it employs, or the efficiency with which those algorithms are coded, but also by how the program *utilizes memory* (RAM). Memory affects performance in two ways:

1. *Dynamic memory allocation* via `malloc()` or C++'s global operator `new` is a very slow operation. We can improve the performance of our code by either avoiding dynamic allocation altogether or by making use of custom memory allocators that greatly reduce allocation costs.
2. On modern CPUs, the performance of a piece of software is often dominated by its *memory access patterns*. As we'll see, data that is located in small, *contiguous* blocks of memory can be operated on much more efficiently by the CPU than if that same data were to be spread out across a wide range of memory addresses. Even the most efficient algorithm, coded with the utmost care, can be brought to its knees if the data upon which it operates is not laid out efficiently in memory.

In this section, we'll learn how to optimize our code's memory utilization along these two axes.

### 6.2.1 Optimizing Dynamic Memory Allocation

Dynamic memory allocation via `malloc()` and `free()` or C++'s global `new` and `delete` operators—also known as *heap allocation*—is typically very slow. The high cost can be attributed to two main factors. First, a heap allocator is a general-purpose facility, so it must be written to handle any allocation size, from one byte to one gigabyte. This requires a lot of management overhead, making the `malloc()` and `free()` functions inherently slow. Second,

on most operating systems a call to `malloc()` or `free()` must first context-switch from user mode into kernel mode, process the request and then context-switch back to the program. These context switches can be extraordinarily expensive. One rule of thumb often followed in game development is:

Keep heap allocations to a minimum, and never allocate from the heap within a tight loop.

Of course, no game engine can entirely avoid dynamic memory allocation, so most game engines implement one or more custom allocators. A custom allocator can have better performance characteristics than the operating system's heap allocator for two reasons. First, a custom allocator can satisfy requests from a preallocated memory block (itself allocated using `malloc()` or `new`, or declared as a global variable). This allows it to run in user mode and entirely avoid the cost of context-switching into the operating system. Second, by making various assumptions about its usage patterns, a custom allocator can be much more efficient than a general-purpose heap allocator.

In the following sections, we'll take a look at some common kinds of custom allocators. For additional information on this topic, see Christian Gyrling's excellent blog post, <http://www.swedishcoding.com/2008/08/31/are-we-out-of-memory>.

### 6.2.1.1 Stack-Based Allocators

Many games allocate memory in a stack-like fashion. Whenever a new game level is loaded, memory is allocated for it. Once the level has been loaded, little or no dynamic memory allocation takes place. At the conclusion of the level, its data is unloaded and all of its memory can be freed. It makes a lot of sense to use a stack-like data structure for these kinds of memory allocations.

A *stack allocator* is very easy to implement. We simply allocate a large contiguous block of memory using `malloc()` or `global new`, or by declaring a global array of bytes (in which case the memory is effectively allocated out of the executable's BSS segment). A pointer to the top of the stack is maintained. All memory addresses below this pointer are considered to be in use, and all addresses above it are considered to be free. The top pointer is initialized to the lowest memory address in the stack. Each allocation request simply moves the pointer up by the requested number of bytes. The most recently allocated block can be freed by simply moving the top pointer back down by the size of the block.

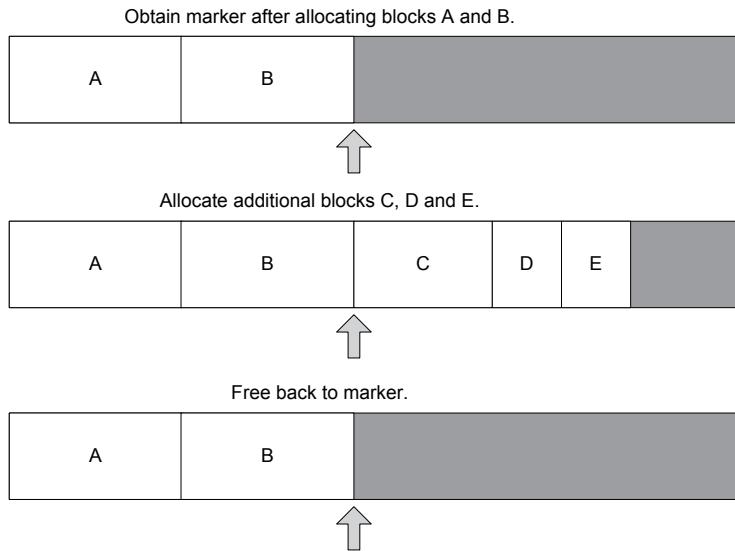


Figure 6.1. Stack allocation and freeing back to a marker.

It is important to realize that with a stack allocator, memory cannot be freed in an arbitrary order. All frees must be performed in an order opposite to that in which they were allocated. One simple way to enforce these restrictions is to disallow individual blocks from being freed at all. Instead, we can provide a function that rolls the stack top back to a previously marked location, thereby freeing all blocks between the current top and the roll-back point.

It's important to always roll the top pointer back to a point that lies at the boundary between two allocated blocks, because otherwise new allocations would overwrite the tail end of the top-most block. To ensure that this is done properly, a stack allocator often provides a function that returns a *marker* representing the current top of the stack. The roll-back function then takes one of these markers as its argument. This is depicted in Figure 6.1. The interface of a stack allocator often looks something like this.

```
class StackAllocator
{
public:
    // Stack marker: Represents the current top of the
    // stack. You can only roll back to a marker, not to
    // arbitrary locations within the stack.
    typedef U32 Marker;
```

```
// Constructs a stack allocator with the given total
// size.
explicit StackAllocator(U32 stackSize_bytes);

// Allocates a new block of the given size from stack
// top.
void* alloc(U32 size_bytes);

// Returns a marker to the current stack top.
Marker getMarker();

// Rolls the stack back to a previous marker.
void freeToMarker(Marker marker);

// Clears the entire stack (rolls the stack back to
// zero).
void clear();

private:
    // ...
};
```

### Double-Ended Stack Allocators

A single memory block can actually contain two stack allocators—one that allocates up from the bottom of the block and one that allocates down from the top of the block. A double-ended stack allocator is useful because it uses memory more efficiently by allowing a trade-off to occur between the memory usage of the bottom stack and the memory usage of the top stack. In some situations, both stacks may use roughly the same amount of memory and meet in the middle of the block. In other situations, one of the two stacks may eat up a lot more memory than the other stack, but all allocation requests can still be satisfied as long as the total amount of memory requested is not larger than the block shared by the two stacks. This is depicted in Figure 6.2.

In Midway's *Hydro Thunder* arcade game, all memory allocations are made from a single large block of memory managed by a double-ended stack allocator. The bottom stack is used for loading and unloading levels (race tracks), while the top stack is used for temporary memory blocks that are allocated and freed every frame. This allocation scheme worked extremely well and ensured that *Hydro Thunder* never suffered from memory fragmentation problems (see Section 6.2.1.4). Steve Ranck, *Hydro Thunder*'s lead engineer, describes this allocation technique in depth in [8, Section 1.9].



Figure 6.2. A double-ended stack allocator.

### 6.2.1.2 Pool Allocators

It's quite common in game engine programming (and software engineering in general) to allocate lots of small blocks of memory, each of which are the same size. For example, we might want to allocate and free matrices, or iterators, or links in a linked list, or renderable mesh instances. For this type of memory allocation pattern, a *pool allocator* is often the perfect choice.

A pool allocator works by preallocating a large block of memory whose size is an exact multiple of the size of the elements that will be allocated. For example, a pool of  $4 \times 4$  matrices would be an exact multiple of 64 bytes—that's 16 elements per matrix times four bytes per element (assuming each element is a 32-bit float). Each element within the pool is added to a linked list of free elements; when the pool is first initialized, the free list contains all of the elements. Whenever an allocation request is made, we simply grab the next free element off the free list and return it. When an element is freed, we simply tack it back onto the free list. Both allocations and frees are  $O(1)$  operations, since each involves only a couple of pointer manipulations, no matter how many elements are currently free. (The notation  $O(1)$  is an example of “big O” notation. In this case it means that the execution times of both allocations and frees are roughly constant and do not depend on things like the number of elements currently in the pool. See Section 6.3.3 for an explanation of “big O” notation.)

The linked list of free elements can be a singly-linked list, meaning that we need a single pointer (four bytes on 32-bit machines or eight bytes on 64-bit machines) for each free element. Where should we obtain the memory for all these pointers? Certainly they could be stored in a separate preallocated memory block, occupying `(sizeof(void*) * numElementsInPool)` bytes. However, this is unduly wasteful. The key is to realize that the memory blocks residing on the free list are, by definition, free memory blocks. So why not store each free list “next” pointer *within the free block itself*? This little “trick” works as long as `elementSize >= sizeof(void*)`. We don’t waste any memory, because our free list pointers all reside inside the free memory blocks—in memory that wasn’t being used for anything anyway!

If each element is smaller than a pointer, then we can use pool element in-

dices instead of pointers to implement our linked list. For example, if our pool contains 16-bit integers, then we can use 16-bit indices as the “next pointers” in our linked list. This works as long as the pool doesn’t contain more than  $2^{16} = 65,536$  elements.

### 6.2.1.3 Aligned Allocations

As we saw in Section 3.3.7.1, every variable and data object has an alignment requirement. An 8-bit integer variable can be aligned to any address, but a 32-bit integer or floating-point variable must be 4-byte aligned, meaning its address can only end in the nibbles 0x0, 0x4, 0x8 or 0xC. A 128-bit SIMD vector value generally has a 16-byte alignment requirement, meaning that its memory address can end only in the nibble 0x0. On the PS3, memory blocks that are to be transferred to an SPU via the direct memory access (DMA) controller should be 128-*byte* aligned for maximum DMA throughput, meaning they can only end in the bytes 0x00 or 0x80.

All memory allocators must be capable of returning aligned memory blocks. This is relatively straightforward to implement. We simply allocate a little bit more memory than was actually requested, shift the address of the memory block upward slightly so that it is aligned properly, and then return the shifted address. Because we allocated a bit more memory than was requested, the returned block will still be large enough, even with the slight upward shift.

In most implementations, the number of additional bytes allocated is equal to the alignment minus one, which is the worst-case alignment shift we can make. For example, if we want a 16-byte aligned memory block, the worst case would be to get back an unaligned pointer that ends in 0x1, because it would require us to apply a shift of 15 bytes to bring it to a 16-byte boundary.

Here’s one possible implementation of an aligned memory allocator:

```
// Shift the given address upwards if/as necessary to
// ensure it is aligned to the given number of bytes.
inline uintptr_t AlignAddress(uintptr_t addr, size_t align)
{
    const size_t mask = align - 1;
    assert((align & mask) == 0); // pwr of 2
    return (addr + mask) & ~mask;
}

// Shift the given pointer upwards if/as necessary to
// ensure it is aligned to the given number of bytes.
template<typename T>
inline T* AlignPointer(T* ptr, size_t align)
```

```

{
    const uintptr_t addr = reinterpret_cast<uintptr_t>(ptr);
    const uintptr_t addrAligned = AlignAddress(addr, align);
    return reinterpret_cast<T*>(addrAligned);
}

// Aligned allocation function. IMPORTANT: 'align'
// must be a power of 2 (typically 4, 8 or 16).
void* AllocAligned(size_t bytes, size_t align)
{
    // Determine worst case number of bytes we'll need.
    size_t worstCaseBytes = bytes + align - 1;

    // Allocate unaligned block.
    U8* pRawMem = new U8[worstCaseBytes];

    // Align the block.
    return AlignPointer(pRawMem, align);
}

```

The alignment “magic” is performed by the function `AlignAddress()`. Here’s how it works: Given an address and a desired alignment  $L$ , we can align that address to an  $L$ -byte boundary by first adding  $L - 1$  to it, and then stripping off the  $N$  least-significant bits of the resulting address, where  $N = \log_2(L)$ . For example, to align any address to a 16-byte boundary, we shift it up by 15 bytes and then mask off the  $N = \log_2(16) = 4$  least-significant bits.

To strip off these bits, we need a *mask* that we can apply to the address using the bitwise AND operator. Because  $L$  is always a power of two,  $L - 1$  will be a mask with binary 1s in the  $N$  least-significant bits and binary 0s everywhere else. So all we need to do is *invert* this mask and then AND it with the address (`addr & ~mask`).

### *Freeing Aligned Blocks*

When an aligned block is later freed, we will be passed the *shifted* address, not the original address that we allocated. But in order to free the memory, we need to free the address that was actually returned by `new`. How can we convert an aligned address back into its original, unaligned address?

One simple approach is to store the shift (i.e., the difference between the aligned address and the original address) some place where our free function will be able to find it. Recall that we actually allocate `align - 1` extra bytes in `AllocAligned()`, in order to give us some room to align the pointer. Those

extra bytes are a perfect place to store the shift value. The smallest shift we'll ever make is one byte, so that's the minimum space we'll have to store the offset. Therefore, given an aligned pointer  $p$ , we can simply store the shift as a one-byte value at address  $p - 1$ .

However, there's one problem: It's possible that the raw address returned by `new` will already be aligned. In that case, the code we presented above would not shift the raw address at all, meaning there'd be no extra bytes into which to store the offset. To overcome this, we simply allocate  $L$  extra bytes, instead of  $L - 1$ , and then we *always* shift the raw pointer up to the next  $L$ -byte boundary, even if it was already aligned. Now the maximum shift will be  $L$  bytes, and the minimum shift will be 1 byte. So there will always be at least one extra byte into which we can store our shift value.

Storing the shift in a single byte works for alignments up to and including 128. We never ever shift a pointer by zero bytes, so we can make this scheme work for up to 256-byte alignment by interpreting the impossible shift value of zero as a 256-byte shift. (For larger alignments, we'd have to allocate even more bytes, and shift the pointer even further up, to make room for a wider "header".)

Here's how the modified `AllocAligned()` function and its corresponding `FreeAligned()` function could be implemented. The process of allocating and freeing aligned blocks is illustrated in Figure 6.3.

```
// Aligned allocation function. IMPORTANT: 'align'  
// must be a power of 2 (typically 4, 8 or 16).  
void* AllocAligned(size_t bytes, size_t align)  
{  
    // Allocate 'align' more bytes than we need.  
    size_t actualBytes = bytes + align;  
  
    // Allocate unaligned block.  
    U8* pRawMem = new U8[actualBytes];  
  
    // Align the block. If no alignment occurred,  
    // shift it up the full 'align' bytes so we  
    // always have room to store the shift.  
    U8* pAlignedMem = AlignPointer(pRawMem, align);  
    if (pAlignedMem == pRawMem)  
        pAlignedMem += align;  
  
    // Determine the shift, and store it.  
    // (This works for up to 256-byte alignment.)  
    ptrdiff_t shift = pAlignedMem - pRawMem;  
    assert(shift > 0 && shift <= 256);
```

```

pAlignedMem[-1] = static_cast<U8>(shift & 0xFF);

return pAlignedMem;
}

void FreeAligned(void* pMem)
{
    if (pMem)
    {
        // Convert to U8 pointer.
        U8* pAlignedMem = reinterpret_cast<U8*>(pMem);

        // Extract the shift.
        ptrdiff_t shift = pAlignedMem[-1];
        if (shift == 0)
            shift = 256;

        // Back up to the actual allocated address,
        // and array-delete it.
        U8* pRawMem = pAlignedMem - shift;
        delete[] pRawMem;
    }
}

```

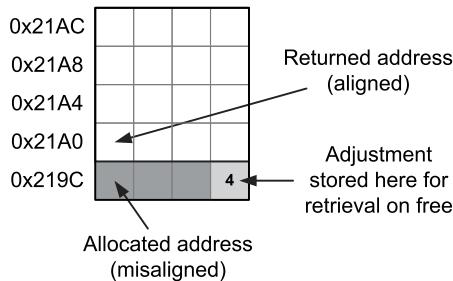


Figure 6.3. Aligned memory allocation with a 16-byte alignment requirement. The difference between the allocated memory address and the adjusted (aligned) address is stored in the byte immediately preceding the adjusted address, so that it may be retrieved during free.

#### 6.2.1.4 Single-Frame and Double-Buffered Memory Allocators

Virtually all game engines allocate at least some temporary data during the game loop. This data is either discarded at the end of each iteration of the loop or used on the next frame and then discarded. This allocation pattern is so common that many engines support *single-frame* and *double-buffered* allocators.

### Single-Frame Allocators

A single-frame allocator is implemented by reserving a block of memory and managing it with a simple stack allocator as described above. At the beginning of each frame, the stack’s “top” pointer is cleared to the bottom of the memory block. Allocations made during the frame grow toward the top of the block. Rinse and repeat.

```
StackAllocator g_singleFrameAllocator;

// Main Game Loop
while (true)
{
    // Clear the single-frame allocator's buffer every
    // frame.
    g_singleFrameAllocator.clear();

    // ...

    // Allocate from the single-frame buffer. We never
    // need to free this data! Just be sure to use it
    // only this frame.
    void* p = g_singleFrameAllocator.alloc(nBytes);

    // ...
}
```

One of the primary benefits of a single-frame allocator is that allocated memory needn’t ever be freed—we can rely on the fact that the allocator will be cleared at the start of every frame. Single-frame allocators are also blindingly fast. The one big negative is that using a single-frame allocator requires a reasonable level of discipline on the part of the programmer. You need to realize that a memory block allocated out of the single-frame buffer will only be valid during the current frame. Programmers must *never* cache a pointer to a single-frame memory block across the frame boundary!

### Double-Buffered Allocators

A double-buffered allocator allows a block of memory allocated on frame  $i$  to be used on frame  $(i + 1)$ . To accomplish this, we create two single-frame stack allocators of equal size and then ping-pong between them every frame.

```
class DoubleBufferedAllocator
{
    U32           m_curStack;
```

```
StackAllocator m_stack[2] ;  
  
public:  
  
    void swapBuffers()  
    {  
        m_curStack = (U32) !m_curStack;  
    }  
  
    void clearCurrentBuffer()  
    {  
        m_stack[m_curStack].clear();  
    }  
  
    void* alloc(U32 nBytes)  
    {  
        return m_stack[m_curStack].alloc(nBytes);  
    }  
  
    // ...  
};  
  
// ...  
  
DoubleBufferedAllocator g_doubleBufAllocator;  
  
// Main Game Loop  
while (true)  
{  
    // Clear the single-frame allocator every frame as  
    // before.  
    g_singleFrameAllocator.clear();  
  
    // Swap the active and inactive buffers of the double-  
    // buffered allocator.  
    g_doubleBufAllocator.swapBuffers();  
  
    // Now clear the newly active buffer, leaving last  
    // frame's buffer intact.  
    g_doubleBufAllocator.clearCurrentBuffer();  
  
    // ...  
  
    // Allocate out of the current buffer, without  
    // disturbing last frame's data. Only use this data  
    // this frame or next frame. Again, this memory never
```

```
// needs to be freed.  
void* p = g_doubleBufAllocator.alloc(nBytes);  
  
// ...  
}
```

This kind of allocator is extremely useful for caching the results of asynchronous processing on a multicore game console like the Xbox 360, Xbox One, PlayStation 3 or PlayStation 4. On frame  $i$ , we can kick off an asynchronous job on one of the PS4's cores, for example, handing it the address of a destination buffer that has been allocated from our double-buffered allocator. The job runs and produces its results some time before the end of frame  $i$ , storing them into the buffer we provided. On frame  $(i + 1)$ , the buffers are swapped. The results of the job are now in the inactive buffer, so they will not be overwritten by any double-buffered allocations that might be made during this frame. As long as we use the results of the job before frame  $(i + 2)$ , our data won't be overwritten.

## 6.2.2 Memory Fragmentation

Another problem with dynamic heap allocations is that memory can become *fragmented* over time. When a program first runs, its heap memory is entirely free. When a block is allocated, a contiguous region of heap memory of the appropriate size is marked as "in use," and the remainder of the heap remains free. When a block is freed, it is marked as such, and adjacent free blocks are merged into a single, larger free block. Over time, as allocations and deallocations of various sizes occur in random order, the heap memory begins to look like a patchwork of free and used blocks. We can think of the free regions as "holes" in the fabric of used memory. When the number of holes becomes large, and/or the holes are all relatively small, we say the memory has become *fragmented*. This is illustrated in Figure 6.4.

The problem with memory fragmentation is that allocations may fail even when there are enough free bytes to satisfy the request. The crux of the problem is that allocated memory blocks must always be *contiguous*. For example, in order to satisfy a request of 128 KiB, there must exist a free "hole" that is 128 KiB or larger. If there are two holes, each of which is 64 KiB in size, then enough bytes are available but the allocation fails because they are not *contiguous bytes*.

Memory fragmentation is not as much of a problem on operating systems that support *virtual memory*. A virtual memory system maps discontiguous blocks of physical memory known as *pages* into a *virtual address space*, in

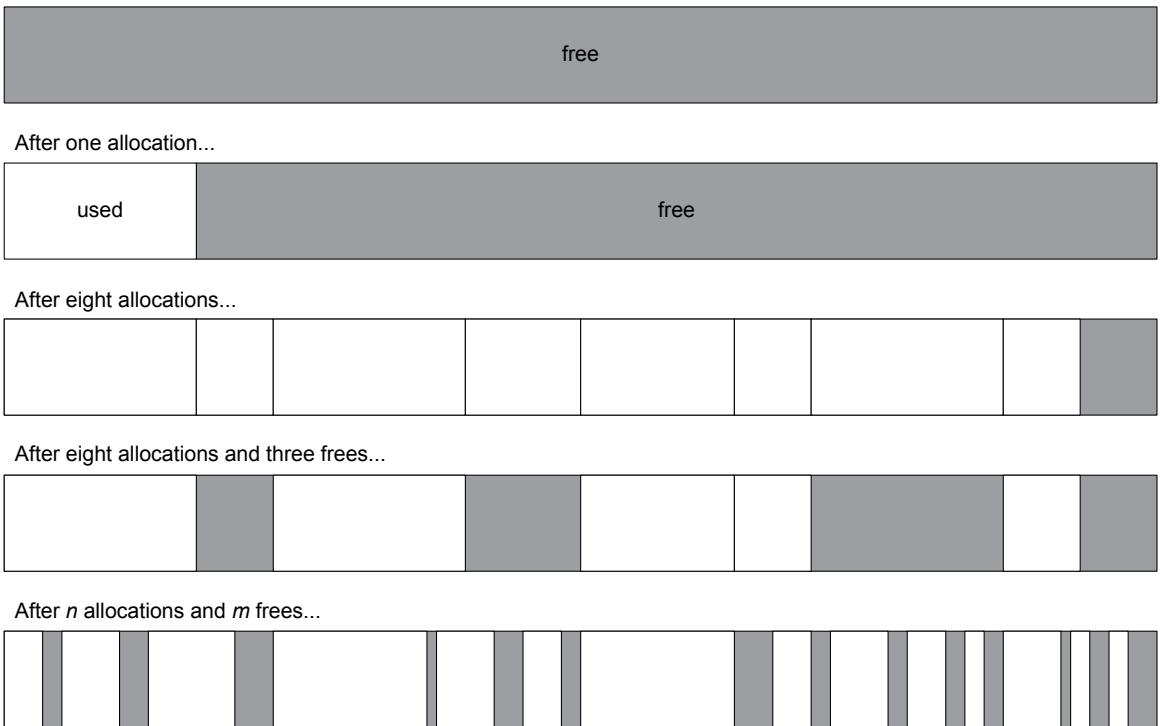


Figure 6.4. Memory fragmentation.

which the pages appear to the application to be contiguous. Stale pages can be swapped to the hard disk when physical memory is in short supply and reloaded from disk when they are needed. For a detailed discussion of how virtual memory works, see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virtual\\_memory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virtual_memory). Most embedded systems cannot afford to implement a virtual memory system. While some modern consoles do technically support it, most console game engines still do not make use of virtual memory due to the inherent performance overhead.

#### 6.2.2.1 Avoiding Fragmentation with Stack and Pool Allocators

The detrimental effects of memory fragmentation can be avoided by using stack and/or pool allocators.

- A stack allocator is impervious to fragmentation because allocations are always contiguous, and blocks must be freed in an order opposite to that in which they were allocated. This is illustrated in Figure 6.5.

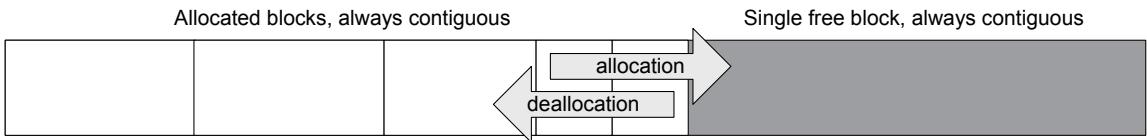


Figure 6.5. A stack allocator is free from fragmentation problems.

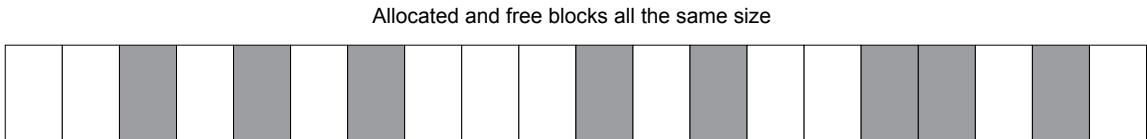


Figure 6.6. A pool allocator is not degraded by fragmentation.

- A pool allocator is also free from fragmentation problems. Pools *do* become fragmented, but the fragmentation never causes premature out-of-memory conditions as it does in a general-purpose heap. Pool allocation requests can never fail due to a lack of a large enough contiguous free block, because all of the blocks are exactly the same size. This is shown in Figure 6.6.

### 6.2.2.2 Defragmentation and Relocation

When differently sized objects are being allocated and freed in a random order, neither a stack-based allocator nor a pool-based allocator can be used. In such cases, fragmentation can be avoided by periodically *defragmenting* the heap. Defragmentation involves coalescing all of the free “holes” in the heap by shifting allocated blocks from higher memory addresses down to lower addresses (thereby shifting the holes up to higher addresses). One simple algorithm is to search for the first “hole” and then take the allocated block immediately above the hole and shift it down to the start of the hole. This has the effect of “bubbling up” the hole to a higher memory address. If this process is repeated, eventually all the allocated blocks will occupy a contiguous region of memory at the low end of the heap’s address space, and all the holes will have bubbled up into one big hole at the high end of the heap. This is illustrated in Figure 6.7.

The shifting of memory blocks described above is not particularly tricky to implement. What *is* tricky is accounting for the fact that we’re moving *allocated* blocks of memory around. If anyone has a *pointer* into one of these allocated blocks, then moving the block will invalidate the pointer.

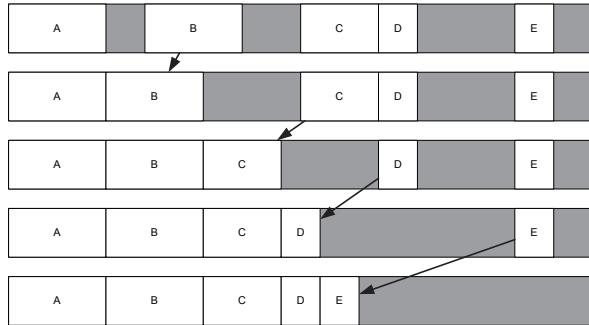


Figure 6.7. Defragmentation by shifting allocated blocks to lower addresses.

The solution to this problem is to patch any and all pointers into a shifted memory block so that they point to the correct new address after the shift. This procedure is known as *pointer relocation*. Unfortunately, there is no general-purpose way to *find* all the pointers that point into a particular region of memory. So if we are going to support memory defragmentation in our game engine, programmers must either carefully keep track of all the pointers manually so they can be relocated, or pointers must be abandoned in favor of something inherently more amenable to relocation, such as *smart pointers* or *handles*.

A smart pointer is a small class that contains a pointer and acts like a pointer for most intents and purposes. But because a smart pointer is a class, it can be coded to handle memory relocation properly. One approach is to arrange for all smart pointers to add themselves to a global linked list. Whenever a block of memory is shifted within the heap, the linked list of all smart pointers can be scanned, and each pointer that points into the shifted block of memory can be adjusted appropriately.

A handle is usually implemented as an index into a non-relocatable table, which itself contains the pointers. When an allocated block is shifted in memory, the handle table can be scanned and all relevant pointers found and updated automatically. Because the handles are just indices into the pointer table, their values never change no matter how the memory blocks are shifted, so the objects that use the handles are never affected by memory relocation.

Another problem with relocation arises when certain memory blocks cannot be relocated. For example, if you are using a third-party library that does not use smart pointers or handles, it's possible that any pointers into its data structures will not be relocatable. The best way around this problem is usually to arrange for the library in question to allocate its memory from a special buffer outside of the relocatable memory area. The other option is to simply

accept that some blocks will not be relocatable. If the number and size of the non-relocatable blocks are both small, a relocation system will still perform quite well.

It is interesting to note that all of Naughty Dog’s engines have supported defragmentation. Handles are used wherever possible to avoid the need to relocate pointers. However, in some cases raw pointers cannot be avoided. These pointers are carefully tracked and relocated manually whenever a memory block is shifted due to defragmentation. A few of Naughty Dog’s game object classes are not relocatable for various reasons. However, as mentioned above, this doesn’t pose any practical problems, because the number of such objects is always very small, and their sizes are tiny when compared to the overall size of the relocatable memory area.

### *Amortizing Defragmentation Costs*

Defragmentation can be a slow operation because it involves copying memory blocks. However, we needn’t fully defragment the heap all at once. Instead, the cost can be amortized over many frames. We can allow up to  $N$  allocated blocks to be shifted each frame, for some small value of  $N$  like 8 or 16. If our game is running at 30 frames per second, then each frame lasts  $1/30$  of a second (33 ms). So, the heap can usually be completely defragmented in less than one second without having any noticeable effect on the game’s frame rate. As long as allocations and deallocations aren’t happening at a faster rate than the defragmentation shifts, the heap will remain mostly defragmented at all times.

This approach is only valid when the size of each block is relatively small, so that the time required to move a single block does not exceed the time allotted to relocation each frame. If very large blocks need to be relocated, we can often break them up into two or more subblocks, each of which can be relocated independently. This hasn’t proved to be a problem in Naughty Dog’s engine, because relocation is only used for dynamic game objects, and they are never larger than a few kibibytes—and usually much smaller.

## 6.3 Containers

Game programmers employ a wide variety of collection-oriented data structures, also known as *containers* or *collections*. The job of a container is always the same—to house and manage zero or more data elements; however, the details of how they do this vary greatly, and each type of container has its pros and cons. Common container data types include, but are certainly not limited

to, the following.

- *Array*. An ordered, contiguous collection of elements accessed by index. The length of the array is usually statically defined at compile time. It may be multidimensional. C and C++ support these natively (e.g., `int a[5]`).
- *Dynamic array*. An array whose length can change dynamically at run-time (e.g., the C++ standard library's `std::vector`).
- *Linked list*. An ordered collection of elements not stored contiguously in memory but rather linked to one another via pointers (e.g., the C++ standard library's `std::list`).
- *Stack*. A container that supports the last-in-first-out (LIFO) model for adding and removing elements, also known as push/pop (e.g., `std::stack`).
- *Queue*. A container that supports the first-in-first-out (FIFO) model for adding and removing elements (e.g., `std::queue`).
- *Deque*. A double-ended queue—supports efficient insertion and removal at both ends of the array (e.g., `std::deque`).
- *Tree*. A container in which elements are grouped hierarchically. Each element (node) has zero or one parent and zero or more children. A tree is a special case of a DAG (see below).
- *Binary search tree (BST)*. A tree in which each node has at most two children, with an order property to keep the nodes sorted by some well-defined criteria. There are various kinds of binary search trees, including red-black trees, splay trees, AVL trees, etc.
- *Binary heap*. A binary tree that maintains itself in sorted order, much like a binary search tree, via two rules: the *shape property*, which specifies that the tree must be fully filled and that the last row of the tree is filled from left to right; and the *heap property*, which states that every node is, by some user-defined criterion, “greater than” or “equal to” all of its children.
- *Priority queue*. A container that permits elements to be added in any order and then removed in an order defined by some property of the elements themselves (i.e., their *priority*). A priority queue is typically implemented as a *heap* (e.g., `std::priority_queue`), but other implementations are possible. A priority queue is a bit like a list that stays sorted at all times, except that a priority queue only supports retrieval of the highest-priority element, and it is rarely implemented as a list under the hood.

- *Dictionary*. A table of key-value pairs. A value can be “looked up” efficiently given the corresponding key. A dictionary is also known as a *map* or *hash table*, although technically a hash table is just one possible implementation of a dictionary (e.g., `std::map`, `std::hash_map`).
- *Set*. A container that guarantees that all elements are unique according to some criteria. A set acts like a dictionary with only keys, but no values.
- *Graph*. A collection of nodes connected to one another by unidirectional or bidirectional pathways in an arbitrary pattern.
- *Directed acyclic graph (DAG)*. A collection of nodes with unidirectional (i.e., *directed*) interconnections, with no *cycles* (i.e., there is no nonempty path that starts and ends on the same node).

### 6.3.1 Container Operations

Game engines that make use of container classes inevitably make use of various commonplace algorithms as well. Some examples include:

- *Insert*. Add a new element to the container. The new element might be placed at the beginning of the list, or the end, or in some other location; or the container might not have a notion of ordering at all.
- *Remove*. Remove an element from the container; this may require a find operation (see below). However, if an iterator is available that refers to the desired element, it may be more efficient to remove the element using the iterator.
- *Sequential access (iteration)*. Accessing each element of the container in some “natural” predefined order.
- *Random access*. Accessing elements in the container in an arbitrary order.
- *Find*. Search a container for an element that meets a given criterion. There are all sorts of variants on the find operation, including finding in reverse, finding multiple elements, etc. In addition, different types of data structures and different situations call for different algorithms (see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Search\\_algorithm](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Search_algorithm)).
- *Sort*. Sort the contents of a container according to some given criteria. There are many different sorting algorithms, including bubble sort, selection sort, insertion sort, quicksort and so on. (See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sorting\\_algorithm](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sorting_algorithm) for details.)

### 6.3.2 Iterators

An iterator is a little class that “knows” how to efficiently visit the elements in a particular kind of container. It acts like an array index or pointer—it refers to one element in the container at a time, it can be advanced to the next element, and it provides some sort of mechanism for testing whether or not all elements in the container have been visited. As an example, the first of the following two code snippets iterates over a C-style array using a pointer, while the second iterates over a linked list using almost identical syntax.

```
void processArray(int container[], int numElements)
{
    int* pBegin = &container[0];
    int* pEnd = &container[numElements];

    for (int* p = pBegin; p != pEnd; p++)
    {
        int element = *p;
        // process element...
    }
}

void processList(std::list<int>& container)
{
    std::list<int>::iterator pBegin = container.begin();
    std::list<int>::iterator pEnd = container.end();

    for (auto p = pBegin; p != pEnd; ++p)
    {
        int element = *p;
        // process element...
    }
}
```

The key benefits to using an iterator over attempting to access the container’s elements directly are as follows:

- Direct access would break the container class’ encapsulation. An iterator, on the other hand, is typically a *friend* of the container class, and as such it can iterate efficiently without exposing any implementation details to the outside world. (In fact, most good container classes hide their internal details and cannot be iterated over *without* an iterator.)
- An iterator can simplify the process of iterating. Most iterators act like array indices or pointers, so a simple loop can be written in which the

iterator is incremented and compared against a terminating condition—even when the underlying data structure is arbitrarily complex. For example, an iterator can make an in-order depth-first tree traversal look no more complex than a simple array iteration.

### 6.3.2.1 Preincrement versus Postincrement

Notice in the `processArray()` example that we are using C++'s *postincrement* operator, `p++`, rather than the *preincrement* operator, `++p`. This is a subtle but sometimes important optimization. The preincrement operator increments the contents of the variable *before* its (now modified) value is used in the expression. The postincrement operator increments the contents of the variable *after* it has been used. This means that writing `++p` introduces a *data dependency* into your code—the CPU must wait for the increment operation to be completed before its value can be used in the expression. On a deeply pipelined CPU, this introduces a *stall*. On the other hand, with `p++` there is no data dependency. The value of the variable can be used immediately, and the increment operation can happen later or in parallel with its use. Either way, no stall is introduced into the pipeline.

Of course, within the “update” expression of a `for` loop, there should be no difference between pre- and postincrement. This is because any good compiler will recognize that the *value* of the variable isn't used in `update_expr`. But in cases where the value *is* used, postincrement is preferable because it doesn't introduce a stall in the CPU's pipeline.

It can be wise to make an exception to this little rule of thumb for classes with *overloaded* increment operators, as is common practice in *iterator* classes. By definition, the postincrement operator must return an unmodified *copy* of the object on which it is called. Depending on the size and complexity of the data members of the class, the added cost of copying the iterator can tip the scales toward a preference for preincrement when using such classes in performance-critical loops. (Preincrement isn't necessarily better than postincrement in such a simple example as the function `processList()` shown above, but I've implemented it with preincrement to highlight the difference.)

### 6.3.3 Algorithmic Complexity

The choice of which container type to use for a given application depends upon the performance and memory characteristics of the container being considered. For each container type, we can determine the theoretical performance of common operations such as insertion, removal, find and sort.

We usually indicate the amount of time  $T$  that an operation is expected to

take as a function of the number of elements  $n$  in the container:

$$T = f(n).$$

Rather than try to find the exact function  $f$ , we concern ourselves only with finding the overall *order* of the function. For example, if the actual theoretical function were any of the following,

$$T = 5n^2 + 17,$$

$$\begin{aligned} T &= 102n^2 + 50n + 12, \\ T &= \frac{1}{2}n^2, \end{aligned}$$

we would, in all cases, simplify the expression down to its most relevant term—in this case  $n^2$ . To indicate that we are only stating the *order* of the function, not its exact equation, we use “big O” notation and write

$$T = O(n^2).$$

The order of an algorithm can usually be determined via an inspection of the pseudocode. If the algorithm’s execution time is not dependent upon the number of elements in the container at all, we say it is  $O(1)$  (i.e., it completes in *constant time*). If the algorithm performs a *loop* over the elements in the container and visits each element once, such as in a linear search of an unsorted list, we say the algorithm is  $O(n)$ . If two loops are nested, each of which potentially visits each node once, then we say the algorithm is  $O(n^2)$ . If a divide-and-conquer approach is used, as in a *binary search* (where half of the list is eliminated at each step), then we would expect that only  $\lfloor \log_2(n) + 1 \rfloor$  elements will actually be visited by the algorithm in the worst case, and hence we refer to it as an  $O(\log n)$  operation. If an algorithm executes a subalgorithm  $n$  times, and the subalgorithm is  $O(\log n)$ , then the resulting algorithm would be  $O(n \log n)$ .

To select an appropriate container class, we should look at the operations that we expect to be most common, then select the container whose performance characteristics for those operations are most favorable. The most common orders you’ll encounter are listed here from fastest to slowest:  $O(1)$ ,  $O(\log n)$ ,  $O(n)$ ,  $O(n \log n)$ ,  $O(n^2)$ ,  $O(n^k)$  for  $k > 2$ .

We should also take the memory layout and usage characteristics of our containers into account. For example, an array (e.g., `int a[5]` or `std::vector`) stores its elements *contiguously* in memory and requires *no overhead storage* for anything other than the elements themselves. (Note that

a *dynamic* array does require a small fixed overhead.) On the other hand, a linked list (e.g., `std::list`) wraps each element in a “link” data structure that contains a pointer to the next element and possibly also a pointer to the previous element, for a total of up to 16 bytes of overhead per element on a 64-bit machine. Also, the elements in a linked list need not be contiguous in memory and often aren’t. A contiguous block of memory is usually much more cache-friendly than a set of disparate memory blocks. Hence, for high-speed algorithms, arrays are usually better than linked lists in terms of cache performance (unless the nodes of the linked list are themselves allocated from a small, contiguous block of memory). But a linked list is better for situations in which speed of inserting and removing elements is of prime importance.

### 6.3.4 Building Custom Container Classes

Many game engines provide their own custom implementations of the common container data structures. This practice is especially prevalent in console game engines and games targeted at mobile phone and PDA platforms. The reasons for building these classes yourself include:

- *Total control.* You control the data structure’s memory requirements, the algorithms used, when and how memory is allocated, etc.
- *Opportunities for optimization.* You can optimize your data structures and algorithms to take advantage of hardware features specific to the console(s) you are targeting; or fine-tune them for a particular application within your engine.
- *Customizability.* You can provide custom algorithms not prevalent in the C++ standard library or third-party libraries like Boost (for example, searching for the  $n$  most relevant elements in a container, instead of just the single most relevant).
- *Elimination of external dependencies.* Since you built the software yourself, you are not beholden to any other company or team to maintain it. If problems arise, they can be debugged and fixed immediately rather than waiting until the next release of the library (which might not be until after you have shipped your game!)
- *Control over concurrent data structures.* When you write your own container classes, you have full control over the means by which they are protected against concurrent access on a multithreaded or multicore system. For example, on the PS4, Naughty Dog uses lightweight “spin lock” mutexes for the majority of our concurrent data structures, because they work well with our fiber-based job scheduling system. A third-party container library might not have given us this kind of flexibility.

We cannot cover all possible data structures here, but let's look at a few common ways in which game engine programmers tend to tackle containers.

### 6.3.4.1 To Build or Not to Build

We will not discuss the details of how to implement all of these data types and algorithms here—a plethora of books and online resources are available for that purpose. However, we *will* concern ourselves with the question of where to obtain implementations of the types and algorithms that you need. As game engine designers, we have basically three choices:

1. Build the needed data structures manually.
2. Make use of the STL-style containers provided by the C++ standard library.
3. Rely on a third-party library such as Boost (<http://www.boost.org>).

The C++ standard library and third-party libraries like Boost are attractive options, because they provide a rich and powerful set of container classes covering pretty much every type of data structure imaginable. In addition, these packages provide a powerful suite of template-based *generic algorithms*—implementations of common algorithms, such as finding an element in a container, which can be applied to virtually any type of data object. However, these implementations may not be appropriate for some kinds of game engines. Let's take a moment to investigate some of the pros and cons of each approach.

#### *The C++ Standard Library*

The benefits of the C++ standard library's STL-style container classes include:

- They offer a rich set of features.
- Their implementations are robust and fully portable.

However, these container classes also have some drawbacks, including:

- The header files are cryptic and difficult to understand (although the documentation is quite good).
- General-purpose container classes are often slower than a data structure that has been crafted specifically to solve a particular problem.
- A generic container may consume more memory than a custom-designed data structure.
- The C++ standard library does a lot of dynamic memory allocation, and it's sometimes challenging to control its appetite for memory in a way that is suitable for high-performance, memory-limited console games.

- The templated allocator system provided by the standard C++ library isn't flexible enough to allow these containers to be used with certain kinds of memory allocators, such as stack-based allocators (see Section 6.2.1.1).

The *Medal of Honor: Pacific Assault* engine for the PC made heavy use of what was known at the time as the standard template library (STL). And while MOHPA did have its share of frame rate problems, the team was able to work around the performance problems caused by STL (primarily by carefully limiting and controlling its use). OGRE, the popular object-oriented rendering library that we use for some of the examples in this book, also makes heavy use of STL-style containers. However, at Naughty Dog we prohibit the use of STL containers in runtime game code (although we do permit their use in offline tools code). Your mileage may vary: Using the STL-style containers provided by the C++ standard library on a game engine project is certainly feasible, but it should be used with care.

### Boost

The Boost project was started by members of the C++ Standards Committee Library Working Group, but it is now an open source project with many contributors from across the globe. The aim of the project is to produce libraries that extend and work together with the standard C++ library, for both commercial and non-commercial use. Many of the Boost libraries have already been included in the C++ standard library as of C++11, and more components are included in the Standards Committee's Library Technical Report (TR2), which is a step toward becoming part of a future C++ standard. Here is a brief summary of what Boost brings to the table:

- Boost provides a lot of useful facilities not available in the C++ standard library.
- In some cases, Boost provides alternatives or work-arounds for problems with the design or implementation of some classes in the C++ standard library.
- Boost does a great job of handling some very complex problems, like smart pointers. (Bear in mind that smart pointers are complex beasts, and they can be performance hogs. Handles are usually preferable; see Section 16.5 for details.)
- The Boost libraries' documentation is usually excellent. Not only does the documentation explain what each library does and how to use it, but

in most cases it also provides an excellent in-depth discussion of the design decisions, constraints and requirements that went into constructing the library. As such, reading the Boost documentation is a great way to learn about the principles of software design.

If you are already using the C++ standard library, then Boost can serve as an excellent extension and/or alternative to many of its features. However, be aware of the following caveats:

- Most of the core Boost classes are templates, so all that one needs in order to use them is the appropriate set of header files. However, some of the Boost libraries build into rather large .lib files and may not be feasible for use in very small-scale game projects.
- While the worldwide Boost community is an excellent support network, the Boost libraries come with no guarantees. If you encounter a bug, it will ultimately be your team's responsibility to work around it or fix it.
- The Boost libraries are distributed under the Boost Software License. Read the license information ([http://www.boost.org/more/license\\_info.html](http://www.boost.org/more/license_info.html)) carefully to be sure it is right for your engine.

### *Folly*

Folly is an open source library developed by Andrei Alexandrescu and the engineers at Facebook. Its goal is to extend the standard C++ library and the Boost library (rather than to compete with these libraries), with an emphasis on ease of use and the development of high-performance software. You can read about it by searching online for the article entitled “Folly: The Facebook Open Source Library” which is hosted at <https://www.facebook.com/>. The library itself is available on GitHub here: <https://github.com/facebook/folly>.

### *Loki*

There is a rather esoteric branch of C++ programming known as *template meta-programming*. The core idea is to use the compiler to do a lot of the work that would otherwise have to be done at runtime by exploiting the template feature of C++ and in effect “tricking” the compiler into doing things it wasn't originally designed to do. This can lead to some startlingly powerful and useful programming tools.

By far the most well-known and probably most powerful template meta-programming library for C++ is Loki, a library designed and written by Andrei

Alexandrescu (whose home page is at <http://www.erdani.org>). The library can be obtained from SourceForge at <http://loki-lib.sourceforge.net>.

Loki is extremely powerful; it is a fascinating body of code to study and learn from. However, its two big weaknesses are of a practical nature: (a) its code can be daunting to read and use, much less truly understand, and (b) some of its components are dependent upon exploiting “side-effect” behaviors of the compiler that require careful customization in order to be made to work on new compilers. So Loki can be somewhat tough to use, and it is not as portable as some of its “less-extreme” counterparts. Loki is not for the faint of heart. That said, some of Loki’s concepts such as *policy-based programming* can be applied to any C++ project, even if you don’t use the Loki library per se. I highly recommend that all software engineers read Andrei’s ground-breaking book, *Modern C++ Design* [3], from which the Loki library was born.

### 6.3.5 Dynamic Arrays and Chunky Allocation

Fixed size C-style arrays are used quite a lot in game programming, because they require no memory allocation, are contiguous and hence cache-friendly, and support many common operations such as appending data and searching very efficiently.

When the size of an array cannot be determined *a priori*, programmers tend to turn either to *linked lists* or *dynamic arrays*. If we wish to maintain the performance and memory characteristics of fixed-length arrays, then the dynamic array is often the data structure of choice.

The easiest way to implement a dynamic array is to allocate an  $n$ -element buffer initially and then *grow* the list only if an attempt is made to add more than  $n$  elements to it. This gives us the favorable characteristics of a fixed size array but with no upper bound. Growing is implemented by allocating a new larger buffer, copying the data from the original buffer into the new buffer, and then freeing the original buffer. The size of the buffer is increased in some orderly manner, such as adding  $n$  to it on each grow, or doubling it on each grow. Most of the implementations I’ve encountered never shrink the array, only grow it (with the notable exception of clearing the array to zero size, which might or might not free the buffer). Hence the size of the array becomes a sort of “high water mark.” The `std::vector` class works in this manner.

Of course, if you can establish a high water mark for your data, then you’re probably better off just allocating a single buffer of that size when the engine starts up. Growing a dynamic array can be incredibly costly due to reallocation and data copying costs. The impact of these things depends on the sizes of the

buffers involved. Growing can also lead to fragmentation when discarded buffers are freed. So, as with all data structures that allocate memory, caution must be exercised when working with dynamic arrays. Dynamic arrays are probably best used during development, when you are as yet unsure of the buffer sizes you'll require. They can always be converted into fixed size arrays once suitable memory budgets have been established.

### 6.3.6 Dictionaries and Hash Tables

A dictionary is a table of key-value pairs. A value in the dictionary can be looked up quickly, given its key. The keys and values can be of any data type. This kind of data structure is usually implemented either as a binary search tree or as a hash table.

In a binary tree implementation, the key-value pairs are stored in the nodes of the binary tree, and the tree is maintained in key-sorted order. Looking up a value by key involves performing an  $O(\log n)$  binary search.

In a hash table implementation, the values are stored in a fixed size table, where each slot in the table represents one or more keys. To insert a key-value pair into a hash table, the key is first converted into integer form via a process known as *hashing* (if it is not already an integer). Then an *index* into the hash table is calculated by taking the hashed key *modulo* the size of the table. Finally, the key-value pair is stored in the slot corresponding to that index. Recall that the *modulo* operator (`%` in C/C++) finds the remainder of dividing the integer key by the table size. So if the hash table has five slots, then a key of 3 would be stored at index 3 (`3 % 5 == 3`), while a key of 6 would be stored at index 1 (`6 % 5 == 1`). Finding a key-value pair is an  $O(1)$  operation in the absence of collisions.

#### 6.3.6.1 Collisions: Open and Closed Hash Tables

Sometimes two or more keys end up occupying the same slot in the hash table. This is known as a *collision*. There are two basic ways to *resolve* a collision, giving rise to two different kinds of hash tables:

- *Open*. In an open hash table (see Figure 6.8), collisions are resolved by simply storing more than one key-value pair at each index, usually in the form of a linked list. This approach is easy to implement and imposes no upper bound on the number of key-value pairs that can be stored. However, it does require memory to be allocated dynamically whenever a new key-value pair is added to the table.
- *Closed*. In a closed hash table (see Figure 6.9), collisions are resolved via a process of *probing* until a vacant slot is found. (“Probing” means ap-

plying a well-defined algorithm to search for a free slot.) This approach is a bit more difficult to implement, and it imposes an upper limit on the number of key-value pairs that can reside in the table (because each slot can hold only one key-value pair). But the main benefit of this kind of hash table is that it uses up a fixed amount of memory and requires no dynamic memory allocation. Therefore, it is often a good choice in a console engine.

Confusingly, closed hash tables are sometimes said to use *open addressing*, while open hash tables are said to use an addressing method known as  *chaining*, so named due to the linked lists at each slot in the table.

### 6.3.6.2 Hashing

Hashing is the process of turning a key of some arbitrary data type into an integer, which can be used modulo the table size as an index into the table. Mathematically, given a key  $k$ , we want to generate an integer hash value  $h$  using the hash function  $H$  and then find the index  $i$  into the table as follows:

$$h = H(k), \\ i = h \bmod N,$$

where  $N$  is the number of slots in the table, and the symbol  $\bmod$  represents the *modulo* operation, i.e., finding the remainder of the quotient  $h/N$ .

If the keys are unique integers, the hash function can be the identity function,  $H(k) = k$ . If the keys are unique 32-bit floating-point numbers, a hash function might simply reinterpret the bit pattern of the 32-bit float as if it were a 32-bit integer.

```
U32 hashFloat(float f)
{
```

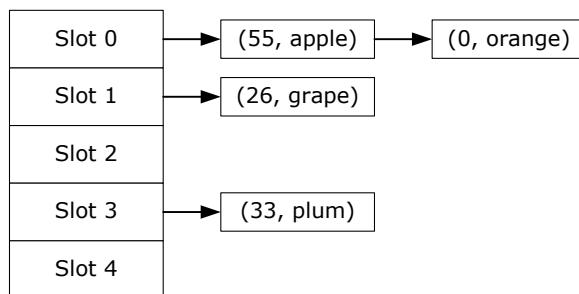


Figure 6.8. An open hash table.

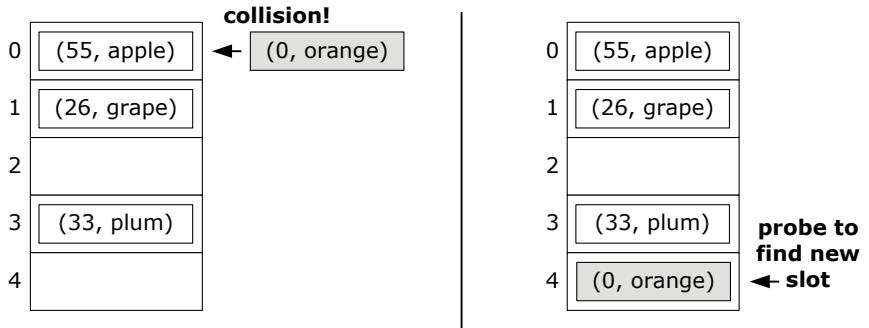


Figure 6.9. A closed hash table.

```

union
{
    float m_asFloat;
    U32    m_asU32;
} u;

u.m_asFloat = f;
return u.m_asU32;
}

```

If the key is a string, we can employ a *string hashing function*, which combines the ASCII or UTF codes of all the characters in the string into a single 32-bit integer value.

The *quality* of the hashing function  $H(k)$  is crucial to the efficiency of the hash table. A “good” hashing function is one that distributes the set of all valid keys evenly across the table, thereby minimizing the likelihood of collisions. A hash function must also be reasonably quick to calculate, and *deterministic* in the sense that it must produce the exact same output every time it is called with an identical input.

Strings are probably the most prevalent type of key you’ll encounter, so it’s particularly helpful to know a “good” string hashing function. Table 6.1 lists a number of well-known hashing algorithms, their throughput ratings (based on benchmark measurements and then converted into a rating of Low, Medium or High) and their score on the SMHasher test (<https://github.com/aappleby/smhasher>). Please note that the relative throughputs listed in the table are for rough comparison purposes only. Many factors contribute to the throughput of a hash function, including the hardware on which it is run and the properties of the input data. Cryptographic hashes are deliberately slow, as their focus is on producing a hash that is extremely unlikely to collide with the hashes of other input strings, and for which the task of determining

Name	Throughput	Score	Cryptographic?
xxHash	High	10	No
MurmurHash 3a	High	10	No
SBox	Medium	9	No‡
Lookup3	Medium	9	No
CityHash64	Medium	10	No
CRC32	Low	9	No
MD5-32	Low	10	Yes
SHA1-32	Low	10	Yes

Table 6.1. Comparison of well-known hashing algorithms in terms of their relative throughput and their scores on the SMHasher test. ‡Note that SBox is not itself a cryptographic hash, but it is one component of the symmetric key algorithms used in cryptography.

a string that would produce a given hash value is extremely computationally difficult.

For more information on hash functions, see the excellent article by Paul Hsieh available at <http://www.azillionmonkeys.com/qed/hash.html>.

#### 6.3.6.3 Implementing a Closed Hash Table

In a closed hash table, the key-value pairs are stored directly in the table, rather than in a linked list at each table entry. This approach allows the programmer to define *a priori* the exact amount of memory that will be used by the hash table. A problem arises when we encounter a *collision*—two keys that end up wanting to be stored in the same slot in the table. To address this, we use a process known as *probing*.

The simplest approach is *linear probing*. Imagine that our hashing function has yielded a table index of  $i$ , but that slot is already occupied; we simply try slots  $(i + 1)$ ,  $(i + 2)$  and so on until an empty slot is found (wrapping around to the start of the table when  $i = N$ ). Another variation on linear probing is to alternate searching forwards and backwards,  $(i + 1)$ ,  $(i - 1)$ ,  $(i + 2)$ ,  $(i - 2)$  and so on, making sure to modulo the resulting indices into the valid range of the table.

Linear probing tends to cause key-value pairs to “clump up.” To avoid these clusters, we can use an algorithm known as *quadratic probing*. We start at the occupied table index  $i$  and use the sequence of probes  $i_j = (i \pm j^2)$  for  $j = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ . In other words, we try  $(i + 1^2)$ ,  $(i - 1^2)$ ,  $(i + 2^2)$ ,  $(i - 2^2)$  and so

on, remembering to always modulo the resulting index into the valid range of the table.

When using closed hashing, it is a good idea to make your table size a *prime number*. Using a prime table size in conjunction with quadratic probing tends to yield the best coverage of the available table slots with minimal clustering. See <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/1145217/why-should-hash-functions-use-a-prime-number-modulus> for a good discussion of why prime hash table sizes are preferable.

#### 6.3.6.4 Robin Hood Hashing

*Robin Hood hashing* is another probing method for closed hash tables that has gained popularity recently. This probing scheme improves the performance of a closed hash table, even when the table is nearly full. For a good discussion of how Robin Hood hashing works, see <https://www.sebastiansylvan.com/post/robin-hood-hashing-should-be-your-default-hash-table-implementation/>.

## 6.4 Strings

Strings are ubiquitous in almost every software project, and game engines are no exception. On the surface, the string may seem like a simple, fundamental data type. But, when you start using strings in your projects, you will quickly discover a wide range of design issues and constraints, all of which must be carefully accounted for.

### 6.4.1 The Problem with Strings

The most fundamental question about strings is how they should be stored and managed in your program. In C and C++, strings aren't even an atomic type—they are implemented as *arrays of characters*. The variable length of strings means we either have to hard-code limitations on the sizes of our strings, or we need to dynamically allocate our string buffers.

Another big string-related problem is that of *localization*—the process of adapting your software for release in other languages. This is also known as *internationalization*, or I18N for short. Any string that you display to the user in English must be translated into whatever languages you plan to support. (Strings that are used internally to the program but are never displayed to the user are exempt from localization, of course.) This not only involves making sure that you can represent all the character glyphs of all the languages you plan to support (via an appropriate set of fonts), but it also means ensuring that your game can handle different text orientations. For example, traditional

Chinese text is oriented vertically instead of horizontally (although modern Chinese and Japanese are commonly written horizontally and left-to-right), and some languages like Hebrew read right-to-left. Your game also needs to gracefully deal with the possibility that a translated string will be either much longer or much shorter than its English counterpart.

Finally, it's important to realize that strings are used internally within a game engine for things like resource file names and object ids. For example, when a game designer lays out a level, it's highly convenient to permit him or her to identify the objects in the level using meaningful names, like "Player-Camera," "enemy-tank-01" or "explosionTrigger."

How our engine deals with these internal strings often has pervasive ramifications on the performance of the game. This is because strings are inherently expensive to work with at runtime. Comparing or copying `ints` or `floats` can be accomplished via simple machine language instructions. On the other hand, comparing strings requires an  $O(n)$  scan of the character arrays using a function like `strcmp()` (where  $n$  is the length of the string). Copying a string requires an  $O(n)$  memory copy, not to mention the possibility of having to dynamically allocate the memory for the copy. During one project I worked on, we profiled our game's performance only to discover that `strcmp()` and `strcpy()` were the top two most expensive functions! By eliminating unnecessary string operations and using some of the techniques outlined in this section, we were able to all but eliminate these functions from our profile and increase the game's frame rate significantly. (I've heard similar stories from developers at a number of different studios.)

## 6.4.2 String Classes

Many C++ programmers prefer to use a *string class*, such as the C++ standard library's `std::string`, rather than deal directly with character arrays. Such classes can make working with strings much more convenient for the programmer. However, a string class can have hidden costs that are difficult to see until the game is profiled. For example, passing a string to a function using a C-style character array is fast because the address of the first character is typically passed in a hardware register. On the other hand, passing a string object might incur the overhead of one or more copy constructors, if the function is not declared or used properly. Copying strings might involve dynamic memory allocation, causing what looks like an innocuous function call to end up costing literally thousands of machine cycles.

Because of the myriad issues with string classes, I generally prefer to avoid them in runtime game code. However, if you feel a strong urge to use a string

class, make sure you pick or implement one that has acceptable runtime performance characteristics—and be sure all programmers that use it are aware of its costs. Know your string class: Does it treat all string buffers as read-only? Does it utilize the *copy on write* optimization? (See <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Copy-on-write>.) In C++11, does it provide a move constructor? Does it own the memory associated with the string, or can it reference memory that it does not own? (See [http://www.boost.org/doc/libs/1\\_57\\_0/libs/utility/doc/html/string\\_ref.html](http://www.boost.org/doc/libs/1_57_0/libs/utility/doc/html/string_ref.html) for more on the issue of memory ownership in string classes.) As a rule of thumb, always pass string objects by reference, never by value (as the latter often incurs string-copying costs). Profile your code early and often to ensure that your string class isn't becoming a major source of lost frame rate!

One situation in which a specialized string class does seem justifiable to me is when storing and managing file system paths. Here, a hypothetical Path class could add significant value over a raw C-style character array. For example, it might provide functions for extracting the filename, file extension or directory from the path. It might hide operating system differences by automatically converting Windows-style backslashes to UNIX-style forward slashes or some other operating system's path separator. Writing a Path class that provides this kind of functionality in a cross-platform way could be highly valuable within a game engine context. (See Section 7.1.1.4 for more details on this topic.)

#### 6.4.3 Unique Identifiers

The *objects* in any virtual game world need to be uniquely identified in some way. For example, in Pac Man we might encounter game objects named "pac\_man," "blinky," "pinky," "inky" and "clyde." Unique object identifiers allow game designers to keep track of the myriad objects that make up their game worlds and also permit those objects to be found and operated on at runtime by the engine. In addition, the *assets* from which our game objects are constructed—meshes, materials, textures, audio clips, animations and so on—all need unique identifiers as well.

Strings seem like a natural choice for such identifiers. Assets are often stored in individual files on disk, so they can usually be identified uniquely by their file paths, which of course are strings. And game objects are created by game designers, so it is natural for them to assign their objects understandable string names, rather than have to remember integer object indices, or 64- or 128-bit globally unique identifiers (GUIDs). However, the speed with which *comparisons* between unique identifiers can be made is of paramount import-

tance in a game, so `strcmp()` simply doesn't cut it. We need a way to have our cake and eat it too—a way to get all the descriptiveness and flexibility of a string, but with the speed of an integer.

#### 6.4.3.1 Hashed String Ids

One good solution is to *hash* our strings. As we've seen, a hash function maps a string onto a semi-unique integer. String hash codes can be compared just like any other integers, so comparisons are fast. If we store the actual strings in a hash table, then the original string can always be recovered from the hash code. This is useful for debugging purposes and to permit hashed strings to be displayed on-screen or in log files. Game programmers sometimes use the term *string id* to refer to such a hashed string. The Unreal engine uses the term *name* instead (implemented by class `FName`).

As with any hashing system, *collisions* are a possibility (i.e., two different strings might end up with the same hash code). However, with a suitable hash function, we can all but guarantee that collisions will not occur for all reasonable input strings we might use in our game. After all, a 32-bit hash code represents more than four billion possible values. So, if our hash function does a good job of distributing strings evenly throughout this very large range, we are unlikely to collide. At Naughty Dog, we started out using a variant of the CRC-32 algorithm to hash our strings, and we encountered only a handful of collisions during many years of development on *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us*. And when a collision did occur, fixing it was a simple matter of slightly altering one of the strings (e.g., append a "2" or a "b" to one of the strings, or use a totally different but synonymous string). That being said, Naughty Dog has moved to a 64-bit hashing function for *The Last of Us Part II* and all of our future game titles; this should essentially eliminate the possibility of hash collisions, given the quantity and typical lengths of the strings we use in any one game.

#### 6.4.3.2 Some Implementation Ideas

Conceptually, it's easy enough to run a hash function on your strings in order to generate string ids. Practically speaking, however, it's important to consider *when* the hash will be calculated. Most game engines that use string ids do the hashing at runtime. At Naughty Dog, we permit runtime hashing of strings, but we also use C++11's *user-defined literals* feature to transform the syntax "`any_string`"\_`sid` directly into a hashed integer value at compile time. This permits string ids to be used anywhere that an integer manifest constant can be used, including the constant case labels of a `switch` statement. (The result of a function call that generates a string id at runtime is not

a constant, so it cannot be used as a `case` label.)

The process of generating a string id from a string is sometimes called *interning* the string, because in addition to hashing it, the string is typically also added to a global string table. This allows the original string to be recovered from the hash code later. You may also want your tools to be capable of hashing strings into string ids. That way, when the tool generates data for consumption by your engine, the strings will already have been hashed.

The main problem with interning a string is that it is a slow operation. The hashing function must be run on the string, which can be an expensive proposition, especially when a large number of strings are being interned. In addition, memory must be allocated for the string, and it must be copied into the lookup table. As a result (if you are not generating string ids at compile-time), it is usually best to intern each string only once and save off the result for later use. For example, it would be preferable to write code like this because the latter implementation causes the strings to be unnecessarily re-interned every time the function `f()` is called.

```
static StringId  sid_foo = internString("foo");
static StringId  sid_bar = internString("bar");

// ...

void f(StringId id)
{
    if (id == sid_foo)
    {
        // handle case of id == "foo"
    }
    else if (id == sid_bar)
    {
        // handle case of id == "bar"
    }
}
```

The following approach is less efficient:

```
void f(StringId id)
{
    if (id == internString("foo"))
    {
        // handle case of id == "foo"
    }
}
```

```
        else if (id == internString("bar"))
        {
            // handle case of id == "bar"
        }
    }
```

Here's one possible implementation of `internString()`.

*stringid.h*

```
typedef U32 StringId;
extern StringId internString(const char* str);
```

*stringid.cpp*

```
static HashTable<StringId, const char*> gStringIdTable;

StringId internString(const char* str)
{
    StringId sid = hashCrc32(str);

    HashTable<StringId, const char*>::iterator it
        = gStringIdTable.find(sid);

    if (it == gStringTable.end())
    {
        // This string has not yet been added to the
        // table. Add it, being sure to copy it in case
        // the original was dynamically allocated and
        // might later be freed.
        gStringTable[sid] = strdup(str);
    }

    return sid;
}
```

Another idea employed by the Unreal Engine is to wrap the string id and a pointer to the corresponding C-style character array in a tiny class. In the Unreal Engine, this class is called `FName`. At Naughty Dog we do the same and wrap our string ids in a `StringId` class. We define a macro so that `SID("any_string")` produces an instance of this class, with its hashed value produced by our user-defined string literal syntax `"any_string"_sid`.

### Using Debug Memory for Strings

When using string ids, the strings themselves are only kept around for human consumption. When you ship your game, you almost certainly won't need the strings—the game itself should only ever use the ids. As such, it's a good idea to store your string table in a region of memory that won't exist in the retail game. For example, a PS3 development kit has 256 MiB of retail memory, plus an additional 256 MiB of “debug” memory that is not available on a retail unit. If we store our strings in debug memory, we needn't worry about their impact on the memory footprint of the final shipping game. (We just need to be careful never to write production code that depends on the strings being available!)

## 6.4.4 Localization

Localization of a game (or any software project) is a big undertaking. It is a task best handled by planning for it from day one and accounting for it at every step of development. However, this is not done as often as we all would like. Here are some tips that should help you plan your game engine project for localization. For an in-depth treatment of software localization, see [34].

### 6.4.4.1 Unicode

The problem for most English-speaking software developers is that they are trained from birth (or thereabouts!) to think of strings as arrays of eight-bit ASCII character codes (i.e., characters following the ANSI standard). ANSI strings work great for a language with a simple alphabet, like English. But, they just don't cut it for languages with complex alphabets containing a great many more characters, sometimes totally different glyphs than English's 26 letters. To address the limitations of the ANSI standard, the Unicode character set system was devised.

The basic idea behind Unicode is to assign every character or glyph from every language in common use around the globe to a unique hexadecimal code known as a *code point*. When storing a string of characters in memory, we select a particular *encoding*—a specific means of representing the Unicode code points for each character—and following those rules, we lay down a sequence of bits in memory that represent the string. UTF-8 and UTF-16 are two common encodings. You should select the specific encoding standard that best suits your needs.

Please set down this book right now and read the article entitled, “The Absolute Minimum Every Software Developer Absolutely, Positively Must Know About Unicode and Character Sets (No Excuses!)” by Joel Spolsky. You can find it here: <http://www.joelonsoftware.com/articles/Unicode.html>. (Once you've done that, please pick up the book again!)

### UTF-32

The simplest Unicode encoding is UTF-32. In this encoding, each Unicode code point is encoded into a 32-bit (4-byte) value. This encoding wastes a lot of space, for two reasons: First, most strings in Western European languages do not use any of the highest-valued code points, so an average of at least 16 bits (2 bytes) is usually wasted per character. Second, the highest Unicode code point is 0x10FFFF, so even if we wanted to create a string that uses every possible Unicode glyph, we'd still only need 21 bits per character, not 32.

That said, UTF-32 does have simplicity in its favor. It is a *fixed-length* encoding, meaning that every character occupies the same number of bits in memory (32 bits to be precise). As such, we can determine the length of any UTF-32 string by taking its length in bytes and dividing by four.

### UTF-8

In the UTF-8 encoding scheme, the code points for each character in a string are stored using eight-bit (one-byte) granularity, but some code points occupy more than one byte. Hence the number of bytes occupied by a UTF-8 character string is not necessarily the length of the string in characters. This is known as a *variable-length* encoding, or a *multibyte character set* (MBCS), because each character in a string may take one or more bytes of storage.

One of the big benefits of the UTF-8 encoding is that it is backwards-compatible with the ANSI encoding. This works because the first 127 Unicode code points correspond numerically to the old ANSI character codes. This means that every ANSI character will be represented by exactly one byte in UTF-8, and a string of ANSI characters can be interpreted as a UTF-8 string without modification.

To represent higher-valued code points, the UTF-8 standard uses multi-byte characters. Each multibyte character starts with a byte whose most-significant bit is 1 (i.e., its value lies in the range 128–255, inclusive). Such high-valued bytes will never appear in an ANSI string, so there is no ambiguity when distinguishing between single-byte characters and multibyte characters.

### UTF-16

The UTF-16 encoding employs a somewhat simpler, albeit more expensive approach. Each character in a UTF-16 string is represented by either one or two 16-bit values. The UTF-16 encoding is known as a wide character set (WCS) because each character is at least 16 bits wide, instead of the eight bits used by

“regular” ANSI chars and their UTF-8 counterparts.

In UTF-16, the set of all possible Unicode code points is divided into 17 *planes* containing  $2^{16}$  code points each. The first plane is known as the *basic multilingual plane* (BMP). It contains the most commonly used code points across a wide range of languages. As such, many UTF-16 strings can be represented entirely by code points within the first plane, meaning that each character in such a string is represented by only *one* 16-bit value. However, if a character from one of the other planes (known as *supplementary planes*) is required in a string, it is represented by two consecutive 16-bit values.

The UCS-2 (2-byte universal character set) encoding is a limited subset of the UTF-16 encoding, utilizing *only* the basic multilingual page. As such, it cannot represent characters whose Unicode code points are numerically higher than 0xFFFF. This simplifies the format, because every character is guaranteed to occupy exactly 16 bits (two bytes). In other words, UCS-2 is a *fixed-length* character encoding, while in general UTF-8 and UTF-16 are *variable-length* encodings.

If we know a priori that a UTF-16 string only utilizes code points from the BMP (or if we are dealing with a UCS-2 encoded string), we can determine the number of characters in the string by simply dividing the number of bytes by two. Of course, if supplemental planes are used in a UTF-16 string, this simple “trick” no longer works.

Note that a UTF-16 encoding can be little-endian or big-endian (see Section 3.3.2.1), depending on the native endianness of your target CPU. When storing UTF-16 text on-disc, it’s common to precede the text data with a *byte order mark* (BOM) indicating whether the individual 16-bit characters are stored in little- or big-endian format. (This is true of UTF-32 encoded string data as well, of course.)

#### 6.4.4.2 `char` versus `wchar_t`

The standard C/C++ library defines two data types for dealing with character strings—`char` and `wchar_t`. The `char` type is intended for use with legacy ANSI strings and with multibyte character sets (MBCS), including (but not limited to) UTF-8. The `wchar_t` type is a “wide” character type, intended to be capable of representing any valid code point in a single integer. As such, its size is compiler- and system-specific. It could be eight bits on a system that does not support Unicode at all. It could be 16 bits if the UCS-2 encoding is assumed for all wide characters, or if a multi-word encoding like UTF-16 is being employed. Or it could be 32 bits if UTF-32 is the “wide” character encoding of choice.

Because of this inherent ambiguity in the definition of `wchar_t`, if you

need to write truly portable string-handling code, you'll need to define your own character data type(s) and provide a library of functions for dealing with whatever Unicode encoding(s) you need to support. However, if you are targeting a specific platform and compiler, you can write your code within the limits of that particular implementation, at the loss of some portability.

The following article does a good job of outlining the pros and cons of using the `wchar_t` data type: [http://icu-project.org/docs/papers/unicode\\_wchar\\_t.html](http://icu-project.org/docs/papers/unicode_wchar_t.html).

#### 6.4.4.3 Unicode under Windows

Under Windows, the `wchar_t` data type is used exclusively for UTF-16 encoded Unicode strings, and the `char` type is used for ANSI strings and legacy *Windows code page* string encodings. When reading the Windows API docs, the term “Unicode” is therefore always synonymous with “wide character set” (WCS) and UTF-16 encoding. This is a bit confusing, because of course Unicode strings can in general be encoded in the “non-wide” multibyte UTF-8 format.

The Windows API defines three sets of character/string manipulation functions: one set for single-byte character set ANSI strings (SBCS), one set for multibyte character set (MBCS) strings, and one set for wide character set strings. The ANSI functions are essentially the old-school “C-style” string functions we all grew up with. The MBCS string functions handle a variety of multibyte encodings and are primarily designed for dealing with legacy Windows code pages encodings. The WCS functions handle Unicode UTF-16 strings.

Throughout the Windows API, a prefix or suffix of “w,” “wcs” or “W” indicates a wide character set (UTF-16) encoding; a prefix or suffix of “mb” indicates a multibyte encoding; and a prefix or suffix of “a” or “A,” or the lack of any prefix or suffix, indicates an ANSI or Windows code pages encoding. The C++ standard library uses a similar convention—for example, `std::string` is its ANSI string class, while `std::wstring` is its wide character equivalent. Unfortunately, the names of the functions aren’t always 100% consistent. This all leads to some confusion among programmers who aren’t in the know. (But *you* aren’t one of those programmers!) Table 6.2 lists some examples.

Windows also provides functions for translating between ANSI character strings, multibyte strings and wide UTF-16 strings. For example, `wcstombs()` converts a wide UTF-16 string into a multibyte string according to the currently active *locale* setting.

The Windows API uses a little preprocessor trick to allow you to write code that is at least superficially portable between wide (Unicode) and non-wide

ANSI	WCS	MBCS
<code>strcmp()</code>	<code>wcsncmp()</code>	<code>_mbscmp()</code>
<code>strcpy()</code>	<code>wcsncpy()</code>	<code>_mbscopy()</code>
<code>strlen()</code>	<code>wcslen()</code>	<code>_mbstrlen()</code>

Table 6.2. Variants of some common C standard library string functions for use with ANSI, wide and multibyte character sets.

(ANSI/MBCS) string encodings. The generic character data type `TCHAR` is defined to be a `typedef` to `char` when building your application in “ANSI mode,” and it’s defined to be a `typedef` to `wchar_t` when building your application in “Unicode mode.” The macro `_T()` is used to convert an eight-bit string literal (e.g., `char* s = "this is a string";`) into a wide string literal (e.g., `wchar_t* s = L"this is a string";`) when compiling in “Unicode mode.” Likewise, a suite of “fake” API functions are provided that “automagically” morph into their appropriate 8-bit or 16-bit variant, depending on whether you are building in “Unicode mode” or not. These magic character-set-independent functions are either named with no prefix or suffix, or with a “`t`,” “`tcs`” or “`T`” prefix or suffix.

Complete documentation for all of these functions can be found on Microsoft’s MSDN website. Here’s a link to the documentation for `strcmp()` and its ilk, from which you can quite easily navigate to the other related string-manipulation functions using the tree view on the left-hand side of the page, or via the search bar: [http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/kk6xf663\(VS.80\).aspx](http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/kk6xf663(VS.80).aspx).

#### 6.4.4.4 Unicode on Consoles

The Xbox 360 software development kit (XDK) uses WCS strings pretty much exclusively, for all strings—even for internal strings like file paths. This is certainly one valid approach to the localization problem, and it makes for very consistent string handling throughout the XDK. However, the UTF-16 encoding is a bit wasteful on memory, so different game engines may employ different conventions. At Naughty Dog, we use eight-bit `char` strings throughout our engine, and we handle foreign languages via a UTF-8 encoding. The choice of encoding is not particularly important, as long as you select one as early in the project as possible and stick with it consistently.

#### 6.4.4.5 Other Localization Concerns

Even once you have adapted your software to use Unicode characters, there is still a host of other localization problems to contend with. For one thing,

<b>Id</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>French</b>
p1score	“Player 1 Score”	“Joueur 1 Score”
p2score	“Player 2 Score”	“Joueur 2 Score”
p1wins	“Player one wins!”	“Joueur un gagne!”
p2wins	“Player two wins!”	“Joueur deux gagne!”

Table 6.3. Example of a string database used for localization.

strings aren’t the only place where localization issues arise. Audio clips including recorded voices must be translated. Textures may have English words painted into them that require translation. Many symbols have different meanings in different cultures. Even something as innocuous as a no-smoking sign might be misinterpreted in another culture. In addition, some markets draw the boundaries between the various game-rating levels differently. For example, in Japan a Teen-rated game is not permitted to show blood of any kind, whereas in North America small red blood spatters are considered acceptable.

For strings, there are other details to worry about as well. You will need to manage a database of all human-readable strings in your game, so that they can all be reliably translated. The software must display the proper language given the user’s installation settings. The formatting of the strings may be totally different in different languages—for example, Chinese is sometimes written vertically, and Hebrew reads right-to-left. The lengths of the strings will vary greatly from language to language. You’ll also need to decide whether to ship a single DVD or Blu-ray disc that contains all languages or ship different discs for particular territories.

The most crucial components in your localization system will be the central database of human-readable strings and an in-game system for looking up those strings by id. For example, let’s say you want a heads-up display that lists the score of each player with “Player 1 Score:” and “Player 2 Score:” labels and that also displays the text “Player 1 Wins” or “Player 2 Wins” at the end of a round. These four strings would be stored in the localization database under unique ids that are understandable to you, the developer of the game. So our database might use the ids “p1score,” “p2score,” “p1wins” and “p2wins,” respectively. Once our game’s strings have been translated into French, our database would look something like the simple example shown in Table 6.3. Additional columns can be added for each new language your game supports.

The exact format of this database is up to you. It might be as simple as a Microsoft Excel worksheet that can be saved as a comma-separated values (CSV) file and parsed by the game engine or as complex as a full-fledged Or-

acle database. The specifics of the string database are largely unimportant to the game engine, as long as it can read in the string ids and the corresponding Unicode strings for whatever language(s) your game supports. (However, the specifics of the database may be *very* important from a practical point of view, depending upon the organizational structure of your game studio. A small studio with in-house translators can probably get away with an Excel spreadsheet located on a network drive. But a large studio with branch offices in Britain, Europe, South America and Japan would probably find some kind of distributed database a great deal more amenable.)

At runtime, you'll need to provide a simple function that returns the Unicode string in the "current" language, given the unique id of that string. The function might be declared like this:

```
wchar_t getLocalizedString(const char* id);
```

and it might be used like this:

```
void drawScoreHud(const Vector3& score1Pos,
                  const Vector3& score2Pos)
{
    renderer.displayTextOrtho(getLocalizedString("p1score"),
                             score1Pos);

    renderer.displayTextOrtho(getLocalizedString("p2score"),
                             score2Pos);

    // ...
}
```

Of course, you'll need some way to set the "current" language globally. This might be done via a configuration setting, which is fixed during the installation of the game. Or you might allow users to change the current language on the fly via an in-game menu. Either way, the setting is not difficult to implement; it can be as simple as a global integer variable specifying the index of the column in the string table from which to read (e.g., column one might be English, column two French, column three Spanish and so on).

Once you have this infrastructure in place, your programmers must remember to *never display a raw string to the user*. They must always use the id of a string in the database and call the look-up function in order to retrieve the string in question.

#### 6.4.4.6 Case Study: Naughty Dog's Localization Tool

At Naughty Dog, we use a localization database that we developed in-house. The localization tool's back end consists of a MySQL database located on a

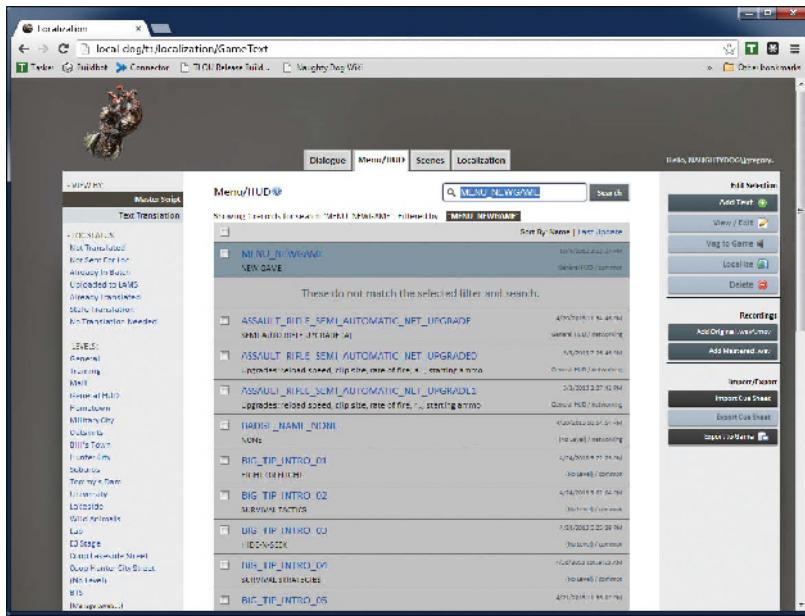


Figure 6.10. Naughty Dog's localization tool's main window, showing a list of pure text assets used in the menus and HUD. The user has just performed a search for an asset called MENU\_NEWGAME.

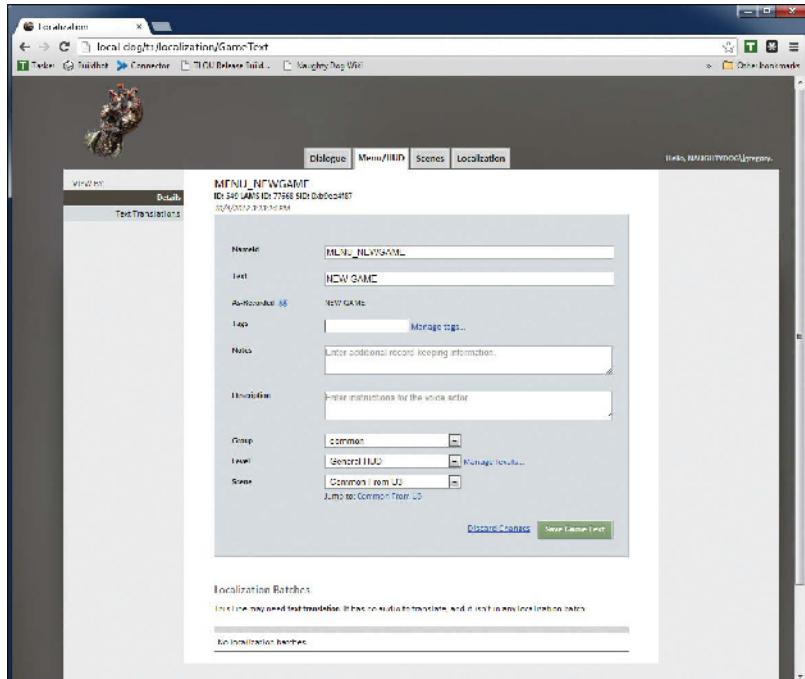


Figure 6.11. Detailed asset view, showing the MENU\_NEWGAME string.

server that is accessible both to the developers within Naughty Dog and also to the various external companies with which we work to translate our text and speech audio clips into the various languages our games support. The front end is a web interface that “speaks” to the database, allowing users to view all of the text and audio assets, edit their contents, provide translations for each asset, search for assets by id or by content and so on.

In Naughty Dog’s localization tool, each asset is either a string (for use in the menus or HUD) or a speech audio clip with optional subtitle text (for use as in-game dialog or within cinematics). Each asset has a unique identifier, which is represented as a hashed string id (see Section 6.4.3.1). If a string is required for use in the menus or HUD, we look it up by its id and get back a Unicode (UTF-8) string suitable for display on-screen. If a line of dialog must be played, we likewise look up the audio clip by its id and use the data in-engine to look up its corresponding subtitle (if any). The subtitle is treated just like a menu or HUD string, in that it is returned by the localization tool’s API as a UTF-8 string suitable for display.

Figure 6.10 shows the main interface of the localization tool, in this case displayed in the Chrome web browser. In this image, you can see that the user has typed in the id MENU\_NEWGAME in order to look up the string “NEW GAME” (used on the game’s main menu for launching a new game). Figure 6.11 shows the detailed view of the MENU\_NEWGAME asset. If the user hits the “Text Translations” button in the upper-left corner of the asset details window, the screen shown in Figure 6.12 comes up, allowing the user to enter or edit the various translations of the string. Figure 6.13 shows another tab on the localization tool’s main page, this time listing audio speech assets. Finally, Figure 6.14 depicts the detailed asset view for the speech asset BADA\_GAM\_MIL\_ESCAPE\_OVERPASS\_001 (“We missed all the action”), showing translations of this line of dialog into some of the supported languages.

## 6.5 Engine Configuration

Game engines are complex beasts, and they invariably end up having a large number of configurable options. Some of these options are exposed to the player via one or more options menus in-game. For example, a game might expose options related to graphics quality, the volume of music and sound effects, or controller configuration. Other options are created for the benefit of the game development team only and are either hidden or stripped out of the game completely before it ships. For example, the player character’s

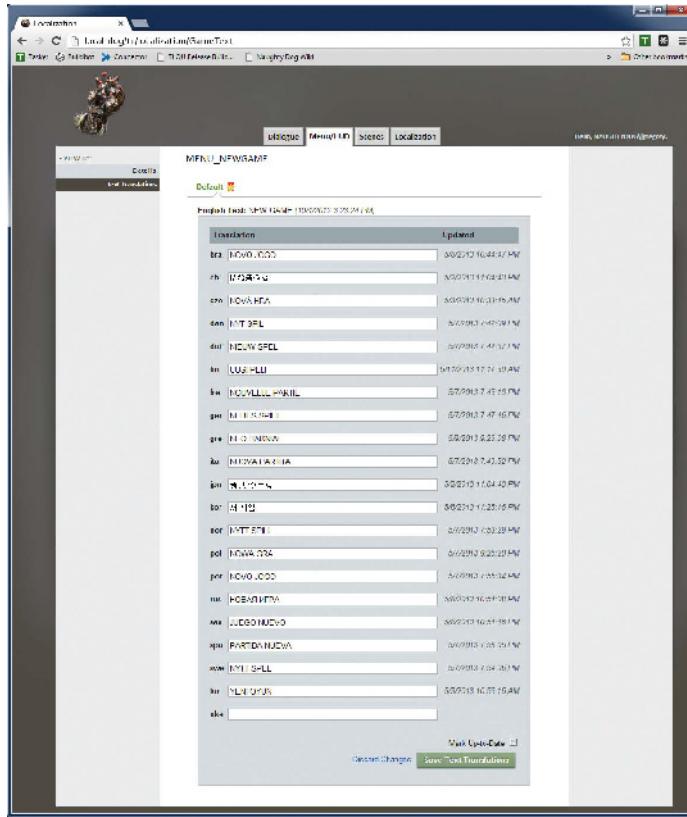


Figure 6.12. Text translations of the string “NEW GAME” into all languages supported by Naughty Dog’s *The Last of Us*.

maximum walk speed might be exposed as an option so that it can be fine-tuned during development, but it might be changed to a hard-coded value prior to ship.

### 6.5.1 Loading and Saving Options

A configurable option can be implemented trivially as a global variable or a member variable of a singleton class. However, configurable options are not particularly useful unless their values can be configured, stored on a hard disk, memory card or other storage medium, and later retrieved by the game. There are a number of simple ways to load and save configuration options:

- *Text configuration files*. By far the most common method of saving and loading configuration options is by placing them into one or more text

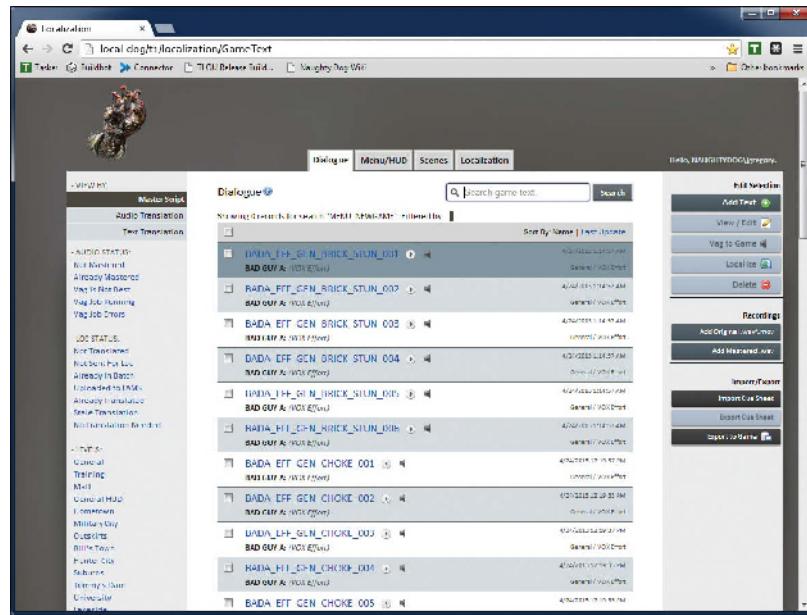


Figure 6.13. Naughty Dog's localization tool's main window again, this time showing a list of speech audio assets with accompanying subtitle text.

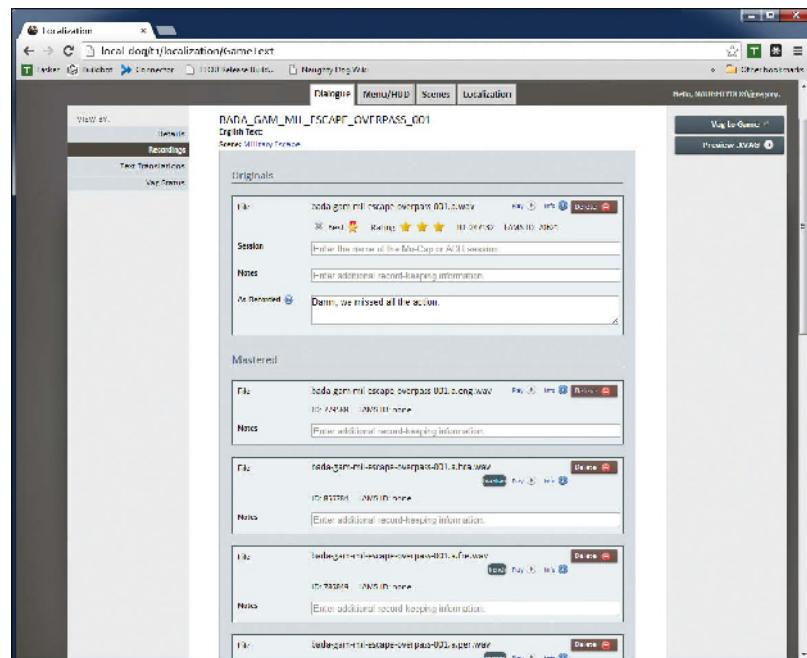


Figure 6.14. Detailed asset view showing recorded translations for the speech asset BADA\_GAM\_MIL\_ESCAPE\_OVERPASS\_001 ("We missed all the action").

files. The format of these files varies widely from engine to engine, but it is usually very simple. For example, Windows INI files (which are used by the OGRE renderer) consist of flat lists of key-value pairs grouped into logical sections. The JSON format is another common choice for configurable game options files. XML is another viable option, although most developers these days find JSON to be less verbose and easier to read than XML.

- *Compressed binary files.* Most modern consoles have hard disk drives in them, but older consoles could not afford this luxury. As a result, all game consoles since the Super Nintendo Entertainment System (SNES) have come equipped with proprietary removable memory cards that permit both reading and writing of data. Game options are sometimes stored on these cards, along with saved games. Compressed binary files are the format of choice on a memory card, because the storage space available on these cards is often very limited.
- *The Windows registry.* The Microsoft Windows operating system provides a global options database known as the registry. It is stored as a tree, where the interior nodes (known as *registry keys*) act like file folders, and the leaf nodes store the individual options as key-value pairs. That being said, I don't recommend using the Windows registry for storing engine configuration information. The registry is a monolithic database that can easily be corrupted, lost (when Windows is reinstalled), or thrown out-of-sync with the files in the filesystem. For more on the weaknesses of the Windows registry, see <https://blog.codinghorror.com/was-the-windows-registry-a-good-idea/>.
- *Command line options.* The command line can be scanned for option settings. The engine might provide a mechanism for controlling any option in the game via the command line, or it might expose only a small subset of the game's options here.
- *Environment variables.* On personal computers running Windows, Linux or MacOS, environment variables are sometimes used to store configuration options as well.
- *Online user profiles.* With the advent of online gaming communities like Xbox Live, each user can create a profile and use it to save achievements, purchased and unlockable game features, game options and other information. The data are stored on a central server and can be accessed by the player wherever an Internet connection is available.

### 6.5.2 Per-User Options

Most game engines differentiate between global options and per-user options. This is necessary because most games allow each player to configure the game to his or her liking. It is also a useful concept during development of the game, because it allows each programmer, artist and designer to customize his or her work environment without affecting other team members.

Obviously care must be taken to store per-user options in such a way that each player “sees” only his or her options and not the options of other players on the same computer or console. In a console game, the user is typically allowed to save his or her progress, along with per-user options such as controller preferences, in “slots” on a memory card or hard disk. These slots are usually implemented as files on the media in question.

On a Windows machine, each user has a folder under `C:\Users` containing information such as the user’s desktop, his or her `My Documents` folder, his or her Internet browsing history and temporary files and so on. A hidden subfolder named `AppData` is used to store per-user information on a per-application basis; each application creates a folder under `AppData` and can use it to store whatever per-user information it requires.

Windows games sometimes store per-user configuration data in the registry. The registry is arranged as a tree, and one of the top-level children of the root node, called `HKEY_CURRENT_USER`, stores settings for whichever user happens to be logged on. Every user has his or her own subtree in the registry (stored under the top-level subtree `HKEY_USERS`), and `HKEY_CURRENT_USER` is really just an alias to the current user’s subtree. So games and other applications can manage per-user configuration options by simply reading and writing them to keys under the `HKEY_CURRENT_USER` subtree.

### 6.5.3 Configuration Management in Some Real Engines

In this section, we’ll take a brief look at how some real game engines manage their configuration options.

#### 6.5.3.1 Example: Quake’s Cvars

The Quake family of engines uses a configuration management system known as *console variables*, or *cvars* for short. A cvar is just a floating-point or string global variable whose value can be inspected and modified from within Quake’s in-game console. The values of some cvars can be saved to disk and later reloaded by the engine.

At runtime, cvars are stored in a global linked list. Each cvar is a dynamically allocated instance of `struct cvar_t`, which contains the variable’s

name, its value as a string or float, a set of flag bits, and a pointer to the next cvar in the linked list of all cvars. Cvars are accessed by calling `Cvar_Get()`, which creates the variable if it doesn't already exist and modified by calling `Cvar_Set()`. One of the bit flags, `CVAR_ARCHIVE`, controls whether or not the cvar will be saved into a configuration file called `config.cfg`. If this flag is set, the value of the cvar will persist across multiple runs of the game.

### 6.5.3.2 Example: OGRE

The OGRE rendering engine uses a collection of text files in Windows INI format for its configuration options. By default, the options are stored in three files, each of which is located in the same folder as the executable program:

- `plugins.cfg` contains options specifying which optional engine plug-ins are enabled and where to find them on disk.
- `resources.cfg` contains a *search path* specifying where game assets (a.k.a. media, a.k.a. resources) can be found.
- `ogre.cfg` contains a rich set of options specifying which renderer (DirectX or OpenGL) to use and the preferred video mode, screen size, etc.

Out of the box, OGRE provides no mechanism for storing per-user configuration options. However, the OGRE source code is freely available, so it would be quite easy to change it to search for its configuration files in the user's home directory instead of in the folder containing the executable. The `Ogre::ConfigFile` class makes it easy to write code that reads and writes brand new configuration files as well.

### 6.5.3.3 Example: The Uncharted and The Last of Us Series

Naughty Dog's engine makes use of a number of configuration mechanisms.

#### *In-Game Menu Settings*

The Naughty Dog engine supports a powerful in-game menu system, allowing developers to control global configuration options and invoke commands. The data types of the configurable options must be relatively simple (primarily Boolean, integer and floating-point variables), but this limitation has not prevented the developers at Naughty Dog from creating literally hundreds of useful menu-driven options.

Each configuration option is implemented as a global variable, or a member of a singleton struct or class. When the menu option that controls an option is created, the address of the variable is provided, and the menu item directly controls its value. As an example, the following function creates a

submenu item containing some options for Naughty Dog's *rail vehicles* (simple vehicles that ride on splines which have been used in pretty much every Naughty Dog game, from the "Out of the Frying Pan" jeep chase level in *Uncharted: Drake's Fortune* to the truck convoy / jeep chase sequence in *Uncharted 4*). It defines menu items controlling three global variables: two Booleans and one floating-point value. The items are collected onto a menu, and a special item is returned that will bring up the menu when selected. Presumably the code calling this function adds this item to the parent menu that it is building.

```
DMENU::ItemSubmenu * CreateRailVehicleMenu()
{
    extern bool g_railVehicleDebugDraw2D;
    extern bool g_railVehicleDebugDrawCameraGoals;
    extern float g_railVehicleFlameProbability;

    DMENU::Menu * pMenu
        = new DMENU::Menu("RailVehicle");

    pMenu->PushBackItem(
        new DMENU::ItemBool("Draw 2D Spring Graphs",
            DMENU::ToggleBool,
            &g_railVehicleDebugDraw2D));

    pMenu->PushBackItem(
        new DMENU::ItemBool("Draw Goals (Untracked)",
            DMENU::ToggleBool,
            &g_railVehicleDebugDrawCameraGoals));

    DMENU::ItemFloat * pItemFloat;
    pItemFloat = new DMENU::ItemFloat(
        "FlameProbability",
        DMENU::EditFloat, 5, "%5.2f",
        &g_railVehicleFlameProbability);

    pItemFloat->SetRangeAndStep(0.0f, 1.0f, 0.1f, 0.01f);
    pMenu->PushBackItem(pItemFloat);

    DMENU::ItemSubmenu * pSubmenuItem;
    pSubmenuItem = new DMENU::ItemSubmenu(
        "RailVehicle...", pMenu);

    return pSubmenuItem;
}
```

The value of any option can be saved by simply marking it with the circle button on the Dualshock joypad when the corresponding menu item is se-

lected. The menu settings are saved in an INI-style text file, allowing the saved global variables to retain the values across multiple runs of the game. The ability to control which options are saved on a *per-menu-item basis* is highly useful, because any option that is not saved will take on its programmer-specified default value. If a programmer changes a default, all users will “see” the new value, unless of course a user has saved a custom value for that particular option.

### *Command Line Arguments*

The Naughty Dog engine scans the command line for a predefined set of special options. The name of the level to load can be specified, along with a number of other commonly used arguments.

### *Scheme Data Definitions*

The vast majority of engine and game configuration information in the Naughty Dog engine (used to produce the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series) is specified using a Lisp-like language called Scheme. Using a proprietary data compiler, data structures defined in the Scheme language are transformed into binary files that can be loaded by the engine. The data compiler also spits out header files containing C struct declarations for every data type defined in Scheme. These header files allow the engine to properly interpret the data contained in the loaded binary files. The binary files can even be recompiled and reloaded on the fly, allowing developers to alter the data in Scheme and see the effects of their changes immediately (as long as data members are not added or removed, as that would require a recompile of the engine).

The following example illustrates the creation of a data structure specifying the properties of an animation. It then exports three unique animations to the game. You may have never read Scheme code before, but for this relatively simple example it should be pretty self-explanatory. One oddity you’ll notice is that hyphens are permitted within Scheme symbols, so `simple-animation` is a single symbol (unlike in C/C++ where `simple-animation` would be the subtraction of two variables, `simple` and `animation`).

#### *simple-animation.scm*

```
;; Define a new data type called simple-animation.
(deftype simple-animation ()
  (
    (name          string)
    (speed         float   :default 1.0)
```

```

        (fade-in-seconds  float    :default 0.25)
        (fade-out-seconds float    :default 0.25)
    )
)

;; Now define three instances of this data structure...
(define-export anim-walk
    (new simple-animation
        :name "walk"
        :speed 1.0
    )
)

(define-export anim-walk-fast
    (new simple-animation
        :name "walk"
        :speed 2.0
    )
)

(define-export anim-jump
    (new simple-animation
        :name "jump"
        :fade-in-seconds 0.1
        :fade-out-seconds 0.1
    )
)
)
)

```

This Scheme code would generate the following C/C++ header file:

*simple-animation.h*

```

// WARNING: This file was automatically generated from
// Scheme. Do not hand-edit.

struct SimpleAnimation
{
    const char* m_name;
    float      m_speed;
    float      m_fadeInSeconds;
    float      m_fadeOutSeconds;
};

```

In-game, the data can be read by calling the `LookupSymbol()` function, which is templated on the data type returned, as follows:

```
#include "simple-animation.h"
void someFunction()
{
    SimpleAnimation* pWalkAnim
        = LookupSymbol<SimpleAnimation*>(
            SID("anim-walk"));

    SimpleAnimation* pFastWalkAnim
        = LookupSymbol<SimpleAnimation*>(
            SID("anim-walk-fast"));

    SimpleAnimation* pJumpAnim
        = LookupSymbol<SimpleAnimation*>(
            SID("anim-jump"));

    // use the data here...
}
```

This system gives the programmers a great deal of flexibility in defining all sorts of configuration data—from simple Boolean, floating-point and string options all the way to complex, nested, interconnected data structures. It is used to specify detailed animation trees, physics parameters, player mechanics and so on.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 7

## Resources and the File System

Games are by nature multimedia experiences. A game engine therefore needs to be capable of loading and managing a wide variety of different kinds of media—texture bitmaps, 3D mesh data, animations, audio clips, collision and physics data, game world layouts, and the list goes on. Moreover, because memory is usually scarce, a game engine needs to ensure that only one copy of each media file is loaded into memory at any given time. For example, if five meshes share the same texture, then we would like to have only one copy of that texture in memory, not five. Most game engines employ some kind of *resource manager* (a.k.a. *asset manager*, a.k.a. *media manager*) to load and manage the myriad resources that make up a modern 3D game.

Every resource manager makes heavy use of the file system. On a personal computer, the file system is exposed to the programmer via a library of operating system calls. However, game engines often “wrap” the native file system API in an engine-specific API, for two primary reasons. First, the engine might be cross-platform, in which case the game engine’s file system API can shield the rest of the software from differences between different target hardware platforms. Second, the operating system’s file system API might not provide all the tools needed by a game engine. For example, many engines support file *streaming* (i.e., the ability to load data “on the fly” while the game is running), yet most operating systems don’t provide a streaming file system API

out of the box. Console game engines also need to provide access to a variety of removable and non-removable media, from memory sticks to optional hard drives to a DVD-ROM or Blu-ray fixed disk to network file systems (e.g., Xbox Live or the PlayStation Network, PSN). The differences between various kinds of media can likewise be “hidden” behind a game engine’s file system API.

In this chapter, we’ll first explore the kinds of file system APIs found in modern 3D game engines. Then we’ll see how a typical resource manager works.

## 7.1 File System

A game engine’s file system API typically addresses the following areas of functionality:

- manipulating file names and paths,
- opening, closing, reading and writing individual files,
- scanning the contents of a directory, and
- handling asynchronous file I/O requests (for streaming).

We’ll take a brief look at each of these in the following sections.

### 7.1.1 File Names and Paths

A *path* is a string describing the location of a file or directory within a file system hierarchy. Each operating system uses a slightly different path format, but paths have essentially the same structure on every operating system. A path generally takes the following form:

`volume/directory1/directory2/.../directoryN/file-name`

or

`volume/directory1/directory2/.../directory(N-1)/directoryN`

In other words, a path generally consists of an optional *volume specifier* followed by a sequence of *path components* separated by a reserved path separator character such as the forward or backward slash (/ or \). Each component names a directory along the route from the root directory to the file or directory in question. If the path specifies the location of a file, the last component in the path is the file name; otherwise it names the target directory. The root directory is usually indicated by a path consisting of the optional volume specifier followed by a single path separator character (e.g., / on UNIX, or C:\ on Windows).

### 7.1.1.1 Differences across Operating Systems

Each operating system introduces slight variations on this general path structure. Here are some of the key differences between Microsoft DOS, Microsoft Windows, the UNIX family of operating systems and Apple Macintosh OS:

- UNIX uses a forward slash (/) as its path component separator, while DOS and older versions of Windows used a backslash (\) as the path separator. Recent versions of Windows allow either forward or backward slashes to be used to separate path components, although some applications still fail to accept forward slashes.
- Mac OS 8 and 9 use the colon (:) as the path separator character. Mac OS X is based on BSD UNIX, so it supports UNIX's forward slash notation.
- Some filesystems consider paths and filenames to be case-sensitive (like UNIX and its variants), while others are case-insensitive (like Windows). This can cause problems when dealing with files across multiple operating systems during development, or when writing a cross-platform game. (For example, should an asset file named `EnemyAnims.json` be considered equivalent to an asset file named `enemyanims.json` or not?)
- UNIX and its variants don't support volumes as separate directory hierarchies. The entire file system is contained within a single monolithic hierarchy, and local disk drives, network drives and other resources are *mounted* so that they appear to be subtrees within the main hierarchy. As a result, UNIX paths never have a volume specifier.
- On Microsoft Windows, volumes can be specified in two ways. A local disk drive is specified using a single letter followed by a colon (e.g., the ubiquitous C:). A remote network share can either be mounted so that it looks like a local disk, or it can be referenced via a volume specifier consisting of two backslashes followed by the remote computer name and the name of a shared directory or resource on that machine (e.g., `\some-computer\some-share`). This double backslash notation is an example of the Universal Naming Convention (UNC).
- Under DOS and early versions of Windows, a file name could be up to eight characters in length, with a three-character *extension* which was separated from the main file name by a dot. The extension described the file's type, for example `.txt` for a text file or `.exe` for an executable file. In recent Windows implementations, file names can contain any number of dots (as they can under UNIX), but the characters after the

final dot are still interpreted as the file's extension by many applications including the Windows Explorer.

- Each operating system disallows certain characters in the names of files and directories. For example, a colon cannot appear anywhere in a Windows or DOS path except as part of a drive letter volume specifier. Some operating systems permit a subset of these reserved characters to appear in a path as long as the path is quoted in its entirety or the offending character is *escaped* by preceding it with a backslash or some other reserved *escape character*. For example, file and directory names may contain spaces under Windows, but such a path must be surrounded by double quotes in certain contexts.
- Both UNIX and Windows have the concept of a *current working directory* or CWD (also known as the *present working directory* or PWD). The CWD can be set from a command shell via the `cd` (*change directory*) command on both operating systems, and it can be queried by typing `cd` with no arguments under Windows or by executing the `pwd` command on UNIX. Under UNIX there is only one CWD. Under Windows, each volume has its own private CWD.
- Operating systems that support multiple volumes, like Windows, also have the concept of a *current working volume*. From a Windows command shell, the current volume can be set by entering its drive letter and a colon followed by the Enter key (e.g., `C:<Enter>`).
- Consoles often also employ a set of predefined path prefixes to represent multiple volumes. For example, PlayStation 3 uses the prefix `/dev_bdvd/` to refer to the Blu-ray disk drive, while `/dev_hddx/` refers to one or more hard disks (where  $x$  is the index of the device). On a PS3 development kit, `/app_home/` maps to a user-defined path on whatever host machine is being used for development. During development, the game usually reads its assets from `/app_home/` rather than from the Blu-ray or the hard disk.

### 7.1.1.2 Absolute and Relative Paths

All paths are specified relative to some location within the file system. When a path is specified relative to the root directory, we call it an *absolute path*. When it is relative to some *other* directory in the file system hierarchy, we call it a *relative path*.

Under both UNIX and Windows, absolute paths start with a path separator character (/ or \), while relative paths have no leading path separator. On Windows, both absolute and relative paths may have an optional volume

specifier—if the volume is omitted, then the path is assumed to refer to the current working volume.

The following paths are all absolute:

#### Windows

- C:\Windows\System32
- D:\ (root directory on the D: volume)
- \ (root directory on the current working volume)
- \game\assets\animation\walk.anim (current working volume)
- \\joe-dell\Shared\_Files\Images\foo.jpg (network path)

#### UNIX

- /usr/local/bin/grep
- /game/src/audio/effects.cpp
- / (root directory)

The following paths are all relative:

#### Windows

- System32 (relative to CWD \Windows on the current volume)
- X:animation\walk.anim (relative to CWD \game\assets on the X: volume)

#### UNIX

- bin/grep (relative to CWD /usr/local)
- src/audio/effects.cpp (relative to CWD /game)

### 7.1.1.3 Search Paths

The term *path* should not be confused with the term *search path*. A *path* is a string representing the location of a single file or directory within the file system hierarchy. A *search path* is a string containing a list of paths, each separated by a special character such as a colon or semicolon, which is searched when looking for a file. For example, when you run any program from a command prompt, the operating system finds the executable file by searching each directory on the search path contained in the shell’s environment variable.

Some game engines also use search paths to locate resource files. For example, the OGRE rendering engine uses a resource search path contained in a text file named `resources.cfg`. The file provides a simple list of directories and ZIP archives that should be searched in order when trying to find an asset. That said, searching for assets at runtime is a time-consuming proposition. Usually there’s no reason our assets’ paths cannot be known *a priori*. Presuming this is the case, we can avoid having to search for assets at all—which is clearly a superior approach.

#### 7.1.1.4 Path APIs

Clearly, paths are much more complex than simple strings. There are many things a programmer may need to do when dealing with paths, such as isolating the directory, filename and extension, canonicalizing a path, converting back and forth between absolute and relative paths and so on. It can be extremely helpful to have a feature-rich API to help with these tasks.

Microsoft Windows provides an API for this purpose. It is implemented by the dynamic link library `shlwapi.dll`, and it is exposed via the header file `shlwapi.h`. Complete documentation for this API is provided on the Microsoft Developer's Network (MSDN) at the following URL: [http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb773559\(VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb773559(VS.85).aspx).

Of course, the `shlwapi` API is only available on Win32 platforms. Sony provides similar APIs for use on the PlayStation 3 and PlayStation 4. But when writing a cross-platform game engine, we cannot use platform-specific APIs directly. A game engine may not need all of the functions provided by an API like `shlwapi` anyway. For these reasons, game engines often implement a stripped-down path-handling API that meets the engine's particular needs and works on every operating system targeted by the engine. Such an API can be implemented as a thin wrapper around the native API on each platform or it can be written from scratch.

### 7.1.2 Basic File I/O

The C standard library provides two APIs for opening, reading and writing the contents of files—one buffered and the other unbuffered. Every file I/O API requires data blocks known as *buffers* to serve as the source or destination of the bytes passing between the program and the file on disk. We say a file I/O API is *buffered* when the API manages the necessary input and output data buffers for you. With an unbuffered API, it is the responsibility of the programmer using the API to allocate and manage the data buffers. The C standard library's buffered file I/O routines are sometimes referred to as the *stream I/O API*, because they provide an abstraction which makes disk files look like streams of bytes.

The C standard library functions for buffered and unbuffered file I/O are listed in Table 7.1.

The C standard library I/O functions are well-documented, so we will not repeat detailed documentation for them here. For more information, please refer to <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/c565h7xx.aspx> for Microsoft's implementation of the buffered (stream I/O) API, and to <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/40bbyw78.aspx> for Microsoft's imple-

Operation	Buffered API	Unbuffered API
Open a file	<code>fopen()</code>	<code>open()</code>
Close a file	<code>fclose()</code>	<code>close()</code>
Read from a file	<code>fread()</code>	<code>read()</code>
Write to a file	<code>fwrite()</code>	<code>write()</code>
Seek to an offset	<code>fseek()</code>	<code>seek()</code>
Return current offset	<code>ftell()</code>	<code>tell()</code>
Read a single line	<code>fgets()</code>	n/a
Write a single line	<code>fputs()</code>	n/a
Read formatted string	<code>fscanf()</code>	n/a
Write formatted string	<code>fprintf()</code>	n/a
Query file status	<code>fstat()</code>	<code>stat()</code>

Table 7.1. Buffered and unbuffered file operations in the C standard library.

mentation of the unbuffered (low-level I/O) API.

On UNIX and its variants, the C standard library's unbuffered I/O routes are native operating system calls. However, on Microsoft Windows these routines are merely wrappers around an even lower-level API. The Win32 function `CreateFile()` creates or opens a file for writing or reading, `ReadFile()` and `WriteFile()` read and write data, respectively, and `CloseFile()` closes an open file handle. The advantage to using low-level system calls as opposed to C standard library functions is that they expose all of the details of the native file system. For example, you can query and control the security attributes of files when using the Windows native API—something you cannot do with the C standard library.

Some game teams find it useful to manage their own buffers. For example, the *Red Alert 3* team at Electronic Arts observed that writing data into log files was causing significant performance degradation. They changed the logging system so that it accumulated its output into a memory buffer, writing the buffer out to disk only when it was filled. Then they moved the buffer dump routine out into a separate thread to avoid stalling the main game loop.

### 7.1.2.1 To Wrap or Not to Wrap

A game engine can be written to use the C standard library's file I/O functions or the operating system's native API. However, many game engines *wrap* the file I/O API in a library of custom I/O functions. There are at least three advantages to wrapping the operating system's I/O API. First, the engine programmers can guarantee identical behavior across all target platforms, even when native libraries are inconsistent or buggy on a particular platform.

Second, the API can be simplified down to only those functions actually required by the engine, which keeps maintenance efforts to a minimum. Third, extended functionality can be provided. For example, the engine's custom wrapper API might be capable of dealing with files on a hard disk, a DVD-ROM or Blu-ray disk on a console, files on a network (e.g., remote files managed by Xbox Live or PSN), and also with files on memory sticks or other kinds of removable media.

### 7.1.2.2 Synchronous File I/O

Both of the standard C library's file I/O libraries are *synchronous*, meaning that the program making the I/O request must wait until the data has been completely transferred to or from the media device before continuing. The following code snippet demonstrates how the entire contents of a file might be read into an in-memory buffer using the synchronous I/O function `fread()`. Notice how the function `syncReadFile()` does not return until all the data has been read into the buffer provided.

```
bool syncReadFile(const char* filePath,
                  U8* buffer,
                  size_t bufferSize,
                  size_t& rBytesRead)
{
    FILE* handle = fopen(filePath, "rb");
    if (handle)
    {
        // BLOCK here until all data has been read.
        size_t bytesRead = fread(buffer, 1,
                                bufferSize, handle);

        int err = ferror(handle); // get error if any

        fclose(handle);

        if (0 == err)
        {
            rBytesRead = bytesRead;
            return true;
        }
    }
    rBytesRead = 0;
    return false;
}

void main(int argc, const char* argv[])
{
```

```
U8 testBuffer[512];
size_t bytesRead = 0;

if (syncReadFile("C:\\\\testfile.bin",
                  testBuffer, sizeof(testBuffer),
                  bytesRead))
{
    printf("success: read %u bytes\\n", bytesRead);
    // contents of buffer can be used here...
}
}
```

### 7.1.3 Asynchronous File I/O

*Streaming* refers to the act of loading data in the background while the main program continues to run. Many games provide the player with a seamless, load-screen-free playing experience by streaming data for upcoming levels from the DVD-ROM, Blu-ray disk or hard drive while the game is being played. Audio and texture data are probably the most commonly streamed types of data, but any type of data can be streamed, including geometry, level layouts and animation clips.

In order to support streaming, we must utilize an *asynchronous* file I/O library, i.e., one which permits the program to continue to run while its I/O requests are being satisfied. Some operating systems provide an asynchronous file I/O library out of the box. For example, the Windows Common Language Runtime (CLR, the virtual machine upon which languages like Visual BASIC, C#, managed C++ and J# are implemented) provides functions like `System.IO.BeginRead()` and `System.IO.BeginWrite()`. An asynchronous API known as `fios` is available for the PlayStation 3 and PlayStation 4. If an asynchronous file I/O library is not available for your target platform, it is possible to write one yourself. And even if you don't have to write it from scratch, it's probably a good idea to wrap the system API for portability.

The following code snippet demonstrates how the entire contents of a file might be read into an in-memory buffer using an asynchronous read operation. Notice that the `asyncReadFile()` function returns immediately—the data is not present in the buffer until our callback function `asyncReadComplete()` has been called by the I/O library.

```
AsyncRequestHandle g_hRequest; // async I/O request handle
U8 g_asyncBuffer[512]; // input buffer

static void asyncReadComplete(AsyncRequestHandle hRequest);
```

```
void main(int argc, const char* argv[])
{
    // NOTE: This call to asyncOpen() might itself be an
    // asynchronous call, but we'll ignore that detail
    // here and just assume it's a blocking function.

    AsyncFileHandle hFile = asyncOpen(
        "C:\\testfile.bin");

    if (hFile)
    {
        // This function requests an I/O read, then
        // returns immediately (non-blocking).
        g_hRequest = asyncReadFile(
            hFile,                                // file handle
            g_asyncBuffer,                         // input buffer
            sizeof(g_asyncBuffer),                // size of buffer
            asyncReadComplete);                 // callback function
    }

    // Now go on our merry way...
    // (This loop simulates doing real work while we wait
    // for the I/O read to complete.)

    for (;;)
    {
        OutputDebugString("zzz...\\n");
        Sleep(50);
    }
}

// This function will be called when the data has been read.
static void asyncReadComplete(AsyncRequestHandle hRequest)
{
    if (hRequest == g_hRequest
    && asyncWasSuccessful(hRequest))
    {
        // The data is now present in g_asyncBuffer[] and
        // can be used. Query for the number of bytes
        // actually read:
        size_t bytes = asyncGetBytesReadOrWritten(
            hRequest);

        char msg[256];
        snprintf(msg, sizeof(msg),
            "async success, read %u bytes\\n",

```

```
    bytes);
    OutputDebugString(msg);
}
}
```

Most asynchronous I/O libraries permit the main program to wait for an I/O operation to complete some time after the request was made. This can be useful in situations where only a limited amount of work can be done before the results of a pending I/O request are needed. This is illustrated in the following code snippet.

```
U8 g_asyncBuffer[512]; // input buffer

void main(int argc, const char* argv[])
{
    AsyncRequestHandle hRequest = ASYNC_INVALID_HANDLE;
    AsyncFileHandle hFile = asyncOpen(
        "C:\\\\testfile.bin");

    if (hFile)
    {
        // This function requests an I/O read, then
        // returns immediately (non-blocking).
        hRequest = asyncReadFile(
            hFile, // file handle
            g_asyncBuffer, // input buffer
            sizeof(g_asyncBuffer), // size of buffer
            nullptr); // no callback
    }

    // Now do some limited amount of work...
    for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
    {
        OutputDebugString("zzz...\\n");
        Sleep(50);
    }

    // We can't do anything further until we have that
    // data, so wait for it here.
    asyncWait(hRequest);

    if (asyncWasSuccessful(hRequest))
    {
        // The data is now present in g_asyncBuffer[] and
        // can be used. Query for the number of bytes
        // actually read:
        size_t bytes = asyncGetBytesReadOrWritten(
            hRequest);
```

```
        char msg[256];
        snprintf(msg, sizeof(msg),
                  "async success, read %u bytes\n",
                  bytes);
        OutputDebugString(msg);
    }
}
```

Some asynchronous I/O libraries allow the programmer to ask for an estimate of how long a particular asynchronous operation will take to complete. Some APIs also allow you to set *deadlines* on a request (which effectively prioritizes the request relative to other pending requests), and to specify what happens when a request misses its deadline (e.g., cancel the request, notify the program and keep trying, etc.)

#### 7.1.3.1 Priorities

It's important to remember that file I/O is a real-time system, subject to deadlines just like the rest of the game. Therefore, asynchronous I/O operations often have varying priorities. For example, if we are streaming audio from the hard disk or Blu-ray and playing it on the fly, loading the next buffer-full of audio data is clearly higher priority than, say, loading a texture or a chunk of a game level. Asynchronous I/O systems must be capable of suspending lower-priority requests, so that higher-priority I/O requests have a chance to complete within their deadlines.

#### 7.1.3.2 How Asynchronous File I/O Works

Asynchronous file I/O works by handling I/O requests in a separate thread. The main thread calls functions that simply place requests on a queue and then return immediately. Meanwhile, the I/O thread picks up requests from the queue and handles them sequentially using blocking I/O routines like `read()` or `fread()`. When a request is completed, a callback provided by the main thread is called, thereby notifying it that the operation is done. If the main thread chooses to wait for an I/O request to complete, this is handled via a *semaphore*. (Each request has an associated semaphore, and the main thread can put itself to sleep waiting for that semaphore to be signaled by the I/O thread upon completion of the request. See Section 4.6.4 for more on semaphores.)

Virtually *any* synchronous operation you can imagine can be transformed into an asynchronous operation by moving the code into a separate thread—or by running it on a physically separate processor, such as on one of the CPU cores on the PlayStation 4. See Section 8.6 for more details.

## 7.2 The Resource Manager

Every game is constructed from a wide variety of *resources* (sometimes called *assets* or *media*). Examples include meshes, materials, textures, shader programs, animations, audio clips, level layouts, collision primitives, physics parameters, and the list goes on. A game's resources must be managed, both in terms of the offline tools used to create them, and in terms of loading, unloading and manipulating them at runtime. Therefore, every game engine has a *resource manager* of some kind.

Every resource manager is comprised of two distinct but integrated components. One component manages the chain of offline tools used to create the assets and transform them into their engine-ready form. The other component manages the resources at runtime, ensuring that they are loaded into memory in advance of being needed by the game and making sure they are unloaded from memory when no longer needed.

In some engines, the resource manager is a cleanly designed, unified, centralized subsystem that manages all types of resources used by the game. In other engines, the resource manager doesn't exist as a single subsystem per se, but rather is spread across a disparate collection of subsystems, perhaps written by different individuals at various times over the engine's long and sometimes colorful history. But no matter how it is implemented, a resource manager invariably takes on certain responsibilities and solves a well-understood set of problems. In this section, we'll explore the functionality and some of the implementation details of a typical game engine resource manager.

### 7.2.1 Offline Resource Management and the Tool Chain

#### 7.2.1.1 Revision Control for Assets

On a small game project, the game's assets can be managed by keeping loose files sitting around on a shared network drive with an ad hoc directory structure. This approach is not feasible for a modern commercial 3D game, comprised of a massive number and variety of assets. For such a project, the team requires a more formalized way to track and manage its assets.

Some game teams use a source code revision control system to manage their resources. Art source files (Maya scenes, Photoshop PSD files, Illustrator files, etc.) are checked in to Perforce or a similar package by the artists. This approach works reasonably well, although some game teams build custom asset management tools to help flatten the learning curve for their artists. Such tools may be simple wrappers around a commercial revision control system, or they might be entirely custom.

### *Dealing with Data Size*

One of the biggest problems in the revision control of art assets is the sheer amount of data. Whereas C++ and script source code files are small, relative to their impact on the project, art files tend to be much, much larger. Because many source control systems work by copying files from the central repository down to the user’s local machine, the sheer size of the asset files can render these packages almost entirely useless.

I’ve seen a number of different solutions to this problem employed at various studios. Some studios turn to commercial revision control systems like Alienbrain that have been specifically designed to handle very large data sizes. Some teams simply “take their lumps” and allow their revision control tool to copy assets locally. This can work, as long as your disks are big enough and your network bandwidth sufficient, but it can also be inefficient and slow the team down. Some teams build elaborate systems on top of their revision control tool to ensure that a particular end user only gets local copies of the files he or she actually needs. In this model, the user either has no access to the rest of the repository or can access it on a shared network drive when needed.

At Naughty Dog we use a proprietary tool that makes use of UNIX symbolic links to virtually eliminate data copying, while permitting each user to have a complete local view of the asset repository. As long as a file is not checked out for editing, it is a symlink to a master file on a shared network drive. A symbolic link occupies very little space on the local disk, because it is nothing more than a directory entry. When the user checks out a file for editing, the symlink is removed, and a local copy of the file replaces it. When the user is done editing and checks the file in, the local copy becomes the new master copy, its revision history is updated in a master database, and the local file turns back into a symlink. This system works very well, but it requires the team to build their own revision control system from scratch; I am unaware of any commercial tool that works like this. Also, symbolic links are a UNIX feature—such a tool could probably be built with Windows junctions (the Windows equivalent of a symbolic link), but I haven’t seen anyone try it as yet.

#### 7.2.1.2 The Resource Database

As we’ll explore in depth in the next section, most assets are not used in their original format by the game engine. They need to pass through some kind of asset conditioning pipeline, whose job it is to convert the assets into the binary format needed by the engine. For every resource that passes through

the asset conditioning pipeline, there is some amount of *metadata* that describes *how* that resource should be processed. When compressing a texture bitmap, we need to know what *type* of compression best suits that particular image. When exporting an animation, we need to know what range of frames in Maya should be exported. When exporting character meshes out of a Maya scene containing multiple characters, we need to know which mesh corresponds to which character in the game.

To manage all of this metadata, we need some kind of database. If we are making a very small game, this database might be housed in the brains of the developers themselves. I can hear them now: “Remember: the player’s animations need to have the ‘flip X’ flag set, but the other characters must *not* have it set...or...rats...is it the other way around?”

Clearly for any game of respectable size, we simply cannot rely on the memories of our developers in this manner. For one thing, the sheer volume of assets becomes overwhelming quite quickly. Processing individual resource files by hand is also far too time-consuming to be practical on a full-fledged commercial game production. Therefore, every professional game team has some kind of semiautomated resource pipeline, and the data that drive the pipeline is stored in some kind of *resource database*.

The resource database takes on vastly different forms in different game engines. In one engine, the metadata describing how a resource should be built might be embedded into the source assets themselves (e.g., it might be stored as so-called blind data within a Maya file). In another engine, each source resource file might be accompanied by a small text file that describes how it should be processed. Still other engines encode their resource building metadata in a set of XML files, perhaps wrapped in some kind of custom graphical user interface. Some engines employ a true relational database, such as Microsoft Access, MySQL or conceivably even a heavyweight database like Oracle.

Whatever its form, a resource database must provide the following basic functionality:

- The ability to deal with multiple *types* of resources, ideally (but certainly not necessarily) in a somewhat consistent manner.
- The ability to create new resources.
- The ability to delete resources.
- The ability to inspect and modify existing resources.
- The ability to move a resource’s source file(s) from one location to another on-disk. (This is very helpful because artists and game designers

often need to rearrange assets to reflect changing project goals, rethinking of game designs, feature additions and cuts, etc.)

- The ability of a resource to cross-reference other resources (e.g., the material used by a mesh, or the collection of animations needed by level 17). These cross-references typically drive both the resource building process and the loading process at runtime.
- The ability to maintain *referential integrity* of all cross-references within the database and to do so in the face of all common operations such as deleting or moving resources around.
- The ability to maintain a revision history, complete with a log of who made each change and why.
- It is also very helpful if the resource database supports searching or querying in various ways. For example, a developer might want to know in which levels a particular animation is used or which textures are referenced by a set of materials. Or they might simply be trying to find a resource whose name momentarily escapes them.

It should be pretty obvious from looking at the above list that creating a reliable and robust resource database is no small task. When designed well and implemented properly, the resource database can quite literally make the difference between a team that ships a hit game and a team that spins its wheels for 18 months before being forced by management to abandon the project (or worse). I know this to be true, because I've personally experienced both.

### 7.2.1.3 Some Successful Resource Database Designs

Every game team will have different requirements and make different decisions when designing their resource database. However, for what it's worth, here are some designs that have worked well in my own experience.

#### *Unreal Engine 4*

Unreal's resource database is managed by their über-tool, UnrealEd. UnrealEd is responsible for literally everything, from resource metadata management to asset creation to level layout and more. UnrealEd has its drawbacks, but its single biggest benefit is that UnrealEd is a part of the game engine itself. This permits assets to be created and then immediately viewed in their full glory, exactly as they will appear in-game. The game can even be run from within UnrealEd in order to visualize the assets in their natural surroundings and see if and how they work in-game.

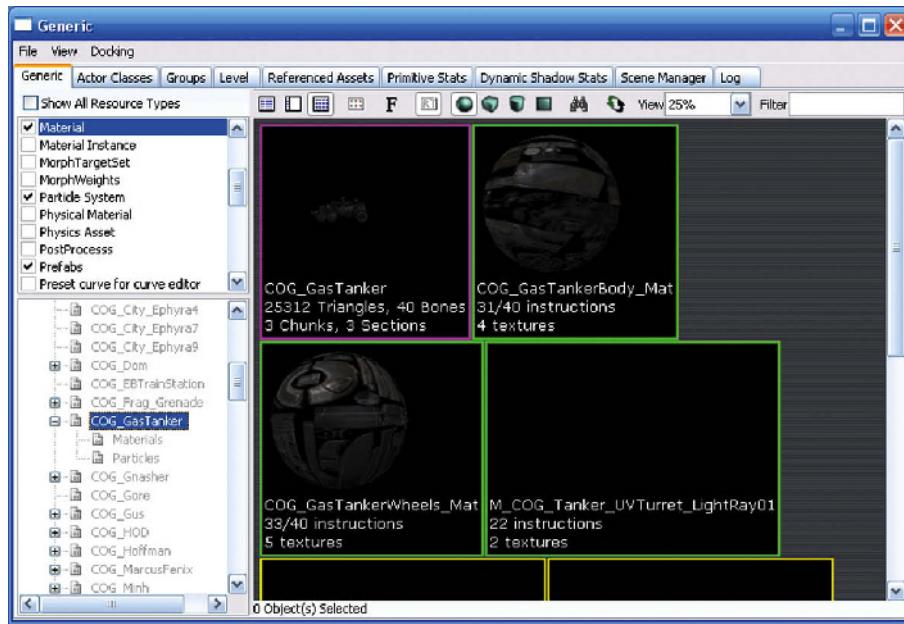


Figure 7.1. UnrealEd's Generic Browser.

Another big benefit of UnrealEd is what I would call *one-stop shopping*. UnrealEd's Generic Browser (depicted in Figure 7.1) allows a developer to access literally every resource that is consumed by the engine. Having a single, unified and reasonably consistent interface for creating and managing all types of resources is a big win. This is especially true considering that the resource data in most other game engines is fragmented across countless inconsistent and often cryptic tools. Just being able to *find* any resource easily in UnrealEd is a big plus.

Unreal can be less error-prone than many other engines, because assets must be explicitly imported into Unreal's resource database. This allows resources to be checked for validity very early in the production process. In most game engines, any old data can be thrown into the resource database, and you only know whether or not that data is valid when it is eventually built—or sometimes not until it is actually loaded into the game at runtime. But with Unreal, assets can be validated as soon as they are imported into UnrealEd. This means that the person who created the asset gets immediate feedback as to whether his or her asset is configured properly.

Of course, Unreal's approach has some serious drawbacks. For one thing,

all resource data is stored in a small number of large package files. These files are binary, so they are not easily merged by a revision control package like CVS, Subversion or Perforce. This presents some major problems when more than one user wants to modify resources that reside in a single package. Even if the users are trying to modify *different* resources, only one user can lock the package at a time, so the other has to wait. The severity of this problem can be reduced by dividing resources into relatively small, granular packages, but it cannot practically be eliminated.

Referential integrity is quite good in UnrealEd, but there are still some problems. When a resource is renamed or moved around, all references to it are maintained automatically using a dummy object that remaps the old resource to its new name/location. The problem with these dummy remapping objects is that they hang around and accumulate and sometimes cause problems, especially if a resource is deleted. Overall, Unreal's referential integrity is quite good, but it is not perfect.

Despite its problems, UnrealEd is by far the most user-friendly, well-integrated and streamlined asset creation toolkit, resource database and asset conditioning pipeline that I have ever worked with.

### *Naughty Dog's Engine*

For *Uncharted: Drake's Fortune*, Naughty Dog stored its resource metadata in a MySQL database. A custom graphical user interface was written to manage the contents of the database. This tool allowed artists, game designers and programmers alike to create new resources, delete existing resources and inspect and modify resources as well. This GUI was a crucial component of the system, because it allowed users to avoid having to learn the intricacies of interacting with a relational database via SQL.

The original MySQL database used on *Uncharted* did not provide a useful history of the changes made to the database, nor did it provide a good way to roll back "bad" changes. It also did not support multiple users editing the same resource, and it was difficult to administer. Naughty Dog has since moved away from MySQL in favor of an XML file-based asset database, managed under Perforce.

Builder, Naughty Dog's resource database GUI, is depicted in Figure 7.2. The window is broken into two main sections: a tree view showing all resources in the game on the left and a properties window on the right, allowing the resource(s) that are selected in the tree view to be viewed and edited. The resource tree contains folders for organizational purposes, so that the artists and game designers can organize their resources in any way they see fit. Various types of resources can be created and managed within any folder, includ-

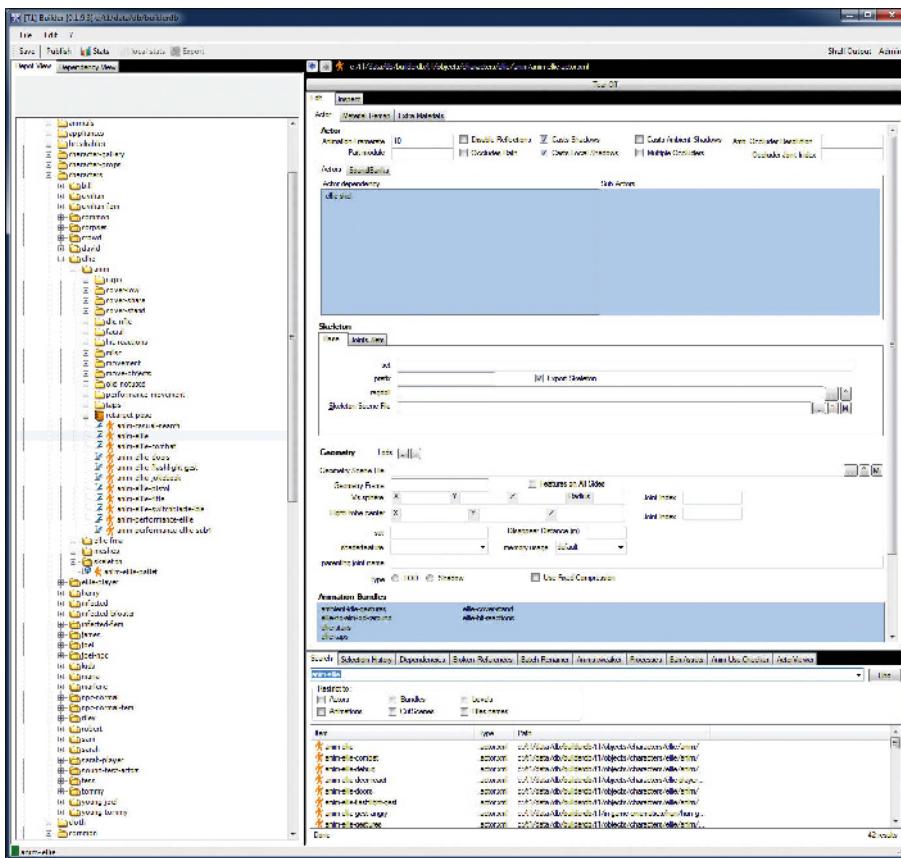


Figure 7.2. The front-end GUI for Naughty Dog's offline resource database, Builder.

ing actors and levels, and the various subresources that comprise them (primarily meshes, skeletons and animations). Animations can also be grouped into pseudo-folders known as bundles. This allows large groups of animations to be created and then managed as a unit, and prevents a lot of wasted time dragging individual animations around in the tree view.

The asset conditioning pipeline employed on the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series consists of a set of resource exporters, compilers and linkers that are run from the command line. The engine is capable of dealing with a wide variety of different kinds of data objects, but these are packaged into one of two types of resource files: actors and levels. An actor can contain skeletons, meshes, materials, textures and/or animations. A level contains static background meshes, materials and textures, and also level-layout information. To

build an actor, one simply types `ba name-of-actor` on the command line; to build a level, one types `b1 name-of-level`. These command-line tools query the database to determine exactly *how* to build the actor or level in question. This includes information on how to export the assets from DCC tools like Maya and Photoshop, how to process the data, and how to package it into binary `.pak` files that can be loaded by the game engine. This is much simpler than in many engines, where resources have to be *exported manually* by the artists—a time-consuming, tedious and error-prone task.

The benefits of the resource pipeline design used by Naughty Dog include:

- *Granular resources.* Resources can be manipulated in terms of logical entities in the game—meshes, materials, skeletons and animations. These resource types are granular enough that the team almost never has conflicts in which two users want to edit the same resource simultaneously.
- *The necessary features (and no more).* The Builder tool provides a powerful set of features that meet the needs of the team, but Naughty Dog didn't waste any resources creating features they didn't need.
- *Obvious mapping to source files.* A user can very quickly determine which source assets (native DCC files, like Maya `.ma` files or photoshop `.psd` files) make up a particular resource.
- *Easy to change how DCC data is exported and processed.* Just click on the resource in question and twiddle its processing properties within the resource database GUI.
- *Easy to build assets.* Just type `ba` or `b1` followed by the resource name on the command line. The dependency system takes care of the rest.

Of course, Naughty Dog's tool chain does have some drawbacks as well, including:

- *Lack of visualization tools.* The only way to preview an asset is to load it into the game or the model/animation viewer (which is really just a special mode of the game itself).
- *The tools aren't fully integrated.* Naughty Dog uses one tool to lay out levels, another to manage the majority of resources in the resource database, and a third to set up materials and shaders (this is not part of the resource database front end). Building the assets is done on the command line. It might be a bit more convenient if all of these functions were to be integrated into a single tool. However, Naughty Dog has no plans to do this, because the benefit would probably not outweigh the costs involved.

### *OGRE's Resource Manager System*

OGRE is a rendering engine, not a full-fledged game engine. That said, OGRE does boast a reasonably complete and very well-designed runtime resource manager. A simple, consistent interface is used to load virtually any kind of resource. And the system has been designed with extensibility in mind. Any programmer can quite easily implement a resource manager for a brand new kind of asset and integrate it easily into OGRE's resource framework.

One of the drawbacks of OGRE's resource manager is that it is a runtime-only solution. OGRE lacks any kind of offline resource database. OGRE does provide some exporters that are capable of converting a Maya file into a mesh that can be used by OGRE (complete with materials, shaders, a skeleton and optional animations). However, the exporter must be run manually from within Maya itself. Worse, all of the metadata describing how a particular Maya file should be exported and processed must be entered by the user doing the export.

In summary, OGRE's runtime resource manager is powerful and well-designed. But, OGRE would benefit a great deal from an equally powerful and modern resource database and asset conditioning pipeline on the tools side.

### *Microsoft's XNA*

XNA is a game development toolkit by Microsoft, targeted at the PC and Xbox 360 platforms. Although it was retired by Microsoft in 2014, it's still a good resource for learning about game engines. XNA's resource management system is unique, in that it leverages the project management and build systems of the Visual Studio IDE to manage and build the assets in the game as well. XNA's game development tool, Game Studio Express, is just a plug-in to Visual Studio Express.

#### 7.2.1.4 The Asset Conditioning Pipeline

In Section 1.7, we learned that resource data is typically created using advanced digital content creation (DCC) tools like Maya, ZBrush, Photoshop or Houdini. However, the data formats used by these tools are usually not suitable for direct consumption by a game engine. So the majority of resource data is passed through an *asset conditioning pipeline* (ACP) on its way to the game engine. The ACP is sometimes referred to as the *resource conditioning pipeline* (RCP), or simply the *tool chain*.

Every resource pipeline starts with a collection of *source assets* in native DCC formats (e.g., Maya .ma or .mb files, Photoshop .psd files, etc.). These

assets are typically passed through three processing stages on their way to the game engine:

1. *Exporters*. We need some way of getting the data out of the DCC’s native format and into a format that we can manipulate. This is usually accomplished by writing a custom plug-in for the DCC in question. It is the plug-in’s job to export the data into some kind of intermediate file format that can be passed to later stages in the pipeline. Most DCC applications provide a reasonably convenient mechanism for doing this. Maya actually provides three: a C++ SDK, a scripting language called MEL and most recently a Python interface as well.

In cases where a DCC application provides no customization hooks, we can always save the data in one of the DCC tool’s native formats. With any luck, one of these will be an open format, a reasonably intuitive text format, or some other format that we can reverse engineer. Presuming this is the case, we can pass the file directly to the next stage of the pipeline.

2. *Resource compilers*. We often have to “massage” the raw data exported from a DCC application in various ways in order to make them game-ready. For example, we might need to rearrange a mesh’s triangles into strips, or compress a texture bitmap, or calculate the arc lengths of the segments of a Catmull-Rom spline. Not all types of resources need to be compiled—some might be game-ready immediately upon being exported.
3. *Resource linkers*. Multiple resource files sometimes need to be combined into a single useful package prior to being loaded by the game engine. This mimics the process of linking together the object files of a compiled C++ program into an executable file, and so this process is sometimes called *resource linking*. For example, when building a complex composite resource like a 3D model, we might need to combine the data from multiple exported mesh files, multiple material files, a skeleton file and multiple animation files into a single resource. Not all types of resources need to be linked—some assets are game-ready after the export or compile steps.

#### *Resource Dependencies and Build Rules*

Much like compiling the source files in a C or C++ project and then linking them into an executable, the asset conditioning pipeline processes source assets (in the form of Maya geometry and animation files, Photoshop PSD files,

raw audio clips, text files, etc.), converts them into game-ready form and then links them together into a cohesive whole for use by the engine. And just like the source files in a computer program, game assets often have interdependencies. (For example, a mesh refers to one or more materials, which in turn refer to various textures.) These interdependencies typically have an impact on the order in which assets must be processed by the pipeline. (For example, we might need to build a character’s skeleton before we can process any of that character’s animations.) In addition, the dependencies between assets tell us which assets need to be rebuilt when a particular source asset changes.

Build dependencies revolve not only around changes to the assets themselves, but also around changes to data formats. If the format of the files used to store triangle meshes changes, for instance, all meshes in the entire game may need to be reexported and/or rebuilt. Some game engines employ data formats that are robust to version changes. For example, an asset may contain a version number, and the game engine may include code that “knows” how to load and make use of legacy assets. The downside of such a policy is that asset files and engine code tend to become bulky. When data format changes are relatively rare, it may be better to just bite the bullet and reprocess all the files when format changes do occur.

Every asset conditioning pipeline requires a set of rules that describe the interdependencies between the assets, and some kind of build tool that can use this information to ensure that the proper assets are built, in the proper order, when a source asset is modified. Some game teams roll their own build system. Others use an established tool, such as `make`. Whatever solution is selected, teams should treat their build dependency system with utmost care. If you don’t, changes to sources, assets may not trigger the proper assets to be rebuilt. The result can be inconsistent game assets, which may lead to visual anomalies or even engine crashes. In my personal experience, I’ve witnessed countless hours wasted in tracking down problems that could have been avoided had the asset interdependencies been properly specified and the build system implemented to use them reliably.

## 7.2.2 Runtime Resource Management

Let us turn our attention now to how the assets in our resource database are loaded, managed and unloaded within the engine at runtime.

### 7.2.2.1 Responsibilities of the Runtime Resource Manager

A game engine’s runtime resource manager takes on a wide range of responsibilities, all related to its primary mandate of loading resources into memory:

- Ensures that only *one copy* of each unique resource exists in memory at any given time.
- Manages the *lifetime* of each resource.
- *Loads* needed resources and *unloads* resources that are no longer needed.
- Handles loading of *composite resources*. A composite resource is a resource comprised of other resources. For example, a *3D model* is a composite resource that consists of a mesh, one or more materials, one or more textures and optionally a skeleton and multiple skeletal animations.
- Maintains *referential integrity*. This includes *internal* referential integrity (cross-references within a single resource) and *external* referential integrity (cross-references between resources). For example, a model refers to its mesh and skeleton; a mesh refers to its materials, which in turn refer to texture resources; animations refer to a skeleton, which ultimately ties them to one or more models. When loading a composite resource, the resource manager must ensure that all necessary subresources are loaded, and it must patch in all of the cross-references properly.
- Manages the *memory usage* of loaded resources and ensures that resources are stored in the appropriate place(s) in memory.
- Permits *custom processing* to be performed on a resource after it has been loaded, on a per-resource-type basis. This process is sometimes known as *logging in* or *load-initializing* the resource.
- Usually (but not always) provides a single *unified interface* through which a wide variety of resource types can be managed. Ideally a resource manager is also easily extensible, so that it can handle new types of resources as they are needed by the game development team.
- Handles *streaming* (i.e., asynchronous resource loading), if the engine supports this feature.

### 7.2.2.2 Resource File and Directory Organization

In some game engines (typically PC engines), each individual resource is managed in a separate “loose” file on-disk. These files are typically contained within a tree of directories whose internal organization is designed primarily for the convenience of the people creating the assets; the engine typically doesn’t care where resource files are located within the resource tree. Here’s a typical resource directory tree for a hypothetical game called *Space Evaders*:

---

SpaceEvaders	Root directory for entire game.
Resources	Root of all resources.
NPC	Non-player character models and animations.
Pirate	Models and animations for pirates.
Marine	Models and animations for marines.
...	
Player	Player character models and animations.
Weapons	Models and animations for weapons.
Pistol	Models and animations for the pistol.
Rifle	Models and animations for the rifle.
BFG	Models and animations for the big...uh...gun.
...	
Levels	Background geometry and level layouts.
Level1	First level's resources.
Level2	Second level's resources.
...	
Objects	Miscellaneous 3D objects.
Crate	The ubiquitous breakable crate.
Barrel	The ubiquitous exploding barrel.

Other engines package multiple resources together in a single file, such as a ZIP archive, or some other composite file (perhaps of a proprietary format). The primary benefit of this approach is improved load times. When loading data from files, the three biggest costs are *seek times* (i.e., moving the read head to the correct place on the physical media), the time required to open each individual file, and the time to read the data from the file into memory. Of these, the seek times and file-open times can be nontrivial on many operating systems. When a single large file is used, all of these costs are minimized. A single file can be organized sequentially on the disk, reducing seek times to a minimum. And with only one file to open, the cost of opening individual resource files is eliminated.

Solid-state drives (SSD) do not suffer from the seek time problems that plague spinning media like DVDs, Blu-ray discs and hard disc drives (HDD). However, no game console to date includes a solid-state drive as the primary fixed storage device (not even the PS4 and Xbox One). So designing your game's I/O patterns in order to minimize seek times is likely to be a necessity for some time to come.

The OGRE rendering engine's resource manager permits resources to exist

as loose files on disk, or as virtual files within a large ZIP archive. The primary benefits of the ZIP format are the following:

1. *It is an open format.* The `zlib` and `zziplib` libraries used to read and write ZIP archives are freely available. The `zlib` SDK is totally free (see <http://www.zlib.net>), while the `zziplib` SDK falls under the Lesser Gnu Public License (LGPL) (see <http://zziplib.sourceforge.net>).
2. *The virtual files within a ZIP archive “remember” their relative paths.* This means that a ZIP archive “looks like” a raw file system for most intents and purposes. The OGRE resource manager identifies all resources uniquely via strings that appear to be file system paths. However, these paths sometimes identify virtual files within a ZIP archive instead of loose files on disk, and a game programmer needn’t be aware of the difference in most situations.
3. *ZIP archives may be compressed.* This reduces the amount of disk space occupied by resources. But, more importantly, it again speeds up load times, as less data need be loaded into memory from the fixed disk. This is especially helpful when reading data from a DVD-ROM or Blu-ray disk, as the data transfer rates of these devices are much slower than a hard disk drive. Hence the cost of decompressing the data after it has been loaded into memory is often more than offset by the time saved in loading less data from the device.
4. *ZIP archives are modular.* Resources can be grouped together into a ZIP file and managed as a unit. One particularly elegant application of this idea is in product localization. All of the assets that need to be localized (such as audio clips containing dialogue and textures that contain words or region-specific symbols) can be placed in a single ZIP file, and then different versions of this ZIP file can be generated, one for each language or region. To run the game for a particular region, the engine simply loads the corresponding version of the ZIP archive.

The Unreal Engine takes a similar approach, with a few important differences. In Unreal, all resources must be contained within large composite files known as *packages* (a.k.a. “pak files”). No loose disk files are permitted. The format of a package file is proprietary. The Unreal Engine’s game editor, `UnrealEd`, allows developers to create and manage packages and the resources they contain.

### 7.2.2.3 Resource File Formats

Each type of resource file potentially has a different format. For example, a mesh file is always stored in a different format than that of a texture bitmap. Some kinds of assets are stored in standardized, open formats. For example, textures are typically stored as Targa files (TGA), Portable Network Graphics files (PNG), Tagged Image File Format files (TIFF), Joint Photographic Experts Group files (JPEG) or Windows Bitmap files (BMP)—or in a standardized compressed format such as DirectX’s S3 Texture Compression family of formats (S3TC, also known as DXT $n$  or DXTC). Likewise, 3D mesh data is often exported out of a modeling tool like Maya or Lightwave into a standardized format such as OBJ or COLLADA for consumption by the game engine.

Sometimes a single file format can be used to house many different types of assets. For example, the *Granny* SDK by Rad Game Tools (<http://www.radgametools.com>) implements a flexible open file format that can be used to store 3D mesh data, skeletal hierarchies and skeletal animation data. (In fact the *Granny* file format can be easily repurposed to store virtually any kind of data imaginable.)

Many game engine programmers roll their own file formats for various reasons. This might be necessary if no standardized format provides all of the information needed by the engine. Also, many game engines endeavor to do as much offline processing as possible in order to minimize the amount of time needed to load and process resource data at runtime. If the data needs to conform to a particular layout in memory, for example, a raw binary format might be chosen so that the data can be laid out by an offline tool (rather than attempting to format it at runtime after the resource has been loaded).

### 7.2.2.4 Resource GUIDs

Every resource in a game must have some kind of *globally unique identifier* (GUID). The most common choice of GUID is the resource’s file system path (stored either as a string or a 32-bit hash). This kind of GUID is intuitive, because it clearly maps each resource to a physical file on-disk. And it’s guaranteed to be unique across the entire game, because the operating system already guarantees that no two files will have the same path.

However, a file system path is by no means the only choice for a resource GUID. Some engines use a less-intuitive type of GUID, such as a 128-bit hash code, perhaps assigned by a tool that guarantees uniqueness. In other engines, using a file system path as a resource identifier is infeasible. For example, Unreal Engine stores many resources in a single large file known as a *package*, so the path to the package file does not uniquely identify any one resource. To overcome this problem, an Unreal package file is organized into a folder

hierarchy containing individual resources. Unreal gives each individual resource within a package a unique name, which looks much like a file system path. So in Unreal, a resource GUID is formed by concatenating the (unique) name of the package file with the in-package path of the resource in question. For example, the *Gears of War* resource GUID `Locust_Boomer.PhysicalMaterials.LocustBoomerLeather` identifies a material called `LocustBoomerLeather` within the `PhysicalMaterials` folder of the `Locust_Boomer` package file.

#### 7.2.2.5 The Resource Registry

In order to ensure that only one copy of each unique resource is loaded into memory at any given time, most resource managers maintain some kind of *registry* of loaded resources. The simplest implementation is a *dictionary*—i.e., a collection of *key-value pairs*. The keys contain the unique ids of the resources, while the values are typically pointers to the resources in memory.

Whenever a resource is loaded into memory, an entry for it is added to the resource registry dictionary, using its GUID as the key. Whenever a resource is unloaded, its registry entry is removed. When a resource is requested by the game, the resource manager looks up the resource by its GUID within the resource registry. If the resource can be found, a pointer to it is simply returned. If the resource cannot be found, it can either be loaded automatically or a failure code can be returned.

At first blush, it might seem most intuitive to automatically load a requested resource if it cannot be found in the resource registry. And in fact, some game engines do this. However, there are some serious problems with this approach. Loading a resource is a slow operation, because it involves locating and opening a file on disk, reading a potentially large amount of data into memory (from a potentially slow device like a DVD-ROM drive), and also possibly performing post-load initialization of the resource data once it has been loaded. If the request comes during active gameplay, the time it takes to load the resource might cause a very noticeable hitch in the game’s frame rate, or even a multi-second freeze. For this reason, engines tend to take one of two alternative approaches:

1. Resource loading might be disallowed completely during active gameplay. In this model, all of the resources for a game level are loaded *en masse* just prior to gameplay, usually while the player watches a loading screen or progress bar of some kind.
2. Resource loading might be done *asynchronously* (i.e., the data might be *streamed*). In this model, while the player is engaged in level X, the re-

sources for level Y are being loaded in the background. This approach is preferable because it provides the player with a load-screen-free play experience. However, it is considerably more difficult to implement.

#### 7.2.2.6 Resource Lifetime

The *lifetime* of a resource is defined as the time period between when it is first loaded into memory and when its memory is reclaimed for other purposes. One of the resource manager's jobs is to manage resource lifetimes—either automatically or by providing the necessary API functions to the game, so it can manage resource lifetimes manually.

Each resource has its own lifetime requirements:

- Some resources must be loaded when the game first starts up and must stay resident in memory for the entire duration of the game. That is, their lifetimes are effectively infinite. These are sometimes called *global resources* or *global assets*. Typical examples include the player character's mesh, materials, textures and core animations, textures and fonts used on the heads-up display, and the resources for all of the standard-issue weapons used throughout the game. Any resource that is visible or audible to the player throughout the entire game (and cannot be loaded on the fly when needed) should be treated as a global resource.
- Other resources have a lifetime that matches that of a particular game level. These resources must be in memory by the time the level is first seen by the player and can be dumped once the player has permanently left the level.
- Some resources might have a lifetime that is shorter than the duration of the level in which they are found. For example, the animations and audio clips that make up an *in-game cinematic* (a mini-movie that advances the story or provides the player with important information) might be loaded in advance of the player seeing the cinematic and then dumped once the cinematic has played.
- Some resources like background music, ambient sound effects or full-screen movies are streamed "live" as they play. The lifetime of this kind of resource is difficult to define, because each byte only persists in memory for a tiny fraction of a second, but the entire piece of music sounds like it lasts for a long period of time. Such assets are typically loaded in chunks of a size that matches the underlying hardware's requirements. For example, a music track might be read in 4 KiB chunks, because that might be the buffer size used by the low-level sound system. Only two

Event	A	B	C	D	E
Initial state	0	0	0	0	0
Level X counts incremented	1	1	1	0	0
Level X loads	(1)	(1)	(1)	0	0
Level X plays	1	1	1	0	0
Level Y counts incremented	1	2	2	1	1
Level X counts decremented	0	1	1	1	1
Level X unloads, level Y loads	(0)	1	1	(1)	(1)
Level Y plays	0	1	1	1	1

Table 7.2. Resource usage as two levels load and unload.

chunks are ever present in memory at any given moment—the chunk that is currently playing and the chunk immediately following it that is being loaded into memory.

The question of when to load a resource is usually answered quite easily, based on knowledge of when the asset is first seen by the player. However, the question of when to unload a resource and reclaim its memory is not so easily answered. The problem is that many resources are shared across multiple levels. We don't want to unload a resource when level X is done, only to immediately reload it because level Y needs the same resource.

One solution to this problem is to reference-count the resources. Whenever a new game level needs to be loaded, the list of all resources used by that level is traversed, and the reference count for each resource is incremented by one (but they are not loaded yet). Next, we traverse the resources of any unneeded levels and decrement their reference counts by one; any resource whose reference count drops to zero is unloaded. Finally, we run through the list of all resources whose reference count just went from zero to one and load those assets into memory.

For example, imagine that level X uses resources A, B and C, and that level Y uses resources B, C, D and E. (B and C are shared between both levels.) Table 7.2 shows the reference counts of these five resources as the player plays through levels X and Y. In this table, reference counts are shown in boldface type to indicate that the corresponding resource actually exists in memory, while a grey background indicates that the resource is not in memory. A reference count in parentheses indicates that the corresponding resource data is being loaded or unloaded.

### 7.2.2.7 Memory Management for Resources

Resource management is closely related to memory management, because we must inevitably decide *where* the resources should end up in memory once they have been loaded. The destination of every resource is not always the same. For one thing, certain types of resources must reside in video RAM (or, on the PlayStation 4, in a memory block that has been mapped for access via the high-speed “garlic” bus). Typical examples include textures, vertex buffers, index buffers and shader code. Most other resources can reside in main RAM, but different kinds of resources might need to reside within different address ranges. For example, a resource that is loaded and stays resident for the entire game (global resources) might be loaded into one region of memory, while resources that are loaded and unloaded frequently might go somewhere else.

The design of a game engine’s memory allocation subsystem is usually closely tied to that of its resource manager. Sometimes we will design the resource manager to take best advantage of the types of memory allocators we have available, or vice versa—we may design our memory allocators to suit the needs of the resource manager.

As we saw in Section 6.2.1.4, one of the primary problems facing any resource management system is the need to avoid fragmenting memory as resources are loaded and unloaded. We’ll discuss a few of the more-common solutions to this problem below.

#### *Heap-Based Resource Allocation*

One approach is to simply ignore memory fragmentation issues and use a general-purpose heap allocator to allocate your resources (like the one implemented by `malloc()` in C, or the global `new` operator in C++). This works best if your game is only intended to run on personal computers, on operating systems that support virtual memory allocation. On such a system, physical memory will become fragmented, but the operating system’s ability to map noncontiguous pages of physical RAM into a contiguous virtual memory space helps to mitigate some of the effects of fragmentation.

If your game is running on a console with limited physical RAM and only a rudimentary virtual memory manager (or none whatsoever), then fragmentation will become a problem. In this case, one alternative is to defragment your memory periodically. We saw how to do this in Section 6.2.2.2.

### Stack-Based Resource Allocation

A stack allocator does not suffer from fragmentation problems, because memory is allocated contiguously and freed in an order opposite to that in which it was allocated. A stack allocator can be used to load resources if the following two conditions are met:

- The game is linear and level-centric (i.e., the player watches a loading screen, then plays a level, then watches another loading screen, then plays another level).
- Each level fits into memory in its entirety.

Presuming that these requirements are satisfied, we can use a stack allocator to load resources as follows: When the game first starts up, the global resources are allocated first. The top of the stack is then marked, so that we can free back to this position later. To load a level, we simply allocate its resources on the top of the stack. When the level is complete, we can simply set the stack top back to the marker we took earlier, thereby freeing all of the level's resources in one fell swoop without disturbing the global resources. This process can be repeated for any number of levels, without ever fragmenting memory. Figure 7.3 illustrates how this is accomplished.

A double-ended stack allocator can be used to augment this approach. Two stacks are defined within a single large memory block. One grows up from the bottom of the memory area, while the other grows down from the top. As long as the two stacks never overlap, the stacks can trade memory resources back and forth naturally—something that wouldn't be possible if each stack resided in its own fixed size block.

On *Hydro Thunder*, Midway used a double-ended stack allocator. The lower stack was used for persistent data loads, while the upper was used for temporary allocations that were freed every frame. Another way a double-ended stack allocator can be used is to ping-pong level loads. Such an approach was used at Bionic Games, Inc. for one of their projects. The basic idea is to load a compressed version of level B into the upper stack, while the currently active level A resides (in uncompressed form) in the lower stack. To switch from level A to level B, we simply free level A's resources (by clearing the lower stack) and then decompress level B from the upper stack into the lower stack. Decompression is generally much faster than loading data from disk, so this approach effectively eliminates the load time that would otherwise be experienced by the player between levels.

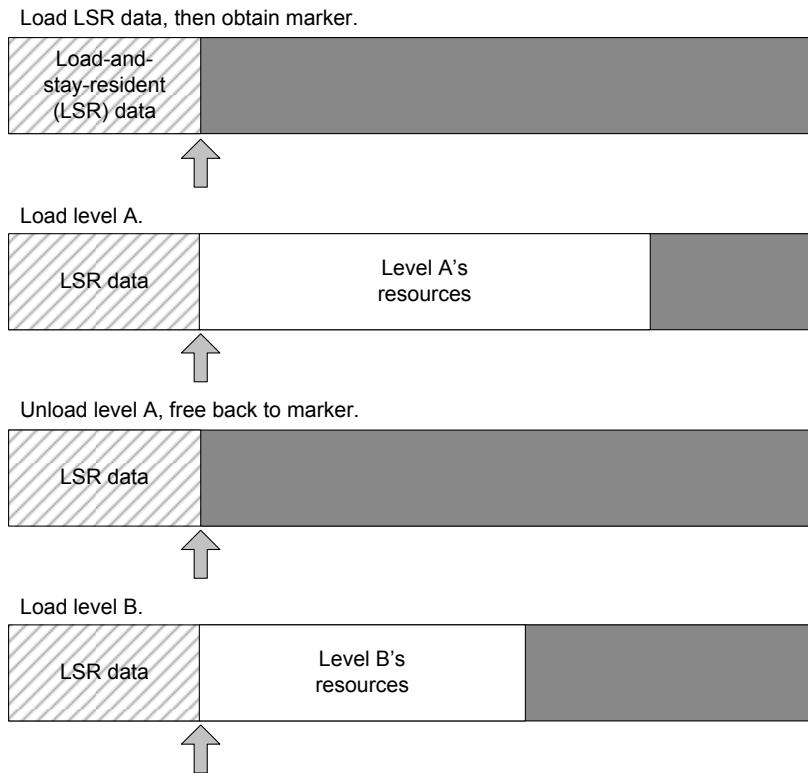


Figure 7.3. Loading resources using a stack allocator.

### Pool-Based Resource Allocation

Another resource allocation technique that is common in game engines that support streaming is to load resource data in equally sized chunks. Because the chunks are all the same size, they can be allocated using a *pool allocator* (see Section 6.2.1.2). When resources are later unloaded, the chunks can be freed without causing fragmentation.

Of course, a chunk-based allocation approach requires that all resource data be laid out in a manner that permits division into equally sized chunks. We cannot simply load an arbitrary resource file in chunks, because the file might contain a contiguous data structure like an array or a very large `struct` that is larger than a single chunk. For example, if the chunks that contain an array are not arranged sequentially in RAM, the continuity of the array will be lost, and array indexing will cease to function properly. This means that all resource data must be designed with “chunkiness” in mind. Large contiguous data structures must be avoided in favor of data structures that are either small enough to fit within a single chunk or do not require contiguous RAM

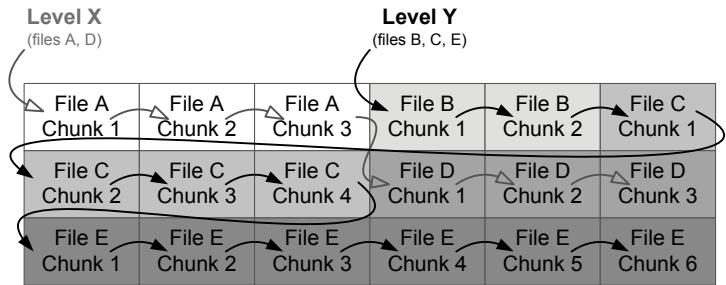


Figure 7.4. Chunky allocation of resources for levels X and Y.

to function properly (e.g., linked lists).

Each chunk in the pool is typically associated with a particular game level. (One simple way to do this is to give each level a linked list of its chunks.) This allows the engine to manage the lifetimes of each chunk appropriately, even when multiple levels with different life spans are in memory concurrently. For example, when level X is loaded, it might allocate and make use of  $N$  chunks. Later, level Y might allocate an additional  $M$  chunks. When level X is eventually unloaded, its  $N$  chunks are returned to the free pool. If level Y is still active, its  $M$  chunks need to remain in memory. By associating each chunk with a specific level, the lifetimes of the chunks can be managed easily and efficiently. This is illustrated in Figure 7.4.

One big trade-off inherent in a “chunky” resource allocation scheme is wasted space. Unless a resource file’s size is an exact multiple of the chunk size, the last chunk in a file will not be fully utilized (see Figure 7.5). Choosing a smaller chunk size can help to mitigate this problem, but the smaller the chunks, the more onerous the restrictions on the layout of the resource data. (As an extreme example, if a chunk size of one byte were selected, then no data structure could be larger than a single byte—clearly an untenable situation.) A typical chunk size is on the order of a few kibibytes. For example, at Naughty Dog, we use a chunky resource allocator as part of our resource streaming system, and our chunks are 512 KiB in size on the PS3 and 1 MiB on the PS4. You may also want to consider selecting a chunk size that is a multiple of the operating system’s I/O buffer size to maximize efficiency when loading individual chunks.

### Resource Chunk Allocators

One way to limit the effects of wasted chunk memory is to set up a special memory allocator that can utilize the unused portions of chunks. As far as I’m

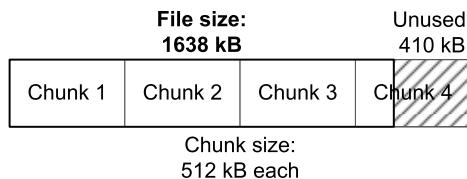


Figure 7.5. The last chunk of a resource file is often not fully utilized.

aware, there is no standardized name for this kind of allocator, but we will call it a *resource chunk allocator* for lack of a better name.

A resource chunk allocator is not particularly difficult to implement. We need only maintain a linked list of all chunks that contain unused memory, along with the locations and sizes of each free block. We can then allocate from these free blocks in any way we see fit. For example, we might manage the linked list of free blocks using a general-purpose heap allocator. Or we might map a small stack allocator onto each free block; whenever a request for memory comes in, we could then scan the free blocks for one whose stack has enough free RAM and then use that stack to satisfy the request.

Unfortunately, there's a rather grotesque-looking fly in our ointment here. If we allocate memory in the unused regions of our resource chunks, what happens when those chunks are freed? We cannot free part of a chunk—it's an all or nothing proposition. So any memory we allocate within an unused portion of a resource chunk will magically disappear when that resource is unloaded.

A simple solution to this problem is to only use our free-chunk allocator for memory requests whose lifetimes match the lifetime of the level with which a particular chunk is associated. In other words, we should only allocate memory out of level A's chunks for data that is associated exclusively with level A and only allocate from B's chunks memory that is used exclusively by level B. This requires our resource chunk allocator to manage each level's chunks separately. And it requires the users of the chunk allocator to specify which level they are allocating for, so that the correct linked list of free blocks can be used to satisfy the request.

Thankfully, most game engines need to allocate memory dynamically when loading resources, over and above the memory required for the resource files themselves. So a resource chunk allocator can be a fruitful way to reclaim chunk memory that would otherwise have been wasted.

### Sectioned Resource Files

Another useful idea that is related to “chunky” resource files is the concept of *file sections*. A typical resource file might contain between one and four sections, each of which is divided into one or more chunks for the purposes of pool allocation as described above. One section might contain data that is destined for main RAM, while another section might contain video RAM data. Another section could contain temporary data that is needed during the loading process but is discarded once the resource has been completely loaded. Yet another section might contain debugging information. This debug data could be loaded when running the game in debug mode, but not loaded at all in the final production build of the game. The Granny SDK’s file system (<http://www.radgametools.com>) is an excellent example of how to implement file sectioning in a simple and flexible manner.

#### 7.2.2.8 Composite Resources and Referential Integrity

Usually a game’s resource database consists of multiple *resource files*, each file containing one or more *data objects*. These data objects can refer to and depend upon one another in arbitrary ways. For example, a mesh data structure might contain a reference to its material, which in turn contains a list of references to textures. Usually cross-references imply dependency (i.e., if resource A refers to resource B, then both A and B must be in memory in order for the resources to be functional in the game.) In general, a game’s resource database can be represented by a *directed graph* of interdependent data objects.

Cross-references between data objects can be *internal* (a reference between two objects within a single file) or *external* (a reference to an object in a different file). This distinction is important because internal and external cross-references are often implemented differently. When visualizing a game’s resource database, we can draw dotted lines surrounding individual resource files to make the internal/external distinction clear—any edge of the graph that crosses a dotted line file boundary is an external reference, while edges that do not cross file boundaries are internal. This is illustrated in Figure 7.6.

We sometimes use the term *composite resource* to describe a self-sufficient cluster of interdependent resources. For example, a *model* is a composite resource consisting of one or more *triangle meshes*, an optional *skeleton* and an optional collection of *animations*. Each mesh is mapped with a *material*, and each material refers to one or more *textures*. To fully load a composite resource like a 3D model into memory, all of its dependent resources must be loaded as well.

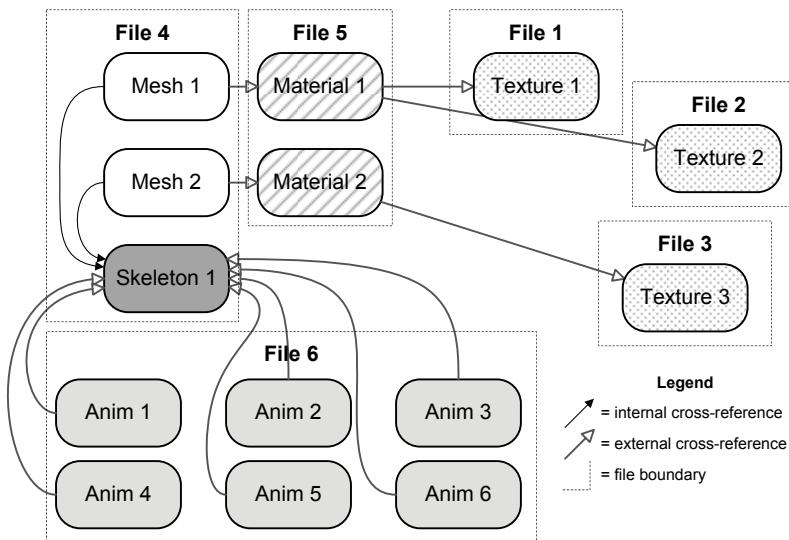


Figure 7.6. Example of a resource database dependency graph.

### 7.2.2.9 Handling Cross-References between Resources

One of the more-challenging aspects of implementing a resource manager is managing the cross-references between resource objects and guaranteeing that referential integrity is maintained. To understand how a resource manager accomplishes this, let's look at how cross-references are represented in memory, and how they are represented on-disk.

In C++, a cross-reference between two data objects is usually implemented via a *pointer* or a *reference*. For example, a mesh might contain the data member `Material* m_pMaterial` (a pointer) or `Material& m_material` (a reference) in order to refer to its material. However, pointers are just memory addresses—they lose their meaning when taken out of the context of the running application. In fact, memory addresses can and do change even between subsequent runs of the same application. Clearly when storing data to a disk file, we cannot use pointers to describe inter-object dependencies.

#### GUIDs as Cross-References

One good approach is to store each cross-reference as a string or hash code containing the unique id of the referenced object. This implies that every resource object that might be cross-referenced must have a *globally unique identifier* or *GUID*.

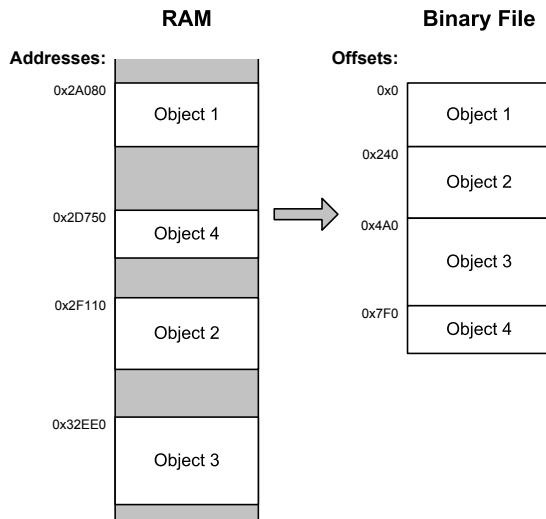


Figure 7.7. In-memory object images become contiguous when saved into a binary file.

To make this kind of cross-reference work, the runtime resource manager maintains a global resource look-up table. Whenever a resource object is loaded into memory, a pointer to that object is stored in the table with its GUID as the look-up key. After all resource objects have been loaded into memory and their entries added to the table, we can make a pass over all of the objects and convert all of their cross-references into pointers, by looking up the address of each cross-referenced object in the global resource look-up table via that object's GUID.

### Pointer Fix-Up Tables

Another approach that is often used when storing data objects into a binary file is to convert the *pointers* into *file offsets*. Consider a group of C structs or C++ objects that cross-reference each other via pointers. To store this group of objects into a binary file, we need to visit each object once (and only once) in an arbitrary order and write each object's memory image into the file sequentially. This has the effect of serializing the objects into a *contiguous* image within the file, even when their memory images are not contiguous in RAM. This is shown in Figure 7.7.

Because the objects' memory images are now contiguous within the file, we can determine the *offset* of each object's image relative to the beginning of the file. During the process of writing the binary file image, we locate every

pointer within every data object, convert each pointer into an offset and store those offsets into the file in place of the pointers. We can simply overwrite the pointers with their offsets, because the offsets never require more bits to store than the original pointers. In effect, an *offset* is the binary file equivalent of a *pointer* in memory. (Do be aware of the differences between your development platform and your target platform. If you write out a memory image on a 64-bit Windows machine, its pointers will all be 64 bits wide and the resulting file won't be compatible with a 32-bit console.)

Of course, we'll need to convert the offsets back into pointers when the file is loaded into memory some time later. Such conversions are known as *pointer fix-ups*. When the file's binary image is loaded, the objects contained in the image retain their contiguous layout, so it is trivial to convert an offset into a pointer. We merely add the offset to the address of the file image as a whole. This is demonstrated by the code snippet below and illustrated in Figure 7.8.

```
U8* ConvertOffsetToPointer(U32 objectOffset,
                           U8* pAddressOfFileImage)
{
    U8* pObject = pAddressOfFileImage + objectOffset;
    return pObject;
}
```

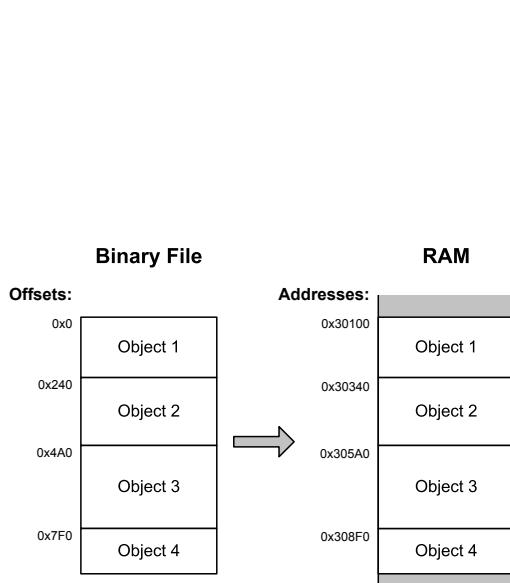


Figure 7.8. Contiguous resource file image, after it has been loaded into RAM.

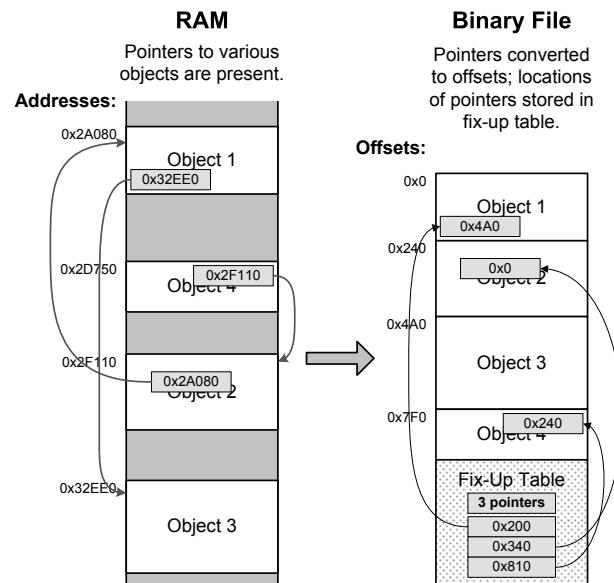


Figure 7.9. A pointer fix-up table.

The problem we encounter when trying to convert pointers into offsets, and vice versa, is how to *find* all of the pointers that require conversion. This problem is usually solved at the time the binary file is written. The code that writes out the images of the data objects has knowledge of the data types and classes being written, so it has knowledge of the locations of all the pointers within each object. The locations of the pointers are stored into a simple table known as a *pointer fix-up table*. This table is written into the binary file along with the binary images of all the objects. Later, when the file is loaded into RAM again, the table can be consulted in order to find and fix up every pointer. The table itself is just a list of offsets within the file—each offset represents a single pointer that requires fixing up. This is illustrated in Figure 7.9.

### *Storing C++ Objects as Binary Images: Constructors*

One important step that is easy to overlook when loading C++ objects from a binary file is to ensure that the objects' constructors are called. For example, if we load a binary image containing three objects—an instance of class A, an instance of class B, and an instance of class C—then we must make sure that the correct constructor is called on each of these three objects.

There are two common solutions to this problem. First, you can simply decide not to support C++ objects in your binary files at all. In other words, restrict yourself to plain old data structures (abbreviated PODS or POD)—i.e., C structs and C++ structs and classes that contain *no virtual functions* and *trivial do-nothing constructors*. (See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plain\\_Old\\_Data\\_Structures](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plain_Old_Data_Structures) for a more complete discussion of PODS.)

Second, you can save off a table containing the offsets of all non-PODS objects in your binary image along with some indication of which class each object is an instance of. Then, once the binary image has been loaded, you can iterate through this table, visit each object and call the appropriate constructor using *placement new* syntax (i.e., calling the constructor on a preallocated block of memory). For example, given the offset to an object within the binary image, we might write:

```
void* pObject = ConvertOffsetToPointer(objectOffset,
                                         pAddressOfFileImage);
::new(pObject) ClassName; // placement new syntax
```

where *ClassName* is the class of which the object is an instance.

### *Handling External References*

The two approaches described above work very well when applied to resources in which all of the cross-references are *internal*—i.e., they only refer-

ence objects within a single resource file. In this simple case, you can load the binary image into memory and then apply the pointer fix-ups to resolve all the cross-references. But when cross-references reach out into other resource files, a slightly augmented approach is required.

To successfully represent an *external* cross-reference, we must specify not only the offset or GUID of the data object in question, but also the path to the resource file in which the referenced object resides.

The key to loading a multi-file composite resource is to load *all* of the interdependent files first. This can be done by loading one resource file and then scanning through its table of cross-references and loading any externally referenced files that have not already been loaded. As we load each data object into RAM, we can add the object's address to the master look-up table. Once all of the interdependent files have been loaded and all of the objects are present in RAM, we can make a final pass to fix up all of the pointers using the master look-up table to convert GUIDs or file offsets into real addresses.

#### 7.2.2.10 Post-Load Initialization

Ideally, each and every resource would be completely prepared by our offline tools, so that it is ready for use the moment it has been loaded into memory. Practically speaking, this is not always possible. Many types of resources require at least some "massaging" after having been loaded in order to prepare them for use by the engine. In this book, I will use the term *post-load initialization* to refer to any processing of resource data after it has been loaded. Other engines may use different terminology. (For example, at Naughty Dog we call this *logging in* a resource.) Most resource managers also support some kind of tear-down step prior to a resource's memory being freed. (At Naughty Dog, we call this *logging out* a resource.)

Post-load initialization generally comes in one of two varieties:

- In some cases, post-load initialization is an unavoidable step. For example, on a PC, the vertices and indices that describe a 3D mesh are loaded into main RAM, but they must be transferred into video RAM before they can be rendered. This can only be accomplished at runtime, by creating a Direct X vertex buffer or index buffer, locking it, copying or reading the data into the buffer and then unlocking it.
- In other cases, the processing done during post-load initialization is avoidable (i.e., could be moved into the tools), but is done for convenience or expedience. For example, a programmer might want to add the calculation of accurate arc lengths to our engine's spline library. Rather than spend the time to modify the tools to generate the arc length data,

the programmer might simply calculate it at runtime during post-load initialization. Later, when the calculations are perfected, this code can be moved into the tools, thereby avoiding the cost of doing the calculations at runtime.

Clearly, each type of resource has its own unique requirements for post-load initialization and tear-down. So, resource managers typically permit these two steps to be configurable on a per-resource-type basis. In a non-object-oriented language like C, we can envision a look-up table that maps each type of resource to a pair of function pointers, one for post-load initialization and one for tear-down. In an object-oriented language like C++, life is even easier—we can make use of polymorphism to permit each class to handle post-load initialization and tear-down in a unique way.

In C++, post-load initialization could be implemented as a special constructor, and tear-down could be done in the class' destructor. However, there are some problems with using constructors and destructors for this purpose. For example, one typically needs to construct all loaded objects first, then apply pointer fix-ups, and finally perform post-load initialization as a separate step. As such, most developers defer post-load initialization and tear-down to plain old virtual functions. For example, we might choose to use a pair of virtual functions named something sensible like `Init()` and `Destroy()`.

Post-load initialization is closely related to a resource's memory allocation strategy, because new data is often generated by the initialization routine. In some cases, the data generated by the post-load initialization step *augments* the data loaded from the file. (For example, if we are calculating the arc lengths of the segments of a Catmull-Rom spline curve after it has been loaded, we would probably want to allocate some additional memory in which to store the results.) In other cases, the data generated during post-load initialization *replaces* the loaded data. (For example, we might allow mesh data in an older out-of-date format to be loaded and then automatically converted into the latest format for backwards compatibility reasons.) In this case, the loaded data may need to be discarded, either partially or in its entirety, after the post-load step has generated the new data.

The *Hydro Thunder* engine had a simple but powerful way of handling this. It would permit resources to be loaded in one of two ways: (a) directly into its final resting place in memory or (b) into a temporary area of memory. In the latter case, the post-load initialization routine was responsible for copying the finalized data into its ultimate destination; the temporary copy of the resource would be discarded after post-load initialization was complete. This was very useful for loading resource files that contained both relevant and irrelevant

data. The relevant data would be copied into its final destination in memory, while the irrelevant data would be discarded. For example, mesh data in an out-of-date format could be loaded into temporary memory and then converted into the latest format by the post-load initialization routine, without having to waste any memory keeping the old-format data kicking around.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 8

## The Game Loop and Real-Time Simulation

Games are real-time, dynamic, interactive computer simulations. As such, *time* plays an incredibly important role in any electronic game. There are many different kinds of time to deal with in a game engine—real time, game time, the local timeline of an animation, the actual CPU cycles spent within a particular function, and the list goes on. Every engine system might define and manipulate time differently. We must have a solid understanding of all the ways time can be used in a game. In this chapter, we'll take a look at how real-time, dynamic simulation software works and explore the common ways in which time plays a role in such a simulation.

### 8.1 The Rendering Loop

In a graphical user interface (GUI), of the sort found on a Windows PC or a Macintosh, the majority of the screen's contents are static. Only a small part of any one window is actively changing appearance at any given moment. Because of this, graphical user interfaces have traditionally been drawn on-screen via a technique known as *rectangle invalidation*, in which only the small portions of the screen whose contents have actually changed are redrawn. Older 2D video games used similar techniques to minimize the number of pixels that needed to be drawn.

Real-time 3D computer graphics are implemented in an entirely different way. As the camera moves about in a 3D scene, the *entire contents* of the screen or window change continually, so the concept of invalid rectangles no longer applies. Instead, an illusion of motion and interactivity is produced in much the same way that a movie produces it—by presenting the viewer with a series of still images in rapid succession.

Obviously, producing a rapid succession of still images on-screen requires a loop. In a real-time rendering application, this is sometimes known as the *render loop*. At its simplest, a rendering loop is structured as follows:

```
while (!quit)
{
    // Update the camera transform based on interactive
    // inputs or by following a predefined path.
    updateCamera();

    // Update positions, orientations and any other
    // relevant visual state of any dynamic elements
    // in the scene.
    updateSceneElements();

    // Render a still frame into an off-screen frame
    // buffer known as the "back buffer".
    renderScene();

    // Swap the back buffer with the front buffer, making
    // the most recently rendered image visible
    // on-screen. (Or, in windowed mode, copy (blit) the
    // back buffer's contents to the front buffer.
    swapBuffers();
}
```

## 8.2 The Game Loop

A game is composed of many interacting subsystems, including device I/O, rendering, animation, collision detection and resolution, optional rigid body dynamics simulation, multiplayer networking, audio, and the list goes on. Most game engine subsystems require periodic *servicing* while the game is running. However, the *rate* at which these subsystems need to be serviced varies from subsystem to subsystem. Animation typically needs to be updated at a rate of 30 or 60 Hz, in synchronization with the rendering subsystem. However, a dynamics (physics) simulation may actually require more frequent updates (e.g., 120 Hz). Higher-level systems, like AI, might only need to be

serviced once or twice per second, and they needn't necessarily be synchronized with the rendering loop at all.

There are a number of ways to implement the periodic updating of our game engine subsystems. We'll explore some of the possible architectures in a moment. But for the time being, let's stick with the simplest way to update our engine's subsystems—using a single loop to update everything. Such a loop is often called the *game loop*, because it is the master loop that services every subsystem in the engine.

### 8.2.1 A Simple Example: Pong

Pong is a well-known genre of table tennis video games that got its start in 1958, in the form of an analog computer game called *Tennis for Two*, created by William A. Higinbotham at the Brookhaven National Laboratory and displayed on an oscilloscope. The genre is best known by its later incarnations on digital computers—the Magnavox Odyssey game *Table Tennis* and the Atari arcade game *Pong*.

In pong, a ball bounces back and forth between two movable vertical paddles and two fixed horizontal walls. The human players control the positions of the paddles via control wheels. (Modern re-implementations allow control via a joystick, the keyboard or some other human interface device.) If the ball passes by a paddle without striking it, the other team wins the point and the ball is reset for a new round of play.

The following pseudocode demonstrates what the game loop of a pong game might look like at its core:

```
void main() // Pong
{
    initGame();

    while (true) // game loop
    {
        readHumanInterfaceDevices();

        if (quitButtonPressed())
        {
            break; // exit the game loop
        }

        movePaddles();

        moveBall();

        collideAndBounceBall();
    }
}
```

```
        if (ballImpactedSide(LEFT_PLAYER) )
        {
            incrementScore(RIGHT_PLAYER);
            resetBall();
        }
        else if (ballImpactedSide(RIGHT_PLAYER) )
        {
            incrementScore(LEFT_PLAYER);
            resetBall();
        }

        renderPlayfield();
    }
}
```

Clearly this example is somewhat contrived. The original pong games were certainly not implemented by redrawing the entire screen at a rate of 30 frames per second. Back then, CPUs were so slow that they could barely muster the power to draw two lines for the paddles and a box for the ball in real time. Specialized 2D sprite hardware was often used to draw moving objects on-screen. However, we're only interested in the concepts here, not the implementation details of the original Pong.

As you can see, when the game first runs, it calls `initGame()` to do whatever set-up might be required by the graphics system, human I/O devices, audio system, etc. Then the main game loop is entered. The statement `while (true)` tells us that the loop will continue forever, unless interrupted internally. The first thing we do inside the loop is to read the human interface device(s). We check to see whether either human player pressed the “quit” button—if so, we exit the game via a `break` statement. Next, the positions of the paddles are adjusted slightly upward or downward in `movePaddles()`, based on the current deflection of the control wheels, joysticks or other I/O devices. The function `moveBall()` adds the ball’s current velocity vector to its position in order to find its new position next frame. In `collideAndBounceBall()`, this position is then checked for collisions against both the fixed horizontal walls and the paddles. If collisions are detected, the ball’s position is recalculated to account for any bounce. We also note whether the ball impacted either the left or right edge of the screen. This means that it missed one of the paddles, in which case we increment the other player’s score and reset the ball for the next round. Finally, `renderPlayfield()` draws the entire contents of the screen.

## 8.3 Game Loop Architectural Styles

Game loops can be implemented in a number of different ways—but at their core, they usually boil down to one or more simple loops, with various embellishments. We'll explore a few of the more common architectures below.

### 8.3.1 Windows Message Pumps

On a Windows platform, games need to service messages from the Windows operating system in addition to servicing the various subsystems in the game engine itself. Windows games therefore contain a chunk of code known as a *message pump*. The basic idea is to service Windows messages whenever they arrive and to service the game engine only when no Windows messages are pending. A message pump typically looks something like this:

```
while (true)
{
    // Service any and all pending Windows messages.
    MSG msg;

    while (PeekMessage(&msg, nullptr, 0, 0) > 0)
    {
        TranslateMessage(&msg);
        DispatchMessage(&msg);
    }

    // No more Windows messages to process -- run one
    // iteration of our "real" game loop.
    RunOneIterationOfGameLoop();
}
```

One of the side-effects of implementing the game loop like this is that Windows messages take precedence over rendering and simulating the game. As a result, the game will temporarily freeze whenever you resize or drag the game's window around on the desktop.

### 8.3.2 Callback-Driven Frameworks

Most game engine subsystems and third-party game middleware packages are structured as *libraries*. A library is a suite of functions and/or classes that can be called in any way the application programmer sees fit. Libraries provide maximum flexibility to the programmer. But, libraries are sometimes difficult to use, because the programmer must understand how to properly use the functions and classes they provide.

In contrast, some game engines and game middleware packages are structured as *frameworks*. A framework is a partially constructed application—the programmer completes the application by providing custom implementations of missing functionality within the framework (or overriding its default behavior). But he or she has little or no control over the overall flow of control within the application, because it is controlled by the framework.

In a framework-based rendering engine or game engine, the main game loop has been written for us, but it is largely empty. The game programmer can write callback functions in order to “fill in” the missing details. The OGRE rendering engine is an example of a library that has been wrapped in a framework. At the lowest level, OGRE provides functions that can be called directly by a game engine programmer. However, OGRE also provides a framework that encapsulates knowledge of how to use the low-level OGRE library effectively. If the programmer chooses to use the OGRE framework, he or she derives a class from `Ogre::FrameListener` and overrides two virtual functions: `frameStarted()` and `frameEnded()`. As you might guess, these functions are called before and after the main 3D scene has been rendered by OGRE, respectively. The OGRE framework’s implementation of its internal game loop looks something like the following pseudocode. (See `Ogre::Root::renderOneFrame()` in *OgreRoot.cpp* for the actual source code.)

```
while (true)
{
    for (each frameListener)
    {
        frameListener.frameStarted();
    }

    renderCurrentScene();

    for (each frameListener)
    {
        frameListener.frameEnded();
    }

    finalizeSceneAndSwapBuffers();
}
```

A particular game’s frame listener implementation might look something like this.

```
class GameFrameListener : public Ogre::FrameListener
{
public:
    virtual void frameStarted(const FrameEvent& event)
    {
        // Do things that must happen before the 3D scene
        // is rendered (i.e., service all game engine
        // subsystems).
        pollJoypad(event);
        updatePlayerControls(event);
        updateDynamicsSimulation(event);
        resolveCollisions(event);
        updateCamera(event);

        // etc.
    }

    virtual void frameEnded(const FrameEvent& event)
    {
        // Do things that must happen after the 3D scene
        // has been rendered.
        drawHud(event);

        // etc.
    }
};
```

### 8.3.3 Event-Based Updating

In games, an *event* is any interesting change in the state of the game or its environment. Some examples include: the human player pressing a button on the joypad, an explosion going off, an enemy character spotting the player, and the list goes on. Most game engines have an *event system*, which permits various engine subsystems to register interest in particular kinds of events and to respond to those events when they occur (see Section 16.8 for details). A game's event system is usually very similar to the event/messaging system underlying virtually all graphical user interfaces (for example, Microsoft Windows' window messages, the event handling system in Java's AWT or the services provided by C#'s delegate and event keywords).

Some game engines leverage their event system in order to implement the periodic servicing of some or all of their subsystems. For this to work, the event system must permit events to be posted into the future—that is, to be queued for later delivery. A game engine can then implement periodic updating by simply posting an event. In the event handler, the code can perform

whatever periodic servicing is required. It can then post a new event 1/30 or 1/60 of a second into the future, thus continuing the periodic servicing for as long as it is required.

## 8.4 Abstract Timelines

In game programming, it can be extremely useful to think in terms of *abstract timelines*. A timeline is a continuous, one-dimensional axis whose origin ( $t = 0$ ) can lie at any arbitrary location relative to other timelines in the system. A timeline can be implemented via a simple clock variable that stores absolute time values in either integer or floating-point format.

### 8.4.1 Real Time

We can think of times measured directly via the CPU's high-resolution timer register (see Section 8.5.3) as lying on what we'll call the *real timeline*. The origin of this timeline is defined to coincide with the moment the CPU was last powered on or reset. It measures times in units of CPU cycles (or some multiple thereof), although these time values can be easily converted into units of seconds by multiplying them by the frequency of the high-resolution timer on the current CPU.

### 8.4.2 Game Time

We needn't limit ourselves to working with the real timeline exclusively. We can define as many other timeline(s) as we need in order to solve the problems at hand. For example, we can define a *game timeline* that is technically independent of real time. Under normal circumstances, game time coincides with real time. If we wish to pause the game, we can simply stop updating the game timeline temporarily. If we want our game to go into slow motion, we can update the game clock more slowly than the real-time clock. All sorts of effects can be achieved by scaling and warping one timeline relative to another.

Pausing or slowing down the game clock is also a highly useful debugging tool. To track down a visual anomaly, a developer can pause game time in order to freeze the action. Meanwhile, the rendering engine and debug fly-through camera can continue to run, as long as they are governed by a different clock (either the *real-time clock* or a separate *camera clock*). This allows the developer to fly the camera around the game world to inspect it from any angle desired. We can even support single-stepping the game clock, by advancing the game clock by one target frame interval (e.g., 1/30 of a second) each time

a “single-step” button is pressed on the joypad or keyboard while the game is in a paused state.

When using the approach described above, it’s important to realize that the game loop is still running when the game is paused—only the game clock has stopped. Single-stepping the game by adding  $1/30$  of a second to a paused game clock is not the same thing as setting a breakpoint in your main loop, and then hitting the F5 key repeatedly to run one iteration of the loop at a time. Both kinds of single-stepping can be useful for tracking down different kinds of problems. We just need to keep the differences between these approaches in mind.

### 8.4.3 Local and Global Timelines

We can envision all sorts of other timelines. For example, an animation clip or audio clip might have a *local timeline*, with its origin ( $t = 0$ ) defined to coincide with the start of the clip. The local timeline measures how time progressed when the clip was originally authored or recorded. When the clip is played back in-game, we needn’t play it at the original rate. We might want to speed up an animation, or slow down an audio sample. We can even play an animation backwards by running its local clock in reverse.

Any one of these effects can be visualized as a *mapping* between the local timeline and a global timeline, such as real time or game time. To play an animation clip back at its originally authored speed, we simply map the start of the animation’s local timeline ( $t = 0$ ) onto the desired start time ( $\tau = \tau_{\text{start}}$ ) along the global timeline. This is shown in Figure 8.1.

To play an animation clip back at half speed, we can imagine scaling the local timeline to twice its original size prior to mapping it onto the global timeline. To accomplish this, we simply keep track of a time scale factor or playback rate  $R$ , in addition to the clip’s global start time  $\tau_{\text{start}}$ . This is illustrated in Figure 8.2. A clip can even be played in reverse, by using a negative time scale ( $R < 0$ ) as shown in Figure 8.3.



Figure 8.1. Playing an animation clip can be visualized as mapping its local timeline onto the global game timeline.

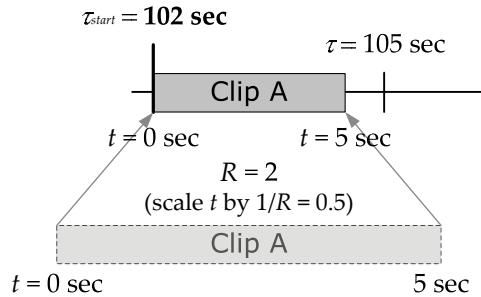


Figure 8.2. Animation playback speed can be controlled by simply scaling the local timeline prior to mapping it onto the global timeline.

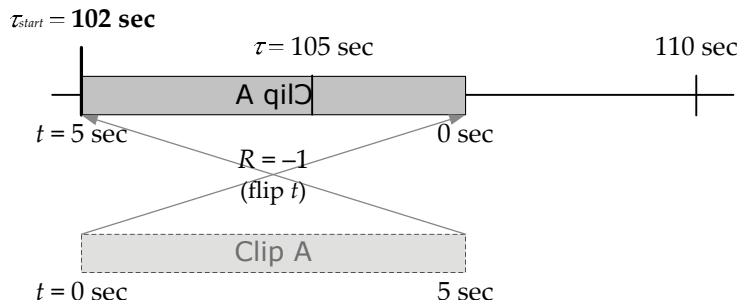


Figure 8.3. Playing an animation in reverse is like mapping the clip to the global timeline with a time scale of  $R = -1$ .

## 8.5 Measuring and Dealing with Time

In this section, we'll investigate some of the subtle and not-so-subtle distinctions between different kinds of timelines and clocks and see how they are implemented in real game engines.

### 8.5.1 Frame Rate and Time Deltas

The *frame rate* of a real-time game describes how rapidly the sequence of still 3D frames is presented to the viewer. The unit of *Hertz* (Hz), defined as the number of cycles per second, can be used to describe the rate of any periodic process. In games and film, frame rate is typically measured in *frames per second* (FPS), which is the same thing as Hertz for all intents and purposes. Films traditionally run at 24 FPS. Games in North America and Japan are typically rendered at 30 or 60 FPS, because this is the natural refresh rate of the NTSC color television standard used in these regions. In Europe and most of the rest

of the world, games update at 50 FPS, because this is the natural refresh rate of a PAL or SECAM color television signal.

The amount of time that elapses between frames is known as the *frame time*, *time delta* or *delta time*. This last term is commonplace because the duration between frames is often represented mathematically by the symbol  $\Delta t$ . (Technically speaking,  $\Delta t$  should really be called the *frame period*, since it is the inverse of the *frame frequency*:  $T = 1/f$ . But, game programmers hardly ever use the term “period” in this context.) If a game is being rendered at exactly 30 FPS, then its delta time is  $1/30$  of a second, or 33.3 ms (milliseconds). At 60 FPS, the delta time is half as big,  $1/60$  of a second or 16.6 ms. To really know how much time has elapsed during one iteration of the game loop, we need to measure it. We’ll see how this is done below.

We should note here that milliseconds are a common unit of time measurement in games. For example, we might say that the animation system is taking 4 ms to run, which implies that it occupies about 12% of the entire frame ( $4/33.3 \approx 0.12$ ). Other common units include seconds and machine cycles. We’ll discuss time units and clock variables in more depth below.

## 8.5.2 From Frame Rate to Speed

Let’s imagine that we want to make a spaceship fly through our game world at a constant speed of 40 meters per second (or in a 2D game, we might specify this as 40 *pixels* per second). One simple way to accomplish this is to multiply the ship’s speed  $v$  (measured in meters per second) by the duration of one frame  $\Delta t$  (measured in seconds), yielding a change in position  $\Delta x = v\Delta t$  (which is measured in *meters per frame*). This position delta can then be added to the ship’s current position  $x_1$ , in order to find its position next frame:  $x_2 = x_1 + \Delta x = x_1 + v\Delta t$ .

This is actually a simple form of *numerical integration* known as the *explicit Euler* method (see Section 13.4.4). It works well as long as the speeds of our objects are roughly constant. To handle variable speeds, we need to resort to somewhat more complex integration methods. But all numerical integration techniques make use of the elapsed frame time  $\Delta t$  in one way or another. So it is safe to say that the *perceived speeds* of the objects in a game are dependent upon the frame duration,  $\Delta t$ . Hence a central problem in game programming is to determine a suitable value for  $\Delta t$ . In the sections that follow, we’ll discuss various ways of doing this.

### 8.5.2.1 Old-School CPU-Dependent Games

In many early video games, no attempt was made to measure how much real time had elapsed during the game loop. The programmers would essentially

ignore  $\Delta t$  altogether and instead specify the speeds of objects directly in terms of meters (or pixels, or some other distance unit) per *frame*. In other words, they were, perhaps unwittingly, specifying object speeds in terms of  $\Delta x = v\Delta t$ , instead of in terms of  $v$ .

The net effect of this simplistic approach was that the perceived speeds of the objects in these games were entirely dependent upon the frame rate that the game was actually achieving on a particular piece of hardware. If this kind of game were to be run on a computer with a faster CPU than the machine for which it was originally written, the game would appear to be running in fast forward. For this reason, I'll call these games *CPU-dependent games*.

Some older PCs provided a "Turbo" button to support these kinds of games. When the Turbo button was pressed, the PC would run at its fastest speed, but CPU-dependent games would run in fast forward. When the Turbo button was not pressed, the PC would mimic the processor speed of an older generation of PCs, allowing CPU-dependent games written for those PCs to run properly.

### 8.5.2.2 Updating Based on Elapsed Time

To make our games CPU-independent, we must measure  $\Delta t$  in some way, rather than simply ignoring it. Doing this is quite straightforward. We simply read the value of the CPU's high-resolution timer twice—once at the beginning of the frame and once at the end. Then we subtract, producing an accurate measure of  $\Delta t$  for the frame that has just passed. This delta is then made available to all engine subsystems that need it, either by passing it to every function that we call from within the game loop or by storing it in a global variable or encapsulating it within a singleton class of some kind. (We'll describe the CPU's high-resolution timer in more detail in Section 8.5.3.)

The approach outlined above is used by many game engines. In fact, I am tempted to go out on a limb and say that *most* game engines use it. However, there is one big problem with this technique: We are using the measured value of  $\Delta t$  taken during frame  $k$  as an estimate of the duration of the *upcoming* frame ( $k + 1$ ). This isn't necessarily very accurate. (As they say in investing, "past performance is not a guarantee of future results.") Something might happen next frame that causes it to take much more time (or much less) than the current frame. We call such an event a *frame-rate spike*.

Using last frame's delta as an estimate of the upcoming frame can have some very real detrimental effects. For example, if we're not careful it can put the game into a "viscious cycle" of poor frame times. Let's assume that our physics simulation is most stable when updated once every 33.3 ms (i.e., at 30 Hz). If we get one bad frame, taking say 57 ms, then we might make the

mistake of stepping the physics system *twice* on the next frame, presumably to “cover” the 57 ms that has passed. Those two steps take roughly twice as long to complete as a regular step, causing the *next* frame to be at least as bad as this one was, and possibly worse. This only serves to exacerbate and prolong the problem.

### 8.5.2.3 Using a Running Average

It is true that game loops tend to have at least some frame-to-frame coherency. If the camera is pointed down a hallway containing lots of expensive-to-draw objects on one frame, there’s a good chance it will still be pointed down that hallway on the next. Therefore, one reasonable approach is to average the frame-time measurements over a small number of frames and use that as the next frame’s estimate of  $\Delta t$ . This allows the game to adapt to a varying frame rate, while softening the effects of momentary performance spikes. The longer the averaging interval, the less responsive the game will be to a varying frame rate, but spikes will have less of an impact as well.

### 8.5.2.4 Governing the Frame Rate

We can avoid the inaccuracy of using last frame’s  $\Delta t$  as an estimate of this frame’s duration altogether, by flipping the problem on its head. Rather than trying to *guess* at what next frame’s duration will be, we can instead attempt to *guarantee* that every frame’s duration will be exactly 33.3 ms (or 16.6 ms if we’re running at 60 FPS). To do this, we measure the duration of the current frame as before. If the measured duration is less than the ideal frame time, we simply put the main thread to sleep until the target frame time has elapsed. If the measured duration is more than the ideal frame time, we must “take our lumps” and wait for one more whole frame time to elapse. This is called *frame-rate governing*.

Clearly this approach only works when your game’s frame rate is reasonably close to your target frame rate on average. If your game is ping-ponging between 30 FPS and 15 FPS due to frequent “slow” frames, then the game’s quality can degrade significantly. As such, it’s still a good idea to design all engine systems so that they are capable of dealing with arbitrary frame durations. During development, you can leave the engine in “variable frame rate” mode, and everything will work as expected. Later on, when the game is getting closer to achieving its target frame rate consistently, we can switch on frame-rate governing and start to reap its benefits.

Keeping the frame rate consistent can be important for a number of reasons. Some engine systems, such as the numerical integrators used in a physics simulation, operate best when updated at a constant rate. A consistent frame rate

also looks better, and as we'll see in the next section, it can be used to avoid the *tearing* that can occur when the video buffer is updated at a rate that doesn't match the refresh rate of the monitor (see Section 8.5.2.5).

In addition, when elapsed frame times are consistent, features like *record and playback* become a lot more reliable. As its name implies, the record-and-playback feature allows a player's gameplay experience to be recorded and later played back in exactly the same way. This can be a fun game feature, and it's also a valuable testing and debugging tool. For example, difficult-to-find bugs can be reproduced by simply playing back a recorded game that demonstrates the bug.

To implement record and playback, we make note of every relevant event that occurs during gameplay, saving each one in a list along with an accurate time stamp. The list of events can then be replayed with exactly the same timing, using the same initial conditions and an identical initial random seed. In theory, doing this should produce a gameplay experience that is indistinguishable from the original playthrough. However, if the frame rate isn't consistent, things may not happen in exactly the same order. This can cause "drift," and pretty soon your AI characters are flanking when they should have fallen back.

### 8.5.2.5 Screen Tearing and V-Sync

A visual anomaly known as *screen tearing* occurs when the back buffer is swapped with the front buffer while the screen has only been partially "drawn" by the video hardware. When tearing occurs, a portion of the screen shows the new image, while the remainder shows the old one. To avoid tearing, many rendering engines wait for the *vertical blanking interval* of the monitor before swapping buffers.

Older CRT monitors and TVs "draw" the contents of the in-memory frame buffer by exciting phosphors on the screen via a beam of electrons that scans from left-to-right and top-to-bottom. On such displays, the v-blank interval is the time during which the electron gun is "blanked" (turned off) while it is being reset to the top-left corner of the screen. Modern LCD, plasma and LED displays no longer use an electron beam, and they don't require any time between finishing the draw of the last scan line of one frame and the first scan line of the next. But the v-blank interval still exists, in part because video standards were established when CRTs were the norm, and in part because of the need to support older displays.

Waiting for the v-blank interval is called *v-sync*. It is really just another form of frame-rate governing, because it effectively clamps the frame rate of the main game loop to a multiple of the screen's refresh rate. For example, on an NTSC monitor that refreshes at a rate of 60 Hz, the game's real update rate

is effectively quantized to a multiple of 1/60 of a second. If more than 1/60 of a second elapses between frames, we must wait until the next v-blank interval, which means waiting 2/60 of a second (30 FPS). If we miss two v-blanks, then we must wait a total of 3/60 of a second (20 FPS) and so on. Also, be careful not to make assumptions about the frame rate of your game, even when it is synchronized to the v-blank interval; if your game supports them, you must keep in mind that the PAL and SECAM standards are based around an update rate of 50 Hz, not 60 Hz.

### 8.5.3 Measuring Real Time with a High-Resolution Timer

We've talked a lot about measuring the amount of real "wall clock" time that elapses during each frame. In this section, we'll investigate how such timing measurements are made in detail.

Most operating systems provide a function for querying the system time, such as the C standard library function `time()`. However, such functions are not suitable for measuring elapsed times in a real-time game because they do not provide sufficient resolution. For example, `time()` returns an integer representing the number of *seconds* since midnight, January 1, 1970, so its resolution is one second—far too coarse, considering that a frame takes only tens of milliseconds to execute.

All modern CPUs contain a *high-resolution timer*, which is usually implemented as a hardware register that counts the number of CPU cycles (or some multiple thereof) that have elapsed since the last time the processor was powered on or reset. This is the timer that we should use when measuring elapsed time in a game, because its resolution is usually on the order of the duration of a few CPU cycles. For example, on a 3 GHz Pentium processor, the high-resolution timer increments once per CPU cycle, or 3 billion times per second. Hence the resolution of the high-res timer is  $1/3\text{ billion} = 3.33 \times 10^{-10}$  seconds = 0.333 ns (one-third of a nanosecond). This is more than enough resolution for all of our time-measurement needs in a game.

Different microprocessors and different operating systems provide different ways to query the high-resolution timer. On a Pentium, a special instruction called `rdtsc` (read time-stamp counter) can be used, although the Win32 API wraps this facility in a pair of functions: `QueryPerformanceCounter()` reads the 64-bit counter register and `QueryPerformanceFrequency()` returns the number of counter increments per second for the current CPU. On a PowerPC architecture, such as the chips found in the Xbox 360 and PlayStation 3, the instruction `mf t b` (move from time base register) can be used to read the two 32-bit time base registers, while on other PowerPC architectures, the instruction `mf spr` (move from special-purpose register) is used instead.

A CPU’s high-resolution timer register is 64 bits wide on most processors, to ensure that it won’t wrap too often. The largest possible value of a 64-bit unsigned integer is  $0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF \approx 1.8 \times 10^{19}$  clock ticks. So, on a 3 GHz Pentium processor that updates its high-res timer once per CPU cycle, the register’s value will wrap back to zero once every 195 years or so—definitely not a situation we need to lose too much sleep over. In contrast, a 32-bit integer clock will wrap after only about 1.4 seconds at 3 GHz.

### 8.5.3.1 High-Resolution Clock Drift

Be aware that even timing measurements taken via a high-resolution timer can be inaccurate in certain circumstances. For example, on some multi-core processors, the high-resolution timers are independent on each core, and they can (and do) drift apart. If you try to compare absolute timer readings taken on different cores to one another, you might end up with some strange results—even negative time deltas. Be sure to keep an eye out for these kinds of problems.

## 8.5.4 Time Units and Clock Variables

Whenever we measure or specify time durations in a game, we have two choices to make:

1. What *time units* should be used? Do we want to store our times in seconds, or milliseconds, or machine cycles...or in some other unit?
2. What *data type* should be used to store time measurements? Should we employ a 64-bit integer, or a 32-bit integer, or a 32-bit floating point variable?

The answers to these questions depend on the intended purpose of a given measurement. This gives rise to two more questions: How much precision do we need? And what range of magnitudes do we expect to be able to represent?

### 8.5.4.1 64-Bit Integer Clocks

We’ve already seen that a 64-bit unsigned integer clock, measured in machine cycles, supports both an extremely high precision (a single cycle is 0.333 ns in duration on a 3 GHz CPU) and a broad range of magnitudes (a 64-bit clock wraps once roughly every 195 years at 3 GHz). So this is the most flexible time representation, presuming you can afford 64 bits worth of storage.

### 8.5.4.2 32-Bit Integer Clocks

When measuring relatively short durations with high precision, we can turn to a 32-bit integer clock, measured in machine cycles. For example, to profile the performance of a block of code, we might do something like this:

```
// Grab a time snapshot.
U64 begin_ticks = readHiResTimer();

// This is the block of code whose performance we wish
// to measure.
doSomething();
doSomethingElse();
nowReallyDoSomething();

// Measure the duration.
U64 end_ticks = readHiResTimer();
U32 dt_ticks = static_cast<U32>(end_ticks - begin_ticks);

// Now use or cache the value of dt_ticks...
```

Notice that we still store the raw time measurements in 64-bit integer variables. Only the time delta `dt` is stored in a 32-bit variable. This circumvents potential problems with wrapping at the 32-bit boundary. For example, if `begin_ticks` = 0x12345678FFFFFB7 and `end_ticks` = 0x1234567900000039, then we would measure a negative time delta if we were to truncate the individual time measurements to 32 bits each prior to subtracting them.

### 8.5.4.3 32-Bit Floating-Point Clocks

Another common approach is to store relatively small time deltas in floating-point format, measured in units of seconds. To do this, we simply multiply a duration measured in CPU cycles by the CPU's clock frequency, which is in cycles per second. For example:

```
// Start off assuming an ideal frame time (30 FPS).
F32 dt_seconds = 1.0f / 30.0f;

// Prime the pump by reading the current time.
U64 begin_ticks = readHiResTimer();

while (true) // main game loop
{
    runOneIterationOfGameLoop(dt_seconds);

    // Read the current time again, and calculate the delta.
```

```
U64 end_ticks = readHiResTimer();  
  
// Check our units: seconds = ticks / (ticks/second)  
dt_seconds = (F32)(end_ticks - begin_ticks)  
/ (F32)getHiResTimerFrequency();  
  
// Use end_ticks as the new begin_ticks for next frame.  
begin_ticks = end_ticks;  
}
```

Notice once again that we must be careful to subtract the two 64-bit time measurements *before* converting them into floating-point format. This ensures that we don't store too large a magnitude into a 32-bit floating-point variable.

#### 8.5.4.4 Limitations of Floating-Point Clocks

Recall that in a 32-bit IEEE float, the 23 bits of the mantissa are dynamically distributed between the whole and fractional parts of the value, by way of the exponent (see Section 3.3.1.4). Small magnitudes require only a few bits, leaving plenty of bits of precision for the fraction. But once the magnitude of our clock grows too large, its whole part eats up more bits, leaving fewer bits for the fraction. Eventually, even the least-significant bits of the whole part become implicit zeros. This means that we must be cautious when storing *long durations* in a floating-point clock variable. If we keep track of the amount of time that has elapsed since the game was started, a floating-point clock will eventually become inaccurate to the point of being unusable.

Floating-point clocks are usually only used to store relatively short time deltas, measuring at most a few minutes and more often just a single frame or less. If an absolute-valued floating-point clock is used in a game, you will need to reset the clock to zero periodically to avoid accumulation of large magnitudes.

#### 8.5.4.5 Other Time Units

Some game engines allow timing values to be specified in a game-defined unit that is fine-grained enough to permit an integer format to be used (as opposed to requiring a floating-point format), precise enough to be useful for a wide range of applications within the engine, and yet large enough that a 32-bit clock won't wrap too often. One common choice is a 1/300 second time unit. This works well because (a) it is fine-grained enough for many purposes, (b) it only wraps once every 165.7 days and (c) it is an even multiple of both NTSC and PAL refresh rates. A 60 FPS frame would be 5 such units in duration, while a 50 FPS frame would be 6 units in duration.

Obviously a 1/300 second time unit is not precise enough to handle subtle effects, like time-scaling an animation. (If we tried to slow a 30 FPS animation down to less than 1/10 of its regular speed, we'd be out of precision!) So for many purposes, it's still best to use floating-point time units or machine cycles. But a 1/300 second time unit can be used effectively for things like specifying how much time should elapse between the shots of an automatic weapon, or how long an AI-controlled character should wait before starting his patrol, or the amount of time the player can survive when standing in a pool of acid.

### 8.5.5 Dealing with Breakpoints

When your game hits a breakpoint, its loop stops running and the debugger takes over. However, if your game is running on the same computer that your debugger is running on, then the CPU continues to run, and the real-time clock continues to accrue cycles. A large amount of wall clock time can pass while you are inspecting your code at a breakpoint. When you allow the program to continue, this can lead to a measured frame time many seconds, or even minutes or hours in duration!

Clearly if we allow such a huge delta time to be passed to the subsystems in our engine, bad things will happen. If we are lucky, the game might continue to function properly after lurching forward many seconds in a single frame. Worse, the game might just crash.

A simple approach can be used to get around this problem. In the main game loop, if we ever measure a frame time in excess of some predefined upper limit (e.g., 1 second), we can assume that we have just resumed execution after a breakpoint, and we set the delta-time artificially to 1/30 or 1/60 of a second (or whatever the target frame rate is). In effect, the game becomes frame-locked for one frame, in order to avoid a massive spike in the measured frame duration.

```
// Start off assuming the ideal dt (30 FPS).
F32 dt = 1.0f / 30.0f;

// Prime the pump by reading the current time.
U64 begin_ticks = readHiResTimer();

while (true) // main game loop
{
    updateSubsystemA(dt);
    updateSubsystemB(dt);
    // ...
    renderScene();
    swapBuffers();
```

```
// Read the current time again, and calculate an
// estimate of next frame's delta time.
U64 end_ticks = readHiResTimer();

dt = (F32)(end_ticks - begin_ticks)
    / (F32)getHiResTimerFrequency();

// If dt is too large, we must have resumed from a
// breakpoint -- frame-lock to the target rate this
// frame.
if (dt > 1.0f)
{
    dt = 1.0f/30.0f;
}

// Use end_ticks as the new begin_ticks for next frame.
begin_ticks = end_ticks;
}
```

## 8.6 Multiprocessor Game Loops

In Chapter 4, we explored the parallel computing hardware that is now ubiquitous in consumer-grade computers, mobile devices and game consoles, and we learned the mechanics of how to write *concurrent* software that takes advantage of these parallel computing resources. In this section, we'll discuss various ways in which this knowledge can be applied to a game engine's *game loop*.

### 8.6.1 Task Decomposition

To take advantage of parallel computing hardware, we need to *decompose* the various tasks that are performed during each iteration of our game loop into multiple subtasks, each of which can be executed in parallel. This act of decomposition transforms our software from a *sequential* program into a *concurrent* one.

There are many ways to decompose a software system for concurrency, but as we discussed in Section 4.1.3, we can place all of them roughly into one of two categories: *task parallelism* and *data parallelism*.

Task parallelism naturally fits situations in which a number of *different* things need to be done, and we opt to do them in parallel across multiple cores. For example, we might attempt to perform animation blending in parallel with collision detection during each iteration of our game loop, or we might submit

primitives to the GPU for rendering of frame  $N$  in parallel with starting to update the state of the game world for frame  $N + 1$ .

Data parallelism is best suited to situations in which a *single* computation needs to be performed repeatedly on a large number of data elements. The GPU is probably the best example of data parallelism in action—a GPU performs millions of per-pixel and per-vertex calculations every frame by distributing the work across a large number of processing cores that operate in parallel. However, as we'll see in the following sections, data parallelism isn't only found on the GPU—there are plenty of tasks performed by the CPU during the game loop that can benefit from data parallelism as well.

In the following sections, we'll take a look at a number of different ways to subdivide the work that's done by the game loop, some of which employ a task-parallel approach, others of which rely on data parallelism. We'll explore the pros and cons of each approach, and then see how a general-purpose *job system* can be a useful tool for converting literally any workload into a concurrent operation that can take advantage of hardware parallelism.

### 8.6.2 One Thread per Subsystem

One simple way to decompose our game loop for concurrency would be to assign particular engine subsystems to run in separate threads. For example, the rendering engine, the collision and physics simulation, the animation pipeline, and the audio engine could each be assigned to its own thread. A master thread would control and synchronize the operations of these secondary subsystem threads, and would also continue to handle the lion's share of the game's high-level logic (the main game loop). On a hardware platform with multiple physical CPUs, this design would allow the threaded engine subsystems to execute in parallel with one another and with the main game loop. This is a simple example of *task parallelism*; it is depicted in Figure 8.4.

There are a number of problems with the simple approach of assigning each engine subsystem to its own thread. For one thing, the number of engine subsystems probably won't match the number of cores on our gaming platform. As a result, we'll probably end up with more threads than we have cores, and some subsystem threads will need to share a core via time-slicing.

Another problem is that each engine subsystem requires a different amount of processing each frame. This means that while some threads (and their corresponding CPU cores) are highly utilized each frame, others may sit idle for large portions of the frame.

Yet another issue is that some engine subsystems *depend* on the data produced by others. For example, the rendering and audio subsystems cannot

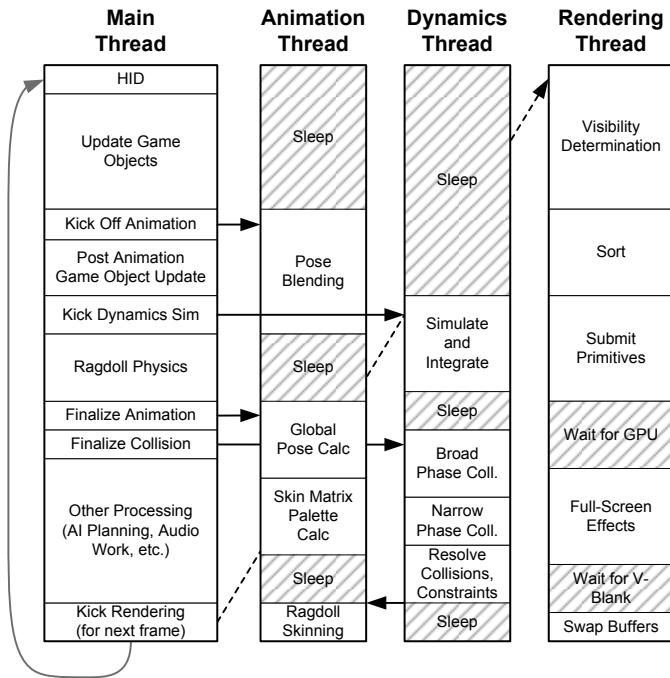


Figure 8.4. One thread per major engine subsystem.

start doing their work for frame  $N$  until the animation, collision and physics systems have completed their work for frame  $N$ . We cannot run two subsystems in parallel if they depend on one another like this.

As a result of all of these problems, attempting to assign each engine subsystem to its own thread is really not a practical design. We can do better.

### 8.6.3 Scatter/Gather

Many of the tasks performed during a single iteration of the game loop are data-intensive. For example, we may need to process a large number of ray cast requests, blend together a large batch of animation poses, or calculate world-space matrices for every object in a massive interactive scene. One way to take advantage of parallel computing hardware to perform these kinds of tasks is to use a divide-and-conquer approach. Instead of attempting to process 9000 ray casts one at a time on a single CPU core, we can divide the work into, say, six batches of 1500 ray casts each, and then execute one batch on each

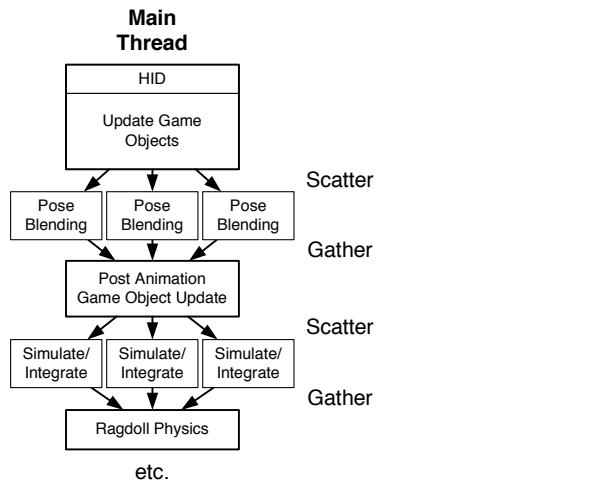


Figure 8.5. Scatter/gather used to parallelize selected CPU-intensive parts of the game loop.

of the six<sup>1</sup> CPU cores on our PS4 or Xbox One. This approach is a form of *data parallelism*.

In distributed systems terminology, this is known as a *scatter/gather* approach, because a unit of work is divided into smaller subunits, distributed onto multiple processing cores for execution (scatter), and then the results are combined or finalized in an appropriate manner once all workloads have been completed (gather).

### 8.6.3.1 Scatter/Gather in the Game Loop

In the context of our game loop, one or more scatter/gather operations might be performed, at various times during one iteration of the game loop, by the “master” game loop thread. This architecture is illustrated in Figure 8.5.

Given a dataset containing  $N$  data items that require processing, the master thread would divide the work into  $m$  batches, each containing roughly  $N/m$  elements. (The value of  $m$  would probably be determined based on the number of available cores in the system, although this may not be the case if, for example, we wish to leave some cores free for other work.) The master thread would then spawn  $m$  worker threads and provide each with a start index and count,

<sup>1</sup>Both the PS4 and the Xbox One allow developers to access some of the processing power of a seventh core. Not all of its bandwidth is available to developers because this core is also utilized by the operating system. The eighth core in these 8-core machines is entirely off-limits. This is done to allow for the fact that some faulty cores are inevitably produced during any CPU’s fabrication process.

allowing it to process its assigned subset of the data. Each worker thread might update the data items in-place, or (usually better) it might produce output data into a separate preallocated buffer (one per worker thread).

Having successfully scattered the workload, the master thread would then be free to perform some other useful work while it waits for the worker threads to complete their tasks.

At some point later in the frame, the master thread would gather the results by waiting until all of the worker threads have terminated, perhaps using a function such as `pthread_join()`. If the worker threads have all exited, this function will return immediately; however, if any worker threads are still running, this call would have the effect of putting the master thread to sleep.

Once the gather step has been completed, the master thread could potentially combine the results in whatever manner is appropriate. For example, after blending animations together, the next step might be to calculate skinning matrices—this step would be kicked off only after all animation blending threads have completed their work. We presented an example very much like this in Section 4.4.6 when we covered thread creation and joining.

### 8.6.3.2 SIMD for Scatter/Gather

In Section 4.10, we explored loop *vectorization* as a means of leveraging SIMD parallelism to improve the performance of data-intensive work. This is really just another form of the scatter/gather approach, performed at a very fine level of granularity. SIMD could be used in lieu of thread-based scatter/gather, but it would likely be used in conjunction with it (with each worker thread utilizing vectorization internally to perform its work).

### 8.6.3.3 Making Scatter/Gather More Efficient

The scatter/gather approach is an intuitive way to distribute data-intensive work across multiple cores. However, as we've described it above, this parallelization method does suffer from one big problem—spawning threads is expensive. Spawning a thread involves a kernel call, as does joining the master thread with its workers. The kernel itself does quite a lot of set-up and tear-down work whenever threads come and go. So spawning a bunch of threads every time we want to perform a scatter/gather is impractical.

We could mitigate the costs of spawning threads by using of a pool of pre-spawned threads. Some operating systems like Windows provide an API for creating and managing a pool of threads. (See for example <https://bit.ly/2H8ChIp>.) In the absence of such an API, you can always implement a simple thread pool yourself, using *condition variables*, *semaphores*, atomic Boolean

variables, or some other mechanism in order to synchronize the activities of the threads.

We'd like our thread pool to be capable of performing a wide variety of scatter/gather operations over the course of each frame. This means that we can no longer simply spawn a bunch of threads for each scatter/gather, whose entry point function does one particular computation. Instead, each thread in the pool would have to be capable of performing any of the scatter/gather operations we might want to perform during any iteration of our game loop. We could imagine using a giant switch statement to implement this, but that idea sounds clunky, ugly and hard to maintain. Really, what we want is a general-purpose system for executing units of work concurrently, across the available cores on our target hardware.

#### 8.6.4 Job Systems

A *job system* is a general-purpose system for executing arbitrary units of work, typically called *jobs*, across multiple cores. With a job system, a game programmer can subdivide each iteration of the game loop into a relatively large number of independent jobs, and submit them to the job system for execution. The job system maintains a queue of submitted jobs, and it schedules those jobs across the available cores, either by submitting them to be executed by worker threads in a thread pool, or by some other means. In a sense, a job system is like a custom, light-weight operating system kernel, except that instead of scheduling threads to run on the available cores, it schedules jobs.

Jobs can be arbitrarily fine-grained, and in a real game engine many are independent of one another. As shown in Figure 8.6, these facts help to maximize processor utilization. This architecture also scales up or down naturally to hardware with any number of CPU cores.

##### 8.6.4.1 Typical Job System Interface

A typical job system provides a simple, easy-to-use API that looks very similar to the API for a threading library. There's a function for spawning a job (the equivalent of `pthread_create()`, often called *kicking* a job), a function that allows one job to wait for one or more other jobs to terminate (the equivalent of `pthread_join()`), and perhaps a way for a job to self-terminate "early" (before returning from its entry point function). A job system must also provide spin locks of mutexes of some kind for performing critical concurrent operations in an *atomic* manner. It may also provide facilities for putting jobs to sleep and waking them back up, via condition variables or some similar mechanism.

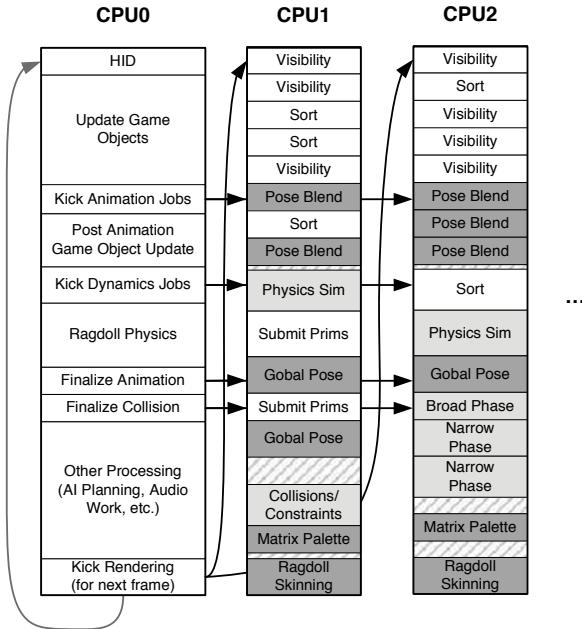


Figure 8.6. In a job model, work is broken down into fine-grained chunks that can be picked up by any available processor. This can help maximize processor utilization while providing the main game loop with improved flexibility.

To kick a job, we need to tell the job system *what* job to perform, and *how* to perform it. Normally this information is passed to the `KickJob()` function via a small data structure which we'll call a *job declaration* here.

At minimum, a job declaration must contain a pointer to the job's entry point function. It's also important to be able to pass arbitrary input parameters to the job's entry point function. This could be done in various ways, but the simplest is to provide a single parameter of type `uintptr_t`, which will be passed to the entry point function when the job actually runs. This allows us to pass simple information like a single Boolean or integer to the job with little fuss; but because a pointer can be safely cast to a `uintptr_t`, we can also use this job parameter to pass a pointer to an arbitrary data structure, that itself contains whatever input parameters the job might require.

A job system may also provide a priority mechanism, much as most thread libraries do. In this case, a priority might also be included within the job declaration.

Here's an example of a simple job declaration, along with a simple job system API:

```
namespace job
{
    // signature of all job entry points
    typedef void EntryPoint(uintptr_t param);

    // allowable priorities
    enum class Priority
    {
        LOW, NORMAL, HIGH, CRITICAL
    };

    // counter (implementation not shown)
    struct Counter ... ;
    Counter* AllocCounter();
    void FreeCounter(Counter* pCounter);

    // simple job declaration
    struct Declaration
    {
        EntryPoint*      m_pEntryPoint;
        uintptr_t         m_param;
        Priority         m_priority;
        Counter*         m_pCounter;
    };

    // kick a job
    void KickJob(const Declaration& decl);
    void KickJobs(int count, const Declaration aDecl[]);

    // wait for job to terminate (for its Counter to become zero)
    void WaitForCounter(Counter* pCounter);

    // kick jobs and wait for completion
    void KickJobAndWait(const Declaration& decl);
    void KickJobsAndWait(int count, const Declaration aDecl[]);
}
```

You'll notice there's an opaque type here called `job::Counter`. Counters allow one job to go to sleep and wait until one or more other jobs have completed executing. We'll discuss job counters in Section 8.6.4.6.

#### 8.6.4.2 A Simple Job System Based on a Thread Pool

As we hinted at earlier, it's possible to build a job system around a pool of worker threads. It's a good idea to spawn one thread for each CPU that's present in the target machine, and use affinity to lock each thread to one core. Each worker thread sits in an infinite loop processing job requests that are

provided to it by other threads (and/or other jobs). At the top of this infinite loop, the worker thread goes to sleep (possibly via a condition variable), waiting for a job request to become available. When a request is received, the worker thread wakes up, calls the job's entry point function and passes the input parameter from the job declaration to it. When the entry point function returns, that indicates that the work is complete, so the worker thread goes back to the top of its infinite loop to execute more jobs. If none are available, it goes back to sleep, waiting for another job request to come in.

Here's what a job worker thread might look like under the hood. Please bear in mind that this is not a complete implementation; it's just for illustrative purposes.

```
namespace job
{
    void* JobWorkerThread(void*)
    {
        // keep on running jobs forever...
        while (true)
        {
            Declaration declCopy;

            // wait for a job to become available
            pthread_mutex_lock(&g_mutex);
            while (!g_ready)
            {
                pthread_cond_wait(&g_jobCv, &g_mutex);
            }

            // copy the JobDeclaration locally and
            // release our mutex lock
            declCopy = GetNextJobFromQueue();
            pthread_mutex_unlock(&g_mutex);

            // run the job
            declCopy.m_pEntryPoint(declCopy.m_param);

            // job is done! rinse and repeat...
        }
    }
}
```

#### 8.6.4.3 A Limitation of Thread-Based Jobs

Let's imagine writing a job that updates the state of an AI-driven non-player character (NPC). The job's entry point function might look something like this:

```
void NpcThinkJob(uintparam_t param)
{
    Npc* pNpc = reinterpret_cast<Npc*>(param);

    pNpc->StartThinking();
    pNpc->DoSomeMoreUpdating();
    // ...

    // now let's cast a ray to see if we're aiming
    // at anything interesting -- this involves
    // kicking off another job that will run on
    // a different code (worker thread)
    RayCastHandle hRayCast = CastGunAimRay(pNpc);

    // the results of the ray cast aren't going to
    // be ready until later this frame, so let's
    // go to sleep until it's ready
    WaitForRayCast(hRayCast);

    // zzz...

    // wake up!

    // now fire my weapon, but only if the ray
    // cast indicates that we are aiming at an
    // enemy
    pNpc->TryFireWeaponAtTarget(hRayCast);

    // ...
}
```

This job seems simple enough: It performs some updates, kicks off a ray cast job (on another worker thread/core) to determine at what object the NPC is aiming his gun. The NPC then fires his weapon, but only if the ray cast reports that an enemy is in his sights.

Unfortunately this kind of job wouldn't work if we tried to run it within the simple job system that we described in the previous section. The problem is the call to `WaitForRayCast()`. In our simple thread-pool-based job system, every job must *run to completion* once it starts running. It cannot "go to sleep" waiting for the results of the ray cast, allowing other jobs to run on the worker thread, and then "wake up" later, when the ray cast results are ready.

This limitation arises because in our simple system, each running job shares the same call stack as the worker thread that invoked it. To put a job to sleep, we would need to effectively *context switch* to another job. That would involve saving off the outgoing job's call stack and registers, and then overwriting the

worker thread’s call stack with the incoming job’s call stack. There’s no simple way to do that when using such a simple job execution method.

#### 8.6.4.4 Jobs as Coroutines

One way to overcome this problem would be to change from a thread pool based job system to one based on *coroutines*. Recall from Section 4.4.8 that a coroutine possesses one important quality that ordinary threads do not: The ability to *yield* to another coroutine part-way through its execution, and to continue from where it left off at some later time when another coroutine yields control back to it. Coroutines can yield to one another like this because the implementation actually does swap the callstacks of the outgoing and incoming coroutines within the thread in which the coroutines are running. So unlike a purely thread-based job, a coroutine-based job could effectively “go to sleep” and allow other jobs to run while it waits for an operation such as a ray cast to complete.

#### 8.6.4.5 Jobs as Fibers

Another way to allow jobs to sleep and yield to one another is to implement them with *fibers* instead of threads. Recall from Section 4.4.7 that the key difference between fibers and threads is that context switches between fibers are always *cooperative*, never *preemptive*. A fiber-based system begins by converting one of its threads into a fiber. The thread will continue to run that fiber until it explicitly calls `SwitchToFiber()` to explicitly *yield* control to another fiber. Just as with coroutines, the entire call stack of a fiber is saved off whenever a context switch to another fiber occurs. Fibers can even migrate from one thread to another. This makes them well suited for use in implementing a job system. Naughty Dog’s job system is based on fibers.

#### 8.6.4.6 Job Counters

If we implement our job system with coroutines or fibers, we have the ability to put a job to sleep (saving off its execution context), and to wake it back up at a future time (thus restoring its execution context). This in turn permits us to implement a *join* function for our job system—a function that causes the calling job to go to sleep, waiting until one or more other jobs have completed executing. Such a function would be roughly equivalent to `pthread_join()` in the POSIX thread library or `WaitForSingleObject()` under Windows.

One way to implement this would be to associate a *handle* with each job, just as threads have handles in most thread libraries. Waiting for a job would then amount to calling a `job::Join()` function of some kind, passing the handle of the job for which you wish to wait.

One downside of the handle-based approach is that it doesn't scale well to waiting for large numbers of jobs. Also, to wait for an individual job to complete, we'd need to poll periodically to check the status of all jobs in the system. Such polling would waste valuable CPU cycles. For these reasons, the job system API presented above introduces the concept of a *counter*, which acts a bit like a semaphore, only in reverse. Whenever a job is kicked, it can optionally be associated with a counter (provided to it via the `job::Declaration`). The act of kicking the job increments the counter, and when the job terminates the counter is decremented. Waiting for a batch of jobs, then, involves simply kicking them all off with the same counter, and then waiting until that counter reaches zero (which indicates that all jobs have completed their work.) Waiting until a counter reaches zero is much more efficient than polling the individual jobs, because the check can be made at the moment the counter is decremented. As such, a counter based system can be a performance win. Counters like this are used in the Naughty Dog job system.

#### 8.6.4.7 Job Synchronization Primitives

Any concurrent program requires a mechanism for performing *atomic operations*, and a job system is no different. Just as a threading library provides a set of *thread synchronization primitives* such as mutexes, condition variables and semaphores, so too must a job system provide a collection of *job synchronization primitives*.

The implementation of job synchronization primitives varies somewhat depending on how the job system is actually implemented. But they're usually *not* simply wrappers around the kernel's thread synchronization primitives. To see why, consider what an OS mutex does: It puts a thread to sleep whenever the lock it's trying to acquire is already being held by another thread. If we were to implement our job system as a thread pool, then waiting on a mutex within a job would put the *entire worker thread* to sleep, not just the one job that wants to wait for the lock. Clearly this would pose a serious problem, because no jobs would be able to run on that thread's core until the thread wakes back up. Such a system would very likely be fraught with deadlock issues.

To overcome this problem, jobs could use *spin locks* instead of OS mutexes. This approach works well as long as there's not very much lock contention between threads, because in that case no job will ever busy-wait for every lock trying to obtain a lock. Naughty Dog's job system uses spin locks for most of its locking needs.

Sometimes, however, a job may experience a high-contention situation. A well-designed job system can handle this via a custom "mutex" mechanism

that can put a job to sleep while it waits for a resource to become available. Such a mutex might start by busy-waiting when a lock can't be obtained. If after a brief timeout the lock is still unavailable, the mutex could yield the coroutine or fiber to another waiting job, thereby putting the waiting job to sleep. Just as the kernel keeps track of all sleeping threads that are waiting on a mutex, our job system would need to keep track of all sleeping jobs so that it can wake them up when their mutexes free up.

#### 8.6.4.8 Job Visualization and Profiling Tools

Once you start using a job system, the graph of running jobs and their dependencies becomes large and complex very quickly. It's a good idea to provide visualization and profiling tools with any job system.

For example, the Naughty Dog job system offers a visualization view like the one shown in Figure 8.7. In this display, you can see each of the seven cores (plus the GPU) listed vertically along the left-hand edge. Time progresses from left to right, and each logical frame is demarcated with vertical markers. Along each core's timeline, thin blocks represent the various jobs that ran during the given frame. Beneath each job are additional rows of thin rectangles—these represent the call stack of the job (which functions it called, and how long each one took to run).



Figure 8.7. The job system used in *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy* (© 2017™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) and Naughty Dog's other PS4 games offers a visualization tool that shows which jobs ran on each core over the course of a given frame. Time increases from left to right. Jobs are represented by thin boxes along the timeline of each core. The functions called by each job are shown beneath it as additional thin boxes.

Jobs are color coded by their function, so users can quickly zero in on a particular job. For example, let's say we're looking for a ray cast that's taking a particularly long time. If ray cast jobs are colored red, we can visually scan the display for all the red jobs that are wider than we'd like. Clicking on a job causes all other jobs that are not of the same type to be drawn in grey, allowing all jobs of the selected job's type to be easily seen. Also, when a job is clicked, thin lines connect it to the jobs it kicked, and to the job that kicked it. Hovering your mouse over a job, or over one of the functions in its call stack beneath it, pops up some text with the name of the job or function, and its execution time in milliseconds.

One other very useful job system feature is what I'll call a *profile trap*. Let's say an area of the game is running well at 30 FPS most of the time, but once in a while it dips to 24 FPS. We can set a trap for any frame taking longer than, say, 35 ms. Then we play the game normally. As soon as a frame taking longer than 35 ms is detected, the game is automatically paused by the trap system, and the profile display is put up on-screen. It's then possible to analyze the jobs that ran that frame to find the culprit(s) causing the slowdown.

#### 8.6.4.9 The Naughty Dog Job System

The job system used by Naughty Dog on *The Last of Us: Remastered*, *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End* and *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy* largely follows the design of the hypothetical job systems we've discussed thus far. It is based on fibers (rather than thread pools or coroutines). It makes use of spin locks and also provides a special job mutex that can put a job to sleep while it waits for a lock. It uses counters rather than job handles to implement a *join* operation.

Let's have a look at how the fiber-based job system used in the Naughty Dog engine works. When the system first boots up, the main thread converts itself to a fiber in order to enable fibers within the process as a whole. Next, job worker threads are spawned, one for each of the seven cores available to developers on the PS4. These threads are each locked to one core via their CPU affinity settings, so we can think of these worker threads and their cores as being roughly synonymous (although in reality, other higher-priority threads do sometimes interrupt the worker threads for very brief periods during the frame). Fiber creation is slow on the PS4, so a pool of fibers is pre-spawned, along with memory blocks to serve as each fiber's call stack.

When jobs are kicked, their declarations are placed onto a queue. As cores/worker threads become free (as jobs terminate), new jobs are pulled from this queue and executed. A running job can also add more jobs to the job queue.

To execute a job, an unused fiber is pulled from the fiber pool, and the

worker thread performs a `SwitchToFiber()` to start the job running. When a job returns from its entry point function or otherwise self-terminates, the job's final act is to perform a `SwitchToFiber()` back to the job system itself. It then selects another job from the queue, and the process repeats ad infinitum.

When a job waits on a counter, the job is put to sleep and its fiber (execution context) is placed on a wait list, along with the counter it is waiting for. When this counter hits zero, the job is woken back up so it can continue where it left off. Sleeping and waking jobs is again implemented by calling `SwitchToFiber()` between the job's fiber and the job system's management fibers on each core/worker thread.

For an excellent in-depth discussion of how the Naughty Dog job system was built, and why it was built that way, check out Christian Gyrling's excellent GDC 2015 talk entitled, "Parallelizing the Naughty Dog Engine," which is available at <https://bit.ly/2H6v0J4>. Christian's slides are available at <https://bit.ly/2ETr5x9>.

# 9

## Human Interface Devices

Games are interactive computer simulations, so the human player(s) need some way of providing inputs to the game. All sorts of *human interface devices* (HID) exist for gaming, including joysticks, joypads, keyboards and mice, track balls, the Wii remote and specialized input devices like steering wheels, fishing rods, dance pads and even electric guitars. In this chapter, we'll investigate how game engines typically read, process and utilize the inputs from human interface devices. We'll also have a look at how outputs from these devices provide feedback to the human player.

### 9.1 Types of Human Interface Devices

A wide range of human interface devices are available for gaming purposes. Consoles like the Xbox 360 and PS3 come equipped with joypad controllers, as shown in Figures 9.1 and 9.2. Nintendo's Wii console is well known for its unique and innovative Wii Remote controller (commonly referred to as the "Wiimote"), shown in Figure 9.3. And with the Wii U, Nintendo has created an innovative mix between a controller and a semi-mobile gaming device (Figure 9.4). PC games are generally either controlled via a keyboard and mouse or via a joypad. (Microsoft designed the Xbox 360 joypad so that it can be used both on the Xbox 360 and on Windows/DirectX PC platforms.) As shown in Figure 9.5, arcade machines have one or more built-in controllers, such as a joystick and various buttons, or a track ball, a steering wheel, etc. An arcade machine's input device is usually somewhat customized to the game in



Figure 9.1. Standard joypads for the Xbox 360 and PlayStation 3 consoles.



Figure 9.2. The DualShock 4 joypad for the PlayStation 4.



Figure 9.3. The innovative Wii Remote for the Nintendo Wii.



Figure 9.4. The Wii U controller by Nintendo.

question, although input hardware is often reused among arcade machines produced by the same manufacturer.

On console platforms, specialized input devices and adapters are usually available, in addition to the “standard” input device such as the joypad. For example, guitar and drum devices are available for the *Guitar Hero* series of games, steering wheels can be purchased for driving games, and games like *Dance Dance Revolution* use a special dance pad device. Some of these devices



Figure 9.5. Buttons and joysticks for the arcade game *Mortal Kombat II* by Midway.



Figure 9.6. Many specialized input devices are available for use with consoles.

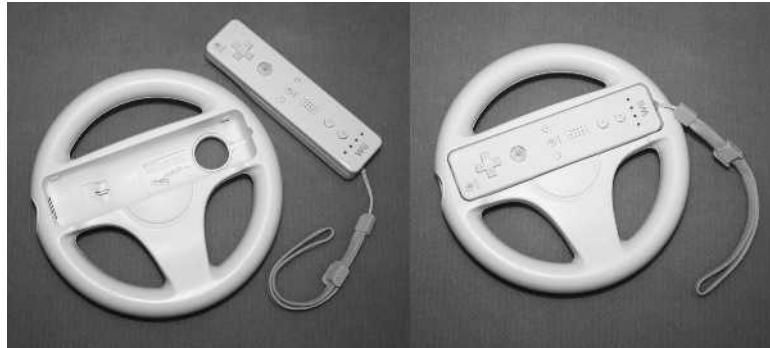


Figure 9.7. Steering wheel adapter for the Nintendo Wii.

are shown in Figure 9.6.

The Nintendo Wiimote is one of the most flexible input devices on the market today. As such, it is often adapted to new purposes, rather than replaced with an entirely new device. For example, *Mario Kart Wii* comes with a plastic steering wheel adapter into which the Wiimote can be inserted (see Figure 9.7).

## 9.2 Interfacing with a HID

All human interface devices provide input to the game software, and some also allow the software to provide feedback to the human player via various kinds of outputs as well. Game software reads and writes HID inputs and outputs in various ways, depending on the specific design of the device in question.

### 9.2.1 Polling

Some simple devices, like game pads and old-school joysticks, are read by *polling* the hardware periodically (usually once per iteration of the main game loop). This means explicitly querying the state of the device, either by read-

ing hardware registers directly, reading a memory-mapped I/O port, or via a higher-level software interface (which, in turn, reads the appropriate registers or memory-mapped I/O ports). Likewise, outputs might be sent to the HID by writing to special registers or memory-mapped I/O addresses, or via a higher-level API that does our dirty work for us.

Microsoft's XInput API, for use with Xbox 360 game pads on both the Xbox 360 and Windows PC platforms, is a good example of a simple polling mechanism. Every frame, the game calls the function `XInputGetState()`. This function communicates with the hardware and/or drivers, reads the data in the appropriate way and packages it all up for convenient use by the software. It returns a pointer to an `XINPUT_STATE` struct, which in turn contains an embedded instance of a struct called `XINPUT_GAMEPAD`. This struct contains the current states of all of the controls (buttons, thumb sticks and triggers) on the device.

### 9.2.2 Interrupts

Some HIDs only send data to the game engine when the state of the controller changes in some way. For example, a mouse spends a lot of its time just sitting still on the mouse pad. There's no reason to send a continuous stream of data between the mouse and the computer when the mouse isn't moving—we need only transmit information when it moves, or a button is pressed or released.

This kind of device usually communicates with the host computer via *hardware interrupts*. An interrupt is an electronic signal generated by the hardware, which causes the CPU to temporarily suspend execution of the main program and run a small chunk of code called an *interrupt service routine* (ISR). Interrupts are used for all sorts of things, but in the case of a HID, the ISR code will probably read the state of the device, store it off for later processing, and then relinquish the CPU back to the main program. The game engine can pick up the data the next time it is convenient to do so.

### 9.2.3 Wireless Devices

The inputs and outputs of a Bluetooth device, like the Wiimote, the Dual-Shock 3 and the Xbox 360 wireless controller, cannot be read and written by simply accessing registers or memory-mapped I/O ports. Instead, the software must “talk” to the device via the Bluetooth protocol. The software can request the HID to send input data (such as the states of its buttons) back to the host, or it can send output data (such as rumble settings or a stream of audio data) to the device. This communication is often handled by a thread separate

from the game engine's main loop, or at least encapsulated behind a relatively simple interface that can be called from the main loop. So from the point of view of the game programmer, the state of a Bluetooth device can be made to look pretty much indistinguishable from a traditional polled device.

## 9.3 Types of Inputs

Although human interface devices for games vary widely in terms of form factor and layout, most of the inputs they provide fall into one of a small number of categories. We'll investigate each category in depth below.

### 9.3.1 Digital Buttons

Almost every HID has at least a few *digital buttons*. These are buttons that can only be in one of two states: *pressed* and *not pressed*. Game programmers often refer to a pressed button as being *down* and a non-pressed button as being *up*.

Electrical engineers speak of a circuit containing a switch as being *closed* (meaning electricity is flowing through the circuit) or *open* (no electricity is flowing—the circuit has infinite *resistance*). Whether *closed* corresponds to *pressed* or *not pressed* depends on the hardware. If the switch is *normally open*, then when it is not pressed (up), the circuit is *open*, and when it is pressed (down), the circuit is *closed*. If the switch is *normally closed*, the reverse is true—the act of pressing the button opens the circuit.

In software, the state of a digital button (pressed or not pressed) is usually represented by a single bit. It's common for 0 to represent not pressed (up) and 1 to represent pressed (down). But again, depending on the nature of the circuitry and the decisions made by the programmers who wrote the device driver, the sense of these values might be reversed.

It is quite common for the states of all of the buttons on a device to be packed into a single unsigned integer value. For example, in Microsoft's XInput API, the state of the Xbox 360 joypad is returned in a struct called `XINPUT_GAMEPAD`, shown below.

```
typedef struct _XINPUT_GAMEPAD
{
    WORD  wButtons;
    BYTE  bLeftTrigger;
    BYTE  bRightTrigger;
    SHORT sThumbLX;
    SHORT sThumbLY;
    SHORT sThumbRX;
    SHORT sThumbRY;
```

```
    } XINPUT_GAMEPAD;
```

This struct contains a 16-bit unsigned integer (WORD) variable named wButtons that holds the state of all buttons. The following masks define which physical button corresponds to each bit in the word. (Note that bits 10 and 11 are unused.)

#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_DPAD_UP	0x0001 // bit 0
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_DPAD_DOWN	0x0002 // bit 1
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_DPAD_LEFT	0x0004 // bit 2
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_DPAD_RIGHT	0x0008 // bit 3
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_START	0x0010 // bit 4
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_BACK	0x0020 // bit 5
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_LEFT_THUMB	0x0040 // bit 6
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_RIGHT_THUMB	0x0080 // bit 7
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_LEFT_SHOULDER	0x0100 // bit 8
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_RIGHT_SHOULDER	0x0200 // bit 9
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_A	0x1000 // bit 12
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_B	0x2000 // bit 13
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_X	0x4000 // bit 14
#define XINPUT_GAMEPAD_Y	0x8000 // bit 15

An individual button's state can be read by masking the wButtons word with the appropriate bitmask via C/C++'s bitwise AND operator (`&`) and then checking if the result is nonzero. For example, to determine if the A button is pressed (down), we would write:

```
bool IsButtonADown(const XINPUT_GAMEPAD& pad)
{
    // Mask off all bits but bit 12 (the A button).
    return ((pad.wButtons & XINPUT_GAMEPAD_A) != 0);
}
```

### 9.3.2 Analog Axes and Buttons

An *analog input* is one that can take on a range of values (rather than just 0 or 1). These kinds of inputs are often used to represent the degree to which a trigger is pressed, or the two-dimensional position of a joystick (which is represented using two analog inputs, one for the *x*-axis and one for the *y*-axis, as shown in Figure 9.8). Because of this common usage, analog inputs are sometimes called *analog axes*, or just *axes*.

On some devices, certain buttons are analog as well, meaning that the game can actually detect how hard the player is pressing on them. However, the signals produced by analog buttons are usually too noisy to be particularly usable. Games that use analog button inputs effectively are rare. One good

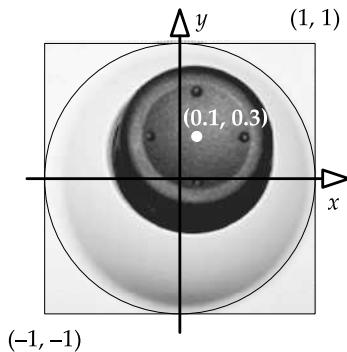


Figure 9.8. Two analog inputs can be used to represent the  $x$  and  $y$  deflection of a joystick.

example is *Metal Gear Solid 2* on the PS2. It uses pressure-sensitive (analog) button data in aim mode to tell the difference between releasing the X button quickly (which fires the weapon) and releasing it slowly (which aborts the shot)—a useful feature in a stealth game, where you don't want to alert the enemies unless you have to!

Strictly speaking, analog inputs are not really analog by the time they make it to the game engine. An analog input signal is usually *digitized*, meaning it is quantized and represented using an integer in software. For example, an analog input might range from  $-32,768$  to  $32,767$  if represented by a 16-bit signed integer. Sometimes analog inputs are converted to floating point—the values might range from  $-1$  to  $1$ , for instance. But as we know from Section 3.3.1.3, floating-point numbers are really just quantized digital values as well.

Reviewing the definition of `XINPUT_GAMEPAD` (repeated below), we can see that Microsoft chose to represent the deflections of the left and right thumb sticks on the Xbox 360 gamepad using 16-bit signed integers (`sThumbLX` and `sThumbLY` for the left stick and `sThumbRX` and `sThumbRY` for the right). Hence, these values range from  $-32,768$  (left or down) to  $32,767$  (right or up). However, to represent the positions of the left and right shoulder triggers, Microsoft chose to use eight-bit unsigned integers (`bLeftTrigger` and `bRightTrigger`, respectively). These input values range from 0 (not pressed) to 255 (fully pressed). Different game machines use different digital representations for their analog axes.

```
typedef struct _XINPUT_GAMEPAD
{
    WORD    wButtons;
    // 8-bit unsigned
    BYTE    bLeftTrigger;
```

```

BYTE  bRightTrigger;

// 16-bit signed
SHORT sThumbLX;
SHORT sThumbLY;
SHORT sThumbRX;
SHORT sThumbRY;
} XINPUT_GAMEPAD;

```

### 9.3.3 Relative Axes

The position of an analog button, trigger, joystick or thumb stick is *absolute*, meaning that there is a clear understanding of where zero lies. However, the inputs of some devices are *relative*. For these devices, there is no clear location at which the input value should be zero. Instead, a zero input indicates that the position of the device has not changed, while nonzero values represent a delta from the last time the input value was read. Examples include mice, mouse wheels and track balls.

### 9.3.4 Accelerometers

The PlayStation's DualShock joypads and the Nintendo Wiimote all contain acceleration sensors (accelerometers). These devices can detect acceleration along the three principal axes ( $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ ), as shown in Figure 9.9. These are *relative* analog inputs, much like a mouse's two-dimensional axes. When the controller is not accelerating these inputs are zero, but when the controller is accelerating, they measure the acceleration up to  $\pm 3$  g along each axis, quantized into three signed eight-bit integers, one for each of  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ .

### 9.3.5 3D Orientation with the Wiimote or DualShock

Some Wii and PS3 games make use of the three accelerometers in the Wiimote or DualShock joypad to estimate the orientation of the controller in the player's hand. For example, in *Super Mario Galaxy*, Mario hops onto a large

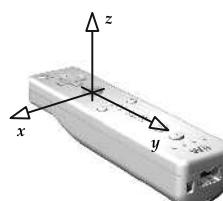


Figure 9.9. Accelerometer axes for the Wiimote.

ball and rolls it around with his feet. To control Mario in this mode, the Wiimote is held with the IR sensor facing the ceiling. Tilting the Wiimote left, right, forward or back causes the ball to accelerate in the corresponding direction.

A trio of accelerometers can be used to detect the orientation of the Wiimote or DualShock joypad, because of the fact that we are playing these games on the surface of the Earth where there is a constant downward acceleration due to gravity of 1 g ( $\approx 9.8 \text{ m/s}^2$ ). If the controller is held perfectly level, with the IR sensor pointing toward your TV set, the vertical (z) acceleration should be approximately  $-1 \text{ g}$ .

If the controller is held upright, with the IR sensor pointing toward the ceiling, we would expect to see a 0 g acceleration on the z sensor, and +1 g on the y sensor (because it is now experiencing the full gravitational effect). Holding the Wiimote at a 45-degree angle should produce roughly  $\sin(45^\circ) = \cos(45^\circ) = 0.707 \text{ g}$  on both the y and z inputs. Once we've calibrated the accelerometer inputs to find the zero points along each axis, we can calculate pitch, yaw and roll easily, using inverse sine and cosine operations.

Two caveats here: First, if the person holding the Wiimote is not holding it still, the accelerometer inputs will include this acceleration in their values, invalidating our math. Second, the z-axis of the accelerometer has been calibrated to account for gravity, but the other two axes have not. This means that the z-axis has less precision available for detecting orientation. Many Wii games request that the user hold the Wiimote in a nonstandard orientation, such as with the buttons facing the player's chest, or with the IR sensor pointing toward the ceiling. This maximizes the precision of the orientation reading by placing the x- or y-accelerometer axis in line with gravity, instead of the gravity-calibrated z-axis. For more information on this topic, see <http://druid.caughq.org/presentations/turbo/Wiimote-Hacking.pdf>.

### 9.3.6 Cameras

The Wiimote has a unique feature not found on any other standard console HID—an infrared (IR) sensor. This sensor is essentially a low-resolution camera that records a two-dimension infrared image of whatever the Wiimote is pointed at. The Wii comes with a “sensor bar” that sits on top of your television set and contains two infrared light emitting diodes (LEDs). In the image recorded by the IR camera, these LEDs appear as two bright dots on an otherwise dark background. Image processing software in the Wiimote analyzes the image and isolates the location and size of the two dots. (Actually, it can detect and transmit the locations and sizes of up to four dots.) This position

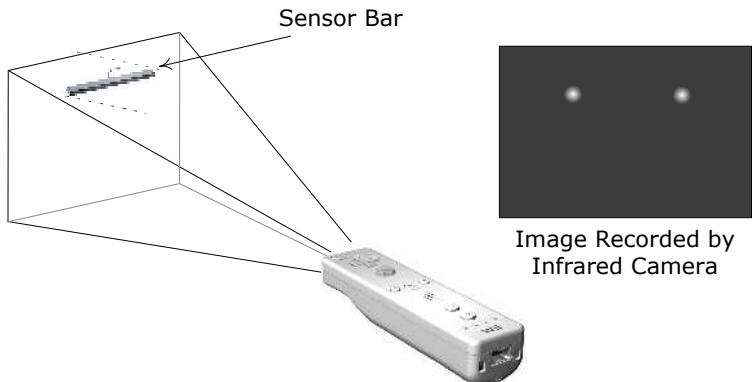


Figure 9.10. The Wii sensor bar houses two infrared LEDs, which produce two bright spots on the image recorded by the Wiimote's IR camera.

and size information can be read by the console via a Bluetooth wireless connection.

The position and orientation of the line segment formed by the two dots can be used to determine the pitch, yaw and roll of the Wiimote (as long as it is being pointed toward the sensor bar). By looking at the separation between the dots, software can also determine how close or far away the Wiimote is from the TV. Some software also makes use of the sizes of the dots. This is illustrated in Figure 9.10.



Figure 9.11. Sony's PlayStation Eye for the PS3.

Another popular camera device is Sony's PlayStation Eye for the PS3, shown in Figure 9.11. This device is basically a high-quality color camera, which can be used for a wide range of applications. It can be used for simple video conferencing, like any web cam. It could also conceivably be used much like the Wiimote's IR camera, for position, orientation and depth sensing. The gamut of possibilities for these kinds of advanced input devices has only begun to be tapped by the gaming community.

With the PlayStation 4, Sony has improved the Eye and re-dubbed it the PlayStation Camera. When combined with the PlayStation Move controller (see Figure 9.12) or the DualShock 4 controller, the PlayStation can detect gestures in basically the same way as Microsoft's innovative Kinect system can (Figure 9.13).



Figure 9.12. Sony's PlayStation Camera, PlayStation Move controller and DualShock 4 joypad for the PS4.



Figure 9.13. The Microsoft Kinect for Xbox 360 (top) and Xbox One (bottom).

## 9.4 Types of Outputs

Human interface devices are primarily used to transmit inputs from the player to the game software. However, some HIDs can also provide feedback to the human player via various kinds of outputs.

### 9.4.1 Rumble

Game pads like the PlayStation's DualShock line of controllers and the Xbox and Xbox 360 controllers have a *rumble* feature. This allows the controller to vibrate in the player's hands, simulating the turbulence or impacts that the character in the game world might be experiencing. Vibrations are usually

produced by one or more motors, each of which rotates a slightly unbalanced weight at various speeds. The game can turn these motors on and off, and control their speeds to produce different tactile effects in the player's hands.

#### 9.4.2 Force-Feedback

Force-feedback is a technique in which an actuator on the HID is driven by a motor in order to slightly resist the motion the human operator is trying to impart to it. It is common in arcade driving games, where the steering wheel resists the player's attempt to turn it, simulating difficult driving conditions or tight turns. As with rumble, the game software can typically turn the motor(s) on and off, and can also control the strength and direction of the forces applied to the actuator.

#### 9.4.3 Audio

Audio is usually a stand-alone engine system. However, some HIDs provide outputs that can be utilized by the audio system. For example, the Wiimote contains a small, low-quality speaker. The Xbox 360, Xbox One and DualShock 4 controllers have a headphone jack and can be used just like any USB audio device for both output (speakers) and input (microphone). One common use of USB headsets is for multiplayer games, in which human players can communicate with one another via a voice over IP (VoIP) connection.

#### 9.4.4 Other Inputs and Outputs

Human interface devices may of course support many other kinds of inputs and outputs. On some older consoles like the Sega Dreamcast, the memory card slots were located on the game pad. The Xbox 360 game pad, the Sixaxis and DualShock 3, and the Wiimote all have four LEDs which can be illuminated by game software if desired. The color of the light bar on the front of the DualShock 4 controller can be controlled by game software. And of course specialized devices like musical instruments, dance pads, etc. have their own particular kinds of inputs and outputs.

Innovation is actively taking place in the field of human interfaces. Some of the most interesting areas today are gestural interfaces and thought-controlled devices. We can certainly expect more innovation from console and HID manufacturers in years to come.

### 9.5 Game Engine HID Systems

Most game engines don't use "raw" HID inputs directly. The data is usually massaged in various ways to ensure that the inputs coming from the HID

translate into smooth, pleasing, intuitive behaviors in-game. In addition, most engines introduce at least one additional level of indirection between the HID and the game in order to abstract HID inputs in various ways. For example, a button-mapping table might be used to translate raw button inputs into logical game actions, so that human players can reassign the buttons' functions as they see fit. In this section, we'll outline the typical requirements of a game engine HID system and then explore each one in some depth.

### 9.5.1 Typical Requirements

A game engine's HID system usually provides some or all of the following features:

- dead zones,
- analog signal filtering,
- event detection (e.g., button up, button down),
- detection of button *sequences* and multibutton combinations (known as *chords*),
- gesture detection,
- management of multiple HIDs for multiple players,
- multiplatform HID support,
- controller input remapping,
- context-sensitive inputs, and
- the ability to temporarily disable certain inputs.

### 9.5.2 Dead Zone

A joystick, thumb stick, shoulder trigger, or any other analog axis produces input values that range between a predefined minimum and maximum value, which we'll call  $I_{\min}$  and  $I_{\max}$ . When the control is not being touched, we would expect it to produce a steady and clear "undisturbed" value, which we'll call  $I_0$ . The undisturbed value is usually numerically equal to zero, and it either lies halfway between  $I_{\min}$  and  $I_{\max}$  for a centered, two-way control like a joystick axis, or it coincides with  $I_{\min}$  for a one-way control like a trigger.

Unfortunately, because HIDs are analog devices by nature, the voltage produced by the device is noisy, and the actual inputs we observe may fluctuate slightly around  $I_0$ . The most common solution to this problem is to introduce a small *dead zone* around  $I_0$ . The dead zone might be defined as  $[I_0 - \delta, I_0 + \delta]$  for a joy stick, or  $[I_0, I_0 + \delta]$  for a trigger. Any input values that are within the dead zone are simply clamped to  $I_0$ . The dead zone must be wide enough to

account for the noisiest inputs generated by an undisturbed control, but small enough not to interfere with the player's sense of the HID's responsiveness.

### 9.5.3 Analog Signal Filtering

Signal noise is a problem even when the controls are not within their dead zones. This noise can sometimes cause the in-game behaviors controlled by the HID to appear jerky or unnatural. For this reason, many games *filter* the raw inputs coming from the HID. A noise signal is usually of a high frequency relative to the signal produced by the human player. Therefore, one solution is to pass the raw input data through a simple *low-pass filter*, prior to it being used by the game.

A discrete first-order low-pass filter can be implemented by combining the current unfiltered input value with last frame's filtered input. If we denote the sequence of unfiltered inputs by the time-varying function  $u(t)$  and the filtered inputs by  $f(t)$ , where  $t$  denotes time, then we can write

$$f(t) = (1 - a)f(t - \Delta t) + au(t), \quad (9.1)$$

where the parameter  $a$  is determined by the frame duration  $\Delta t$  and a filtering constant  $RC$  (which is just the product of the resistance and the capacitance in a traditional analog RC low-pass filter circuit):

$$a = \frac{\Delta t}{RC + \Delta t}. \quad (9.2)$$

This can be implemented trivially in C or C++ as follows, where it is assumed the calling code will keep track of the last frame's filtered input for use on the subsequent frame. For more information, see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Low-pass\\_filter](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Low-pass_filter).

```

F32 lowPassFilter(F32 unfilteredInput,
                    F32 lastFramesFilteredInput,
                    F32 rc, F32 dt)
{
    F32 a = dt / (rc + dt);

    return (1 - a) * lastFramesFilteredInput
           + a * unfilteredInput;
}

```

Another way to filter HID input data is to calculate a simple moving average. For example, if we wish to average the input data over a 3/30 second (3 frame) interval, we simply store the raw input values in a 3-element circular

buffer. The filtered input value is then the sum of the values in this array at any moment, divided by 3. There are a few minor details to account for when implementing such a filter. For example, we need to properly handle the first two frames of input, during which the 3-element array has not yet been filled with valid data. However, the implementation is not particularly complicated. The code below shows one way to properly implement an  $N$ -element moving average.

```
template< typename TYPE, int SIZE >
class MovingAverage
{
    TYPE  m_samples[SIZE];
    TYPE  m_sum;
    U32   m_curSample;
    U32   m_sampleCount;

public:
    MovingAverage() :
        m_sum(static_cast<TYPE>(0)),
        m_curSample(0),
        m_sampleCount(0)
    {
    }

    void addSample(TYPE data)
    {
        if (m_sampleCount == SIZE)
        {
            m_sum -= m_samples[m_curSample];
        }
        else
        {
            m_sampleCount++;
        }

        m_samples[m_curSample] = data;
        m_sum += data;
        m_curSample++;
    }

    if (m_curSample >= SIZE)
    {
        m_curSample = 0;
    }
}

F32 getCurrentAverage() const
{
```

```
    if (m_sampleCount != 0)
    {
        return static_cast<F32>(m_sum)
            / static_cast<F32>(m_sampleCount);
    }
    return 0.0f;
}
};
```

## 9.5.4 Detecting Input Events

The low-level HID interface typically provides the game with the current states of the device's various inputs. However, games are often interested in detecting *events*, such as changes in state, rather than just inspecting the current state each frame. The most common HID events are probably button-down (pressed) and button-up (released), but of course we can detect other kinds of events as well.

### 9.5.4.1 Button Up and Button Down

Let's assume for the moment that our buttons' input bits are 0 when not pressed and 1 when pressed. The easiest way to detect a change in button state is to keep track of the buttons' state bits as observed last frame and compare them to the state bits observed this frame. If they differ, we know an event occurred. The current state of each button tells us whether the event is a button-up or a button-down.

We can use simple bit-wise operators to detect button-down and button-up events. Given a 32-bit word `buttonStates` containing the current state bits of up to 32 buttons, we want to generate two new 32-bit words: one for button-down events, which we'll call `buttonDowns`, and one for button-up events, which we'll call `buttonUps`. In both cases, the bit corresponding to each button will be 0 if the event has not occurred this frame and 1 if it has. To implement this, we also need the last frame's button states, `prevButtonStates`.

The exclusive OR (XOR) operator produces a 0 if its two inputs are identical and a 1 if they differ. So if we apply the XOR operator to the previous and current button state words, we'll get 1's only for buttons whose states have changed between the last frame and this frame. To determine whether the event is a button-up or a button-down, we need to look at the current state of each button. Any button whose state has changed that is currently down generates a button-down event, and vice versa for button-up events. The following code applies these ideas in order to generate our two button event words:

```
class ButtonState
{
    U32 m_buttonStates;           // current frame's button
                                  // states
    U32 m_prevButtonStates;      // previous frame's states
    U32 m_buttonDowns;           // 1 = button pressed this
                                  // frame
    U32 m_buttonUps;            // 1 = button released this
                                  // frame

    void DetectButtonUpDownEvents()
    {
        // Assuming that m_buttonStates and
        // m_prevButtonStates are valid, generate
        // m_buttonDowns and m_buttonUps.

        // First determine which bits have changed via
        // XOR.
        U32 buttonChanges = m_buttonStates
                            ^
                            m_prevButtonStates;

        // Now use AND to mask off only the bits that
        // are DOWN.
        m_buttonDowns = buttonChanges & m_buttonStates;

        // Use AND-NOT to mask off only the bits that
        // are UP.
        m_buttonUps = buttonChanges & (~m_buttonStates);
    }

    // ...
};
```

#### 9.5.4.2 Chords

A *chord* is a group of buttons that, when pressed at the same time, produce a unique behavior in the game. Here are a few examples:

- *Super Mario Galaxy*'s start-up screen requires you to press the A and B buttons on the Wiimote together in order to start a new game.
- Pressing the 1 and 2 buttons on the Wiimote at the same time puts it into Bluetooth discovery mode (no matter what game you're playing).

- The “grapple” move in many fighting games is triggered by a two-button combination.
- For development purposes, holding down both the left and right triggers on the DualShock 3 in *Uncharted* allows the player character to fly anywhere in the game world, with collisions turned off. (Sorry, this doesn’t work in the shipping game!) Many games have a cheat like this to make development easier. (It may or may not be triggered by a chord, of course.) It is called *no-clip mode* in the Quake engine, because the character’s collision volume is not *clipped* to the valid playable area of the world. Other engines use different terminology.

Detecting chords is quite simple in principle: We merely watch the states of two or more buttons and only perform the requested operation when *all* of them are down.

There are some subtleties to account for, however. For one thing, if the chord includes a button or buttons that have other purposes in the game, we must take care not to perform *both* the actions of the individual buttons and the action of chord when it is pressed. This is usually done by including a check that the other buttons in the chord are *not* down when detecting the individual button presses.

Another fly in the ointment is that humans aren’t perfect, and they often press one or more of the buttons in the chord slightly earlier than the rest. So our chord-detection code must be robust to the possibility that we’ll observe one or more individual buttons on frame  $i$  and the rest of the chord on frame  $i + 1$  (or even multiple frames later). There are a number of ways to handle this:

- You can design your button inputs such that a chord always does the actions of the individual buttons *plus* some additional action. For example, if pressing L1 fires the primary weapon and L2 lobs a grenade, perhaps the L1 + L2 chord could fire the primary weapon, lob a grenade, *and* send out an energy wave that doubles the damage done by these weapons. That way, whether or not the individual buttons are detected before the chord or not, the behavior will be identical from the point of view of the player.
- You can introduce a delay between when an individual button-down event is seen and when it “counts” as a valid game event. During the delay period (say 2 or 3 frames), if a chord is detected, then it takes precedence over the individual button-down events. This gives the human player some leeway in performing the chord.
- You can detect the chord when the buttons are pressed, but wait to trigger the effect until the buttons are released again.

- You can begin the single-button move immediately and allow it to be preempted by the chord move.

#### 9.5.4.3 Sequences and Gesture Detection

The idea of introducing a delay between when a button actually goes down and when it really “counts” as down is a special case of *gesture detection*. A gesture is a sequence of actions performed via a HID by the human player over a period of time. For example, in a fighting game or brawler, we might want to detect a *sequence* of button presses, such as A-B-A. We can extend this idea to non-button inputs as well. For example, A-B-A-Left-Right-Left, where the latter three actions are side-to-side motions of one of the thumb sticks on the game pad. Usually a sequence or gesture is only considered to be valid if it is performed within some maximum time frame. So a rapid A-B-A within a quarter of a second might “count,” but a slow A-B-A performed over a second or two might not.

Gesture detection is generally implemented by keeping a brief history of the HID actions performed by the player. When the first component of the gesture is detected, it is stored in the history buffer, along with a time stamp indicating when it occurred. As each subsequent component is detected, the time between it and the previous component is checked. If it is within the allowable time window, it too is added to the history buffer. If the entire sequence is completed within the allotted time (i.e., the history buffer is filled), an event is generated telling the rest of the game engine that the gesture has occurred. However, if any non-valid intervening inputs are detected, or if any component of the gesture occurs outside of its valid time window, the entire history buffer is reset and the player must start the gesture over again.

Let’s look at three concrete examples, so we can really understand how this works.

##### *Rapid Button Tapping*

Many games require the user to tap a button rapidly in order to perform an action. The frequency of the button presses may or may not translate into some quantity in the game, such as the speed with which the player character runs or performs some other action. The frequency is usually also used to define the validity of the gesture—if the frequency drops below some minimum value, the gesture is no longer considered valid.

We can detect the frequency of a button press by simply keeping track of the last time we saw a button-down event for the button in question. We’ll call this  $T_{\text{last}}$ . The frequency  $f$  is then just the inverse of the time interval between

presses  $\Delta T = T_{\text{cur}} - T_{\text{last}}$  and  $f = 1/\Delta T$ . Every time we detect a new button-down event, we calculate a new frequency  $f$ . To implement a minimum valid frequency, we simply check  $f$  against the minimum frequency  $f_{\min}$  (or we can just check  $\Delta T$  against the maximum period  $\Delta T_{\max} = 1/f_{\min}$  directly). If this threshold is satisfied, we update the value of  $T_{\text{last}}$ , and the gesture is considered to be on-going. If the threshold is not satisfied, we simply don't update  $T_{\text{last}}$ . The gesture will be considered invalid until a new pair of rapid-enough button-down events occurs. This is illustrated by the following pseudocode:

```

class ButtonTapDetector
{
    U32  m_buttonMask; // which button to observe (bit
                        // mask)
    F32  m_dtMax;     // max allowed time between
                        // presses
    F32  m_tLast;     // last button-down event, in
                        // seconds

public:

    // Construct an object that detects rapid tapping of
    // the given button (identified by an index).
    ButtonTapDetector(U32 buttonId, F32 dtMax) :
        m_buttonMask(1U << buttonId),
        m_dtMax(dtMax),
        m_tLast(.currentTimeMillis() - dtMax) // start out
                                            // invalid
    {
    }

    // Call this at any time to query whether or not
    // the gesture is currently being performed.
    bool IsGestureValid() const
    {
        F32 t = .currentTimeMillis();
        F32 dt = t - m_tLast;
        return (dt < m_dtMax);
    }

    // Call this once per frame.
    void Update()
    {
        if (ButtonsJustWentDown(m_buttonMask))
        {
            m_tLast = currentTime();
        }
    }
}

```

```
    }
};
```

In the above code excerpt, we assume that each button is identified by a unique id. The id is really just an index, ranging from 0 to  $N - 1$  (where  $N$  is the number of buttons on the HID in question). We convert the button id to a bitmask by shifting an unsigned 1 bit to the left by an amount equaling the button's index ( $1U << \text{buttonId}$ ). The function `ButtonsJustWentDown()` returns a nonzero value if *any one* of the buttons specified by the given bitmask just went down this frame. Here, we're only checking for a single button-down event, but we can and will use this same function later to check for multiple simultaneous button-down events.

### *Multibutton Sequence*

Let's say we want to detect the sequence A-B-A, performed within at most one second. We can detect this button sequence as follows: We maintain a variable that tracks which button in the sequence we're currently looking for. If we define the sequence with an array of button ids (e.g., `aButtons[3] = {A, B, A}`), then our variable is just an index  $i$  into this array. It starts out initialized to the first button in the sequence,  $i = 0$ . We also maintain a start time for the entire sequence,  $T_{\text{start}}$ , much as we did in the rapid button-pressing example.

The logic goes like this: Whenever we see a button-down event that matches the button we're currently looking for, we check its time stamp against the start time of the entire sequence,  $T_{\text{start}}$ . If it occurred within the valid time window, we advance the current button to the next button in the sequence; for the first button in the sequence only ( $i = 0$ ), we also update  $T_{\text{start}}$ . If we see a button-down event that doesn't match the next button in the sequence, or if the time delta has grown too large, we reset the button index  $i$  back to the beginning of the sequence and set  $T_{\text{start}}$  to some invalid value (such as 0). This is illustrated by the code below.

```
class ButtonSequenceDetector
{
    U32* m_aButtonIds;    // sequence of buttons to watch for
    U32  m_buttonCount;   // number of buttons in sequence
    F32  m_dtMax;         // max time for entire sequence
    U32  m_iButton;        // next button to watch for in seq.
    F32  m_tStart;         // start time of sequence, in
                           // seconds
```

```
public:

    // Construct an object that detects the given button
    // sequence. When the sequence is successfully
    // detected, the given event is broadcast so that the
    // rest of the game can respond in an appropriate way.

    ButtonSequenceDetector(U32* aButtonIds,
                           U32 buttonCount,
                           F32 dtMax,
                           EventId eventIdToSend) :
        m_aButtonIds(aButtonIds),
        m_buttonCount(buttonCount),
        m_dtMax(dtMax),
        m_eventId(eventIdToSend), // event to send when
                                  // complete
        m_iButton(0),           // start of sequence
        m_tStart(0)             // initial value
                                  // irrelevant
    {
    }

    // Call this once per frame.
    void Update()
    {
        ASSERT(m_iButton < m_buttonCount);

        // Determine which button we're expecting next, as
        // a bitmask (shift a 1 up to the correct bit
        // index).

        U32 buttonMask = (1U << m_aButtonId[m_iButton]);

        // If any button OTHER than the expected button
        // just went down, invalidate the sequence. (Use
        // the bitwise NOT operator to check for all other
        // buttons.)

        if (ButtonsJustWentDown(~buttonMask))
        {
            m_iButton = 0; // reset
        }

        // Otherwise, if the expected button just went
        // down, check dt and update our state appropriately.

        else if (ButtonsJustWentDown(buttonMask))
        {
```

```

    if (m_iButton == 0)
    {
        // This is the first button in the
        // sequence.
        m_tStart = CurrentTime();
        m_iButton++; // advance to next button
    }
    else
    {
        F32 dt = CurrentTime() - m_tStart;

        if (dt < m_dtMax)
        {
            // Sequence is still valid.

            m_iButton++; // advance to next button

            // Is the sequence complete?
            if (m_iButton == m_buttonCount)
            {
                BroadcastEvent(m_eventId);
                m_iButton = 0; // reset
            }
            else
            {
                // Sorry, not fast enough.
                m_iButton = 0; // reset
            }
        }
    }
}
};
```

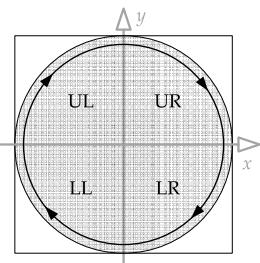


Figure 9.14. Detecting circular rotations of the stick by dividing the 2D range of stick inputs into quadrants.

### *Thumb Stick Rotation*

As an example of a more complex gesture, let's see how we might detect when the player is rotating the left thumb stick in a clockwise circle. We can detect this quite easily by dividing the two-dimensional range of possible stick positions into quadrants, as shown in Figure 9.14. In a clockwise rotation, the stick passes through the upper-left quadrant, then the upper-right, then the lower-right and finally the lower-left. We can treat each of these cases like a button press and detect a full rotation with a slightly modified version of the sequence detection code shown above. We'll leave this one as an exercise for the reader. Try it!

### 9.5.5 Managing Multiple HIDs for Multiple Players

Most game machines allow two or more HIDs to be attached for multiplayer games. The engine must keep track of which devices are currently attached and route each one's inputs to the appropriate player in the game. This implies that we need some way of mapping controllers to players. This might be as simple as a one-to-one mapping between controller index and player index, or it might be something more sophisticated, such as assigning controllers to players at the time the user hits the Start button.

Even in a single-player game with only one HID, the engine needs to be robust to various exceptional conditions, such as the controller being accidentally unplugged or running out of batteries. When a controller's connection is lost, most games pause gameplay, display a message and wait for the controller to be reconnected. Some multiplayer games suspend or temporarily remove the avatar corresponding to a removed controller, but allow the other players to continue playing the game; the removed/suspended avatar might reactivate when the controller is reconnected.

On systems with battery-operated HIDs, the game or the operating system is responsible for detecting low-battery conditions. In response, the player is usually warned in some way, for example via an unobtrusive on-screen message and/or a sound effect.

### 9.5.6 Cross-Platform HID Systems

Many game engines are cross-platform. One way to handle HID inputs and outputs in such an engine would be to sprinkle conditional compilation directives all over the code, wherever interactions with the HID take place, as shown below. This is clearly not an ideal solution, but it does work.

```
#if TARGET_XBOX360
if (ButtonsJustWentDown(XB360_BUTTONMASK_A))
```

```
#elif TARGET_PS3
if (ButtonsJustWentDown(PS3_BUTTONMASK_TRIANGLE))
#endif
if (ButtonsJustWentDown(WII_BUTTONMASK_A))
#endif
{
    // do something...
}
```

A better solution is to provide some kind of hardware abstraction layer, thereby insulating the game code from hardware-specific details.

If we're lucky, we can abstract most of the differences between the HIDs on the different platforms by a judicious choice of abstract button and axis ids. For example, if our game is to ship on Xbox 360 and PS3, the layout of the controls (buttons, axes and triggers) on these two joypads are almost identical. The controls have different ids on each platform, but we can come up with generic control ids that cover both types of joypad quite easily. For example:

```
enum AbstractControlIndex
{
    // Start and back buttons
    AINDEX_START,           // Xbox 360 Start, PS3 Start
    AINDEX_BACK_SELECT,     // Xbox 360 Back, PS3 Select

    // Left D-pad
    AINDEX_LPAD_DOWN,
    AINDEX_LPAD_UP,
    AINDEX_LPAD_LEFT,
    AINDEX_LPAD_RIGHT,

    // Right "pad" of four buttons
    AINDEX_RPAD_DOWN,       // Xbox 360 A, PS3 X
    AINDEX_RPAD_UP,         // Xbox 360 Y, PS3 Triangle
    AINDEX_RPAD_LEFT,       // Xbox 360 X, PS3 Square
    AINDEX_RPAD_RIGHT,      // Xbox 360 B, PS3 Circle

    // Left and right thumb stick buttons
    AINDEX_LSTICK_BUTTON,   // Xbox 360 LThumb, PS3 L3,
                           // Xbox white
    AINDEX_RSTICK_BUTTON,   // Xbox 360 RThumb, PS3 R3,
                           // Xbox black

    // Left and right shoulder buttons
    AINDEX_LSHOULDER,        // Xbox 360 L shoulder, PS3 L1
    AINDEX_RSHOULDER,        // Xbox 360 R shoulder, PS3 R1
```

```
// Left thumb stick axes
AINDEX_LSTICK_X,
AINDEX_LSTICK_Y,

// Right thumb stick axes
AINDEX_RSTICK_X,
AINDEX_RSTICK_Y,

// Left and right trigger axes
AINDEX_LTRIGGER,      // Xbox 360 -Z, PS3 L2
AINDEX_RTRIGGER,      // Xbox 360 +Z, PS3 R2
};
```

Our abstraction layer can translate between the raw control ids on the current target hardware into our abstract control indices. For example, whenever we read the state of the buttons into a 32-bit word, we can perform a bit-swizzling operation that rearranges the bits into the proper order to correspond to our abstract indices. Analog inputs can likewise be shuffled around into the proper order.

In performing the mapping between physical and abstract controls, we'll sometimes need to get a bit clever. For example, on the Xbox, the left and right triggers act as a single axis, producing negative values when the left trigger is pressed, zero when neither is trigger is pressed, and positive values when the right trigger is pressed. To match the behavior of the PlayStation's DualShock controller, we might want to separate this axis into two distinct axes on the Xbox, scaling the values appropriately so the range of valid values is the same on all platforms.

This is certainly not the only way to handle HID I/O in a multiplatform engine. We might want to take a more functional approach, for example, by naming our abstract controls according to their function in the game, rather than their physical locations on the joypad. We might introduce higher-level functions that detect abstract gestures, with custom detection code on each platform, or we might just bite the bullet and write platform-specific versions of all of the game code that requires HID I/O. The possibilities are numerous, but virtually all cross-platform game engines insulate the game from hardware details in *some* manner.

### 9.5.7 Input Remapping

Many games allow the player some degree of choice with regard to the functionality of the various controls on the physical HID. A common option is the sense of the vertical axis of the right thumb stick for camera control in a console game. Some folks like to push forward on the stick to angle the camera

up, while others like an inverted control scheme, where pulling back on the stick angles the camera up (much like an airplane control stick). Other games allow the player to select between two or more predefined button mappings. Some PC games allow the user full control over the functions of individual keys on the keyboard, the mouse buttons and the mouse wheel, plus a choice between various control schemes for the two mouse axes.

To implement this, we turn to a favorite saying of an old professor of mine, Professor Jay Black of the University of Waterloo, “Every problem in computer science can be solved with a level of indirection.” We assign each function in the game a unique id and then provide a simple table, which maps each physical or abstract control index to a logical function in the game. Whenever the game wishes to determine whether a particular logical game function should be activated, it looks up the corresponding abstract or physical control id in the table and then reads the state of that control. To change the mapping, we can either swap out the entire table wholesale, or we can allow the user to edit individual entries in the table.

We’re glossing over a few details here. For one thing, different controls produce different kinds of inputs. Analog axes may produce values ranging from  $-32,768$  to  $32,767$ , or from  $0$  to  $255$ , or some other range. The states of all the digital buttons on a HID are usually packed into a single machine word. Therefore, we must be careful to only permit control mappings that make sense. We cannot use a button as the control for a logical game function that requires an axis, for example. One way around this problem is to normalize all of the inputs. For example, we could re-scale the inputs from all analog axes and buttons into the range  $[0, 1]$ . This isn’t quite as helpful as you might at first think, because some axes are inherently bidirectional (like a joy stick) while others are unidirectional (like a trigger). But, if we group our controls into a few classes, we can normalize the inputs within those classes and permit remapping only within compatible classes. A reasonable set of classes for a standard console joypad and their normalized input values might be:

- *Digital buttons.* States are packed into a 32-bit word, one bit per button.
- *Unidirectional absolute axes* (e.g., triggers, analog buttons). Produce floating-point input values in the range  $[0, 1]$ .
- *Bidirectional absolute axes* (e.g., joy sticks). Produce floating-point input values in the range  $[-1, 1]$ .
- *Relative axes* (e.g., mouse axes, wheels, track balls). Produce floating-point input values in the range  $[-1, 1]$ , where  $\pm 1$  represents the maximum relative offset possible within a single game frame (i.e., during a period of  $1/30$  or  $1/60$  of a second).

### 9.5.8 Context-Sensitive Controls

In many games, a single physical control can have different functions, depending on context. A simple example is the ubiquitous “use” button. If pressed while standing in front of a door, the “use” button might cause the character to open the door. If it is pressed while standing near an object, it might cause the player character to pick up the object and so on. Another common example is a modal control scheme. When the player is walking around, the controls are used to navigate and control the camera. When the player is riding a vehicle, the controls are used to steer the vehicle, and the camera controls might be different as well.

Context-sensitive controls are reasonably straightforward to implement via a state machine. Depending on what state we’re in, a particular HID control may have a different purpose. The tricky part is deciding what state to be in. For example, when the context-sensitive “use” button is pressed, the player might be standing at a point equidistant between a weapon and a health pack, facing the center point between them. Which object do we use in this case? Some games implement a priority system to break ties like this. Perhaps the weapon has a higher weight than the health pack, so it would “win” in this example. Implementing context-sensitive controls isn’t rocket science, but it invariably requires lots of trial and error to get it feeling and behaving just right. Plan on lots of iteration and focus testing!

Another related concept is that of *control ownership*. Certain controls on the HID might be “owned” by different parts of the game. For example, some inputs are for player control, some for camera control and still others are for use by the game’s wrapper and menu system (pausing the game, and so on). Some game engines introduce the concept of a logical device, which is composed of only a subset of the inputs on the physical device. One logical device might be used for player control, while another is used by the camera system, and another by the menu system.

### 9.5.9 Disabling Inputs

In most games, it is sometimes necessary to disallow the player from controlling his or her character. For example, when the player character is involved in an in-game cinematic, we might want to disable all player controls temporarily; or when the player is walking through a narrow doorway, we might want to temporarily disable free camera rotation.

One rather heavy-handed approach is to use a bitmask to disable individual controls on the input device itself. Whenever the control is read, the disable mask is checked, and if the corresponding bit is set, a neutral or zero value is

returned instead of the actual value read from the device. We must be particularly cautious when disabling controls, however. If we forget to reset the disable mask, the game can get itself into a state where the player loses all control forever and must restart the game. It's important to check our logic carefully, and it's also a good idea to put in some fail-safe mechanisms to ensure that the disable mask is cleared at certain key times, such as whenever the player dies and re-spawns.

Disabling a HID input masks it for all possible clients, which can be overly limiting. A better approach is probably to put the logic for disabling specific player actions or camera behaviors directly into the player or camera code itself. That way, if the camera decides to ignore the deflection of the right thumb stick, for example, other game engine systems still have the freedom to read the state of that stick for other purposes.

## 9.6 Human Interface Devices in Practice

Correct and smooth handling of human interface devices is an important part of any good game. Conceptually speaking, HIDs may seem quite straightforward. However, there can be quite a few “gotchas” to deal with, including variations between different physical input devices, proper implementation of low-pass filtering, bug-free handling of control scheme mappings, achieving just the right “feel” in your joypad rumble, limitations imposed by console manufacturers via their technical requirements checklists (TRCs), and the list goes on. A game team should expect to devote a nontrivial amount of time and engineering bandwidth to a careful and complete implementation of the human interface device system. This is extremely important because the HID system forms the underpinnings of your game’s most precious resource—its player mechanics.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 10

## Tools for Debugging and Development

Developing game software is a complex, intricate, math-intensive and error-prone business. So it should be no surprise that virtually every professional game team builds a suite of tools for themselves, in order to make the game development process easier and less error-prone. In this chapter, we'll take a look at the development and debugging tools most often found in professional-grade game engines.

### 10.1 Logging and Tracing

Remember when you wrote your first program in BASIC or Pascal? (OK, maybe you don't. If you're significantly younger than me—and there's a pretty good chance of that—you probably wrote your first program in Java, or maybe Python or Lua.) In any case, you probably remember how you debugged your programs back then. You know, back when you thought a *debugger* was one of those glowing blue insect zapper things? You probably used *print statements* to dump out the internal state of your program. C/C++ programmers call this *printf debugging* (after the C standard library function, `printf()`).

It turns out that *printf debugging* is still a perfectly valid thing to do—even if you know that a debugger isn't a device for frying hapless insects at

night. Especially in real-time programming, it can be difficult to trace certain kinds of bugs using breakpoints and watch windows. Some bugs are timing-dependent: they only happen when the program is running at full speed. Other bugs are caused by a complex sequence of events too long and intricate to trace manually one-by-one. In these situations, the most powerful debugging tool is often a sequence of print statements.

Every game platform has some kind of console or teletype (TTY) output device. Here are some examples:

- In a console application written in C/C++, running under Linux or Win32, you can produce output in the console by printing to `stdout` or `stderr` via `printf()`, `fprintf()` or the C++ standard library's `iostream` interface.
- Unfortunately, `printf()` and `iostream` don't work if your game is built as a windowed application under Win32, because there's no console in which to display the output. However, if you're running under the Visual Studio debugger, it provides a debug console to which you can print via the Win32 function `OutputDebugString()`.
- On the PlayStation 3 and PlayStation 4, an application known as the Target Manager (or PlayStation Neighborhood on the PS4) runs on your PC and allows you to launch programs on the console. The Target Manager includes a set of TTY output windows to which messages can be printed by the game engine.

So printing out information for debugging purposes is almost always as easy as adding calls to `printf()` throughout your code. However, most game engines go a bit farther than this. In the following sections, we'll investigate the kinds of printing facilities most game engines provide.

### 10.1.1 Formatted Output with `OutputDebugString()`

The Windows SDK function `OutputDebugString()` is great for printing debugging information to Visual Studio's Debug Output window. However, unlike `printf()`, `OutputDebugString()` does not support *formatted* output—it can only print raw strings in the form of arrays. For this reason, most Windows game engines wrap it in a custom function, like this:

```
#include <stdio.h>      // for va_list et al

#ifndef WIN32_LEAN_AND_MEAN
#define WIN32_LEAN_AND_MEAN 1
#endif
#include <windows.h>    // for OutputDebugString()
```

```
int VDebugPrintF(const char* format, va_list argList)
{
    const U32 MAX_CHARS = 1024;
    static char s_buffer[MAX_CHARS];

    int charsWritten
        = vsnprintf(s_buffer, MAX_CHARS, format, argList);

    // Now that we have a formatted string, call the
    // Win32 API.
    OutputDebugString(s_buffer);

    return charsWritten;
}

int DebugPrintF(const char* format, ...)
{
    va_list argList;
    va_start(argList, format);

    int charsWritten = VDebugPrintF(format, argList);

    va_end(argList);
    return charsWritten;
}
```

Notice that two functions are implemented: `DebugPrintF()` takes a variable-length argument list (specified via the ellipsis, `...`), while `VDebugPrintF()` takes a `va_list` argument. This is done so that programmers can build additional printing functions in terms of `VDebugPrintF()`. (It's impossible to pass ellipses from one function to another, but it *is* possible to pass `va_lists` around.)

## 10.1.2 Verbosity

Once you've gone to the trouble of adding a bunch of print statements to your code in strategically chosen locations, it's nice to be able to leave them there, in case they're needed again later. To permit this, most engines provide some kind of mechanism for controlling the level of *verbosity* via the command line, or dynamically at runtime. When the verbosity level is at its minimum value (usually zero), only critical error messages are printed. When the verbosity is higher, more of the print statements embedded in the code start to contribute to the output.

The simplest way to implement this is to store the current verbosity level in a global integer variable, perhaps called `g_verbosity`. We then provide a `VerboseDebugPrintF()` function whose first argument is the verbosity level at or above which the message will be printed. This function could be implemented as follows:

```
int g_verbosity = 0;

void VerboseDebugPrintF(int verbosity,
                        const char* format, ...)
{
    // Only print when the global verbosity level is
    // high enough.
    if (g_verbosity >= verbosity)
    {
        va_list argList;
        va_start(argList, format);

        VDebugPrintF(format, argList);

        va_end(argList);
    }
}
```

### 10.1.3 Channels

It's also extremely useful to be able to categorize your debug output into *channels*. One channel might contain messages from the animation system, while another might be used to print messages from the physics system, for example.

On some platforms, like the PlayStation 3, debug output can be directed to one of 14 distinct TTY windows. In addition, messages are mirrored to a special TTY window that contains the output from all of the other 14 windows. This makes it very easy for a developer to focus in on only the messages he or she wants to see. When working on an animation problem, one can simply flip to the animation TTY and ignore all the other output. When working on a general problem of unknown origin, the "all" TTY can be consulted for clues.

Other platforms like Windows provide only a single debug output console. However, even on these systems it can be helpful to divide your output into channels. The output from each channel might be assigned a different color. You might also implement *filters*, which can be turned on and off at runtime, and restrict output to only a specified channel or set of channels. In this model, if a developer is debugging an animation-related problem, for example, he or she can simply filter out all of the channels except the animation channel.

A channel-based debug output system can be implemented quite easily by adding an additional channel argument to our debug printing function. Channels might be numbered, or better, assigned symbolic values via a C/C++ enum declaration. Or channels might be named using a string or hashed string id. The printing function can simply consult the list of active channels and only print the message if the specified channel is among them.

If you don't have more than 32 or 64 channels, it can be helpful to identify the channels via a 32- or 64-bit mask. This makes implementing a channel filter as easy as specifying a single integer. When a bit in the mask is 1, the corresponding channel is active; when the bit is 0, the channel is muted.

#### 10.1.3.1 Using Redis to Manage TTY Channels

The developers at Naughty Dog use a web-based interface called *Connector* as their window into the various streams of debugging information that are emitted by the game engine at runtime. The game spits out its debug text into various named channels, each associated with a different engine system (animation, rendering, AI, sound, etc.) These data streams are collected by a lightweight Redis key-value store (see <http://redis.io> for more information on Redis). The Connector interface allows users to view and filter this Redis data easily from any web browser.

#### 10.1.4 Mirroring Output to a File

It's a good idea to mirror all debug output to one or more log files (e.g., one file per channel). This permits problems to be diagnosed after the fact. Ideally the log file(s) should contain *all* of the debug output, independent of the current verbosity level and active channels mask. This allows *unexpected* problems to be caught and tracked down by simply inspecting the most-recent log files.

You may want to consider *flushing* your log file(s) after every call to your debug output function to ensure that if the game crashes, the log file(s) won't be missing the last buffer-full of output. The last data printed are usually the most useful for determining the cause of a crash, so we want to be sure that the log file always contains the most up-to-date output. Of course, flushing the output buffer can be expensive. So you should only flush buffers after every debug output call if either (a) you are not doing a lot of logging, or (b) you discover that it is truly necessary on your particular platform. If flushing is deemed to be necessary, you can always provide an engine configuration option to turn it on and off.

### 10.1.5 Crash Reports

Some game engines produce special text output and/or log files when the game crashes. In most operating systems, a top-level exception handler can be installed that will catch most crashes. In this function, you could print out all sorts of useful information. You could even consider emailing the crash report to the entire programming team. This can be incredibly enlightening for the programmers: When they see just how often the art and design teams are crashing, they may discover a renewed sense of urgency in their debugging tasks!

Here are just a few examples of the kinds of information you can include in a crash report:

- Current level(s) being played at the time of the crash.
- World-space location of the player character when the crash occurred.
- Animation/action state of the player when the game crashed.
- Gameplay script(s) that were running at the time of the crash. (This can be especially helpful if the script is the cause of the crash!)
- Stack trace. Most operating systems provide a mechanism for walking the call stack (although they are nonstandard and highly platform specific). With such a facility, you can print out the symbolic names of all non-inline functions on the stack at the time the crash occurred.
- State of all memory allocators in the engine (amount of memory free, degree of fragmentation, etc.). This kind of data can be helpful when bugs are caused by low-memory conditions, for example.
- Any other information you think might be relevant when tracking down the cause of a crash.
- A screenshot of the game at the moment it crashed.

## 10.2 Debug Drawing Facilities

Modern interactive games are driven almost entirely by math. We use math to position and orient objects in the game world, move them around, test for collisions, and cast rays to determine lines of sight, and of course we use matrix multiplication to transform objects from object space to world space and eventually into screen space for rendering. Almost all modern games are three-dimensional, but even in a two-dimensional game it can be very difficult to mentally visualize the results of all these mathematical calculations. For this reason, most good game engines provide an API for drawing colored lines,

simple shapes and 3D text. We call this a *debug drawing* facility, because the lines, shapes and text that are drawn with it are intended for visualization during development and debugging and are removed prior to shipping the game.

A *debug drawing* API can save you huge amounts of time. For example, if you are trying to figure out why your projectiles are not hitting the enemy characters, which is easier? Deciphering a bunch of numbers in the debugger? Or drawing a line showing the trajectory of the projectile in three dimensions within your game? With a debug drawing API, logical and mathematical errors become immediately obvious. One might say that a picture is worth a thousand minutes of debugging.

Here are some examples of debug drawing in action within Naughty Dog's engine. The following screenshots were all taken within our *play-test* level, one of many special levels we use for testing out new features and debugging problems in the game.

- Figure 10.1 shows a visualization of an enemy NPC's perception of the player. The little "stick man" figure represents the location of the player as perceived by the NPC. When the player has broken the line of sight between himself and the NPC, the "stick man" will remain at the player's last known location, even after the player sneaks away.
- Figure 10.2 shows how a wireframe sphere can be used to visualize the dynamically expanding blast radius of an explosion.



Figure 10.1. Visualizing the line of sight from an NPC to the player in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

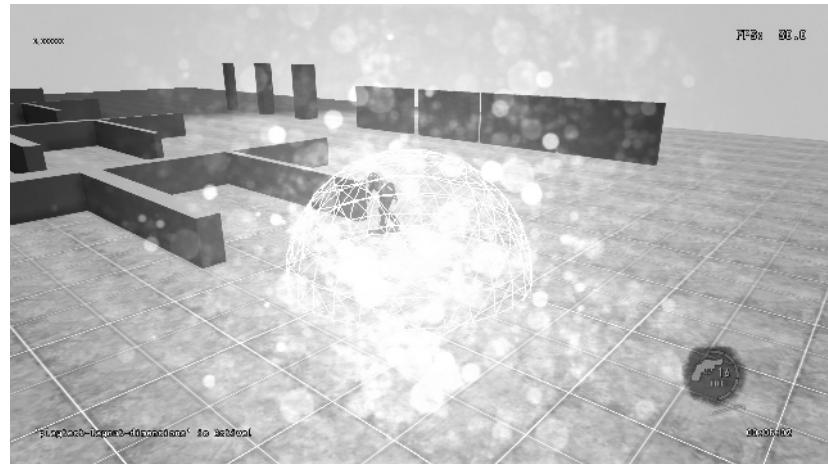


Figure 10.2. Visualizing the expanding blast sphere of an explosion in the Naughty Dog engine.

- Figure 10.3 shows how circles can be used to visualize the radii used by Drake when searching for ledges to hang from in the game. A line shows the ledge he is currently hanging from.
- Figure 10.4 shows an AI character that has been placed in a special debugging mode. In this mode, the character's brain is effectively turned off, and the developer is given full control over the character's movements and actions via a simple heads-up menu. The developer can paint

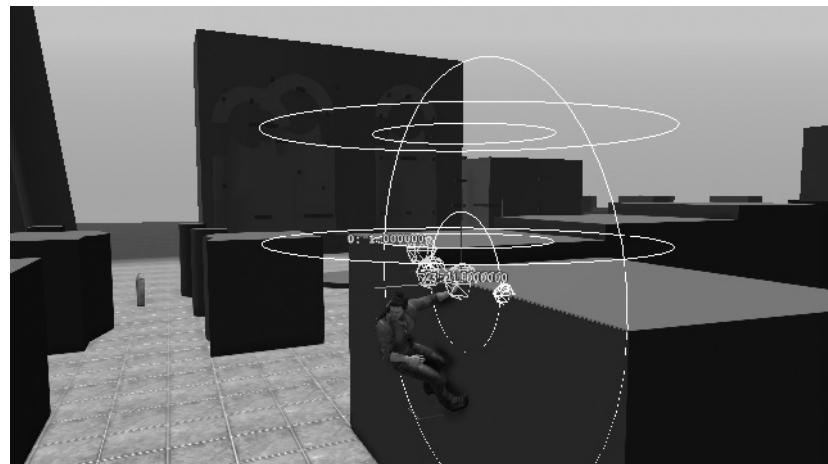


Figure 10.3. Spheres and vectors used in Drake's ledge hang and shimmy system in the *Uncharted* series (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 3).



Figure 10.4. Manually controlling an NPC's actions for debugging purposes in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

target points in the game world by simply aiming the camera and can then instruct the character to walk, run or sprint to the specified points. The user can also tell the character to enter or leave nearby cover, fire its weapon and so on.

### 10.2.1 Debug Drawing API

A debug drawing API generally needs to satisfy the following requirements:

- The API should be simple and easy to use.
- It should support a useful set of primitives, including (but not limited to):
  - lines,
  - spheres,
  - points (usually represented as small crosses or spheres, because a single pixel is very difficult to see),
  - coordinate axes (typically, the  $x$ -axis is drawn in red,  $y$  in green and  $z$  in blue),
  - bounding boxes, and
  - formatted text.
- It should provide a good deal of flexibility in controlling how primitives are drawn, including:

- color,
- line width,
- sphere radii,
- the size of points, lengths of coordinate axes, and dimensions of other “canned” primitives.
- It should be possible to draw primitives in world space (full 3D, using the game camera’s perspective projection matrix) or in screen space (either using an orthographic projection, or possibly a perspective projection). World-space primitives are useful for annotating objects in the 3D scene. Screen-space primitives are helpful for displaying debugging information in the form of a heads-up display that is independent of camera position or orientation.
- It should be possible to draw primitives with or without *depth testing* enabled.
  - When depth testing is enabled, the primitives will be occluded by real objects in your scene. This makes their depth easy to visualize, but it also means that the primitives may sometimes be difficult to see or totally hidden by the geometry of your scene.
  - With depth testing disabled, the primitives will “hover” over the real objects in the scene. This makes it harder to gauge their real depth, but it also ensures that no primitive is ever hidden from view.
- It should be possible to make calls to the drawing API from anywhere in your code. Most rendering engines require that geometry be submitted for rendering during a specific phase of the game loop, usually at the end of each frame. This requirement implies that the system must queue up all incoming debug drawing requests, so that they may be submitted at the proper time later on.
- Ideally, every debug primitive should have a *lifetime* associated with it. The lifetime controls how long the primitive will remain on-screen after having been requested. If the code that is drawing the primitive is called every frame, the lifetime can be one frame—the primitive will remain on-screen because it will be refreshed every frame. However, if the code that draws the primitive is called rarely or intermittently (e.g., a function that calculates the initial velocity of a projectile), then you do not want the primitive to flicker on-screen for just one frame and then disappear. In such situations, the programmer should be able to give his or her debug primitives a longer lifetime, on the order of a few seconds.

- It's also important that the debug drawing system be capable of handling a large number of debug primitives efficiently. When you're drawing debug information for 1,000 game objects, the number of primitives can really add up, and you don't want your game to be unusable when debug drawing is turned on.

The debug drawing API in Naughty Dog's engine looks something like this:

```
class DebugDrawManager
{
public:
    // Adds a line segment to the debug drawing queue.
    void AddLine(const Point& fromPosition,
                  const Point& toPosition,
                  Color color,
                  float lineWidth = 1.0f,
                  float duration = 0.0f,
                  bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds an axis-aligned cross (3 lines converging at
    // a point) to the debug drawing queue.
    void AddCross(const Point& position,
                  Color color,
                  float size,
                  float duration = 0.0f,
                  bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds a wireframe sphere to the debug drawing queue.
    void AddSphere(const Point& centerPosition,
                     float radius,
                     Color color,
                     float duration = 0.0f,
                     bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds a circle to the debug drawing queue.
    void AddCircle(const Point& centerPosition,
                     const Vector& planeNormal,
                     float radius,
                     Color color,
                     float duration = 0.0f,
                     bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds a set of coordinate axes depicting the
    // position and orientation of the given
    // transformation to the debug drawing queue.
    void AddAxes(const Transform& xfm,
                  Color color,
                  float size,
```

```
        float duration = 0.0f,
        bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds a wireframe triangle to the debug drawing
    // queue.
    void AddTriangle(const Point& vertex0,
                        const Point& vertex1,
                        const Point& vertex2,
                        Color color,
                        float lineWidth = 1.0f,
                        float duration = 0.0f,
                        bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds an axis-aligned bounding box to the debug
    // queue.
    void AddAABB(const Point& minCoords,
                  const Point& maxCoords,
                  Color color,
                  float lineWidth = 1.0f,
                  float duration = 0.0f,
                  bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds an oriented bounding box to the debug queue.
    void AddOBB(const Mat44& centerTransform,
                  const Vector& scaleXYZ,
                  Color color,
                  float lineWidth = 1.0f,
                  float duration = 0.0f,
                  bool depthEnabled = true);

    // Adds a text string to the debug drawing queue.
    void AddString(const Point& pos,
                  const char* text,
                  Color color,
                  float duration = 0.0f,
                  bool depthEnabled = true);
};

// This global debug drawing manager is configured for
// drawing in full 3D with a perspective projection.
extern DebugDrawManager g_debugDrawMgr;

// This global debug drawing manager draws its
// primitives in 2D screen space. The (x,y) coordinates
// of a point specify a 2D location on-screen, and the
// z coordinate contains a special code that indicates
// whether the (x,y) coordinates are measured in absolute
```

```
// pixels or in normalized coordinates that range from
// 0.0 to 1.0. (The latter mode allows drawing to be
// independent of the actual resolution of the screen.)
extern DebugDrawManager g_debugDrawMgr2D;
```

Here's an example of this API being used within game code:

```
void Vehicle::Update()
{
    // Do some calculations...

    // Debug-draw my velocity vector.
    const Point& start = GetWorldSpacePosition();
    Point end = start + GetVelocity();
    g_debugDrawMgr.AddLine(start, end, kColorRed);

    // Do some other calculations...

    // Debug-draw my name and number of passengers.
    {
        char buffer[128];
        sprintf(buffer, "Vehicle %s: %d passengers",
                GetName(), GetNumPassengers());

        const Point& pos = GetWorldSpacePosition();
        g_debugDrawMgr.AddString(pos,
            buffer, kColorWhite, 0.0f, false);
    }
}
```

You'll notice that the names of the drawing functions use the verb "add" rather than "draw." This is because the debug primitives are typically not drawn immediately when the drawing function is called. Instead, they are added to a list of visual elements that will be drawn at a later time. Most high-speed 3D rendering engines require that all visual elements be maintained in a *scene* data structure so that they can be drawn efficiently, usually at the end of the game loop. We'll learn a lot more about how rendering engines work in Chapter 11.

## 10.3 In-Game Menus

Every game engine has a large number of configuration options and features. In fact, each major subsystem, including rendering, animation, collision, physics, audio, networking, player mechanics, AI and so on, exposes its own specialized configuration options. It is highly useful to programmers, artists

and game designers alike to be able to configure these options while the game is running, without having to change the source code, recompile and relink the game executable, and then rerun the game. This can greatly reduce the amount of time the game development team spends on debugging problems and setting up new levels or game mechanics.

One simple and convenient way to permit this kind of thing is to provide a system of *in-game menus*. Items on an in-game menu can do any number of things, including (but certainly not limited to):

- toggling global Boolean settings,
- adjusting global integer and floating-point values,
- calling arbitrary functions, which can perform literally any task within the engine, and
- bringing up submenus, allowing the menu system to be organized hierarchically for easy navigation.

An in-game menu should be easy and convenient to bring up, perhaps via a simple button press on the joypad. (Of course, you'll want to choose a button combination that doesn't occur during normal gameplay.) Bringing up the menus usually pauses the game. This allows the developer to play the game until the moment just before a problem occurs, then pause the game by bringing up the menus, adjust engine settings in order to visualize the

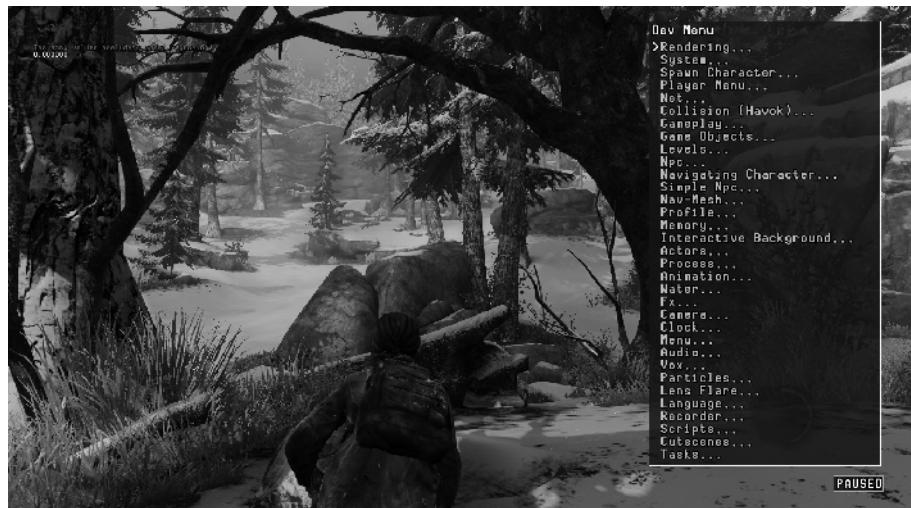


Figure 10.5. Main development menu in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

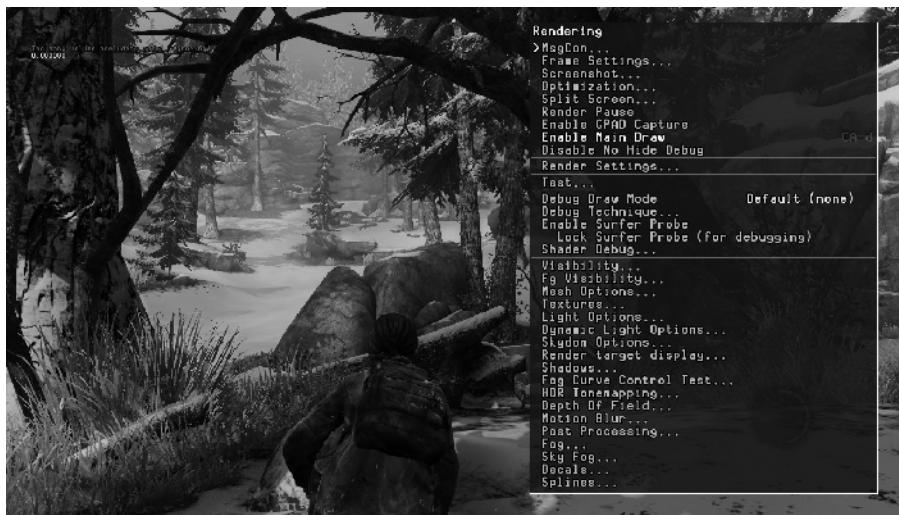


Figure 10.6. Rendering submenu in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

problem more clearly, and then un-pause the game to inspect the problem in depth.

Let's take a brief look at how the menu system works in the Naughty Dog engine. Figure 10.5 shows the top-level menu. It contains submenus for each major subsystem in the engine. In Figure 10.6, we've drilled down one level

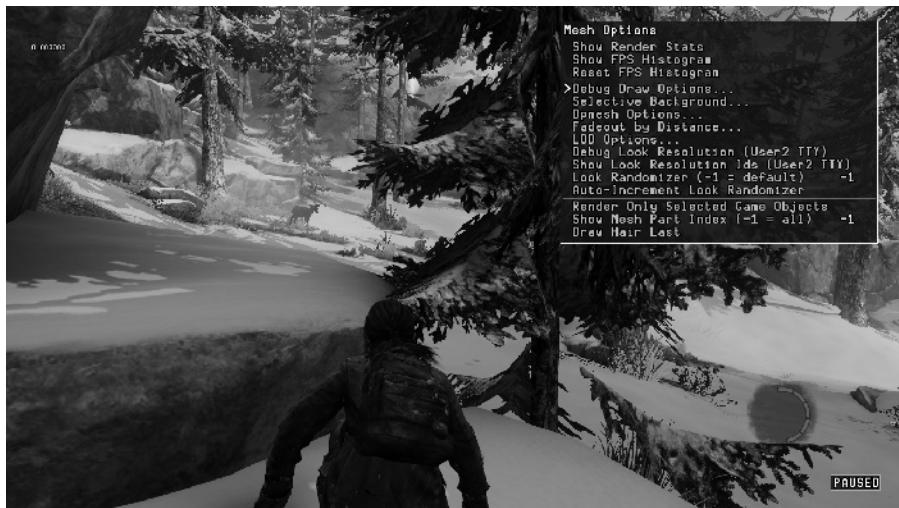


Figure 10.7. Mesh options submenu in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).



Figure 10.8. Background meshes turned off (*The Last of Us: Remastered* © 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

into the *Rendering...* submenu. Since the rendering engine is a highly complex system, its menu contains many submenus controlling various aspects of rendering. To control the way in which 3D meshes are rendered, we drill down further into the *Mesh Options...* submenu, shown in Figure 10.7. On this menu, we can turn off rendering of all static background meshes, leaving only the dynamic foreground meshes visible. This is shown in Figure 10.8. (Ah ha, there's that pesky deer!)

## 10.4 In-Game Console

Some engines provide an in-game console, either in lieu of or in addition to an in-game menu system. An in-game console provides a command-line interface to the game engine's features, much as a DOS *command prompt* provides users with access to various features of the Windows operating system, or a csh, tcsh, ksh or bash *shell prompt* provides users with access to the features of UNIX-like operating systems. Much like a menu system, the game engine console can provide commands allowing a developer to view and manipulate global engine settings, as well as running arbitrary commands.

A console is somewhat less convenient than a menu system, especially for those who aren't very fast typists. However, a console can be much more powerful than a menu. Some in-game consoles provide only a rudimentary set of hard-coded commands, making them about as flexible as a menu system.



Figure 10.9. The in-game console in *Minecraft*, overlaid on top of the main game screen and displaying a list of valid commands.

But others provide a rich interface to virtually every feature of the engine. A screenshot of the in-game console in Minecraft is shown in Figure 10.9.

Some game engines provide a powerful scripting language that can be used by programmers and game designers to extend the functionality of the engine, or even build entirely new games. If the in-game console “speaks” this same scripting language, then anything you can do in script can also be done interactively via the console. We’ll explore scripting languages in depth in Section 16.9.

## 10.5 Debug Cameras and Pausing the Game

An in-game menu or console system is best accompanied by two other crucial features: (a) the ability to detach the camera from the player character and fly it around the game world in order to scrutinize any aspect of the scene, and (b) the ability to pause, un-pause and single-step the game (see Section 8.5.5). When the game is paused, it is still important to be able to control the camera. To support this, we can simply keep the rendering engine and camera controls running, even when the game's logical clock is paused.

Slow motion mode is another incredibly useful feature for scrutinizing animations, particle effects, physics and collision behaviors, AI behaviors, and the list goes on. This feature is easy to implement. Presuming we've taken care to update all gameplay elements using a clock that is distinct from the real-time clock, we can put the game into slo-mo by simply updating the gameplay clock at a rate that is slower than usual. This approach can also be used to implement a fast-motion mode, which can be useful for moving rapidly through time-consuming portions of gameplay in order to get to an area of interest (not to mention being a great source of laughs, especially when accompanied by a bad vocal rendition of Benny Hill music...).

## 10.6 Cheats

When developing or debugging a game, it's important to allow the user to break the rules of the game in the name of expediency. Such features are aptly named *cheats*. For example, many engines allow you to "pick up" the player character and fly him or her around in the game world, with collisions disabled so he or she can pass through all obstacles. This can be incredibly helpful for testing out gameplay. Rather than taking the time to actually play the game in an attempt to get the player character into some desirable location, you can simply pick him up, fly him over to where you want him to be, and then drop him back into his regular gameplay mode.

Other useful cheats include, but are certainly not limited to:

- *Invincible player*. As a developer, you often don't want to be bothered having to defend yourself from enemy characters, or worrying about falling from too high a height, as you test out a feature or track down a bug.
- *Give player weapon*. It's often useful to be able to give the player any weapon in the game for testing purposes.
- *Infinite ammo*. When you're trying to kill bad guys to test out the weapon system or AI hit reactions, you don't want to be scrounging for clips!
- *Select player mesh*. If the player character has more than one "costume," it can be useful to be able to select any of them for testing purposes.

Obviously this list could go on for pages. The sky's the limit—you can add whatever cheats you need in order to develop or debug the game. You might even want to expose some of your favorite cheats to the players of the final shipping game. Players can usually activate cheats by entering unpublished *cheat codes* on the joypad or keyboard and/or by accomplishing certain objectives in the game.

## 10.7 Screenshots and Movie Capture

Another extremely useful facility is the ability to capture screenshots and write them to disk in a suitable image format such as Windows Bitmap files (.bmp), JPEG (.jpg) or Targa (.tga). The details of how to capture a screenshot vary from platform to platform, but they typically involve making a call to the graphics API that allows the contents of the frame buffer to be transferred from video RAM to main RAM, where it can be scanned and converted into the image file format of your choice. The image files are typically written to a predefined

folder on disk and named using a date and time stamp to guarantee unique file names.

You may want to provide your users with various options controlling how screenshots are to be captured. Some common examples include:

- Whether or not to include debug primitives and text in the screenshot.
- Whether or not to include heads-up display (HUD) elements in the screenshot.
- The resolution at which to capture. Some engines allow high-resolution screenshots to be captured, perhaps by modifying the projection matrix so that separate screenshots can be taken of the four quadrants of the screen at normal resolution and then combined into the final high-res image.
- Simple camera animations. For example, you could allow the user to mark the starting and ending positions and orientations of the camera. A sequence of screenshots could then be taken while gradually interpolating the camera from the starting location to the ending location.

Some engines also provide a full-fledged movie capture mode. Such a system captures a sequence of screenshots at the target frame rate of the game, which are processed either offline or at runtime to generate a movie file in a suitable format such as MPEG-2 (H.262) or MPEG-4 Part 10 (H.264). But even if your engine doesn't support real-time video capture, external hardware like *Roxio Game Capture HD Pro* can always be used to capture the output from your game console or PC. And for PC and Mac games, a great many software video capture tools are available, including *Fraps* by Beepa, *Camtasia* by Camtasia Software, *Dxtory* by ExKode, *Debut* by NCH Software and *Action!* by Mirillis.

The PlayStation 4 has built-in support for sharing screenshots and video clips taken from within the game. During gameplay, the PS4 is continually capturing video of the most-recent 15 minutes of the user's in-game experience. At any moment, the user can hit the Share button on the controller and opt to share a screenshot or the recorded video in various ways—by saving it to the PS4's HDD or a thumb drive, or by uploading it to one of a number of online services. At Naughty Dog, we use these facilities to capture video and a screenshot of the game any time it crashes, thereby allowing us to see what situation led up to the crash.

PlayStation 4 users can also live-stream video of their playthroughs. For development purposes, it's possible to use a PC to connect to a remote PS4 (perhaps sitting on another developer's desk within or outside your studio), to

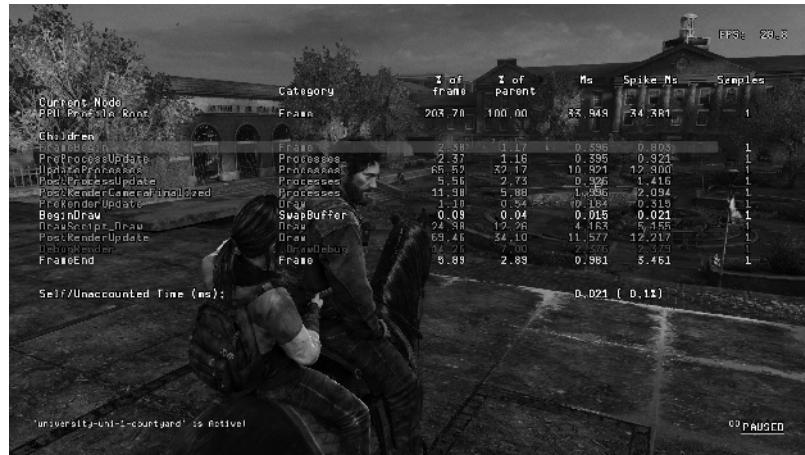


Figure 10.10. The Naughty Dog engine provides a profile hierarchy display that allows the user to drill down into particular function calls to inspect their costs.

see the game being played via streaming video, and even to control the remote game by plugging a PS4 controller into a USB slot on the PC. This facility can be incredibly useful for those “but it works on my machine” moments, because you can debug the problem directly on the other person’s PS4.

## 10.8 In-Game Profiling

Games are real-time systems, so achieving and maintaining a high frame rate (usually 30 FPS or 60 FPS) is important. Therefore, part of any game programmer’s job is ensuring that his or her code runs efficiently and within budget. As we saw when we discussed the 80/20 rule in Chapter 2, a large percentage of your code probably doesn’t need to be optimized. The only way to know *which* bits require optimization is to *measure your game’s performance*. We discussed various third-party profiling tools in Chapter 2. However, these tools have various limitations and may not be available at all on a console. For this reason, and/or for convenience, many game engines provide an in-game profiling tool of some sort.

Typically an in-game profiler permits the programmer to annotate blocks of code that should be timed and give them human-readable names. The profiler measures the execution time of each annotated block via the CPU’s hi-res timer and stores the results in memory. A heads-up display is provided, which shows up-to-date execution times for each code block (examples are shown in Figures 10.10 and 10.11). The display often provides the data in various forms,

including raw numbers of cycles, execution times in microseconds, and percentages relative to the execution time of the entire frame.



Figure 10.11. The timeline mode in *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy* (© 2017/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) shows exactly when various operations are performed across a single frame on the PS4's seven CPU cores.

### 10.8.1 Hierarchical Profiling

Computer programs written in an imperative language are inherently *hierarchical*—a function calls other functions, which in turn call still more functions. For example, let's imagine that function `a()` calls functions `b()` and `c()`, and function `b()` in turn calls functions `d()`, `e()` and `f()`. The pseudocode for this is shown below.

```
void a()
{
    b();
    c();
}

void b()
{
    d();
    e();
    f();
}

void c() { ... }
```

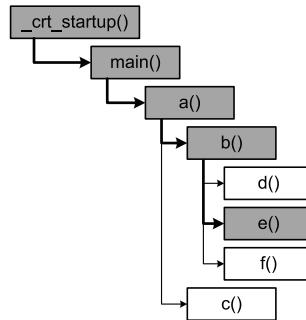


Figure 10.13. Call stack resulting from setting a breakpoint in function `e()`.

```

void d() { ... }

void e() { ... }

void f() { ... }

```

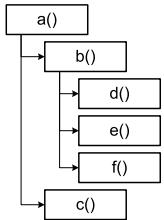


Figure 10.12. A hypothetical function call hierarchy.

Assuming function `a()` is called directly from `main()`, this function call hierarchy is shown in Figure 10.12.

When debugging a program, the *call stack* shows only a snapshot of this tree. Specifically, it shows us the path from whichever function in the hierarchy is *currently executing* all the way to the root function in the tree. In C/C++, the root function is usually `main()` or `WinMain()`, although technically this function is called by a start-up function that is part of the standard C runtime library (CRT), so that function is the true root of the hierarchy. If we set a breakpoint in function `e()`, for example, the call stack would look something like this:

```

e()          ← The currently executing function.
b()
a()
main()
_crt_startup() ← Root of the call hierarchy.

```

This call stack is depicted in Figure 10.13 as a pathway from function `e()` to the root of the function call tree.

#### 10.8.1.1 Measuring Execution Times Hierarchically

If we measure the execution time of a single function, the time we measure includes the execution time of any the child functions called and all of their

grandchildren, great-grandchildren and so on as well. To properly interpret any profiling data we might collect, we must be sure to take the function call hierarchy into account.

Many commercial profilers can *automatically* instrument every single function in your program. This permits them to measure both the *inclusive* and *exclusive* execution times of every function that is called during a profiling session. As the name implies, inclusive times measure the execution time of the function including all of its children, while exclusive times measure only the time spent in the function itself. (The exclusive time of a function can be calculated by subtracting the inclusive times of all its immediate children from the inclusive time of the function in question.) In addition, some profilers record how many times each function is called. This is an important piece of information to have when optimizing a program, because it allows you to differentiate between functions that eat up a lot of time internally and functions that eat up time because they are called a very large number of times.

In contrast, in-game profiling tools are not so sophisticated and usually rely on *manual* instrumentation of the code. If our game engine's main loop is structured simply enough, we may be able to obtain valid data at a coarse level without thinking much about the function call hierarchy. For example, a typical game loop might look roughly like this:

```
while (!quitGame)
{
    PollJoypad();
    UpdateGameObjects();
    UpdateAllAnimations();
    PostProcessJoints();
    DetectCollisions();
    RunPhysics();
    GenerateFinalAnimationPoses();
    UpdateCameras();
    RenderScene();
    UpdateAudio();
}
```

We could profile this game at a very coarse level by measuring the execution times of each major phase of the game loop:

```
while (!quitGame)
{
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Poll Joypad"));
        PollJoypad();
    }
}
```

```

    {
        PROFILE(SID("Game Object Update"));
        UpdateGameObjects();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Animation"));
        UpdateAllAnimations();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Joint Post-Processing"));
        PostProcessJoints();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Collision"));
        DetectCollisions();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Physics"));
        RunPhysics();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Animation Finaling"));
        GenerateFinalAnimationPoses();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Cameras"));
        UpdateCameras();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Rendering"));
        RenderScene();
    }
    {
        PROFILE(SID("Audio"));
        UpdateAudio();
    }
}

```

The PROFILE() macro shown above would probably be implemented as a class whose constructor starts the timer and whose destructor stops the timer and records the execution time under the given name. Thus, it only times the code within its containing block, by nature of the way C++ automatically constructs and destroys objects as they go in and out of scope.

```

struct AutoProfile
{
    AutoProfile(const char* name)

```

```
{  
    m_name = name;  
    mStartTime = QueryPerformanceCounter();  
}  
  
~AutoProfile()  
{  
    std::int64_t endTime = QueryPerformanceCounter();  
    std::int64_t elapsedTime = endTime - mStartTime;  
  
    g_profileManager.storeSample(m_name, elapsedTime);  
}  
  
const char* m_name;  
std::int64_t mStartTime;  
};  
  
#define PROFILE(name) AutoProfile p(name)
```

The problem with this simplistic approach is that it breaks down when used within deeper levels of function call nesting. For example, if we embed additional PROFILE() annotations within the RenderScene() function, we need to understand the function call hierarchy in order to properly interpret those measurements.

One solution to this problem is to allow the programmer who is annotating the code to indicate the hierarchical interrelationships between profiling samples. For example, any PROFILE(...) samples taken within the RenderScene() function could be declared to be children of the PROFILE(SID("Rendering")) sample. These relationships are usually set up separately from the annotations themselves, by predeclaring all of the sample bins. For example, we might set up the in-game profiler during engine initialization as follows:

```
// This code declares various profile sample "bins",  
// listing the name of the bin and the name of its  
// parent bin, if any.  
  
ProfilerDeclareSampleBin(SID("Rendering"), nullptr);  
ProfilerDeclareSampleBin(SID("Visibility"), SID("Rendering"));  
ProfilerDeclareSampleBin(SID("Shaders"), SID("Rendering"));  
    ProfilerDeclareSampleBin(SID("Materials"), SID("Shaders"));  
  
ProfilerDeclareSampleBin(SID("SubmitGeo"), SID("Rendering"));  
  
ProfilerDeclareSampleBin(SID("Audio"), nullptr);  
  
// ...
```

This approach still has its problems. Specifically, it works well when every function in the call hierarchy has only one parent, but it breaks down when we try to profile a function that is called by more than one parent function. The reason for this should be pretty obvious. We're statically declaring our sample bins *as if* every function can only appear once in the function call hierarchy, but actually the same function can reappear many times in the tree, each time with a different parent. The result can be misleading data, because a function's time will be included in one of the parent bins, but really should be distributed across all of its parents' bins. Most game engines don't make an attempt to remedy this problem, since they are primarily interested in profiling coarse-grained functions that are only called from one specific location in the function call hierarchy. But this limitation is something to be aware of when profiling your code with a simple in-engine profile of the sort found in most game engines.

Of course, it is also possible to write a much more sophisticated profiling system that handles nested instances of AutoProfile properly. This is an example of the many trade-offs one makes when designing a game engine. Do we invest the engineering time to create a fully hierarchical profiler? Or, do we make do with something simpler and invest those programming resources elsewhere? Ultimately, it's up to you.

We would also like to account for how many *times* a given function is called. In the example above, we know that each of the functions we profiled is called exactly once per frame. But other functions, deeper in the function call hierarchy, may be called more than once per frame. If we measure function `x()` to take 2 ms to execute, it's important to know whether it takes 2 ms to execute on its own, or whether its execution time is 2 ms but it was called 1,000 times during the frame. Keeping track of the number of times a function is called per frame is quite simple—the profiling system can simply increment a counter each time a sample is received and reset the counters at the start of each frame.

### 10.8.2 Exporting to Excel

Some game engines permit the data captured by the in-game profiler to be dumped to a text file for subsequent analysis. I find that a comma-separated values (CSV) format is best, because such files can be loaded easily into a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet, where the data can be manipulated and analyzed in myriad ways. I wrote such an exporter for the *Medal of Honor: Pacific Assault* engine. The columns corresponded to the various annotated blocks, and each row represented the profiling sample taken during one frame of the game's

execution. The first column contained frame numbers and the second actual game time measured in seconds. This allowed the team to graph how the performance statistics varied over time and to determine how long each frame actually took to execute. By adding some simple formulae to the exported spreadsheet, we could calculate frame rates, execution time percentages and so on.

## 10.9 In-Game Memory Stats and Leak Detection

In addition to runtime performance (i.e., frame rate), most game engines are also constrained by the amount of memory available on the target hardware. PC games are least affected by such constraints, because modern PCs have sophisticated virtual memory managers. But even PC games are constrained by the memory limitations of their so-called “min spec” machine—the least-powerful machine on which the game is guaranteed to run, as promised by the publisher and stated on the game’s packaging.

For this reason, most game engines implement custom memory-tracking tools. These tools allow the developers to see how much memory is being used by each engine subsystem and whether or not any memory is leaking (i.e., memory is allocated but never freed). It’s important to have this information so that you can make informed decisions when trying to cut back the memory usage of your game so that it will fit onto the console or type of PC you are targeting.

Keeping track of how much memory a game actually uses can be a surprisingly tricky job. You’d think you could simply wrap `malloc()`/`free()` or `new`/`delete` in a pair of functions or macros that keep track of the amount of memory that is allocated and freed. However, it’s never that simple for a few reasons:

1. *You often can’t control the allocation behavior of other people’s code.* Unless you write the operating system, drivers and the game engine entirely from scratch, there’s a good chance you’re going to end up linking your game with at least some third-party libraries. Most good libraries provide *memory allocation hooks* so that you can replace their allocators with your own. But some do not. It’s often difficult to keep track of the memory allocated by each and every third-party library you use in your game engine—but it usually *can* be done if you’re thorough and selective in your choice of third-party libraries.
2. *Memory comes in different flavors.* For example, a PC has two kinds of RAM: main RAM and video RAM (the memory residing on your graph-

ics card, which is used primarily for geometry and texture data). Even if you manage to track all of the memory allocations and deallocations occurring within main RAM, it can be well neigh impossible to track video RAM usage. This is because graphics APIs like DirectX actually hide the details of how video RAM is being allocated and used from the developer. On a console, life is a bit easier only because you often end up having to write a video RAM manager yourself. This is more difficult than using DirectX, but at least you have complete knowledge of what's going on.

3. *Allocators come in different flavors.* Many games make use of specialized allocators for various purposes. For example, the Naughty Dog engine has a *global heap* for general-purpose allocations, a special heap for managing the memory created by *game objects* as they spawn into the game world and are destroyed, a *level-loading heap* for data that is *streamed* into memory during gameplay, a stack allocator for *single-frame allocations* (the stack is cleared automatically every frame), an allocator for *video RAM*, and a *debug memory heap* used only for allocations that will not be needed in the final shipping game. Each of these allocators grabs a large hunk of memory when the game starts up and then manages that memory block itself. If we were to track all the calls to new and delete, we'd see one new for each of these six allocators and that's all. To get any useful information, we really need to track all of the allocations *within* each of these allocators' memory blocks.

Most professional game teams expend a significant amount of effort on creating in-engine memory-tracking tools that provide accurate and detailed information. The resulting tools usually provide their output in a variety of forms. For example, the engine might produce a detailed dump of all memory allocations made by the game during a specific period of time. The data might include high water marks for each memory allocator or each game system, indicating the maximum amount of physical RAM required by each. Some engines also provide heads-up displays of memory usage while the game is running. This data might be tabular, as shown in Figure 10.14, or graphical as shown in Figure 10.15.

In addition, when low-memory or out-of-memory conditions arise, a good engine will provide this information in as helpful a way as possible. When PC games are developed, the game team usually works on high-powered PCs with more RAM than the min-spec machine being targeted. Likewise, console games are developed on special *development kits* that have more memory than a retail console. So in both cases, the game can continue to run even when it

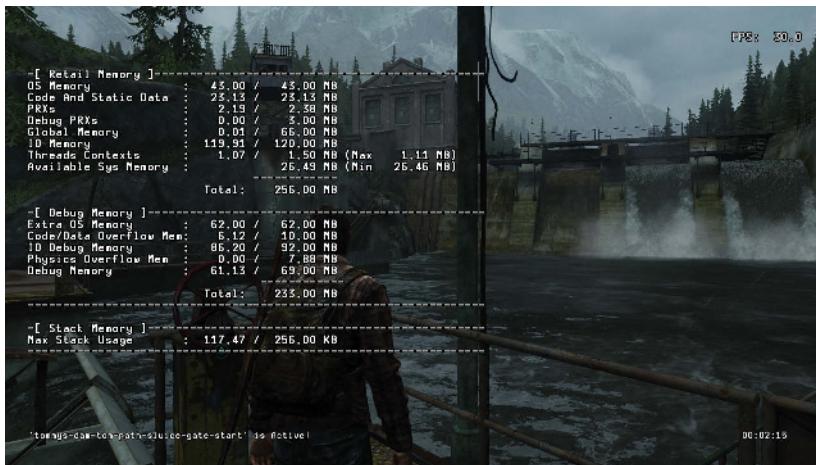


Figure 10.14. Tabular memory statistics from Naughty Dog's engine.



Figure 10.15. A graphical memory usage display, also from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/TM SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

technically has run out of memory (i.e., would no longer fit on a retail console or min-spec PC). When this kind of out-of-memory condition arises, the game engine can display a message saying something like, “Out of memory—this level will not run on a retail system.”

There are lots of other ways in which a game engine’s memory tracking system can aid developers in pinpointing problems as early and as conveniently

as possible. Here are just a few examples:

- If a model fails to load, a bright red text string could be displayed in 3D hovering in the game world where that object would have been.
- If a texture fails to load, the object could be drawn with an ugly pink texture that is very obviously not part of the final game.
- If an animation fails to load, the character could assume a special (possibly humorous) pose that indicates a missing animation, and the name of the missing asset could hover over the character's head.

The key to providing good memory analysis tools is (a) to provide accurate information, (b) to present the data in a way that is convenient and that makes problems obvious and (c) to provide contextual information to aid the team in tracking down the root cause of problems when they occur.

# Part III

## Graphics, Motion and Sound



Taylor & Francis  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## The Rendering Engine

When most people think about computer and video games, the first thing that comes to mind is the stunning three-dimensional graphics. Real-time 3D rendering is an exceptionally broad and profound topic, so there's simply no way to cover all of the details in a single chapter. Thankfully there are a great many excellent books and other resources available on this topic. In fact, real-time 3D graphics is perhaps one of the best covered of all the technologies that make up a game engine. The goal of this chapter, then, is to provide you with a broad understanding of real-time rendering technology and to serve as a jumping-off point for further learning. After you've read through these pages, you should find that reading other books on 3D graphics seems like a journey through familiar territory. You might even be able to impress your friends at parties (...or alienate them...).

We'll begin by laying a solid foundation in the concepts, theory and mathematics that underlie any real-time 3D rendering engine. Next, we'll have a look at the software and hardware pipelines used to turn this theoretical framework into reality. We'll discuss some of the most common optimization techniques and see how they drive the structure of the tools pipeline and the runtime rendering API in most engines. We'll end with a survey of some of the advanced rendering techniques and lighting models in use by game engines today. Throughout this chapter, I'll point you to some of my favorite books and

other resources that should help you to gain an even deeper understanding of the topics we'll cover here.

## 11.1 Foundations of Depth-Buffered Triangle Rasterization

When you boil it down to its essence, rendering a three-dimensional scene involves the following basic steps:

- A *virtual scene* is described, usually in terms of 3D surfaces represented in some mathematical form.
- A *virtual camera* is positioned and oriented to produce the desired view of the scene. Typically the camera is modeled as an idealized focal point, with an imaging surface hovering some small distance in front of it, composed of *virtual light sensors* corresponding to the picture elements (*pixels*) of the target display device.
- Various *light sources* are defined. These sources provide all the light rays that will interact with and reflect off the objects in the environment and eventually find their way onto the image-sensing surface of the virtual camera.
- The *visual properties* of the surfaces in the scene are described. This defines how light should interact with each surface.
- For each pixel within the imaging rectangle, the rendering engine calculates the color and intensity of the light ray(s) converging on the virtual camera's focal point through that pixel. This is known as *solving the rendering equation* (also called the *shading equation*).

This high-level rendering process is depicted in Figure 11.1.

Many different technologies can be used to perform the basic rendering steps described above. The primary goal is usually *photorealism*, although some games aim for a more stylized look (e.g., cartoon, charcoal sketch, watercolor and so on). As such, rendering engineers and artists usually attempt to describe the properties of their scenes as realistically as possible and to use light transport models that match physical reality as closely as possible. Within this context, the gamut of rendering technologies ranges from techniques designed for real-time performance at the expense of visual fidelity, to those designed for photorealism but which are not intended to operate in real time.

Real-time rendering engines perform the steps listed above repeatedly, displaying rendered images at a rate of 30, 50 or 60 frames per second to provide

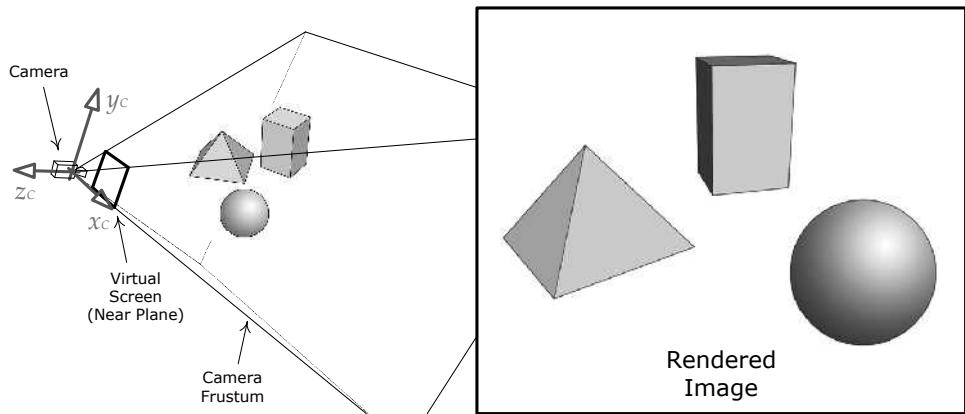


Figure II.I. The high-level rendering approach used by virtually all 3D computer graphics technologies.

the illusion of motion. This means a real-time rendering engine has at most 33.3 ms to generate each image (to achieve a frame rate of 30 FPS). Usually much less time is available, because bandwidth is also consumed by other engine systems like animation, AI, collision detection, physics simulation, audio, player mechanics and other gameplay logic. Considering that film rendering engines often take anywhere from many minutes to many hours to render a single frame, the quality of real-time computer graphics these days is truly astounding.

### II.I.1 Describing a Scene

A real-world scene is composed of objects. Some objects are solid, like a brick, and some are amorphous, like a cloud of smoke, but every object occupies a volume of 3D space. An object might be *opaque* (in which case light cannot pass through its volume), *transparent* (in which case light passes through it without being scattered, so that we can see a reasonably clear image of whatever is behind the object), or *translucent* (meaning that light can pass through the object but is scattered in all directions in the process, yielding only a blur of colors that hint at the objects behind it).

Opaque objects can be rendered by considering only their *surfaces*. We don't need to know what's inside an opaque object in order to render it, because light cannot penetrate its surface. When rendering a transparent or translucent object, we really should model how light is reflected, refracted, scattered and absorbed as it passes through the object's volume. This requires knowledge of the interior structure and properties of the object. However,

most game engines don't go to all that trouble. They just render the surfaces of transparent and translucent objects in almost the same way opaque objects are rendered. A simple numeric opacity measure known as *alpha* is used to describe how opaque or transparent a surface is. This approach can lead to various visual anomalies (for example, surface features on the far side of the object may be rendered incorrectly), but the approximation can be made to look reasonably realistic in many cases. Even amorphous objects like clouds of smoke are often represented using particle effects, which are typically composed of large numbers of semitransparent rectangular cards. Therefore, it's safe to say that most game rendering engines are primarily concerned with rendering *surfaces*.

#### II.I.I.1 Representations Used by High-End Rendering Packages

Theoretically, a surface is a two-dimensional sheet comprised of an infinite number of points in three-dimensional space. However, such a description is clearly not practical. In order for a computer to process and render arbitrary surfaces, we need a compact way to represent them numerically.

Some surfaces can be described exactly in analytical form using a *parametric surface equation*. For example, a sphere centered at the origin can be represented by the equation  $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$ . However, parametric equations aren't particularly useful for modeling arbitrary shapes.

In the film industry, surfaces are often represented by a collection of rectangular *patches* each formed from a two-dimensional spline defined by a small number of control points. Various kinds of splines are used, including Bézier surfaces (e.g., bicubic patches, which are third-order Béziers—see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bezier\\_surface](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bezier_surface) for more information), nonuniform rational B-splines (NURBS—see <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nurbs>), Bézier triangles and *N-patches* (also known as *normal patches*—see <http://ubm.io/1iGnvJ5> for more details). Modeling with patches is a bit like covering a statue with little rectangles of cloth or paper maché.

High-end film rendering engines like Pixar's RenderMan use *subdivision surfaces* to define geometric shapes. Each surface is represented by a mesh of control polygons (much like a spline), but the polygons can be subdivided into smaller and smaller polygons using the Catmull-Clark algorithm. This subdivision typically proceeds until the individual polygons are smaller than a single pixel in size. The biggest benefit of this approach is that no matter how close the camera gets to the surface, it can always be subdivided further so that its silhouette edges won't look faceted. To learn more about subdivision surfaces, check out the following great article: <http://ubm.io/1lx6th5>.

### II.I.I.2 Triangle Meshes

Game developers have traditionally modeled their surfaces using triangle meshes. Triangles serve as a piecewise linear approximation to a surface, much as a chain of connected line segments acts as a piecewise approximation to a function or curve (see Figure 11.2).

Triangles are the polygon of choice for real-time rendering because they have the following desirable properties:

- *The triangle is the simplest type of polygon.* Any fewer than three vertices, and we wouldn't have a surface at all.
- *A triangle is always planar.* Any polygon with four or more vertices need not have this property because, while the first three vertices define a plane, the fourth vertex might lie above or below that plane.
- *Triangles remain triangles under most kinds of transformations, including affine transforms and perspective projections.* At worst, a triangle viewed edge-on will degenerate into a line segment. At every other orientation, it remains triangular.
- *Virtually all commercial graphics-acceleration hardware is designed around triangle rasterization.* Starting with the earliest 3D graphics accelerators for the PC, rendering hardware has been designed almost exclusively around triangle rasterization. This decision can be traced all the way back to the first software rasterizers used in the earliest 3D games like *Castle Wolfenstein 3D* and *Doom*. Like it or not, triangle-based technologies are entrenched in our industry and probably will be for years to come.

### Tessellation

The term *tessellation* describes a process of dividing a surface up into a collection of discrete polygons (which are usually either quadrilaterals, also known as *quads*, or triangles). *Triangulation* is tessellation of a surface into triangles.

One problem with the kind of triangle mesh used in games is that its level of tessellation is fixed by the artist when he or she creates it. Fixed tessellation can cause an object's *silhouette edges* to look blocky, as shown in Figure 11.3; this is especially noticeable when the object is close to the camera.

Ideally, we'd like a solution that can arbitrarily increase tessellation as an object gets closer to the virtual camera. In other words, we'd like to have a uniform triangle-to-pixel density, no matter how close or far away the object is. Subdivision surfaces can achieve this ideal—surfaces can be tessellated based on distance from the camera, so that every triangle is less than one pixel in size.

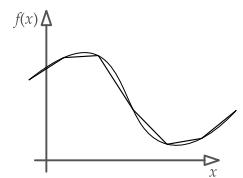


Figure II.2. A mesh of triangles is a linear approximation to a surface, just as a series of connected line segments can serve as a linear approximation to a function or curve.

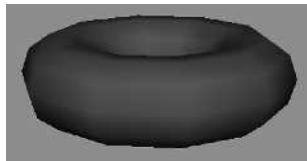


Figure II.3. Fixed tessellation can cause an object's silhouette edges to look blocky, especially when the object is close to the camera.

Game developers often attempt to approximate this ideal of uniform triangle-to-pixel density by creating a chain of alternate versions of each triangle mesh, each known as a *level of detail* (LOD). The first LOD, often called LOD 0, represents the highest level of tessellation; it is used when the object is very close to the camera. Subsequent LODs are tessellated at lower and lower resolutions (see Figure 11.4). As the object moves farther away from the camera, the engine switches from LOD 0 to LOD 1 to LOD 2 and so on. This allows the rendering engine to spend the majority of its time transforming and lighting the vertices of the objects that are closest to the camera (and therefore occupy the largest number of pixels on-screen).

Some game engines apply *dynamic tessellation* techniques to expansive meshes like water or terrain. In this technique, the mesh is usually represented by a height field defined on some kind of regular grid pattern. The region of the mesh that is closest to the camera is tessellated to the full resolution of the grid. Regions that are farther away from the camera are tessellated using fewer and fewer grid points.

*Progressive meshes* are another technique for dynamic tessellation and LOD-ing. With this technique, a single high-resolution mesh is created for display when the object is very close to the camera. (This is essentially the

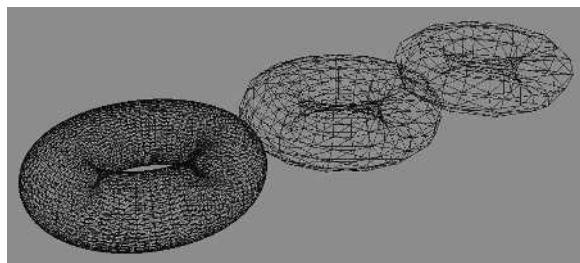


Figure II.4. A chain of LOD meshes, each with a fixed level of tessellation, can be used to approximate uniform triangle-to-pixel density. The leftmost torus is constructed from 5000 triangles, the center torus from 450 triangles and the rightmost torus from 200 triangles.

LOD 0 mesh.) This mesh is automatically detessellated as the object gets farther away by collapsing certain edges. In effect, this process automatically generates a semi-continuous chain of LODs. See <http://research.microsoft.com/en-us/um/people/hoppe/pm.pdf> for a detailed discussion of progressive mesh technology.

### II.I.I.3 Constructing a Triangle Mesh

Now that we understand what triangle meshes are and why they're used, let's take a brief look at how they're constructed.

#### Winding Order

A triangle is defined by the position vectors of its three vertices, which we can denote  $\mathbf{p}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{p}_2$  and  $\mathbf{p}_3$ . The edges of a triangle can be found by simply subtracting the position vectors of adjacent vertices. For example,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e}_{12} &= \mathbf{p}_2 - \mathbf{p}_1, \\ \mathbf{e}_{13} &= \mathbf{p}_3 - \mathbf{p}_1, \\ \mathbf{e}_{23} &= \mathbf{p}_3 - \mathbf{p}_2.\end{aligned}$$

The normalized cross product of any two edges defines a unit *face normal*  $\mathbf{N}$ :

$$\mathbf{N} = \frac{\mathbf{e}_{12} \times \mathbf{e}_{13}}{|\mathbf{e}_{12} \times \mathbf{e}_{13}|}.$$

These derivations are illustrated in Figure 11.5. To know the *direction* of the face normal (i.e., the sense of the edge cross product), we need to define which side of the triangle should be considered the front (i.e., the outside surface of an object) and which should be the back (i.e., its inside surface). This can be defined easily by specifying a *winding order*—clockwise (CW) or counterclockwise (CCW).

Most low-level graphics APIs give us a way to *cull* back-facing triangles based on winding order. For example, if we set the cull mode parameter in

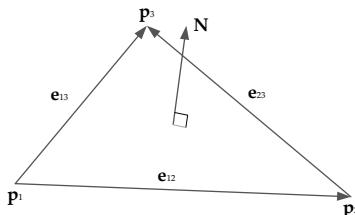


Figure 11.5. Deriving the edges and plane of a triangle from its vertices.

Direct3D (D3DRS\_CULL) to D3DCULLMODE\_CW, then any triangle whose vertices wind in a clockwise fashion in screen space will be treated as a back-facing triangle and will not be drawn.

Back-face culling is important because we generally don't want to waste time drawing triangles that aren't going to be visible anyway. Also, rendering the back faces of transparent objects can actually cause visual anomalies. The choice of winding order is an arbitrary one, but of course it must be consistent across all assets in the entire game. Inconsistent winding order is a common error among junior 3D modelers.

### Triangle Lists

The easiest way to define a mesh is simply to list the vertices in groups of three, each triple corresponding to a single triangle. This data structure is known as a *triangle list*; it is illustrated in Figure 11.6.

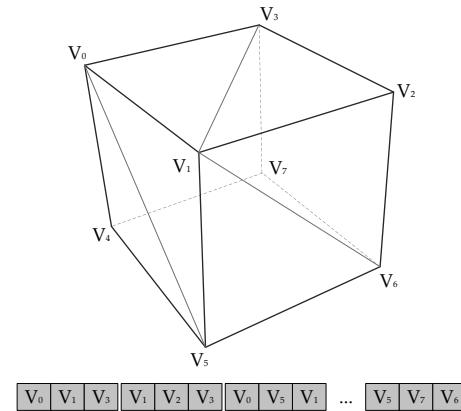


Figure 11.6. A triangle list.

### Indexed Triangle Lists

You probably noticed that many of the vertices in the triangle list shown in Figure 11.6 were duplicated, often multiple times. As we'll see in Section 11.1.2.1, we often store quite a lot of metadata with each vertex, so repeating this data in a triangle list wastes memory. It also wastes GPU bandwidth, because a duplicated vertex will be transformed and lit multiple times.

For these reasons, most rendering engines make use of a more efficient data structure known as an *indexed triangle list*. The basic idea is to list the vertices once with no duplication and then to use lightweight vertex *indices* (usually occupying only 16 bits each) to define the triples of vertices that constitute the

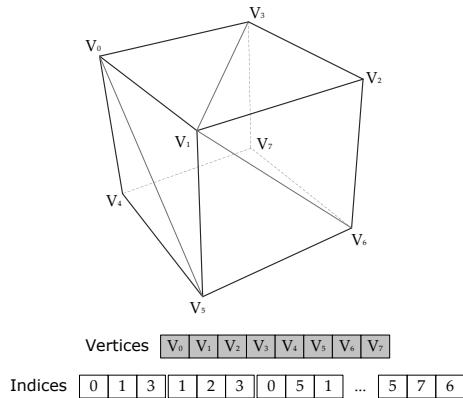


Figure 11.7. An indexed triangle list.

triangles. The vertices are stored in an array known as a *vertex buffer* (DirectX) or *vertex array* (OpenGL). The indices are stored in a separate buffer known as an *index buffer* or *index array*. This technique is shown in Figure 11.7.

### Strips and Fans

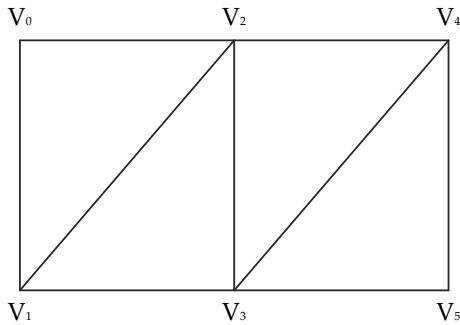
Specialized mesh data structures known as *triangle strips* and *triangle fans* are sometimes used for game rendering. Both of these data structures eliminate the need for an index buffer, while still reducing vertex duplication to some degree. They accomplish this by predefining the order in which vertices must appear and how they are combined to form triangles.

In a strip, the first three vertices define the first triangle. Each subsequent vertex forms an entirely new triangle, along with its previous two neighbors. To keep the winding order of a triangle strip consistent, the previous two neighbor vertices swap places after each new triangle. A triangle strip is shown in Figure 11.8.

In a fan, the first three vertices define the first triangle and each subsequent vertex defines a new triangle with the previous vertex and the first vertex in the fan. This is illustrated in Figure 11.9.

### Vertex Cache Optimization

When a GPU processes an indexed triangle list, each triangle can refer to any vertex within the vertex buffer. The vertices must be processed in the order they appear within the triangles, because the integrity of each triangle must be maintained for the rasterization stage. As vertices are processed by the vertex shader, they are cached for reuse. If a subsequent primitive refers to a vertex



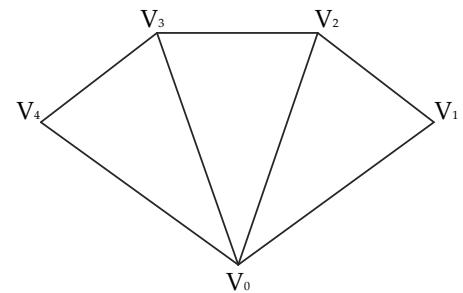
Vertices 

V <sub>0</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>	V <sub>3</sub>	V <sub>4</sub>	V <sub>5</sub>
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

Interpreted as triangles: 

0	1	2
1	3	2
2	3	4
3	5	4

Figure II.8. A triangle strip.



Vertices 

V <sub>0</sub>	V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>	V <sub>3</sub>	V <sub>4</sub>
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

Interpreted as triangles: 

0	1	2
0	2	3
0	3	4

Figure II.9. A triangle fan.

that already resides in the cache, its processed attributes are used instead of reprocessing the vertex.

Strips and fans are used in part because they can potentially save memory (no index buffer required) and in part because they tend to improve the cache coherency of the memory accesses made by the GPU to video RAM. Even better, we can use an *indexed strip* or *indexed fan* to virtually eliminate vertex duplication (which can often save more memory than eliminating the index buffer), while still reaping the cache coherency benefits of the strip or fan vertex ordering.

Indexed triangle lists can also be cache-optimized without restricting ourselves to strip or fan vertex ordering. A *vertex cache optimizer* is an offline geometry processing tool that attempts to list the triangles in an order that optimizes vertex reuse within the cache. It generally takes into account factors such as the size of the vertex cache(s) present on a particular type of GPU and the algorithms used by the GPU to decide when to cache vertices and when to discard them. For example, the vertex cache optimizer included in Sony's *Edge* geometry processing library can achieve rendering throughput that is up to 4% better than what is possible with triangle stripping.

#### II.1.1.4 Model Space

The position vectors of a triangle mesh's vertices are usually specified relative to a convenient local coordinate system called *model space*, *local space*, or *object space*. The origin of model space is usually either in the center of the object or at

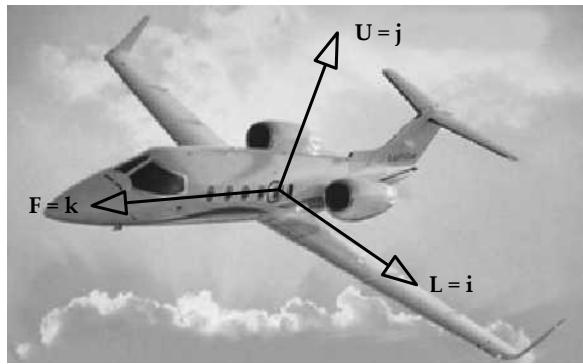


Figure II.10. One possible mapping of the model-space axes.

some other convenient location, like on the floor between the feet of a character or on the ground at the horizontal centroid of the wheels of a vehicle.

As we learned in Section 5.3.9.1, the sense of the model-space axes is arbitrary, but the axes typically align with the natural “front,” “left,” “right” and “up” directions on the model. For a little mathematical rigor, we can define three unit vectors  $\mathbf{F}$ ,  $\mathbf{L}$  (or  $\mathbf{R}$ ) and  $\mathbf{U}$  and map them as desired onto the unit basis vectors  $\mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{j}$  and  $\mathbf{k}$  (and hence to the  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -axes, respectively) in model space. For example, a common mapping is  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{i}$ ,  $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{j}$  and  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{k}$ . The mapping is completely arbitrary, but it’s important to be consistent for all models across the entire engine. Figure 11.10 shows one possible mapping of the model-space axes for an aircraft model.

#### II.I.1.5 World Space and Mesh Instancing

Many individual meshes are composed into a complete scene by positioning and orienting them within a common coordinate system known as *world space*. Any one mesh might appear many times in a scene—examples include a street lined with identical lamp posts, a faceless mob of soldiers or a swarm of spiders attacking the player. We call each such object a *mesh instance*.

A mesh instance contains a reference to its shared mesh data and also includes a transformation matrix that converts the mesh’s vertices from model space to world space, within the context of that particular instance. This matrix is called the *model-to-world* matrix, or sometimes just the *world matrix*. Using the notation from Section 5.3.10.2, this matrix can be written as follows:

$$\mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow W} = \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{RS})_{M \rightarrow W} & 0 \\ \mathbf{t}_M & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

where the upper  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $(\mathbf{RS})_{M \rightarrow W}$  rotates and scales model-space vertices into world space, and  $\mathbf{t}_M$  is the translation of the model-space axes expressed in world space. If we have the unit model-space basis vectors  $\mathbf{i}_M$ ,  $\mathbf{j}_M$  and  $\mathbf{k}_M$ , expressed in world-space coordinates, this matrix can also be written as follows:

$$\mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow W} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{i}_M & 0 \\ \mathbf{j}_M & 0 \\ \mathbf{k}_M & 0 \\ \hline \mathbf{t}_M & 1 \end{array} \right].$$

Given a vertex expressed in model-space coordinates, the rendering engine calculates its world-space equivalent as follows:

$$\mathbf{v}_W = \mathbf{v}_M \mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow W}.$$

We can think of the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow W}$  as a description of the position and orientation of the model-space axes themselves, expressed in world-space coordinates. Or we can think of it as a matrix that transforms vertices from model space to world space.

When rendering a mesh, the model-to-world matrix is also applied to the surface normals of the mesh (see Section 11.1.2.1). Recall from Section 5.3.11, that in order to transform normal vectors properly, we must multiply them by the inverse transpose of the model-to-world matrix. If our matrix does not contain any scale or shear, we can transform our normal vectors correctly by simply setting their  $w$  components to zero prior to multiplication by the model-to-world matrix, as described in Section 5.3.6.1.

Some meshes like buildings, terrain and other background elements are entirely static and unique. The vertices of these meshes are often expressed in world space, so their model-to-world matrices are identity and can be ignored.

### II.1.2 Describing the Visual Properties of a Surface

In order to properly render and light a surface, we need a description of its *visual properties*. Surface properties include geometric information, such as the direction of the surface normal at various points on the surface. They also encompass a description of how light should interact with the surface. This includes diffuse color, shininess/reflectivity, roughness or texture, degree of opacity or transparency, index of refraction and other optical properties. Surface properties might also include a specification of how the surface should change over time (e.g., how an animated character's skin should track the joints of its skeleton or how the surface of a body of water should move).

The key to rendering photorealistic images is properly accounting for light's behavior as it interacts with the objects in the scene. Hence rendering engineers need to have a good understanding of how light works, how it is transported through an environment and how the virtual camera "senses" it and translates it into the colors stored in the pixels on-screen.

### II.I.2.1 Introduction to Light and Color

Light is electromagnetic radiation; it acts like both a wave and a particle in different situations. The color of light is determined by its *intensity*  $I$  and its *wavelength*  $\lambda$  (or its frequency  $f$ , where  $f = 1/\lambda$ ). The visible gamut ranges from a wavelength of 740 nm (or a frequency of 430 THz) to a wavelength of 380 nm (750 THz). A beam of light may contain a single pure wavelength (i.e., the colors of the rainbow, also known as the *spectral colors*), or it may contain a mixture of various wavelengths. We can draw a graph showing how much of each frequency a given beam of light contains, called a *spectral plot*. White light contains a little bit of all wavelengths, so its spectral plot would look roughly like a box extending across the entire visible band. Pure green light contains only one wavelength, so its spectral plot would look like a single infinitesimally narrow spike at about 570 THz.

#### *Light-Object Interactions*

Light can have many complex interactions with matter. Its behavior is governed in part by the *medium* through which it is traveling and in part by the shape and properties of the *interfaces* between different types of media (air-solid, air-water, water-glass, etc.). Technically speaking, a surface is really just an interface between two different types of media.

Despite all of its complexity, light can really only do four things:

- It can be *absorbed*.
- It can be *reflected*.
- It can be *transmitted* through an object, usually being *refracted* (bent) in the process.
- It can be *diffracted* when passing through very narrow openings.

Most photorealistic rendering engines account for the first three of these behaviors; diffraction is not usually taken into account because its effects are rarely noticeable in most scenes.

Only certain wavelengths may be absorbed by a surface, while others are reflected. This is what gives rise to our perception of the color of an object. For example, when white light falls on a red object, all wavelengths except

red are absorbed, hence the object appears red. The same perceptual effect is achieved when red light is cast onto a white object—our eyes don't know the difference.

Reflections can be *diffuse*, meaning that an incoming ray is scattered equally in all directions. Reflections can also be *specular*, meaning that an incident light ray will reflect directly or be spread only into a narrow cone. Reflections can also be *anisotropic*, meaning that the way in which light reflects from a surface changes depending on the angle at which the surface is viewed.

When light is transmitted through a volume, it can be *scattered* (as is the case for translucent objects), partially *absorbed* (as with colored glass), or *refracted* (as happens when light travels through a prism). The refraction angles can be different for different wavelengths, leading to spectral spreading. This is why we see rainbows when light passes through raindrops and glass prisms. Light can also enter a semi-solid surface, bounce around and then exit the surface at a different point from the one at which it entered the surface. We call this *subsurface scattering*, and it is one of the effects that gives skin, wax and marble their characteristic warm appearance.

### *Color Spaces and Color Models*

A *color model* is a three-dimensional coordinate system that measures colors. A *color space* is a specific standard for how numerical colors in a particular color model should be mapped onto the colors perceived by human beings in the real world. Color models are typically three-dimensional because of the three types of color sensors (cones) in our eyes, which are sensitive to different wavelengths of light.

The most commonly used color model in computer graphics is the RGB model. In this model, color space is represented by a unit cube, with the relative intensities of red, green and blue light measured along its axes. The red, green and blue components are called *color channels*. In the canonical RGB color model, each channel ranges from zero to one. So the color  $(0, 0, 0)$  represents black, while  $(1, 1, 1)$  represents white.

When colors are stored in a bitmapped image, various color formats can be employed. A color format is defined in part by the number of *bits per pixel* it occupies and, more specifically, the number of bits used to represent each color channel. The RGB888 format uses eight bits per channel, for a total of 24 bits per pixel. In this format, each channel ranges from 0 to 255 rather than from zero to one. RGB565 uses five bits for red and blue and six for green, for a total of 16 bits per pixel. A palettes format might use eight bits per pixel to store indices into a 256-element color palette, each entry of which might be stored in RGB888 or some other suitable format.

A number of other color models are also used in 3D rendering. We'll see how the log-LUV color model is used for *high dynamic range* (HDR) lighting in Section 11.3.1.5.

### Opacity and the Alpha Channel

A fourth channel called *alpha* is often tacked on to RGB color vectors. As mentioned in Section 11.1.1, alpha measures the opacity of an object. When stored in an image pixel, alpha represents the opacity of the pixel.

RGB color formats can be extended to include an alpha channel, in which case they are referred to as RGBA or ARGB color formats. For example, RGBA8888 is a 32 bit-per-pixel format with eight bits each for red, green, blue and alpha. RGBA5551 is a 16 bit-per-pixel format with one-bit alpha; in this format, colors can either be fully opaque or fully transparent.

#### II.I.2.2 Vertex Attributes

The simplest way to describe the visual properties of a surface is to specify them at discrete points on the surface. The vertices of a mesh are a convenient place to store surface properties, in which case they are called *vertex attributes*.

A typical triangle mesh includes some or all of the following attributes at each vertex. As rendering engineers, we are of course free to define any additional attributes that may be required in order to achieve a desired visual effect on-screen.

- *Position vector* ( $\mathbf{p}_i = [p_{ix} \ p_{iy} \ p_{iz}]$ ). This is the 3D position of the  $i$ th vertex in the mesh. It is usually specified in a coordinate space local to the object, known as *model space*.
- *Vertex normal* ( $\mathbf{n}_i = [n_{ix} \ n_{iy} \ n_{iz}]$ ). This vector defines the unit surface normal at the position of vertex  $i$ . It is used in per-vertex dynamic lighting calculations.
- *Vertex tangent* ( $\mathbf{t}_i = [t_{ix} \ t_{iy} \ t_{iz}]$ ) and *bitangent* ( $\mathbf{b}_i = [b_{ix} \ b_{iy} \ b_{iz}]$ ). These two unit vectors lie perpendicular to one another and to the vertex normal  $\mathbf{n}_i$ . Together, the three vectors  $\mathbf{n}_i$ ,  $\mathbf{t}_i$  and  $\mathbf{b}_i$  define a set of coordinate axes known as *tangent space*. This space is used for various per-pixel lighting calculations, such as normal mapping and environment mapping. (The bitangent  $\mathbf{b}_i$  is sometimes confusingly called the *binormal*, even though it is *not* normal to the surface.)
- *Diffuse color* ( $\mathbf{d}_i = [d_{iR} \ d_{iG} \ d_{iB} \ d_{iA}]$ ). This four-element vector describes the diffuse color of the surface, expressed in the RGB color space. It typically also includes a specification of the opacity or *alpha* (A) of the

surface at the position of the vertex. This color may be calculated offline (static lighting) or at runtime (dynamic lighting).

- *Specular color* ( $\mathbf{s}_i = [s_{iR} \ s_{iG} \ s_{iB} \ s_{iA}]$ ). This quantity describes the color of the specular highlight that should appear when light reflects directly from a shiny surface onto the virtual camera's imaging plane.
- *Texture coordinates* ( $\mathbf{u}_{ij} = [u_{ij} \ v_{ij}]$ ). Texture coordinates allow a two- (or sometimes three-) dimensional bitmap to be "shrink wrapped" onto the surface of a mesh—a process known as *texture mapping*. A texture coordinate  $(u, v)$  describes the location of a particular vertex within the two-dimensional normalized coordinate space of the texture. A triangle can be mapped with more than one texture; hence it can have more than one set of texture coordinates. We've denoted the distinct sets of texture coordinates via the subscript  $j$  above.
- *Skinning weights* ( $\mathbf{k}_{ij} = [k_{ij} \ w_{ij}]$ ). In skeletal animation, the vertices of a mesh are attached to individual joints in an articulated skeleton. In this case, each vertex must specify to which joint it is attached via an index,  $k$ . A vertex can be influenced by multiple joints, in which case the final vertex position becomes a *weighted average* of these influences. Thus, the weight of each joint's influence is denoted by a weighting factor  $w$ . In general, a vertex  $i$  can have multiple joint influences  $j$ , each denoted by the pair of numbers  $(k_{ij}, w_{ij})$ .

#### II.1.2.3 Vertex Formats

Vertex attributes are typically stored within a data structure such as a C struct or a C++ class. The layout of such a data structure is known as a *vertex format*. Different meshes require different combinations of attributes and hence need different vertex formats. The following are some examples of common vertex formats:

```
// Simplest possible vertex -- position only (useful for
// shadow volume extrusion, silhouette edge detection
// for cartoon rendering, z-prepass, etc.)
struct Vertex1P
{
    Vector3 m_p; // position
};

// A typical vertex format with position, vertex normal
// and one set of texture coordinates.
struct Vertex1P1N1UV
{
    Vector3 m_p; // position
    Vector3 m_n; // normal
    Vector2 m_uv; // texture coordinates
};
```

```
Vector3 m_n;           // vertex normal
F32      m_uv[2];    // (u, v) texture coordinate
};

// A skinned vertex with position, diffuse and specular
// colors and four weighted joint influences.
struct Vertex1P1D1S2UV4J
{
    Vector3 m_p;           // position
    Color4 m_d;            // diffuse color and translucency
    Color4 m_s;            // specular color
    F32    m_uv0[2];       // first set of tex coords
    F32    m_uv1[2];       // second set of tex coords
    U8     m_k[4];          // four joint indices, and...
    F32    m_w[3];          // three joint weights, for
                           // skinning (fourth is calc'd
                           // from the first three)
};
```

Clearly the number of possible permutations of vertex attributes—and hence the number of distinct vertex formats—can grow to be extremely large. (In fact the number of formats is theoretically unbounded, if one were to permit any number of texture coordinates and/or joint weights.) Management of all these vertex formats is a common source of headaches for any graphics programmer.

Some steps can be taken to reduce the number of vertex formats that an engine has to support. In practical graphics applications, many of the theoretically possible vertex formats are simply not useful, or they cannot be handled by the graphics hardware or the game's shaders. Some game teams also limit themselves to a subset of the useful/feasible vertex formats in order to keep things more manageable. For example, they might only allow zero, two or four joint weights per vertex, or they might decide to support no more than two sets of texture coordinates per vertex. Some GPUs are capable of extracting a subset of attributes from a vertex data structure, so game teams can also choose to use a single “überformat” for all meshes and let the hardware select the relevant attributes based on the requirements of the shader.

#### II.I.2.4 Attribute Interpolation

The attributes at a triangle's vertices are just a coarse, discretized approximation to the visual properties of the surface as a whole. When rendering a triangle, what really matters are the visual properties at the interior points of the triangle as “seen” through each pixel on-screen. In other words, we need to know the values of the attributes on a *per-pixel* basis, not a per-vertex basis.

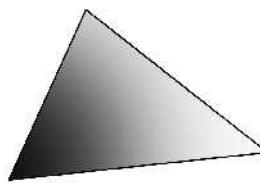


Figure 11.11. A Gouraud-shaded triangle with different shades of gray at the vertices.

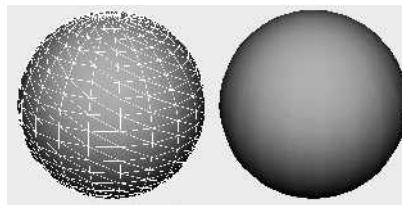


Figure 11.12. Gouraud shading can make faceted objects appear to be smooth.

One simple way to determine the per-pixel values of a mesh's surface attributes is to *linearly interpolate* the per-vertex attribute data. When applied to vertex colors, attribute interpolation is known as *Gouraud shading*. An example of Gouraud shading applied to a triangle is shown in Figure 11.11, and its effects on a simple triangle mesh are illustrated in Figure 11.12. Interpolation is routinely applied to other kinds of vertex attribute information as well, such as vertex normals, texture coordinates and depth.

#### *Vertex Normals and Smoothing*

As we'll see in Section 11.1.3, *lighting* is the process of calculating the color of an object at various points on its surface, based on the visual properties of the surface and the properties of the light impinging upon it. The simplest way to light a mesh is to calculate the color of the surface on a *per-vertex* basis. In other words, we use the properties of the surface and the incoming light to calculate the diffuse color of each vertex ( $\mathbf{d}_i$ ). These vertex colors are then interpolated across the triangles of the mesh via Gouraud shading.

In order to determine how a ray of light will reflect from a point on a surface, most lighting models make use of a vector that is *normal* to the surface at the point of the light ray's impact. Since we're performing lighting calculations on a per-vertex basis, we can use the vertex normal  $\mathbf{n}_i$  for this purpose. Therefore, the directions of a mesh's vertex normals can have a significant impact on the final appearance of a mesh.

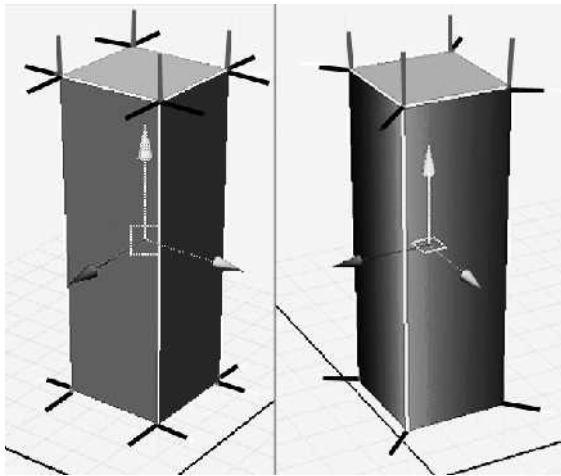


Figure II.13. The directions of a mesh's vertex normals can have a profound effect on the colors calculated during per-vertex lighting calculations.

As an example, consider a tall, thin, four-sided box. If we want the box to appear to be sharp-edged, we can specify the vertex normals to be perpendicular to the faces of the box. As we light each triangle, we will encounter the same normal vector at all three vertices, so the resulting lighting will appear flat, and it will abruptly change at the corners of the box just as the vertex normals do.

We can also make the same box mesh look a bit like a smooth cylinder by specifying vertex normals that point radially outward from the box's center line. In this case, the vertices of each triangle will have different vertex normals, causing us to calculate different colors at each vertex. Gouraud shading will smoothly interpolate these vertex colors, resulting in lighting that appears to vary smoothly across the surface. This effect is illustrated in Figure 11.13.

#### II.I.2.5 Textures

When triangles are relatively large, specifying surface properties on a per-vertex basis can be too coarse-grained. Linear attribute interpolation isn't always what we want, and it can lead to undesirable visual anomalies.

As an example, consider the problem of rendering the bright *specular highlight* that can occur when light shines on a glossy object. If the mesh is highly tessellated, per-vertex lighting combined with Gouraud shading can yield reasonably good results. However, when the triangles are too large, the errors that arise from linearly interpolating the specular highlight can become jarringly obvious, as shown in Figure 11.14.

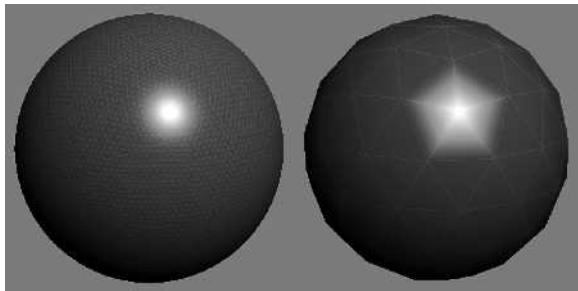


Figure II.14. Linear interpolation of vertex attributes does not always yield an adequate description of the visual properties of a surface, especially when tessellation is low.

To overcome the limitations of per-vertex surface attributes, rendering engineers use bitmapped images known as *texture maps*. A texture often contains color information and is usually projected onto the triangles of a mesh. In this case, it acts a bit like those silly fake tattoos we used to apply to our arms when we were kids. But a texture can contain other kinds of visual surface properties as well as colors. And a texture needn't be projected onto a mesh—for example, a texture might be used as a stand-alone data table. The individual picture elements of a texture are called *texels* to differentiate them from the pixels on the screen.

The dimensions of a texture bitmap are constrained to be powers of two on some graphics hardware. Typical texture dimensions include  $256 \times 256$ ,  $512 \times 512$ ,  $1024 \times 1024$  and  $2048 \times 2048$ , although textures can be any size on most hardware, provided the texture fits into video memory. Some graphics hardware imposes additional restrictions, such as requiring textures to be square, or lifts some restrictions, such as not constraining texture dimensions to be powers of two.

### Types of Textures

The most common type of texture is known as a *diffuse map*, or *albedo map*. It describes the diffuse surface color at each texel on a surface and acts like a decal or paint job on the surface.

Other types of textures are used in computer graphics as well, including *normal maps* (which store unit normal vectors at each texel, encoded as RGB values), *gloss maps* (which encode how shiny a surface should be at each texel), environment maps (which contain a picture of the surrounding environment for rendering reflections) and many others. See Section 11.3.1 for a discussion of how various types of textures can be used for image-based lighting and other effects.

We can actually use texture maps to store any information that we happen to need in our lighting calculations. For example, a one-dimensional texture could be used to store sampled values of a complex math function, a color-to-color mapping table, or any other kind of look-up table (LUT).

### Texture Coordinates

Let's consider how to project a two-dimensional texture onto a mesh. To do this, we define a two-dimensional coordinate system known as *texture space*. A texture coordinate is usually represented by a normalized pair of numbers denoted  $(u, v)$ . These coordinates always range from  $(0, 0)$  at the bottom left corner of the texture to  $(1, 1)$  at the top right. Using normalized coordinates like this allows the same coordinate system to be used regardless of the dimensions of the texture.

To map a triangle onto a 2D texture, we simply specify a pair of texture coordinates  $(u_i, v_i)$  at each vertex  $i$ . This effectively maps the triangle onto the image plane in texture space. An example of texture mapping is depicted in Figure 11.15.

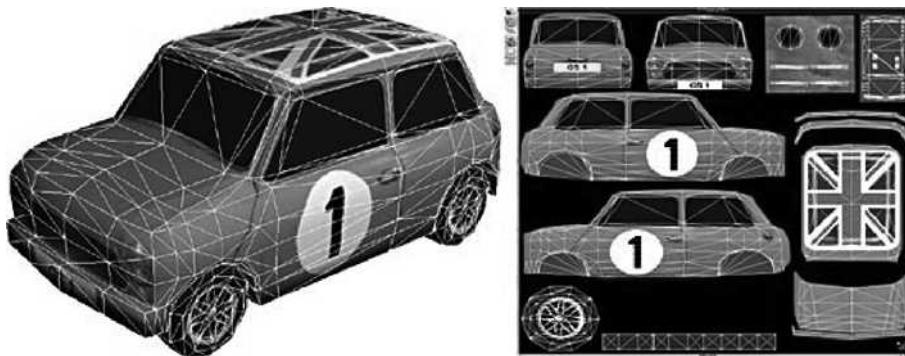


Figure 11.15. An example of texture mapping. The triangles are shown both in three-dimensional space and in texture space.

### Texture Addressing Modes

Texture coordinates are permitted to extend beyond the  $[0, 1]$  range. The graphics hardware can handle out-of-range texture coordinates in any one of the following ways. These are known as *texture addressing modes*; which mode is used is under the control of the user.

- *Wrap*. In this mode, the texture is repeated over and over in every direction. All texture coordinates of the form  $(ju, kv)$  are equivalent to the coordinate  $(u, v)$ , where  $j$  and  $k$  are arbitrary integers.

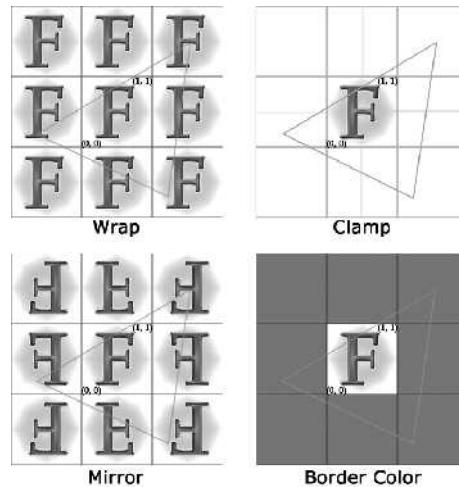


Figure II.16. Texture addressing modes.

- *Mirror*. This mode acts like wrap mode, except that the texture is mirrored about the  $v$ -axis for odd integer multiples of  $u$ , and about the  $u$ -axis for odd integer multiples of  $v$ .
- *Clamp*. In this mode, the colors of the texels around the outer edge of the texture are simply extended when texture coordinates fall outside the normal range.
- *Border color*. In this mode, an arbitrary user-specified color is used for the region outside the  $[0, 1]$  texture coordinate range.

These texture addressing modes are depicted in Figure 11.16.

### Texture Formats

Texture bitmaps can be stored on disk in virtually any image format, provided your game engine includes the code necessary to read it into memory. Common formats include Targa (.tga), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Windows Bitmap (.bmp) and Tagged Image File Format (.tif). In memory, textures are usually represented as two-dimensional (strided) arrays of pixels using various color formats, including RGB888, RGBA8888, RGB565, RGBA5551 and so on.

Most modern graphics cards and graphics APIs support *compressed textures*. DirectX supports a family of compressed formats known as DXT or S3 Texture Compression (S3TC). We won't cover the details here, but the basic idea is to break the texture into  $4 \times 4$  blocks of pixels and use a small

color palette to store the colors for each block. You can read more about S3 compressed texture formats at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/S3\\_Texture\\_Compression](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/S3_Texture_Compression).

Compressed textures have the obvious benefit of using less memory than their uncompressed counterparts. An additional unexpected plus is that they are faster to render with as well. S3 compressed textures achieve this speed-up because of more cache-friendly memory access patterns— $4 \times 4$  blocks of adjacent pixels are stored in a single 64- or 128-bit machine word—and because more of the texture can fit into the cache at once. Compressed textures do suffer from compression artifacts. While the anomalies are usually not noticeable, there are situations in which uncompressed textures must be used.

### *Texel Density and Mipmapping*

Imagine rendering a full-screen quad (a rectangle composed of two triangles) that has been mapped with a texture whose resolution exactly matches that of the screen. In this case, each texel maps exactly to a single pixel on-screen, and we say that the *texel density* (ratio of texels to pixels) is one. When this same quad is viewed at a distance, its on-screen area becomes smaller. The resolution of the texture hasn't changed, so the quad's texel density is now greater than one (meaning that more than one texel is contributing to each pixel).

Clearly texel density is not a fixed quantity—it changes as a texture-mapped object moves relative to the camera. Texel density affects the memory consumption and the visual quality of a three-dimensional scene. When the texel density is much less than one, the texels become significantly larger than a pixel on-screen, and you can start to see the edges of the texels. This destroys the illusion. When texel density is much greater than one, many texels contribute to a single pixel on-screen. This can cause a *moiré banding pattern*, as shown in Figure 11.17. Worse, a pixel's color can appear to swim and flicker as different texels within the boundaries of the pixel dominate its color depending on subtle changes in camera angle or position. Rendering a distant object with a very high texel density can also be a waste of memory if the player can *never* get close to it. After all, why keep such a high-res texture in memory if no one will ever see all that detail?

Ideally we'd like to maintain a texel density that is close to one at all times, for both nearby and distant objects. This is impossible to achieve exactly, but it can be approximated via a technique called *mipmapping*. For each texture, we create a sequence of lower-resolution bitmaps, each of which is one-half the width and one-half the height of its predecessor. We call each of these images a *mipmap*, or *mip level*. For example, a  $64 \times 64$  texture would have the

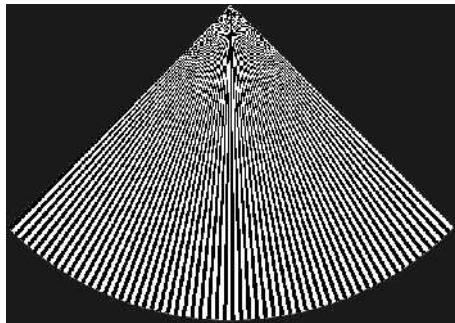


Figure II.17. A texel density greater than one can lead to a moiré pattern.

following mip levels:  $64 \times 64$ ,  $32 \times 32$ ,  $16 \times 16$ ,  $8 \times 8$ ,  $4 \times 4$ ,  $2 \times 2$  and  $1 \times 1$ , as shown in Figure 11.18. Once we have mipmapped our textures, the graphics hardware selects the appropriate mip level based on a triangle's distance away from the camera, in an attempt to maintain a texel density that is close to one. For example, if a texture takes up an area of  $40 \times 40$  on-screen, the  $64 \times 64$  mip level might be selected; if that same texture takes up only a  $10 \times 10$  area, the  $16 \times 16$  mip level might be used. As we'll see below, *trilinear filtering* allows the hardware to sample two adjacent mip levels and blend the results. In this case, a  $10 \times 10$  area might be mapped by blending the  $16 \times 16$  and  $8 \times 8$  mip levels together.

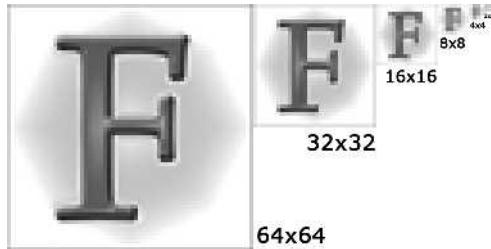


Figure II.18. Mip levels for a  $64 \times 64$  texture.

### World-Space Texel Density

The term “texel density” can also be used to describe the ratio of texels to world-space area on a textured surface. For example, a 2 m cube mapped with a  $256 \times 256$  texture would have a texel density of  $256^2 / 2^2 = 16,384$ . I will call this *world-space texel density* to differentiate it from the screen-space texel density we've been discussing thus far.

World-space texel density need not be close to one, and in fact the specific value will usually be much greater than one and depends entirely upon your choice of world units. Nonetheless, it is important for objects to be texture mapped with a reasonably consistent world-space texel density. For example, we would expect all six sides of a cube to occupy the same texture area. If this were not the case, the texture on one side of the cube would have a lower-resolution appearance than another side, which can be noticeable to the player. Many game studios provide their art teams with guidelines and in-engine texel density visualization tools in an effort to ensure that all objects in the game have a reasonably consistent world-space texel density.

### *Texture Filtering*

When rendering a pixel of a textured triangle, the graphics hardware samples the texture map by considering where the pixel center falls in texture space. There is usually not a clean one-to-one mapping between texels and pixels, and pixel centers can fall at any place in texture space, including directly on the boundary between two or more texels. Therefore, the graphics hardware usually has to sample more than one texel and blend the resulting colors to arrive at the actual sampled texel color. We call this *texture filtering*.

Most graphics cards support the following kinds of texture filtering:

- *Nearest neighbor*. In this crude approach, the texel whose center is closest to the pixel center is selected. When mipmapping is enabled, the mip level is selected whose resolution is nearest to but greater than the ideal theoretical resolution needed to achieve a screen-space texel density of one.
- *Bilinear*. In this approach, the four texels surrounding the pixel center are sampled, and the resulting color is a weighted average of their colors (where the weights are based on the distances of the texel centers from the pixel center). When mipmapping is enabled, the nearest mip level is selected.
- *Trilinear*. In this approach, bilinear filtering is used on each of the two nearest mip levels (one higher-res than the ideal and the other lower-res), and these results are then linearly interpolated. This eliminates abrupt visual boundaries between mip levels on-screen.
- *Anisotropic*. Both bilinear and trilinear filtering sample  $2 \times 2$  square blocks of texels. This is the right thing to do when the textured surface is being viewed head-on, but it's incorrect when the surface is at an oblique angle relative to the virtual screen plane. Anisotropic filtering samples texels within a trapezoidal region corresponding to the view

angle, thereby increasing the quality of textured surfaces when viewed at an angle.

#### II.I.2.6 Materials

A *material* is a complete description of the visual properties of a mesh. This includes a specification of the textures that are mapped to its surface and also various higher-level properties, such as which shader programs to use when rendering the mesh, the input parameters to those shaders and other parameters that control the functionality of the graphics acceleration hardware itself.

While technically part of the surface properties description, vertex attributes are not considered to be part of the material. However, they come along for the ride with the mesh, so a mesh-material pair contains all the information we need to render the object. Mesh-material pairs are sometimes called *render packets*, and the term “geometric primitive” is sometimes extended to encompass mesh-material pairs as well.

A 3D model typically uses more than one material. For example, a model of a human would have separate materials for the hair, skin, eyes, teeth and various kinds of clothing. For this reason, a mesh is usually divided into *submeshes*, each mapped to a single material. The OGRE rendering engine implements this design via its `Ogre::SubMesh` class.

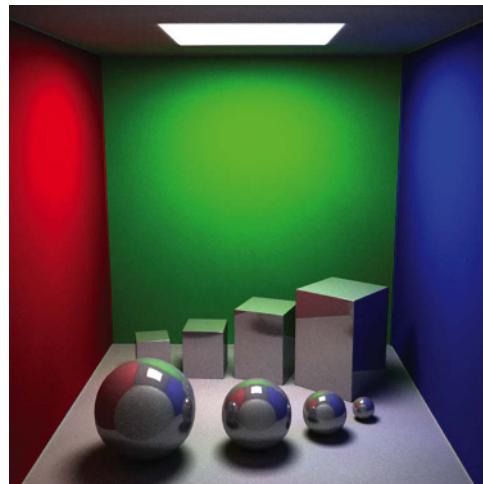


Figure II.19. A variation on the classic “Cornell box” scene illustrating how realistic lighting can make even the simplest scene appear photorealistic.



Figure 11.20. A scene from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) rendered without textures. (See Color Plate XV.)

### II.I.3 Lighting Basics

Lighting is at the heart of all CG rendering. Without good lighting, an otherwise beautifully modeled scene will look flat and artificial. Likewise, even the simplest of scenes can be made to look extremely realistic when it is lit accurately. The classic “Cornell box” scene, shown in Figure 11.19, is an excellent example of this.

The sequence of screenshots from Naughty Dog’s *The Last of Us: Remastered* is another good illustration of the importance of lighting. In Figure 11.20, the scene is rendered without textures. Figure 11.21 shows the same scene with diffuse textures applied. The fully lit scene is shown in Figure 11.22. Notice the marked jump in realism when lighting is applied to the scene.

The term *shading* is often used as a loose generalization of lighting plus other visual effects. As such, “shading” encompasses procedural deformation of vertices to simulate the motion of a water surface, generation of hair curves or fur shells, tessellation of high-order surfaces, and pretty much any other calculation that’s required to render a scene.

In the following sections, we’ll lay the foundations of lighting that we’ll need in order to understand graphics hardware and the rendering pipeline. We’ll return to the topic of lighting in Section 11.3, where we’ll survey some advanced lighting and shading techniques.

#### II.I.3.1 Local and Global Illumination Models

Rendering engines use various mathematical models of light-surface and light-volume interactions called *light transport models*. The simplest models only account for *direct lighting* in which light is emitted, bounces off a single



Figure II.21. The same scene from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) with only diffuse textures applied. (See Color Plate XVI.)



Figure II.22. Scene from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) with full lighting. (See Color Plate XVII.)

object in the scene, and then proceeds directly to the imaging plane of the virtual camera. Such simple models are called *local illumination models*, because only the local effects of light on a single object are considered; objects do not affect one another's appearance in a local lighting model. Not surprisingly, local models were the first to be used in games, and they are still in use today—local lighting can produce surprisingly realistic results in some circumstances.

True photorealism can only be achieved by accounting for *indirect lighting*, where light bounces multiple times off many surfaces before reaching the virtual camera. Lighting models that account for indirect lighting are called *global illumination models*. Some global illumination models are targeted at simulating one specific visual phenomenon, such as producing realistic shadows, modeling reflective surfaces, accounting for interreflection between objects (where the color of one object affects the colors of surrounding objects), and modeling caustic effects (the intense reflections from water or a shiny metal surface). Other global illumination models attempt to provide a holistic account of a wide range of optical phenomena. Ray tracing and radiosity methods are examples of such technologies.

Global illumination is described completely by a mathematical formulation known as the *rendering equation* or *shading equation*. It was introduced in 1986 by J. T. Kajiya as part of a seminal SIGGRAPH paper. In a sense, every rendering technique can be thought of as a full or partial solution to the rendering equation, although they differ in their fundamental approach to solving it and in the assumptions, simplifications and approximations they make. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rendering\\_equation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rendering_equation), [10], [2] and virtually any other text on advanced rendering and lighting for more details on the rendering equation.

#### II.I.3.2 The Phong Lighting Model

The most common local lighting model employed by game rendering engines is the *Phong* reflection model. It models the light reflected from a surface as a sum of three distinct terms:

- The *ambient* term models the overall lighting level of the scene. It is a gross approximation of the amount of indirect bounced light present in the scene. Indirect bounces are what cause regions in shadow not to appear totally black.
- The *diffuse* term accounts for light that is reflected uniformly in all directions from each direct light source. This is a good approximation to the way in which real light bounces off a matte surface, such as a block of wood or a piece of cloth.
- The *specular* term models the bright highlights we sometimes see when viewing a glossy surface. Specular highlights occur when the viewing angle is closely aligned with a path of direct reflection from a light source.

Figure 11.23 shows how the ambient, diffuse and specular terms add together to produce the final intensity and color of a surface.

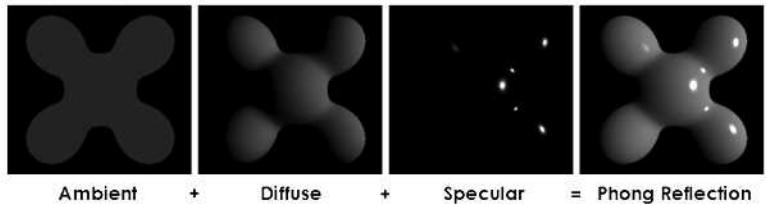


Figure II.23. Ambient, diffuse and specular terms are summed to calculate Phong reflection.

To calculate Phong reflection at a specific point on a surface, we require a number of input parameters. The Phong model is normally applied to all three color channels (R, G and B) independently, so all of the color parameters in the following discussion are three-element vectors. The inputs to the Phong model are:

- the viewing direction vector  $\mathbf{V} = [V_x \ V_y \ V_z]$ , which extends from the reflection point to the virtual camera's focal point (i.e., the negation of the camera's world-space "front" vector);
- the ambient light intensity for the three color channels,  $\mathbf{A} = [A_R \ A_G \ A_B]$ ;
- the surface normal  $\mathbf{N} = [N_x \ N_y \ N_z]$  at the point the light ray impinges on the surface;
- the surface reflectance properties, which are
  - the ambient reflectivity  $\mathbf{k}_A = [k_{AR} \ k_{AG} \ k_{AB}]$ ,
  - the diffuse reflectivity  $\mathbf{k}_D = [k_{DR} \ k_{DG} \ k_{DB}]$ ,
  - the specular reflectivity  $\mathbf{k}_S = [k_{SR} \ k_{SG} \ k_{SB}]$ ,
  - a specular "glossiness" exponent  $\alpha$ ;
- and, for each light source  $i$ ,
  - the light's color and intensity  $\mathbf{C}_i = [C_{iR} \ C_{iG} \ C_{iB}]$ ,
  - the direction vector  $\mathbf{L}_i$  from the reflection point to the light source.

In the Phong model, the intensity  $\mathbf{I}$  of light reflected from a point can be expressed with the following vector equation:

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{k}_A \otimes \mathbf{A}) + \sum_i [\mathbf{k}_D(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L}_i) + \mathbf{k}_S(\mathbf{R}_i \cdot \mathbf{V})^\alpha] \otimes \mathbf{C}_i,$$

where the sum is taken over all lights  $i$  affecting the point in question. Recall that the operator  $\otimes$  represents the *component-wise* multiplication of two vectors

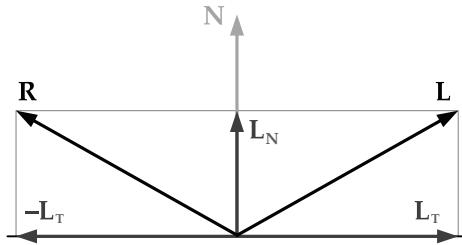


Figure II.24. Calculation of the reflected lighting vector  $\mathbf{R}$  from the original lighting vector  $\mathbf{L}$  and the surface normal  $\mathbf{N}$ .

(the so-called Hadamard product). This expression can be broken into three scalar equations, one for each color channel, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} I_R &= k_{AR}A_R + \sum_i [k_{DR}(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L}_i) + k_{SR}(\mathbf{R}_i \cdot \mathbf{V})^\alpha] C_{iR}, \\ I_G &= k_{AG}A_G + \sum_i [k_{DG}(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L}_i) + k_{SG}(\mathbf{R}_i \cdot \mathbf{V})^\alpha] C_{iG}, \\ I_B &= k_{AB}A_B + \sum_i [k_{DB}(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L}_i) + k_{SB}(\mathbf{R}_i \cdot \mathbf{V})^\alpha] C_{iB}. \end{aligned}$$

In these equations, the vector  $\mathbf{R}_i = [R_{ix} \quad R_{iy} \quad R_{iz}]$  is the *reflection* of the light ray's direction vector  $\mathbf{L}_i$  about the surface normal  $\mathbf{N}$ .

The vector  $\mathbf{R}_i$  can be easily calculated via a bit of vector math (see Figure 11.24). Any vector can be expressed as a sum of its normal and tangential components. For example, we can break up the light direction vector  $\mathbf{L}$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}_N + \mathbf{L}_T.$$

We know that the dot product  $(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L})$  represents the projection of  $\mathbf{L}$  normal to the surface (a scalar quantity). So the normal component  $\mathbf{L}_N$  is just the unit normal vector  $\mathbf{N}$  scaled by this dot product:

$$\mathbf{L}_N = (\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L})\mathbf{N}.$$

The reflected vector  $\mathbf{R}$  has the same normal component as  $\mathbf{L}$  but the *opposite* tangential component ( $-\mathbf{L}_T$ ). So we can find  $\mathbf{R}$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R} &= \mathbf{L}_N - \mathbf{L}_T \\ &= \mathbf{L}_N - (\mathbf{L} - \mathbf{L}_N) \\ &= 2\mathbf{L}_N - \mathbf{L}; \\ \mathbf{R} &= 2(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L})\mathbf{N} - \mathbf{L}_T \end{aligned}$$

This equation can be used to find all of the  $\mathbf{R}_i$  values corresponding to the light directions  $\mathbf{L}_i$ .

### *Blinn-Phong*

The *Blinn-Phong* lighting model is a variation on Phong shading that calculates specular reflection in a slightly different way. We define the vector  $\mathbf{H}$  to be the vector that lies halfway between the view vector  $\mathbf{V}$  and the light direction vector  $\mathbf{L}$ . The Blinn-Phong specular component is then  $(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{H})^a$ , as opposed to Phong's  $(\mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{V})^a$ . The exponent  $a$  is slightly different than the Phong exponent  $\alpha$ , but its value is chosen in order to closely match the equivalent Phong specular term.

The Blinn-Phong model offers increased runtime efficiency at the cost of some accuracy, although it actually matches empirical results more closely than Phong for some kinds of surfaces. The Blinn-Phong model was used almost exclusively in early computer games and was hard-wired into the fixed-function pipelines of early GPUs. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blinn%20Phong\\_shading\\_model](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blinn%20Phong_shading_model) for more details.

### *BRDF Plots*

The three terms in the Phong lighting model are special cases of a general local reflection model known as a *bidirectional reflection distribution function* (BRDF). A BRDF calculates the ratio of the outgoing (reflected) radiance along a given viewing direction  $\mathbf{V}$  to the incoming irradiance along the incident ray  $\mathbf{L}$ .

A BRDF can be visualized as a hemispherical plot, where the radial distance from the origin represents the intensity of the light that would be seen if the reflection point were viewed from that direction. The *diffuse* Phong reflection term is  $\mathbf{k}_D(\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L})$ . This term only accounts for the incoming illumination ray  $\mathbf{L}$ , not the viewing angle  $\mathbf{V}$ . Hence the value of this term is the same for all viewing angles. If we were to plot this term as a function of the viewing angle in three dimensions, it would look like a hemisphere centered on the point at which we are calculating the Phong reflection. This is shown in two dimensions in Figure 11.25.

The specular term of the Phong model is  $\mathbf{k}_S(\mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{V})^\alpha$ . This term is dependent on both the illumination direction  $\mathbf{L}$  and the viewing direction  $\mathbf{V}$ . It produces a specular “hot spot” when the viewing angle aligns closely with the reflection  $\mathbf{R}$  of the illumination direction  $\mathbf{L}$  about the surface normal. However, its contribution falls off very quickly as the viewing angle diverges from the reflected illumination direction. This is shown in two dimensions in Figure 11.26.

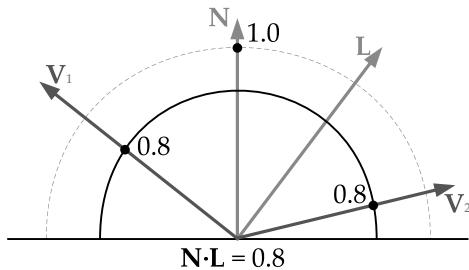


Figure II.25. The diffuse term of the Phong reflection model is dependent upon  $\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{L}$  but is independent of the viewing angle  $\mathbf{V}$ .

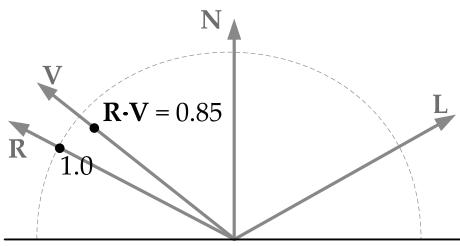


Figure II.26. The specular term of the Phong reflection model is at its maximum when the viewing angle  $\mathbf{V}$  coincides with the reflected light direction  $\mathbf{R}$  and drops off quickly as  $\mathbf{V}$  diverges from  $\mathbf{R}$ .

### II.I.3.3 Modeling Light Sources

In addition to modeling the light's interactions with surfaces, we need to describe the sources of light in the scene. As with all things in real-time rendering, we approximate real-world light sources using various simplified models.

#### Static Lighting

The fastest lighting calculation is the one you don't do at all. Lighting is therefore performed offline whenever possible. We can precalculate Phong reflection at the vertices of a mesh and store the results as diffuse vertex color attributes. We can also precalculate lighting on a per-pixel basis and store the results in a kind of texture map known as a *light map*. At runtime, the light map texture is projected onto the objects in the scene in order to determine the light's effects on them.

You might wonder why we don't just bake lighting information directly into the diffuse textures in the scene. There are a few reasons for this. For one thing, diffuse texture maps are often tiled and/or repeated throughout a scene,

so baking lighting into them wouldn't be practical. Instead, a single light map is usually generated per light source and applied to any objects that fall within that light's area of influence. This approach permits dynamic objects to move past a light source and be properly illuminated by it. It also means that our light maps can be of a different (often lower) resolution than our diffuse texture maps. Finally, a "pure" light map usually compresses better than one that includes diffuse color information.

### Ambient Lights

An *ambient light* corresponds to the ambient term in the Phong lighting model. This term is independent of the viewing angle and has no specific direction. An ambient light is therefore represented by a single color, corresponding to the  $\mathbf{A}$  color term in the Phong equation (which is scaled by the surface's ambient reflectivity  $\mathbf{k}_A$  at runtime). The intensity and color of ambient light may vary from region to region within the game world.

### Directional Lights

A *directional light* models a light source that is effectively an infinite distance away from the surface being illuminated—like the sun. The rays emanating from a directional light are parallel, and the light itself does not have any particular location in the game world. A directional light is therefore modeled as a light color  $\mathbf{C}$  and a direction vector  $\mathbf{L}$ . A directional light is depicted in Figure 11.27.

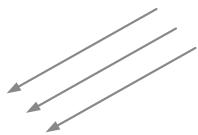


Figure 11.27. Model of a directional light source.

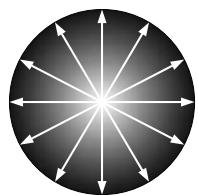


Figure 11.28. Model of a point light source.

### Point (Omnidirectional) Lights

A *point light* (*omnidirectional light*) has a distinct position in the game world and radiates uniformly in all directions. The intensity of the light is usually considered to fall off with the square of the distance from the light source, and beyond a predefined maximum radius its effects are simply clamped to zero. A point light is modeled as a light position  $\mathbf{P}$ , a source color/intensity  $\mathbf{C}$  and a maximum radius  $r_{\max}$ . The rendering engine only applies the effects of a point light to those surfaces that fall within its sphere of influence (a significant optimization). Figure 11.28 illustrates a point light.

### Spot Lights

A *spot light* acts like a point light whose rays are restricted to a cone-shaped region, like a flashlight. Usually two cones are specified with an inner and an outer angle. Within the inner cone, the light is considered to be at full intensity.

The light intensity falls off as the angle increases from the inner to the outer angle, and beyond the outer cone it is considered to be zero. Within both cones, the light intensity also falls off with radial distance. A spot light is modeled as a position  $\mathbf{P}$ , a source color  $\mathbf{C}$ , a central direction vector  $\mathbf{L}$ , a maximum radius  $r_{\max}$  and inner and outer cone angles  $\theta_{\min}$  and  $\theta_{\max}$ . Figure 11.29 illustrates a spot light source.

### *Area Lights*

All of the light sources we've discussed thus far radiate from an idealized point, either at infinity or locally. A real light source almost always has a nonzero area—this is what gives rise to the umbra and penumbra in the shadows it casts.

Rather than trying to model area lights explicitly, CG engineers often use various “tricks” to account for their behavior. For example to simulate a penumbra, we might cast multiple shadows and blend the results, or we might blur the edges of a sharp shadow in some manner.

### *Emissive Objects*

Some surfaces in a scene are themselves light sources. Examples include flashlights, glowing crystal balls, flames from a rocket engine and so on. Glowing surfaces can be modeled using an *emissive texture map*—a texture whose colors are always at full intensity, independent of the surrounding lighting environment. Such a texture could be used to define a neon sign, a car's headlights and so on.

Some kinds of emissive objects are rendered by combining multiple techniques. For example, a flashlight might be rendered using an emissive texture for when you're looking head-on into the beam, a colocated spot light that casts light into the scene, a yellow translucent mesh to simulate the light cone, some camera-facing transparent cards to simulate lens flare (or a *bloom* effect if high dynamic range lighting is supported by the engine), and a projected texture to produce the caustic effect that a flashlight has on the surfaces it illuminates. The flashlight in *Luigi's Mansion* is a great example of this kind of effect combination, as shown in Figure 11.30.

### II.I.4 The Virtual Camera

In computer graphics, the virtual camera is much simpler than a real camera or the human eye. We treat the camera as an ideal focal point with a rectangular virtual sensing surface called the *imaging rectangle* floating some small distance

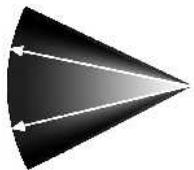


Figure 11.29. Model of a spot light source.



Figure II.30. The flashlight in *Luigi's Mansion* by Nintendo (Wii) is composed of numerous visual effects, including a cone of translucent geometry for the beam, a dynamic spot light to cast light into the scene, an emissive texture on the lens and camera-facing cards for the lens flare. (See Color Plate XVIII.)

in front of it. The imaging rectangle consists of a grid of square or rectangular virtual light sensors, each corresponding to a single pixel on-screen. Rendering can be thought of as the process of determining what color and intensity of light would be recorded by each of these virtual sensors.

#### II.1.4.1 View Space

The focal point of the virtual camera is the origin of a 3D coordinate system known as *view space* or *camera space*. The camera usually “looks” down the positive or negative  $z$ -axis in view space, with  $y$  up and  $x$  to the left or right. Typical left- and right-handed view-space axes are illustrated in Figure 11.31.

The camera’s position and orientation can be specified using a view-to-world matrix, just as a mesh instance is located in the scene with its model-to-world matrix. If we know the position vector and three unit basis vectors of camera space, expressed in world-space coordinates, the view-to-world matrix can be written as follows, in a manner analogous to that used to construct a model-to-world matrix:

$$\mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow W} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{i}_V & 0 \\ \mathbf{j}_V & 0 \\ \mathbf{k}_V & 0 \\ \hline \mathbf{t}_V & 1 \end{array} \right].$$

When rendering a triangle mesh, its vertices are transformed first from model space to world space, and then from world space to view space. To perform this latter transformation, we need the world-to-view matrix, which is the inverse of the view-to-world matrix. This matrix is sometimes called the *view matrix*:

$$\mathbf{M}_{W \rightarrow V} = \mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow W}^{-1} = \mathbf{M}_{\text{view}}.$$

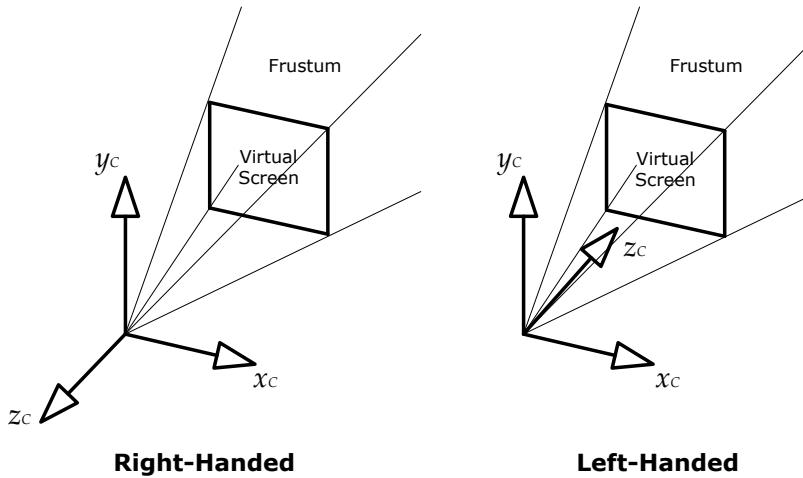


Figure 11.31. Left- and right-handed camera-space axes.

Be careful here. The fact that the camera's matrix is inverted relative to the matrices of the objects in the scene is a common point of confusion and bugs among new game developers.

The world-to-view matrix is often concatenated to the model-to-world matrix prior to rendering a particular mesh instance. This combined matrix is called the *model-view matrix* in OpenGL. We precalculate this matrix so that the rendering engine only needs to do a single matrix multiply when transforming vertices from model space into view space:

$$\mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow V} = \mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow W} \mathbf{M}_{W \rightarrow V} = \mathbf{M}_{\text{modelview}}.$$

#### II.I.4.2 Projections

In order to render a 3D scene onto a 2D image plane, we use a special kind of transformation known as a *projection*. The *perspective projection* is the most common projection in computer graphics, because it mimics the kinds of images produced by a typical camera. With this projection, objects appear smaller the farther away they are from the camera—an effect known as *perspective foreshortening*.

The length-preserving *orthographic projection* is also used by some games, primarily for rendering *plan views* (e.g., front, side and top) of 3D models or game levels for editing purposes, and for overlaying 2D graphics onto the screen for heads-up displays and the like. Figure 11.32 illustrates how a cube would look when rendered with these two types of projections.

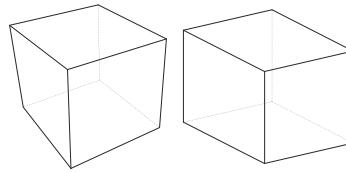


Figure II.32. A cube rendered using a perspective projection (on the left) and an orthographic projection (on the right).

#### II.1.4.3 The View Volume and the Frustum

The region of space that the camera can “see” is known as the view volume. A view volume is defined by six planes. The *near plane* corresponds to the virtual image-sensing surface. The four side planes correspond to the edges of the virtual screen. The *far plane* is used as a rendering optimization to ensure that extremely distant objects are not drawn. It also provides an upper limit for the depths that will be stored in the depth buffer (see Section 11.1.4.8).

When rendering the scene with a *perspective* projection, the shape of the view volume is a truncated pyramid known as a *frustum*. When using an orthographic projection, the view volume is a rectangular prism. Perspective and orthographic view volumes are illustrated in Figure 11.33 and Figure 11.34, respectively.

The six planes of the view volume can be represented compactly using six four-element vectors  $(n_{ix}, n_{iy}, n_{iz}, d_i)$ , where  $\mathbf{n} = (n_x, n_y, n_z)$  is the plane normal and  $d$  is its perpendicular distance from the origin. If we prefer the

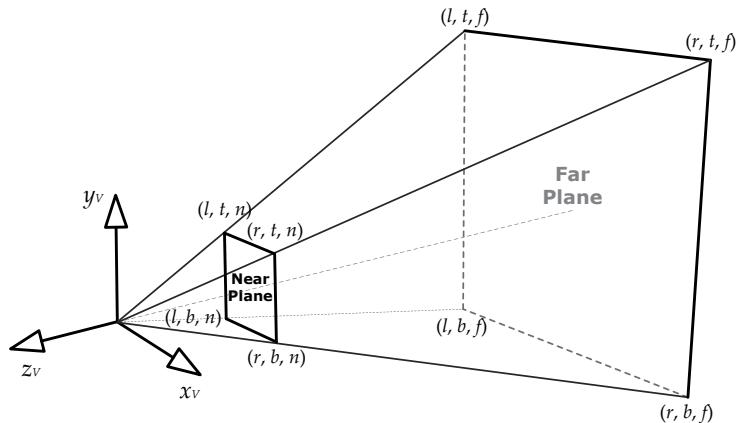


Figure 11.33. A perspective view volume (frustum).

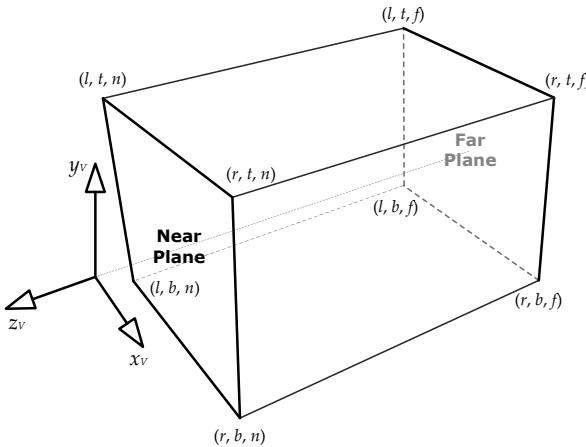


Figure II.34. An orthographic view volume.

point-normal plane representation, we can also describe the planes with six pairs of vectors  $(\mathbf{Q}_i, \mathbf{n}_i)$ , where  $\mathbf{Q}$  is the arbitrary point on the plane and  $\mathbf{n}$  is the plane normal. (In both cases,  $i$  is an index representing the six planes.)

#### II.I.4.4 Projection and Homogeneous Clip Space

Both perspective and orthographic projections transform points in view space into a coordinate space called *homogeneous clip space*. This three-dimensional space is really just a warped version of view space. The purpose of clip space is to convert the camera-space view volume into a canonical view volume that is independent both of the kind of *projection* used to convert the 3D scene into 2D screen space, and of the *resolution* and *aspect ratio* of the screen onto which the scene is going to be rendered.

In clip space, the canonical view volume is a rectangular prism extending from  $-1$  to  $+1$  along the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes. Along the  $z$ -axis, the view volume extends either from  $-1$  to  $+1$  (OpenGL) or from  $0$  to  $1$  (DirectX). We call this coordinate system “clip space” because the view volume planes are axis-aligned, making it convenient to *clip* triangles to the view volume in this space (even when a perspective projection is being used). The canonical clip-space view volume for OpenGL is depicted in Figure 11.35. Notice that the  $z$ -axis of clip space goes into the screen, with  $y$  up and  $x$  to the right. In other words, homogeneous clip space is usually *left-handed*. A left-handed convention is used here because it causes increasing  $z$  values to correspond to increasing *depth* into the screen, with  $y$  increasing up and  $x$  increasing to the right as usual.

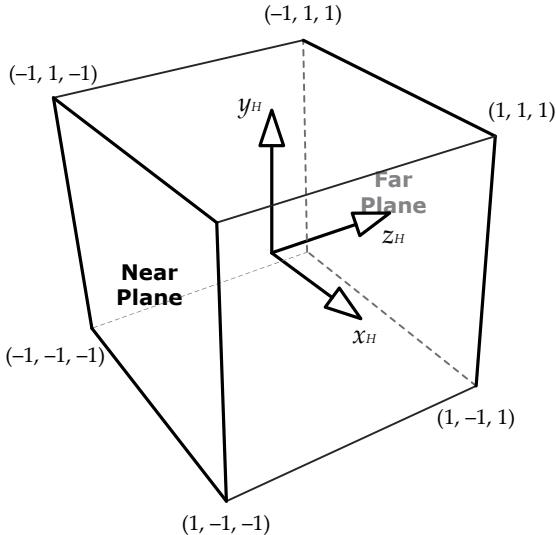


Figure II.35. The canonical view volume in homogeneous clip space.

### *Perspective Projection*

An excellent explanation of perspective projection is given in Section 4.5.1 of [32], so we won't repeat it here. Instead, we'll simply present the perspective projection matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow H}$  below. (The subscript  $V \rightarrow H$  indicates that this matrix transforms vertices from view space into homogeneous clip space.) If we take view space to be right-handed, then the near plane intersects the  $z$ -axis at  $z = -n$ , and the far plane intersects it at  $z = -f$ . The virtual screen's left, right, bottom, and top edges lie at  $x = l$ ,  $x = r$ ,  $y = b$  and  $y = t$  on the near plane, respectively. (Typically the virtual screen is centered on the camera-space  $z$ -axis, in which case  $l = -r$  and  $b = -t$ , but this isn't always the case.) Using these definitions, the perspective projection matrix for OpenGL is as follows:

$$\mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow H} = \begin{bmatrix} \left( \frac{2n}{r-l} \right) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \left( \frac{2n}{t-b} \right) & 0 & 0 \\ \left( \frac{r+l}{r-l} \right) & \left( \frac{t+b}{t-b} \right) & \left( -\frac{f+n}{f-n} \right) & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & \left( -\frac{2nf}{f-n} \right) & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

DirectX defines the  $z$ -axis extents of the clip-space view volume to lie in

the range  $[0, 1]$  rather than in the range  $[-1, 1]$  as OpenGL does. We can easily adjust the perspective projection matrix to account for DirectX's conventions as follows:

$$(\mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow H})_{\text{DirectX}} = \begin{bmatrix} \left(\frac{2n}{r-l}\right) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \left(\frac{2n}{t-b}\right) & 0 & 0 \\ \left(\frac{r+l}{r-l}\right) & \left(\frac{t+b}{t-b}\right) & \left(-\frac{f}{f-n}\right) & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & \left(-\frac{nf}{f-n}\right) & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

*Division by z*

Perspective projection results in each vertex's  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates being divided by its  $z$ -coordinate. This is what produces perspective foreshortening. To understand why this happens, consider multiplying a view-space point  $\mathbf{p}_V$  expressed in four-element homogeneous coordinates by the OpenGL perspective projection matrix:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{p}_H &= \mathbf{p}_V \mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow H} \\ &= [p_{Vx} \ p_{Vy} \ p_{Vz} \ 1] \begin{bmatrix} \left(\frac{2n}{r-l}\right) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \left(\frac{2n}{t-b}\right) & 0 & 0 \\ \left(\frac{r+l}{r-l}\right) & \left(\frac{t+b}{t-b}\right) & \left(-\frac{f+n}{f-n}\right) & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & \left(-\frac{2nf}{f-n}\right) & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

The result of this multiplication takes the form

$$\mathbf{p}_H = [a \ b \ c \ -p_{Vz}]. \quad (11.1)$$

When we convert any homogeneous vector into three-dimensional coordinates, the  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -components are divided by the  $w$ -component:

$$[x \ y \ z \ w] \equiv \left[ \frac{x}{w} \ \frac{y}{w} \ \frac{z}{w} \right].$$

So, after dividing Equation (11.1) by the homogeneous  $w$ -component, which is really just the negative view-space  $z$ -coordinate  $-p_{Vz}$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{p}_H &= \left[ \frac{a}{-p_{Vz}} \ \frac{b}{-p_{Vz}} \ \frac{c}{-p_{Vz}} \right] \\ &= [p_{Hx} \ p_{Hy} \ p_{Hz}]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the homogeneous clip-space coordinates have been divided by the view-space  $z$ -coordinate, which is what causes perspective foreshortening.

#### *Perspective-Correct Vertex Attribute Interpolation*

In Section 11.1.2.4, we learned that vertex attributes are interpolated in order to determine appropriate values for them within the interior of a triangle. Attribute interpolation is performed in *screen space*. We iterate over each pixel of the screen and attempt to determine the value of each attribute at the corresponding location *on the surface of the triangle*. When rendering a scene with a perspective projection, we must do this very carefully so as to account for perspective foreshortening. This is known as *perspective-correct* attribute interpolation.

A derivation of perspective-correct interpolation is beyond our scope, but suffice it to say that we must divide our interpolated attribute values by the corresponding  $z$ -coordinates (depths) at each vertex. For any pair of vertex attributes  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ , we can write the interpolated attribute at a percentage  $t$  of the distance between them as follows:

$$\frac{A}{p_z} = (1 - t) \left( \frac{A_1}{p_{1z}} \right) + t \left( \frac{A_2}{p_{2z}} \right) = \text{LERP} \left( \frac{A_1}{p_{1z}}, \frac{A_2}{p_{2z}}, t \right).$$

Refer to [32] for an excellent derivation of the math behind perspective-correct attribute interpolation.

#### *Orthographic Projection*

An orthographic projection is performed by the following matrix:

$$(\mathbf{M}_{V \rightarrow H})_{\text{ortho}} = \begin{bmatrix} \left( \frac{2}{r-l} \right) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \left( \frac{2}{t-b} \right) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \left( -\frac{2}{f-n} \right) & 0 \\ \left( -\frac{r+l}{r-l} \right) & \left( -\frac{t+b}{t-b} \right) & \left( -\frac{f+n}{f-n} \right) & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

This is just an everyday scale-and-translate matrix. (The upper-left  $3 \times 3$  contains a diagonal nonuniform scaling matrix, and the lower row contains the translation.) Since the view volume is a rectangular prism in both view space and clip space, we need only scale and translate our vertices to convert from one space to the other.

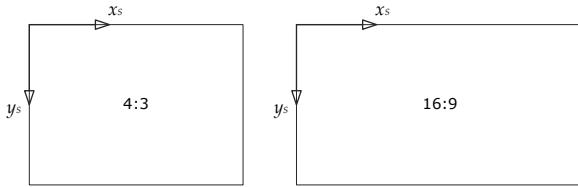


Figure II.36. The two most prevalent screen-space aspect ratios are 4:3 and 16:9.

#### II.I.4.5 Screen Space and Aspect Ratios

Screen space is a two-dimensional coordinate system whose axes are measured in terms of screen pixels. The  $x$ -axis typically points to the right, with the origin at the top-left corner of the screen and  $y$  pointing down. (The reason for the inverted  $y$ -axis is that CRT monitors scan the screen from top to bottom.) The ratio of screen width to screen height is known as the *aspect ratio*. The most common aspect ratios are 4:3 (the aspect ratio of a traditional television screen) and 16:9 (the aspect ratio of a movie screen or HDTV). These aspect ratios are illustrated in Figure 11.36.

We can render triangles expressed in homogeneous clip space by simply drawing their  $(x, y)$  coordinates and ignoring  $z$ . But before we do, we scale and shift the clip-space coordinates so that they lie in screen space rather than within the normalized unit square. This scale-and-shift operation is known as *screen mapping*.

#### II.I.4.6 The Frame Buffer

The final rendered image is stored in a bitmapped color buffer known as the *frame buffer*. Pixel colors are usually stored in RGBA8888 format, although other frame buffer formats are supported by most graphics cards as well. Some common formats include RGB565, RGB5551, and one or more palettes.

The display hardware (CRT, flat-screen monitor, HDTV, etc.) reads the contents of the frame buffer at a periodic rate of 60 Hz for NTSC televisions used in North America and Japan, or 50 Hz for PAL/SECAM televisions used in Europe and many other places in the world. Rendering engines typically maintain at least two frame buffers. While one is being scanned by the display hardware, the other one can be updated by the rendering engine. This is known as *double buffering*. By swapping or “flipping” the two buffers during the *vertical blanking interval* (the period during which the CRT’s electron gun is being reset to the top-left corner of the screen), double buffering ensures that the display hardware always scans the complete frame buffer. This avoids a jarring effect

known as *tearing*, in which the upper portion of the screen displays the newly rendered image while the bottom shows the remnants of the previous frame's image.

Some engines make use of three frame buffers—a technique aptly known as *triple buffering*. This is done so that the rendering engine can start work on the next frame, even while the previous frame is still being scanned by the display hardware. For example, the hardware might still be scanning buffer A when the engine finishes drawing buffer B. With triple buffering, it can proceed to render a new frame into buffer C, rather than idling while it waits for the display hardware to finish scanning buffer A.

### Render Targets

Any buffer into which the rendering engine draws graphics is known as a *render target*. As we'll see later in this chapter, rendering engines make use of all sorts of other off-screen render targets in addition to the frame buffers. These include the depth buffer, the stencil buffer and various other buffers used for storing intermediate rendering results.

#### II.1.4.7 Triangle Rasterization and Fragments

To produce an image of a triangle on-screen, we need to fill in the pixels it overlaps. This process is known as rasterization. During rasterization, the triangle's surface is broken into pieces called *fragments*, each one representing a small region of the triangle's surface that corresponds to a single pixel on the screen. (In the case of multisample antialiasing, a fragment corresponds to a *portion* of a pixel—see below.)

A fragment is like a pixel in training. Before it is written into the frame buffer, it must pass a number of tests (described in more depth below). If it fails any of these tests, it will be discarded. Fragments that pass the tests are shaded (i.e., their colors are determined), and the fragment color is either written into the frame buffer or blended with the pixel color that's already there. Figure 11.37 illustrates how a fragment becomes a pixel.

#### II.1.4.8 Occlusion and the Depth Buffer

When rendering two triangles that overlap each other in screen space, we need some way of ensuring that the triangle that is closer to the camera will appear on top. We could accomplish this by always rendering our triangles in back-to-front order (the so-called painter's algorithm). However, as shown in Figure 11.38, this doesn't work if the triangles are intersecting one another.

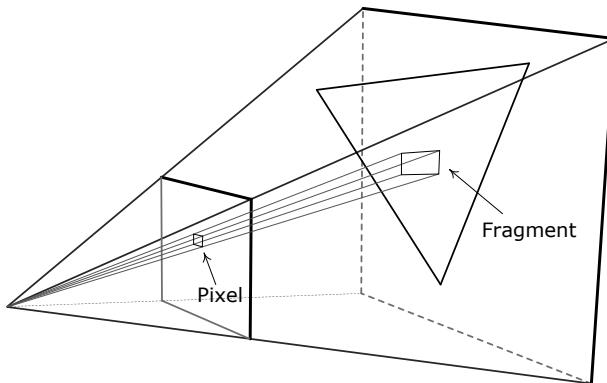


Figure II.37. A fragment is a small region of a triangle corresponding to a pixel on the screen. It passes through the rendering pipeline and is either discarded or its color is written into the frame buffer.

To implement triangle occlusion properly, independent of the order in which the triangles are rendered, rendering engines use a technique known as *depth buffering* or *z-buffering*. The depth buffer is a full-screen buffer that typically contains 24-bit integer or (more rarely) floating-point depth information for each pixel in the frame buffer. (The depth buffer is usually stored in a 32-bits-per-pixel format, with a 24-bit depth value and an 8-bit stencil value packed into each pixel's 32-bit quadword.) Every fragment has a z-coordinate that measures its depth “into” the screen. (The depth of a fragment is found by interpolating the depths of the triangle's vertices.) When a fragment's color is written into the frame buffer, its depth is stored into the corresponding pixel of the depth buffer. When another fragment (from another triangle) is drawn into the same pixel, the engine compares the new fragment's depth to the depth already present in the depth buffer. If the fragment is closer to the camera (i.e.,

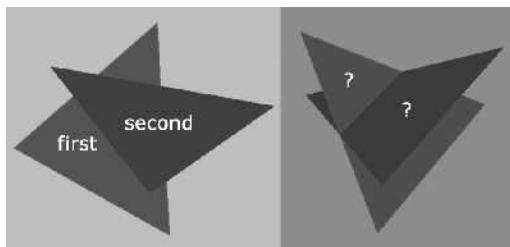


Figure II.38. The painter's algorithm renders triangles in a back-to-front order to produce proper triangle occlusion. However, the algorithm breaks down when triangles intersect one another.

if it has a smaller depth), it overwrites the pixel in the frame buffer. Otherwise the fragment is discarded.

### *z-Fighting and the w-Buffer*

When rendering parallel surfaces that are very close to one another, it's important that the rendering engine can distinguish between the depths of the two planes. If our depth buffer had infinite precision, this would never be a problem. Unfortunately, a real depth buffer only has limited precision, so the depth values of two planes can collapse into a single discrete value when the planes are close enough together. When this happens, the more-distant plane's pixels start to "poke through" the nearer plane, resulting in a noisy effect known as *z-fighting*.

To reduce z-fighting to a minimum across the entire scene, we would like to have equal precision whether we're rendering surfaces that are close to the camera or far away. However, with z-buffering this is not the case. The precision of clip-space z-depths ( $p_{H_z}$ ) are not evenly distributed across the entire range from the near plane to the far plane, because of the division by the view-space z-coordinate. Because of the shape of the  $1/z$  curve, most of the depth buffer's precision is concentrated near the camera.

The plot of the function  $p_{H_z} = 1/p_{V_z}$  shown in Figure 11.39 demonstrates this effect. Near the camera, the distance between two planes in view space  $\Delta p_{V_z}$  gets transformed into a reasonably large delta in clip space  $\Delta p_{H_z}$ . But far from the camera, this same separation gets transformed into a tiny delta in clip space. The result is z-fighting, and it becomes rapidly more prevalent as objects get farther away from the camera.

To circumvent this problem, we would like to store *view-space* z-coordinates ( $p_{V_z}$ ) in the depth buffer instead of clip-space z-coordinates ( $p_{H_z}$ ). View-space z-coordinates vary linearly with the distance from the camera, so using them as our depth measure achieves uniform precision across the entire depth range.

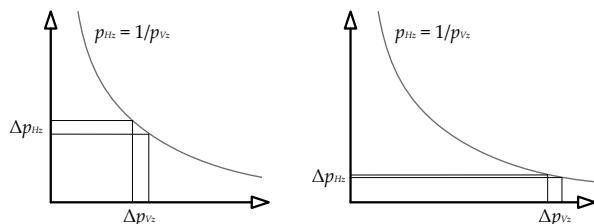


Figure 11.39. A plot of the function  $1/p_{V_z}$ , showing how most of the precision lies close to the camera.

This technique is called *w-buffering*, because the view-space  $z$ -coordinate conveniently appears in the  $w$ -component of our homogeneous clip-space coordinates. (Recall from Equation (11.1) that  $p_{Hw} = -p_{Vz}$ .)

The terminology can be very confusing here. The  $z$ - and  $w$ -buffers store coordinates that are expressed in *clip space*. But in terms of *view-space* coordinates, the  $z$ -buffer stores  $1/z$  (i.e.,  $1/p_{Vz}$ ) while the  $w$ -buffer stores  $z$  (i.e.,  $p_{Vz}$ )!

We should note here that the  $w$ -buffering approach is a bit more expensive than its  $z$ -based counterpart. This is because with  $w$ -buffering, we cannot linearly interpolate depths directly. Depths must be inverted prior to interpolation and then re-inverted prior to being stored in the  $w$ -buffer.

## 11.2 The Rendering Pipeline

Now that we've completed our whirlwind tour of the major theoretical and practical underpinnings of triangle rasterization, let's turn our attention to how it is typically implemented. In real-time game rendering engines, the high-level rendering steps described in Section 11.1 are implemented using a software/hardware architecture known as a *pipeline*. A pipeline is just an ordered chain of computational stages, each with a specific purpose, operating on a stream of input data items and producing a stream of output data.

Each stage of a pipeline can typically operate independently of the other stages. Hence, one of the biggest advantages of a pipelined architecture is that it lends itself extremely well to parallelization. While the first stage is chewing on one data element, the second stage can be processing the results previously produced by the first stage, and so on down the chain.

Parallelization can also be achieved within an individual stage of the pipeline. For example, if the computing hardware for a particular stage is duplicated  $N$  times on the die,  $N$  data elements can be processed in parallel by that stage. A parallelized pipeline is shown in Figure 11.40. Ideally the stages operate in parallel (most of the time), and certain stages are capable of operating on multiple data items simultaneously as well.

The *throughput* of a pipeline measures how many data items are processed per second overall. The pipeline's *latency* measures the amount of time it takes for a single data element to make it through the entire pipeline. The latency of an individual stage measures how long that stage takes to process a single item. The slowest stage of a pipeline dictates the throughput of the entire pipeline. It also has an impact on the average latency of the pipeline as a whole. Therefore, when designing a rendering pipeline, we attempt to minimize and balance latency across the entire pipeline and eliminate bottlenecks. In a well-

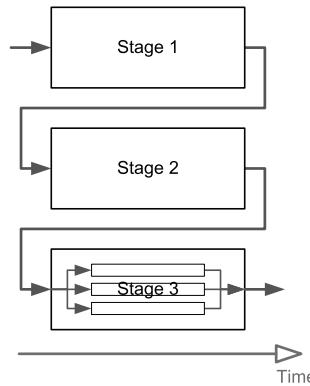


Figure II.40. A parallelized pipeline. The stages all operate in parallel, and some stages are capable of operating on multiple data items simultaneously as well.

designed pipeline, all the stages operate simultaneously, and no stage is ever idle for very long waiting for another stage to become free.

### II.2.1 Overview of the Rendering Pipeline

Some graphics texts divide the rendering pipeline into three coarse-grained stages. In this book, we'll extend this pipeline back even further, to encompass the offline tools used to create the scenes that are ultimately rendered by the game engine. The high-level stages in our pipeline are:

- *Tools stage (offline)*. Geometry and surface properties (materials) are defined.
- *Asset conditioning stage (offline)*. The geometry and material data are processed by the asset conditioning pipeline (ACP) into an engine-ready format.
- *Application stage (CPU)*. Potentially visible mesh instances are identified and submitted to the graphics hardware along with their materials for rendering.
- *Geometry processing stage (GPU)*. Vertices are transformed and lit and projected into homogeneous clip space. Triangles are processed by the optional geometry shader and then clipped to the frustum.
- *Rasterization stage (GPU)*. Triangles are converted into fragments that are shaded, passed through various tests (z-test, alpha test, stencil test, etc.) and finally blended into the frame buffer.

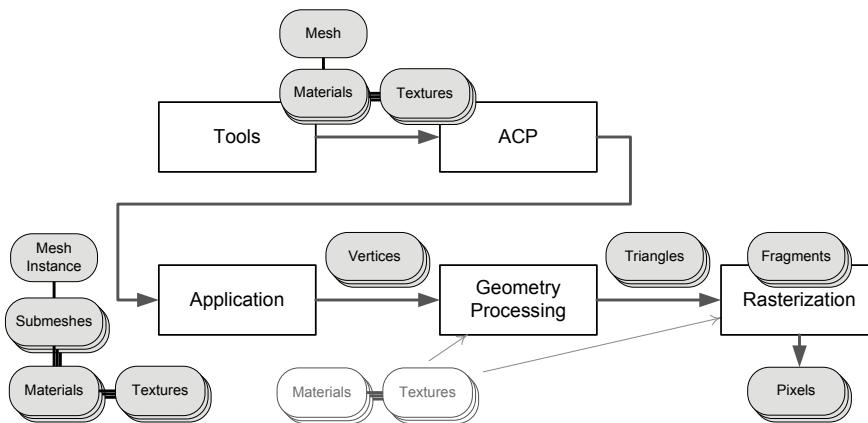


Figure II.41. The format of geometric data changes radically as it passes through the various stages of the rendering pipeline.

### II.2.1.1 How the Rendering Pipeline Transforms Data

It's interesting to note how the format of geometry data changes as it passes through the rendering pipeline. The tools and asset conditioning stages deal with meshes and materials. The application stage deals in terms of mesh instances and submeshes, each of which is associated with a single material. During the geometry stage, each submesh is broken down into individual vertices, which are processed largely in parallel. At the conclusion of this stage, the triangles are reconstructed from the fully transformed and shaded vertices. In the rasterization stage, each triangle is broken into fragments, and these fragments are either discarded, or they are eventually written into the frame buffer as colors. This process is illustrated in Figure 11.41.

### II.2.1.2 Implementation of the Pipeline

The first two stages of the rendering pipeline are implemented offline, usually executed by a Windows or Linux machine. The application stage is typically run on one or more CPU cores, whereas the geometry and rasterization stages are usually executed by the graphics processing unit (GPU). In the following sections, we'll explore some of the details of how each of these stages is implemented.

### II.2.2 The Tools Stage

In the tools stage, meshes are authored by 3D modelers in a *digital content creation* (DCC) application like Maya, 3ds Max, Lightwave, Softimage/XSI,

SketchUp, etc. The models may be defined using any convenient surface description—NURBS, quads, triangles, etc. However, they are invariably tessellated into triangles prior to rendering by the runtime portion of the pipeline.

The vertices of a mesh may also be skinned. This involves associating each vertex with one or more joints in an articulated skeletal structure, along with weights describing each joint's relative influence over the vertex. Skinning information and the skeleton are used by the animation system to drive the movements of a model—see Chapter 12 for more details.

Materials are also defined by the artists during the tools stage. This involves selecting a shader for each material, selecting textures as required by the shader, and specifying the configuration parameters and options of each shader. Textures are mapped onto the surfaces, and other vertex attributes are also defined, often by “painting” them with some kind of intuitive tool within the DCC application.

Materials are usually authored using a commercial or custom in-house material editor. The material editor is sometimes integrated directly into the DCC application as a plug-in, or it may be a stand-alone program. Some material editors are live-linked to the game, so that material authors can see what the materials will look like in the real game. Other editors provide an offline 3D visualization view. Some editors even allow shader programs to be written and debugged by the artist or a shader engineer. Such tools allow rapid prototyping of visual effects by connecting various kinds of nodes together with a mouse. These tools generally provide a WYSIWYG display of the resulting material. NVIDIA's Fx Composer is an example of such a tool. Sadly, NVIDIA is no longer updating Fx Composer, and it only supports shader models up to DirectX 10. But they do offer a new Visual Studio plugin called NVIDIA® Nsight™ Visual Studio Edition. Depicted in Figure 11.42, Nsight provides powerful shader authoring and debugging facilities. The Unreal Engine also provides a graphical shader editor called Material Editor; it is shown in Figure 11.43.

Materials may be stored and managed with the individual meshes. However, this can lead to duplication of data—and effort. In many games, a relatively small number of materials can be used to define a wide range of objects in the game. For example, we might define some standard, reusable materials like wood, rock, metal, plastic, cloth, skin and so on. There's no reason to duplicate these materials inside every mesh. Instead, many game teams build up a library of materials from which to choose, and the individual meshes refer to the materials in a loosely coupled manner.

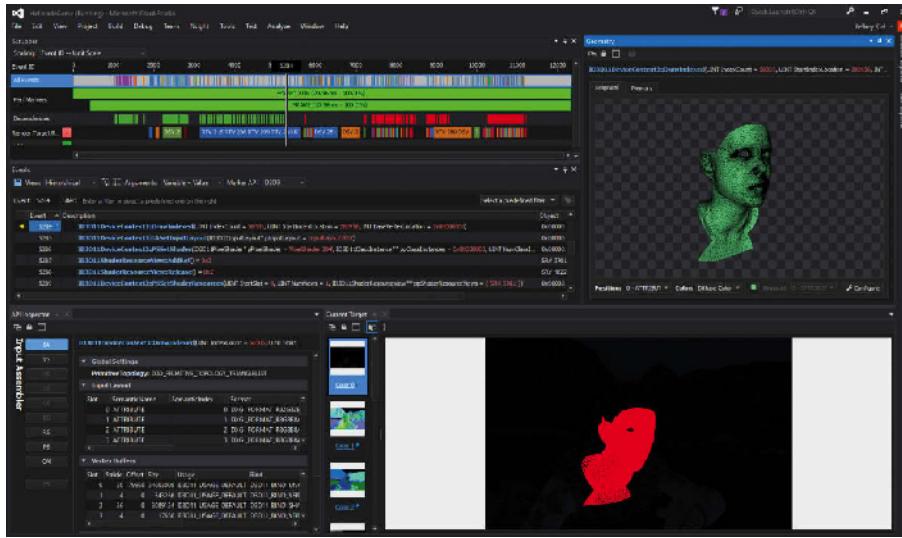


Figure II.42. NVIDIA® Nsight™ Visual Studio Edition allows shader programs to be written, pre-visualized and debugged easily.

### II.2.3 The Asset Conditioning Stage

The asset conditioning stage is itself a pipeline, sometimes called the *asset conditioning pipeline* (ACP) or the *tools pipeline*. As we saw in Section 7.2.1.4, its job is to export, process and link together multiple types of assets into a cohesive whole. For example, a 3D model is comprised of geometry (vertex and index buffers), materials, textures and an optional skeleton. The ACP ensures that all of the individual assets referenced by a 3D model are available and ready to be loaded by the engine.

Geometric and material data is extracted from the DCC application and is usually stored in a platform-independent intermediate format. The data is then further processed into one or more platform-specific formats, depending on how many target platforms the engine supports. Ideally the platform-specific assets produced by this stage are ready to load into memory and use with little or no postprocessing at runtime. For example, mesh data targeted for the Xbox One or PS4 might be output as index and vertex buffers that are ready to be consumed by the GPU; on the PS3, geometry might be produced in compressed data streams that are ready to be DMA'd to the SPUs for decompression. The ACP often takes the needs of the material/shader into account

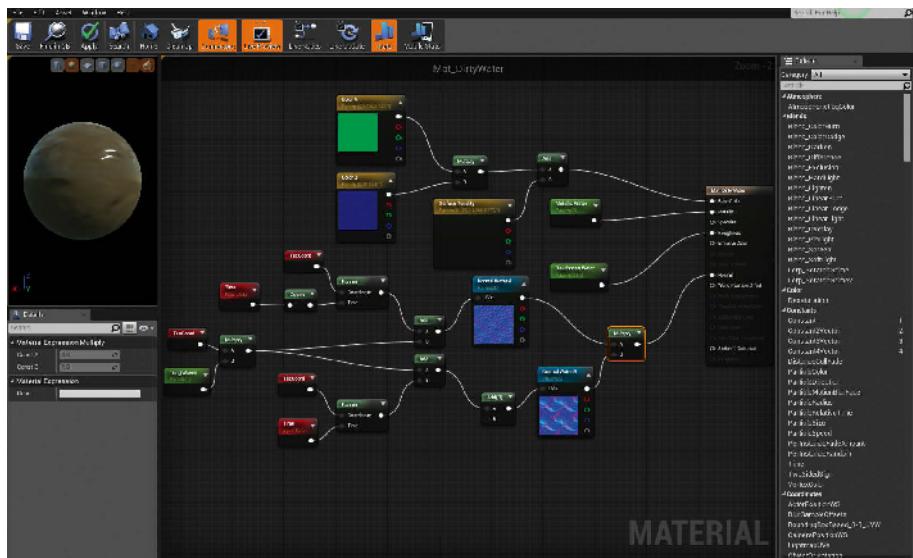


Figure II.43. The Unreal Engine 4 Material Editor.

when building assets. For example, a particular shader might require tangent and bitangent vectors as well as a vertex normal; the ACP could generate these vectors automatically.

High-level *scene graph* data structures may also be computed during the asset conditioning stage. For example, static-level geometry may be processed in order to build a BSP tree. (As we'll investigate in Section 11.2.7.4, scene graph data structures help the rendering engine to very quickly determine which objects should be rendered, given a particular camera position and orientation.)

Expensive lighting calculations are often done offline as part of the asset conditioning stage. This is called *static lighting*; it may include calculation of light colors at the vertices of a mesh (this is called “baked” vertex lighting), construction of texture maps that encode per-pixel lighting information known as *light maps*, calculation of *precomputed radiance transfer* (PRT) coefficients (usually represented by spherical harmonic functions) and so on.

#### II.2.4 The GPU Pipeline

Graphics hardware has evolved around a specialized type of microprocessor known as a *graphics processing unit* or GPU. As we discussed in Section 4.11,

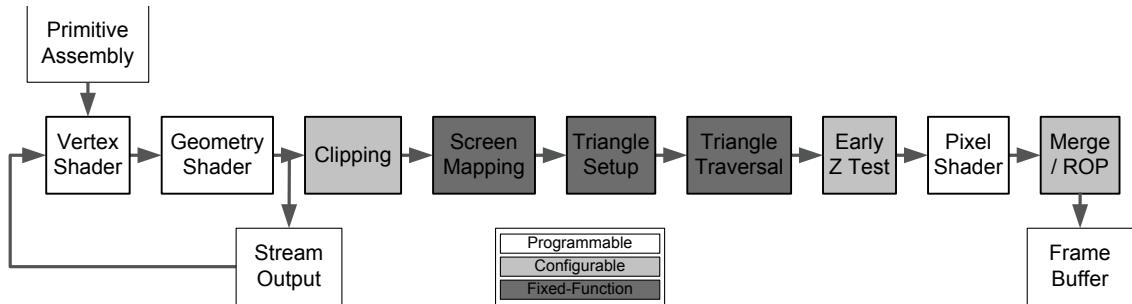


Figure II.44. The geometry processing and rasterization stages of the rendering pipeline, as implemented by a typical GPU. The white stages are programmable, the light grey stages are configurable, and the dark grey boxes are fixed-function.

a GPU is designed to maximize throughput of the graphics pipeline, which it achieves through massive parallelization of tasks like vertex processing and per-pixel shading calculations. For example, a modern GPU like the AMD Radeon™ 7970 can achieve a peak performance of 4 TFLOPS, which it does by executing workloads in parallel across 32 compute units, each of which contains four 16-lane SIMD VPUs, which in turn execute pipelined wavefronts consisting of 64 threads each. A GPU can be used to render graphics, but today's GPUs are also fully programmable, allowing programmers to leverage the awesome computing power of a GPU to execute *compute shaders*. This is known as *general-purpose GPU* computing (GPGPU).

Virtually all GPUs break the graphics pipeline into the substages described below and depicted in Figure 11.44. Each stage is shaded to indicate whether its functionality is programmable, fixed but configurable, or fixed and non-configurable.

#### II.2.4.1 Vertex Shader

This stage is fully programmable. It is responsible for transformation and shading/lighting of individual vertices. The input to this stage is a single vertex (although in practice many vertices are processed in parallel). Its position and normal are typically expressed in model space or world space. The vertex shader handles transformation from model space to view space via the model-view transform. Perspective projection is also applied, as well as per-vertex lighting and texturing calculations, and skinning for animated characters. The vertex shader can also perform procedural animation by modifying the position of the vertex. Examples of this include foliage that sways in the breeze or an undulating water surface. The output of this stage is a fully transformed and lit vertex, whose position and normal are expressed in homogeneous clip

space (see Section 11.1.4.4).

On modern GPUs, the vertex shader has full access to texture data—a capability that used to be available only to the pixel shader. This is particularly useful when textures are used as stand-alone data structures like heightmaps or look-up tables.

#### II.2.4.2 Geometry Shader

This optional stage is also fully programmable. The geometry shader operates on entire primitives (triangles, lines and points) in homogeneous clip space. It is capable of culling or modifying input primitives, and it can also generate new primitives. Typical uses include shadow volume extrusion (see Section 11.3.3.1), rendering the six faces of a cube map (see Section 11.3.1.4), fur fin extrusion around silhouette edges of meshes, creation of particle quads from point data (see Section 11.4.1), dynamic tessellation, fractal subdivision of line segments for lightning effects, cloth simulations, and the list goes on.

#### II.2.4.3 Stream Output

Some GPUs permit the data that has been processed up to this point in the pipeline to be written back to memory. From there, it can then be looped back to the top of the pipeline for further processing. This feature is called *stream output*.

Stream output permits a number of intriguing visual effects to be achieved without the aid of the CPU. An excellent example is hair rendering. Hair is often represented as a collection of cubic spline curves. It used to be that hair physics simulation would be done on the CPU. The CPU would also tessellate the splines into line segments. Finally the GPU would render the segments.

With stream output, the GPU can do the physics simulation on the control points of the hair splines within the vertex shader. The geometry shader tessellates the splines, and the stream output feature is used to write the tessellated vertex data to memory. The line segments are then piped back into the top of the pipeline so they can be rendered.

#### II.2.4.4 Clipping

The clipping stage chops off those portions of the triangles that straddle the frustum. Clipping is done by identifying vertices that lie outside the frustum and then finding the intersection of the triangle's edges with the planes of the frustum. These intersection points become new vertices that define one or more clipped triangles.

This stage is fixed in function, but it is somewhat configurable. For example, user-defined clipping planes can be added in addition to the frustum

planes. This stage can also be configured to cull triangles that lie entirely outside the frustum.

#### II.2.4.5 Screen Mapping

Screen mapping simply scales and shifts the vertices from homogeneous clip space into screen space. This stage is entirely fixed and non-configurable.

#### II.2.4.6 Triangle Set-up

During triangle set-up, the rasterization hardware is initialized for efficient conversion of the triangle into fragments. This stage is not configurable.

#### II.2.4.7 Triangle Traversal

Each triangle is broken into fragments (i.e., rasterized) by the triangle traversal stage. Usually one fragment is generated for each pixel, although with certain antialiasing techniques, multiple fragments may be created per pixel (see Section 11.1.4.7). The triangle traversal stage also interpolates vertex attributes in order to generate per-fragment attributes for processing by the pixel shader. Perspective-correct interpolation is used where appropriate. This stage's functionality is fixed and not configurable.

#### II.2.4.8 Early z-Test

Many graphics cards are capable of checking the depth of the fragment at this point in the pipeline, discarding it if it is being occluded by the pixel already in the frame buffer. This allows the (potentially very expensive) pixel shader stage to be skipped entirely for occluded fragments.

Surprisingly, not all graphics hardware supports depth testing at this stage of the pipeline. In older GPU designs, the z-test was done along with alpha testing, after the pixel shader had run. For this reason, this stage is called the *early z-test* or *early depth test* stage.

#### II.2.4.9 Pixel Shader

This stage is fully programmable. Its job is to shade (i.e., light and otherwise process) each fragment. The pixel shader can also discard fragments, for example because they are deemed to be entirely transparent. The pixel shader can address one or more texture maps, run per-pixel lighting calculations, and do whatever else is necessary to determine the fragment's color.

The input to this stage is a collection of per-fragment attributes (which have been interpolated from the vertex attributes by the triangle traversal stage). The output is a single color vector describing the desired color of the fragment.

#### II.2.4.10 Merging / Raster Operations Stage

The final stage of the pipeline is known as the *merging stage* or *blending stage*, also known as the *raster operations* stage or ROP in NVIDIA parlance. This stage is not programmable, but it is highly configurable. It is responsible for running various fragment tests including the depth test (see Section 11.1.4.8), alpha test (in which the values of the fragment’s and pixel’s alpha channels can be used to reject certain fragments) and stencil test (see Section 11.3.3.1).

If the fragment passes all of the tests, its color is blended (merged) with the color that is already present in the frame buffer. The way in which blending occurs is controlled by the *alpha blending function*—a function whose basic structure is hard-wired, but whose operators and parameters can be configured in order to produce a wide variety of blending operations.

Alpha blending is most commonly used to render semitransparent geometry. In this case, the following blending function is used:

$$\mathbf{C}'_D = A_S \mathbf{C}_S + (1 - A_S) \mathbf{C}_D.$$

The subscripts  $S$  and  $D$  stand for “source” (the incoming fragment) and “destination” (the pixel in the frame buffer), respectively. Therefore, the color that is written into the frame buffer ( $\mathbf{C}'_D$ ) is a *weighted average* of the existing frame buffer contents ( $\mathbf{C}_D$ ) and the color of the fragment being drawn ( $\mathbf{C}_S$ ). The blend weight ( $A_S$ ) is just the source alpha of the incoming fragment.

For alpha blending to look right, the semitransparent and translucent surfaces in the scene must be sorted and rendered in back-to-front order, *after* the opaque geometry has been rendered to the frame buffer. This is because after alpha blending has been performed, the depth of the new fragment *overwrites* the depth of the pixel with which it was blended. In other words, the depth buffer ignores transparency (unless depth writes have been turned off, of course). If we are rendering a stack of translucent objects on top of an opaque backdrop, the resulting pixel color should ideally be a blend between the opaque surface’s color and the colors of *all* of the translucent surfaces in the stack. If we try to render the stack in any order other than back-to-front, depth-test failures will cause some of the translucent fragments to be discarded, resulting in an incomplete blend (and a rather odd-looking image).

Other alpha blending functions can be defined as well, for purposes other than transparency blending. The general blending equation takes the form  $\mathbf{C}'_D = (\mathbf{w}_S \otimes \mathbf{C}_S) + (\mathbf{w}_D \otimes \mathbf{C}_D)$ , where the weighting factors  $\mathbf{w}_S$  and  $\mathbf{w}_D$  can be selected by the programmer from a predefined set of values including zero,

one, source or destination color, source or destination alpha and one minus the source or destination color or alpha. The operator  $\otimes$  is either a regular scalar-vector multiplication or a component-wise vector-vector multiplication (a Hadamard product—see Section 5.2.4.1) depending on the data types of  $\mathbf{w}_S$  and  $\mathbf{w}_D$ .

### 11.2.5 Programmable Shaders

Now that we have an end-to-end picture of the GPU pipeline in mind, let's take a deeper look at the most interesting part of the pipeline—the programmable shaders. Shader architectures have evolved significantly since their introduction with DirectX 8. Early *shader models* supported only low-level assembly language programming, and the instruction set and register set of the pixel shader differed significantly from those of the vertex shader. DirectX 9 brought with it support for high-level C-like shader languages such as Cg (C for graphics), HLSL (High-Level Shading Language—Microsoft's implementation of the Cg language) and GLSL (OpenGL shading language). With DirectX 10, the geometry shader was introduced, and with it came a unified shader architecture called *shader model 4.0* in DirectX parlance. In the unified shader model, all three types of shaders support roughly the same instruction set and have roughly the same set of capabilities, including the ability to read texture memory.

A shader takes a single element of input data and transforms it into zero or more elements of output data.

- In the case of the vertex shader, the input is a vertex whose position and normal are expressed in model space or world space. The output of the vertex shader is a fully transformed and lit vertex, expressed in homogeneous clip space.
- The input to the geometry shader is a single  $n$ -vertex primitive—a point ( $n = 1$ ), line segment ( $n = 2$ ) or triangle ( $n = 3$ )—with up to  $n$  additional vertices that act as control points. The output is zero or more primitives, possibly of a different type than the input. For example, the geometry shader could convert points into two-triangle quads, or it could transform triangles into triangles but optionally discard some triangles and so on.
- The pixel shader's input is a fragment whose attributes have been interpolated from the three vertices of the triangle from which it came. The output of the pixel shader is the color that will be written into the frame buffer (presuming the fragment passes the depth test and other optional

tests). The pixel shader is also capable of discarding fragments explicitly, in which case it produces no output.

#### II.2.5.1 Accessing Memory

Because the GPU implements a data processing pipeline, access to RAM is carefully controlled. A shader program usually cannot read from or write to memory directly. Instead, its memory accesses are limited to two methods: registers and texture maps.

However, we should note that these restrictions are lifted on systems in which the GPU and CPU share memory directly. For example, the AMD Jaguar system on a chip (SoC) that sits at the heart of the PlayStation 4 is an example of a *heterogeneous system architecture* (HSA). On a non-HSA system, the CPU and GPU are typically separate devices, each with its own private memory, and each usually residing on a separate circuit board. Transferring data between the two processors requires cumbersome, high-latency communication over a specialized bus such as AGP or PCIe. With HSA, the CPU and GPU share a single unified memory store called a *heterogeneous unified memory architecture* (hUMA). Shaders running on a system with hUMA, like the PS4, can therefore be passed a *shader resource table* (SRT) as input. This is just a pointer to a C/C++ `struct` in memory that can be read from or written to by both the CPU and the shader running on the GPU. On the PS4, SRTs take the place of the constant registers described in the following sections.

#### Shader Registers

A shader can access RAM indirectly via *registers*. All GPU registers are in 128-bit SIMD format. Each register is capable of holding four 32-bit floating-point or integer values (represented by the `float4` data type in the Cg language). Such a register can contain a four-element vector in homogeneous coordinates or a color in RGBA format, with each component in 32-bit floating-point format. Matrices can be represented by groups of three or four registers (represented by built-in matrix types like `float4x4` in Cg). A GPU register can also be used to hold a single 32-bit scalar, in which case the value is usually replicated across all four 32-bit fields. Some GPUs can operate on 16-bit fields, known as *halfs*. (Cg provides various built-in types like `half4` and `half4x4` for this purpose.)

Registers come in four flavors, as follows:

- *Input registers*. These registers are the shader's primary source of input data. In a vertex shader, the input registers contain attribute data

obtained directly from the vertices. In a pixel shader, the input registers contain interpolated vertex attribute data corresponding to a single fragment. The values of all input registers are set automatically by the GPU prior to invoking the shader.

- *Constant registers.* The values of constant registers are set by the application and can change from primitive to primitive. Their values are constant only from the point of view of the shader program. They provide a secondary form of input to the shader. Typical contents include the model-view matrix, the projection matrix, light parameters and any other parameters required by the shader that are not available as vertex attributes.
- *Temporary registers.* These registers are for use by the shader program internally and are typically used to store intermediate results of calculations.
- *Output registers.* The contents of these registers are filled in by the shader and serve as its only form of output. In a vertex shader, the output registers contain vertex attributes such as the transformed position and normal vectors in homogeneous clip space, optional vertex colors, texture coordinates and so on. In a pixel shader, the output register contains the final color of the fragment being shaded.

The application provides the values of the constant registers when it submits primitives for rendering. The GPU automatically copies vertex or fragment attribute data from video RAM into the appropriate input registers prior to calling the shader program, and it also writes the contents of the output registers back into RAM at the conclusion of the program’s execution so that the data can be passed to the next stage of the pipeline.

GPUs typically cache output data so that it can be reused without being recalculated. For example, the *post-transform vertex cache* stores the most-recently processed vertices emitted by the vertex shader. If a triangle is encountered that refers to a previously processed vertex, it will be read from the post-transform vertex cache if possible—the vertex shader need only be called again if the vertex in question has since been ejected from the cache to make room for newly processed vertices.

### Textures

A shader also has direct read-only access to *texture maps*. Texture data is addressed via texture coordinates, rather than via absolute memory addresses. The GPU’s texture samplers automatically *filter* the texture data, blending values between adjacent texels or adjacent mipmap levels as appropriate. Texture

filtering can be disabled in order to gain direct access to the values of particular texels. This can be useful when a texture map is used as a data table, for example.

Shaders can only *write* to texture maps in an indirect manner—by rendering the scene to an off-screen frame buffer that is interpreted as a texture map by subsequent rendering passes. This feature is known as *render to texture*.

### 11.2.5.2 Introduction to High-Level Shader Language Syntax

High-level shader languages like Cg and GLSL are modeled after the C programming language. The programmer can declare functions, define a simple struct, and perform arithmetic. However, as we said above, a shader program only has access to registers and textures. As such, the struct and variable we declare in Cg or GLSL is mapped directly onto registers by the shader compiler. We define these mappings in the following ways:

- *Semantics.* Variables and struct members can be suffixed with a colon followed by a keyword known as a *semantic*. The semantic tells the shader compiler to bind the variable or data member to a particular vertex or fragment attribute. For example, in a vertex shader we might declare an input struct whose members map to the *position* and *color* attributes of a vertex as follows:

```
struct VtxOut
{
    float4 pos : POSITION; // map to position attribute
    float4 color : COLOR; // map to color attribute
};
```

- *Input versus output.* The compiler determines whether a particular variable or struct should map to input or output registers from the context in which it is used. If a variable is passed as an argument to the shader program's main function, it is assumed to be an input; if it is the return value of the main function, it is taken to be an output.

```
VtxOut vshaderMain(VtxIn in) // maps to input registers
{
    VtxOut out;
    // ...
    return out; // maps to output registers
}
```

- *Uniform declaration.* To gain access to the data supplied by the application via the constant registers, we can declare a variable with the keyword

`uniform`. For example, the model-view matrix could be passed to a vertex shader as follows:

```
VtxOut vshaderMain(  
    VtxIn in,  
    uniform float4x4 modelViewMatrix)  
{  
    VtxOut out;  
    // ...  
    return out;  
}
```

Arithmetic operations can be performed by invoking C-style operators, or by calling intrinsic functions as appropriate. For example, to multiply the input vertex position by the model-view matrix, we could write:

```
VtxOut vshaderMain(VtxIn in,  
                    uniform float4x4 modelViewMatrix)  
{  
    VtxOut out;  
  
    out.pos = mul(modelViewMatrix, in.pos);  
    out.color = float4(0, 1, 0, 1); // RGBA green  
  
    return out;  
}
```

Data is obtained from textures by calling special intrinsic functions that read the value of the texels at a specified texture coordinate. A number of variants are available for reading one-, two- and three-dimensional textures in various formats, with and without filtering. Special texture addressing modes are also available for accessing cube maps and shadow maps. References to the texture maps themselves are declared using a special data type known as a *texture sampler* declaration. For example, the data type `sampler2D` represents a reference to a typical two-dimensional texture. The following simple Cg pixel shader applies a diffuse texture to a triangle:

```
struct FragmentOut  
{  
    float4 color : COLOR;  
};  
  
FragmentOut pshaderMain(float2 uv : TEXCOORD0,  
                        uniform sampler2D texture)  
{  
    FragmentOut out;
```

```
// look up texel at (u,v)
out.color = tex2D(texture, uv);

return out;
}
```

#### II.2.5.3 Effect Files

By itself, a shader program isn't particularly useful. Additional information is required by the GPU pipeline in order to call the shader program with meaningful inputs. For example, we need to specify how the application-specified parameters, like the model-view matrix, light parameters and so on, map to the uniform variables declared in the shader program. In addition, some visual effects require two or more rendering passes, but a shader program only describes the operations to be applied during a single rendering pass. If we are writing a game for the PC platform, we will need to define "fallback" versions of some of our more-advanced rendering effects, so that they will work even on older graphics cards. To tie our shader program(s) together into a complete visual effect, we turn to a file format known as an *effect file*.

Different rendering engines implement effects in slightly different ways. In Cg, the effect file format is known as CgFX. OGRE uses a file format very similar to CgFX known as a *material file*. GLSL effects can be described using the COLLADA format, which is based on XML. Despite the differences, effects generally take on the following hierarchical format:

- At global scope, structs, shader programs (implemented as various "main" functions) and global variables (which map to application-specified constant parameters) are defined.
- One or more *techniques* are defined. A technique represents one way to render a particular visual effect. An effect typically provides a primary technique for its highest-quality implementation and possibly a number of fallback techniques for use on lower-powered graphics hardware.
- Within each technique, one or more *passes* are defined. A pass describes how a single full-frame image should be rendered. It typically includes a reference to a vertex, geometry and/or pixel shader program's "main" function, various parameter bindings and optional render state settings.

#### II.2.5.4 Further Reading

In this section, we've only had a small taste of what high-level shader programming is like—a complete tutorial is beyond our scope here. For a much

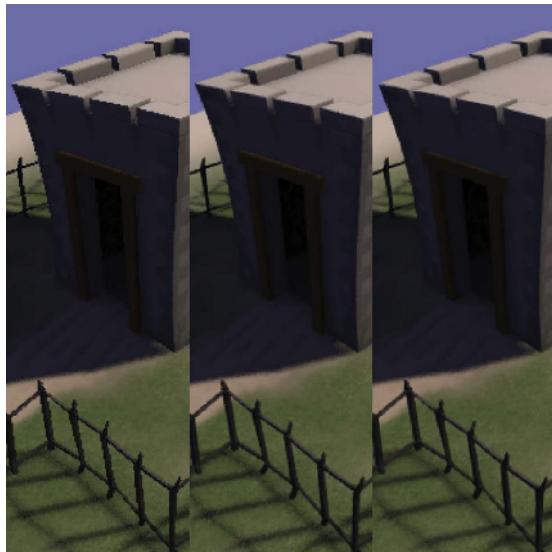


Figure II.45. No antialiasing (left), 4× MSAA (center) and Nvidia's FXAA, preset 3 (right). Image from Nvidia's FXAA white paper by Timothy Lottes (<http://bit.ly/lmlzCTv>). (See Color Plate XIX.)

more detailed introduction to Cg shader programming, refer to the Cg tutorial available on NVIDIA's website at <https://developer.nvidia.com/content/hello-cg-introductory-tutorial>.

## II.2.6 Antialiasing

When a triangle is rasterized, its edges can look jagged—the familiar “stair step” effect we have all come to know and love (or hate). Technically speaking, aliasing arises because we are using a discrete set of pixels to *sample* an image that is really a smooth, continuous two-dimensional signal. (See Section 14.3.2.1 for a detailed discussion of sampling and aliasing.)

The term *antialiasing* describes any technique that reduces the visual artifacts caused by aliasing. There are many different ways to antialias a rendered scene. The net effect of pretty much all of them is to “soften” the edges of rendered triangles by blending them with surrounding pixels. Each technique has unique performance, memory-usage and quality characteristics. Figure 11.45 shows a scene rendered first without antialiasing, then with 4× MSAA and finally with Nvidia's FXAA technique.

### II.2.6.1 Full-Screen Antialiasing (FSAA)

In this technique, also known as *super-sampled antialiasing* (SSAA), the scene is rendered into a frame buffer that is larger than the actual screen. Once rendering of the frame is complete, the resulting oversized image is *downsampled* to the desired resolution. In  $4 \times$  supersampling, the rendered image is twice as wide and twice as tall as the screen, resulting in a frame buffer that occupies four times the memory. It also requires four times the GPU processing power because the pixel shader must be run four times for each screen pixel. As you can see, FSAA is an incredibly expensive technique both in terms of memory consumption and GPU cycles. As such, it is rarely used in practice.

### II.2.6.2 Multisampled Antialiasing (MSAA)

Multisampled antialiasing is a technique that provides visual quality comparable to that of FSAA, while consuming a great deal less GPU bandwidth (and the same amount of video RAM). The MSAA approach is based on the observation that, thanks to the natural antialiasing effect of texture *mipmapping*, aliasing tends to be a problem primarily at the *edges* of triangles, not in their interiors.

To understand how MSAA works, recall that the process of rasterizing a triangle really boils down to three distinct operations: (1) Determining which pixels the triangle overlaps (coverage), (2) determining whether or not each pixel is occluded by some other triangle (depth testing) and (3) determining the color of each pixel, presuming that the coverage and depth tests tell us that the pixel should in fact be drawn (pixel shading).

When rasterizing a triangle without antialiasing, the coverage test, depth test and pixel shading operations are all run at a single idealized point within each screen pixel, usually located at its center. In MSAA, the coverage and depth tests are run for  $N$  points known as *subsamples* within each screen pixel.  $N$  is typically chosen to be 2, 4, 5, 8 or 16. However, the pixel shader is only run *once* per screen pixel, no matter how many subsamples we use. This gives MSAA a big advantage over FSAA in terms of GPU bandwidth, because shading is typically a great deal more expensive than coverage and depth testing.

In  $N \times$  MSAA, the depth, stencil and color buffers are each allocated to be  $N$  times as large as they would otherwise be. For each screen pixel, these buffers contain  $N$  “slots,” one slot for each subsample. When rasterizing a triangle, the coverage and depth tests are run  $N$  times for the  $N$  subsamples within each fragment of the triangle. If at least one of the  $N$  tests indicates that the fragment should be drawn, the pixel shader is run once. The color obtained from the pixel shader is then stored *only* into those slots that correspond to

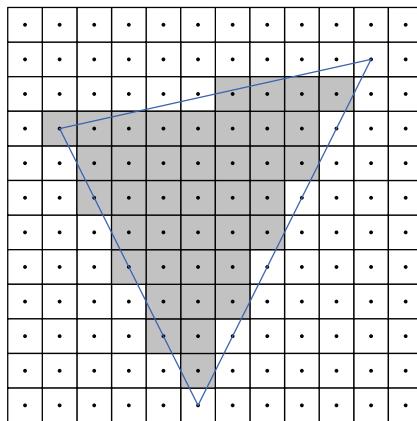


Figure II.46. Rasterizing a triangle without antialiasing.

the subsamples that fell *inside* the triangle. Once the entire scene has been rendered, the oversized color buffer is downsampled to yield the final screen-resolution image. This process involves averaging the color values found in the  $N$  subsample slots for each screen pixel. The net result is an antialiased image with a shading cost equal to that of a non-antialiased image.

In Figure 11.46 we see a triangle that has been rasterized without antialiasing. Figure 11.47 illustrates the  $4\times$  MSAA technique. For more information on MSAA, see <http://mynameismjp.wordpress.com/2012/10/24/msaa-overview>.

#### II.2.6.3 Coverage Sample Antialiasing (CSAA)

This technique is an optimization of the MSAA technique pioneered by Nvidia. For  $4\times$  CSAA, the pixel shader is run once, the depth test and color storage is done for four subsample points per fragment, but the pixel coverage test is performed for 16 “coverage subsamples” per fragment. This produces finer-grained color blending at the edges of triangles, similar to what you’d see with  $8\times$  or  $16\times$  MSAA, but at the memory and GPU cost of  $4\times$  MSAA.

#### II.2.6.4 Morphological Antialiasing (MLAA)

Morphological antialiasing focuses its efforts on correcting only those regions of a scene that suffer the most from the effects of aliasing. In MLAA, the scene is rendered at normal size, and then scanned in order to identify stair-stepped patterns. When these patterns are found, they are blurred to reduce the effects of aliasing. Fast approximate antialiasing (FXAA) is an optimized technique

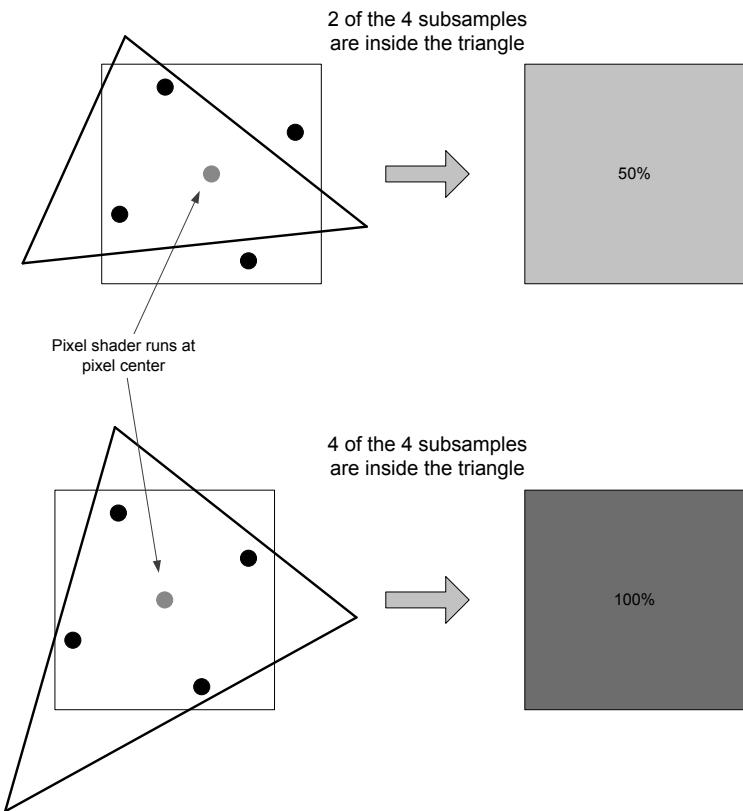


Figure II.47. Multisampled antialiasing (MSAA).

developed by Nvidia that is similar to MLAA in its approach.

For a detailed discussion of MLAA, see <https://intel.ly/2HhrQWX>. FXAA is described in detail here: <https://bit.ly/1mIzCTv>.

### II.2.6.5 Subpixel Morphological Antialiasing (SMAA)

Subpixel Morphological Antialiasing (SMAA) combines morphological antialiasing (MLAA and FXAA) techniques with multisampling/supersampling strategies (MSAA, SSAA) to produce more accurate subpixel features. Like FXAA, it's an inexpensive technique, but it blurs the final image less than FXAA. For these reasons, it's arguably the best AA solution available today. A detailed coverage of this topic is beyond our scope in this book, but you can read more about SMAA at <http://www.iryoku.com/smaa/>.

### II.2.7 The Application Stage

Now that we understand how the GPU works, we can discuss the pipeline stage that is responsible for driving it—the application stage. This stage has three roles:

1. *Visibility determination.* Only objects that are visible (or at least *potentially* visible) should be submitted to the GPU, lest we waste valuable resources processing triangles that will never be seen.
2. *Submitting geometry to the GPU for rendering.* Submesh-material pairs are sent to the GPU via a rendering call like `DrawIndexedPrimitive()` (DirectX) or `glDrawArrays()` (OpenGL), or via direct construction of the GPU command list. The geometry may be sorted for optimal rendering performance. Geometry might be submitted more than once if the scene needs to be rendered in multiple passes.
3. *Controlling shader parameters and render state.* The uniform parameters passed to the shader via constant registers are configured by the application stage on a per-primitive basis. In addition, the application stage must set all of the configurable parameters of the non-programmable pipeline stages to ensure that each primitive is rendered appropriately.

In the following sections, we'll briefly explore how the application stage performs these tasks.

#### II.2.7.1 Visibility Determination

The cheapest triangles are the ones you never draw. So it's incredibly important to *cull* objects from the scene that do not contribute to the final rendered

image prior to submitting them to the GPU. The process of constructing the list of visible mesh instances is known as *visibility determination*.

### *Frustum Culling*

In frustum culling, all objects that lie entirely outside the frustum are excluded from our render list. Given a candidate mesh instance, we can determine whether or not it lies inside the frustum by performing some simple tests between the object's *bounding volume* and the six frustum planes. The bounding volume is usually a sphere, because spheres are particularly easy to cull. For each frustum plane, we move the plane outward a distance equal to the radius of the sphere, then we determine on which side of each modified plane the center point of the sphere lies. If the sphere is found to be on the front side of all six modified planes, the sphere is inside the frustum.

In practice, we don't need to actually move the frustum planes. Recall from Equation (5.13) that the perpendicular distance  $h$  from a point to a plane can be calculated by plugging the point directly into the plane equation as follows:  $h = ax + by + cz + d = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{P}_0$  (see Section 5.6.3). So all we need to do is plug the center point of our bounding sphere into the plane equations for each frustum plane, giving us a value of  $h_i$  for each plane  $i$ , and then we can compare the  $h_i$  values to the radius of the bounding sphere to determine whether or not it lies inside each plane.

A scene graph data structure, described in Section 11.2.7.4, can help optimize frustum culling by allowing us to ignore objects whose bounding spheres are nowhere close to being inside the frustum.

### *Occlusion and Potentially Visible Sets*

Even when objects lie entirely within the frustum, they may occlude one another. Removing objects from the visible list that are entirely occluded by other objects is called *occlusion culling*. In crowded environments viewed from ground level, there can be a great deal of inter-object occlusion, making occlusion culling extremely important. In less crowded scenes, or when scenes are viewed from above, much less occlusion may be present, and the cost of occlusion culling may outweigh its benefits.

Gross occlusion culling of a large-scale environment can be done by pre-calculating a *potentially visible set* (PVS). For any given camera vantage point, a PVS lists those scene objects that might be visible. A PVS errs on the side of including objects that aren't actually visible, rather than excluding objects that actually would have contributed to the rendered scene.

One way to implement a PVS system is to chop the level up into regions of some kind. Each region can be provided with a list of the other regions

that can be seen when the camera is inside it. These PVSs might be manually specified by the artists or game designers. More commonly, an automated offline tool generates the PVS based on user-specified regions. Such a tool usually operates by rendering the scene from various randomly distributed vantage points within a region. Every region's geometry is color coded, so the list of visible regions can be found by scanning the resulting frame buffer and tabulating the region colors that are found. Because automated PVS tools are imperfect, they typically provide the user with a mechanism for tweaking the results, either by manually placing vantage points for testing, or by manually specifying a list of regions that should be explicitly included or excluded from a particular region's PVS.

### *Portals*

Another way to determine what portions of a scene are visible is to use *portals*. In portal rendering, the game world is divided up into semiclosed regions that are connected to one another via holes, such as windows and doorways. These holes are called portals. They are usually represented by polygons that describe their boundaries.

To render a scene with portals, we start by rendering the region that contains the camera. Then, for each portal in the region, we extend a frustum-like volume consisting of planes extending from the camera's focal point through each edge of the portal's bounding polygon. The contents of the neighboring region can be culled to this portal volume in exactly the same way geometry is culled against the camera frustum. This ensures that only the visible geometry in the adjacent regions will be rendered. Figure 11.48 provides an illustration of this technique.

### *Occlusion Volumes (Antiportals)*

If we flip the portal concept on its head, pyramidal volumes can also be used to describe regions of the scene that *cannot* be seen because they are being occluded by an object. These volumes are known as *occlusion volumes* or *antiportals*. To construct an occlusion volume, we find the silhouette edges of each occluding object and extend planes outward from the camera's focal point through each of these edges. We test more-distant objects against these occlusion volumes and cull them if they lie entirely within the occlusion region. This is illustrated in Figure 11.49.

Portals are best used when rendering enclosed indoor environments with a relatively small number of windows and doorways between "rooms." In this kind of scene, the portals occupy a relatively small percentage of the total

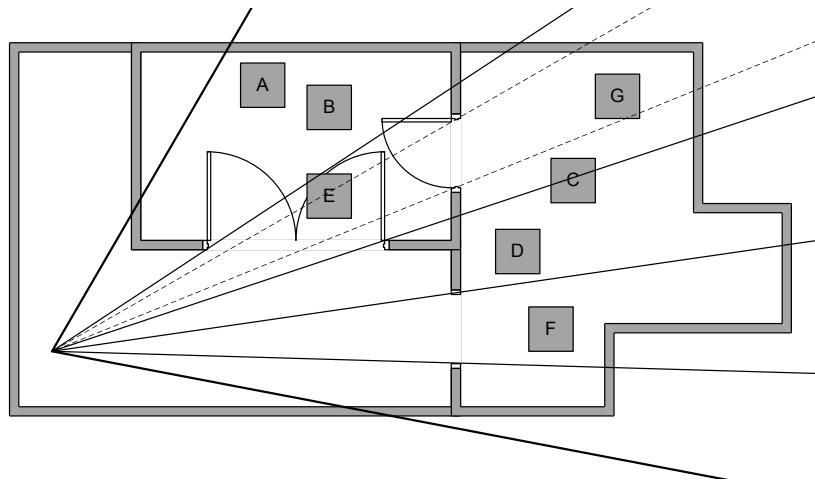


Figure II.48. Portals are used to define frustum-like volumes, which are used to cull the contents of neighboring regions. In this example, objects A, B and D will be culled because they lie outside one of the portals; the other objects will be visible.

volume of the camera frustum, resulting in a large number of objects outside the portals that can be culled. Antiportals are best applied to large outdoor environments, in which nearby objects often occlude large swaths of the camera frustum. In this case, the antiportals occupy a relatively large percentage of the total camera frustum volume, resulting in large numbers of culled objects.

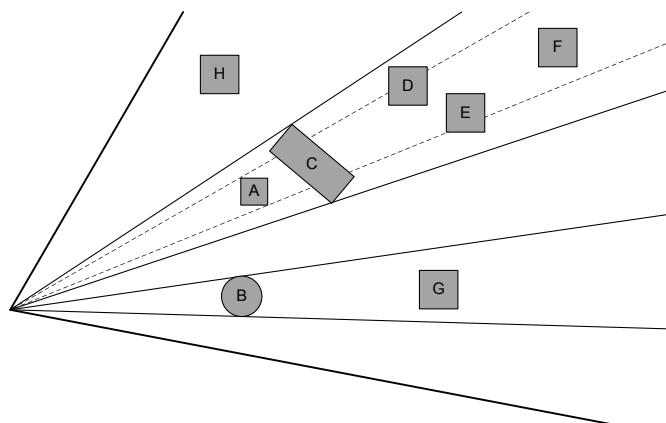


Figure II.49. As a result of the antiportals corresponding to objects A, B and C, objects D, E, F and G are culled. Therefore, only A, B, C and H are visible.

### 11.2.7.2 Primitive Submission

Once a list of visible geometric primitives has been generated, the individual primitives must be *submitted* to the GPU pipeline for rendering. This can be accomplished by making calls to `DrawIndexedPrimitive()` in DirectX or `glDrawArrays()` in OpenGL.

#### *Render State*

As we learned in Section 11.2.4, the functionality of many of the GPU pipeline's stages is fixed but configurable. And even programmable stages are driven in part by configurable parameters. Some examples of these configurable parameters are listed below (although this is by no means a complete list):

- world-view matrix;
- light direction vectors;
- texture bindings (i.e., which textures to use for a given material/shader);
- texture addressing and filtering modes;
- time base for scrolling textures and other animated effects;
- *z*-test (enabled or disabled); and
- alpha blending options.

The set of all configurable parameters within the GPU pipeline is known as the *hardware state* or *render state*. It is the application stage's responsibility to ensure that the hardware state is configured properly and completely for each submitted primitive. Ideally these state settings are described completely by the material associated with each submesh. So the application stage's job boils down to iterating through the list of visible mesh instances, iterating over each submesh-material pair, setting the render state based on the material's specifications and then calling the low-level primitive submission functions (`DrawIndexedPrimitive()`, `glDrawArrays()`, or similar).

#### *State Leaks*

If we forget to set some aspect of the render state between submitted primitives, the settings used on the previous primitive will "leak" over onto the new primitive. A *render state leak* might manifest itself as an object with the wrong texture or an incorrect lighting effect, for example. Clearly it's important that the application stage never allow state leaks to occur.

### *The GPU Command List*

The application stage actually communicates with the GPU via a command list. These commands interleave render state settings with references to the geometry that should be drawn. For example, to render objects A and B with material 1, followed by objects C, D and E using material 2, the command list might look like this:

- Set render state for material 1 (multiple commands, one per render state setting).
- Submit primitive A.
- Submit primitive B.
- Set render state for material 2 (multiple commands).
- Submit primitive C.
- Submit primitive D.
- Submit primitive E.

Under the hood, API functions like `DrawIndexedPrimitive()` actually just construct and submit GPU command lists. The cost of these API calls can themselves be too high for some applications. To maximize performance, some game engines build GPU command lists manually or by calling a low-level rendering API like Vulkan (<https://www.khronos.org/vulkan/>).

#### II.2.7.3 Geometry Sorting

Render state settings are global—they apply to the entire GPU as a whole. So in order to change render state settings, the entire GPU pipeline must be flushed before the new settings can be applied. This can cause massive performance degradation if not managed carefully.

Clearly we'd like to change render settings as infrequently as possible. The best way to accomplish this is to sort our geometry by material. That way, we can install material A's settings, render all geometry associated with material A and then move on to material B.

Unfortunately, sorting geometry by material can have a detrimental effect on rendering performance because it increases *overdraw*—a situation in which the same pixel is filled multiple times by multiple overlapping triangles. Certainly some overdraw is necessary and desirable, as it is the only way to properly alpha-blend transparent and translucent surfaces into a scene. However, overdraw of *opaque* pixels is always a waste of GPU bandwidth.

The early *z*-test is designed to discard occluded fragments before the expensive pixel shader has a chance to execute. But to take maximum advantage of early *z*, we need to draw the triangles in front-to-back order. That way, the

closest triangles will fill the  $z$ -buffer right off the bat, and all of the fragments coming from more-distant triangles behind them can be quickly discarded, with little or no overdraw.

### *z-Prepass to the Rescue*

How can we reconcile the need to sort geometry by material with the conflicting need to render opaque geometry in a front-to-back order? The answer lies in a GPU feature known as *z-prepass*.

The idea behind *z-prepass* is to render the scene twice: the first time to generate the contents of the  $z$ -buffer as efficiently as possible and the second time to populate the frame buffer with full color information (but this time with no overdraw, thanks to the contents of the  $z$ -buffer). The GPU provides a special double-speed rendering mode in which the pixel shaders are disabled, and only the  $z$ -buffer is updated. Opaque geometry can be rendered in front-to-back order during this phase, to minimize the time required to generate the  $z$ -buffer contents. Then the geometry can be resorted into material order and rendered in full color with minimal state changes for maximum pipeline throughput.

Once the opaque geometry has been rendered, transparent surfaces can be drawn in back-to-front order. This brute-force method allows us to achieve the proper alpha-blended result. *Order-independent transparency* (OIT) is a technique that permits transparent geometry to be rendered in an arbitrary order. It works by storing multiple fragments per pixel, sorting each pixel's fragments and blending them only after the entire scene has been rendered. This technique produces correct results without the need for pre-sorting the geometry, but it comes at a high memory cost because the frame buffer must be large enough to store all of the translucent fragments for each pixel.

#### II.2.7.4 Scene Graphs

Modern game worlds can be very large. The majority of the geometry in most scenes does not lie within the camera frustum, so frustum culling all of these objects explicitly is usually incredibly wasteful. Instead, we would like to devise a data structure that manages all of the geometry in the scene and allows us to quickly discard large swaths of the world that are nowhere near the camera frustum prior to performing detailed frustum culling. Ideally, this data structure should also help us to sort the geometry in the scene, either in front-to-back order for the *z-prepass* or in material order for full-color rendering.

Such a data structure is often called a *scene graph*, in reference to the graph-like data structures often used by film rendering engines and DCC tools like Maya. However, a game's scene graph needn't actually be a graph, and in fact the data structure of choice is usually some kind of tree (which is, of course,

a special case of a graph). The basic idea behind most of these data structures is to partition three-dimensional space in a way that makes it easy to discard regions that do not intersect the frustum, without having to frustum cull all of the individual objects within them. Examples include quadtrees and octrees, BSP trees, kd-trees and spatial hashing techniques.

### *Quadtrees and Octrees*

A *quadtree* divides space into quadrants recursively. Each level of recursion is represented by a node in the quadtree with four children, one for each quadrant. The quadrants are typically separated by vertically oriented, axis-aligned planes, so that the quadrants are square or rectangular. However, some quadtrees subdivide space using arbitrarily shaped regions.

Quadtrees can be used to store and organize virtually any kind of spatially distributed data. In the context of rendering engines, quadtrees are often used to store renderable primitives such as mesh instances, subregions of terrain geometry or individual triangles of a large static mesh, for the purposes of efficient frustum culling. The renderable primitives are stored at the leaves of the tree, and we usually aim to achieve a roughly uniform number of primitives within each leaf region. This can be achieved by deciding whether to continue or terminate the subdivision based on the number of primitives within a region.

To determine which primitives are visible within the camera frustum, we walk the tree from the root to the leaves, checking each region for intersection with the frustum. If a given quadrant does not intersect the frustum, then we know that none of its child regions will do so either, and we can stop traversing that branch of the tree. This allows us to search for potentially visible primitives much more quickly than would be possible with a linear search (usually in  $O(\log n)$  time). An example of a quadtree subdivision of space is shown in Figure 11.50.

An *octree* is the three-dimensional equivalent of a quadtree, dividing space into eight subregions at each level of the recursive subdivision. The regions of an octree are often cubes or rectangular prisms but can be arbitrarily shaped three-dimensional regions in general.

### *Bounding Sphere Trees*

In the same way that a quadtree or octree subdivides space into (usually) rectangular regions, a *bounding sphere tree* divides space into spherical regions hierarchically. The leaves of the tree contain the bounding spheres of the renderable primitives in the scene. We collect these primitives into small logical

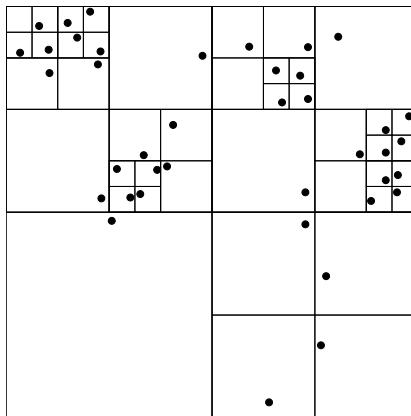


Figure 11.50. A top-down view of a space divided recursively into quadrants for storage in a quad-tree, based on the criterion of one point per region.

groups and calculate the net bounding sphere of each group. The groups are themselves collected into larger groups, and this process continues until we have a single group with a bounding sphere that encompasses the entire virtual world. To generate a list of potentially visible primitives, we walk the tree from the root to the leaves, testing each bounding sphere against the frustum, and only recursing down branches that intersect it.

## BSP Trees

A binary space partitioning (BSP) tree divides space in half recursively until the objects within each half-space meet some predefined criteria (much as a quadtree divides space into quadrants). BSP trees have numerous uses, including collision detection and constructive solid geometry, as well as their most well-known application as a method for increasing the performance of frustum culling and geometry sorting for 3D graphics. A *kd-tree* is a generalization of the BSP tree concept to  $k$  dimensions.

In the context of rendering, a BSP tree divides space with a single plane at each level of the recursion. The dividing planes can be axis-aligned, but more commonly each subdivision corresponds to the plane of a single triangle in the scene. All of the other triangles are then categorized as being either on the front side or the back side of the plane. Any triangles that intersect the dividing plane are themselves divided into three new triangles, so that every triangle lies either entirely in front of or entirely behind the plane, or is coplanar with it. The result is a binary tree with a dividing plane and one or more triangles at each interior node and triangles at the leaves.

A BSP tree can be used for frustum culling in much the same way a quadtree, octree or bounding sphere tree can. However, when generated with individual triangles as described above, a BSP tree can also be used to sort triangles into a strictly back-to-front or front-to-back order. This was particularly important for early 3D games like *Doom*, which did not have the benefit of a z-buffer and so were forced to use the painter's algorithm (i.e., to render the scene from back to front) to ensure proper inter-triangle occlusion.

Given a camera view point in 3D space, a back-to-front sorting algorithm walks the tree from the root. At each node, we check whether the view point is in front of or behind that node's dividing plane. If the camera is in front of a node's plane, we visit the node's back children first, then draw any triangles that are coplanar with its dividing plane, and finally we visit its front children. Likewise, when the camera's view point is found to be behind a node's dividing plane, we visit the node's front children first, then draw the triangles coplanar with the node's plane and finally we visit its back children. This traversal scheme ensures that the triangles farthest from the camera will be visited before those that are closer to it, and hence it yields a back-to-front ordering. Because this algorithm traverses *all* of the triangles in the scene, the order of the traversal is independent of the direction the camera is looking. A secondary frustum culling step would be required in order to traverse only visible triangles. A simple BSP tree is shown in Figure 11.51, along with the tree traversal that would be done for the camera position shown.

Full coverage of BSP tree generation and usage algorithms is beyond our scope here. See <http://www.gamedev.net/reference/articles/article657.asp>

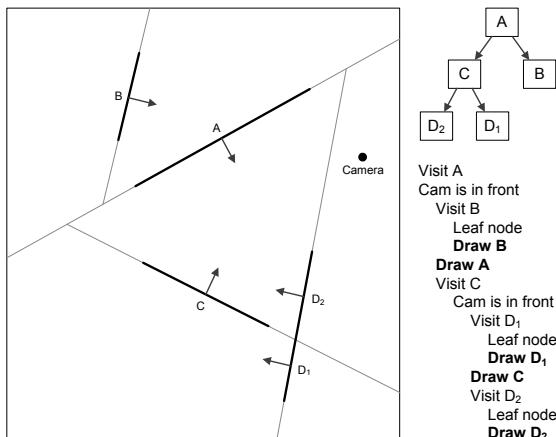


Figure 11.51. An example of back-to-front traversal of the triangles in a BSP tree. The triangles are shown edge-on in two dimensions for simplicity, but in a real BSP tree the triangles and dividing planes would be arbitrarily oriented in space.

for more details on BSP trees.

#### II.2.7.5 Choosing a Scene Graph

Clearly there are many different kinds of scene graphs. Which data structure to select for your game will depend upon the nature of the scenes you expect to be rendering. To make the choice wisely, you must have a clear understanding of what is required—and more importantly what is *not* required—when rendering scenes for your particular game.

For example, if you’re implementing a fighting game, in which two characters battle it out in a ring surrounded by a mostly static environment, you may not need much of a scene graph at all. If your game takes place primarily in enclosed indoor environments, a BSP tree or portal system may serve you well. If the action takes place outdoors on relatively flat terrain, and the scene is viewed primarily from above (as might be the case in a strategy game or god game), a simple quadtree might be all that’s required to achieve high rendering speeds. On the other hand, if an outdoor scene is viewed primarily from the point of view of someone on the ground, we may need additional *culling* mechanisms. Densely populated scenes can benefit from an occlusion volume (antiportal) system, because there will be plenty of occluders. On the other hand, if your outdoor scene is very sparse, adding an antiportal system probably won’t pay dividends (and might even hurt your frame rate).

Ultimately, your choice of scene graph should be based on hard data obtained by actually measuring the performance of your rendering engine. You may be surprised to learn where all your cycles are actually going! But once you know, you can select scene graph data structures and/or other optimizations to target the specific problems at hand.

## II.3 Advanced Lighting and Global Illumination

In order to render photorealistic scenes, we need physically accurate global illumination algorithms. A complete coverage of these techniques is beyond our scope. In the following sections, we will briefly outline the most prevalent techniques in use within the game industry today. Our goal here is to provide you with an awareness of these techniques and a jumping-off point for further investigation. For an excellent in-depth coverage of this topic, see [10].

### II.3.1 Image-Based Lighting

A number of advanced lighting and shading techniques make heavy use of image data, usually in the form of two-dimensional texture maps. These are

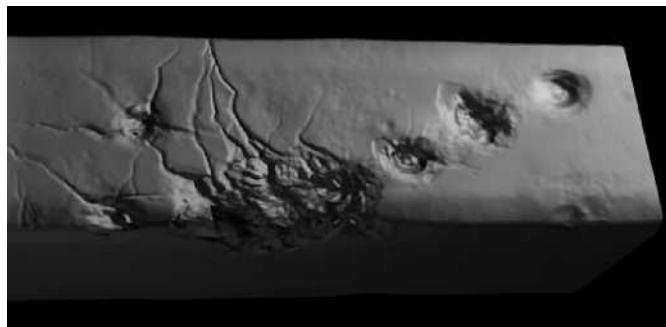


Figure 11.52. An example of a normal-mapped surface.

called *image-based lighting* algorithms.

### 11.3.1.1 Normal Mapping

A *normal map* specifies a surface normal direction vector at each texel. This allows a 3D modeler to provide the rendering engine with a highly detailed description of a surface's shape, without having to tessellate the model to a high degree (as would be required if this same information were to be provided via vertex normals). Using a normal map, a single flat triangle can be made to look as though it were constructed from millions of tiny triangles. An example of normal mapping is shown in Figure 11.52.

The normal vectors are typically encoded in the RGB color channels of the texture, with a suitable bias to overcome the fact that RGB channels are strictly positive while normal vector components can be negative. Sometimes only two coordinates are stored in the texture; the third can be easily calculated at runtime, given the assumption that the surface normals are unit vectors.

### 11.3.1.2 Heightmaps: Bump, Parallax and Displacement Mapping

As its name implies, a *heightmap* encodes the height of the ideal surface above or below the surface of the triangle. Heightmaps are typically encoded as grayscale images, since we only need a single height value per texel. Heightmaps can be used for *bump mapping*, *parallax occlusion mapping* and *displacement mapping*—three techniques that can make a planar surface appear to have height variation.

In bump mapping, a heightmap is used as a cheap way to generate surface normals. This technique was primarily used in the early days of 3D graphics—nowadays, most game engines store surface normal information

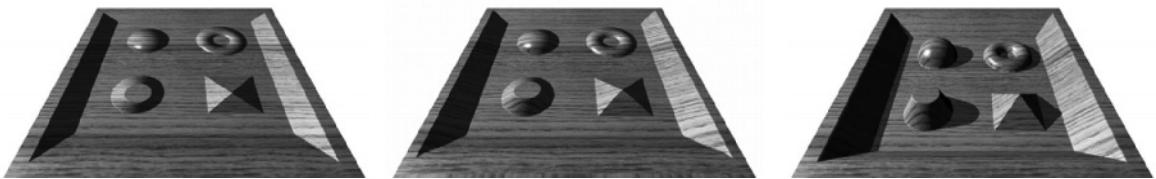


Figure II.53. Comparison of bump mapping (left), parallax occlusion mapping (center) and displacement mapping (right).

explicitly in a *normal map*, rather than calculating the normals from a heightmap.

Parallax occlusion mapping uses the information in a heightmap to artificially adjust the texture coordinates used when rendering a flat surface, in such a way as to make the surface appear to contain surface details that move semi-correctly as the camera moves. (This technique was used to produce the bullet impact decals in the *Uncharted* series of games by Naughty Dog.)

Displacement mapping (also known as relief mapping) produces real surface details by actually tessellating and then extruding surface polygons, again using a heightmap to determine how much to displace each vertex. This produces the most convincing effect—one that properly self-occludes and self-shadows—because real geometry is being generated. Figure 11.53 compares bump mapping, parallax mapping and displacement mapping. Figure 11.54 shows an example of displacement mapping implemented in DirectX 9.

### II.3.1.3 Specular/Gloss Maps

When light reflects directly off a shiny surface, we call this *specular* reflection. The intensity of a specular reflection depends on the relative angles of the viewer, the light source and the surface normal. As we saw in Section 11.1.3.2, the specular intensity takes the form  $k_s(\mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{V})^\alpha$ , where  $\mathbf{R}$  is the reflection of the light's direction vector about the surface normal,  $\mathbf{V}$  is the direction to the viewer,  $k_s$  is the overall specular reflectivity of the surface and  $\alpha$  is called the specular power.

Many surfaces aren't uniformly glossy. For example, when a person's face is sweaty and dirty, wet regions appear shiny, while dry or dirty areas appear dull. We can encode high-detail specularity information in a special texture map known as a *specular map*.

If we store the value of  $k_s$  in the texels of a specular map, we can control how much specular reflection should be applied at each texel. This kind of specular map is sometimes called a *gloss map*. It is also called a *specular mask*, because zero-valued texels can be used to “mask off” regions of the surface where we do not want specular reflection applied. If we store the value of

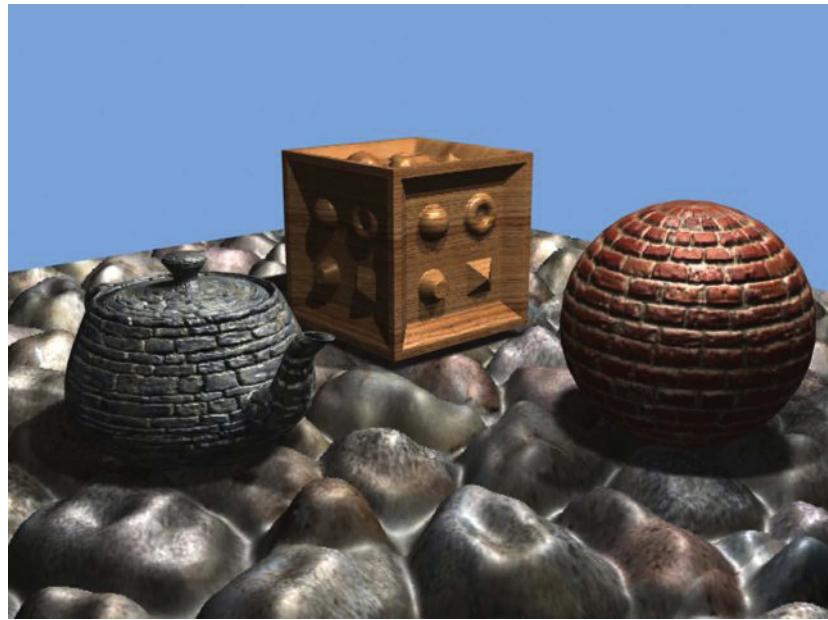


Figure II.54. DirectX 9 displacement mapping. Simple source geometry is tessellated at runtime to produce the surface details.

$\alpha$  in our specular map, we can control the amount of “focus” our specular highlights will have at each texel. This kind of texture is called a *specular power map*. An example of a gloss map is shown in Figure 11.55.

#### II.3.1.4 Environment Mapping

An environment map looks like a panoramic photograph of the environment taken from the point of view of an object in the scene, covering a full 360 degrees horizontally and either 180 degrees or 360 degrees vertically. An environment map acts like a description of the general lighting environment surrounding an object. It is generally used to inexpensively render reflections.

The two most common formats are *spherical environment maps* and *cubic environment maps*. A spherical map looks like a photograph taken through a fisheye lens, and it is treated as though it were mapped onto the inside of a sphere whose radius is infinite, centered about the object being rendered. The problem with sphere maps is that they are addressed using spherical coordinates. Around the equator, there is plenty of resolution both horizontally and vertically. However, as the vertical (azimuthal) angle approaches vertical, the resolution of the texture along the horizontal (zenith) axis decreases to a single



Figure II.55. This screenshot from EA's *Fight Night Round 3* shows how a gloss map can be used to control the degree of specular reflection that should be applied to each texel of a surface. (See Color Plate XX.)

texel. Cube maps were devised to avoid this problem.

A cube map looks like a composite photograph pieced together from photos taken in the six primary directions (up, down, left, right, front and back). During rendering, a cube map is treated as though it were mapped onto the six inner surfaces of a box at infinity, centered on the object being rendered.

To read the environment map texel corresponding to a point  $P$  on the surface of an object, we take the ray from the camera to the point  $P$  and reflect it about the surface normal at  $P$ . The reflected ray is followed until it intersects the sphere or cube of the environment map. The value of the texel at this intersection point is used when shading the point  $P$ .

#### II.3.1.5 Three-Dimensional Textures

Modern graphics hardware also includes support for three-dimensional textures. A 3D texture can be thought of as a stack of 2D textures. The GPU knows how to address and filter a 3D texture, given a three-dimensional texture coordinate  $(u, v, w)$ .

Three-dimensional textures can be useful for describing the appearance or volumetric properties of an object. For example, we could render a marble sphere and allow it to be cut by an arbitrary plane. The texture would look continuous and correct across the cut no matter where it was made, because the texture is well-defined and continuous throughout the entire volume of the sphere.

### 11.3.2 High Dynamic Range Lighting

A display device like a television set or CRT monitor can only produce a limited range of intensities. This is why the color channels in the frame buffer are limited to a zero to one range. But in the real world, light intensities can grow arbitrarily large. *High dynamic range* (HDR) lighting attempts to capture this wide range of light intensities.

HDR lighting performs lighting calculations without clamping the resulting intensities arbitrarily. The resulting image is stored in a format that permits intensities to grow beyond one. The net effect is an image in which extreme dark and light regions can be represented without loss of detail within either type of region.

Prior to display on-screen, a process called *tone mapping* is used to shift and scale the image's intensity range into the range supported by the display device. Doing this permits the rendering engine to reproduce many real-world visual effects, like the temporary blindness that occurs when you walk from a dark room into a brightly lit area, or the way light seems to bleed out from behind a brightly back-lit object (an effect known as *bloom*).

One way to represent an HDR image is to store the R, G and B channels using 32-bit floating-point numbers, instead of 8-bit integers. Another alternative is to employ an entirely different color model altogether. The log-LUV color model is a popular choice for HDR lighting. In this model, color is represented as an intensity channel ( $L$ ) and two chromaticity channels ( $U$  and  $V$ ). Because the human eye is more sensitive to changes in intensity than it is to changes in chromaticity, the  $L$  channel is stored in 16 bits while  $U$  and  $V$  are given only eight bits each. In addition,  $L$  is represented using a logarithmic scale (base two) in order to capture a very wide range of light intensities.

### 11.3.3 Global Illumination

As we noted in Section 11.1.3.1, global illumination refers to a class of lighting algorithms that account for light's interactions with multiple objects in the scene, on its way from the light source to the virtual camera. Global illumination accounts for effects like the shadows that arise when one surface occludes another, reflections, caustics and the way the color of one object can "bleed" onto the objects around it. In the following sections, we'll take a brief look at some of the most common global illumination techniques. Some of these methods aim to reproduce a single isolated effect, like shadows or reflections. Others like radiosity and ray tracing methods aim to provide a holistic model of global light transport.

### II.3.3.1 Shadow Rendering

Shadows are created when a surface blocks light's path. The shadows caused by an ideal point light source would be sharp, but in the real world shadows have blurry edges; this is called the penumbra. A penumbra arises because real-world light sources cover some area and so produce light rays that graze the edges of an object at different angles.

The two most prevalent shadow rendering techniques are *shadow volumes* and *shadow maps*. We'll briefly describe each in the sections below. In both techniques, objects in the scene are generally divided into three categories: objects that cast shadows, objects that are to receive shadows and objects that are entirely excluded from consideration when rendering shadows. Likewise, the lights are tagged to indicate whether or not they should generate shadows. This important optimization limits the number of light-object combinations that need to be processed in order to produce the shadows in a scene.

#### *Shadow Volumes*

In the shadow volume technique, each shadow caster is viewed from the vantage point of a shadow-generating light source, and the shadow caster's silhouette edges are identified. These edges are extruded in the direction of the light rays emanating from the light source. The result is a new piece of geometry that describes the volume of space in which the light is occluded by the shadow caster in question. This is shown in Figure 11.56.



Figure 11.56. A shadow volume generated by extruding the silhouette edges of a shadow casting object as seen from the point of view of the light source.

A shadow volume is used to generate a shadow by making use of a special full-screen buffer known as the stencil buffer. This buffer stores a single integer value corresponding to each pixel of the screen. Rendering can be masked by the values in the stencil buffer—for example, we could configure the GPU to only render fragments whose corresponding stencil values are nonzero. In addition, the GPU can be configured so that rendered geometry updates the values in the stencil buffer in various useful ways.

To render shadows, the scene is first drawn to generate an unshadowed image in the frame buffer, along with an accurate  $z$ -buffer. The stencil buffer is cleared so that it contains zeros at every pixel. Each shadow volume is then rendered from the point of view of the camera in such a way that front-facing triangles increase the values in the stencil buffer by one, while back-facing triangles decrease them by one. In areas of the screen where the shadow volume does not appear at all, of course the stencil buffer’s pixels will be left containing zero. The stencil buffer will also contain zeros where both the front and back faces of the shadow volume are visible, because the front face will increase the stencil value but the back face will decrease it again. In areas where the back face of the shadow volume has been occluded by “real” scene geometry, the stencil value will be one. This tells us which pixels of the screen are in shadow. So we can render shadows in a third pass, by simply darkening those regions of the screen that contain a nonzero stencil buffer value.

### *Shadow Maps*

The shadow mapping technique is effectively a per-fragment depth test performed from the point of view of the light instead of from the point of view of the camera. The scene is rendered in two steps: First, a *shadow map* texture is generated by rendering the scene from the point of view of the light source and saving off the contents of the depth buffer. Second, the scene is rendered as usual, and the shadow map is used to determine whether or not each fragment is in shadow. At each fragment in the scene, the shadow map tells us whether or not the light is being occluded by some geometry that is closer to the light source, in just the same way that the  $z$ -buffer tells us whether a fragment is being occluded by a triangle that is closer to the camera.

A shadow map contains only depth information—each texel records how far away it is from the light source. Shadow maps are therefore typically rendered using the hardware’s double-speed  $z$ -only mode (since all we care about is the depth information). For a point light source, a perspective projection is used when rendering the shadow map; for a directional light source, an orthographic projection is used instead.

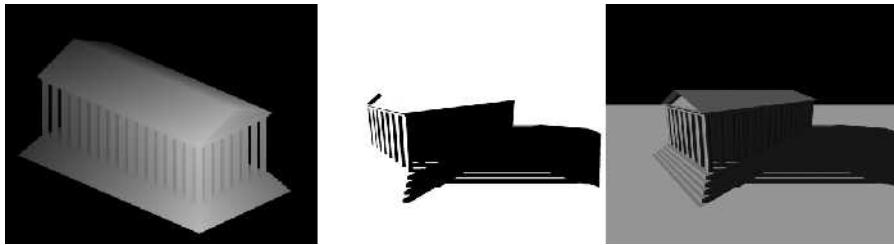


Figure II.57. The far left image is a shadow map—the contents of the *z*-buffer as rendered from the point of view of a particular light source. The pixels of the center image are black where the light-space depth test failed (fragment in shadow) and white where it succeeded (fragment not in shadow). The far right image shows the final scene rendered with shadows.

To render a scene using a shadow map, we draw the scene as usual from the point of view of the camera. For each vertex of every triangle, we calculate its position in *light space*—i.e., in the same “view space” that was used when generating the shadow map in the first place. These light-space coordinates can be interpolated across the triangle, just like any other vertex attribute. This gives us the position of each fragment *in light space*. To determine whether a given fragment is in shadow or not, we convert the fragment’s light-space  $(x, y)$ -coordinates into texture coordinates  $(u, v)$  within the shadow map. We then compare the fragment’s light-space  $z$ -coordinate with the depth stored at the corresponding texel in the shadow depth map. If the fragment’s light-space  $z$  is farther away from the light than the texel in the shadow map, then it must be occluded by some other piece of geometry that is closer to the light source—hence it is in shadow. Likewise, if the fragment’s light-space  $z$  is closer to the light source than the texel in the shadow map, then it is not occluded and is not in shadow. Based on this information, the fragment’s color can be adjusted accordingly. The shadow mapping process is illustrated in Figure 11.57.

### II.3.3.2 Ambient Occlusion

*Ambient occlusion* is a technique for modeling *contact shadows*—the soft shadows that arise when a scene is illuminated by only ambient light. In effect, ambient occlusion describes how “accessible” each point on a surface is to light in general. For example, the interior of a section of pipe is less accessible to ambient light than its exterior. If the pipe were placed outside on an overcast day, its interior would generally appear darker than its exterior.

Figure 11.58 shows how ambient occlusion produces shadows underneath a car and in its wheel wells, as well as within the seams between body panels. Ambient occlusion is measured at a point on a surface by constructing



Figure II.58. A car rendered with ambient occlusion. Notice the darkened areas underneath the vehicle and in the wheel wells.

a hemisphere with a very large radius centered on that point and determining what percentage of that hemisphere's area is visible from the point in question. It can be precomputed offline for static objects, because ambient occlusion is independent of view direction and the direction of incident light. It is typically stored in a texture map that records the level of ambient occlusion at each texel across the surface.

#### II.3.3.3 Reflections

Reflections occur when light bounces off a highly specular (shiny) surface producing an image of another portion of the scene in the surface. Reflections can be implemented in a number of ways. Environment maps are used to produce general reflections of the surrounding environment on the surfaces of shiny objects. Direct reflections in flat surfaces like mirrors can be produced by reflecting the camera's position about the plane of the reflective surface and then rendering the scene from that reflected point of view into a texture. The texture is then applied to the reflective surface in a second pass (see Figure 11.59).

#### II.3.3.4 Caustics

Caustics are the bright specular highlights arising from intense reflections or refractions from very shiny surfaces like water or polished metal. When the reflective surface moves, as is the case for water, the caustic effects glimmer and "swim" across the surfaces on which they fall. Caustic effects can be produced by projecting a (possibly animated) texture containing semi-random bright highlights onto the affected surfaces. An example of this technique is shown in Figure 11.60.



Figure II.59. Mirror reflections in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) implemented by rendering the scene to a texture that is subsequently applied to the mirror’s surface. (See Color Plate XXI.)

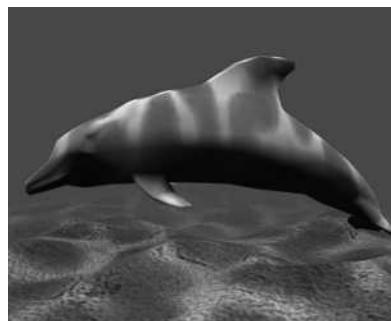


Figure II.60. Water caustics produced by projecting an animated texture onto the affected surfaces.

### II.3.5 Subsurface Scattering

When light enters a surface at one point, is scattered beneath the surface, and then reemerges at a different point on the surface, we call this *subsurface scattering*. This phenomenon is responsible for the “warm glow” of human skin, wax and marble statues (e.g., Figure 11.61). Subsurface scattering is described by a more-advanced variant of the BRDF (see Section 11.1.3.2) known as the BSSRDF (*bidirectional surface scattering reflectance distribution function*).

Subsurface scattering can be simulated in a number of ways. Depth-map-based subsurface scattering renders a shadow map (see Section 11.3.3.1), but instead of using it to determine which pixels are in shadow, it is used to measure how far a beam of light would have to travel in order to pass all the



Figure II.61. On the left, a dragon rendered without subsurface scattering (i.e., using a BRDF lighting model). On the right, the same dragon rendered with subsurface scattering (i.e., using a BSSRDF model). Images rendered by Rui Wang at the University of Virginia.

way through the occluding object. The shadowed side of the object is then given an artificial diffuse lighting term whose intensity is inversely proportional to the distance the light had to travel in order to emerge on the opposite side of the object. This causes objects to appear to be glowing slightly on the side opposite to the light source but only where the object is relatively thin. For more information on subsurface scattering techniques, see [http://http.developer.nvidia.com/GPUGems/gpugems\\_ch16.html](http://http.developer.nvidia.com/GPUGems/gpugems_ch16.html).

#### II.3.3.6 Precomputed Radiance Transfer (PRT)

*Precomputed radiance transfer* (PRT) is a popular technique that attempts to simulate the effects of radiosity-based rendering methods in real time. It does so by precomputing and storing a complete description of how an incident light ray would interact with a surface (reflect, refract, scatter, etc.) when approaching from every possible direction. At runtime, the response to a particular incident light ray can be looked up and quickly converted into very accurate lighting results.

In general the light's response at a point on the surface is a complex function defined on a hemisphere centered about the point. A compact representation of this function is required to make the PRT technique practical. A common approach is to approximate the function as a linear combination of spherical harmonic basis functions. This is essentially the three-dimensional equivalent of encoding a simple scalar function  $f(x)$  as a linear combination of shifted and scaled sine waves.

The details of PRT are far beyond our scope. For more information, see <http://web4.cs.ucl.ac.uk/staff/j.kautz/publications/prtSIG02.pdf>. PRT lighting techniques are demonstrated in a DirectX sample program available in the DirectX SDK—see <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb147287.aspx> for more details.

### 11.3.4 Deferred Rendering

In traditional triangle-rasterization-based rendering, all lighting and shading calculations are performed on the triangle fragments in world space, view space or tangent space. The problem with this technique is that it is inherently inefficient. For one thing, we potentially do work that we don't need to do. We shade the vertices of triangles, only to discover during the rasterization stage that the entire triangle is being depth-culled by the  $z$ -test. Early  $z$ -tests help eliminate unnecessary pixel shader evaluations, but even this isn't perfect. What's more, in order to handle a complex scene with lots of lights, we end up with a proliferation of different versions of our vertex and pixel shaders—versions that handle different numbers of lights, different types of lights, different numbers of skinning weights, etc.

*Deferred rendering* is an alternative way to shade a scene that addresses many of these problems. In deferred rendering, the majority of the lighting calculations are done in screen space, not view space. We efficiently render the scene without worrying about lighting. During this phase, we store all the information we're going to need to light the pixels in a "deep" frame buffer known as the *G-buffer*. Once the scene has been fully rendered, we use the information in the G-buffer to perform our lighting and shading calculations. This is usually much more efficient than view-space lighting, avoids the proliferation of shader variants and permits some very pleasing effects to be rendered relatively easily.

The G-buffer may be physically implemented as a collection of buffers, but conceptually it is a single frame buffer containing a rich set of information about the lighting and surface properties of the objects in the scene at every pixel on the screen. A typical G-buffer might contain the following per-pixel attributes: depth, surface normal in view space or world space, diffuse color, specular power, even precomputed radiance transfer (PRT) coefficients. The following sequence of screenshots from Guerrilla Games' *Killzone 2* (Figure 11.62) shows some of the typical components of the G-buffer.

An in-depth discussion of deferred rendering is beyond our scope, but the folks at Guerrilla Games have prepared an excellent presentation on the topic, which is available at <http://www.slideshare.net/guerrillagames/deferred-rendering-in-killzone-2-9691589>.

### 11.3.5 Physically Based Shading

Traditional game lighting engines have required artists and lighters to tweak a wide variety of sometimes non-intuitive parameters, across numerous disparate rendering engine systems, in order to achieve a desired "look" in-game.

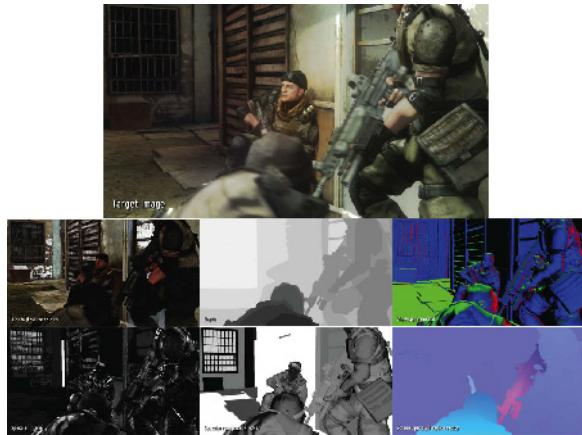


Figure II.62. Screenshots from *Killzone 2* by Guerrilla Games, showing some of the typical components of the G-buffer used in deferred rendering. The upper image shows the final rendered image. Below it, clockwise from the upper left, are the albedo (diffuse) color, depth, view-space normal, screen-space 2D motion vector (for motion blurring), specular power and specular intensity. (See Color Plate XXII.)

This can be an arduous and time-consuming process. What's worse, parameter settings that work well under one set of lighting conditions might not work well under other lighting scenarios. To address these problems, rendering programmers are turning toward *physically based shading* models.

A physically based shading model attempts to approximate the ways in which light travels and interacts with materials in the real world, allowing artists and lighters to tweak shader parameters using intuitive, real-world quantities measured in real-world units. A complete discussion of physically based shading is beyond the scope of this book, but you can start to learn more about it here: <https://www.marmoset.co/toolbag/learn/pbr-theory>.

## II.4 Visual Effects and Overlays

The rendering pipeline we've discussed to this point is responsible primarily for rendering three-dimensional solid objects. A number of specialized rendering systems are typically layered on top of this pipeline, responsible for rendering visual elements like particle effects, decals (small geometry overlays that represent bullet holes, cracks, scratches and other surface details), hair and fur, rain or falling snow, water and other specialized visual effects. Full-screen post effects may be applied, including vignette (a reduction of brightness and saturation around the edges of the screen), motion blur, depth

of field blurring, artificial/enhanced colorization, and the list goes on. Finally, the game’s menu system and heads-up display (HUD) are typically realized by rendering text and other two- or three-dimensional graphics in screen space overlaid on top of the three-dimensional scene.

An in-depth coverage of these engine systems is beyond our scope. In the following sections, we’ll provide a brief overview of these rendering systems, and point you in the direction of additional information.

#### 11.4.1 Particle Effects

A particle rendering system is concerned with rendering amorphous objects like clouds of smoke, sparks, flame and so on. These are called *particle effects*. The key features that differentiate a particle effect from other kinds of renderable geometry are as follows:

- It is composed of a very *large number* of *relatively simple* pieces of geometry—most often simple cards called *quads*, composed of two triangles each.
- The geometry is often *camera-facing* (i.e., billboarded), meaning that the engine must take steps to ensure that the face normals of each quad always point directly at the camera’s focal point.
- Its materials are almost always *semitransparent* or *translucent*. As such, particle effects have some stringent *rendering order* constraints that do not apply to the majority of opaque objects in a scene.
- Particles *animate* in a rich variety of ways. Their positions, orientations, sizes (scales), texture coordinates and many of their shader parameters vary from frame to frame. These changes are defined either by hand-authored animation curves or via procedural methods.
- Particles are typically *spawned and killed* continually. A particle emitter is a logical entity in the world that creates particles at some user-specified rate; particles are killed when they hit a predefined death plane, or when they have lived for a user-defined length of time, or as decided by some other user-specified criteria.

Particle effects could be rendered using regular triangle mesh geometry with appropriate shaders. However, because of the unique characteristics listed above, a specialized particle effect animation and rendering system is always used to implement them in a real production game engine. A few example particle effects are shown in Figure 11.63.



Figure II.63. Flame, smoke and bullet tracer particle effects in *Uncharted 3: Drake's Deception* (© 2011/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 3). (See Color Plate XXIII.)

Particle system design and implementation is a rich topic that could occupy many chapters all on its own. For more information on particle systems, see [2, Section 10.7], [16, Section 20.5], [11, Section 13.7] and [12, Section 4.1.2].

#### II.4.2 Decals

A *decal* is a relatively small piece of geometry that is overlaid on top of the regular geometry in the scene, allowing the visual appearance of the surface to be modified dynamically. Examples include bullet holes, foot prints, scratches, cracks, etc.

The approach most often used by modern engines is to model a decal as a rectangular area that is to be projected along a ray into the scene. This gives rise to a rectangular prism in 3D space. Whatever surface the prism intersects first becomes the surface of the decal. The triangles of the intersected geometry are extracted and clipped against the four bounding planes of the decal's projected prism. The resulting triangles are texture-mapped with a desired decal texture by generating appropriate texture coordinates for each vertex. These texture-mapped triangles are then rendered over the top of the regular scene, often using parallax mapping to give them the illusion of depth and with a slight  $z$ -bias (usually implemented by shifting the near plane slightly) so they don't experience  $z$ -fighting with the geometry on which they are overlaid. The result is the appearance of a bullet hole, scratch or other kind of surface modification. Some bullet-hole decals are depicted in Figure 11.64.

For more information on creating and rendering decals, see [9, Section 4.8] and [32, Section 9.2].

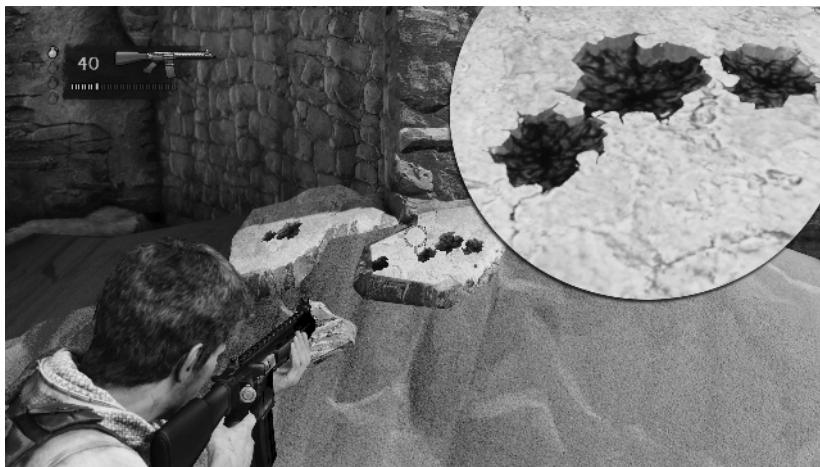


Figure II.64. Parallax-mapped decals from *Uncharted 3: Drake's Deception* (© 2011/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 3). (See Color Plate XXIV.)

### II.4.3 Environmental Effects

Any game that takes place in a somewhat natural or realistic environment requires some kind of environmental rendering effects. These effects are usually implemented via specialized rendering systems. We'll take a brief look at a few of the more common of these systems in the following sections.

#### II.4.3.1 Skies

The sky in a game world needs to contain vivid detail, yet technically speaking it lies an extremely long distance away from the camera. Therefore, we cannot model it as it really is and must turn instead to various specialized rendering techniques.

One simple approach is to fill the frame buffer with the sky texture prior to rendering any 3D geometry. The sky texture should be rendered at an approximate 1:1 texel-to-pixel ratio, so that the texture is roughly or exactly the resolution of the screen. The sky texture can be rotated and scrolled to correspond to the motions of the camera in-game. During rendering of the sky, we make sure to set the depth of all pixels in the frame buffer to the maximum possible depth value. This ensures that the 3D scene elements will always sort on top of the sky. The arcade hit *Hydro Thunder* rendered its skies in exactly this manner.

On modern game platforms, where pixel shading costs can be high, sky rendering is often done *after* the rest of the scene has been rendered. First the z-buffer is cleared to the maximum z-value. Then the scene is rendered.

Finally the sky is rendered, with  $z$ -testing enabled,  $z$  writing turned off, and using a  $z$ -test value that is one less than the maximum. This causes the sky to be drawn only where it is not occluded by closer objects like terrain, buildings and trees. Drawing the sky last ensures that its pixel shader is run for the minimum possible number of screen pixels.

For games in which the player can look in any direction, we can use a *sky dome* or *sky box*. The dome or box is rendered with its center always at the camera's current location, so that it appears to lie at infinity, no matter where the camera moves in the game world. As with the sky texture approach, the sky box or dome is rendered before any other 3D geometry, and all of the pixels in the frame buffer are set to the maximum  $z$ -value when the sky is rendered. This means that the dome or box can actually be tiny, relative to other objects in the scene. Its size is irrelevant, as long as it fills the entire frame buffer when it is drawn. For more information on sky rendering, see [2, Section 10.3] and [44, page 253].

Clouds are often implemented with a specialized rendering and animation system as well. In early games like *Doom* and *Quake*, the clouds were just planes with scrolling semitransparent cloud textures on them. More-recent cloud techniques include camera-facing cards (billboards), particle-effect based clouds and volumetric cloud effects.

#### II.4.3.2 Terrain

The goal of a terrain system is to model the surface of the earth and provide a canvas of sorts upon which other static and dynamic elements can be laid out. Terrain is sometimes modeled explicitly in a package like Maya. But if the player can see far into the distance, we usually want some kind of dynamic tessellation or other level of detail (LOD) system. We may also need to limit the amount of data required to represent very large outdoor areas.

*Height field terrain* is one popular choice for modeling large terrain areas. The data size can be kept relatively small because a height field is typically stored in a grayscale texture map. In most height-field-based terrain systems, the horizontal ( $y = 0$ ) plane is tessellated in a regular grid pattern, and the heights of the terrain vertices are determined by sampling the height field texture. The number of triangles per unit area can be varied based on distance from the camera, thereby allowing large-scale features to be seen in the distance, while still permitting a good deal of detail to be represented for nearby terrain. An example of a terrain defined via a height field bitmap is shown in Figure 11.65.

Terrain systems usually provide specialized tools for “painting” the height field itself, carving out terrain features like roads, rivers and so on. Texture

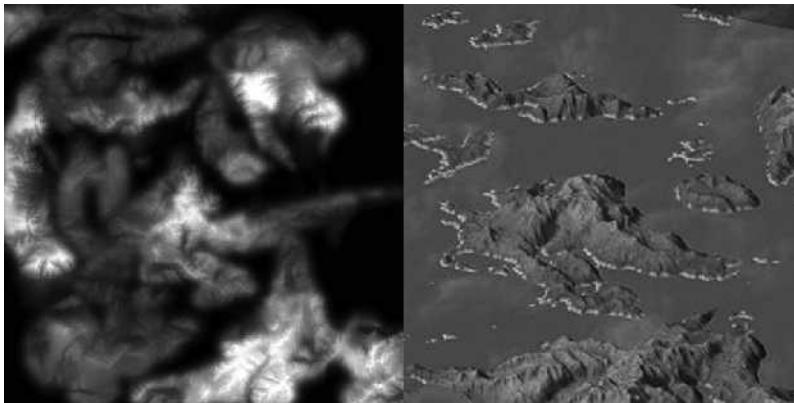


Figure II.65. A grayscale height field bitmap (left) can be used to control the vertical positions of the vertices in a terrain grid mesh (right). In this example, a water plane intersects the terrain mesh to create islands.

mapping in a terrain system is often a blend between four or more textures. This allows artists to “paint” in grass, dirt, gravel and other terrain features by simply exposing one of the texture layers. The layers can be cross-blended from one to another to provide smooth textural transitions. Some terrain tools also permit sections of the terrain to be cut out to permit buildings, trenches and other specialized terrain features to be inserted in the form of regular mesh geometry. Terrain authoring tools are sometimes integrated directly into the game world editor, while in other engines they may be stand-alone tools.

Of course, height field terrain is just one of many options for modeling the surface of the Earth in a game. For more information on terrain rendering, see [8, Sections 4.16 through 4.19] and [9, Section 4.2].

#### II.4.3.3 Water

Water renderers are commonplace in games nowadays. There are lots of different kinds of water, including oceans, pools, rivers, waterfalls, fountains, jets, puddles and damp solid surfaces. Each type of water generally requires some specialized rendering technology. Some also require dynamic motion simulations. Large bodies of water may require dynamic tessellation or other LOD methodologies similar to those employed in a terrain system.

Water systems sometimes interact with a game’s rigid body dynamics system (floatation, force from water jets, etc.) and with gameplay (slippery surfaces, swimming mechanics, diving mechanics, riding vertical jets of water and so on). Water effects are often created by combining disparate rendering technologies and subsystems. For example, a waterfall might make use

of specialized water shaders, scrolling textures, particle effects for mist at the base, a decal-like overlay for foam, and the list goes on. Today’s games offer some pretty amazing water effects, and active research into technologies like real-time fluid dynamics promises to make water simulations even richer and more realistic in the years ahead. For more information on water rendering and simulation techniques, see [2, Sections 9.3, 9.5 and 9.6], [15] and [8, Sections 2.6 and 5.11].

#### II.4.4 Overlays

Most games have heads-up displays, in-game graphical user interfaces and menu systems. These *overlays* are typically comprised of two- and three-dimensional graphics rendered directly in view space or screen space.

Overlays are generally rendered after the primary scene, with  $z$ -testing disabled to ensure that they appear on top of the three-dimensional scene. Two-dimensional overlays are typically implemented by rendering quads (triangle pairs) in screen space using an orthographic projection. Three-dimensional overlays may be rendered using an orthographic projection or via the regular perspective projection with the geometry positioned in view space so that it follows the camera around.

##### II.4.4.1 Text and Fonts

A game engine’s text/font system is typically implemented as a special kind of two-dimensional (or sometimes three-dimensional) overlay. At its core, a text rendering system needs to be capable of displaying a sequence of character glyphs corresponding to a text string, arranged in various orientations on the screen.

A font is often implemented via a texture map known as a *glyph atlas*, which contains the various required glyphs. This texture typically consists of a single alpha channel—the value at each pixel representing the percentage of that pixel that is covered by the interior of a glyph. A font description file provides information such as the bounding boxes of each glyph within the texture, and font layout information such as kerning, baseline offsets and so on. A glyph is rendered by drawing a quad whose  $(u, v)$  coordinates correspond to the bounding box of the desired glyph within the atlas texture map. The texture map provides the alpha value, while the color is specified separately, allowing glyphs of any color to be rendered from the same atlas.

Another option for font rendering is to make use of a font library like FreeType (<https://www.freetype.org/>). The FreeType library enables a game or other application to read fonts in a wide variety of formats, including

TrueType (TTF) and OpenType (OTF), and to render glyphs into in-memory pixmaps at any desired point size. FreeType renders each glyph using its Bezier curve outlines, so it produces very accurate results.

Typically a real-time application like a game will use FreeType to prerender the necessary glyphs into an atlas, which is in turn used as a texture map to render glyphs as simple quads every frame. However, by embedding FreeType or a similar library in your engine, it's possible to render some glyphs into the atlas on the fly, on an as-needed basis. This can be useful when rendering text in a language with a very large number of possible glyphs, like Chinese or Korean.

Yet another way to render high-quality character glyphs is to use *signed distance fields* to describe the glyphs. In this approach, glyphs are rendered to pixmaps (as they would be with a library like FreeType), but the value at each pixel is no longer an alpha “coverage” value. Instead, each pixel contains a signed distance from that pixel center to the nearest edge of the glyph. Inside the glyph, the distances are negative; outside the glyph’s outlines, they are positive. When rendering a glyph from a signed distance field texture atlas, the distances are used in the pixel shader to calculate highly accurate alpha values. The net result is text that looks smooth at any distance or viewing angle. You can read more about signed distance field text rendering by searching online for Konstantin Käfer’s article entitled “Drawing Text with Signed Distance Fields in Mapbox GL,” or the article written by Chris Green of Valve entitled “Improved Alpha-Tested Magnification for Vector Textures and Special Effects.”

Glyphs can also be rendered directly from the Bézier curve outlines that define them. The Slug font rendering library by Terathon Software LLC performs its outline-based glyph rendering on the GPU, thereby making this technique practical for use in a real-time game application.

A good text/font system must account for the differences in character sets and reading directions inherent in various languages. Laying out the characters in a text string is a process known as *shaping* the string. The characters are laid out from left to right or right to left, depending on the language, with each character aligned to a common *baseline*. The spacing between characters is determined in part by metrics provided by the creator of the font (and stored in the font file), and partly by *kerning* rules that dictate contextual intercharacter spacing adjustments.

Some text systems also provide various fun features like the ability to animate characters across the screen in various ways, the ability to animate individual characters and so on. However, it’s important to remember when implementing a game font system that only those features that are *actually re-*

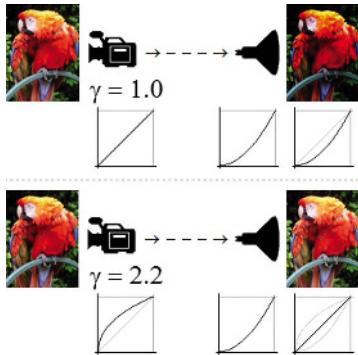


Figure II.66. The effect of a CRT's gamma response on image quality and how the effect can be corrected for. Image courtesy of [www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org).

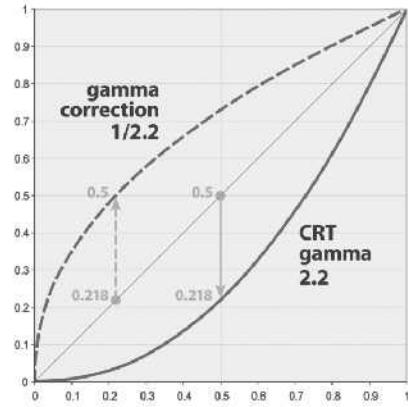


Figure II.67. Gamma encoding and decoding curves. Image courtesy of [www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org).

quired by the game should be implemented. There's no point in furnishing your engine with an advanced text animation if your game never needs to display animated text, for example.

#### II.4.5 Gamma Correction

CRT monitors tend to have a nonlinear response to luminance values. That is, if a linearly increasing ramp of R, G or B values were to be sent to a CRT, the image that would result on-screen would be perceptually nonlinear to the human eye. Visually, the dark regions of the image would look darker than they should. This is illustrated in Figure 11.66.

The gamma response curve of a typical CRT display can be modeled quite simply by the formula

$$V_{\text{out}} = V_{\text{in}}^{\gamma}$$

where  $\gamma_{\text{CRT}} > 1$ . To correct for this effect, the colors sent to the CRT display are usually passed through an inverse transformation (i.e., using a gamma value  $\gamma_{\text{corr}} < 1$ ). The value of  $\gamma_{\text{CRT}}$  for a typical CRT monitor is 2.2, so the correction value is usually  $\gamma_{\text{corr}} \approx 1/2.2 = 0.455$ . These gamma encoding and decoding curves are shown in Figure 11.67.

Gamma encoding can be performed by the 3D rendering engine to ensure that the values in the final image are properly gamma-corrected. One problem that is encountered, however, is that the bitmap images used to represent texture maps are often gamma-corrected themselves. A high-quality rendering engine takes this fact into account, by gamma-decoding the textures prior to

rendering and then re-encoding the gamma of the final rendered scene so that its colors can be reproduced properly on-screen.

#### II.4.6 Full-Screen Post Effects

Full-screen *post effects* are effects applied to a rendered three-dimensional scene that provide additional realism or a stylized look. These effects are often implemented by passing the entire contents of the screen through a pixel shader that applies the desired effect(s). This can be accomplished by rendering a full-screen quad that has been mapped with a texture containing the unfiltered scene. A few examples of full-screen post effects are given below:

- *Motion blur*. This is typically implemented by rendering a buffer of screen-space velocity vectors and using this vector field to selectively blur the rendered image. Blurring is accomplished by passing a *convolution kernel* over the image (see “Image Smoothing and Sharpening by Discrete Convolution” by Dale A. Schumacher, published in [5], for details).
- *Depth of field blur*. This blur effect can be produced by using the contents of the depth buffer to adjust the degree of blur applied at each pixel.
- *Vignette*. In this filmic effect, the brightness or saturation of the image is reduced at the corners of the screen for dramatic effect. It is sometimes implemented by literally rendering a texture overlay on top of the screen. A variation on this effect is used to produce the classic circular effect used to indicate that the player is looking through a pair of binoculars or a weapon scope.
- *Colorization*. The colors of screen pixels can be altered in arbitrary ways as a post-processing effect. For example, all colors except red could be desaturated to grey to produce a striking effect similar to the famous scene of the little girl in the red coat from *Schindler’s List*.

### II.5 Further Reading

We’ve covered a lot of material in a very short space in this chapter, but we’ve only just scratched the surface. No doubt you’ll want to explore many of these topics in much greater detail. For an excellent overview of the entire process of creating three-dimensional computer graphics and animation for games and film, I highly recommend [27]. The technology that underlies modern real-time rendering is covered in excellent depth in [2], while [16] is well known as the definitive reference guide to all things related to computer graphics.

Other great books on 3D rendering include [49], [11] and [12]. The mathematics of 3D rendering is covered very well in [32]. No graphics programmer's library would be complete without one or more books from the *Graphics Gems* series ([20], [5], [28], [22] and [42]) and/or the *GPU Gems* series ([15], [44] and [40]). Of course, this short reference list is only the beginning—you will undoubtedly encounter a great many more excellent books on rendering and shaders over the course of your career as a game programmer.

# 12

## Animation Systems

The majority of modern 3D games revolve around *characters*—often human or humanoid, sometimes animal or alien. Characters are unique because they need to move in a fluid, organic way. This poses a host of new technical challenges, over and above what is required to simulate and animate rigid objects like vehicles, projectiles, soccer balls and Tetris pieces. The task of imbuing characters with natural-looking motion is handled by an engine component known as the *character animation system*.

As we'll see, an animation system gives game designers a powerful suite of tools that can be applied to non-characters as well as characters. Any game object that is not 100% rigid can take advantage of the animation system. So whenever you see a vehicle with moving parts, a piece of articulated machinery, trees waving gently in the breeze or even an exploding building in a game, chances are good that the object makes at least partial use of the game engine's animation system.

### 12.1 Types of Character Animation

Character animation technology has come a long way since *Donkey Kong*. At first, games employed very simple techniques to provide the illusion of lifelike movement. As game hardware improved, more-advanced techniques became

feasible in real time. Today, game designers have a host of powerful animation methods at their disposal. In this section, we'll take a brief look at the evolution of character animation and outline the three most-common techniques used in modern game engines.

### 12.1.1 Cel Animation

The precursor to all game animation techniques is known as *traditional animation*, or *hand-drawn animation*. This is the technique used in the earliest animated cartoons. The illusion of motion is produced by displaying a sequence of still pictures known as *frames* in rapid succession. Real-time 3D rendering can be thought of as an electronic form of traditional animation, in that a sequence of still full-screen images is presented to the viewer over and over to produce the illusion of motion.

*Cel animation* is a specific type of traditional animation. A *cel* is a transparent sheet of plastic on which images can be painted or drawn. An animated sequence of cels can be placed on top of a fixed background painting or drawing to produce the illusion of motion without having to redraw the static background over and over.

The electronic equivalent to cel animation is a technology known as *sprite animation*. A sprite is a small bitmap that can be overlaid on top of a full-screen background image without disrupting it, often drawn with the aid of specialized graphics hardware. Hence, a sprite is to 2D game animation what a cel was to traditional animation. This technique was a staple during the 2D game era. Figure 12.1 shows the famous sequence of sprite bitmaps that were used to produce the illusion of a running humanoid character in almost every Mattel Intellivision game ever made. The sequence of frames was designed so that it animates smoothly even when it is repeated indefinitely—this is known as a *looping animation*. This particular animation would be called a *run cycle* in modern parlance, because it makes the character appear to be running. Characters typically have a number of looping animation cycles, including various idle cycles, a walk cycle and a run cycle.



Figure 12.1. The sequence of sprite bitmaps used in most Intellivision games.

### 12.1.2 Rigid Hierarchical Animation

Early 3D games like *Doom* continued to make use of a sprite-like animation system: Its monsters were nothing more than camera-facing quads, each of which displayed a sequence of texture bitmaps (known as an *animated texture*) to produce the illusion of motion. And this technique is still used today for low-resolution and/or distant objects—for example crowds in a stadium, or hordes of soldiers fighting a distant battle in the background. But for high-quality foreground characters, 3D graphics brought with it the need for improved character animation methods.

The earliest approach to 3D character animation is a technique known as *rigid hierarchical animation*. In this approach, a character is modeled as a collection of rigid pieces. A typical breakdown for a humanoid character might be pelvis, torso, upper arms, lower arms, upper legs, lower legs, hands, feet and head. The rigid pieces are constrained to one another in a hierarchical fashion, analogous to the manner in which a mammal's bones are connected at the joints. This allows the character to move naturally. For example, when the upper arm is moved, the lower arm and hand will automatically follow it. A typical hierarchy has the pelvis at the root, with the torso and upper legs as its immediate children and so on as shown below:

```
Pelvis
  Torso
    UpperRightArm
    LowerRightArm
    RightHand
    UpperLeftArm
    UpperLeftArm
    LeftHand
    Head
    UpperRightLeg
    LowerRightLeg
    RightFoot
    UpperLeftLeg
    UpperLeftLeg
    LeftFoot
```

The big problem with the rigid hierarchy technique is that the behavior of the character's body is often not very pleasing due to "cracking" at the joints. This is illustrated in Figure 12.2. Rigid hierarchical animation works well for robots and machinery that really are constructed of rigid parts, but it breaks down under scrutiny when applied to "fleshy" characters.

### 12.1.3 Per-Vertex Animation and Morph Targets

Rigid hierarchical animation tends to look unnatural because it is rigid. What we really want is a way to move individual vertices so that triangles can stretch to produce more natural-looking motion.

One way to achieve this is to apply a brute-force technique known as *per-vertex animation*. In this approach, the vertices of the mesh are animated by an artist, and motion data is exported, which tells the game engine how to move each vertex at runtime. This technique can produce any mesh deformation imaginable (limited only by the tessellation of the surface). However, it is a data-intensive technique, since time-varying motion information must be stored for each vertex of the mesh. For this reason, it has little application to real-time games.

A variation on this technique known as *morph target animation* is used in some real-time games. In this approach, the vertices of a mesh are moved by an animator to create a relatively small set of fixed, extreme poses. Animations are produced by *blending* between two or more of these fixed poses at runtime. The position of each vertex is calculated using a simple linear interpolation (LERP) between the vertex's positions in each of the extreme poses.

The morph target technique is often used for facial animation, because the human face is an extremely complex piece of anatomy, driven by roughly 50 muscles. Morph target animation gives an animator full control over every vertex of a facial mesh, allowing him or her to produce both subtle and extreme movements that approximate the musculature of the face well. Figure 12.3 shows a set of facial morph targets.

As computing power continues to increase, some studios are using jointed facial rigs containing hundreds of joints as an alternative to morph targets. Other studios combine the two techniques, using jointed rigs to achieve the primary pose of the face and then applying small tweaks via morph targets.

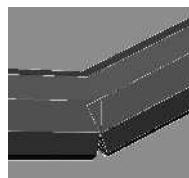


Figure 12.2. Cracking at the joints is a big problem in rigid hierarchical animation.

### 12.1.4 Skinned Animation

As the capabilities of game hardware improved further, an animation technology known as *skinned animation* was developed. This technique has many of the benefits of per-vertex and morph target animation—permitting the triangles of an animated mesh to deform. But it also enjoys the much more efficient performance and memory usage characteristics of rigid hierarchical animation. It is capable of producing reasonably realistic approximations to the movement of skin and clothing.

Skinned animation was first used by games like *Super Mario 64*, and it is still the most prevalent technique in use today, both by the game industry and the feature film industry. A host of famous modern game and movie characters, including the dinosaurs from *Jurassic Park*, Solid Snake (*Metal Gear Solid 4*), Gollum (*Lord of the Rings*), Nathan Drake (*Uncharted*), Buzz Lightyear (*Toy Story*), Marcus Fenix (*Gears of War*) and Joel (*The Last of Us*) were all animated, in whole or in part, using skinned animation techniques. The remainder of this chapter will be devoted primarily to the study of skinned/skeletal animation.

In skinned animation, a *skeleton* is constructed from rigid “bones,” just as in rigid hierarchical animation. However, instead of rendering the rigid pieces on-screen, they remain hidden. A smooth continuous triangle mesh called a *skin* is bound to the joints of the skeleton; its vertices track the movements of the joints. Each vertex of the skin mesh can be weighted to multiple joints, so the skin can stretch in a natural way as the joints move.

In Figure 12.4, we see Crank the Weasel, a game character designed by Eric Browning for Midway Home Entertainment in 2001. Crank’s outer skin is composed of a mesh of triangles, just like any other 3D model. However, inside him we can see the rigid bones and joints that make his skin move.

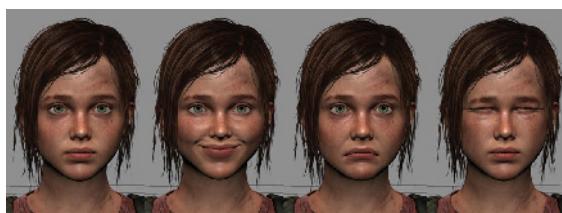


Figure 12.3. A set of facial morph targets for the Ellie character in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4).

### 12.1.5 Animation Methods as Data Compression Techniques

The most flexible animation system conceivable would give the animator control over literally every infinitesimal point on an object's surface. Of course, animating like this would result in an animation that contains a potentially infinite amount of data! Animating the vertices of a triangle mesh is a simplification of this ideal—in effect, we are *compressing* the amount of information needed to describe an animation by restricting ourselves to moving only the vertices. (Animating a set of control points is the analog of vertex animation for models constructed out of higher-order patches.) Morph targets can be thought of as an additional level of compression, achieved by imposing additional constraints on the system—vertices are constrained to move only along linear paths between a fixed number of predefined vertex positions. Skeletal animation is just another way to compress vertex animation data by imposing constraints. In this case, the motions of a relatively large number of vertices are constrained to follow the motions of a relatively small number of skeletal joints.

When considering the trade-offs between various animation techniques, it can be helpful to think of them as compression methods, analogous in many respects to video compression techniques. We should generally aim to select the animation method that provides the best compression without producing unacceptable visual artifacts. Skeletal animation provides the best compression when the motion of a single joint is magnified into the motions of many vertices. A character's limbs act like rigid bodies for the most part, so they can

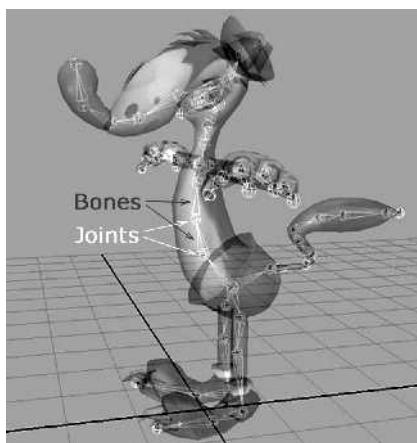


Figure 12.4. Eric Browning's Crank the Weasel character, with internal skeletal structure.

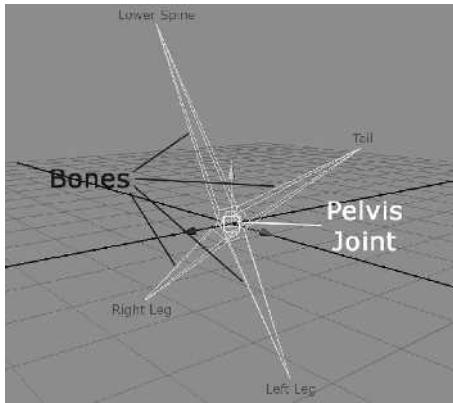


Figure 12.5. The pelvis joint of this character connects to four other joints (tail, spine and two legs), and so it produces four bones.

be moved very efficiently with a skeleton. However, the motion of a face tends to be much more complex, with the motions of individual vertices being more independent. To convincingly animate a face using the skeletal approach, the required number of joints approaches the number of vertices in the mesh, thus diminishing its effectiveness as a compression technique. This is one reason why morph target techniques are often favored over the skeletal approach for facial animation. (Another common reason is that morph targets tend to be a more natural way for animators to work.)

## 12.2 Skeletons

A skeleton is comprised of a *hierarchy* of rigid pieces known as *joints*. In the game industry, we often use the terms “joint” and “bone” interchangeably, but the term *bone* is actually a misnomer. Technically speaking, the joints are the objects that are directly manipulated by the animator, while the bones are simply the empty spaces between the joints. As an example, consider the pelvis joint in the Crank the Weasel character model. It is a single joint, but because it connects to four other joints (the tail, the spine and the left and right hip joints), this one joint appears to have four bones sticking out of it. This is shown in more detail in Figure 12.5. Game engines don’t care a whip about bones—only the joints matter. So whenever you hear the term “bone” being used in the industry, remember that 99% of the time we are actually speaking about joints.

### 12.2.1 The Skeletal Hierarchy

As we've mentioned, the joints in a skeleton form a hierarchy or tree structure. One joint is selected as the root, and all other joints are its children, grandchildren and so on. A typical joint hierarchy for skinned animation looks almost identical to a typical rigid hierarchy. For example, a humanoid character's joint hierarchy might look something like the one depicted in Figure 12.6.

We usually assign each joint an index from 0 to  $N - 1$ . Because each joint has one and only one parent, the hierarchical structure of a skeleton can be fully described by storing the index of its parent with each joint. The root joint has no parent, so its parent index is usually set to an invalid value such as  $-1$ .

### 12.2.2 Representing a Skeleton in Memory

A skeleton is usually represented by a small top-level data structure that contains an array of data structures for the individual joints. The joints are usually listed in an order that ensures a child joint will always appear after its parent in the array. This implies that joint zero is always the root of the skeleton.

*Joint indices* are usually used to refer to joints within animation data structures. For example, a child joint typically refers to its parent joint by specifying its index. Likewise, in a skinned triangle mesh, a vertex refers to the joint or joints to which it is bound by index. This is much more efficient than referring to joints by name, both in terms of the amount of storage required (a joint index can be 8 bits wide, as long as we are willing to accept a maximum of 256 joints per skeleton) and in terms of the amount of time it takes to look up a referenced joint (we can use the joint index to jump immediately to a desired joint in the array).

Each joint data structure typically contains the following information:

- The *name* of the joint, either as a string or a hashed 32-bit string id.
- The *index* of the joint's *parent* within the skeleton.
- The *inverse bind pose transform* of the joint. The bind pose of a joint is the position, orientation and scale of that joint at the time it was bound to the vertices of the skin mesh. We usually store the *inverse* of this transformation for reasons we'll explore in more depth in the following sections.

A typical skeleton data structure might look something like this:

```
struct Joint
{
    Matrix4x3  m_invBindPose; // inverse bind pose
```



Figure 12.6. Example of a skeletal hierarchy, as it would appear in Maya's Hierarchy view.

```
        // transform
    const char* m_name;           // human-readable joint
                                // name
    U8          m_iParent;        // parent index or 0xFF
                                // if root
};

struct Skeleton
{
    U32      m_jointCount;      // number of joints
    Joint*   m_aJoint;          // array of joints
};
```

## 12.3 Poses

No matter what technique is used to produce an animation, be it cel-based, rigid hierarchical or skinned/skeletal, every animation takes place over time. A character is imbued with the illusion of motion by arranging the character's body into a sequence of discrete, still *poses* and then displaying those poses in rapid succession, usually at a rate of 30 or 60 *poses per second*. (Actually, as we'll see in Section 12.4.1.1, we often *interpolate* between adjacent poses rather than displaying a single pose verbatim.) In skeletal animation, the pose of the skeleton directly controls the vertices of the mesh, and posing is the animator's primary tool for breathing life into her characters. So clearly, before we can animate a skeleton, we must first understand how to *pose* it.

A skeleton is posed by rotating, translating and possibly scaling its joints in arbitrary ways. The *pose* of a joint is defined as the joint's position, orientation and scale, relative to some frame of reference. A joint pose is usually represented by a  $4 \times 4$  or  $4 \times 3$  matrix, or by an SRT data structure (scale, quaternion rotation and vector translation). The pose of a skeleton is just the set of all of its joints' poses and is normally represented as a simple array of matrices or SRTs.

### 12.3.1 Bind Pose

Two different poses of the same skeleton are shown in Figure 12.7. The pose on the left is a special pose known as the *bind pose*, also sometimes called the *reference pose* or the *rest pose*. This is the pose of the 3D mesh prior to being bound to the skeleton (hence the name). In other words, it is the pose that the mesh would assume if it were rendered as a regular, unskinned triangle mesh, without any skeleton at all. The bind pose is also called the *T-pose* because

the character is usually standing with his feet slightly apart and his arms outstretched in the shape of the letter T. This particular stance is chosen because it keeps the limbs away from the body and each other, making the process of binding the vertices to the joints easier.

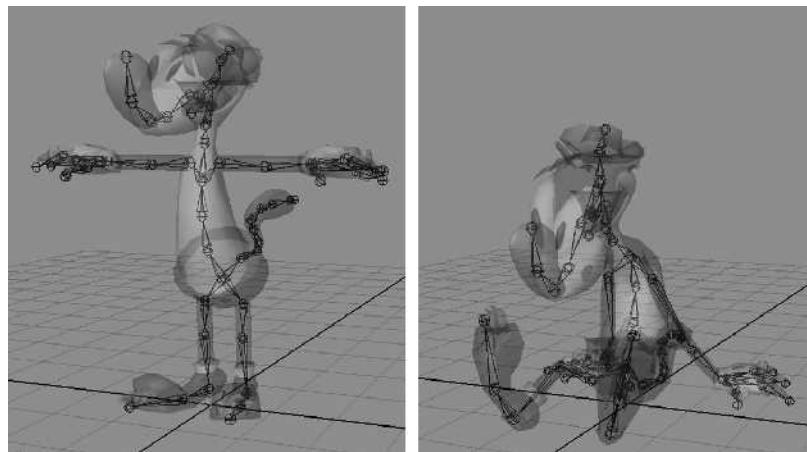


Figure 12.7. Two different poses of the same skeleton. The pose on the left is the special pose known as *bind pose*.

### 12.3.2 Local Poses

A joint's pose is most often specified relative to its *parent* joint. A parent-relative pose allows a joint to move naturally. For example, if we rotate the shoulder joint, but leave the parent-relative poses of the elbow, wrist and fingers unchanged, the entire arm will rotate about the shoulder in a rigid manner, as we'd expect. We sometimes use the term *local pose* to describe a parent-relative pose. Local poses are almost always stored in SRT format, for reasons we'll explore when we discuss animation blending.

Graphically, many 3D authoring packages like Maya represent joints as small spheres. However, a joint has a rotation and a scale, not just a translation, so this visualization can be a bit misleading. In fact, a joint actually defines a coordinate space no different in principle from the other spaces we've encountered (like model space, world space or view space). So it is best to picture a joint as a set of Cartesian coordinate axes. Maya gives the user the option of displaying a joint's local coordinate axes—this is shown in Figure 12.8.

Mathematically, a joint pose is nothing more than an *affine transformation*. The pose of joint  $j$  can be written as the  $4 \times 4$  affine transformation matrix  $\mathbf{P}_j$ , which is comprised of a translation vector  $\mathbf{T}_j$ , a  $3 \times 3$  diagonal scale matrix

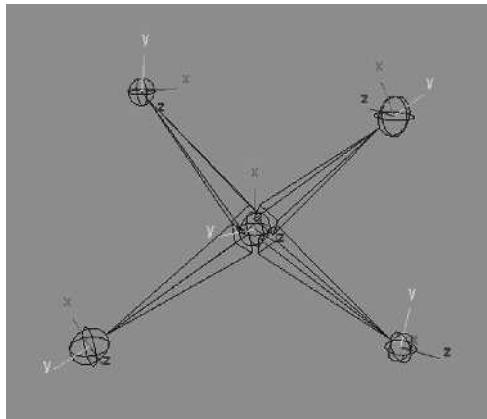


Figure 12.8. Every joint in a skeletal hierarchy defines a set of local coordinate space axes, known as joint space.

$\mathbf{S}_j$  and a  $3 \times 3$  rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_j$ . The pose of an entire skeleton  $\mathbf{P}^{\text{skel}}$  can be written as the set of all poses  $\mathbf{P}_j$ , where  $j$  ranges from 0 to  $N - 1$ :

$$\mathbf{P}_j = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}_j \mathbf{R}_j & 0 \\ \mathbf{T}_j & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{P}^{\text{skel}} = \left\{ \mathbf{P}_j \right\}_{j=0}^{N-1}.$$

### 12.3.2.1 Joint Scale

Some game engines assume that joints will never be scaled, in which case  $\mathbf{S}_j$  is simply omitted and assumed to be the identity matrix. Other engines make the assumption that scale will be *uniform* if present, meaning it is the same in all three dimensions. In this case, scale can be represented using a single scalar value  $s_j$ . Some engines even permit *nonuniform* scale, in which case scale can be compactly represented by the three-element vector  $\mathbf{s}_j = [s_{jx} \ s_{jy} \ s_{jz}]$ . The elements of the vector  $\mathbf{s}_j$  correspond to the three diagonal elements of the  $3 \times 3$  scaling matrix  $\mathbf{S}_j$ , so it is not really a vector *per se*. Game engines almost never permit shear, so  $\mathbf{S}_j$  is almost never represented by a full  $3 \times 3$  scale/shear matrix, although it certainly *could* be.

There are a number of benefits to omitting or constraining scale in a pose or animation. Clearly using a lower-dimensional scale representation can save memory. (Uniform scale requires a single floating-point scalar per joint per animation frame, while nonuniform scale requires three floats, and a full  $3 \times 3$  scale-shear matrix requires nine.) Restricting our engine to uniform scale has the added benefit of ensuring that the bounding sphere of a joint will never

be transformed into an ellipsoid, as it could be when scaled in a nonuniform manner. This greatly simplifies the mathematics of frustum and collision tests in engines that perform such tests on a per-joint basis.

### 12.3.2.2 Representing a Joint Pose in Memory

As we mentioned above, joint poses are usually stored in SRT format. In C++, such a data structure might look like this, where Q is first to ensure proper alignment and optimal structure packing. (Can you see why?)

```
struct JointPose
{
    Quaternion  m_rot;    // R
    Vector3     m_trans; // T
    F32         m_scale; // S (uniform scale only)
};
```

If nonuniform scale is permitted, we might define a joint pose like this instead:

```
struct JointPose
{
    Quaternion  m_rot;    // R
    Vector4     m_trans; // T
    Vector4     m_scale; // S
};
```

The local pose of an entire skeleton can be represented as follows, where it is understood that the array `m_aLocalPose` is dynamically allocated to contain just enough occurrences of `JointPose` to match the number of joints in the skeleton.

```
struct SkeletonPose
{
    Skeleton*  m_pSkeleton; // skeleton + num joints
    JointPose* m_aLocalPose; // local joint poses
};
```

### 12.3.2.3 The Joint Pose as a Change of Basis

It's important to remember that a *local* joint pose is specified relative to the joint's immediate parent. Any affine transformation can be thought of as transforming points and vectors from one coordinate space to another. So when the joint pose transform  $P_j$  is applied to a point or vector that is expressed in the coordinate system of the joint  $j$ , the result is that same point or vector expressed in the space of the parent joint.

As we've done in earlier chapters, we'll adopt the convention of using subscripts to denote the direction of a transformation. Since a joint pose takes points and vectors from the *child* joint's space (C) to that of its *parent* joint (P), we can write it  $(\mathbf{P}_{C \rightarrow P})_j$ . Alternatively, we can introduce the function  $p(j)$ , which returns the parent index of joint  $j$ , and write the local pose of joint  $j$  as  $\mathbf{P}_{j \rightarrow p(j)}$ .

On occasion we will need to transform points and vectors in the opposite direction—from *parent space* into the space of the *child* joint. This transformation is just the inverse of the local joint pose. Mathematically,  $\mathbf{P}_{p(j) \rightarrow j} = (\mathbf{P}_{j \rightarrow p(j)})^{-1}$ .

### 12.3.3 Global Poses

Sometimes it is convenient to express a joint's pose in model space or world space. This is called a *global pose*. Some engines express global poses in matrix form, while others use the SRT format.

Mathematically, the model-space pose of a joint ( $j \rightarrow M$ ) can be found by walking the skeletal hierarchy from the joint in question all the way to the root, multiplying the local poses ( $j \rightarrow p(j)$ ) as we go. Consider the hierarchy shown in Figure 12.9. The parent space of the root joint is defined to be model space, so  $p(0) \equiv M$ . The model-space pose of joint  $J_2$  can therefore be written as follows:

$$\mathbf{P}_{2 \rightarrow M} = \mathbf{P}_{2 \rightarrow 1} \mathbf{P}_{1 \rightarrow 0} \mathbf{P}_{0 \rightarrow M}.$$

Likewise, the model-space pose of joint  $J_5$  is just

$$\mathbf{P}_{5 \rightarrow M} = \mathbf{P}_{5 \rightarrow 4} \mathbf{P}_{4 \rightarrow 3} \mathbf{P}_{3 \rightarrow 0} \mathbf{P}_{0 \rightarrow M}.$$

In general, the global pose (joint-to-model transform) of any joint  $j$  can be written as follows:

$$\mathbf{P}_{j \rightarrow M} = \prod_{i=j}^0 \mathbf{P}_{i \rightarrow p(i)}, \quad (12.1)$$

where it is understood that  $i$  becomes  $p(i)$  (the parent of joint  $i$ ) after each iteration in the product, and  $p(0) \equiv M$ .

#### 12.3.3.1 Representing a Global Pose in Memory

We can extend our `SkeletonPose` data structure to include the global pose as follows, where again we dynamically allocate the `m_aGlobalPose` array based on the number of joints in the skeleton:

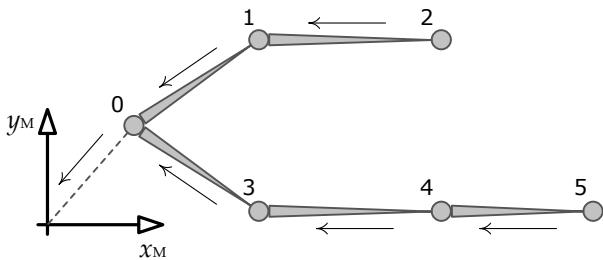


Figure 12.9. A global pose can be calculated by walking the hierarchy from the joint in question towards the root and model-space origin, concatenating the child-to-parent (local) transforms of each joint as we go.

```
struct SkeletonPose
{
    Skeleton* m_pSkeleton;    // skeleton + num joints
    JointPose* m_aLocalPose;  // local joint poses
    Matrix44* m_aGlobalPose; // global joint poses
};
```

## 12.4 Clips

In a film, every aspect of each scene is carefully planned out before any animations are created. This includes the movements of every character and prop in the scene, and even the movements of the camera. This means that an entire scene can be animated as one long, contiguous sequence of frames. And characters need not be animated at all whenever they are off-camera.

Game animation is different. A game is an interactive experience, so one cannot predict beforehand how the characters are going to move and behave. The player has full control over his or her character and usually has partial control over the camera as well. Even the decisions of the computer-driven non-player characters are strongly influenced by the unpredictable actions of the human player. As such, game animations are almost never created as long, contiguous sequences of frames. Instead, a game character's movement must be broken down into a large number of fine-grained motions. We call these individual motions *animation clips*, or sometimes just *animations*.

Each clip causes the character to perform a single well-defined action. Some clips are designed to be looped—for example, a walk cycle or run cycle. Others are designed to be played once—for example, throwing an object or tripping and falling to the ground. Some clips affect the entire body of the character—the character jumping into the air for instance. Other clips affect

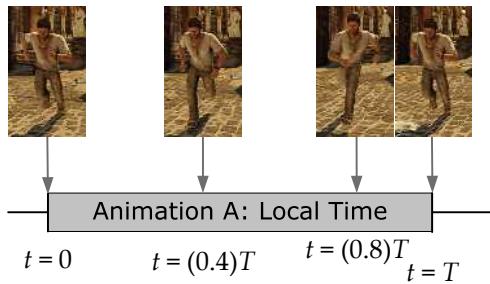


Figure 12.10. The local timeline of an animation showing poses at selected time indices. Images courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc., © 2014/™ SIE.

only a part of the body—perhaps the character waving his right arm. The movements of any one game character are typically broken down into literally thousands of clips.

The only exception to this rule is when game characters are involved in a noninteractive portion of the game, known as an *in-game cinematic* (IGC), *non-interactive sequence* (NIS) or *full-motion video* (FMV). Noninteractive sequences are typically used to communicate story elements that do not lend themselves well to interactive gameplay, and they are created in much the same way computer-generated films are made (although they often make use of in-game assets like character meshes, skeletons and textures). The terms IGC and NIS typically refer to noninteractive sequences that are rendered in real time by the game engine itself. The term FMV applies to sequences that have been prerendered to an MP4, WMV or other type of movie file and are played back at runtime by the engine's full-screen movie player.

A variation on this style of animation is a semi-interactive sequence known as a *quick time event* (QTE). In a QTE, the player must hit a button at the right moment during an otherwise noninteractive sequence in order to see the success animation and proceed; otherwise, a failure animation is played, and the player must try again, possibly losing a life or suffering some other consequence as a result.

#### 12.4.1 The Local Timeline

We can think of every animation clip as having a local timeline, usually denoted by the independent variable  $t$ . At the start of a clip,  $t = 0$ , and at the end,  $t = T$ , where  $T$  is the duration of the clip. Each unique value of the variable  $t$  is called a *time index*. An example of this is shown in Figure 12.10.

### 12.4.1.1 Pose Interpolation and Continuous Time

It's important to realize that the rate at which frames are displayed to the viewer is not necessarily the same as the rate at which poses are created by the animator. In both film and game animation, the animator almost never poses the character every 1/30 or 1/60 of a second. Instead, the animator generates important poses known as *key poses* or *key frames* at specific times within the clip, and the computer calculates the poses in between via linear or curve-based interpolation. This is illustrated in Figure 12.11.

Because of the animation engine's ability to *interpolate* poses (which we'll explore in depth later in this chapter), we can actually sample the pose of the character at *any time* during the clip—not just on integer frame indices. In other words, an animation clip's timeline is *continuous*. In computer animation, the time variable  $t$  is a *real* (floating-point) number, not an *integer*.

Film animation doesn't take full advantage of the continuous nature of the animation timeline, because its frame rate is locked at exactly 24, 30 or 60 frames per second. In film, the viewer sees the characters' poses at frames 1, 2, 3 and so on—there's never any need to find a character's pose on frame 3.7, for example. So in film animation, the animator doesn't pay much (if any) attention to how the character looks in between the integral frame indices.

In contrast, a real-time game's frame rate always varies a little, depending on how much load is currently being placed on the CPU and GPU. Also, game animations are sometimes *time-scaled* in order to make the character appear to move faster or slower than originally animated. So in a real-time game, an animation clip is almost *never* sampled on integer frame numbers. In theory, with a time scale of 1.0, a clip should be sampled at frames 1, 2, 3 and so on. But in practice, the player might actually see frames 1.1, 1.9, 3.2 and so on. And if the time scale is 0.5, then the player might actually see frames

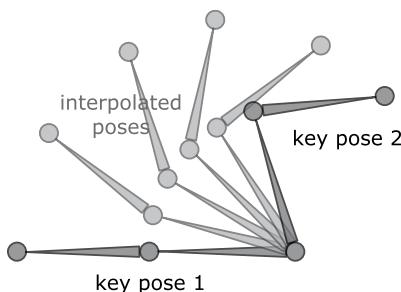


Figure 12.11. An animator creates a relatively small number of key poses, and the engine fills in the rest of the poses via interpolation.

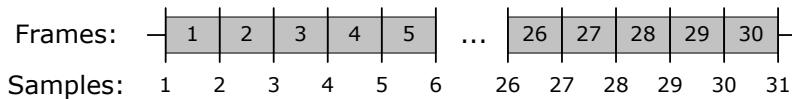


Figure 12.12. A one-second animation sampled at 30 frames per second is 30 frames in duration and consists of 31 samples.

1.1, 1.4, 1.9, 2.6, 3.2 and so on. A negative time scale can even be used to play an animation in reverse. So in game animation, time is both *continuous* and *scalable*.

#### 12.4.1.2 Time Units

Because an animation's timeline is continuous, time is best measured in units of seconds. Time can also be measured in units of *frames*, presuming we define the duration of a frame beforehand. Typical frame durations are  $1/30$  or  $1/60$  of a second for game animation. However, it's important not to make the mistake of defining your time variable  $t$  as an integer that counts whole frames. No matter which time units are selected,  $t$  should be a real (floating-point) quantity, a fixed-point number or an integer that measures very small subframe time intervals. The goal is to have sufficient resolution in your time measurements for doing things like “tweening” between frames or scaling an animation's playback speed.

#### 12.4.1.3 Frame versus Sample

Unfortunately, the term *frame* has more than one common meaning in the game industry. This can lead to a great deal of confusion. Sometimes a frame is taken to be a *period of time* that is  $1/30$  or  $1/60$  of a second in duration. But in other contexts, the term *frame* is applied to a *single point in time* (e.g., we might speak of the pose of the character “at frame 42”).

I personally prefer to use the term *sample* to refer to a single point in time, and I reserve the word *frame* to describe a time period that is  $1/30$  or  $1/60$  of a second in duration. So for example, a one-second animation created at a rate of 30 frames per second would consist of 31 *samples* and would be 30 *frames* in duration, as shown in Figure 12.12. The term “sample” comes from the field of signal processing. A continuous-time signal (i.e., a function  $f(t)$ ) can be converted into a set of discrete data points by sampling that signal at uniformly spaced time intervals. See Section 14.3.2.1 for more information on sampling.

#### 12.4.1.4 Frames, Samples and Looping Clips

When a clip is designed to be played over and over repeatedly, we say it is *looped*. If we imagine two copies of a 1 s (30-frame/31-sample) clip laid back-to-front, then sample 31 of the first clip will coincide exactly in time with sample 1 of the second clip, as shown in Figure 12.13. For a clip to loop properly, then, we can see that the pose of the character at the end of the clip must exactly match the pose at the beginning. This, in turn, implies that the last sample of a looping clip (in our example, sample 31) is redundant. Many game engines therefore omit the last sample of a looping clip.

This leads us to the following rules governing the number of samples and frames in any animation clip:

- If a clip is *non-looping*, an  $N$ -frame animation will have  $N + 1$  unique samples.
- If a clip is *looping*, then the last sample is redundant, so an  $N$ -frame animation will have  $N$  unique samples.

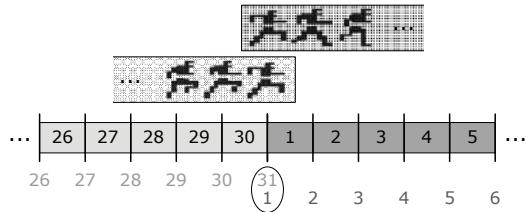


Figure 12.13. The last sample of a looping clip coincides in time with its first sample and is, therefore, redundant.

#### 12.4.1.5 Normalized Time (Phase)

It is sometimes convenient to employ a normalized time unit  $u$ , such that  $u = 0$  at the start of the animation, and  $u = 1$  at the end, no matter what its duration  $T$  may be. We sometimes refer to normalized time as the *phase* of the animation clip, because  $u$  acts like the phase of a sine wave when the animation is looped. This is illustrated in Figure 12.14.

Normalized time is useful when synchronizing two or more animation clips that are not necessarily of the same absolute duration. For example, we might want to smoothly cross-fade from a 2-second (60-frame) run cycle into a 3-second (90-frame) walk cycle. To make the cross-fade look good, we want to ensure that the two animations remain synchronized at all times, so that the

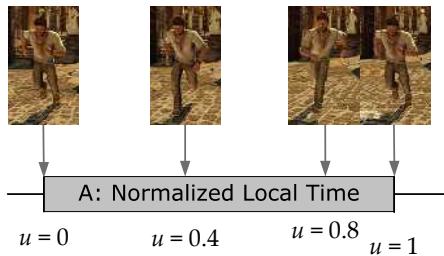


Figure 12.14. An animation clip, showing normalized time units. Images courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc., © 2014™ SIE.

feet line up properly in both clips. We can accomplish this by simply setting the normalized start time of the walk clip,  $u_{\text{walk}}$ , to match the normalized time index of the run clip,  $u_{\text{run}}$ . We then advance both clips at the same normalized rate so that they remain in sync. This is quite a bit easier and less error-prone than doing the synchronization using the absolute time indices  $t_{\text{walk}}$  and  $t_{\text{run}}$ .

## 12.4.2 The Global Timeline

Just as every animation clip has a local timeline (whose clock starts at 0 at the beginning of the clip), every character in a game has a global timeline (whose clock starts when the character is first spawned into the game world, or perhaps at the start of the level or the entire game). In this book, we'll use the time variable  $\tau$  to measure global time, so as not to confuse it with the local time variable  $t$ .

We can think of *playing* an animation as simply *mapping* that clip's local timeline onto the character's global timeline. For example, Figure 12.15 illustrates playing animation clip A starting at a global time of  $\tau_{\text{start}} = 102$  seconds.

As we saw above, playing a looping animation is like laying down an infinite number of back-to-front copies of the clip onto the global timeline. We can also imagine looping an animation a finite number of times, which corresponds to laying down a finite number of copies of the clip. This is illustrated in Figure 12.16.

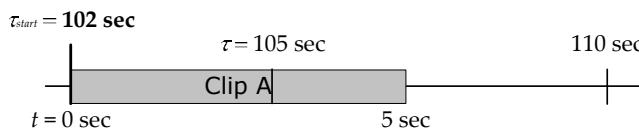


Figure 12.15. Playing animation clip A starting at a global time of 102 seconds.



Figure 12.16. Playing a looping animation corresponds to laying down multiple back-to-back copies of the clip.

*Time-scaling* a clip makes it appear to play back more quickly or more slowly than originally animated. To accomplish this, we simply scale the image of the clip when it is laid down onto the global timeline. Time-scaling is most naturally expressed as a *playback rate*, which we'll denote  $R$ . For example, if an animation is to play back at twice the speed ( $R = 2$ ), then we would scale the clip's local timeline to one-half ( $1/R = 0.5$ ) of its normal length when mapping it onto the global timeline. This is shown in Figure 12.17.

Playing a clip in reverse corresponds to using a time scale of  $-1$ , as shown in Figure 12.18.

In order to map an animation clip onto a global timeline, we need the following pieces of information about the clip:

- its global start time  $\tau_{\text{start}}$ ,

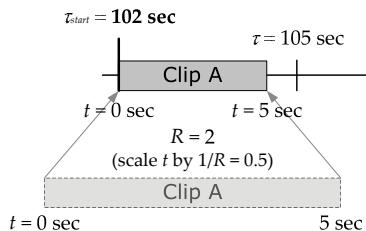


Figure 12.17. Playing an animation at twice the speed corresponds to scaling its local timeline by a factor of  $1/2$ .

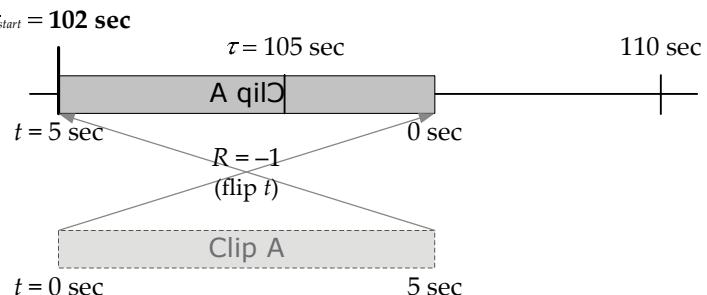


Figure 12.18. Playing a clip in reverse corresponds to a time scale of  $-1$ .

- its playback rate  $R$ ,
- its duration  $T$ , and
- the number of times it should loop, which we'll denote  $N$ .

Given this information, we can map from any global time  $\tau$  to the corresponding local time  $t$ , and vice versa, using the following two relations:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= (\tau - \tau_{\text{start}})R, \\ \tau &= \tau_{\text{start}} + \frac{1}{R}t. \end{aligned} \quad (12.2)$$

If the animation doesn't loop ( $N = 1$ ), then we should clamp  $t$  into the valid range  $[0, T]$  before using it to sample a pose from the clip:

$$t = \text{clamp} \left[ (\tau - \tau_{\text{start}})R \right]_0^T.$$

If the animation loops forever ( $N = \infty$ ), then we bring  $t$  into the valid range by taking the *remainder* of the result after dividing by the duration  $T$ . This is accomplished via the *modulo* operator (mod, or `%` in C/C++), as shown below:

$$t = ((\tau - \tau_{\text{start}})R) \bmod T.$$

If the clip loops a *finite* number of times ( $1 < N < \infty$ ), we must first clamp  $t$  into the range  $[0, NT]$  and then modulo *that* result by  $T$  in order to bring  $t$  into a valid range for sampling the clip:

$$t = \left( \text{clamp} \left[ (\tau - \tau_{\text{start}})R \right]_0^{NT} \right) \bmod T.$$

Most game engines work directly with local animation timelines and don't use the global timeline directly. However, working directly in terms of global times can have some incredibly useful benefits. For one thing, it makes synchronizing animations trivial.

### 12.4.3 Comparison of Local and Global Clocks

The animation system must keep track of the time indices of every animation that is currently playing. To do so, we have two choices:

- *Local clock*. In this approach, each clip has its own local clock, usually represented by a floating-point time index stored in units of seconds or frames, or in normalized time units (in which case it is often called the *phase* of the animation). At the moment the clip begins to play, the local

time index  $t$  is usually taken to be zero. To advance the animations forward in time, we advance the local clocks of each clip individually. If a clip has a non-unit playback rate  $R$ , the amount by which its local clock advances must be scaled by  $R$ .

- *Global clock.* In this approach, the character has a global clock, usually measured in seconds, and each clip simply records the global time at which it started playing,  $\tau_{\text{start}}$ . The clips' local clocks are *calculated* from this information using Equation (12.2).

The local clock approach has the benefit of being simple, and it is the most obvious choice when designing an animation system. However, the global clock approach has some distinct advantages, especially when it comes to synchronizing animations, either within the context of a single character or across multiple characters in a scene.

#### 12.4.3.1 Synchronizing Animations with a Local Clock

With a local clock approach, we said that the origin of a clip's local timeline ( $t = 0$ ) is usually defined to coincide with the moment at which the clip starts playing. Thus, to synchronize two or more clips, they must be played at exactly the same moment in game time. This seems simple enough, but it can become quite tricky when the commands used to play the animations are coming from disparate engine subsystems.

For example, let's say we want to synchronize the player character's punch animation with a non-player character's corresponding hit reaction animation. The problem is that the player's punch is initiated by the player subsystem in response to detecting that a button was hit on the joy pad. Meanwhile, the non-player character's (NPC) hit reaction animation is played by the artificial intelligence (AI) subsystem. If the AI code runs *before* the player code in the game loop, there will be a one-frame delay between the start of the player's punch and the start of the NPC's reaction. And if the player code runs before the AI code, then the opposite problem occurs when an NPC tries to punch the player. If a message-passing (event) system is used to communicate between the two subsystems, additional delays might be incurred (see Section 16.8 for more details). This problem is illustrated in Figure 12.19.

```
void GameLoop()
{
    while (!quit)
    {
        // preliminary updates...
```

```

UpdateAllNpcs(); // react to punch event
    // from last frame

    // more updates...

UpdatePlayer(); // punch button hit - start punch
    // anim, and send event to NPC to
    // react

    // still more updates...
}

}

```

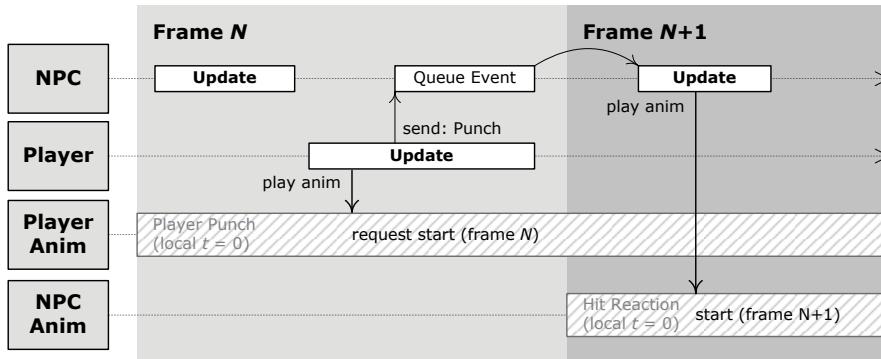


Figure 12.19. The order of execution of disparate gameplay systems can introduce animation synchronization problems when local clocks are used.

### 12.4.3.2 Synchronizing Animations with a Global Clock

A global clock approach helps to alleviate many of these synchronization problems, because the origin of the timeline ( $\tau = 0$ ) is common across all clips by definition. If two or more animations' global start times are numerically equal, the clips will start in perfect synchronization. If their playback rates are also equal, then they will remain in sync with no drift. It no longer matters *when* the code that plays each animation executes. Even if the AI code that plays the hit reaction ends up running a frame later than the player's punch code, it is still trivial to keep the two clips in sync by simply noting the global start time of the punch and setting the global start time of the reaction animation to match it. This is shown in Figure 12.20.

Of course, we do need to ensure that the two characters' global clocks match, but this is trivial to do. We can either adjust the global start times to

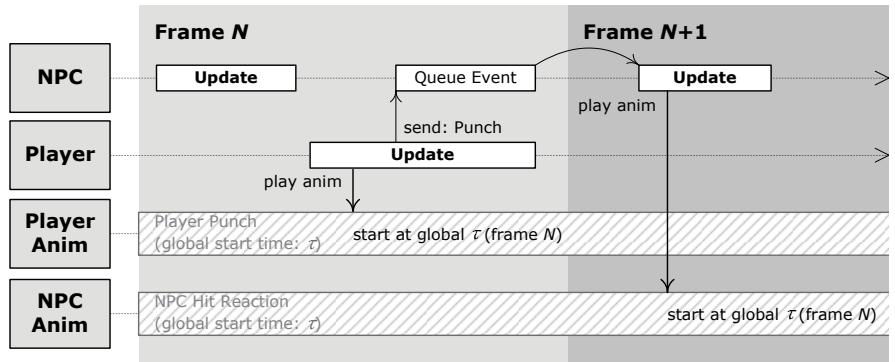


Figure 12.20. A global clock approach can alleviate animation synchronization problems.

take account of any differences in the characters' clocks, or we can simply have all characters in the game share a single master clock.

#### 12.4.4 A Simple Animation Data Format

Typically, animation data is extracted from a Maya scene file by sampling the pose of the skeleton discretely at a rate of 30 or 60 samples per second. A sample comprises a full pose for each joint in the skeleton. The poses are usually stored in SRT format: For each joint  $j$ , the scale component is either a single floating-point scalar  $S_j$  or a three-element vector  $\mathbf{S}_j = [S_{jx} \ S_{jy} \ S_{jz}]$ . The rotational component is of course a four-element quaternion  $Q_j = [Q_{jx} \ Q_{jy} \ Q_{jz} \ Q_{jw}]$ . And the translational component is a three-element vector  $\mathbf{T}_j =$

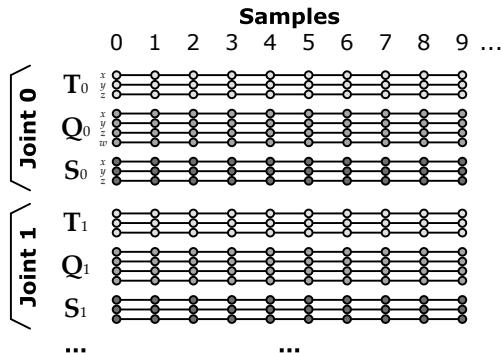


Figure 12.21. An uncompressed animation clip contains 10 channels of floating-point data per sample, per joint.

$[T_{jx} \ T_{jy} \ T_{jz}]$ . We sometimes say that an animation consists of up to 10 *channels* per joint, in reference to the 10 components of  $\mathbf{S}_j$ ,  $\mathbf{Q}_j$ , and  $\mathbf{T}_j$ . This is illustrated in Figure 12.21.

In C++, an animation clip can be represented in many different ways. Here is one possibility:

```
struct JointPose { ... }; // SRT, defined as above

struct AnimationSample
{
    JointPose* m_aJointPose; // array of joint
                               // poses
};

struct AnimationClip
{
    Skeleton* m_pSkeleton;
    F32 m_framesPerSecond;
    U32 m_frameCount;
    AnimationSample* m_aSamples; // array of samples
    bool m_isLooping;
};
```

An animation clip is authored for a specific skeleton and generally won't work on any other skeleton. As such, our example **AnimationClip** data structure contains a reference to its skeleton, **m\_pSkeleton**. (In a real engine, this might be a unique skeleton id rather than a **Skeleton\*** pointer. In this case, the engine would presumably provide a way to quickly and conveniently look up a skeleton by its unique id.)

The number of **JointPoses** in the **m\_aJointPose** array within each sample is presumed to match the number of joints in the skeleton. The number of samples in the **m\_aSamples** array is dictated by the frame count and by whether or not the clip is intended to loop. For a non-looping animation, the number of samples is (**m\_frameCount** + 1). However, if the animation loops, then the last sample is identical to the first sample and is usually omitted. In this case, the sample count is equal to **m\_frameCount**.

It's important to realize that in a real game engine, animation data isn't actually stored in this simplistic format. As we'll see in Section 12.8, the data is usually *compressed* in various ways to save memory.

## 12.4.5 Continuous Channel Functions

The samples of an animation clip are really just definitions of continuous functions over time. You can think of these as 10 scalar-valued functions of time

per joint, or as two vector-valued functions and one quaternion-valued function per joint. Theoretically, these *channel functions* are smooth and continuous across the entire clip's local timeline, as shown in Figure 12.22 (with the exception of explicitly authored discontinuities like camera cuts). In practice, however, many game engines interpolate *linearly* between the samples, in which case the functions actually used are *piecewise linear approximations* to the underlying continuous functions. This is depicted in Figure 12.23.

#### 12.4.6 Metachannels

Many games permit additional “metachannels” of data to be defined for an animation. These channels can encode game-specific information that doesn't have to do directly with posing the skeleton but which needs to be synchronized with the animation.

It is quite common to define a special channel that contains *event triggers* at various time indices, as shown in Figure 12.24. Whenever the animation's local time index passes one of these triggers, an *event* is sent to the game engine, which can respond as it sees fit. (We'll discuss events in detail in Chapter 16.) One common use of event triggers is to denote at which points during the

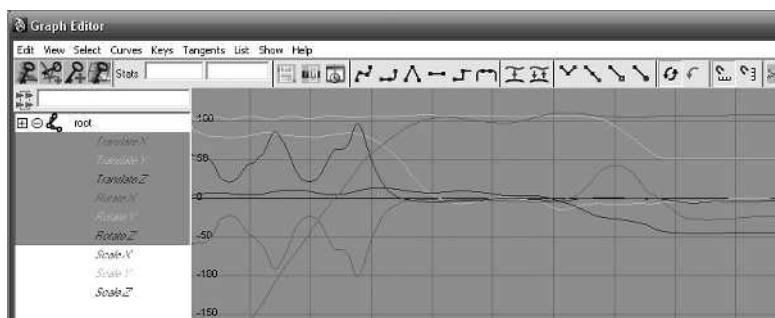


Figure 12.22. The animation samples in a clip define continuous functions over time.

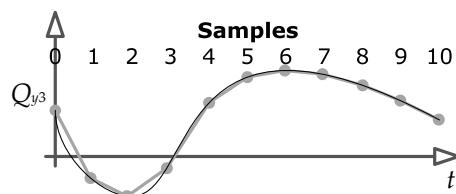


Figure 12.23. Many game engines use a piecewise linear approximation when interpolating channel functions.

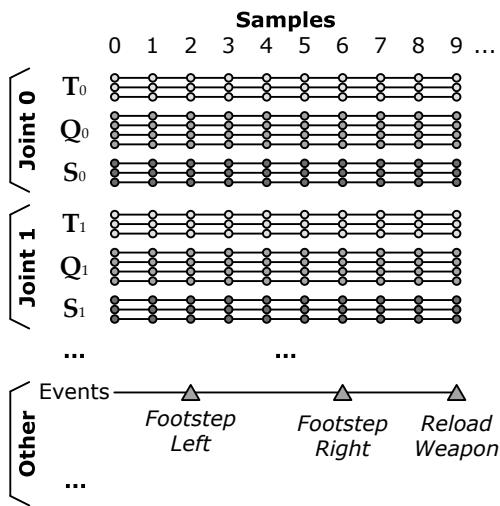


Figure 12.24. A special event trigger channel can be added to an animation clip in order to synchronize sound effects, particle effects and other game events with an animation.

animation certain sound or particle effects should be played. For example, when the left or right foot touches the ground, a footstep sound and a “cloud of dust” particle effect could be initiated.

Another common practice is to permit special joints, known in Maya as *locators*, to be animated along with the joints of the skeleton itself. Because a joint or locator is just an affine transform, these special joints can be used to encode the position and orientation of virtually any object in the game.

A typical application of animated locators is to specify how the game’s camera should be positioned and oriented during an animation. In Maya, a locator is constrained to a camera, and the camera is then animated along with the joints of the character(s) in the scene. The camera’s locator is exported and used in-game to move the game’s camera around during the animation. The field of view (focal length) of the camera, and possibly other camera attributes, can also be animated by placing the relevant data into one or more additional *floating-point channels*.

Other examples of non-joint animation channels include:

- texture coordinate scrolling,
- texture animation (a special case of texture coordinate scrolling in which frames are arranged linearly within a texture, and the texture is scrolled by one complete frame at each iteration),

- animated material parameters (color, specularity, transparency, etc.),
- animated lighting parameters (radius, cone angle, intensity, color, etc.), and
- any other parameters that need to change over time and are in some way synchronized with an animation.

### 12.4.7 Relationship between Meshes, Skeletons and Clips

The UML diagram in Figure 12.25 shows how animation clip data interfaces with the skeletons, poses, meshes and other data in a game engine. Pay particular attention to the *cardinality* and *direction* of the relationships between these classes. The cardinality is shown just beside the tip or tail of the relationship arrow between classes—a one represents a single instance of the class, while an asterisk indicates many instances. For any one type of character, there will be one skeleton, one or more meshes and one or more animation clips. The skeleton is the central unifying element—the skins are attached to the skeleton but don't have any relationship with the animation clips. Likewise, the clips are targeted at a particular skeleton, but they have no “knowledge” of the skin meshes. Figure 12.26 illustrates these relationships.

Game designers often try to reduce the number of unique skeletons in the game to a minimum, because each new skeleton generally requires a whole new set of animation clips. To provide the illusion of many different types of characters, it is usually better to create multiple meshes skinned to the same skeleton when possible, so that all of the characters can share a single set of animations.

#### 12.4.7.1 Animation Retargeting

We said above that an animation is typically only compatible with a single skeleton. This limitation can be overcome via *animation retargeting* techniques.

Retargeting means using an animation authored for one skeleton to animate a different skeleton. If the two skeletons are morphologically identical, retargeting may boil down to a simple matter of joint index remapping. But when the two skeletons don't match exactly, the retargeting problem becomes more complex. At Naughty Dog, the animators define a special pose known as the *retarget pose*. This pose captures the essential differences between the bind poses of the source and target skeletons, allowing the runtime retargeting system to adjust source poses so they will work more naturally on the target character.

Other more-advanced techniques exist for retargeting animations authored for one skeleton so that they work on a different skeleton. For more infor-

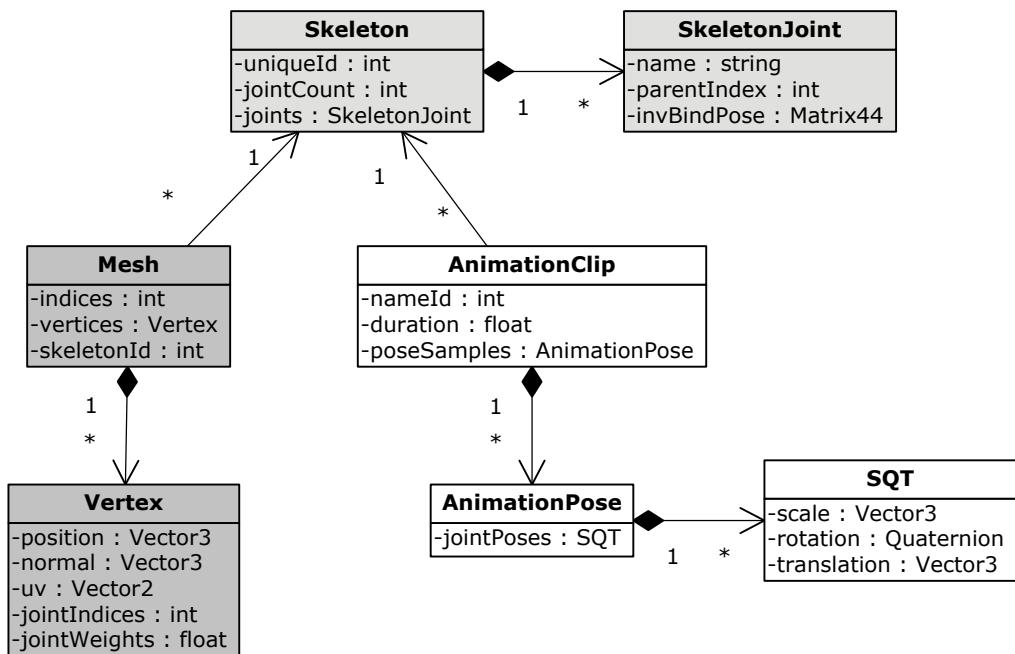


Figure 12.25. UML diagram of shared animation resources.

mation, see “Feature Points Based Facial Animation Retargeting” by Ludovic Dutreve et al. (<https://bit.ly/2HL9Cdr>) and “Real-time Motion Retargeting to Highly Varied User-Created Morphologies” by Chris Hecker et al. (<https://bit.ly/2vviG3x>).

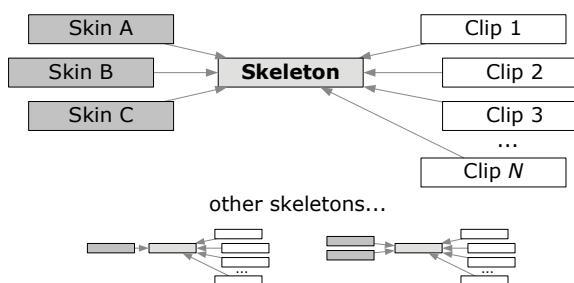


Figure 12.26. Many animation clips and one or more meshes target a single skeleton.

## 12.5 Skinning and Matrix Palette Generation

We've seen how to pose a skeleton by rotating, translating and possibly scaling its joints. And we know that any skeletal pose can be represented mathematically as a set of local  $(\mathbf{P}_{j \rightarrow p(j)})$  or global  $(\mathbf{P}_{j \rightarrow M})$  joint pose transformations, one for each joint  $j$ . Next, we will explore the process of attaching the vertices of a 3D mesh to a posed skeleton. This process is known as *skinning*.

### 12.5.1 Per-Vertex Skinning Information

A skinned mesh is attached to a skeleton by means of its vertices. Each vertex can be *bound* to one or more joints. If bound to a single joint, the vertex tracks that joint's movement exactly. If bound to two or more joints, the vertex's position becomes a *weighted average* of the positions it would have assumed had it been bound to each joint independently.

To skin a mesh to a skeleton, a 3D artist must supply the following additional information at each vertex:

- the *index* or *indices* of the joint(s) to which it is bound, and
- for each joint, a *weighting factor* describing how much influence that joint should have on the final vertex position.

The weighting factors are assumed to add to one, as is customary when calculating any weighted average.

Usually a game engine imposes an upper limit on the number of joints to which a single vertex can be bound. A four-joint limit is typical for a number of reasons. First, four 8-bit joint indices can be packed into a 32-bit word, which is convenient. Also, while it's pretty easy to see a difference in quality between a two-, three- and even a four-joint-per-vertex model, most people cannot see a quality difference as the number of joints per vertex is increased beyond four.

Because the joint weights must sum to one, the last weight can be omitted and often is. (It can be calculated at runtime as  $w_3 = 1 - (w_0 + w_1 + w_2)$ .) As such, a typical skinned vertex data structure might look as follows:

```
struct SkinnedVertex
{
    float  m_position[3];      // (Px, Py, Pz)
    float  m_normal[3];        // (Nx, Ny, Nz)
    float  m_u, m_v;          // texture coords (u,v)
    U8     m_jointIndex[4];   // joint indices
    float  m_jointWeight[3];  // joint weights (last
                            // weight omitted)
};
```

## 12.5.2 The Mathematics of Skinning

The vertices of a skinned mesh track the movements of the joint(s) to which they are bound. To make this happen mathematically, we would like to find a matrix that can transform the vertices of the mesh from their original positions (in bind pose) into new positions that correspond to the current pose of the skeleton. We shall call such a matrix a *skinning matrix*.

Like all mesh vertices, the position of a skinned vertex is specified in model space. This is true whether its skeleton is in bind pose or in any other pose. So the matrix we seek will transform vertices from model space (bind pose) to model space (current pose). Unlike the other transforms we've seen thus far, such as the model-to-world transform or the world-to-view transform, a skinning matrix is *not* a change of basis transform. It morphs vertices into new positions, but the vertices are in model space both before and after the transformation.

### 12.5.2.1 Simple Example: One-Jointed Skeleton

Let us derive the basic equation for a skinning matrix. To keep things simple at first, we'll work with a skeleton consisting of a single joint. We therefore have two coordinate spaces to work with: model space, which we'll denote with the subscript  $M$ , and the joint space of our one and only joint, which will be indicated by the subscript  $J$ . The joint's coordinate axes start out in bind pose, which we'll denote with the superscript  $B$ . At any given moment during an animation, the joint's axes move to a new position and orientation in model space—we'll indicate this *current pose* with the superscript  $C$ .

Now consider a single vertex that is skinned to our joint. In bind pose, its model-space position is  $v_M^B$ . The skinning process calculates the vertex's new model-space position in the current pose,  $v_M^C$ . This is illustrated in Figure 12.27.

The “trick” to finding the skinning matrix for a given joint is to realize that the position of a vertex bound to a joint is *constant* when expressed in *that joint's coordinate space*. So we take the bind-pose position of the vertex in model space, convert it into joint space, move the joint into its current pose, and finally convert the vertex back into model space. The net effect of this round trip from model space to joint space and back again is to “morph” the vertex from bind pose into the current pose.

Referring to the illustration in Figure 12.28, let's assume that the coordinates of the vertex  $v_M^B$  are  $(4, 6)$  in model space (when the skeleton is in bind pose). We convert this vertex into its equivalent joint-space coordinates  $v_j$ , which are roughly  $(1, 3)$  as shown in the diagram. Because the vertex is bound

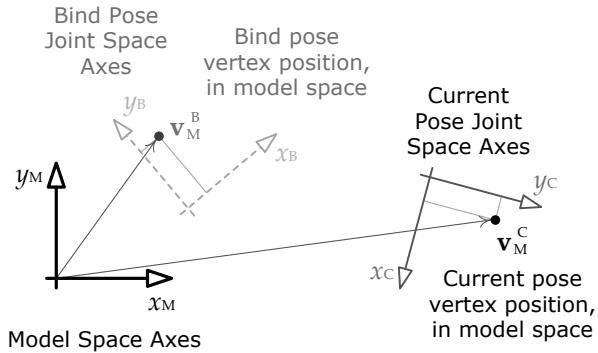


Figure 12.27. Bind pose and current pose of a simple, one-joint skeleton and a single vertex bound to that joint.

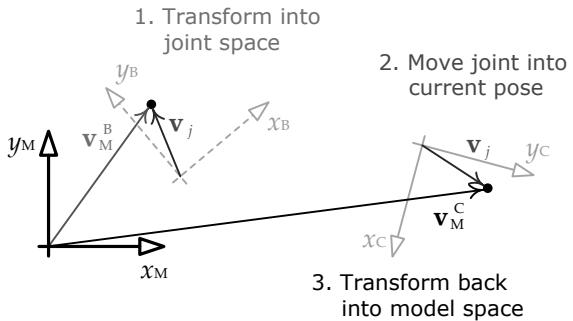


Figure 12.28. By transforming a vertex's position into joint space, it can be made to "track" the joint's movements.

to the joint, its joint-space coordinates will *always* be (1, 3) no matter how the joint may move. Once we have the joint in the desired current pose, we convert the vertex's coordinates back into model space, which we'll denote with the symbol  $v_M^C$ . In our diagram, these coordinates are roughly (18, 2). So the skinning transformation has morphed our vertex from (4, 6) to (18, 2) in model space, due entirely to the motion of the joint from its bind pose to the current pose shown in the diagram.

Looking at the problem mathematically, we can denote the *bind pose* of the joint  $j$  in model space by the matrix  $B_{j \rightarrow M}$ . This matrix transforms a point or vector whose coordinates are expressed in joint  $j$ 's space into an equivalent set of model-space coordinates. Now, consider a vertex whose coordinates are expressed in model space with the skeleton in bind pose. To convert these vertex coordinates into the space of joint  $j$ , we simply multiply it by the *inverse*

bind pose matrix,  $\mathbf{B}_{M \rightarrow j} = (\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1}$ :

$$\mathbf{v}_j = \mathbf{v}_M^B \mathbf{B}_{M \rightarrow j} = \mathbf{v}_M^B (\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1}. \quad (12.3)$$

Likewise, we can denote the joint's *current pose* (i.e., any pose that is *not* bind pose) by the matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M}$ . To convert  $\mathbf{v}_j$  from joint space back into model space, we simply multiply it by the current pose matrix as follows:

$$\mathbf{v}_M^C = \mathbf{v}_j \mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M}.$$

If we expand  $\mathbf{v}_j$  using Equation (12.3), we obtain an equation that takes our vertex directly from its position in bind pose to its position in the current pose:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_M^C &= \mathbf{v}_j \mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M} \\ &= \mathbf{v}_M^B (\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1} \mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M} \\ &= \mathbf{v}_M^B \mathbf{K}_j. \end{aligned} \quad (12.4)$$

The combined matrix  $\mathbf{K}_j = (\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1} \mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M}$  is known as a *skinning matrix*.

### 12.5.2.2 Extension to Multijointed Skeletons

In the example above, we considered only a single joint. However, the math we derived above actually applies to any joint in any skeleton imaginable, because we formulated everything in terms of global poses (i.e., joint space to model space transforms). To extend the above formulation to a skeleton containing multiple joints, we therefore need to make only two minor adjustments:

1. We must make sure that our  $\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M}$  and  $\mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M}$  matrices are calculated properly for the joint in question, using Equation (12.1).  $\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M}$  and  $\mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M}$  are just the bind pose and current pose equivalents, respectively, of the matrix  $\mathbf{P}_{j \rightarrow M}$  used in that equation.
2. We must calculate an array of skinning matrices  $\mathbf{K}_j$ , one for each joint  $j$ . This array is known as a *matrix palette*. The matrix palette is passed to the rendering engine when rendering a skinned mesh. For each vertex, the renderer looks up the appropriate joint's skinning matrix in the palette and uses it to transform the vertex from bind pose into current pose.

We should note here that the current pose matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M}$  changes every frame as the character assumes different poses over time. However, the inverse bind-pose matrix is constant throughout the entire game, because the bind pose of the skeleton is fixed when the model is created. Therefore, the

matrix  $(\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1}$  is generally cached with the skeleton, and needn't be calculated at runtime. Animation engines generally calculate local poses for each joint  $(\mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow p(j)})$ , then use Equation (12.1) to convert these into global poses  $(\mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M})$ , and finally multiply each global pose by the corresponding cached inverse bind pose matrix  $(\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1}$  in order to generate a skinning matrix  $(\mathbf{K}_j)$  for each joint.

#### 12.5.2.3 Incorporating the Model-to-World Transform

Every vertex must eventually be transformed from model space into world space. Some engines therefore premultiply the palette of skinning matrices by the object's model-to-world transform. This can be a useful optimization, as it saves the rendering engine one matrix multiply per vertex when rendering skinned geometry. (With hundreds of thousands of vertices to process, these savings can really add up!)

To incorporate the model-to-world transform into our skinning matrices, we simply concatenate it to the regular skinning matrix equation, as follows:

$$(\mathbf{K}_j)_W = (\mathbf{B}_{j \rightarrow M})^{-1} \mathbf{C}_{j \rightarrow M} \mathbf{M}_{M \rightarrow W}.$$

Some engines bake the model-to-world transform into the skinning matrices like this, while others don't. The choice is entirely up to the engineering team and is driven by all sorts of factors. For example, one situation in which we would definitely *not* want to do this is when a single animation is being applied to multiple characters simultaneously—a technique known as *animation instancing* that is sometimes used for animating large crowds of characters. In this case we need to keep the model-to-world transforms separate so that we can share a single matrix palette across all characters in the crowd.

#### 12.5.2.4 Skinning a Vertex to Multiple Joints

When a vertex is skinned to more than one joint, we calculate its final position by assuming it is skinned to each joint individually, calculating a model-space position for each joint and then taking a *weighted average* of the resulting positions. The weights are provided by the character rigging artist, and they must always sum to one. (If they do not sum to one, they should be renormalized by the tools pipeline.)

The general formula for a weighted average of  $N$  quantities  $a_0$  through  $a_{N-1}$ , with weights  $w_0$  through  $w_{N-1}$  and with  $\sum w_i = 1$  is:

$$a = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} w_i a_i.$$

This works equally well for vector quantities  $\mathbf{a}_i$ . So, for a vertex skinned to  $N$  joints with indices  $j_0$  through  $j_{N-1}$  and weights  $w_0$  through  $w_{N-1}$ , we can extend Equation (12.4) as follows:

$$\mathbf{v}_M^C = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} w_i \mathbf{v}_M^B \mathbf{K}_{j_i},$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_{j_i}$  is the skinning matrix for the joint  $j_i$ .

## 12.6 Animation Blending

The term *animation blending* refers to any technique that allows more than one animation clip to contribute to the final pose of the character. To be more precise, blending combines two or more *input poses* to produce an *output pose* for the skeleton.

Blending usually combines two or more poses at a single point in time, and generates an output at that same moment in time. In this context, blending is used to combine two or more animations into a host of new animations, without having to create them manually. For example, by blending an injured walk animation with an uninjured walk, we can generate various intermediate levels of apparent injury for our character while he is walking. As another example, we can blend between an animation in which the character is aiming to the left and one in which he's aiming to the right, in order to make the character aim along any desired angle between the two extremes. Blending can be used to interpolate between extreme facial expressions, body stances, locomotion modes and so on.

Blending can also be used to find an intermediate pose between two known poses at *different* points in time. This is used when we want to find the pose of a character at a point in time that does not correspond exactly to one of the sampled frames available in the animation data. We can also use temporal animation blending to smoothly transition from one animation to another, by gradually blending from the source animation to the destination over a short period of time.

### 12.6.1 LERP Blending

Given a skeleton with  $N$  joints, and two skeletal poses  $\mathbf{P}_A^{\text{skel}} = \{(\mathbf{P}_A)_j\}_{j=0}^{N-1}$  and  $\mathbf{P}_B^{\text{skel}} = \{(\mathbf{P}_B)_j\}_{j=0}^{N-1}$ , we wish to find an intermediate pose  $\mathbf{P}_{\text{LERP}}^{\text{skel}}$  between these two extremes. This can be done by performing a *linear interpolation* (LERP) between the local poses of each individual joint in each of the two

source poses. This can be written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{P}_{\text{LERP}})_j &= \text{LERP}((\mathbf{P}_A)_j, (\mathbf{P}_B)_j, \beta) \\ &= (1 - \beta)(\mathbf{P}_A)_j + \beta(\mathbf{P}_B)_j. \end{aligned} \quad (12.5)$$

The interpolated pose of the whole skeleton is simply the set of interpolated poses for all of the joints:

$$\mathbf{P}_{\text{LERP}}^{\text{skel}} = \{(\mathbf{P}_{\text{LERP}})_j\}_{j=0}^{N-1} \quad (12.6)$$

In these equations,  $\beta$  is called the *blend percentage* or *blend factor*. When  $\beta = 0$ , the final pose of the skeleton will exactly match  $\mathbf{P}_A^{\text{skel}}$ ; when  $\beta = 1$ , the final pose will match  $\mathbf{P}_B^{\text{skel}}$ . When  $\beta$  is between zero and one, the final pose is an intermediate between the two extremes. This effect is illustrated in Figure 12.11.

We've glossed over one small detail here: We are linearly interpolating *joint poses*, which means interpolating  $4 \times 4$  *transformation matrices*. But, as we saw in Chapter 5, interpolating matrices directly is not practical. This is one of the reasons why local poses are usually expressed in SRT format—doing so allows us to apply the LERP operation defined in Section 5.2.5 to each component of the SRT individually. The linear interpolation of the translation component  $\mathbf{T}$  of an SRT is just a straightforward vector LERP:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{T}_{\text{LERP}})_j &= \text{LERP}((\mathbf{T}_A)_j, (\mathbf{T}_B)_j, \beta) \\ &= (1 - \beta)(\mathbf{T}_A)_j + \beta(\mathbf{T}_B)_j. \end{aligned} \quad (12.7)$$

The linear interpolation of the rotation component is a quaternion LERP or SLERP (spherical linear interpolation):

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{Q}_{\text{LERP}})_j &= \text{normalize}(\text{LERP}((\mathbf{Q}_A)_j, (\mathbf{Q}_B)_j, \beta)) \\ &= \text{normalize}((1 - \beta)(\mathbf{Q}_A)_j + \beta(\mathbf{Q}_B)_j). \end{aligned} \quad (12.8)$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{Q}_{\text{SLERP}})_j &= \text{SLERP}((\mathbf{Q}_A)_j, (\mathbf{Q}_B)_j, \beta) \\ &= \frac{\sin((1 - \beta)\theta)}{\sin(\theta)}(\mathbf{Q}_A)_j + \frac{\sin(\beta\theta)}{\sin(\theta)}(\mathbf{Q}_B)_j. \end{aligned} \quad (12.9)$$

Finally, the linear interpolation of the scale component is either a scalar or vector LERP, depending on the type of scale (uniform or nonuniform scale) supported by the engine:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{S}_{\text{LERP}})_j &= \text{LERP}((\mathbf{S}_A)_j, (\mathbf{S}_B)_j, \beta) \\ &= (1 - \beta)(\mathbf{S}_A)_j + \beta(\mathbf{S}_B)_j. \end{aligned} \quad (12.10)$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}(S_{\text{LERP}})_j &= \text{LERP}((S_A)_j, (S_B)_j, \beta) \\ &= (1 - \beta)(S_A)_j + \beta(S_B)_j.\end{aligned}\quad (12.11)$$

When linearly interpolating between two skeletal poses, the most natural-looking intermediate pose is generally one in which each joint pose is interpolated independently of the others, in the space of that joint's immediate parent. In other words, pose blending is generally performed on *local poses*. If we were to blend global poses directly in model space, the results would tend to look biomechanically implausible.

Because pose blending is done on local poses, the linear interpolation of any one joint's pose is totally independent of the interpolations of the other joints in the skeleton. This means that linear pose interpolation can be performed entirely in parallel on multiprocessor architectures.

## 12.6.2 Applications of LERP Blending

Now that we understand the basics of LERP blending, let's have a look at some typical gaming applications.

### 12.6.2.1 Temporal Interpolation

As we mentioned in Section 12.4.1.1, game animations are almost never sampled exactly on integer frame indices. Because of variable frame rate, the player might actually see frames 0.9, 1.85 and 3.02, rather than frames 1, 2 and 3 as one might expect. In addition, some animation compression techniques involve storing only disparate key frames, spaced at uneven intervals across the clip's local timeline. In either case, we need a mechanism for finding intermediate poses between the sampled poses that are actually present in the animation clip.

LERP blending is typically used to find these intermediate poses. As an example, let's imagine that our animation clip contains evenly spaced pose samples at times 0,  $\Delta t$ ,  $2\Delta t$ ,  $3\Delta t$  and so on. To find a pose at time  $t = 2.18\Delta t$ , we simply find the linear interpolation between the poses at times  $2\Delta t$  and  $3\Delta t$ , using a blend percentage of  $\beta = 0.18$ .

In general, we can find the pose at time  $t$  given pose samples at any two times  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  that bracket  $t$ , as follows:

$$\mathbf{P}_j(t) = \text{LERP}(\mathbf{P}_j(t_1), \mathbf{P}_j(t_2), \beta(t)) \quad (12.12)$$

$$= (1 - \beta(t)) \mathbf{P}_j(t_1) + \beta(t) \mathbf{P}_j(t_2), \quad (12.13)$$

where the blend factor  $\beta(t)$  can be determined by the ratio

$$\beta(t) = \frac{t - t_1}{t_2 - t_1}. \quad (12.14)$$

### 12.6.2.2 Motion Continuity: Cross-Fading

Game characters are animated by piecing together a large number of fine-grained animation clips. If your animators are any good, the character will appear to move in a natural and physically plausible way *within* each individual clip. However, it is notoriously difficult to achieve the same level of quality when transitioning from one clip to the next. The vast majority of the “pops” we see in game animations occur when the character transitions from one clip to the next.

Ideally, we would like the movements of each part of a character’s body to be perfectly smooth, even during transitions. In other words, the three-dimensional paths traced out by each joint in the skeleton as it moves should contain no sudden “jumps.” We call this *C0 continuity*; it is illustrated in Figure 12.29.

Not only should the paths themselves be continuous, but their first derivatives (velocity) should be continuous as well. This is called *C1 continuity* (or continuity of velocity and momentum). The perceived quality and realism of an animated character’s movement improves as we move to higher- and higher-order continuity. For example, we might want to achieve *C2 continuity*, in which the second derivatives of the motion paths (acceleration curves) are also continuous.

Strict mathematical continuity up to *C1* or higher is often infeasible to achieve. However, LERP-based animation blending can be applied to achieve a reasonably pleasing form of *C0* motion continuity. It usually also does a pretty good job of approximating *C1* continuity. When applied to transitions between clips in this manner, LERP blending is sometimes called *cross-fading*. LERP blending can introduce unwanted artifacts, such as the dreaded “sliding feet” problem, so it must be applied judiciously.

To cross-fade between two animations, we overlap the timelines of the two clips by some reasonable amount, and then blend the two clips together. The blend percentage  $\beta$  starts at zero at time  $t_{\text{start}}$ , meaning that we see only clip A

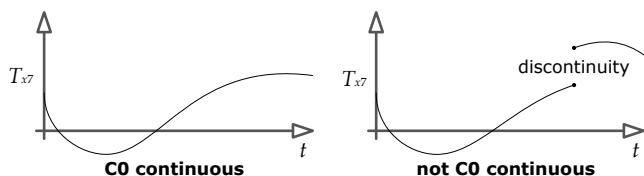


Figure 12.29. The channel function on the left has *C0* continuity, while the path on the right does not.

when the cross-fade begins. We gradually increase  $\beta$  until it reaches a value of one at time  $t_{\text{end}}$ . At this point only clip B will be visible, and we can retire clip A altogether. The time interval over which the cross-fade occurs ( $\Delta t_{\text{blend}} = t_{\text{end}} - t_{\text{start}}$ ) is sometimes called the *blend time*.

### Types of Cross-Fades

There are two common ways to perform a cross-blended transition:

- *Smooth transition*. Clips A and B both play simultaneously as  $\beta$  increases from zero to one. For this to work well, the two clips must be looping animations, and their timelines must be synchronized so that the positions of the legs and arms in one clip match up roughly with their positions in the other clip. (If this is not done, the cross-fade will often look totally unnatural.) This technique is illustrated in Figure 12.30.
- *Frozen transition*. The local clock of clip A is stopped at the moment clip B starts playing. Thus, the pose of the skeleton from clip A is frozen while clip B gradually takes over the movement. This kind of transitional blend works well when the two clips are unrelated and cannot be time-synchronized, as they must be when performing a *smooth* transition. This approach is depicted in Figure 12.31.

We can also control how the blend factor  $\beta$  varies during the transition. In Figure 12.30 and Figure 12.31, the blend factor varied linearly with time. To achieve an even smoother transition, we could vary  $\beta$  according to a cubic function of time, such as a one-dimensional Bézier. When such a curve is applied to a currently running clip that is being blended out, it is known as an *ease-out curve*; when it is applied to a new clip that is being blended in, it is known as an *ease-in curve*. This is shown in Figure 12.32.

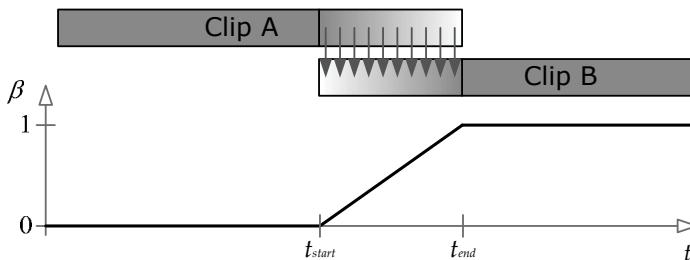


Figure 12.30. A smooth transition, in which the local clocks of both clips keep running during the transition.

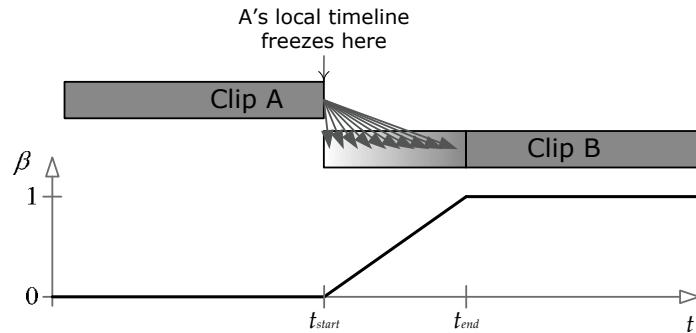


Figure I2.31. A frozen transition, in which clip A's local clock is stopped during the transition.

The equation for a Bézier ease-in/ease-out curve is given below. It returns the value of  $\beta$  at any time  $t$  within the blend interval.  $\beta_{\text{start}}$  is the blend factor at the start of the blend interval  $t_{\text{start}}$ , and  $\beta_{\text{end}}$  is the final blend factor at time  $t_{\text{end}}$ . The parameter  $u$  is the *normalized time* between  $t_{\text{start}}$  and  $t_{\text{end}}$ , and for convenience we'll also define  $v = 1 - u$  (the *inverse normalized time*). Note that the Bézier tangents  $T_{\text{start}}$  and  $T_{\text{end}}$  are taken to be equal to the corresponding blend factors  $\beta_{\text{start}}$  and  $\beta_{\text{end}}$ , because this yields a well-behaved curve for our purposes:

$$\text{let } u = \left( \frac{t - t_{\text{start}}}{t_{\text{end}} - t_{\text{start}}} \right)$$

and  $v = 1 - u$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(t) &= (v^3)\beta_{\text{start}} + (3v^2u)T_{\text{start}} + (3vu^2)T_{\text{end}} + (u^3)\beta_{\text{end}} \\ &= (v^3 + 3v^2u)\beta_{\text{start}} + (3vu^2 + u^3)\beta_{\text{end}}. \end{aligned}$$

### Core Poses

This is an appropriate time to mention that motion continuity can actually be

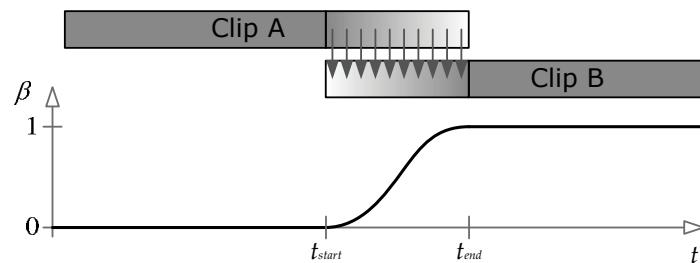


Figure I2.32. A smooth transition, with a cubic ease-in/ease-out curve applied to the blend factor.

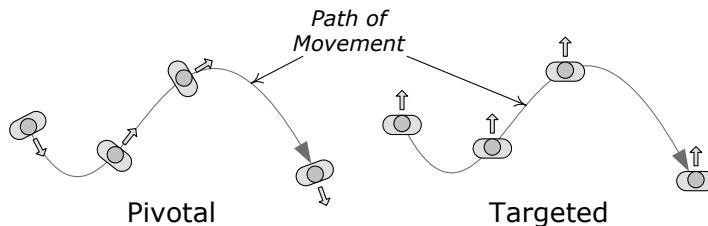


Figure 12.33. In pivotal movement, the character faces the direction she is moving and pivots about her vertical axis to turn. In targeted movement, the movement direction need not match the facing direction.

achieved *without* blending if the animator ensures that the last pose in any given clip matches the first pose of the clip that follows it. In practice, animators often decide upon a set of *core poses*—for example, we might have a core pose for standing upright, one for crouching, one for lying prone and so on. By making sure that the character starts in one of these core poses at the beginning of every clip and returns to a core pose at the end, C0 continuity can be achieved by simply ensuring that the core poses match when animations are spliced together. C1 or higher-order motion continuity can also be achieved by ensuring that the character's movement at the end of one clip smoothly transitions into the motion at the start of the next clip. This can be achieved by authoring a single smooth animation and then breaking it into two or more clips.

#### 12.6.2.3 Directional Locomotion

LERP-based animation blending is often applied to character locomotion. When a real human being walks or runs, he can change the direction in which he is moving in two basic ways: First, he can turn his entire body to change direction, in which case he always faces in the direction he's moving. I'll call this *pivotal movement*, because the person pivots about his vertical axis when he turns. Second, he can keep facing in one direction while walking forward, backward or sideways (known as *strafing* in the gaming world) in order to move in a direction that is independent of his facing direction. I'll call this *targeted movement*, because it is often used in order to keep one's eye—or one's weapon—trained on a target while moving. These two movement styles are illustrated in Figure 12.33.

##### *Targeted Movement*

To implement *targeted movement*, the animator authors three separate looping

animation clips—one moving forward, one strafing to the left, and one strafing to the right. I'll call these *directional locomotion clips*. The three directional clips are arranged around the circumference of a semicircle, with forward at 0 degrees, left at 90 degrees and right at -90 degrees. With the character's facing direction fixed at 0 degrees, we find the desired movement direction on the semicircle, select the two adjacent movement animations and blend them together via LERP-based blending. The blend percentage  $\beta$  is determined by how close the angle of movement is to the angles of two adjacent clips. This is illustrated in Figure 12.34.

Note that we did not include backward movement in our blend, for a full circular blend. This is because blending between a sideways strafe and a backward run cannot be made to look natural in general. The problem is that when strafing to the left, the character usually crosses its right foot in front of its left so that the blend into the pure forward run animation looks correct. Likewise, the right strafe is usually authored with the left foot crossing in front of the right. When we try to blend such strafe animations directly into a backward run, one leg will start to pass through the other, which looks extremely awkward and unnatural. There are a number of ways to solve this problem. One feasible approach is to define two hemispherical blends, one for forward motion and one for backward motion, each with strafe animations that have been crafted to work properly when blended with the corresponding straight run. When passing from one hemisphere to the other, we can play some kind of explicit transition animation so that the character has a chance to adjust its gait and leg crossing appropriately.

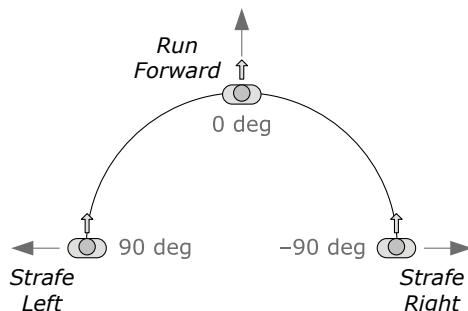


Figure 12.34. Targeted movement can be implemented by blending together looping locomotion clips that move in each of the four principal directions.

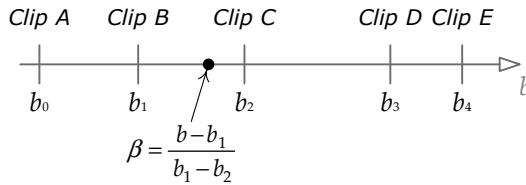


Figure 12.35. A generalized linear blend between  $N$  animation clips.

### Pivotal Movement

To implement *pivotal movement*, we can simply play the forward locomotion loop while rotating the entire character about its vertical axis to make it turn. Pivotal movement looks more natural if the character’s body doesn’t remain bolt upright when it is turning—real humans tend to lean into their turns a little bit. We could try slightly tilting the vertical axis of the character as a whole, but that would cause problems with the inner foot sinking into the ground while the outer foot comes off the ground. A more natural-looking result can be achieved by animating three variations on the basic forward walk or run—one going perfectly straight, one making an extreme left turn and one making an extreme right turn. We can then LERP-blend between the straight clip and the extreme left turn clip to implement any desired lean angle.

### 12.6.3 Complex LERP Blends

In a real game engine, characters make use of a wide range of complex blends for various purposes. It can be convenient to “prepackage” certain commonly used types of complex blends for ease of use. In the following sections, we’ll investigate a few popular types of prepackaged complex blends.

#### 12.6.3.1 Generalized One-Dimensional LERP Blending

LERP blending can be easily extended to more than two animation clips, using a technique I call *one-dimensional LERP blending*. We define a new blend parameter  $b$  that lies in any linear range desired (e.g., from  $-1$  to  $+1$ , or from  $0$  to  $1$ , or even from  $27$  to  $136$ ). Any number of clips can be positioned at arbitrary points along this range, as shown in Figure 12.35. For any given value of  $b$ , we select the two clips immediately adjacent to it and blend them together using Equation (12.5). If the two adjacent clips lie at points  $b_1$  and  $b_2$ , then the blend percentage  $\beta$  can be determined using a technique analogous to that used in Equation (12.14), as follows:

$$\beta(t) = \frac{b - b_1}{b_2 - b_1}. \quad (12.15)$$

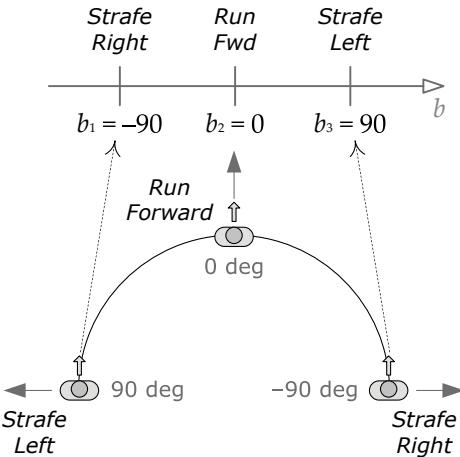


Figure 12.36. The directional clips used in targeted movement can be thought of as a special case of one-dimensional LERP blending.

Targeted movement is just a special case of one-dimensional LERP blending. We simply straighten out the circle on which the directional animation clips were placed and use the movement direction angle  $\theta$  as the parameter  $b$  (with a range of  $-90$  to  $90$  degrees). Any number of animation clips can be placed onto this blend range at arbitrary angles. This is shown in Figure 12.36.

#### 12.6.3.2 Simple Two-Dimensional LERP Blending

Sometimes we would like to smoothly vary *two* aspects of a character's motion simultaneously. For example, we might want the character to be capable of aiming his weapon vertically and horizontally. Or we might want to allow our character to vary her pace length and the separation of her feet as she moves. We can extend one-dimensional LERP blending to two dimensions in order to achieve these kinds of effects.

If we know that our 2D blend involves only four animation clips, and if those clips are positioned at the four corners of a square region, then we can find a blended pose by performing two 1D blends. Our generalized blend factor  $b$  becomes a two-dimensional blend vector  $\mathbf{b} = [b_x \ b_y]$ . If  $\mathbf{b}$  lies within the square region bounded by our four clips, we can find the resulting pose by following these steps:

1. Using the horizontal blend factor  $b_x$ , find two intermediate poses, one between the top two animation clips and one between the bottom two clips. These two poses can be found by performing two simple one-

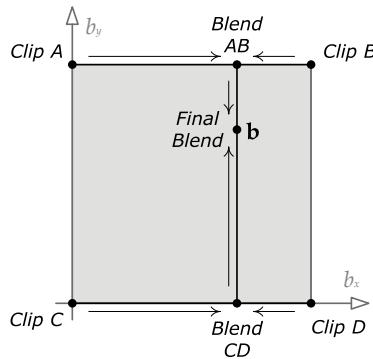


Figure 12.37. A simple formulation for 2D animation blending between four clips at the corners of a square region.

dimensional LERP blends.

2. Using the vertical blend factor  $b_y$ , find the final pose by LERP-blending the two intermediate poses together.

This technique is illustrated in Figure 12.37.

#### 12.6.3.3 Triangular Two-Dimensional LERP Blending

The simple 2D blending technique we investigated in the previous section only works when the animation clips we wish to blend lie at the corners of a rectangular region. How can we blend between an arbitrary number of clips positioned at arbitrary locations in our 2D blend space?

Let's imagine that we have three animation clips that we wish to blend together. Each clip, designated by the index  $i$ , corresponds to a particular blend coordinate  $\mathbf{b}_i = [b_{ix} \ b_{iy}]$  in our two-dimensional blend space; these three blend coordinates form a triangle within the blend space. Each of the three clips defines a set of joint poses  $\{(\mathbf{P}_i)_j\}_{j=0}^{N-1}$ , where  $(\mathbf{P}_i)_j$  is the pose of joint  $j$  as defined by clip  $i$ , and  $N$  is the number of joints in the skeleton. We wish to find the interpolated pose of the skeleton corresponding to an arbitrary point  $\mathbf{b}$  within the triangle, as illustrated in Figure 12.38.

But how can we calculate a LERP blend between three animation clips? Thankfully, the answer is simple: the LERP function can actually operate on any number of inputs, because it is really just a *weighted average*. As with any weighted average, the weights must add to one. In the case of a two-input LERP blend, we used the weights  $\beta$  and  $(1 - \beta)$ , which of course add to one. For a three-input LERP, we simply use three weights,  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma = (1 - \alpha - \beta)$ .

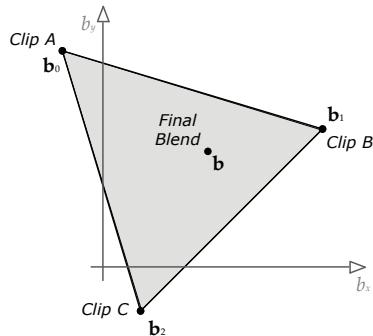


Figure 12.38. Two-dimensional animation blending between three animation clips.

Then we calculate the LERP as follows:

$$(\mathbf{P}_{\text{LERP}})_j = \alpha (\mathbf{P}_0)_j + \beta (\mathbf{P}_1)_j + \gamma (\mathbf{P}_2)_j. \quad (12.16)$$

Given the two-dimensional blend vector  $\mathbf{b}$ , we find the blend weights  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  by finding the *barycentric coordinates* of the point  $\mathbf{b}$  relative to the triangle formed by the three clips in two-dimensional blend space ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Barycentric\\_coordinates\\_%28mathematics%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Barycentric_coordinates_%28mathematics%29)). In general, the barycentric coordinates of a point  $\mathbf{b}$  within a triangle with vertices  $\mathbf{b}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{b}_2$  and  $\mathbf{b}_3$  are three scalar values  $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$  that satisfy the relations

$$\mathbf{b} = \alpha \mathbf{b}_0 + \beta \mathbf{b}_1 + \gamma \mathbf{b}_2, \quad (12.17)$$

and

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = 1.$$

These are exactly the weights we seek for our three-clip weighted average. Barycentric coordinates are illustrated in Figure 12.39.

Note that plugging the barycentric coordinate  $(1, 0, 0)$  into Equation (12.17) yields  $\mathbf{b}_0$ , while  $(0, 1, 0)$  gives us  $\mathbf{b}_1$  and  $(0, 0, 1)$  produces  $\mathbf{b}_2$ . Likewise, plugging these blend weights into Equation (12.16) gives us poses  $(\mathbf{P}_0)_j$ ,  $(\mathbf{P}_1)_j$  and  $(\mathbf{P}_2)_j$  for each joint  $j$ , respectively. Furthermore, the barycentric coordinate  $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3})$  lies at the centroid of the triangle and gives us an *equal* blend between the three poses. This is exactly what we'd expect.

#### 12.6.3.4 Generalized Two-Dimensional LERP Blending

The barycentric coordinate technique can be extended to an arbitrary number of animation clips positioned at arbitrary locations within the two-dimensional blend space. We won't describe it in its entirety here, but the basic idea is to use a technique known as *Delaunay triangulation* (<http://en.wikipedia.org/>

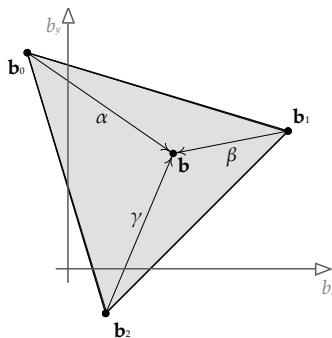


Figure 12.39. Various barycentric coordinates within a triangle.

[wiki/Delaunay\\_triangulation](#)) to find a set of triangles given the positions of the various animation clips  $\mathbf{b}_i$ . Once the triangles have been determined, we can find the triangle that encloses the desired point  $\mathbf{b}$  and then perform a three-clip LERP blend as described above. This technique was used in FIFA soccer by EA Sports in Vancouver, implemented within their proprietary “ANT” animation framework. It is shown in Figure 12.40.

#### 12.6.4 Partial-Skeleton Blending

A human being can control different parts of his or her body independently. For example, I can wave my right arm while walking and pointing at something with my left arm. One way to implement this kind of movement in a

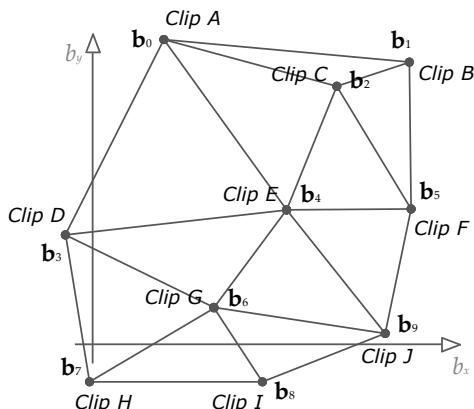


Figure 12.40. Delaunay triangulation between an arbitrary number of animation clips positioned at arbitrary locations in two-dimensional blend space.

game is via a technique known as *partial-skeleton blending*.

Recall from Equations (12.5) and (12.6) that when doing regular LERP blending, the same blend percentage  $\beta$  was used for every joint in the skeleton. Partial-skeleton blending extends this idea by permitting the blend percentage to vary on a per-joint basis. In other words, for each joint  $j$ , we define a separate blend percentage  $\beta_j$ . The set of all blend percentages for the entire skeleton  $\{\beta_j\}|_{j=0}^{N-1}$  is sometimes called a *blend mask* because it can be used to “mask out” certain joints by setting their blend percentages to zero.

As an example, let’s say we want our character to wave at someone using his right arm and hand. Moreover, we want him to be able to wave whether he’s walking, running or standing still. To implement this using partial blending, the animator defines three full-body animations: *Walk*, *Run* and *Stand*. The animator also creates a single waving animation, *Wave*. A blend mask is created in which the blend percentages are zero everywhere except for the right shoulder, elbow, wrist and finger joints, where they are equal to one:

$$\beta_j = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{when } j \text{ within right arm,} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

When *Walk*, *Run* or *Stand* is LERP-blended with *Wave* using this blend mask, the result is a character who appears to be walking, running or standing while waving his right arm.

Partial blending is useful, but it has a tendency to make a character’s movements look unnatural. This occurs for two basic reasons:

- An abrupt change in the per-joint blend factors can cause the movements of one part of the body to appear disconnected from the rest of the body. In our example, the blend factors change abruptly at the right shoulder joint. Hence the animation of the upper spine, neck and head are being driven by one animation, while the right shoulder and arm joints are being entirely driven by a different animation. This can look odd. The problem can be mitigated somewhat by gradually changing the blend factors rather than doing it abruptly. (In our example, we might select a blend percentage of 0.9 at the right shoulder, 0.5 on the upper spine and 0.2 on the neck and mid-spine.)
- The movements of a real human body are never totally independent. For example, one would expect a person’s wave to look more “bouncy” and out of control when he or she is running than when he or she is standing still. Yet with partial blending, the right arm’s animation will be identical no matter what the rest of the body is doing. This problem is difficult to

overcome using partial blending. Instead, many game developers have turned to a more natural-looking technique known as *additive blending*.

### 12.6.5 Additive Blending

Additive blending approaches the problem of combining animations in a totally new way. It introduces a new kind of animation called a *difference clip*, which, as its name implies, represents the difference between two regular animation clips. A difference clip can be added onto a regular animation clip in order to produce interesting variations in the pose and movement of the character. In essence, a difference clip encodes the *changes* that need to be made to one pose in order to transform it into another pose. Difference clips are often called *additive animation clips* in the game industry. We'll stick with the term *difference clip* in this book because it more accurately describes what is going on.

Consider two input clips called the *source clip* (S) and the *reference clip* (R). Conceptually, the difference clip is  $D = S - R$ . If a difference clip D is added to its original reference clip, we get back the source clip ( $S = D + R$ ). We can also generate animations that are partway between R and S by adding a percentage of D to R, in much the same way that LERP blending finds intermediate animations between two extremes. However, the real beauty of the additive blending technique is that once a difference clip has been created, it can be added to other unrelated clips, not just to the original reference clip. We'll call these animations *target clips* and denote them with the symbol T.

As an example, if the reference clip has the character running normally and the source clip has him running in a tired manner, then the difference clip will contain only the changes necessary to make the character look "tired" while running. If this difference clip is now applied to a clip of the character walking, the resulting animation can make the character look tired while walking. A whole host of interesting and very natural-looking animations can be created by adding a single difference clip onto various "regular" animation clips, or a collection of difference clips can be created, each of which produces a different effect when added to a single target animation.

#### 12.6.5.1 Mathematical Formulation

A difference animation D is defined as the difference between some source animation S and some reference animation R. So conceptually, the difference pose (at a single point in time) is  $D = S - R$ . Of course, we're dealing with joint poses, not scalar quantities, so we cannot simply subtract the poses. In general, a joint pose is a  $4 \times 4$  affine transformation matrix that transforms

points and vectors from the child joint's local space to the space of its parent joint. The matrix equivalent of subtraction is multiplication by the inverse matrix. So given the source pose  $\mathbf{S}_j$  and the reference pose  $\mathbf{R}_j$  for any joint  $j$  in the skeleton, we can define the difference pose  $\mathbf{D}_j$  at that joint as follows. (For this discussion, we'll drop the  $C \rightarrow P$  or  $j \rightarrow p(j)$  subscript, as it is understood that we are dealing with child-to-parent pose matrices.)

$$\mathbf{D}_j = \mathbf{S}_j \mathbf{R}_j^{-1}.$$

"Adding" a difference pose  $\mathbf{D}_j$  onto a target pose  $\mathbf{T}_j$  yields a new additive pose  $\mathbf{A}_j$ . This is achieved by simply concatenating the difference transform and the target transform as follows:

$$\mathbf{A}_j = \mathbf{D}_j \mathbf{T}_j = \left( \mathbf{S}_j \mathbf{R}_j^{-1} \right) \mathbf{T}_j. \quad (12.18)$$

We can verify that this is correct by looking at what happens when the difference pose is "added" back onto the original reference pose:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A}_j &= \mathbf{D}_j \mathbf{R}_j \\ &= \mathbf{S}_j \mathbf{R}_j^{-1} \mathbf{R}_j \\ &= \mathbf{S}_j. \end{aligned}$$

In other words, adding the difference animation  $\mathbf{D}$  back onto the original reference animation  $\mathbf{R}$  yields the source animation  $\mathbf{S}$ , as we'd expect.

### *Temporal Interpolation of Difference Clips*

As we learned in Section 12.4.1.1, game animations are almost never sampled on integer frame indices. To find a pose at an arbitrary time  $t$ , we must often *temporally interpolate* between adjacent pose samples at times  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ . Thankfully, difference clips can be temporally interpolated just like their non-additive counterparts. We can simply apply Equations (12.12) and (12.14) directly to our difference clips as if they were ordinary animations.

Note that a difference animation can only be found when the input clips  $\mathbf{S}$  and  $\mathbf{R}$  are of the same duration. Otherwise there would be a period of time during which either  $\mathbf{S}$  or  $\mathbf{R}$  is undefined, meaning  $\mathbf{D}$  would be undefined as well.

### *Additive Blend Percentage*

In games, we often wish to blend in only a percentage of a difference animation to achieve varying degrees of the effect it produces. For example, if a difference clip causes the character to turn his head 80 degrees to the right, blending in

50% of the difference clip should make him turn his head only 40 degrees to the right.

To accomplish this, we turn once again to our old friend LERP. We wish to interpolate between the unaltered target animation and the new animation that would result from a full application of the difference animation. To do this, we extend Equation (12.18) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{A}_j &= \text{LERP}(\mathbf{T}_j, \mathbf{D}_j \mathbf{T}_j, \beta) \\ &= (1 - \beta)(\mathbf{T}_j) + \beta(\mathbf{D}_j \mathbf{T}_j).\end{aligned}\quad (12.19)$$

As we saw in Chapter 5, we cannot LERP matrices directly. So Equation (11.16) must be broken down into three separate interpolations for S, Q and T, just as we did in Equations (12.7) through (12.11).

### 12.6.5.2 Additive Blending versus Partial Blending

Additive blending is similar in some ways to partial blending. For example, we can take the difference between a standing clip and a clip of standing while waving the right arm. The result will be almost the same as using a partial blend to make the right arm wave. However, additive blends suffer less from the “disconnected” look of animations combined via partial blending. This is because, with an additive blend, we are not replacing the animation for a subset of joints or interpolating between two potentially unrelated poses. Rather, we are adding movement to the original animation—possibly across the entire skeleton. In effect, a difference animation “knows” how to change a character’s pose in order to get him to do something specific, like being tired, aiming his head in a certain direction, or waving his arm. These changes can be applied to a reasonably wide variety of animations, and the result often looks very natural.

### 12.6.5.3 Limitations of Additive Blending

Of course, additive animation is not a silver bullet. Because it adds movement to an existing animation, it can have a tendency to over-rotate the joints in the skeleton, especially when multiple difference clips are applied simultaneously. As a simple example, imagine a target animation in which the character’s left arm is bent at a 90 degree angle. If we add a difference animation that also rotates the elbow by 90 degrees, then the net effect would be to rotate the arm by  $90 + 90 = 180$  degrees. This would cause the lower arm to interpenetrate the upper arm—not a comfortable position for most individuals!

Clearly we must be careful when selecting the reference clip and also when choosing the target clips to which to apply it. Here are some simple rules of thumb:

- Keep hip rotations to a minimum in the reference clip.
- The shoulder and elbow joints should usually be in neutral poses in the reference clip to minimize over-rotation of the arms when the difference clip is added to other targets.
- Animators should create a new difference animation for each core pose (e.g., standing upright, crouched down, lying prone, etc.). This allows the animator to account for the way in which a real human would move when in each of these stances.

These rules of thumb can be a helpful starting point, but the only way to really learn how to create and apply difference clips is by trial and error or by apprenticing with animators or engineers who have experience creating and applying difference animations. If your team hasn't used additive blending in the past, expect to spend a significant amount of time learning the art of additive blending.

## 12.6.6 Applications of Additive Blending

### 12.6.6.1 Stance Variation

One particularly striking application of additive blending is *stance variation*. For each desired stance, the animator creates a one-frame difference animation. When one of these single-frame clips is additively blended with a base animation, it causes the entire stance of the character to change drastically while he continues to perform the fundamental action he's supposed to perform. This idea is illustrated in Figure 12.41.

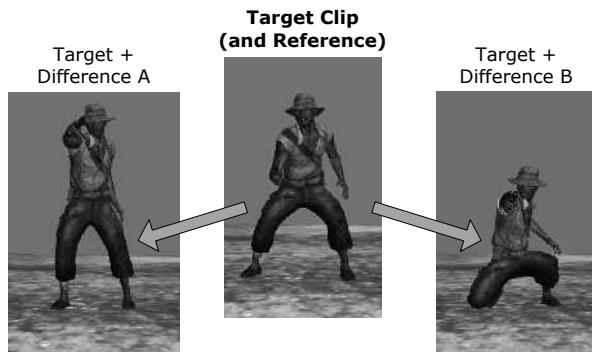


Figure 12.41. Two single-frame difference animations A and B can cause a target animation clip to assume two totally different stances. (Character from *Uncharted: Drake's Fortune*, © 2007/® SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog.)

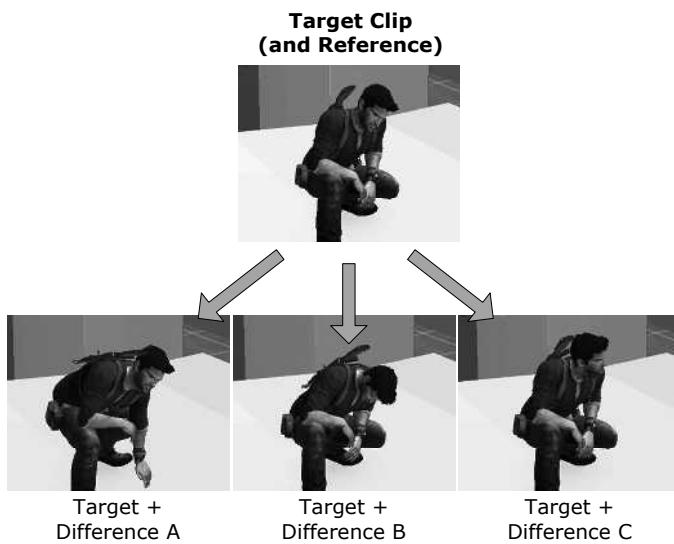


Figure 12.42. Additive blends can be used to add variation to a repetitive idle animation. Images courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc., © 2014™ SIE.

#### 12.6.6.2 Locomotion Noise

Real humans don't run exactly the same way with every footfall—there is variation in their movement over time. This is especially true if the person is distracted (for example, by attacking enemies). Additive blending can be used to layer randomness, or reactions to distractions, on top of an otherwise entirely repetitive locomotion cycle. This is illustrated in Figure 12.42.

#### 12.6.6.3 Aim and Look-At

Another common use for additive blending is to permit the character to look around or to aim his weapon. To accomplish this, the character is first animated doing some action, such as running, with his head or weapon facing straight ahead. Then the animator changes the direction of the head or the aim of the weapon to the extreme right and saves off a one-frame or multi-frame difference animation. This process is repeated for the extreme left, up and down directions. These four difference animations can then be additively blended onto the original straight-ahead animation clip, causing the character to aim right, left, up, down or anywhere in between.

The angle of the aim is governed by the additive blend factor of each clip. For example, blending in 100% of the right additive causes the character to aim as far right as possible. Blending 50% of the left additive causes him to aim at

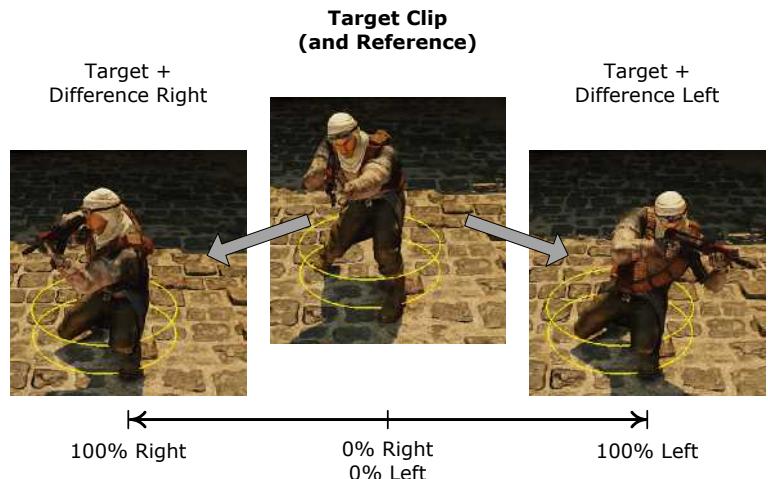


Figure 12.43. Additive blending can be used to aim a weapon. Screenshots courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc., © 2014™ SIE.

an angle that is one-half of his leftmost aim. We can also combine this with an up or down additive to aim diagonally. This is demonstrated in Figure 12.43.

#### 12.6.6.4 Overloading the Time Axis

It's interesting to note that the time axis of an animation clip needn't be used to represent time. For example, a three-frame animation clip could be used to provide three aim poses to the engine—a left aim pose on frame 1, a forward aim pose on frame 2 and a right aim pose on frame 3. To make the character aim to the right, we can simply fix the local clock of the aim animation on frame 3. To perform a 50% blend between aiming forward and aiming right, we can dial in frame 2.5. This is a great example of leveraging existing features of the engine for new purposes.

## 12.7 Post-Processing

Once a skeleton has been posed by one or more animation clips and the results have been blended together using linear interpolation or additive blending, it is often necessary to modify the pose prior to rendering the character. This is called *animation post-processing*. In this section, we'll look at a few of the most common kinds of animation post-processing.

### 12.7.1 Procedural Animations

A *procedural animation* is any animation generated at runtime rather than being driven by data exported from an animation tool such as Maya. Sometimes, hand-animated clips are used to pose the skeleton initially, and then the pose is modified in some way via procedural animation as a post-processing step. A procedural animation can also be used as an input to the system in place of a hand-animated clip.

For example, imagine that a regular animation clip is used to make a vehicle appear to be bouncing up and down on the terrain as it moves. The direction in which the vehicle travels is under player control. We would like to adjust the rotation of the front wheels and steering wheel so that they move convincingly when the vehicle is turning. This can be done by post-processing the pose generated by the animation. Let's assume that the original animation has the front tires pointing straight ahead and the steering wheel in a neutral position. We can use the current angle of turn to create a quaternion about the vertical axis that will deflect the front tires by the desired amount. This quaternion can be multiplied with the front tire joints' Q channel to produce the final pose of the tires. Likewise, we can generate a quaternion about the axis of the steering column and multiply it into the steering wheel joint's Q channel to deflect it. These adjustments are made to the *local pose*, prior to global pose calculation and matrix palette generation (see Section 12.5).

As another example, let's say that we wish to make the trees and bushes in our game world sway naturally in the wind and get brushed aside when characters move through them. We can do this by modeling the trees and bushes as skinned meshes with simple skeletons. Procedural animation can be used, in place of or in addition to hand-animated clips, to cause the joints to move in a natural-looking way. We might apply one or more sinusoids, or a Perlin noise function, to the rotation of various joints to make them sway in the breeze, and when a character moves through a region containing a bush or grass, we can deflect its root joint quaternion radially outward to make it appear to be pushed over by the character.

### 12.7.2 Inverse Kinematics

Let's say we have an animation clip in which a character leans over to pick up an object from the ground. In Maya, the clip looks great, but in our production game level, the ground is not perfectly flat, so sometimes the character's hand misses the object or appears to pass through it. In this case, we would like to adjust the final pose of the skeleton so that the hand lines up exactly with the target object. A technique known as *inverse kinematics* (IK) can be used to make

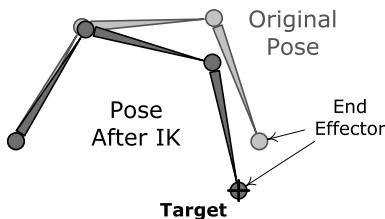


Figure 12.44. Inverse kinematics attempts to bring an end effector joint into a target global pose by minimizing the error between them.

this happen.

A regular animation clip is an example of *forward kinematics* (FK). In forward kinematics, the input is a set of local joint poses, and the output is a global pose and a skinning matrix for each joint. Inverse kinematics goes in the other direction: The input is the desired global pose of a single joint, which is known as the *end effector*. We solve for the *local* poses of other joints in the skeleton that will bring the end effector to the desired location.

Mathematically, IK boils down to an *error minimization* problem. As with most minimization problems, there might be one solution, many or none at all. This makes intuitive sense: If I try to reach a doorknob that is on the other side of the room, I won't be able to reach it without walking over to it. IK works best when the skeleton starts out in a pose that is reasonably close to the desired target. This helps the algorithm to focus in on the "closest" solution and to do so in a reasonable amount of processing time. Figure 12.44 shows IK in action.

Imagine a two-joint skeleton, each of which can rotate only about a single axis. The rotation of these two joints can be described by a two-dimensional angle vector  $\theta = [\theta_1 \ \theta_2]$ . The set of all possible angles for our two joints forms a two-dimensional space called *configuration space*. Obviously, for more complex skeletons with more degrees of freedom per joint, configuration space becomes multidimensional, but the concepts described here work equally well no matter how many dimensions we have.

Now imagine plotting a three-dimensional graph, where for each combination of joint rotations (i.e., for each point in our two-dimensional configuration space), we plot the distance from the end effector to the desired target. An example of this kind of plot is shown in Figure 12.45. The "valleys" in this three-dimensional surface represent regions in which the end effector is as close as possible to the target. When the height of the surface is zero, the end effector has reached its target. Inverse kinematics, then, attempts to find

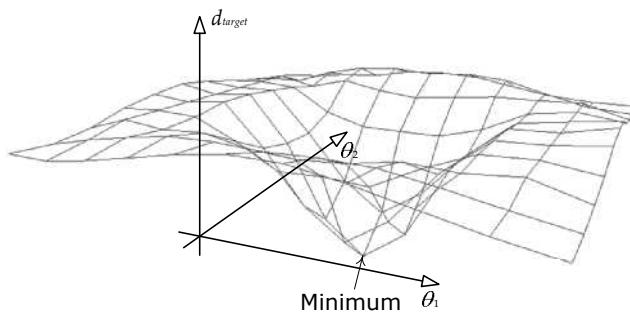


Figure 12.45. A three-dimensional plot of the distance from the end effector to the target for each point in two-dimensional configuration space. IK finds the local minimum.

minima (low points) on this surface.

We won't get into the details of solving the IK minimization problem here. You can read more about IK at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inverse\\_kinematics](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inverse_kinematics) and in Jason Weber's article, "Constrained Inverse Kinematics" [47].

### 12.7.3 Rag Dolls

A character's body goes limp when he dies or becomes unconscious. In such situations, we want the body to react in a physically realistic way with its surroundings. To do this, we can use a *rag doll*. A rag doll is a collection of physically simulated rigid bodies, each one representing a semi-rigid part of the character's body, such as his lower arm or his upper leg. The rigid bodies are constrained to one another at the joints of the character in such a way as to produce natural-looking "lifeless" body movement. The positions and orientations of the rigid bodies are determined by the physics system and are then used to drive the positions and orientations of certain key joints in the character's skeleton. The transfer of data from the physics system to the skeleton is typically done as a post-processing step.

To really understand rag doll physics, we must first have an understanding of how the collision and physics systems work. Rag dolls are covered in more detail in Sections 13.4.8.7 and 13.5.3.8.

## 12.8 Compression Techniques

Animation data can take up a lot of memory. A single joint pose might be composed of ten floating-point channels (three for translation, four for rotation and

up to three more for scale). Assuming each channel contains a 4-byte floating-point value, a one-second clip sampled at 30 samples per second would occupy  $4 \text{ bytes} \times 10 \text{ channels} \times 30 \text{ samples/second} = 1200 \text{ bytes per joint per second}$ , or a data rate of about 1.17 KiB per joint per second. For a 100-joint skeleton (which is small by today's standards), an uncompressed animation clip would occupy 117 KiB per joint per second. If our game contained 1,000 seconds of animation (which is on the low side for a modern game), the entire dataset would occupy a whopping 114.4 MiB. That's quite a lot, considering that a PlayStation 3 has only 256 MiB of main RAM and 256 MiB of video RAM. Sure, the PS4 has 8 GiB of RAM. But even so—we would rather have much richer animations with a lot more variety than waste memory unnecessarily. Therefore, game engineers invest a significant amount of effort into compressing animation data in order to permit the maximum richness and variety of movement at the minimum memory cost.

### 12.8.1 Channel Omission

One simple way to reduce the size of an animation clip is to omit channels that are irrelevant. Many characters do not require nonuniform scaling, so the three scale channels can be reduced to a single uniform scale channel. In some games, the scale channel can actually be omitted altogether for all joints (except possibly the joints in the face). The bones of a humanoid character generally cannot stretch, so translation can often be omitted for all joints except the root, the facial joints and sometimes the collar bones. Finally, because quaternions are always normalized, we can store only three components per quat (e.g.,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ ) and reconstruct the fourth component (e.g.,  $w$ ) at run-time.

As a further optimization, channels whose pose does not change over the course of the entire animation can be stored as a single sample at time  $t = 0$  plus a single bit indicating that the channel is constant for all other values of  $t$ .

Channel omission can significantly reduce the size of an animation clip. A 100-joint character with no scale and no translation requires only 303 channels—three channels for the quaternions at each joint, plus three channels for the root joint's translation. Compare this to the 1,000 channels that would be required if all ten channels were included for all 100 joints.

### 12.8.2 Quantization

Another way to reduce the size of an animation is to reduce the size of each channel. A floating-point value is normally stored in 32-bit IEEE format. This format provides 23 bits of precision in the mantissa and an 8-bit exponent.

However, it's often not necessary to retain that kind of precision and range in an animation clip. When storing a quaternion, the channel values are guaranteed to lie in the range  $[-1, 1]$ . At a magnitude of 1, the exponent of a 32-bit IEEE float is zero, and 23 bits of precision give us accuracy down to the seventh decimal place. Experience shows that a quaternion can be encoded well with only 16 bits of precision, so we're really wasting 16 bits per channel if we store our quats using 32-bit floats.

Converting a 32-bit IEEE float into an  $n$ -bit integer representation is called *quantization*. There are actually two components to this operation: *Encoding* is the process of converting the original floating-point value to a quantized integer representation. *Decoding* is the process of recovering an approximation to the original floating-point value from the quantized integer. (We can only recover an *approximation* to the original data—quantization is a *lossy* compression method because it effectively reduces the number of bits of precision used to represent the value.)

To encode a floating-point value as an integer, we first divide the valid range of possible input values into  $N$  equally sized *intervals*. We then determine within which interval a particular floating-point value lies and represent that value by the *integer index* of its interval. To decode this quantized value, we simply convert the integer index into floating-point format and shift and scale it back into the original range.  $N$  is usually chosen to correspond to the range of possible integer values that can be represented by an  $n$ -bit integer. For example, if we're encoding a 32-bit floating-point value as a 16-bit integer, the number of intervals would be  $N = 2^{16} = 65,536$ .

Jonathan Blow wrote an excellent article on the topic of floating-point scalar quantization in the *Inner Product* column of Game Developer Magazine, available at <https://bit.ly/2J92oiU>. The article presents two ways to map a floating-point value to an interval during the encoding process: We can either *truncate* the float to the next lowest interval boundary (*T encoding*), or we can *round* the float to the center of the enclosing interval (*R encoding*). Likewise, it describes two approaches to reconstructing the floating-point value from its integer representation: We can either return the value of the *left-hand side* of the interval to which our original value was mapped (*L reconstruction*), or we can return the value of the center of the interval (*C reconstruction*). This gives us four possible encode/decode methods: TL, TC, RL and RC. Of these, TL and RC are to be avoided because they tend to remove or add energy to the dataset, which can often have disastrous effects. TC has the benefit of being the most efficient method in terms of bandwidth, but it suffers from a severe problem—there is no way to represent the value zero exactly. (If you encode 0.0f, it becomes a small positive value when decoded.) RL is therefore usually

the best choice and is the method we'll demonstrate here.

The article only talks about quantizing positive floating-point values, and in the examples, the input range is assumed to be  $[0, 1]$  for simplicity. However, we can always shift and scale any floating-point range into the range  $[0, 1]$ . For example, the range of quaternion channels is  $[-1, 1]$ , but we can convert this to the range  $[0, 1]$  by adding one and then dividing by two.

The following pair of routines encode and decode an input floating-point value lying in the range  $[0, 1]$  into an  $n$ -bit integer, according to Jonathan Blow's RL method. The quantized value is always returned as a 32-bit unsigned integer (U32), but only the least-significant  $n$  bits are actually used, as specified by the `nBits` argument. For example, if you pass `nBits==16`, you can safely cast the result to a U16.

```

U32 CompressUnitFloatRL(F32 unitFloat, U32 nBits)
{
    // Determine the number of intervals based on the
    // number of output bits we've been asked to produce.
    U32 nIntervals = 1u << nBits;

    // Scale the input value from the range [0, 1] into
    // the range [0, nIntervals - 1]. We subtract one
    // interval because we want the largest output value
    // to fit into nBits bits.
    F32 scaled = unitFloat * (F32)(nIntervals - 1u);

    // Finally, round to the nearest interval center. We
    // do this by adding 0.5f and then truncating to the
    // next-lowest interval index (by casting to U32).
    U32 rounded = (U32)(scaled + 0.5f);

    // Guard against invalid input values.
    if (rounded > nIntervals - 1u)
        rounded = nIntervals - 1u;

    return rounded;
}

F32 DecompressUnitFloatRL(U32 quantized, U32 nBits)
{
    // Determine the number of intervals based on the
    // number of bits we used when we encoded the value.
    U32 nIntervals = 1u << nBits;

    // Decode by simply converting the U32 to an F32, and
    // scaling by the interval size.

```

```

F32 intervalSize = 1.0f / (F32)(nIntervals - 1u);
F32 approxUnitFloat = (F32)quantized * intervalSize;

return approxUnitFloat;
}

```

To handle arbitrary input values in the range  $[min, max]$ , we can use these routines:

```

U32 CompressFloatRL(F32 value, F32 min, F32 max,
                     U32 nBits)
{
    F32 unitFloat = (value - min) / (max - min);
    U32 quantized = CompressUnitFloatRL(unitFloat,
                                         nBits);
    return quantized;
}

F32 DecompressFloatRL(U32 quantized, F32 min, F32 max,
                      U32 nBits)
{
    F32 unitFloat = DecompressUnitFloatRL(quantized,
                                         nBits);
    F32 value = min + (unitFloat * (max - min));
    return value;
}

```

Let's return to our original problem of animation channel compression. To compress and decompress a quaternion's four components into 16 bits per channel, we simply call `CompressFloatRL()` and `DecompressFloatRL()` with  $min = -1$ ,  $max = 1$  and  $n = 16$ :

```

inline U16 CompressRotationChannel(F32 qx)
{
    return (U16)CompressFloatRL(qx, -1.0f, 1.0f, 16u);
}

inline F32 DecompressRotationChannel(U16 qx)
{
    return DecompressFloatRL((U32)qx, -1.0f, 1.0f, 16u);
}

```

Compression of translation channels is a bit trickier than rotations, because unlike quaternion channels, the range of a translation channel could theoretically be unbounded. Thankfully, the joints of a character don't move very far in practice, so we can decide upon a reasonable range of motion and flag an

error if we ever see an animation that contains translations outside the valid range. In-game cinematics are an exception to this rule—when an IGC is animated in world space, the translations of the characters’ root joints can grow very large. To address this, we can select the range of valid translations on a per-animation or per-joint basis, depending on the maximum translations actually achieved within each clip. Because the data range might differ from animation to animation, or from joint to joint, we must store the range with the compressed clip data. This will add a tiny amount of data to each animation clip, but the impact is generally negligible.

```
// We'll use a 2 m range -- your mileage may vary.
F32 MAX_TRANSLATION = 2.0f;

inline U16 CompressTranslationChannel(F32 vx)
{
    // Clamp to valid range...
    if (vx < -MAX_TRANSLATION)
        vx = -MAX_TRANSLATION;
    if (vx > MAX_TRANSLATION)
        vx = MAX_TRANSLATION;

    return (U16)CompressFloatRL(vx,
        -MAX_TRANSLATION, MAX_TRANSLATION, 16);
}

inline F32 DecompressTranslationChannel(U16 vx)
{
    return DecompressFloatRL((U32)vx,
        -MAX_TRANSLATION, MAX_TRANSLATION, 16);
}
```

### 12.8.3 Sampling Frequency and Key Omission

Animation data tends to be large for three reasons: first, because the pose of each joint can contain upwards of ten channels of floating-point data; second, because a skeleton contains a large number of joints (250 or more for a humanoid character on PS3 or Xbox 360, and more than 800 on some PS4 and Xbox One games); third, because the pose of the character is typically sampled at a high rate (e.g., 30 frames per second). We’ve seen some ways to address the first problem. We can’t really reduce the number of joints for our high-resolution characters, so we’re stuck with the second problem. To attack the third problem, we can do two things:

- *Reduce the sample rate overall.* Some animations look fine when exported

at 15 samples per second, and doing so cuts the animation data size in half.

- *Omit some of the samples.* If a channel's data varies in an approximately linear fashion during some interval of time within the clip, we can omit all of the samples in this interval except the endpoints. Then, at runtime, we can use linear interpolation to recover the dropped samples.

The latter technique is a bit involved, and it requires us to store information about the *time* of each sample. This additional data can erode the savings we achieved by omitting samples in the first place. However, some game engines have used this technique successfully.

#### 12.8.4 Curve-Based Compression

One of the most powerful, easiest-to-use and best-thought-out animation APIs I've ever worked with is *Granny*, by Rad Game Tools. *Granny* stores animations not as a regularly spaced sequence of pose samples but as a collection of  $n$ th-order, nonuniform, nonrational B-splines, describing the paths of a joint's S, Q and T channels over time. Using B-splines allows channels with a lot of curvature to be encoded using only a few data points.

*Granny* exports an animation by sampling the joint poses at regular intervals, much like traditional animation data. For each channel, *Granny* then fits a set of B-splines to the sampled dataset to within a user-specified tolerance. The end result is an animation clip that is usually significantly smaller than its uniformly sampled, linearly interpolated counterpart. This process is illustrated in Figure 12.46.

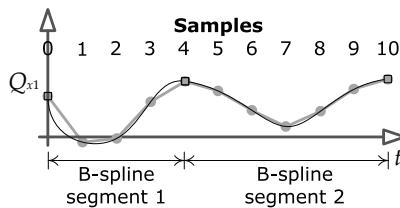


Figure 12.46. One form of animation compression fits B-splines to the animation channel data.

#### 12.8.5 Wavelet Compression

Another way to compress animation data is to apply *signal processing theory* to the problem, via a technique known as *wavelet compression*. A wavelet is a function whose amplitude oscillates like a wave but whose duration is very

short, like a brief ripple in a pond. Wavelet functions are carefully crafted to give them desirable properties for use in signal processing.

In wavelet compression, an animation curve is decomposed into a sum of orthonormal wavelets, in much the same way that an arbitrary signal can be represented as a train of delta functions or a sum of sinusoids. We discuss signal processing and linear time-invariant systems in some depth in Section 14.2; the concepts presented there form the foundations necessary to understand wavelet compression. A full discussion of wavelet-based compression techniques is well beyond the scope of this book, but you can read more about it online. Search for “wavelet” to find introductory articles on the topic, and then try searching for “Animation Compression: Signal Processing” on Nicholas Frechette’s blog for a great article on how wavelet compression was implemented for *Thief* (2014) by Eidos Montreal.

### 12.8.6 Selective Loading and Streaming

The cheapest animation clip is the one that isn’t in memory at all. Most games don’t need every animation clip to be in memory simultaneously. Some clips apply only to certain classes of character, so they needn’t be loaded during levels in which that class of character is never encountered. Other clips apply to one-off moments in the game. These can be loaded or streamed into memory just before being needed and dumped from memory once they have played.

Most games load a core set of animation clips into memory when the game first boots and keep them there for the duration of the game. These include the player character’s core move set and animations that apply to objects that reappear over and over throughout the game, such as weapons or power-ups. All other animations are usually loaded on an as-needed basis. Some game engines load animation clips individually, but many package them together into logical groups that can be loaded and unloaded as a unit.

## 12.9 The Animation Pipeline

The operations performed by the low-level animation engine form a *pipeline* that transforms its inputs (animation clips and blend specifications) into the desired outputs (local and global poses, plus a matrix palette for rendering).

For each animating character and object in the game, the animation pipeline takes one or more animation clips and corresponding blend factors as input, blends them together, and generates a single local skeletal pose as output. It also calculates a global pose for the skeleton and a palette of skinning

matrices for use by the rendering engine. Post-processing hooks are usually provided, which permit the local pose to be modified prior to final global pose and matrix palette generation. This is where inverse kinematics (IK), rag doll physics and other forms of procedural animation are applied to the skeleton.

The stages of this pipeline are:

1. *Clip decompression and pose extraction.* In this stage, each individual clip's data is decompressed, and a static pose is extracted for the time index in question. The output of this phase is a local skeletal pose for each input clip. This pose might contain information for every joint in the skeleton (a *full-body pose*), for only a subset of joints (a *partial pose*), or it might be a *difference pose* for use in additive blending.
2. *Pose blending.* In this stage, the input poses are combined via full-body LERP blending, partial-skeleton LERP blending and/or additive blending. The output of this stage is a single local pose for all joints in the skeleton. This stage is of course only executed when blending more than one animation clip together—otherwise the output pose from stage 1 can be used directly.
3. *Global pose generation.* In this stage, the skeletal hierarchy is walked, and local joint poses are concatenated in order to generate a global pose for the skeleton.
4. *Post-processing.* In this optional stage, the local and/or global poses of the skeleton can be modified prior to finalization of the pose. Post-processing is used for inverse kinematics, rag doll physics and other forms of procedural animation adjustment.
5. *Recalculation of global poses.* Many types of post-processing require global pose information as input but generate local poses as output. After such a post-processing step has run, we must recalculate the global pose from the modified local pose. Obviously, a post-processing operation that does not require global pose information can be done between stages 2 and 3, thus avoiding the need for global pose recalculation.
6. *Matrix palette generation.* Once the final global pose has been generated, each joint's global pose matrix is multiplied by the corresponding inverse bind pose matrix. The output of this stage is a palette of skinning matrices suitable for input to the rendering engine.

A typical animation pipeline is depicted in Figure 12.47.

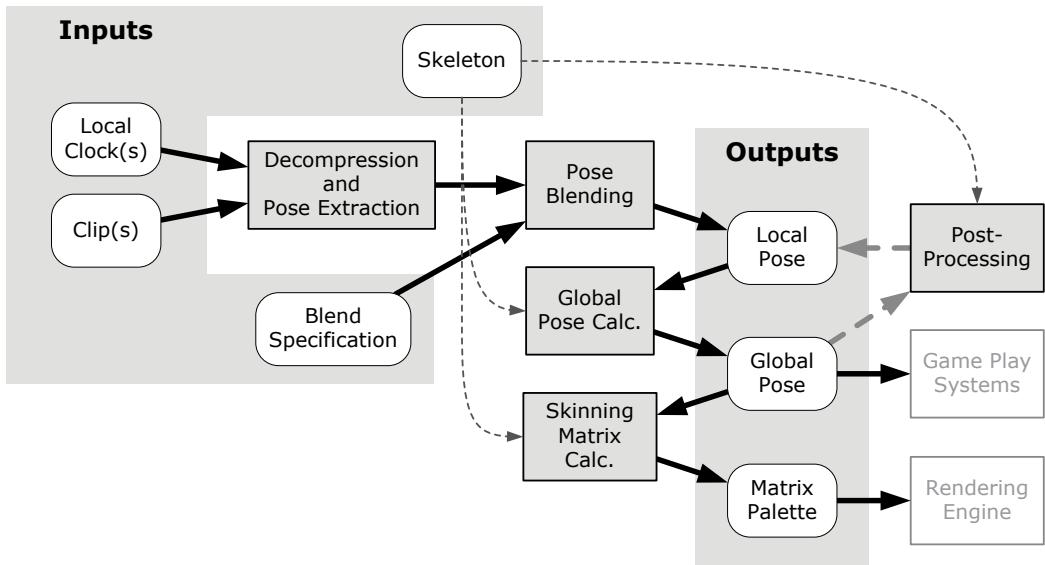


Figure 12.47. A typical animation pipeline.

## 12.10 Action State Machines

The actions of a game character (standing, walking, running, jumping, etc.) are usually best modeled via a finite state machine, commonly known as the *action state machine* (ASM). The ASM subsystem sits atop the animation pipeline and provides a state-driven animation interface for use by virtually all higher-level game code.

Each state in an ASM corresponds to an arbitrarily complex blend of simultaneous animation clips. Some states might be very simple—for example, the “idle” state might be comprised of a single full-body animation. Other states might be more complex. A “running” state might correspond to a semicircular blend, with strafing left, running forward and strafing right at the  $-90$  degree,  $0$  degree and  $+90$  degree points, respectively. The “running while shooting” state might include a semicircular directional blend, plus additive or partial-skeleton blend nodes for aiming the character’s weapon up, down, left and right, and additional blends to permit the character to look around with its eyes, head and shoulders. More additive animations might be included to control the character’s overall stance, gait and foot spacing while locomoting and to provide a degree of “humanness” through random movement variations.

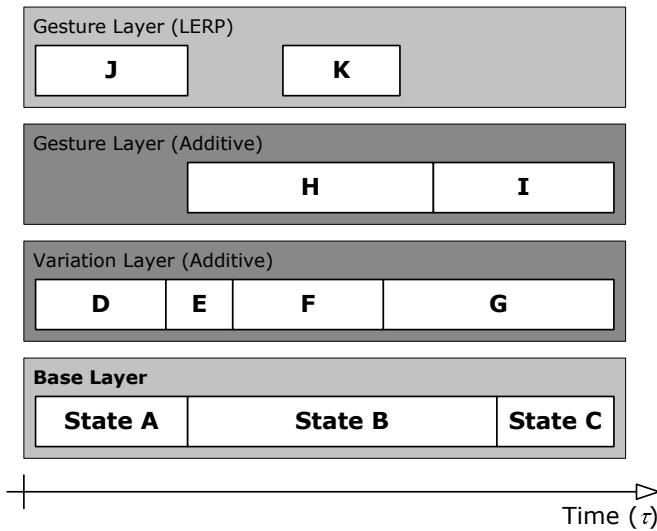


Figure 12.48. A layered action state machine, showing how each layer's state transitions are temporally independent. In this example, the base layer describes the character's full-body stance and movement. A variation layer provides variety by applying additive clips to the character's pose. Finally, two gesture layers, one additive and one partial, permit the character to aim or point at objects in the world around it.

A character's ASM also ensures that characters can *transition* smoothly from state to state. During a transition from state A to state B, the final output poses of both states are usually blended together to provide a smooth *cross-fade* between them.

Most high-quality animation engines also permit different parts of a character's body to be doing different, independent or semi-independent actions simultaneously. For instance, a character might be running, aiming and firing a weapon with its arms, and speaking a line of dialog with its facial joints. The movements of different parts of the body aren't generally in perfect sync either—certain parts of the body tend to "lead" the movements of other parts (e.g., the head leads a turn, followed by the shoulders, the hips and finally the legs). In traditional animation, this well-known technique is known as *anticipation* [51]. This kind of complex movement can be realized by allowing multiple independent state machines to control a single character. Usually each state machine exists in a separate *state layer*, as shown in Figure 12.48. The output poses from each layer's ASM are blended together into a final composite pose.

All of this means that at any given moment in time, multiple animation

clips are contributing to the final pose of a character's skeleton. For each character, then, we need a way to track all of the currently-playing clips, and to describe how exactly they should be blended together in order to produce the character's final pose. Generally speaking, there are two ways to do this:

1. *Flat weighted average.* In this approach, the engine maintains a flat list of all animation clips that are currently contributing to a character's final pose, with one blend weight per clip. The animations are blended together as one big weighted average to produce the final pose.
2. *Blend trees.* In this approach, each contributing clip is represented by the leaf nodes of a tree. The interior nodes of this tree represent various blending operations that are being performed on the clips. Multiple blend operations are composed to form action states. Additional blend nodes are introduced to represent transient cross-fades. And in a layered ASM, the output poses obtained from the action states in each layer are blended together. The final pose of the character is thus produced at the root of this potentially complex blend tree.

### 12.10.1 The Flat Weighted Average Approach

In the flat weighted average approach, every animation clip that is currently playing on a given character is associated with a blend weight indicating how much it should contribute to its final pose. A flat list of all *active* animation clips (i.e., clips whose blend weights are nonzero) is maintained. To calculate the final pose of the skeleton, we extract a pose at the appropriate time index for each of the  $N$  active clips. Then, for each joint of the skeleton, we calculate a simple  $N$ -point weighted average of the translation vectors, rotation quaternions and scale factors extracted from the  $N$  active animations. This yields the final pose of the skeleton.

The equation for the weighted average of a set of  $N$  vectors  $\{\mathbf{v}_i\}$  is as follows:

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{avg}} = \frac{\sum_{i=0}^{N-1} w_i \mathbf{v}_i}{\sum_{i=0}^{N-1} w_i}.$$

If the weights are *normalized*, meaning they sum to one, then this equation can be simplified to the following:

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{avg}} = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} w_i \mathbf{v}_i, \quad \text{when } \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} w_i = 1.$$

In the case of  $N = 2$ , if we let  $w_0 = (1 - \beta)$  and  $w_1 = \beta$ , the weighted average reduces to the familiar equation for the linear interpolation (LERP) between two vectors:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}_{\text{avg}} &= w_0 \mathbf{v}_A + w_1 \mathbf{v}_B \\ &= (1 - \beta) \mathbf{v}_A + \beta \mathbf{v}_B \\ &= \text{LERP} [\mathbf{v}_A, \mathbf{v}_B, \beta].\end{aligned}$$

We can apply this same weighted average formulation equally well to quaternions by simply treating them as four-element vectors.

#### 12.10.1.1 Example: OGRE

The OGRE animation system works in exactly this way. An `Ogre::Entity` represents an instance of a 3D mesh (e.g., one particular character walking around in the game world). The `Entity` aggregates an object called an `Ogre::AnimationStateSet`, which in turn maintains a list of `Ogre::AnimationState` objects, one for each active animation. The `Ogre::AnimationState` class is shown in the code snippet below. (A few irrelevant details have been omitted for clarity.)

```
/** Represents the state of an animation clip and the
   weight of its influence on the overall pose of the
   character.
*/
class AnimationState
{
protected:
    String          mAnimationName; // reference to
                           // clip
    Real            mTimePos;      // local clock
    Real            mWeight;       // blend weight
    bool            mEnabled;      // is this anim
                           // running?
    bool            mLoop;         // should the
                           // anim loop?

public:
    /// API functions...
};
```

Each `AnimationState` keeps track of one animation clip's local clock and its blend weight. When calculating the final pose of the skeleton for a particular `Ogre::Entity`, OGRE's animation system simply loops through each

active `AnimationState` in its `AnimationStateSet`. A skeletal pose is extracted from the animation clip corresponding to each state at the time index specified by that state's local clock. For each joint in the skeleton, an  $N$ -point weighted average is then calculated for the translation vectors, rotation quaternions and scales, yielding the final skeletal pose.

It is interesting to note that OGRE has no concept of a playback rate ( $R$ ). If it did, we would have expected to see a data member like this in the `Ogre::AnimationState` class:

```
Real      mPlaybackRate;
```

Of course, we can still make animations play more slowly or more quickly in OGRE by simply scaling the amount of time we pass to the `addTime()` function, but unfortunately, OGRE does not support animation time scaling out of the box.

#### 12.10.1.2 Example: Granny

The Granny animation system, by Rad Game Tools (<http://www.radgame.com/granny.html>), provides a flat, weighted average animation blending system similar to OGRE's. Granny permits any number of animations to be played on a single character simultaneously. The state of each active animation is maintained in a data structure known as a `granny_control`. Granny calculates a weighted average to determine the final pose, automatically normalizing the weights of all active clips. In this sense, its architecture is virtually identical to that of OGRE's animation system.

Where Granny really shines is in its handling of time. Granny uses the global clock approach discussed in Section 12.4.3. It allows each clip to be looped an arbitrary number of times or infinitely. Clips can also be time-scaled; a negative time scale allows an animation to be played in reverse.

#### 12.10.1.3 Cross-Fades with a Flat Weighted Average

In an animation engine that employs the flat weighted average architecture, cross-fades are implemented by adjusting the weights of the clips themselves. Recall that any clip whose weight  $w_i = 0$  will not contribute to the current pose of the character, while those whose weights are nonzero are averaged together to generate the final pose. If we wish to transition smoothly from clip A to clip B, we simply ramp up clip B's weight  $w_B$ , while simultaneously ramping down clip A's weight  $w_A$ . This is illustrated in Figure 12.49.

Cross-fading in a weighted average architecture becomes a bit trickier when we wish to transition from one complex blend to another. As an example, let's say we wish to transition the character from walking to jumping.

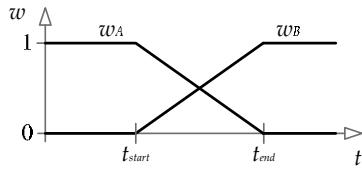


Figure 12.49. A simple cross-fade from clip A to clip B, as implemented in a weighted average animation architecture.

Let's assume that the walk movement is produced by a three-way average between clips A, B and C, and that the jump movement is produced by a two-way average between clips D and E.

We want the character to look like he's smoothly transitioning from walking to jumping, without affecting how the walk or jump animations look individually. So during the transition, we want to ramp down the ABC clips and ramp up the DE clips while keeping the *relative weights* of the ABC and DE clip groups constant. If the cross-fade's blend factor is denoted by  $\lambda$ , we can meet this requirement by simply setting the weights of *both* clip groups to their desired values and then multiplying the weights of the source group by  $(1 - \lambda)$  and the weights of the destination group by  $\lambda$ .

Let's look at a concrete example to convince ourselves that this will work properly. Imagine that before the transition from ABC to DE, the nonzero weights are as follows:  $w_A = 0.2$ ,  $w_B = 0.3$  and  $w_C = 0.5$ . After the transition, we want the nonzero weights to be  $w_D = 0.33$  and  $w_E = 0.66$ . So, we set the weights as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} w_A &= (1 - \lambda)(0.2), & w_D &= \lambda(0.33), \\ w_B &= (1 - \lambda)(0.3), & w_E &= \lambda(0.66). \\ w_C &= (1 - \lambda)(0.5), \end{aligned} \tag{12.20}$$

From Equations (12.20), you should be able to convince yourself of the following:

1. When  $\lambda = 0$ , the output pose is the correct blend of clips A, B and C, with zero contribution from clips D and E.
2. When  $\lambda = 1$ , the output pose is the correct blend of clips D and E, with no contribution from A, B or C.
3. When  $0 < \lambda < 1$ , the *relative weights* of both the ABC group and the DE group remain correct, although they no longer add to one. (In fact, group ABC's weights add to  $(1 - \lambda)$ , and group DE's weights add to  $\lambda$ .)

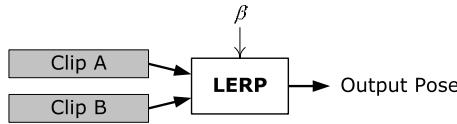


Figure 12.50. A binary LERP blend, represented by a binary expression tree.

For this approach to work, the implementation must keep track of the logical groupings between clips (even though, at the lowest level, all of the clips' states are maintained in one big, flat array—for example, the `Ogre::AnimationStateSet` in OGRE). In our example above, the system must “know” that A, B and C form a group, that D and E form another group, and that we wish to transition from group ABC to group DE. This requires additional metadata to be maintained, on top of the flat array of clip states.

### 12.10.2 Blend Trees

Some animation engines represent a character’s clip state not as a flat weighted average but rather as a tree of blend operations. An animation blend tree is an example of what is known in compiler theory as an *expression tree* or a *syntax tree*. The interior nodes of such a tree are operators, and the leaf nodes serve as the inputs to those operators. (More correctly, the interior nodes represent the *nonterminals* of the grammar, while the leaf nodes represent the *terminals*.)

In the following sections, we’ll briefly revisit the various kinds of animation blends we learned about in Sections 12.6.3 and 12.6.5 and see how each can be represented by an expression tree.

#### 12.10.2.1 Binary LERP Blend Trees

As we saw in Section 12.6.1, a binary linear interpolation (LERP) blend takes two input poses and blends them together into a single output pose. A blend weight  $\beta$  controls the percentage of the second input pose that should appear at the output, while  $(1 - \beta)$  specifies the percentage of the first input pose. This can be represented by the binary expression tree shown in Figure 12.50.

#### 12.10.2.2 Generalized One-Dimensional Blend Trees

In Section 12.6.3.1, we learned that it can be convenient to define a generalized one-dimensional LERP blend by placing an arbitrary number of clips along a linear scale. A blend factor  $b$  specifies the desired blend along this scale. Such a blend can be pictured as an  $n$ -input operator, as shown in Figure 12.51.

Given a specific value for  $b$ , such a linear blend can always be transformed into a binary LERP blend. We simply use the two clips immediately adjacent to

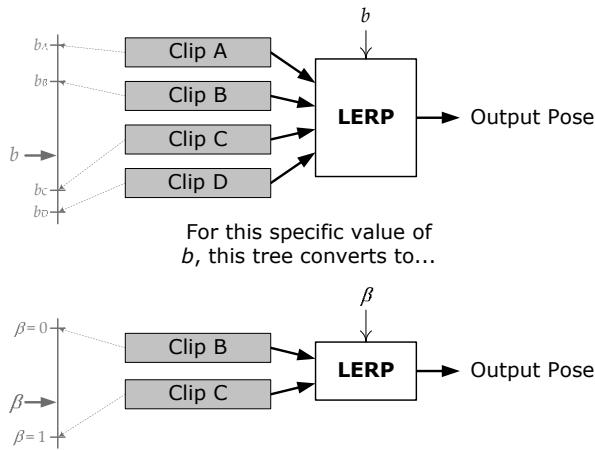


Figure 12.51. A multi-input expression tree can be used to represent a generalized ID blend. Such a tree can always be transformed into a binary expression tree for any specific value of the blend factor  $b$ .

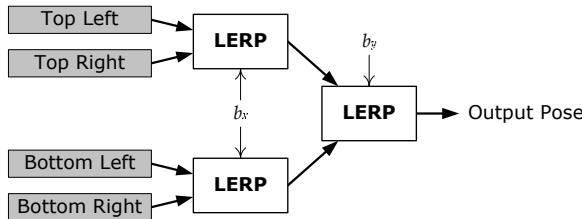


Figure 12.52. A simple 2D LERP blend, implemented as cascaded binary blends.

$b$  as the inputs to the binary blend and calculate the blend weight  $\beta$  as specified in Equation (12.15)

### 12.10.2.3 Two-Dimensional LERP Blend Trees

In Section 12.6.3.2, we saw how a two-dimensional LERP blend can be realized by simply cascading the results of two binary LERP blends. Given a desired two-dimensional blend point  $\mathbf{b} = [b_x \ b_y]$ , Figure 12.52 shows how this kind of blend can be represented in tree form.

### 12.10.2.4 Additive Blend Trees

Section 12.6.5 described additive blending. This is a binary operation, so it can be represented by a binary tree node, as shown in Figure 12.53. A single blend weight  $\beta$  controls the amount of the additive animation that should appear at

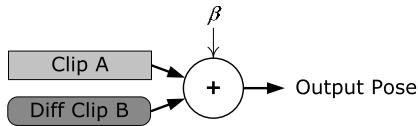


Figure 12.53. An additive blend represented as a binary tree.

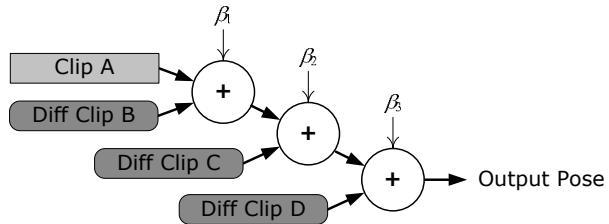


Figure 12.54. In order to additively blend more than one difference pose onto a regular “base” pose, a cascaded binary expression tree must be used.

the output—when  $\beta = 0$ , the additive clip does not affect the output at all, while when  $\beta = 1$ , the additive clip has its maximum effect on the output.

Additive blend nodes must be handled carefully, because the inputs are not interchangeable (as they are with most types of blend operators). One of the two inputs is a regular skeletal pose, while the other is a special kind of pose known as a *difference pose* (also known as an *additive pose*). A difference pose may *only* be applied to a regular pose, and the result of an additive blend is another regular pose. This implies that the additive input of a blend node must always be a leaf node, while the regular input may be a leaf or an interior node. If we want to apply more than one additive animation to our character, we must use a cascaded binary tree with the additive clips always applied to the additive inputs, as shown in Figure 12.54.

#### 12.10.2.5 Layered Blend Trees

We said at the beginning of Section 12.10 that complex character movement can be produced by arranging multiple independent state machines into *state layers*. The output poses from each layer’s ASM are blended together into a final composite pose. When this is implemented using blend trees, the net effect is to combine the blend trees of each active state together into one über tree, as illustrated in Figure 12.55.

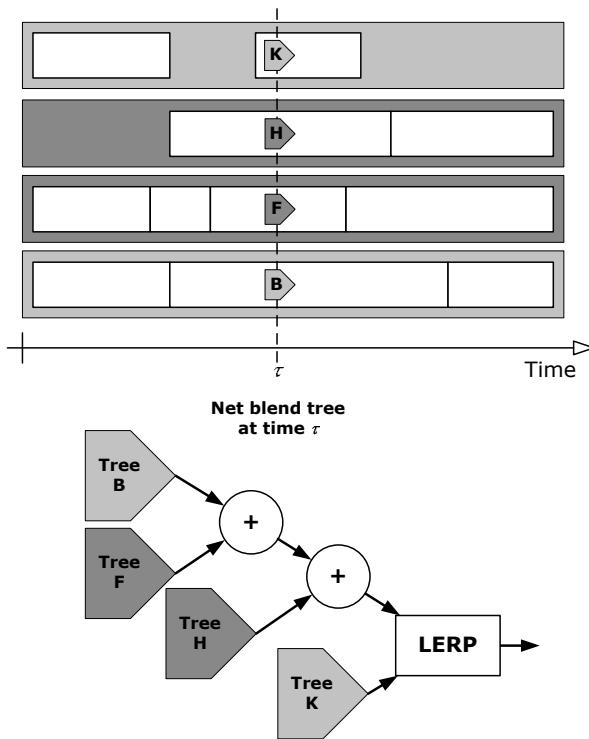


Figure 12.55. A layered state machine converts the blend trees from multiple states into a single, unified tree.

#### 12.10.2.6 Cross-Fades with Blend Trees

As a character transitions from state to state within each layer of a layered ASM, we often wish to provide a smooth cross-fade between states. Implementing a cross-fade in an expression tree based ASM is a bit more intuitive than it is in a weighted average architecture. Whether we're transitioning from one clip to another or from one complex blend to another, the approach is always the same: We simply introduce a transient binary LERP node between the roots of the blend trees of each state to handle the cross-fade.

We'll denote the blend factor of the cross-fade node with the symbol  $\lambda$  as before. Its top input is the source state's blend tree (which can be a single clip or a complex blend), and its bottom input is the destination state's tree (again a clip or a complex blend). During the transition,  $\lambda$  is ramped from zero to one. Once  $\lambda = 1$ , the transition is complete, and the cross-fade LERP node and its top input tree can be retired. This leaves its bottom input tree as the root of

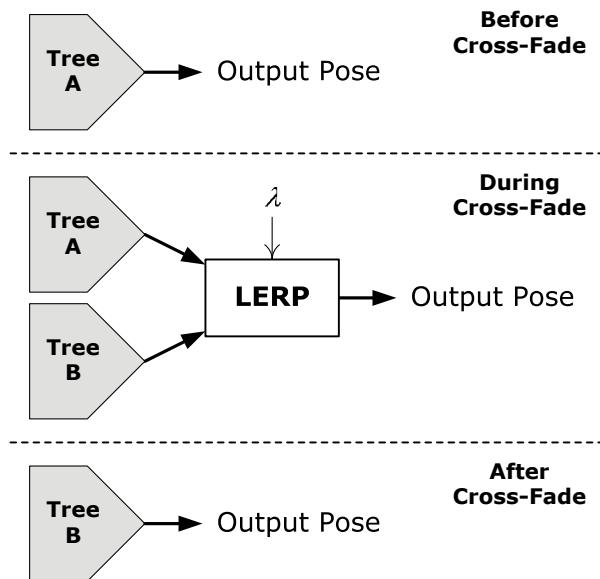


Figure 12.56. A cross-fade between two arbitrary blend trees A and B.

the overall blend tree for the given state layer, thus completing the transition. This process is illustrated in Figure 12.56.

### 12.10.3 State and Blend Tree Specifications

Animators, game designers and programmers usually cooperate to create the animation and control systems for the central characters in a game. These developers need a way to specify the states that make up a character's ASM, to lay out the tree structure of each blend tree, and to select the clips that will serve as their inputs. Although the states and blend trees could be hard-coded, most modern game engines provide a *data-driven* means of defining animation states. The goal of a data-driven approach is to permit a user to create new animation states, remove unwanted states, fine-tune existing states and then see the effects of his or her changes reasonably quickly. In other words, the central goal of a data-driven animation engine is to enable *rapid iteration*.

To build an arbitrarily complex blend tree, we really only require four atomic types of blend nodes: clips, binary LERP blends, binary additive blends and possibly ternary (triangular) LERP blends. Virtually any blend tree imaginable can be created as compositions of these atomic nodes.

A blend tree built exclusively from atomic nodes can quickly become large and unwieldy. As a result, many game engines permit custom compound node types to be predefined for convenience. The  $N$ -dimensional linear blend node discussed in Sections 12.6.3.4 and 12.10.2.2 is an example of a compound node. One can imagine myriad complex blend node types, each one addressing a particular problem specific to the particular game being made. A soccer game might define a node that allows the character to dribble the ball. A war game could define a special node that handles aiming and firing a weapon. A brawler could define custom nodes for each fight move the characters can perform. Once we have the ability to define custom node types, the sky's the limit.

The means by which the users enter animation state data varies widely. Some game engines employ a simple, bare-bones approach, allowing animation states to be specified in a text file with a simple syntax. Other engines provide a slick, graphical editor that permits animation states to be constructed by dragging atomic components such as clips and blend nodes onto a canvas and linking them together in arbitrary ways. Such editors usually provide a live preview of the character so that the user can see immediately how the character will look in the final game. In my opinion, the specific method chosen has little bearing on the quality of the final game—what matters most is that the user can make changes and see the results of those changes reasonably quickly and easily.

### 12.10.3.1 Example: The Naughty Dog Engine

The animation engine used in Naughty Dog's *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* franchises employs a simple, text-based approach to specifying animation states. For reasons related to Naughty Dog's rich history with the Lisp language (see Section 16.9.5.1), state specifications in the Naughty Dog engine are written in a customized version of the Scheme programming language (which itself is a Lisp variant). Two basic state types can be used: *simple* and *complex*.

#### *Simple States*

A *simple* state contains a single animation clip. For example:

```
(define-state simple
  :name "pirate-b-bump-back"
  :clip "pirate-b-bump-back"
  :flags (anim-state-flag no-adjust-to-ground)
)
```

Don't let the Lisp-style syntax throw you. All this block of code does is to define a state named "pirate-b-bump-back" whose animation clip also happens to be named "pirate-b-bump-back." The `:flags` parameter allows users to specify various Boolean options on the state.

### Complex States

A *complex* state contains an arbitrary tree of LERP or additive blends. For example, the following state defines a tree that contains a single binary LERP blend node, with two clips ("walk-l-to-r" and "run-l-to-r") as its inputs:

```
(define-state complex
  :name "move-l-to-r"
  :tree
  (anim-node-lerp
    (anim-node-clip "walk-l-to-r")
    (anim-node-clip "run-l-to-r")
  )
)
```

The `:tree` argument allows the user to specify an arbitrary blend tree, composed of LERP or additive blend nodes and nodes that play individual animation clips.

From this, we can see how the `(define-state simple ...)` example shown above might really work under the hood—it probably defines a complex blend tree containing a single "clip" node, like this:

```
(define-state complex
  :name "pirate-b-unimog-bump-back"
  :tree (anim-node-clip "pirate-b-unimog-bump-back")
  :flags (anim-state-flag no-adjust-to-ground)
)
```

The following complex state shows how blend nodes can be cascaded into arbitrarily deep blend trees:

```
(define-state complex
  :name "move-b-to-f"
  :tree
  (anim-node-lerp
    (anim-node-additive
      (anim-node-additive
        (anim-node-clip "move-f")
        (anim-node-clip "move-f-look-lr")
      )
    )
  )
)
```

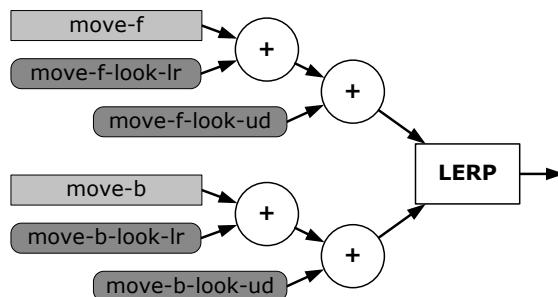


Figure 12.57. Blend tree corresponding to the example state “move-b-to-f.”

```
        (anim-node-clip "move-f-look-ud")
    )
  (anim-node-additive
    (anim-node-additive
      (anim-node-clip "move-b")
      (anim-node-clip "move-b-look-lr")
    )
    (anim-node-clip "move-b-look-ud")
  )
}
```

This corresponds to the tree shown in Figure 12.57.

## *Rapid Iteration*

Naughty Dog's animation team achieves rapid iteration with the help of four important tools:

1. An in-game animation viewer allows a character to be spawned into the game and its animations controlled via an in-game menu.
  2. A simple command-line tool allows animation scripts to be recompiled and reloaded into the running game on the fly. To tweak a character's animations, the user can make changes to the text file containing the animation state specifications, quickly reload the animation states and immediately see the effects of his or her changes on an animating character in the game.
  3. The engine continually keeps track of all state transitions performed by each character during the last few seconds of gameplay. This allows us to pause the game and then literally rewind the animations to scrutinize them and debug problems that are noticed while playing.

4. The Naughty Dog engine also offers a host of “live update” tools. For example, animators can tweak their animations in Maya and see them update virtually instantaneously in the game.

#### 12.10.3.2 Example: Unreal Engine 4

Unreal Engine 4 (UE4) provides its users with five tools for working with skeletal animations and skeletal meshes: The Skeleton Editor, the Skeletal Mesh Editor, the Animation Editor, the Animation Blueprint Editor, and the Physics Editor.

- The Skeleton Editor is essentially a rigging tool. It allows users to view and modify skeletons, add *sockets* to joints, and test out the movement of the skeleton. A socket is sometimes called an *attach point* in other engines (see Section 12.11.1).
- The Skeletal Mesh Editor allows users to edit properties of the meshes that are skinned to animating skeletons.
- The Animation Editor allows users to import, create and manage animation assets. In this editor, the compression and timing of animation clips (which UE4 calls Sequences) can be adjusted. Clips can be combined into predefined Blend Spaces, and in-game cinematics can be defined by creating Animation Montages.
- The Animation Blueprint Editor allows users to apply the power of Unreal Engine’s Blueprints visual scripting system to controlling characters’ animation state machines. This editor is depicted in Figure 12.58.
- The Physics Editor allows users to model a hierarchy of rigid bodies that drive the skeleton’s motion when ragdoll physics is active.

A complete discussion of Unreal Engine’s animation tools is beyond our scope here, but you can read more about it by searching for “Unreal Skeletal Mesh Animation System” online.

#### 12.10.4 Transitions

To create a high-quality animating character, we must carefully manage the *transitions* between states in the action state machine to ensure that the splices between animations do not have a jarring and unpolished appearance. Most modern animation engines provide a data-driven mechanism for specifying exactly how transitions should be handled. In this section, we’ll explore how this mechanism works.

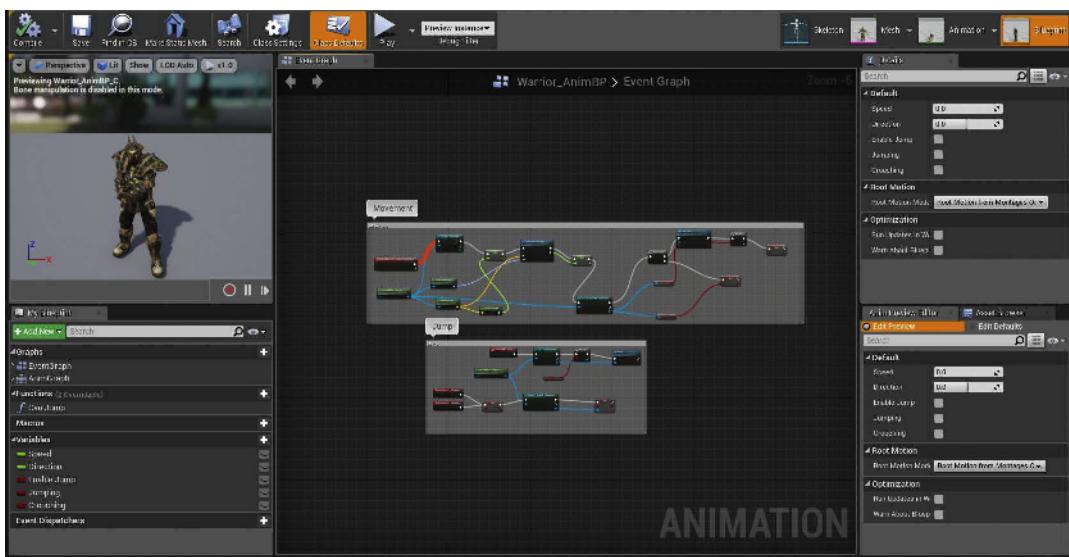


Figure 12.58. The Unreal Engine 4 animation Blueprint editor. (See Color Plate XXVI.)

#### 12.10.4.1 Kinds of Transitions

There are many different ways to manage the transition between states. If we know that the final pose of the source state exactly matches the first pose of the destination state, we can simply “pop” from one state to another. Otherwise, we can cross-fade from one state to the next. Cross-fading is not always a suitable choice when transitioning from state to state. For example, there is no way that a cross-fade can produce a realistic transition from lying on the ground to standing upright. For this kind of state transition, we need one or more custom animations. This kind of transition is often implemented by introducing special *transitional states* into the state machine. These states are intended for use only when going from one state to another—they are never used as a steady-state node. But because they are full-fledged states, they can be comprised of arbitrarily complex blend trees. This provides maximum flexibility when authoring custom-animated transitions.

#### 12.10.4.2 Transition Parameters

When describing a particular transition between two states, we generally need to specify various parameters, controlling exactly how the transition will occur. These include but are not limited to the following.

- *Source and destination states.* To which state(s) does this transition apply?

- *Transition type*. Is the transition immediate, cross-faded or performed via a transitional state?
- *Duration*. For cross-faded transitions, we need to specify how long the cross-fade should take.
- *Ease-in/ease-out curve type*. In a cross-faded transition, we may wish to specify the type of ease-in/ease-out curve to use to vary the blend factor during the fade.
- *Transition window*. Certain transitions can only be taken when the source animation is within a specified window of its local timeline. For example, a transition from a punch animation to an impact reaction might only make sense when the arm is in the second half of its swing. If an attempt to perform the transition is made during the first half of the swing, the transition would be disallowed (or a different transition might be selected instead).

#### 12.10.4.3 The Transition Matrix

Specifying transitions between states can be challenging, because the number of possible transitions is usually very large. In a state machine with  $n$  states, the worst-case number of possible transitions is  $n^2$ . We can imagine a two-dimensional square matrix with every possible state listed along both the vertical and horizontal axes. Such a table can be used to specify all of the possible transitions from any state along the vertical axis to any other state along the horizontal axis.

In a real game, this *transition matrix* is usually quite sparse, because not all state-to-state transitions are possible. For example, transitions are usually disallowed from a death state to any other state. Likewise, there is probably no way to go from a driving state to a swimming state (without going through at least one intermediate state that causes the character to jump out of his vehicle). The number of unique transitions in the table may be significantly less even than the number of valid transitions between states. This is because we can often reuse a single transition specification between many different pairs of states.

#### 12.10.4.4 Implementing a Transition Matrix

There are all sorts of ways to implement a transition matrix. We could use a spreadsheet application to tabulate all the transitions in matrix form, or we might permit transitions to be authored in the same text file used to author our action states. If a graphical user interface is provided for state editing, transitions could be added to this GUI as well. In the following sections, we'll

take a brief look at a few transition matrix implementations from real game engines.

*Example: Wildcarded Transitions in Medal of Honor: Pacific Assault*

On *Medal of Honor: Pacific Assault* (MOHPA), we used the sparseness of the transition matrix to our advantage by supporting wildcarded transition specifications. For each transition specification, the names of both the source and destination states could contain asterisks (\*) as a wildcard character. This allowed us to specify a single default transition from any state to any other state (via the syntax `from="*" to="*"`) and then refine this global default easily for entire categories of states. The refinement could be taken all the way down to custom transitions between specific state pairs when necessary. The MOHPA transition matrix looked something like this:

```
<transitions>
  <!-- global default -->
  <trans from="*" to="*"
        type=frozen duration=0.2>

  <!-- default for any walk to any run -->
  <trans from="walk*" to="run*"
        type=smooth
        duration=0.15>

  <!-- special handling from any prone to any getting-up
      -- action (only valid from 2 sec to 7.5 sec on the
      -- local timeline) -->
  <trans from="*prone" to="*get-up"
        type=smooth
        duration=0.1
        window-start=2.0
        window-end=7.5>

  ...
</transitions>
```

*Example: First-Class Transitions in Uncharted*

In some animation engines, high-level game code requests transitions from the current state to a new state by naming the destination state explicitly. The problem with this approach is that the calling code must have intimate knowledge of the names of the states and of which transitions are valid when in a particular state.

In Naughty Dog's engine, this problem is overcome by turning state transitions from secondary implementation details into first-class entities. Each state provides a list of valid transitions to other states, and each transition is given a unique name. The names of the transitions are standardized in order to make the *effect* of each transition predictable. For example, if a transition is called "walk," then it *always* goes from the current state to a walking state of some kind, no matter what the current state is. Whenever the high-level animation control code wants to transition from state A to state B, it asks for a transition by name (rather than requesting the destination state explicitly). If such a transition can be found and is valid, it is taken; otherwise, the request fails.

The following example state defines four transitions named "reload," "step-left," "step-right" and "fire." The `(transition-group ...)` line invokes a previously defined group of transitions; it is useful when the same set of transitions is to be used in multiple states. The `(transition-end ...)` command specifies a transition that is taken upon reaching the end of the state's local timeline if no other transition has been taken before then.

```
(define-state complex
  :name "s_turret-idle"
  :tree (aim-tree
    (anim-node-clip "turret-aim-all--base")
    "turret-aim-all--left-right"
    "turret-aim-all--up-down"
  )
  :transitions (
    (transition "reload" "s_turret-reload"
      (range - -) :fade-time 0.2)

    (transition "step-left" "s_turret-step-left"
      (range - -) :fade-time 0.2)

    (transition "step-right" "s_turret-step-right"
      (range - -) :fade-time 0.2)

    (transition "fire" "s_turret-fire"
      (range - -) :fade-time 0.1)

    (transition-group "combat-gunout-idle^move")

    (transition-end "s_turret-idle")
  )
)
```

The beauty of this approach may be difficult to see at first. Its primary

purpose is to allow transitions and states to be modified in a data-driven manner, without requiring changes to the C++ source code in many cases. This degree of flexibility is accomplished by shielding the animation control code from knowledge of the structure of the state graph. For example, let's say that we have ten different walking states (normal, scared, crouched, injured and so on). All of them can transition into a jumping state, but different kinds of walks might require different jump animations (e.g., normal jump, scared jump, jump from crouch, injured jump, etc.). For each of the ten walking states, we define a transition simply called "jump." At first, we can point all of these transitions to a single generic "jump" state, just to get things up and running. Later, we can fine-tune some of these transitions so that they point to custom jump states. We can even introduce transitional states between some of the "walk" states and their corresponding "jump" states. All sorts of changes can be made to the structure of the state graph and the parameters of the transitions without affecting the C++ source code—as long as the *names* of the transitions don't change.

#### 12.10.5 Control Parameters

From a software engineering perspective, it can be challenging to orchestrate all of the blend weights, playback rates and other control parameters of a complex animating character. Different blend weights have different effects on the way the character animates. For example, one weight might control the character's movement direction, while others control its movement speed, horizontal and vertical weapon aim, head/eye look direction and so on. We need some way of exposing all of these blend weights to the code that is responsible for controlling them.

In a flat weighted average architecture, we have a flat list of all the animation clips that could possibly be played on the character. Each clip state has a blend weight, a playback rate and possibly other control parameters. The code that controls the character must look up individual clip states by name and adjust each one's blend weight appropriately. This makes for a simple interface, but it shifts most of the responsibility for controlling the blend weights to the character control system. For example, to adjust the direction in which a character is running, the character control code must know that the "run" action is comprised of a group of animation clips, named something like "StrafeLeft," "RunForward," "StrafeRight" and "RunBackward." It must look up these clip states by name and manually control all four blend weights in order to achieve a particular angled run animation. Needless to say, controlling animation parameters in such a fine-grained way can be tedious and can lead to difficult-

to-understand source code.

In a blend tree, a different set of problems arise. Thanks to the tree structure, the clips are grouped naturally into functional units. Custom tree nodes can encapsulate complex character motions. These are both helpful advantages over the flat weighted average approach. However, the control parameters are buried within the tree. Code that wishes to control the horizontal look-at direction of the head and eyes needs a priori knowledge of the structure of the blend tree so that it can find the appropriate nodes in the tree in order to control their parameters.

Different animation engines solve these problems in different ways. Here are some examples:

- *Node search.* Some engines provide a way for higher-level code to *find* blend nodes in the tree. For example, relevant nodes in the tree can be given special names, such as “HorizAim” for the node that controls horizontal weapon aiming. The control code can simply search the tree for a node of a particular name; if one is found, then we know what effect adjusting its blend weight will have.
- *Named variables.* Some engines allow names to be assigned to the individual control parameters. The controlling code can look up a control parameter by name in order to adjust its value.
- *Control structure.* In other engines, a simple data structure, such as an array of floating-point values or a C struct, contains all of the control parameters for the entire character. The nodes in the blend tree(s) are connected to particular control parameters, either by being hard-coded to use certain struct members or by looking up the parameters by name or index.

Of course, there are many other alternatives as well. Every animation engine tackles this problem in a slightly different way, but the net effect is always roughly the same.

## 12.11 Constraints

We’ve seen how action state machines can be used to specify complex blend trees and how a transition matrix can be used to control how transitions between states should work. Another important aspect of character animation control is to constrain the movement of the characters and/or objects in the scene in various ways. For example, we might want to constrain a weapon so that it always appears to be in the hand of the character who is carrying it.

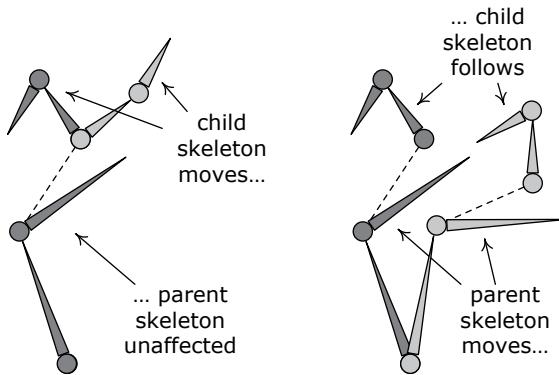


Figure 12.59. An attachment, showing how movement of the parent automatically produces movement of the child but not vice versa.

We might wish to constrain two characters so that they line up properly when shaking hands. A character's feet are often constrained so that they line up with the floor, and its hands might be constrained to line up with the rungs on a ladder or the steering wheel of a vehicle. In this section, we'll take a brief look at how these constraints are handled in a typical animation system.

### 12.II.1 Attachments

Virtually all modern game engines permit objects to be attached to one another. At its simplest, object-to-object attachment involves constraining the position and/or orientation of a particular joint  $J_A$  within the skeleton of object A so that it coincides with a joint  $J_B$  in the skeleton of object B. An attachment is usually a parent-child relationship. When the parent's skeleton moves, the child object is adjusted to satisfy the constraint. However, when the child moves, the parent's skeleton is usually not affected. This is illustrated in Figure 12.59.

Sometimes it can be convenient to introduce an *offset* between the parent joint and the child joint. For example, when placing a gun into a character's hand, we could constrain the "Grip" joint of the gun so that it coincides with the "RightWrist" joint of the character. However, this might not produce the correct alignment of the gun with the hand. One solution to this problem is to introduce a special joint into one of the two skeletons. For example, we could add a "RightGun" joint to the character's skeleton, make it a child of the "RightWrist" joint, and position it so that when the "Grip" joint of the gun is constrained to it, the gun looks like it is being held naturally by the character. The problem with this approach, however, is that it increases the

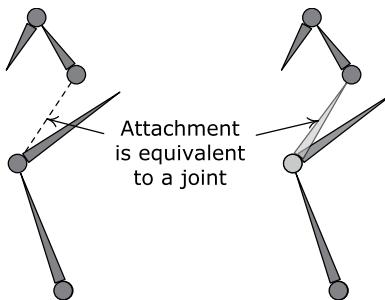


Figure 12.60. An attach point acts like an extra joint between the parent and the child.

number of joints in the skeleton. Each joint has a processing cost associated with animation blending and matrix palette calculation and a memory cost for storing its animation keys. So adding new joints is often not a viable option.

We know that an additional joint added for attachment purposes will not contribute to the pose of the character—it merely introduces an additional transform between the parent and child joint in an attachment. What we really want, then, is a way to mark certain joints so that they can be ignored by the animation blending pipeline but can still be used for attachment purposes. Such special joints are sometimes called *attach points*. They are illustrated in Figure 12.60.

Attach points might be modeled in Maya just like regular joints or locators, although many game engines define attach points in a more convenient manner. For example, they might be specified as part of the action state machine text file or via a custom GUI within the animation authoring tool. This allows the animators to focus only on the joints that affect the look of the character, while the power to control attachments is put conveniently into the hands of the people who need it—the game designers and the engineers.

### 12.11.2 Interobject Registration

The interactions between game characters and their environments is growing ever more complex and nuanced with each new title. Hence, it is important to have a system that allows characters and objects to be aligned with one another when animating. Such a system can be used for in-game cinematics and interactive gameplay elements alike.

Imagine that an animator, working in Maya or some other animation tool, sets up a scene involving two characters and a door object. The two characters shake hands, and then one of them opens the door and they both walk through it. The animator can ensure that all three actors in the scene line up perfectly.

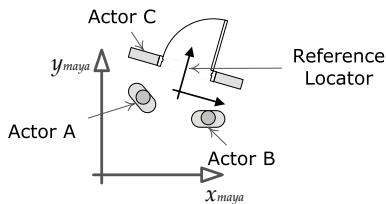


Figure 12.61. Original Maya scene containing three actors and a reference locator.

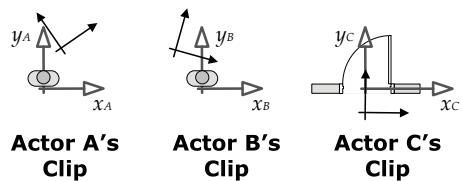


Figure 12.62. The reference locator is encoded in each actor's animation file.

However, when the animations are exported, they become three separate clips, to be played on three separate objects in the game world. The two characters might have been under AI or player control prior to the start of this animated sequence. How, then, can we ensure that the three objects line up correctly with one another when the three clips are played back in-game?

#### 12.II.2.1 Reference Locators

One good solution is to introduce a common reference point into all three animation clips. In Maya, the animator can drop a *locator* (which is just a 3D transform, much like a skeletal joint) into the scene, placing it anywhere that seems convenient. Its location and orientation are actually irrelevant, as we'll see. The locator is tagged in some way to tell the animation export tools that it is to be treated specially.

When the three animation clips are exported, the tools store the position and orientation of the reference locator, expressed in coordinates that are relative to the local object space of each actor, into all three clip's data files. Later, when the three clips are played back in-game, the animation engine can look up the relative position and orientation of the reference locator in all three clips. It can then transform the origins of the three objects in such a way as to make all three reference locators coincide in world space. The reference locator acts much like an *attach point* (Section 12.11.1) and, in fact, could be implemented as one. The net effect—all three actors now line up with one another, exactly as they had been aligned in the original Maya scene.

Figure 12.61 illustrates how the door and the two characters from the above example might be set up in a Maya scene. As shown in Figure 12.62, the reference locator appears in each exported animation clip (expressed in that actor's local space). In-game, these local-space reference locators are aligned to a fixed world-space locator in order to realign the actors, as shown in Figure 12.63.

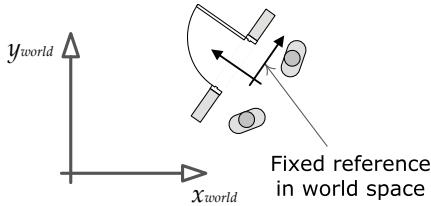


Figure 12.63. At runtime, the local-space reference transforms are aligned to a world-space reference locator, causing the actors to line up properly.

### 12.11.2.2 Finding the World-Space Reference Location

We've glossed over one important detail here—who decides what the world-space position and orientation of the reference locator should be? Each animation clip provides the reference locator's transform in the coordinate space of *its actor*. But we need some way to define where that reference locator should be in world space.

In our example with the door and the two characters shaking hands, one of the actors is fixed in the world (the door). So one viable solution is to ask the door for the location of the reference locator and then align the two characters to it. The commands to accomplish this might look similar to the following pseudocode.

```
void playShakingHandsDoorSequence (
    Actor& door,
    Actor& characterA,
    Actor& characterB)
{
    // Find the world-space transform of the reference
    // locator as specified in the door's animation.
    Transform refLoc = getReferenceLocatorWs(door,
        "shake-hands-door");

    // Play the door's animation in-place. (It's
    // already in the correct place.)
    playAnimation("shake-hands-door", door);

    // Play the two characters' animations relative to
    // the world-space reference locator obtained from
    // the door.
    playAnimationRelativeToReference(
        "shake-hands-character-a", characterA, refLoc);
    playAnimationRelativeToReference(
        "shake-hands-character-b", characterB, refLoc);
}
```

Another option is to define the world-space transform of the reference locator independently of the three actors in the scene. We could place the reference locator into the world using our world-building tool, for example (see Section 15.3). In this case, the pseudocode above should be changed to look something like this:

```
void playShakingHandsDoorSequence (
    Actor& door,
    Actor& characterA,
    Actor& characterB,
    Actor& refLocatorActor)
{
    // Find the world-space transform of the reference
    // locator by simply querying the transform of an
    // independent actor (presumably placed into the
    // world manually).
    Transform refLoc = getActorTransformWs(
        refLocatorActor);

    // Play all animations relative to the world-space
    // reference locator obtained above.
    playAnimationRelativeToReference ("shake-hands-door",
        door, refLoc);
    playAnimationRelativeToReference (
        "shake-hands-character-a", characterA, refLoc);
    playAnimationRelativeToReference (
        "shake-hands-character-b", characterB, refLoc);
}
```

### 12.II.3 Grabbing and Hand IK

Even after using an attachment to connect two objects, we sometimes find that the alignment does not look exactly right in-game. For example, a character might be holding a rifle in her right hand, with her left hand supporting the stock. As the character aims the weapon in various directions, we may notice that the left hand no longer aligns properly with the stock at certain aim angles. This kind of joint misalignment is caused by LERP blending. Even if the joints in question are aligned perfectly in clip A and in clip B, LERP blending does not guarantee that those joints will be in alignment when A and B are blended together.

One solution to this problem is to use *inverse kinematics* (IK) to correct the position of the left hand. The basic approach is to determine the desired target position for the joint in question. IK is then applied to a short chain of joints (usually two, three or four joints), starting with the joint in question and

progressing up the hierarchy to its parent, grandparent and so on. The joint whose position we are trying to correct is known as the *end effector*. The IK solver adjusts the orientations of the end effector's parent joint(s) in order to get the end effector as close as possible to the target.

The API for an IK system usually takes the form of a request to enable or disable IK on a particular chain of joints, plus a specification of the desired target point. The actual IK calculation is usually done internally by the low-level animation pipeline. This allows it to do the calculation at the proper time—namely, after intermediate local and global skeletal poses have been calculated but before the final matrix palette calculation.

Some animation engines allow IK chains to be defined a priori. For example, we might define one IK chain for the left arm, one for the right arm and two for the two legs. Let's assume for the purposes of this example that a particular IK chain is identified by the name of its end-effector joint. (Other engines might use an index or handle or some other unique identifier, but the concept remains the same.) The function to enable an IK calculation might look something like this:

```
void enableIkChain(Actor& actor,
                    const char* endEffectorJointName,
                    const Vector3& targetLocationWs);
```

and the function to disable an IK chain might look like this:

```
void disableIkChain(Actor& actor,
                     const char* endEffectorJointName);
```

IK is usually enabled and disabled relatively infrequently, but the world-space target location must be kept up-to-date every frame (if the target is moving). Therefore, the low-level animation pipeline always provides some mechanism for updating an active IK target point. For example, the pipeline might allow us to call `enableIkChain()` multiple times. The first time it is called, the IK chain is enabled, and its target point is set. All subsequent calls simply update the target point. Another way to keep IK targets up-to-date is to link them to dynamic objects in the game. For example, an IK target might be specified as a handle to a rigid game object, or a joint within an animated object.

IK is well-suited to making minor corrections to joint alignment when the joint is already reasonably close to its target. It does not work nearly as well when the error between a joint's desired location and its actual location is large. Note also that most IK algorithms solve only for the *position* of a joint. You may

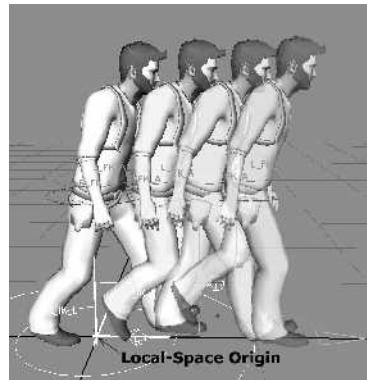


Figure 12.64. In the animation authoring package, the character moves forward in space, and its feet appear grounded. Image courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc. (UNCHARTED: Drake's Fortune © 2007/® SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog.)

need to write additional code to ensure that the *orientation* of the end effector aligns properly with its target as well. IK is not a cure-all, and it may have significant performance costs. So always use it judiciously.

#### 12.II.4 Motion Extraction and Foot IK

In games, we usually want the locomotion animations of our characters to look realistic and “grounded.” One of the biggest factors contributing to the realism of a locomotion animation is whether or not the feet slide around on the ground. *Foot sliding* can be overcome in a number of ways, the most common of which are *motion extraction* and *foot IK*.

##### 12.II.4.1 Motion Extraction

Let’s imagine how we’d animate a character walking forward in a straight line. In Maya (or his or her animation package of choice), the animator makes the character take one complete step forward, first with the left foot and then with the right foot. The resulting animation clip is known as a *locomotion cycle*, because it is intended to be looped indefinitely, for as long as the character is walking forward in-game. The animator takes care to ensure that the feet of the character appear grounded and don’t slide as it moves. The character moves from its initial location on frame 0 to a new location at the end of the cycle. This is shown in Figure 12.64.

Notice that the local-space origin of the character remains fixed during the entire walk cycle. In effect, the character is “leaving his origin behind him” as he takes his step forward. Now imagine playing this animation as a loop. We



Figure 12.65. Walk cycle after zeroing out the root joint's forward motion. Image courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc. (UNCHARTED: Drake's Fortune © 2007® SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog.)

would see the character take one complete step forward, and then pop back to where he was on the first frame of the animation. Clearly this won't work in-game.

To make this work, we need to remove the forward motion of the character, so that his local-space origin remains roughly under the center of mass of the character at all times. We could do this by zeroing out the forward translation of the root joint of the character's skeleton. The resulting animation clip would make the character look like he's "moonwalking," as shown in Figure 12.65.

In order to get the feet to appear to "stick" to the ground the way they did in the original Maya scene, we need the character to move forward by just the right amount each frame. We could look at the distance the character moved, divide by the amount of time it took for him to get there, and hence find his average movement speed. But a character's forward speed is not constant when walking. This is especially evident when a character is limping (quick forward motion on the injured leg, followed by slower motion on the "good" leg), but it is true for all natural-looking walk cycles.

Therefore, before we zero out the forward motion of the root joint, we first save the animation data in a special "extracted motion" channel. This data can be used in-game to move the local-space origin of the character forward by the exact amount that the root joint had moved in Maya each frame. The net result is that the character will walk forward exactly as he was authored, but now his local-space origin comes along for the ride, allowing the animation to loop properly. This is shown in Figure 12.66.

If the character moves forward by 4 feet in the animation and the animation

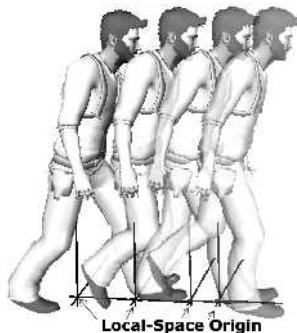


Figure I2.66. Walk cycle in-game, with extracted root motion data applied to the local-space origin of the character. Image courtesy of Naughty Dog, Inc. (UNCHARTED: Drake's Fortune © 2007/® SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog.)

takes one second to complete, then we know that the character is moving at an average speed of 4 feet/second. To make the character walk at a different speed, we can simply scale the playback rate of the walk cycle animation. For example, to make the character walk at 2 feet/second, we can simply play the animation at half speed ( $R = 0.5$ ).

#### I2.II.4.2 Foot IK

Motion extraction does a good job of making a character's feet appear grounded when it is moving in a straight line (or, more correctly, when it moves in a path that exactly matches the path animated by the animator). However, a real game character must be turned and moved in ways that don't coincide with the original hand-animated path of motion (e.g., when moving over uneven terrain). This results in additional foot sliding.

One solution to this problem is to use IK to correct for any sliding in the feet. The basic idea is to analyze the animations to determine during which periods of time each foot is fully in contact with the ground. At the moment a foot contacts the ground, we note its world-space location. For all subsequent frames while that foot remains on the ground, we use IK to adjust the pose of the leg so that the foot remains fixed to the proper location. This technique sounds easy enough, but getting it to look and feel right can be very challenging. It requires a lot of iteration and fine-tuning. And some natural human motions—like leading into a turn by increasing your stride—cannot be produced by IK alone.

In addition, there is a big trade-off between the *look* of the animations and the *feel* of the character, particularly for a human-controlled character. It's generally more important for the player character control system to feel responsive

and fun than it is for the character's animations to look perfect. The upshot is this: Do not take the task of adding foot IK or motion extraction to your game lightly. Budget time for a lot of trial and error, and be prepared to make trade-offs to ensure that your player character not only looks good but *feels* good as well.

### 12.11.5 Other Kinds of Constraints

There are plenty of other possible kinds of constraint systems that can be added to a game animation engine. Some examples include:

- *Look-at*. This is the ability for characters to look at points of interest in the environment. A character might look at a point with only his or her eyes, with eyes and head, or with eyes, head and a twist of the entire upper body. Look-at constraints are sometimes implemented using IK or procedural joint offsets, although a more natural look can often be achieved via additive blending.
- *Cover registration*. This is the ability for a character to align perfectly with an object that is serving as cover. This is often implemented via the reference locator technique described above.
- *Cover entry and departure*. If a character can take cover, animation blending and custom entry and departure animations must usually be used to get the character into and out of cover.
- *Traversal aids*. The ability for a character to navigate over, under, around or through obstacles in the environment can add a lot of life to a game. This is often done by providing custom animations and using a reference locator to ensure proper registration with the obstacle being overcome.

# 13

## Collision and Rigid Body Dynamics

In the real world, solid objects are inherently, well...solid. They generally avoid doing impossible things, like passing through one another, all by themselves. But in a virtual game world, objects don't do anything unless we tell them to, and game programmers must make an explicit effort to ensure that objects do not pass through one another. This is the role of one of the central components of any game engine—the *collision detection system*.

A game engine's collision system is often closely integrated with a *physics engine*. Of course, the field of physics is vast, and what most of today's game engines call "physics" is more accurately described as a *rigid body dynamics* simulation. A *rigid body* is an idealized, infinitely hard, non-deformable solid object. The term *dynamics* refers to the process of determining how these rigid bodies *move* and *interact* over time under the influence of *forces*. A rigid body dynamics simulation allows motion to be imparted to objects in the game in a highly interactive and naturally chaotic manner—an effect that is much more difficult to achieve when using canned animation clips to move things about.

A dynamics simulation makes heavy use of the collision detection system in order to properly simulate various physical behaviors of the objects in the simulation, including bouncing off one another, sliding under friction, rolling and coming to rest. Of course, a collision detection system can be used stand-alone, without a dynamics simulation—many games do not have a "physics"

system at all. But all games that involve objects moving about in two- or three-dimensional space have some form of collision detection.

In this chapter, we'll investigate the architecture of both a typical collision detection system and a typical physics (rigid body dynamics) system. As we investigate the components of these two closely interrelated systems, we'll take a look at the mathematics and the theory that underlie them.

## 13.1 Do You Want Physics in Your Game?

Nowadays, most game engines have some kind of physical simulation capabilities. Some physical effects, like rag doll deaths, are simply expected by gamers. Other effects, like ropes, cloth, hair or complex physically driven machinery can add that *je ne sais quoi* that sets a game apart from its competitors. In recent years, some game studios have started experimenting with advanced physical simulations, including approximate real-time fluid mechanics effects and simulations of deformable bodies. But adding physics to a game is not without costs, and before we commit ourselves to implementing an exhaustive list of physics-driven features in our game, we should (at the very least) understand the trade-offs involved.

### 13.1.1 Things You Can Do with a Physics System

Here are just a few of the things you can do or have with a game physics system.

- Detect collisions between dynamic objects and static world geometry.
- Simulate free rigid bodies under the influence of gravity and other forces.
- Spring-mass systems.
- Destructible buildings and structures.
- Ray and shape casts (to determine line of sight, bullet impacts, etc.).
- Trigger volumes (determine when objects enter, leave or are inside pre-defined regions in the game world).
- Complex machines (cranes, moving platform puzzles and so on).
- Traps (such as an avalanche of boulders).
- Drivable vehicles with realistic suspensions.
- Rag doll character deaths.
- Powered rag doll: a realistic blend between traditional animation and rag doll physics.

- Dangling props (canteens, necklaces, swords), semi-realistic hair, clothing movements.
- Cloth simulations.
- Water surface simulations and buoyancy.
- Audio propagation.

And the list goes on.

We should note here that in addition to running a physics simulation at runtime in our game, we can also run a simulation as part of an offline pre-processing step in order to generate an animation clip. A number of physics plug-ins are available for animation tools like Maya. This is also the approach taken by the *Endorphin*<sup>1</sup> package by NaturalMotion, Inc. (<http://www.naturalmotion.com/endorphin.htm>). In this chapter, we'll restrict our discussion to runtime rigid body dynamics simulations, but offline tools are a powerful option, of which we should always remain aware as we plan our game projects.

### 13.1.2 Is Physics Fun?

The presence of a rigid body dynamics system in a game does not necessarily make the game fun. More often than not, the inherently chaotic behavior of a physics sim can actually detract from the gameplay experience rather than enhancing it. The fun derived from physics depends on many factors, including the quality of the simulation itself, the care with which it has been integrated with other engine systems, the selection of physics-driven gameplay elements versus elements that are controlled in a more direct manner, how the physical elements interact with the goals of the player and the abilities of the player character, and the genre of game being made.

Let's take a look at a few broad game genres and how a rigid body dynamics system might fit into each one.

#### 13.1.2.1 Simulations (Sims)

The primary goal of a sim is to accurately reproduce a real-life experience. Examples include the *Flight Simulator*, *Gran Turismo* and *NASCAR Racing* series of games. Clearly, the realism provided by a rigid body dynamics system fits extremely well into these kinds of games.

---

<sup>1</sup>NaturalMotion also offers a runtime version of Endorphin called *Euphoria*.

### 13.1.2.2 Physics Puzzle Games

The whole idea of a physics puzzle is to let the user play around with dynamically simulated toys. So obviously this kind of game relies almost entirely on physics for its core mechanic. Examples of this genre include *Bridge Builder*, *The Incredible Machine*, the online game *Fantastic Contraption*, and *Crayon Physics* for the iPhone.

### 13.1.2.3 Sandbox Games

In a sandbox game, there may be no objectives at all, or there may be a large number of optional objectives. The player's primary objective is usually to "mess around" and explore what the objects in the game world can be made to do. Examples of sandbox games include *Besiege*, *Spore*, the *LittleBigPlanet* series, and of course *Minecraft*.

Sandbox games can put a realistic dynamics simulation to good use, especially if much of the fun is derived from playing with realistic (or semi-realistic) interactions between objects in the game world. So in these contexts, physics can be fun in and of itself. However, many games trade realism for an increased fun factor (e.g., larger-than-life explosions, gravity that is stronger or weaker than normal, etc.). So the dynamics simulation may need to be tweaked in various ways to achieve the right "feel."

### 13.1.2.4 Goal-Based and Story-Driven Games

A goal-based game has rules and specific objectives that the player must accomplish in order to progress; in a story-driven game, telling a story is of paramount importance. Integrating a physics system into these kinds of games can be tricky. We generally give away *control* in exchange for a *realistic simulation*, and this loss of control can inhibit the player's ability to accomplish goals or the game's ability to tell the story.

For example, in a character-based platformer game, we want the player character to move in ways that are fun and easy to control but not necessarily physically realistic. In a war game, we might want a bridge to explode in a realistic way, but we also may want to ensure that the debris doesn't end up blocking the player's only path forward. In these kinds of games, physics is often not necessarily fun, and in fact it can often get in the way of fun when the player's goals are at odds with the physically simulated behaviors of the objects in the game world. Therefore, developers must be careful to apply physics judiciously and take steps to control the behavior of the simulation in various ways to ensure it doesn't get in the way of gameplay. It's usually a good idea to provide the player with a way out of difficult situations, too.

A good example of this can be found in the *Halo* series of games, where the player can press X to flip over a vehicle that has landed upside-down.

### 13.1.3 Impact of Physics on a Game

Adding a physics simulation to a game can have all sorts of impacts on the project and the gameplay. Here are a few examples across various game development disciplines.

#### 13.1.3.1 Design Impacts

- *Predictability.* The inherent chaos and variability that sets a physically simulated behavior apart from an animated one is also a source of unpredictability. If something absolutely must happen a certain way every time, it's usually better to animate it than to try to coerce your dynamics simulation into producing the motion reliably.
- *Tuning and control.* The laws of physics (when modeled accurately) are fixed. In a game, we can tweak the value of gravity or the coefficient of restitution of a rigid body, which gives back some degree of control. However, the results of tweaking physics parameters are often indirect and difficult to visualize. It's much harder to tweak a force in order to get a character to move in the desired direction than it is to tweak an animation of a character walking.
- *Emergent behaviors.* Sometimes physics introduces unexpected features into a game—for example, the rocket-launcher jump trick in *Team Fortress Classic*, the high-flying exploding Warthog in *Halo* and the flying “surfboards” in *PsyOps*.

In general, the game design should usually drive the physics requirements of a game engine—not the other way around.

#### 13.1.3.2 Engineering Impacts

- *Tools pipeline.* A good collision/physics pipeline takes time to build and maintain.
- *User interface.* How does the player control the physics objects in the world? Does he or she shoot them? Walk into them? Pick them up? Does he or she hold them using virtual arms, as in *Trespasser*? Or using a “gravity gun,” as in *Half-Life 2*?
- *Collision detection.* Collision models intended for use within a dynamics simulation may need to be more detailed and more carefully constructed than their non-physics-driven counterparts.

- *AI.* Pathing may not be predictable in the presence of physically simulated objects. The engine may need to handle dynamic cover points that can move or blow up. Can the AI use the physics to its advantage?
- *Misbehaved objects.* Animation-driven objects can clip slightly through one another with few or no ill effects. But when driven by a dynamics simulation, objects may bounce off one another in unexpected ways or jitter badly. Collision filtering may need to be applied to permit objects to interpenetrate slightly. Mechanisms may need to be put in place to ensure that objects settle and go to sleep properly.
- *Rag doll physics.* Rag dolls require a lot of fine-tuning and often suffer from instability in the simulation. An animation may drive parts of a character’s body into penetration with other collision volumes—when the character turns into a rag doll, these interpenetrations can cause enormous instability. Steps must be taken to avoid this.
- *Graphics.* Physics-driven motion can have an effect on renderable objects’ bounding volumes (where they would otherwise be static or more predictable). The presence of destructible buildings and objects can invalidate some kinds of precomputed lighting and shadow methods.
- *Networking and multiplayer.* Physics effects that do not affect gameplay may be simulated exclusively (and independently) on each client machine. However, physics that has an effect on gameplay (such as the trajectory that a grenade follows) must be simulated on the server and accurately replicated on all clients.
- *Record and playback.* The ability to record gameplay and play it back at a later time is very useful as a debugging/testing aid, and it can also serve as a fun game feature. This feature is difficult to implement because it requires every engine system to behave in a deterministic manner, so that everything will play out exactly in the same way during playback as it did when the recording was made. If your physics simulation isn’t deterministic, this can become a major fly in the ointment.

#### 13.1.3.3 Art Impacts

- *Additional tool and workflow complexity.* The need to rig up objects with mass, friction, constraints and other attributes for consumption by the dynamics simulation makes the art department’s job more difficult as well.
- *More complex content.* We may need multiple visually identical versions of an object with different collision and dynamics configurations for dif-

ferent purposes—for example, a pristine version and a destructible version.

- *Loss of control.* The unpredictability of physics-driven objects can make it difficult to control the artistic composition of a scene.

#### 13.1.3.4 Other Impacts

- *Interdisciplinary impacts.* The introduction of a dynamics simulation into your game requires close cooperation between engineering, art, audio and design.
- *Production impacts.* Physics can add to a project's development costs, technical and organizational complexity and risk.

Having explored the impacts, most teams today do choose to integrate a rigid body dynamics system into their games. With some careful planning and wise choices along the way, adding physics to your game can be rewarding and fruitful. And as we'll see below, third-party middleware is making physics more accessible than ever.

## 13.2 Collision/Physics Middleware

Writing a collision system and rigid body dynamics simulation is challenging and time-consuming work. The collision/physics system of a game engine can account for a significant percentage of the source code in a typical game engine. That's a lot of code to write and maintain!

Thankfully, a number of robust, high-quality collision/physics engines are now available, either as commercial products or in open source form. Some of these are listed below. For a discussion of the pros and cons of various physics SDKs, check out the online game development forums (e.g., [http://www.gamedev.net/community/forums/topic.asp?topic\\_id=463024](http://www.gamedev.net/community/forums/topic.asp?topic_id=463024)).

### 13.2.1 ODE

ODE stands for “Open Dynamics Engine” (<http://www.ode.org>). As its name implies, ODE is an open source collision and rigid body dynamics SDK. Its feature set is similar to a commercial product like Havok. Its benefits include being free (a big plus for small game studios and school projects!) and the availability of full source code (which makes debugging much easier and opens up the possibility of modifying the physics engine to meet the specific needs of a particular game).

### 13.2.2 Bullet

Bullet is an open source collision detection and physics library used by both the game and film industries. Its collision engine is integrated with its dynamics simulation, but hooks are provided so that the collision system can be used stand-alone or integrated with other physics engines. It supports *continuous collision detection* (CCD)—also known as *time of impact* (TOI) collision detection—which, as we'll see below, can be extremely helpful when a simulation includes small, fast-moving objects. The Bullet SDK is available for download at <http://code.google.com/p/bullet/>, and the Bullet wiki is located at [http://www.bulletphysics.com/mediawiki-1.5.8/index.php?title=Main\\_Page](http://www.bulletphysics.com/mediawiki-1.5.8/index.php?title=Main_Page).

### 13.2.3 TrueAxis

TrueAxis is another collision/physics SDK. It is free for non-commercial use. You can learn more about TrueAxis at <http://trueaxis.com>.

### 13.2.4 PhysX

PhysX started out as a library called Novodex, produced and distributed by Ageia as part of their strategy to market their dedicated physics coprocessor. It was bought by NVIDIA and retooled so that it can run using NVIDIA's GPUs as a coprocessor. (It can also run entirely on a CPU, without GPU support.) It is available at [http://www.nvidia.com/object/nvidia\\_physx.html](http://www.nvidia.com/object/nvidia_physx.html). Part of Ageia's and NVIDIA's marketing strategy has been to provide the CPU version of the SDK entirely for free, in order to drive the physics coprocessor market forward. Developers can also pay a fee to obtain full source code and the ability to customize the library as needed. PhysX is now combined with APEX, NVIDIA's scalable multiplatform dynamics framework. PhysX/APEX is available for Windows, Linux, Mac, Android, Xbox 360, PlayStation 3, Xbox One, PlayStation 4 and Wii.

### 13.2.5 Havok

Havok is the gold standard in commercial physics SDKs, providing one of the richest feature sets available and boasting excellent performance characteristics on all supported platforms. (It's also the most expensive solution.) Havok is comprised of a core collision/physics engine, plus a number of optional add-on products including a vehicle physics system, a system for modeling destructible environments and a fully featured animation SDK with direct integration into Havok's rag doll physics system. It is available on Xbox 360,

PlayStation 3, Xbox One, PlayStation 4, PlayStation Vita, Wii, Wii U, Windows 8, Android, Apple Mac and iOS. You can learn more about Havok at <http://www.havok.com>.

### 13.2.6 Physics Abstraction Layer (PAL)

The Physics Abstraction Layer (PAL) is an open source library that allows developers to work with more than one physics SDK on a single project. It provides hooks for PhysX (Novodex), Newton, ODE, OpenTissue, Tokamak, TrueAxis and a few other SDKs. You can read more about PAL at <http://www.adrianboeing.com/pal/index.html>.

### 13.2.7 Digital Molecular Matter (DMM)

Pixelux Entertainment S.A., located in Geneva, Switzerland, has produced a unique physics engine that uses finite element methods to simulate the dynamics of deformable bodies and breakable objects, called Digital Molecular Matter (DMM). The engine has both an offline and a runtime component. It was released in 2008 and can be seen in action in LucasArts' *Star Wars: The Force Unleashed*. A discussion of deformable body mechanics is beyond our scope here, but you can read more about DMM at <http://www.pixeluxentertainment.com>.

## 13.3 The Collision Detection System

The primary purpose of a game engine's collision detection system is to determine whether any of the objects in the game world have come into *contact*. To answer this question, each logical object is represented by one or more geometric *shapes*. These shapes are usually quite simple, such as spheres, boxes and capsules. However, more complex shapes can also be used. The collision system determines whether or not any of the shapes are *intersecting* (i.e., overlapping) at any given moment in time. So a collision detection system is essentially a glorified geometric intersection tester.

Of course, the collision system does more than answer yes/no questions about shape intersection. It also provides relevant information about the nature of each contact. Contact information can be used to prevent unrealistic visual anomalies on-screen, such as objects *interpenetrating* one another. This is generally accomplished by moving all interpenetrating objects apart prior to rendering the next frame. Collisions can provide *support* for an object—one or more contacts that together allow the object to come to rest, in equilibrium with gravity and/or any other forces acting on it. Collisions can also be used

for other purposes, such as to cause a missile to explode when it strikes its target or to give the player character a health boost when he passes through a floating health pack. A rigid body dynamics simulation is often the most demanding client of the collision system, using it to mimic physically realistic behaviors like bouncing, rolling, sliding and coming to rest. But, of course, even games that have no physics system can still make heavy use of a collision detection engine.

In this chapter, we'll go on a brief high-level tour of how collision detection engines work. For an in-depth treatment of this topic, a number of excellent books on real-time collision detection are available, including [14], [48] and [11].

### 13.3.1 Collidable Entities

If we want a particular logical object in our game to be capable of colliding with other objects, we need to provide it with a *collision representation*, describing the object's shape and its position and orientation in the game world. This is a distinct data structure, separate from the object's *gameplay representation* (the code and data that define its role and behavior in the game) and separate from its *visual representation* (which might be an instance of a triangle mesh, a subdivision surface, a particle effect or some other visual representation).

From the point of view of detecting intersections, we generally favor shapes that are geometrically and mathematically simple. For example, a rock might be modeled as a sphere for collision purposes; the hood of a car might be represented by a rectangular box; a human body might be approximated by a collection of interconnected *capsules* (pill-shaped volumes). Ideally, we should resort to a more complex shape only when a simpler representation proves inadequate to achieve the desired behavior in the game. Figure 13.1 shows a few examples of using simple shapes to approximate object volumes for collision detection purposes.

Havok uses the term *collidable* to describe a distinct, rigid object that can take part in collision detection. It represents each collidable with an instance of the C++ class `hkpCollidable`. PhysX calls its rigid objects *actors* and represents them as instances of the class `NxActor`. In both of these libraries, a collidable entity contains two basic pieces of information—a *shape* and a *transform*. The shape describes the collidable's geometric form, and the transform describes the shape's position and orientation in the game world. Collidables need transforms for three reasons:

1. Technically speaking, a shape only describes the form of an object (i.e., whether it is a sphere, a box, a capsule or some other kind of volume).

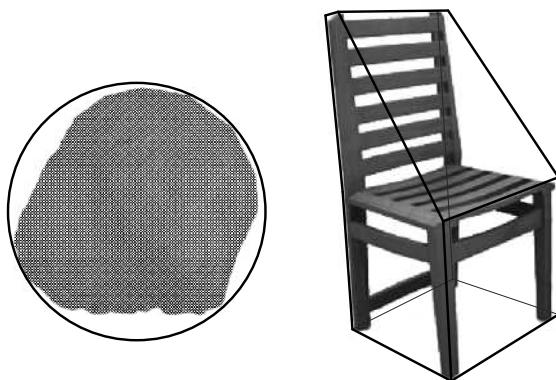


Figure 13.1. Simple geometric shapes are often used to approximate the collision volumes of the objects in a game.

It may also describe the object's size (e.g., the radius of a sphere or the dimensions of a box). But a shape is usually defined with its center at the origin and in some sort of canonical orientation relative to the coordinate axes. To be useful, a shape must therefore be transformed in order to position and orient it appropriately in world space.

2. Many of the objects in a game are dynamic. Moving an arbitrarily complex shape through space could be expensive if we had to move the *features* of the shape (vertices, planes, etc.) individually. But with a transform, any shape can be moved in space inexpensively, no matter how simple or complex the shape's features may be.
3. The information describing some of the more complex kinds of shapes can take up a nontrivial amount of memory. So, it can be beneficial to permit more than one collidable to share a single shape description. For example, in a racing game, the shape information for many of the cars might be identical. In that case, all of the car collidables in the game can share a single car shape.

Any particular object in the game may have no collidable at all (if it doesn't require collision detection services), a single collidable (if the object is a simple rigid body) or multiple collidables (each representing one rigid component of an articulated robot arm, for example).

### 13.3.2 The Collision/Physics World

A collision system typically keeps track of all of its collidable entities via a singleton data structure known as the *collision world*. The collision world is a complete representation of the game world designed explicitly for use by the collision detection system. Havok's collision world is an instance of the class `hkpWorld`. Likewise, the PhysX world is an instance of `NxScene`. ODE uses an instance of class `dSpace` to represent the collision world; it is actually the root of a hierarchy of geometric volumes representing all the collidable shapes in the game.

Maintaining all collision information in a private data structure has a number of advantages over attempting to store collision information with the game objects themselves. For one thing, the collision world need only contain collidables for those game objects that can potentially collide with one another. This eliminates the need for the collision system to iterate over any irrelevant data structures. This design also permits collision data to be organized in the most efficient manner possible. The collision system can take advantage of cache coherency to maximize performance, for example. The collision world is also an effective encapsulation mechanism, which is generally a plus from the perspectives of understandability, maintainability, testability and the potential for software reuse.

#### 13.3.2.1 The Physics World

If a game has a rigid body dynamics system, it is usually tightly integrated with the collision system. It typically shares its “world” data structure with the collision system, and each rigid body in the simulation is usually associated with a single collidable in the collision system. This design is commonplace among physics engines because of the frequent and detailed collision queries required by the physics system. It's typical for the physics system to actually *drive* the operation of the collision system, instructing it to run collision tests at least once, and sometimes multiple times, per simulation time step. For this reason, the collision world is often called the *collision/physics world* or sometimes just the *physics world*.

Each dynamic rigid body in the physics simulation is usually associated with a single collidable object in the collision system (although not all collidables need be dynamic rigid bodies). For example, in Havok, a rigid body is represented by an instance of the class `hkpRigidBody`, and each rigid body has a pointer to exactly one `hkpCollidable`. In PhysX, the concepts of collidable and rigid body are comingled—the `NxActor` class serves both purposes (although the physical properties of the rigid body are stored separately, in

an instance of `NxBodyDesc`). In both SDKs, it is possible to tell a rigid body that its location and orientation are to be fixed in space, meaning that it will be omitted from the dynamics simulation and will serve as a collidable only.

Despite this tight integration, most physics SDKs do make at least some attempt to separate the collision library from the rigid body dynamics simulation. This permits the collision system to be used as a stand-alone library (which is important for games that don't need physics but do need to detect collisions). It also means that a game studio could *theoretically* replace a physics SDK's collision system entirely, without having to rewrite the dynamics simulation. (Practically speaking, this may be a bit harder than it sounds!)

### 13.3.3 Shape Concepts

A rich body of mathematical theory underlies the everyday concept of *shape* (see <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shape>). For our purposes, we can think of a shape simply as a region of space described by a boundary, with a definite *inside* and *outside*. In two dimensions, a shape has area, and its boundary is defined either by a curved line or by three or more straight edges (in which case it's a *polygon*). In three dimensions, a shape has volume, and its boundary is either a curved surface or is composed of polygons (in which case it is called a *polyhedron*).

It's important to note that some kinds of game objects, like terrain, rivers or thin walls, might be best represented by *surfaces*. In three-space, a surface is a two-dimensional geometric entity with a *front* and a *back* but no inside or outside. Examples include planes, triangles, subdivision surfaces and surfaces constructed from a group of connected triangles or other polygons. Most collision SDKs provide support for surface primitives and extend the term *shape* to encompass both closed volumes and open surfaces.

It's commonplace for collision libraries to allow surfaces to be given volume via an optional extrusion parameter. Such a parameter specifies how "thick" a surface should be. Doing this helps reduce the occurrence of missed collisions between small, fast-moving objects and infinitesimally thin surfaces (the so-called "bullet through paper" problem—see Section 13.3.5.7).

#### 13.3.3.1 Intersection

We all have an intuitive notion of what an *intersection* is. Technically speaking, the term comes from set theory ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Intersection\\_\(set\\_theory\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Intersection_(set_theory))). The intersection of two sets is comprised of the subset of members that are common to both sets. In geometrical terms, the intersection between two shapes is just the (infinitely large!) set of all points that lie inside both shapes.

### 13.3.3.2 Contact

In games, we're not usually interested in finding the intersection in the strictest sense, as a set of points. Instead, we want to know simply whether or not two objects are intersecting. In the event of a collision, the collision system will usually provide additional information about the nature of the contact. This information allows us to separate the objects in a physically plausible and efficient way, for example.

Collision systems usually package contact information into a convenient data structure that can be instanced for each contact detected. For example, Havok returns contacts as instances of the class `hkContactPoint`. Contact information often includes a *separating vector*—a vector along which we can slide the objects in order to efficiently move them out of collision. It also typically contains information about which two collidables were in contact, including which individual shapes were intersecting and possibly even which individual features of those shapes were in contact. The system may also return additional information, such as the velocity of the bodies projected onto the separating normal.

### 13.3.3.3 Convexity

One of the most important concepts in the field of collision detection is the distinction between *convex* and *non-convex* (i.e., *concave*) shapes. Technically, a convex shape is defined as one for which no ray originating inside the shape will pass through its surface more than once. A simple way to determine if a shape is convex is to imagine shrink-wrapping it with plastic film—if it's convex, no air pockets will be left under the film. So in two dimensions, circles, rectangles and triangles are all convex, but Pac Man is not. The concept extends equally well to three dimensions.

The property of *convexity* is important because, as we'll see, it's generally simpler and less computationally intensive to detect intersections between convex shapes than concave ones. See <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convex> for more information about convex shapes.

### 13.3.4 Collision Primitives

Collision detection systems can usually work with a relatively limited set of shape types. Some collision systems refer to these shapes as *collision primitives* because they are the fundamental building blocks out of which more complex shapes can be constructed. In this section, we'll take a brief look at some of the most common types of collision primitives.

### 13.3.4.1 Spheres

The simplest three-dimensional volume is a sphere. And as you might expect, spheres are the most efficient kind of collision primitive. A sphere is represented by a center point and a radius. This information can be conveniently packed into a four-element floating-point vector—a format that works particularly well with SIMD math libraries.

### 13.3.4.2 Capsules

A capsule is a pill-shaped volume, composed of a cylinder and two hemispherical end caps. It can be thought of as a *swept sphere*—the shape that is traced out as a sphere moves from point A to point B. (There are, however, some important differences between a static capsule and a sphere that sweeps out a capsule-shaped volume over time, so the two are not identical.) Capsules are often represented by two points and a radius (Figure 13.2). Capsules are more efficient to intersect than cylinders or boxes, so they are often used to model objects that are roughly cylindrical, such as the limbs of a human body.

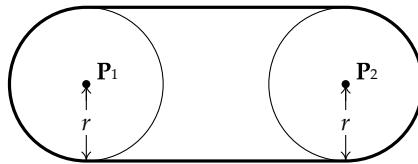


Figure 13.2. A capsule can be represented by two points and a radius.

### 13.3.4.3 Axis-Aligned Bounding Boxes

An axis-aligned bounding box (AABB) is a rectangular volume (technically known as a *cuboid*) whose faces are parallel to the axes of the coordinate system. Of course, a box that is axis-aligned in one coordinate system will not necessarily be axis-aligned in another. So we can only speak about an AABB in the context of the particular coordinate frame(s) with which it aligns.

An AABB can be conveniently defined by two points: one containing the minimum coordinates of the box along each of the three principal axes and the other containing its maximum coordinates. This is depicted in Figure 13.3.

The primary benefit of axis-aligned boxes is that they can be tested for interpenetration with other axis-aligned boxes in a highly efficient manner. The big limitation of using AABBs is that they must remain axis-aligned at all times if their computational advantages are to be maintained. This means that if an AABB is used to approximate the shape of an object in the game,

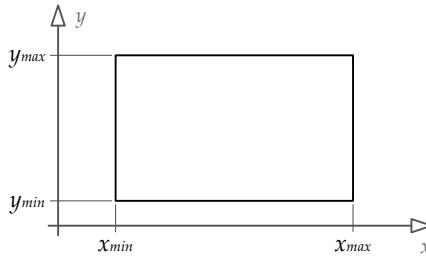


Figure 13.3. An axis-aligned box.

the AABB will have to be recalculated whenever that object rotates. Even if an object is roughly box-shaped, its AABB may degenerate into a very poor approximation to its shape when the object rotates off-axis. This is shown in Figure 13.4.

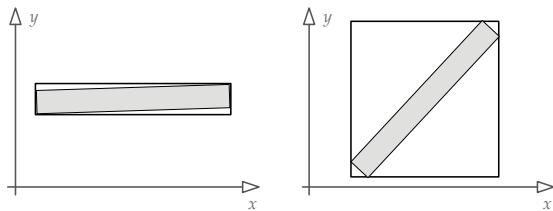


Figure 13.4. An AABB is only a good approximation to a box-shaped object when the object's principal axes are roughly aligned with the coordinate system's axes.

#### 13.3.4.4 Oriented Bounding Boxes

If we permit an axis-aligned box to rotate relative to its coordinate system, we have what is known as an oriented bounding box (OBB). It is often represented by three half-dimensions (half-width, half-depth and half-height) and a transformation, which positions the center of the box and defines its orientation relative to the coordinate axes. Oriented boxes are a commonly used collision primitive because they do a better job at fitting arbitrarily oriented objects, yet their representation is still quite simple.

#### 13.3.4.5 Discrete Oriented Polytopes (DOP)

A discrete oriented polytope (DOP) is a more-general case of the AABB and OBB. It is a convex polytope that approximates the shape of an object. A DOP can be constructed by taking a number of planes at infinity and sliding them along their normal vectors until they come into contact with the object whose

shape is to be approximated. An AABB is a 6-DOP in which the plane normals are taken parallel to the coordinate axes. An OBB is also a 6-DOP in which the plane normals are parallel to the object's natural principal axes. A  $k$ -DOP is constructed from an arbitrary number of planes  $k$ . A common method of constructing a DOP is to start with an OBB for the object in question and then bevel the edges and/or corners at 45 degrees with additional planes in an attempt to yield a tighter fit. An example of a  $k$ -DOP is shown in Figure 13.5.

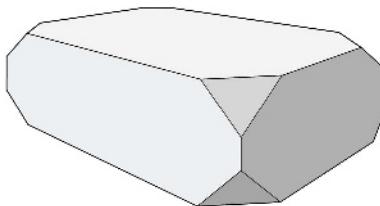


Figure 13.5. An OBB that has been beveled on all eight corners is known as a 14-DOP.

#### 13.3.4.6 Arbitrary Convex Volumes

Most collision engines permit arbitrary convex volume to be constructed by a 3D artist in a package like Maya. The artist builds the shape out of polygons (triangles or quads). An offline tool analyzes the triangles to ensure that they actually do form a convex polyhedron. If the shape passes the convexity test, its triangles are converted into a collection of planes (essentially a  $k$ -DOP), represented by  $k$  plane equations, or  $k$  points and  $k$  normal vectors. (If it is found to be non-convex, it can still be represented by a polygon soup—described in the next section.) This approach is depicted in Figure 13.6.

Convex volumes are more expensive to intersection-test than the simpler geometric primitives we've discussed thus far. However, as we'll see in Section

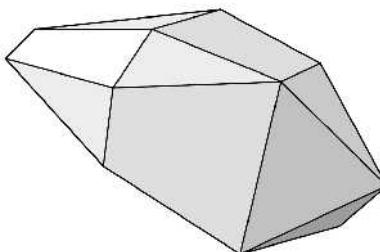


Figure 13.6. An arbitrary convex volume can be represented by a collection of intersecting planes.

13.3.5.5, certain highly efficient intersection-finding algorithms such as GJK are applicable to these shapes because they are convex.

#### 13.3.4.7 Poly Soup

Some collision systems also support totally arbitrary, non-convex shapes. These are usually constructed out of triangles or other simple polygons. For this reason, this type of shape is often called a *polygon soup*, or *poly soup* for short. Poly soups are often used to model complex static geometry, such as terrain and buildings (Figure 13.7).

As you might imagine, detecting collisions with a poly soup is the most expensive kind of collision test. In effect, the collision engine must test every individual triangle, and it must also properly handle spurious intersections with triangle edges that are shared between adjacent triangles. As a result, most games try to limit the use of poly soup shapes to objects that will not take part in the dynamics simulation.

##### *Does a Poly Soup Have an Inside?*

Unlike convex and simple shapes, a poly soup does not necessarily represent a volume—it can represent an open surface as well. Poly soup shapes often don't include enough information to allow the collision system to differentiate between a closed volume and an open surface. This can make it difficult to know in which direction to push an object that is interpenetrating a poly soup in order to bring the two objects out of collision.

Thankfully, this is by no means an intractable problem. Each triangle in

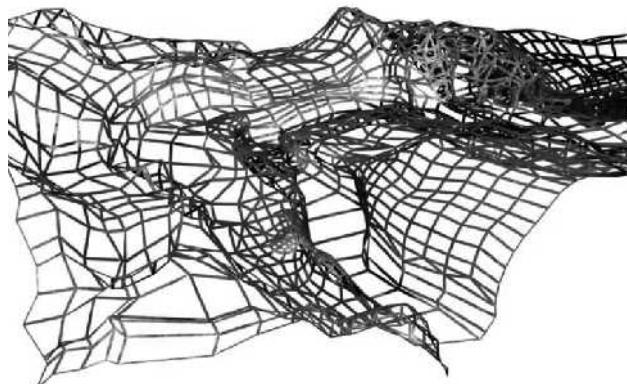


Figure 13.7. A poly soup is often used to model complex static surfaces such as terrain or buildings.

a poly soup has a front and a back, as defined by the winding order of its vertices. Therefore, it is possible to carefully construct a poly soup shape so that all of the polygons' vertex winding orders are consistent (i.e., adjacent triangles always "face" in the same direction). This gives the entire poly soup a notion of "front" and "back." If we also store information about whether a given poly soup shape is open or closed (presuming that this fact can be ascertained by offline tools), then for closed shapes, we can interpret "front" and "back" to mean "outside" and "inside" (or vice versa, depending on the conventions used when constructing the poly soup).

We can also "fake" an inside and outside for certain kinds of *open* poly soup shapes (i.e., surfaces). For example, if the terrain in our game is represented by an open poly soup, then we can decide arbitrarily that the front of the surface always points away from the Earth. This implies that "front" should always correspond to "outside." Practically speaking, to make this work, we would probably need to customize the collision engine in some way in order to make it aware of our particular choice of conventions.

#### 13.3.4.8 Compound Shapes

Some objects that cannot be adequately approximated by a single shape can be approximated well by a *collection* of shapes. For example, a chair might be modeled out of two boxes—one for the back of the chair and one enclosing the seat and all four legs. This is shown in Figure 13.8.

A compound shape can often be a more-efficient alternative to a poly soup for modeling non-convex objects; two or more convex volumes can often outperform a single poly soup shape. What's more, some collision systems can take advantage of the convex bounding volume of the compound shape as a whole when testing for collisions. In Havok, this is called *midphase* collision detection. As the example in Figure 13.9 shows, the collision system first tests the convex bounding volumes of the two compound shapes. If they do not intersect, the system needn't test the subshapes for collisions at all.

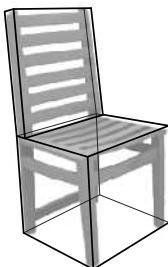


Figure 13.8. A chair can be modeled using a pair of interconnected box shapes.

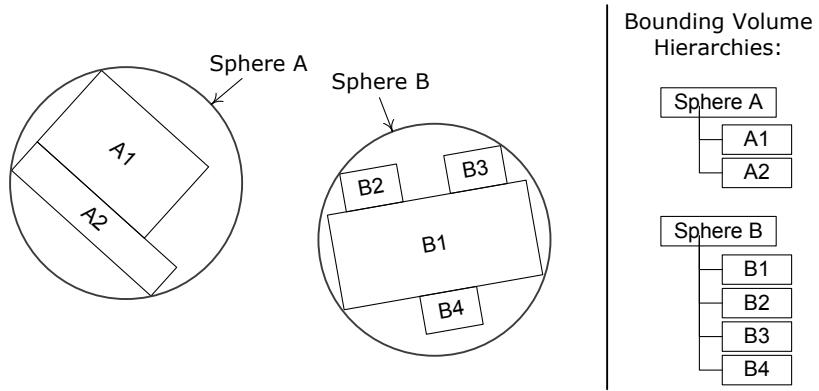


Figure 13.9. A collision system need only test the subshapes of a pair of compound shapes when their convex bounding volumes (in this case, Sphere A and Sphere B) are found to be intersecting.

### 13.3.5 Collision Testing and Analytical Geometry

A collision system makes use of *analytical geometry*—mathematical descriptions of three-dimensional volumes and surfaces—in order to detect intersections between shapes computationally. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Analytic\\_geometry](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Analytic_geometry) for more details on this profound and broad area of research. In this section, we’ll briefly introduce the concepts behind analytical geometry, show a few common examples and then discuss the generalized GJK intersection testing algorithm for arbitrary convex polyhedra.

#### 13.3.5.1 Point versus Sphere

We can determine whether a point  $\mathbf{p}$  lies within a sphere by simply forming the separation vector  $\mathbf{s}$  between the point and the sphere’s center  $\mathbf{c}$  and then checking its length. If it is greater than the radius of the sphere  $r$ , then the point lies outside the sphere; otherwise, it lies inside:

$$\mathbf{s} = \mathbf{c} - \mathbf{p}; \\ \text{if } |\mathbf{s}| \leq r, \text{ then } \mathbf{p} \text{ is inside.}$$

#### 13.3.5.2 Sphere versus Sphere

Determining if two spheres intersect is almost as simple as testing a point against a sphere. Again, we form a vector  $\mathbf{s}$  connecting the center points of the two spheres. We take its length and compare it with the sum of the radii of the two spheres. If the length of the separating vector is less than or equal to the sum of the radii, the spheres intersect; otherwise, they do not:

$$\mathbf{s} = \mathbf{c}_1 - \mathbf{c}_2; \\ \text{if } |\mathbf{s}| \leq (r_1 + r_2), \text{ then spheres intersect.} \quad (13.1)$$

To avoid the square root operation inherent in calculating the length of vector  $\mathbf{s}$ , we can simply square the entire equation. So Equation (13.1) becomes

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{s} &= \mathbf{c}_1 - \mathbf{c}_2; \\ |\mathbf{s}|^2 &= \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{s}; \\ \text{if } |\mathbf{s}|^2 &\leq (r_1 + r_2)^2, \text{ then spheres intersect.}\end{aligned}$$

### 13.3.5.3 The Separating Axis Theorem

Most collision detection systems make heavy use of a theorem known as the *separating axis theorem* ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Separating\\_axis\\_theorem](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Separating_axis_theorem)). It states that if an axis can be found along which the *projections* of two convex shapes do not overlap, then we can be certain that the two shapes do not intersect at all. If such an axis does not exist *and* the shapes are convex, then we know for certain that they do intersect. (If the shapes are concave, then they may not be interpenetrating despite the lack of a separating axis. This is one reason why we tend to favor convex shapes in collision detection.)

This theorem is easiest to visualize in two dimensions. Intuitively, it says that if a line can be found, such that object A is entirely on one side of the line and object B is entirely on the other side, then objects A and B do not overlap. Such a line is called a *separating line*, and it is always *perpendicular* to the separating axis. So once we've found a separating line, it's a lot easier to convince ourselves that the theory is in fact correct by looking at the projections of our shapes onto the axis that is perpendicular to the separating line.

The projection of a two-dimensional *convex* shape onto an axis acts like the shadow that the object would leave on a thin wire. It is always a line segment, lying on the axis, that represents the maximum extents of the object in the direction of the axis. We can also think of a projection as a minimum and maximum coordinate along the axis, which we can write as the fully closed interval  $[c_{\min}, c_{\max}]$ . As you can see in Figure 13.10, when a separating line exists between two shapes, their projections do not overlap along the separating axis. However, the projections may overlap along other, non-separating axes.

In three dimensions, the separating line becomes a separating plane, but the separating axis is still an axis (i.e., an infinite line). Again, the projection of a three-dimensional *convex* shape onto an axis is a line segment, which we can represent by the fully closed interval  $[c_{\min}, c_{\max}]$ .

Some types of shapes have properties that make the potential separating axes obvious. To detect intersections between two such shapes A and B, we can project the shapes onto each potential separating axis in turn and then check whether or not the two projection intervals,  $[c_{\min}^A, c_{\max}^A]$  and  $[c_{\min}^B, c_{\max}^B]$ ,

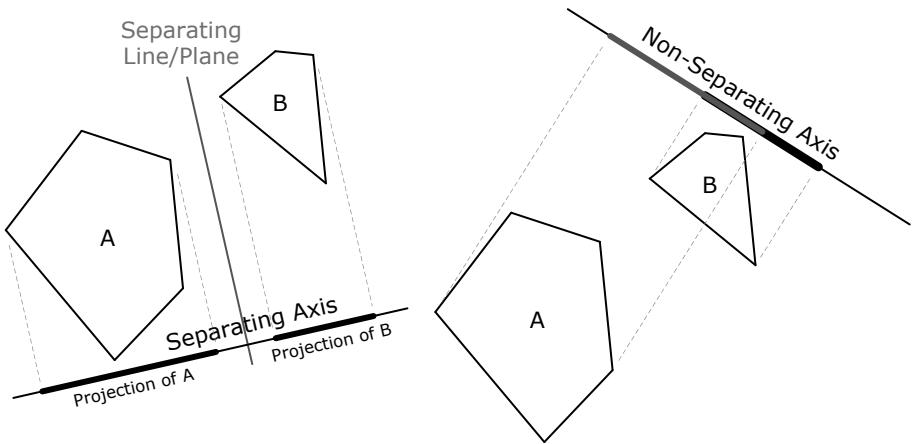


Figure 13.10. The projections of two shapes onto a separating axis are always two disjoint line segments. The projections of these same shapes onto a non-separating axis are not necessarily disjoint. If no separating axis exists, the shapes intersect.

are disjoint (i.e., do not overlap). In math terms, the intervals are disjoint if  $c_{\max}^A < c_{\min}^B$  or if  $c_{\max}^B < c_{\min}^A$ . If the projection intervals along one of the potential separating axes are disjoint, then we've found a separating axis, and we know the two shapes do not intersect.

One example of this principle in action is the sphere-versus-sphere test. If two spheres do not intersect, then the axis parallel to the line segment joining the spheres' center points will always be a valid separating axis (although other separating axes may exist, depending on how far apart the two spheres are). To visualize this, consider the limit when the two spheres are just about to touch but have not yet come into contact. In that case, the *only* separating axis is the one parallel to the center-to-center line segment. As the spheres move apart, we can rotate the separating axis more and more in either direction. This is shown in Figure 13.11.

#### 13.3.5.4 AABB versus AABB

To determine whether two AABBs are intersecting, we can again apply the separating axis theorem. The fact that the faces of both AABBs are guaranteed to lie parallel to a common set of coordinate axes tells us that if a separating axis exists, it will be one of these three coordinate axes.

So, to test for intersections between two AABBs, which we'll call A and B, we merely inspect the minimum and maximum coordinates of the two boxes along each axis independently. Along the  $x$ -axis, we have the two intervals

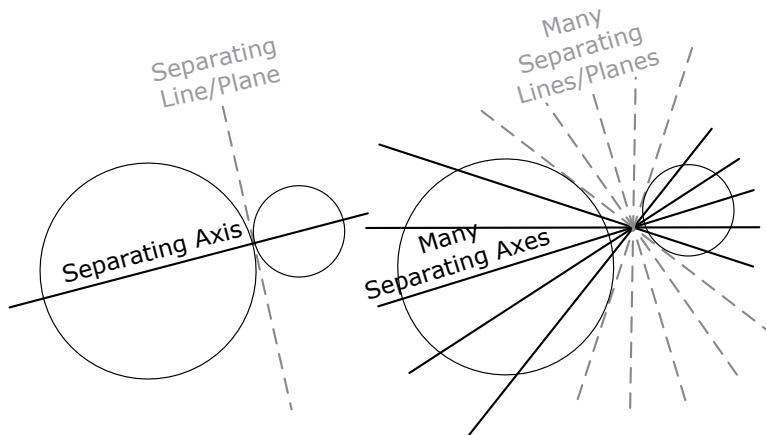


Figure 13.11. When two spheres are an infinitesimal distance apart, the only separating axis lies parallel to the line segment formed by the two spheres' center points.

$[x_{\min}^A, x_{\max}^A]$  and  $[x_{\min}^B, x_{\max}^B]$ , and we have corresponding intervals for the  $y$ - and  $z$ -axes. If the intervals overlap along *all three axes*, then the two AABBs are intersecting—in all other cases, they are not. Examples of intersecting and non-intersecting AABBs are shown in Figure 13.12 (simplified to two dimensions for the purposes of illustration). For an in-depth discussion of AABB collision, see [http://www.gamasutra.com/features/20000203/lander\\_01.htm](http://www.gamasutra.com/features/20000203/lander_01.htm).

### 13.3.5.5 Detecting Convex Collisions: The GJK Algorithm

A very efficient algorithm exists for detecting intersections between arbitrary convex *polytopes* (i.e., convex polygons in two dimensions, or convex polyhedra in three dimensions). It is known as the GJK algorithm, named after its inventors, E. G. Gilbert, D. W. Johnson and S. S. Keerthi of the University of Michigan. Many papers have been written on the algorithm and its vari-

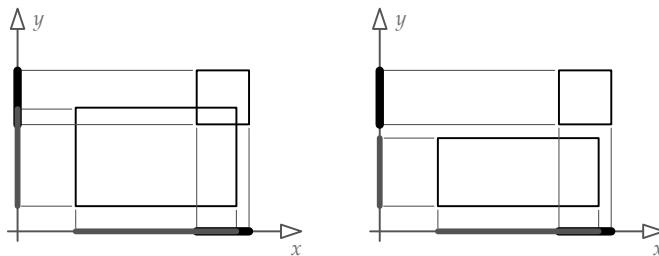


Figure 13.12. A two-dimensional example of intersecting and non-intersecting AABBs. Notice that even though the second pair of AABBs are intersecting along the  $x$ -axis, they are not intersecting along the  $y$ -axis.

ants, including the original paper ([http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/freeabs\\_all.jsp?arnumber=2083](http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/freeabs_all.jsp?arnumber=2083)), an excellent SIGGRAPH PowerPoint presentation by Christer Ericson ([http://realtimecollisiondetection.net/pubs/SIGGRAPH04\\_Ericson\\_the\\_GJK\\_algorithm.ppt](http://realtimecollisiondetection.net/pubs/SIGGRAPH04_Ericson_the_GJK_algorithm.ppt)) and another great PowerPoint presentation by Gino van den Bergen ([www.laas.fr/~nic/ MOVIE/Workshop/Slides/Gino.vander.Bergen.ppt](http://www.laas.fr/~nic/ MOVIE/Workshop/Slides/Gino.vander.Bergen.ppt)). However, the easiest-to-understand (and most entertaining) description of the algorithm is probably Casey Muratori's instructional video entitled "Implementing GJK," available online at <http://mollyrocket.com/849>. Because these descriptions are so good, I'll just give you a feel for the essence of the algorithm here and then direct you to the Molly Rocket website and the other references cited above for additional details.

The GJK algorithm relies on a geometric operation known as the *Minkowski difference*. This fancy-sounding operation is really quite simple: We take every point that lies within shape B and subtract it pairwise from every point inside shape A. The resulting set of points  $\{(\mathbf{A}_i - \mathbf{B}_j)\}$  is the Minkowski difference.

The useful thing about the Minkowski difference is that, when applied to two convex shapes, it will *contain the origin* if and only if those two shapes intersect. Proof of this statement is a bit beyond our scope, but we can intuit why it is true by remembering that when we say two shapes A and B intersect, we really mean that there are points within A that are *also* within B. During the process of subtracting every point in B from every point in A, we would expect to eventually hit one of those shared points that lies within both shapes. A point minus itself is all zeros, so the Minkowski difference will contain the origin if (and only if) sphere A and sphere B have points in common. This is illustrated in Figure 13.13.

The Minkowski difference of two convex shapes is itself a convex shape. All we care about is the *convex hull* of the Minkowski difference, not all of the interior points. The basic procedure of GJK is to try to find a *tetrahedron* (i.e., a four-sided shape made out of triangles) that lies on the convex hull of the Minkowski difference and that encloses the origin. If one can be found, then the shapes intersect; if one cannot be found, then they don't.

A tetrahedron is just one case of a geometrical object known as a *simplex*. But don't let that name scare you—a simplex is just a collection of points. A single-point simplex is a point, a two-point simplex is a line segment, a three-point simplex is a triangle and a four-point simplex is a tetrahedron (see Figure 13.14).

GJK is an iterative algorithm that starts with a one-point simplex lying anywhere within the Minkowski difference hull. It then attempts to build higher-order simplexes that might potentially contain the origin. During each iteration of the loop, we take a look at the simplex we currently have and determine

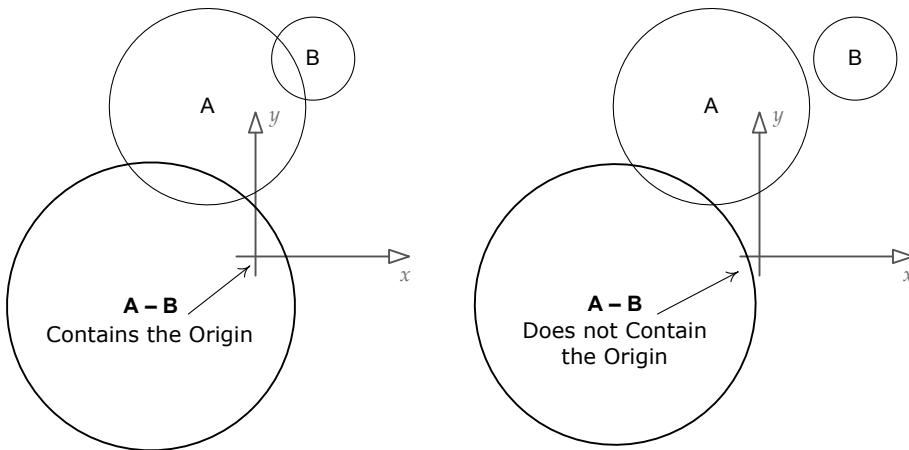


Figure I3.13. The Minkowski difference of two intersecting convex shapes contains the origin, but the Minkowski difference of two non-intersecting shapes does not.

in which direction the origin lies relative to it. We then find a *supporting vertex* of the Minkowski difference in that direction—i.e., the vertex of the convex hull that is closest to the origin in the direction we’re currently going. We add that new point to the simplex, creating a higher-order simplex (i.e., a point becomes a line segment, a line segment becomes a triangle and a triangle becomes a tetrahedron). If the addition of this new point causes the simplex to surround the origin, then we’re done—we know the two shapes intersect. On the other hand, if we are unable to find a supporting vertex that is closer to the origin than the current simplex, then we know that we can never get there, which implies that the two shapes do *not* intersect. This idea is illustrated in Figure 13.15.

To truly understand the GJK algorithm, you’ll need to check out the papers and video I referenced previously. But hopefully this description will whet your appetite for deeper investigation. Or, at the very least, you can impress

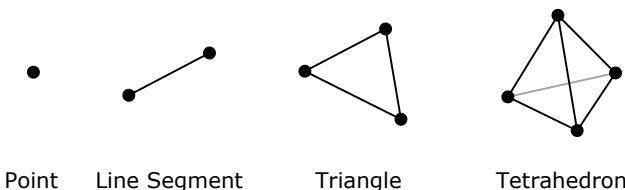


Figure I3.14. Simplexes containing one, two, three and four points.

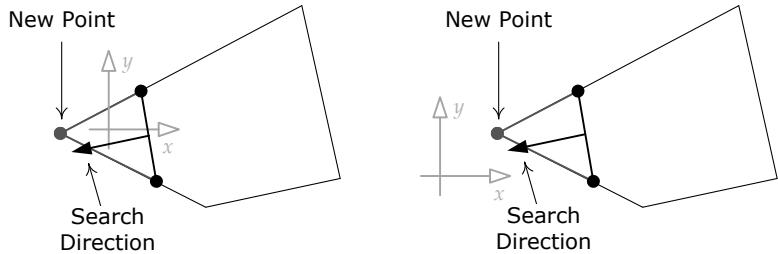


Figure 13.15. In the GJK algorithm, if adding a point to the current simplex creates a shape that contains the origin, we know the shapes intersect; if there is no supporting vertex that will bring the simplex any closer to the origin, then the shapes do not intersect.

your friends by dropping the name “GJK” at parties. (Just don’t try this at job interviews unless you really do understand the algorithm!)

#### 13.3.5.6 Other Shape-Shape Combinations

We won’t cover any of the other shape-shape intersection combinations here, as they are covered well in other texts such as [14], [48] and [11]. The key point to recognize here, however, is that the *number* of shape-shape combinations is very large. In fact, for  $N$  shape types, the number of pairwise tests required is  $O(N^2)$ . Much of the complexity of a collision engine arises because of the sheer number of intersection cases it must handle. This is one reason why the authors of collision engines usually try to limit the number of primitive types—doing so drastically reduces the number of cases the collision detector must handle. (This is also why GJK is popular—it handles collision detection between *all* convex shape types in one fell swoop. The only thing that differs from shape type to shape type is the *support function* used in the algorithm.)

There’s also the practical matter of how to implement the code that selects the appropriate collision-testing function given two arbitrary shapes that are to be tested. Many collision engines use a *double dispatch* method ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Double\\_dispatch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Double_dispatch)). In single dispatch (i.e., virtual functions), the type of a single object is used to determine which concrete implementation of a particular abstract function should be called at runtime. Double dispatch extends the virtual function concept to two object types. It can be implemented via a two-dimensional function look-up table keyed by the types of the two objects being tested. It can also be implemented by arranging for a virtual function based on the type of object A to call a second virtual function based on the type of object B.

Let’s take a look at a real-world example. Havok uses objects known as *collision agents* (classes derived from `hkpCollisionAgent`) to handle specific

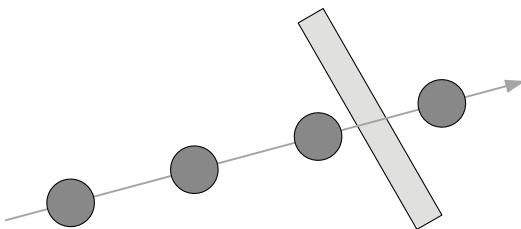


Figure 13.16. A small, fast-moving object can leave gaps in its motion path between consecutive snapshots of the collision world, meaning that collisions might be missed entirely.

intersection test cases. Concrete agent classes include `hkpSphereSphereAgent`, `hkpSphereCapsuleAgent`, `hkpGskConvexConvexAgent` and so on. The agent types are referenced by what amounts to a two-dimensional dispatch table, managed by the class `hkpCollisionDispatcher`. As you'd expect, the dispatcher's job is to efficiently look up the appropriate agent given a pair of collidables that are to be collision-tested and then call it, passing the two collidables as arguments.

#### 13.3.5.7 Detecting Collisions between Moving Bodies

Thus far, we've considered only static intersection tests between stationary objects. When objects move, this introduces some additional complexity. Motion in games is usually simulated in discrete time steps. So one simple approach is to treat the positions and orientations of each rigid body as stationary at each time step and use static intersection tests on each "snapshot" of the collision world. This technique works as long as objects aren't moving too fast relative to their sizes. In fact, it works so well that many collision/physics engines, including Havok, use this approach by default.

However, this technique breaks down for small, fast-moving objects. Imagine an object that is moving so fast that it covers a distance *larger than its own size* (measured in the direction of travel) between time steps. If we were to overlay two consecutive snapshots of the collision world, we'd notice that there is now a gap between the fast-moving object's images in the two snapshots. If another object happens to lie within this gap, we'll miss the collision with it entirely. This problem, illustrated in Figure 13.16, is known as the "bullet through paper" problem, also known as "tunneling." The following sections describe a number of common ways to overcome this problem.

#### *Swept Shapes*

One way to avoid tunneling is to make use of *swept shapes*. A swept shape

is a new shape formed by the motion of a shape from one point to another over time. For example, a swept sphere is a capsule, and a swept triangle is a triangular prism (see Figure 13.17).

Rather than testing static snapshots of the collision world for intersections, we can test the swept shapes formed by moving the shapes from their positions and orientations in the previous snapshot to their positions and orientations in the current snapshot. This approach amounts to *linearly interpolating* the motion of the collidables between snapshots, because we generally sweep the shapes along line segments from snapshot to snapshot.

Of course, linear interpolation may not be a good approximation of the motion of a fast-moving collidable. If the collidable is following a curved path, then theoretically we should sweep its shape along that curved path. Unfortunately, a convex shape that has been swept along a curve is not itself convex, so this can make our collision tests much more complex and computationally intensive.

In addition, if the convex shape we are sweeping is rotating, the resulting swept shape is not necessarily convex, even when it is swept along a line segment. As Figure 13.18 shows, we *can* always form a convex shape by linearly extrapolating the extreme features of the shapes from the previous and current snapshots—but the resulting convex shape is not necessarily an accurate representation of what the shape really would have done over the time step. Put another way, a linear interpolation is not appropriate in general for rotating shapes. So unless our shapes are not permitted to rotate, intersection testing of swept shapes becomes much more complex and computationally intensive than its static snapshot-based counterpart.

Swept shapes can be a useful technique for ensuring that collisions are not missed between static snapshots of the collision world state. However, the results are generally inaccurate when linearly interpolating curved paths or

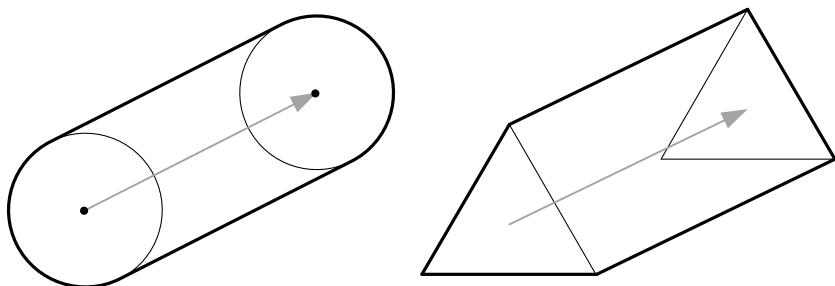


Figure 13.17. A swept sphere is a capsule; a swept triangle is a triangular prism.

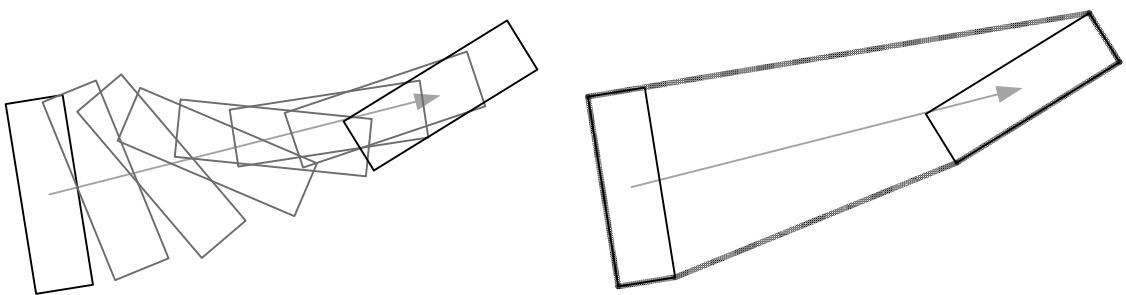


Figure 13.18. A rotating object swept along a line segment does not necessarily generate a convex shape (left). A linear interpolation of the motion does form a convex shape (right), but it can be a fairly inaccurate approximation of what actually happened during the time step.

rotating collidables, so more-detailed techniques may be required depending on the needs of the game.

#### *Continuous Collision Detection (CCD)*

Another way to deal with the tunneling problem is to employ a technique known as *continuous collision detection* (CCD). The goal of CCD is to find the earliest *time of impact* (TOI) between two moving objects over a given time interval.

CCD algorithms are generally iterative in nature. For each collidable, we maintain both its position and orientation at the previous time step and its position and orientation at the current time. This information can be used to linearly interpolate the position and rotation independently, yielding an approximation of the collidable's transform at any time between the previous and current time steps. The algorithm then searches for the earliest TOI along the motion path. A number of search algorithms are commonly used, including Brian Mirtich's *conservative advancement* method, performing a ray cast on the Minkowski sum, or considering the minimum TOI of individual feature pairs. Erwin Coumans of Sony Interactive Entertainment describes some of these algorithms in <http://gamedevs.org/uploads/continuous-collision-detection-and-physics.pdf> along with his own novel variation on the conservative advancement approach.

#### 13.3.6 Performance Optimizations

Collision detection is a CPU-intensive task for two reasons:

1. The calculations required to determine whether two shapes intersect are themselves nontrivial.

2. Most game worlds contain a large number of objects, and the number of intersection tests required grows rapidly as the number of objects increases.

To detect intersections between  $n$  objects, the brute-force technique would be to test every possible pair of objects, yielding an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm. However, much more efficient algorithms are used in practice. Collision engines typically employ some form of spatial hashing (<http://bit.ly/1fLtX1D>), spatial subdivision or hierarchical bounding volumes in order to reduce the number of intersection tests that must be performed.

#### 13.3.6.1 Temporal Coherency

One common optimization technique is to take advantage of *temporal coherency*, also known as *frame-to-frame coherency*. When collidables are moving at reasonable speeds, their positions and orientations are usually quite similar from time step to time step. We can often avoid recalculating certain kinds of information every frame by caching the results across multiple time steps. For example, in Havok, collision agents (`hkpCollisionAgent`) are usually persistent between frames, allowing them to reuse calculations from previous time steps as long as the motion of the collidables in question hasn't invalidated those calculations.

#### 13.3.6.2 Spatial Partitioning

The basic idea of spatial partitioning is to greatly reduce the number of collidables that need to be checked for intersection by dividing space into a number of smaller regions. If we can determine (in an inexpensive manner) that a pair of collidables do not occupy the same region, then we needn't perform more-detailed intersection tests on them.

Various hierarchical partitioning schemes, such as octrees, binary space partitioning trees (BSPs), kd-trees or sphere trees, can be used to subdivide space for the purposes of collision detection optimization. These trees subdivide space in different ways, but they all do so in a hierarchical fashion, starting with a gross subdivision at the root of the tree and further subdividing each region until sufficiently fine-grained regions have been obtained. The tree can then be walked in order to find and test groups of potentially colliding objects for actual intersections. Because the tree partitions space, we know that when we traverse down one branch of the tree, the objects in that branch cannot be colliding with objects in other sibling branches.

### 13.3.6.3 Broad Phase, Midphase and Narrow Phase

Havok uses a three-tiered approach to prune the set of collidables that need to be tested for collisions during each time step.

- First, gross AABB tests are used to determine which collidables are potentially intersecting. This is known as *broad phase* collision detection.
- Second, the coarse bounding volumes of compound shapes are tested. This is known as *midphase* collision detection. For example, in a compound shape composed of three spheres, the bounding volume might be a fourth, larger sphere that encloses the other spheres. A compound shape may contain other compound shapes, so in general a compound collidable has a bounding volume hierarchy. The midphase traverses this hierarchy in search of subshapes that are potentially intersecting.
- Finally, the collidables' individual primitives are tested for intersection. This is known as *narrow phase* collision detection.

#### *The Sweep and Prune Algorithm*

In all of the major collision/physics engines (e.g., Havok, ODE, PhysX), broad phase collision detection employs an algorithm known as *sweep and prune* ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sweep\\_and\\_prune](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sweep_and_prune)). The basic idea is to sort the minimum and maximum dimensions of the collidables' AABBs along the three principal axes, and then check for overlapping AABBs by traversing the sorted lists. Sweep and prune algorithms can make use of frame-to-frame coherency (see Section 13.3.6.1) to reduce an  $O(n \log n)$  sort operation to an expected  $O(n)$  running time. Frame coherency can also aid in the updating of AABBs when objects rotate.

### 13.3.7 Collision Queries

Another responsibility of the collision detection system is to answer hypothetical questions about the collision volumes in the game world. Examples include the following:

- If a bullet travels from the player's weapon in a given direction, what is the first target it will hit, if any?
- Can a vehicle move from point A to point B without striking anything along the way?
- Find all enemy objects within a given radius of a character.

In general, such operations are known as *collision queries*.

The most common kind of query is a *collision cast*, sometimes just called a *cast*. (The terms *trace* and *probe* are other common synonyms for “cast.”) A cast determines what, if anything, a hypothetical object would hit if it were to be placed into the collision world and moved along a ray or line segment. Casts are different from regular collision detection operations because the entity being cast is not really in the collision world—it cannot affect the other objects in the world in any way. This is why we say that a collision cast answers *hypothetical* questions about the collidables in the world.

### 13.3.7.1 Ray Casting

The simplest type of collision cast is a *ray cast*, although this name is actually a bit of a misnomer. What we’re really casting is a *directed line segment*—in other words, our casts always have a start point ( $\mathbf{p}_0$ ) and an end point ( $\mathbf{p}_1$ ). The cast line segment is tested against the collidable objects in the collision world. If it intersects any of them, the contact point or points are returned.

Ray casting systems typically describe the line segment via its start point  $\mathbf{p}_0$  and a delta vector  $\mathbf{d}$  that, when added to  $\mathbf{p}_0$ , yields the end point  $\mathbf{p}_1$ . Any point on this line segment can be found via the following *parametric equation*, where the parameter  $t$  is permitted to vary between zero and one:

$$\mathbf{p}(t) = \mathbf{p}_0 + t\mathbf{d}, \quad t \in [0, 1].$$

Clearly,  $\mathbf{p}_0 = \mathbf{p}(0)$  and  $\mathbf{p}_1 = \mathbf{p}(1)$ . In addition, any contact point along the segment can be uniquely described by specifying the value of the parameter  $t$  corresponding to the contact. Most ray casting APIs return their contact points as “ $t$  values,” or they permit a contact point to be converted into its corresponding  $t$  by making an additional function call.

Most collision detection systems are capable of returning the *earliest contact*—i.e., the contact point that lies closest to  $\mathbf{p}_0$  and corresponds to the smallest value of  $t$ . Some systems are also capable of returning a complete list of all collidables that were intersected by the ray or line segment. The information returned for each contact typically includes the  $t$  value, some kind of unique identifier for the collidable entity that was hit, and possibly other information such as the surface normal at the point of contact or other relevant properties of the shape or surface that was struck. One possible contact point data structure is shown below.

```
struct RayCastContact
{
    F32      m_t;           // the t value for this
                           // contact
```

```
U32      m_collidableId; // which collidable did we
                    // hit?

Vector m_normal;      // surface normal at
                    // contact pt.

                    // other information...
};
```

### Applications of Ray Casts

Ray casts are used heavily in games. For example, we might want to ask the collision system whether character A has a direct line of sight to character B. To determine this, we simply cast a directed line segment from the eyes of character A to the chest of character B. If the ray hits character B, we know that A can “see” B. But if the ray strikes some other object *before* reaching character B, we know that the line of sight is being blocked by that object. Ray casts are used by weapon systems (e.g., to determine bullet hits), player mechanics (e.g., to determine whether or not there is solid ground beneath the character’s feet), AI systems (e.g., line of sight checks, targeting, movement queries, etc.), vehicle systems (e.g., to locate and snap the vehicle’s tires to the terrain) and so on.

#### 13.3.7.2 Shape Casting

Another common query involves asking the collision system how far an imaginary convex shape would be able to travel along a directed line segment before it hits something solid. This is known as a *sphere cast* when the volume being cast is a sphere, or a *shape cast* in general. (Havok calls them *linear casts*.) As with ray casts, a shape cast is usually described by specifying the start point  $p_0$ , the distance to travel  $d$  and of course the type, dimensions and orientation of the shape we wish to cast.

There are two cases to consider when casting a convex shape.

1. The cast shape is already interpenetrating or contacting at least one other collidable, preventing it from moving away from its starting location.
2. The cast shape is not intersecting with anything else at its starting location, so it is free to move a nonzero distance along its path.

In the first scenario, the collision system typically reports the contact(s) between the cast shape and all of the collidables with which it is initially interpenetrating. These contacts might be *inside* the cast shape or on its *surface*, as shown in Figure 13.19.

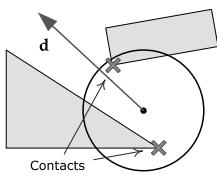


Figure 13.19. A cast sphere that starts in penetration will be unable to move, and possibly many contact points will lie inside the cast shape in general.

In the second case, the shape can move a nonzero distance along the line segment before striking something. Presuming that it hits something, it will usually hit only a single collidable. However, it is possible for a cast shape to strike more than one collidable simultaneously if its trajectory is just right. And of course, if the impacted collidable is a non-convex poly soup, the cast shape may end up touching more than one part of the poly soup simultaneously. We can safely say that no matter what kind of convex shape is cast, it is *possible* for the cast to generate multiple contact points. The contacts will always be on the *surface* of the cast shape in this case, never inside it (because we know that the cast shape was not interpenetrating anything when it started its journey). This case is illustrated in Figure 13.20.

As with ray casts, some shape casting APIs report only the *earliest* contact experienced by the cast shape, while others allow the shape to continue along its hypothetical path, returning all the contacts it experiences on its journey. This is illustrated in Figure 13.21.

The contact information returned by a shape cast is necessarily a bit more complex than it is for a ray cast. We cannot simply return one or more  $t$  values, because a  $t$  value only describes the location of the center point of the shape along its path. It tells us nothing of where, on the surface or interior of the shape, it came into contact with the impacted collidable. As a result, most shape casting APIs return both a  $t$  value and the actual contact point, along with other relevant information (such as which collidable was struck, the surface normal at the contact point, etc.).

Unlike ray casting APIs, a shape casting system must always be capable of reporting multiple contacts. This is because even if we only report the contact with the earliest  $t$  value, the shape may have touched multiple distinct collidables in the game world, or it may be touching a single non-convex collidable at more than one point. As a result, collision systems usually return an array

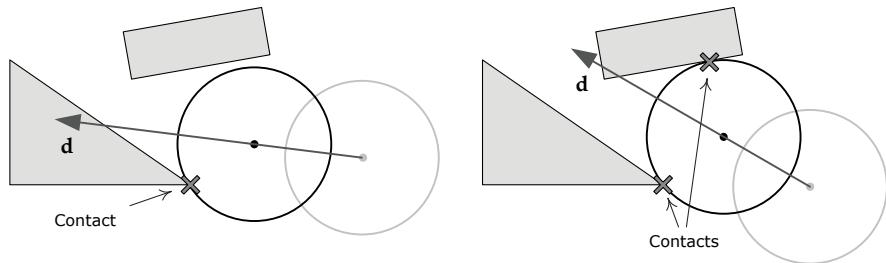


Figure 13.20. If the starting location of a cast shape is not interpenetrating anything, then the shape will move a nonzero distance along its line segment, and its contacts (if any) will always be on its surface.

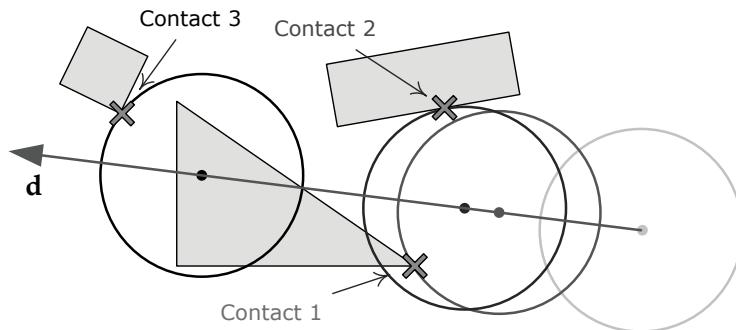


Figure 13.21. A shape casting API might return all contacts instead of only the earliest contact.

or list of contact point data structures, each of which might look something like this:

```
struct ShapeCastContact
{
    F32      m_t;           // the t value for this
                           // contact

    U32      m_collidableId; // which collidable did we
                           // hit?

    Point    m_contactPoint; // location of actual
                           // contact

    Vector   m_normal;      // surface normal at
                           // contact pt.

    // other information...
};
```

Given a list of contact points, we often want to distinguish between the groups of contact points for each distinct  $t$  value. For example, the earliest contact is actually described by the group of contact points that all share the minimum  $t$  in the list. It's important to realize that collision systems may or may not return their contact points sorted by  $t$ . If it does not, it's almost always a good idea to sort the results by  $t$  manually. This ensures that if one looks at the first contact point in the list, it will be guaranteed to be among the earliest contact points along the shape's path.

### Applications of Shape Casts

Shape casts are extremely useful in games. Sphere casts can be used to determine whether the virtual camera is in collision with objects in the game world. Sphere or capsule casts are also commonly used to implement character movement. For example, in order to slide the character forward on uneven terrain, we can cast a sphere or capsule that lies between the character's feet in the direction of motion. We can adjust it up or down via a second cast, to ensure that it remains in contact with the ground. If the sphere hits a very short vertical obstruction, such as a street curb, it can "pop up" over the curb. If the vertical obstruction is too tall, like a wall, the cast sphere can be slid horizontally along the wall. The final resting place of the cast sphere becomes the character's new location next frame.

#### 13.3.7.3 Phantoms

Sometimes, games need to determine which collidable objects lie within some specific volume in the game world. For example, we might want the list of all enemies that are within a certain radius of the player character. Havok supports a special kind of collidable object known as a *phantom* for this purpose.

A phantom acts much like a shape cast whose distance vector  $\mathbf{d}$  is zero. At any moment, we can ask the phantom for a list of its contacts with other collidables in the world. It returns this data in essentially the same format that would be returned by a zero-distance shape cast.

However, unlike a shape cast, a phantom is persistent in the collision world. This means that it can take full advantage of the temporal coherency optimizations used by the collision engine when detecting collisions between "real" collidables. In fact, the only difference between a phantom and a regular collidable is that it is "invisible" to all other collidables in the collision world (and it does not take part in the dynamics simulation). This allows it to answer hypothetical questions about what objects it would collide with were it a "real" collidable, but it is guaranteed not to have any effect on the other collidables—including other phantoms—in the collision world.

#### 13.3.7.4 Other Types of Queries

Some collision engines support other kinds of queries in addition to casts. For example, Havok supports *closest point* queries, which are used to find the set of points on other collidables that are closest to a given collidable in the collision world.

#### 13.3.8 Collision Filtering

It is quite common for game developers to want to enable or disable collisions between certain kinds of objects. For example, most objects are permitted to

pass through the surface of a body of water—we might employ a buoyancy simulation to make them float, or they might just sink to the bottom, but in either case we do not want the water’s surface to appear solid. Most collision engines allow contacts between collidables to be accepted or rejected based on game-specific critiera. This is known as *collision filtering*.

#### 13.3.8.1 Collision Masking and Layers

One common filtering approach is to categorize the objects in the world and then use a look-up table to determine whether certain categories are permitted to collide with one another or not. For example, in Havok, a collidable can be a member of one (and only one) collision layer. The default collision filter in Havok, represented by an instance of the class `hkpGroupFilter`, maintains a 32-bit mask for each layer, each bit of which tells the system whether or not that particular layer can collide with one of the other layers.

#### 13.3.8.2 Collision Callbacks

Another filtering technique is to arrange for the collision library to invoke a *callback function* whenever a collision is detected. The callback can inspect the specifics of the collision and make the decision to either allow or reject the collision based on suitable criteria. Havok also supports this kind of filtering. When contact points are first added to the world, the `contactPointAdded()` callback is invoked. If the contact point is later determined to be valid (it may not be if an earlier TOI contact was found), the `contactPointConfirmed()` callback is invoked. The application may reject contact points in these callbacks if desired.

#### 13.3.8.3 Game-Specific Collision Materials

Game developers often need to categorize the collidable objects in the game world, in part to control how they collide (as with collision filtering) and in part to control other secondary effects, such as the sound that is made or the particle effect that is generated when one type of object hits another. For example, we might want to differentiate between wood, stone, metal, mud, water and human flesh.

To accomplish this, many games implement a collision shape categorization mechanism similar in many respects to the *material system* used in the rendering engine. In fact, some game teams use the term *collision material* to describe this categorization. The basic idea is to associate with each collidable surface a set of properties that defines how that particular surface should behave from a physical and collision standpoint. Collision properties can include sound and particle effects, physical properties like coefficient of restitution or

friction coefficients, collision filtering information and whatever other information the game might require.

For simple convex primitives, the collision properties are usually associated with the shape as a whole. For polygon soup shapes, the properties might be specified on a per-triangle basis. Because of this latter usage, we usually try to keep the binding between the collision primitive and its collision material as compact as possible. A typical approach is to bind collision primitives to collision materials via an 8-, 16- or 32-bit integer, or a pointer to the material data. This integer indexes into a global array of data structures containing the detailed collision properties themselves.

## 13.4 Rigid Body Dynamics

In a game engine, we are particularly concerned with the *kinematics* of objects—how they move over time. Many game engines include a *physics system* for the purposes of simulating the motion of the objects in the virtual game world in a somewhat physically realistic way. Technically speaking, game physics engines are typically concerned with a particular field of physics known as *dynamics*. This is the study of how *forces* affect the movement of objects. Until very recently, game physics systems have been focused almost exclusively on a specific subdiscipline known as *classical rigid body dynamics*. This name implies that in a game’s physics simulation, two important simplifying assumptions are made:

- *Classical (Newtonian) mechanics.* The objects in the simulation are assumed to obey Newton’s laws of motion. The objects are large enough that there are no quantum effects, and their speeds are low enough that there are no relativistic effects.
- *Rigid bodies.* All objects in the simulation are perfectly solid and cannot be deformed. In other words, their shape is constant. This idea meshes well with the assumptions made by the collision detection system. Furthermore, the assumption of rigidity greatly simplifies the mathematics required to simulate the dynamics of solid objects.

Game physics engines are also capable of ensuring that the motions of the rigid bodies in the game world conform to various *constraints*. The most common constraint is that of non-penetration—in other words, objects aren’t allowed to pass through one another. Hence the physics system attempts to provide realistic *collision responses* whenever bodies are found to be interpen-

etrating.<sup>2</sup> This is one of the primary reasons for the tight interconnection between the physics engine and the collision detection system.

Most physics systems also allow game developers to set up other kinds of constraints in order to define realistic interactions between physically simulated rigid bodies. These may include hinges, prismatic joints (sliders), ball joints, wheels, “rag dolls” to emulate unconscious or dead characters and so on.

The physics system usually shares the collision world data structure, and in fact it usually drives the execution of the collision detection algorithm as part of its time step update routine. There is typically a one-to-one mapping between the rigid bodies in the dynamics simulation and the collidables managed by the collision engine. For example, in Havok, an `hkpRigidBody` object maintains a reference to one and only one `hkpCollidable` (although it is possible to create a collidable that has no rigid body). In PhysX, the two concepts are a bit more tightly integrated—an `NxActor` serves both as a collidable object and as a rigid body for the purposes of the dynamics simulation. These rigid bodies and their corresponding collidables are usually maintained in a singleton data structure known as the *collision/physics world*, or sometimes just the *physics world*.

The rigid bodies in the physics engine are typically distinct from the logical objects that make up the virtual world from a gameplay perspective. The positions and orientations of game objects can be driven by the physics simulation. To accomplish this, we query the physics engine every frame for the transform of each rigid body, and apply it in some way to the transform of the corresponding game object. It’s also possible for a game object’s motion, as determined by some other engine system (such as the animation system or the character control system) to drive the position and rotation of a rigid body in the physics world. As mentioned in Section 13.3.1, a single logical game object may be represented by one rigid body in the physics world, or by many. A simple object like a rock, weapon or barrel, might correspond to one rigid body. But an articulated character or a complex machine might be composed of many interconnected rigid pieces.

The remainder of this chapter will be devoted to investigating how game physics engines work. We’ll briefly introduce the theory that underlies rigid body dynamics simulations. Then we’ll investigate some of the most common features of a game physics system and have a look at how a physics engine might be integrated into a game.

---

<sup>2</sup>Or in the case of continuous collision detection, the collision response actually *prevents* the penetration from occurring.

### 13.4.1 Some Foundations

A great many excellent books, articles and slide presentations have been written on the topic of classical rigid body dynamics. A solid foundation in analytical mechanics theory can be obtained from [17]. Even more relevant to our discussion are texts like [39], [13] and [29], which have been written specifically about the kind of physics simulations done by games. Other texts, like [2], [11] and [32], include chapters on rigid body dynamics for games. Chris Hecker wrote a series of helpful articles on the topic of game physics for *Game Developer Magazine*; Chris has posted these and a variety of other useful resources at [http://chrishecker.com/Rigid\\_Body\\_Dynamics](http://chrishecker.com/Rigid_Body_Dynamics). An informative slide presentation on dynamics simulation for games was produced by Russell Smith, the primary author of ODE; it is available at <http://www.ode.org/slides/parc/dynamics.pdf>.

In this section, I'll summarize the fundamental theoretical concepts that underlie the majority of game physics engines. This will be a whirlwind tour only, and by necessity I'll have to omit some details. Once you've read this chapter, I strongly encourage you to read at least a few of the additional resources cited previously.

#### 13.4.1.1 Units

Most rigid body dynamics simulations operate in the MKS system of units. In this system, distance is measured in meters (abbreviated "m"), mass is measured in kilograms (abbreviated "kg") and time is measured in seconds (abbreviated "s"). Hence the name MKS.

You could configure your physics system to use other units if you wanted to, but if you do this, you need to make sure everything in the simulation is consistent. For example, constants like the acceleration due to gravity  $\mathbf{g}$ , which is measured in  $\text{m/s}^2$  in the MKS system, would have to be re-expressed in whatever unit system you select. Most game teams just stick with MKS to keep life simple.

#### 13.4.1.2 Separability of Linear and Angular Dynamics

An *unconstrained* rigid body is one that can translate freely along all three Cartesian axes and that can rotate freely about these three axes as well. We say that such a body has six *degrees of freedom* (DOF).

It is perhaps somewhat surprising that the motion of an unconstrained rigid body can be separated into two independent components:

- *Linear dynamics.* This is a description of the motion of the body when we ignore all rotational effects. (We can use linear dynamics alone to

describe the motion of an idealized *point mass*—i.e., a mass that is infinitesimally small and cannot rotate.)

- *Angular dynamics.* This is a description of the rotational motion of the body.

As you can well imagine, this ability to separate the linear and angular components of a rigid body’s motion is extremely helpful when analyzing or simulating its behavior. It means that we can calculate a body’s linear motion without regard to rotation—as if it were an idealized point mass—and then layer its angular motion on top in order to arrive at a complete description of the body’s motion.

#### 13.4.1.3 Center of Mass

For the purposes of *linear dynamics*, an unconstrained rigid body acts as though all of its mass were concentrated at a single point known as the *center of mass* (abbreviated CM, or sometimes COM). The center of mass is essentially the balancing point of the body for all possible orientations. In other words, the mass of a rigid body is distributed evenly around its center of mass in all directions.

For a body with uniform density, the center of mass lies at the *centroid* of the body. That is, if we were to divide the body up into  $N$  very small pieces, add up the positions of all these pieces as a vector sum and then divide by the number of pieces, we’d end up with a pretty good approximation to the location of the center of mass. If the body’s density is not uniform, the position of each little piece would need to be *weighted* by that piece’s mass, meaning that in general the center of mass is really a *weighted average* of the pieces’ positions. So we have

$$\mathbf{r}_{CM} = \frac{\sum_{\forall i} m_i \mathbf{r}_i}{\sum_{\forall i} m_i} = \frac{\sum_{\forall i} m_i \mathbf{r}_i}{m},$$

where the symbol  $m$  represents the total mass of the body, and the symbol  $\mathbf{r}$  represents a *radius vector* or *position vector*—i.e., a vector extending from the world-space origin to the point in question. (These sums become integrals in the limit as the sizes and masses of the little pieces approach zero.)

The center of mass always lies inside a convex body, although it may actually lie outside the body if it is concave. (For example, where would the center of mass of the letter “C” lie?)

### 13.4.2 Linear Dynamics

For the purposes of linear dynamics, the position of a rigid body can be fully described by a position vector  $\mathbf{r}_{CM}$  that extends from the world-space origin to the center of mass of the body, as shown in Figure 13.22. Since we're using the MKS system, position is measured in meters (m). For the remainder of this discussion, we'll drop the CM subscripts, as it is understood that we are describing the motion of the body's center of mass.

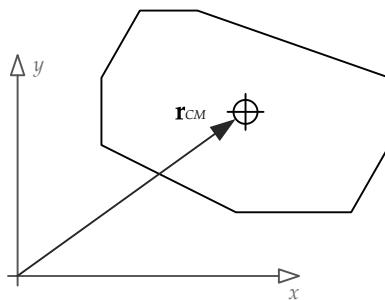


Figure 13.22. For the purposes of linear dynamics, the position of a rigid body can be fully described by the position of its center of mass.

#### 13.4.2.1 Linear Velocity and Acceleration

The *linear velocity* of a rigid body defines the speed and direction in which the body's CM is moving. It is a vector quantity, typically measured in meters per second (m/s). Velocity is the first time derivative of position, so we can write

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}(t)}{dt} = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t),$$

where the dot over the vector  $\mathbf{r}$  denotes taking the derivative with respect to time. Differentiating a vector is the same as differentiating each component independently, so

$$v_x(t) = \frac{dr_x(t)}{dt} = \dot{r}_x(t),$$

and so on for the  $y$ - and  $z$ -components.

Linear acceleration is the first derivative of linear velocity with respect to time, or the second derivative of the position of a body's CM versus time. Acceleration is a vector quantity, usually denoted by the symbol  $\mathbf{a}$ . So we can

write

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a}(t) &= \frac{d\mathbf{v}(t)}{dt} = \dot{\mathbf{v}}(t) \\ &= \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}(t)}{dt^2} = \ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t).\end{aligned}$$

### 13.4.2.2 Force and Momentum

A *force* is defined as anything that causes an object with mass to accelerate or decelerate. A force has both a magnitude and a direction in space, so all forces are represented by vectors. A force is often denoted by the symbol  $\mathbf{F}$ . When  $N$  forces are applied to a rigid body, their net effect on the body's linear motion is found by simply adding up the force vectors:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}} = \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{F}_i.$$

Newton's famous Second Law states that force is proportional to acceleration and mass:

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = m\mathbf{a}(t) = m\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t). \quad (13.2)$$

As Newton's law implies, force is measured in units of kilogram-meters per second squared ( $\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}/\text{s}^2$ ). This unit is also called the Newton.

When we multiply a body's linear velocity by its mass, the result is a quantity known as *linear momentum*. It is customary to denote linear momentum with the symbol  $\mathbf{p}$ :

$$\mathbf{p}(t) = m\mathbf{v}(t).$$

When mass is constant, Equation (13.2) holds true. But if mass is not constant, as would be the case for a rocket whose fuel is being gradually used up and converted into energy, Equation (13.2) is not exactly correct. The proper formulation is actually as follows:

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{p}(t)}{dt} = \frac{d(m(t)\mathbf{v}(t))}{dt}.$$

which of course reduces to the more familiar  $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$  when the mass is constant and can be brought outside the derivative. Linear momentum is not of much concern to us. However, the concept of momentum will become relevant when we discuss angular dynamics.

### 13.4.3 Solving the Equations of Motion

The central problem in rigid body dynamics is to solve for the motion of the body, given a set of known forces acting on it. For linear dynamics, this means finding  $\mathbf{v}(t)$  and  $\mathbf{r}(t)$  given knowledge of the net force  $\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t)$  and possibly other information, such as the position and velocity at some previous time. As we'll see below, this amounts to solving a pair of ordinary differential equations—one to find  $\mathbf{v}(t)$  given  $\mathbf{a}(t)$  and the other to find  $\mathbf{r}(t)$  given  $\mathbf{v}(t)$ .

#### 13.4.3.1 Force as a Function

A force can be constant, or it can be a function of time as shown above. A force can also be a function of the position of the body, its velocity, or any number of other quantities. So in general, the expression for force should really be written as follows:

$$\mathbf{F}(t, \mathbf{r}(t), \mathbf{v}(t), \dots) = m\mathbf{a}(t). \quad (13.3)$$

This can be rewritten in terms of the position vector and its first and second derivatives as follows:

$$\mathbf{F}(t, \mathbf{r}(t), \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t), \dots) = m\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t).$$

For example, the force exerted by a spring is proportional to how far it has been stretched away from its natural resting position. In one dimension, with the spring's resting position at  $x = 0$ , we can write

$$F(t, x(t)) = -kx(t),$$

where  $k$  is the *spring constant*, a measure of the spring's stiffness.

As another example, the damping force exerted by a mechanical viscous damper (a so-called dashpot) is proportional to the velocity of the damper's piston. So in one dimension, we can write

$$F(t, v(t)) = -bv(t),$$

where  $b$  is a *viscous damping coefficient*.

#### 13.4.3.2 Ordinary Differential Equations

In general, an *ordinary differential equation* (ODE) is an equation involving a function of one independent variable and various derivatives of that function. If our independent variable is time and our function is  $x(t)$ , then an ODE is a relation of the form

$$\frac{d^n x}{dt^n} = f \left( t, x(t), \frac{dx(t)}{dt}, \frac{d^2 x(t)}{dt^2}, \dots, \frac{d^{n-1} x(t)}{dt^{n-1}} \right).$$

Put another way, the  $n$ th derivative of  $x(t)$  is expressed as a function  $f$  whose arguments can be time ( $t$ ), position ( $x(t)$ ), and any number of derivatives of  $x(t)$  as long as those derivatives are of *lower order* than  $n$ .

As we saw in Equation (13.3), force is a function of time, position and velocity in general:

$$\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t) = \frac{1}{m} \mathbf{F}(t, \mathbf{r}(t), \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t)).$$

This clearly qualifies as an ODE. We wish to solve this ODE in order to find  $\mathbf{v}(t)$  and  $\mathbf{r}(t)$ .

### 13.4.3.3 Analytical Solutions

In some rare situations, the differential equations of motion can be solved *analytically*, meaning that a simple, closed-form function can be found that describes the body's position for *all possible values* of time  $t$ . A common example is the vertical motion of a projectile under the influence of a constant acceleration due to gravity,  $\mathbf{a}(t) = [0, g, 0]$ , where  $g = -9.8\text{m/s}^2$ . In this case, the ODE of motion boils down to

$$\ddot{y}(t) = g.$$

Integrating once yields

$$\dot{y}(t) = gt + v_0,$$

where  $v_0$  is the vertical velocity at time  $t = 0$ . Integrating a second time yields the familiar solution

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + v_0t + y_0,$$

where  $y_0$  is the initial vertical position of the object.

However, analytical solutions are almost never possible in game physics. This is due in part to the fact that closed-form solutions to some differential equations are simply not known. Moreover, a game is an interactive simulation, so we usually cannot predict how the forces in a game will behave over time. This makes it impossible to find simple, closed-form expressions for the positions and velocities of the objects in the game as functions of time.

There are of course exceptions to this rule of thumb. For example, it's pretty common to solve for a closed-form expression in order to determine with what velocity a projectile must be launched in order to hit a predefined target.

### 13.4.4 Numerical Integration

For the reasons cited above, game physics engines turn to a technique known as *numerical integration*. With this technique, we solve our differential equations in a *time-stepped* manner—using the solution from a previous time step

to arrive at the solution for the next time step. The duration of the time step is usually taken to be (roughly) constant and is denoted by the symbol  $\Delta t$ . Given that we know the body's position and velocity at the current time  $t_1$  and that the force is known as a function of time, position and/or velocity, we wish to find the position and velocity at the next time step  $t_2 = t_1 + \Delta t$ . In other words, given  $\mathbf{r}(t_1)$ ,  $\mathbf{v}(t_1)$  and  $\mathbf{F}(t, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v})$ , the problem is to find  $\mathbf{r}(t_2)$  and  $\mathbf{v}(t_2)$ .

#### 13.4.1.1 Explicit Euler

One of the simplest numerical solutions to an ODE is known as the *explicit Euler method*. This is the intuitive approach often taken by new game programmers. Let's assume for the moment that we already know the current velocity and that we wish to solve the following ODE to find the body's position on the next frame:

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t). \quad (13.4)$$

Using the explicit Euler method, we simply convert the velocity from meters per second into meters per frame by multiplying by the time delta, and then we add "one frame's worth" of velocity onto the current position in order to find the new position on the next frame. This yields the following approximate solution to the ODE given by Equation (13.4):

$$\mathbf{r}(t_2) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \mathbf{v}(t_1)\Delta t. \quad (13.5)$$

We can take an analogous approach to find the body's velocity next frame given the net force acting this frame. Hence, the approximate explicit Euler solution to the ODE

$$\mathbf{a}(t) = \frac{\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t)}{m} = \dot{\mathbf{v}}(t)$$

is as follows:

$$\mathbf{v}(t_2) = \mathbf{v}(t_1) + \frac{\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t)}{m}\Delta t. \quad (13.6)$$

#### *Interpretations of Explicit Euler*

What we're really doing in Equation (13.5) is assuming that the velocity of the body is constant during the time step. Therefore, we can use the *current* velocity to predict the body's position on the *next* frame. The change in position  $\Delta\mathbf{r}$  between times  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  is hence  $\Delta\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{v}(t_1)\Delta t$ . Graphically, if we imagine a plot of the position of the body versus time, we are taking the *slope* of the function at time  $t_1$  (which is just  $\mathbf{v}(t_1)$ ) and extrapolating it linearly to the next time step  $t_2$ . As we can see in Figure 13.23, linear extrapolation does not necessarily provide us with a particularly good estimate of the true position at the

next time step  $\mathbf{r}(t_2)$ , but it does work reasonably well as long as the velocity is roughly constant.

Figure 13.23 suggests another way to interpret the explicit Euler method—as an approximation of a derivative. By definition, any derivative is the quotient of two infinitesimally small differences (in our case,  $d\mathbf{r}/dt$ ). The explicit Euler method approximates this using the quotient of two *finite differences*. In other words,  $d\mathbf{r}$  becomes  $\Delta\mathbf{r}$  and  $dt$  becomes  $\Delta t$ . This yields

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} \approx \frac{\Delta\mathbf{r}}{\Delta t};$$

$$\mathbf{v}(t_1) \approx \frac{\mathbf{r}(t_2) - \mathbf{r}(t_1)}{t_2 - t_1},$$

which again simplifies to Equation (13.5). This approximation is really only valid when the velocity is constant over the time step. It is also valid in the limit as  $\Delta t$  tends toward zero (at which point it becomes *exactly* right). Obviously, this same analysis can be applied to Equation (13.6) as well.

#### 13.4.4.2 Properties of Numerical Methods

We've implied that the explicit Euler method is not particularly accurate. Let's pin this idea down more concretely. A numerical solution to an ordinary differential equation actually has three important and interrelated properties:

- *Convergence*. As the time step  $\Delta t$  tends toward zero, does the approximate solution get closer and closer to the real solution?
- *Order*. Given a particular numerical approximation to the solution of an ODE, how “bad” is the error? Errors in numerical ODE solutions are typically proportional to some power of the time step duration  $\Delta t$ , so they are often written using “big O” notation (e.g.,  $O(\Delta t^2)$ ). We say

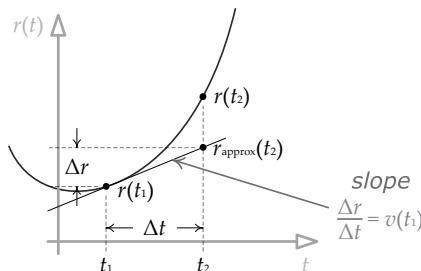


Figure 13.23. In the explicit Euler method, the slope of  $\mathbf{r}(t)$  at time  $t_1$  is used to linearly extrapolate from  $\mathbf{r}(t_1)$  to an estimate of the true value of  $\mathbf{r}(t_2)$ .

that a particular numerical method is of “order  $n$ ” when its error term is  $O(\Delta t^{(n+1)})$ .

- *Stability.* Does the numerical solution tend to “settle down” over time? If a numerical method adds energy into the system, object velocities will eventually “explode,” and the system will become *unstable*. On the other hand, if a numerical method tends to remove energy from the system, it will have an overall damping effect, and the system will be *stable*.

The concept of order warrants a little more explanation. We usually measure the error of a numerical method by comparing its approximate equation with the infinite Taylor series expansion of the exact solution to the ODE. We then cancel terms by subtracting the two equations. The remaining Taylor terms represent the error inherent in the method. For example, the explicit Euler equation is

$$\mathbf{r}(t_2) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t.$$

The infinite Taylor series expansion of the exact solution is

$$\mathbf{r}(t_2) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t + \frac{1}{2}\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t^2 + \frac{1}{6}\mathbf{r}^{(3)}(t_1)\Delta t^3 + \dots,$$

where  $\mathbf{r}^{(3)}$  represents the third derivative with respect to time. Therefore, the error is represented by all of the terms after the  $\mathbf{v}\Delta t$  term, which is of order  $O(\Delta t^2)$  (because this term dwarfs the other higher-order terms):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E} &= \frac{1}{2}\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t^2 + \frac{1}{6}\mathbf{r}^{(3)}(t_1)\Delta t^3 + \dots \\ &= O(\Delta t^2). \end{aligned}$$

To make the error of a method explicit, we’ll often write its equation with the error term added in “big O” notation at the end. For example, the explicit Euler method’s equation is most accurately written as follows:

$$\mathbf{r}(t_2) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t + O(\Delta t^2).$$

We say that the explicit Euler method is a “first-order” method because it is accurate up to *and including* the Taylor series term involving  $\Delta t$  to the first power. In general, if a method’s error term is  $O(\Delta t^{(n+1)})$ , then it is said to be an “order  $n$ ” method.

#### 13.4.4.3 Alternatives to Explicit Euler

The explicit Euler method sees quite a lot of use for simple integration tasks in games, producing the best results when the velocity is nearly constant. However, it is not used in general-purpose dynamics simulations because of its

high error and poor stability. There are all sorts of other numerical methods for solving ODEs, including backward Euler (another first-order method), midpoint Euler (a second-order method) and the family of Runge-Kutta methods. (The fourth-order Runge-Kutta, often abbreviated “RK4,” is particularly popular.) We won’t describe these in any detail here, as you can find voluminous amounts of information about them online and in the literature. The Wikipedia page [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Numerical\\_ordinary\\_differential\\_equations](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Numerical_ordinary_differential_equations) serves as an excellent jumping-off point for learning these methods.

#### 13.4.4 Verlet Integration

The numerical ODE method most often used in interactive games these days is probably the Verlet method, so I’ll take a moment to describe it in some detail. There are actually two variants of this method: regular Verlet and the so-called *velocity Verlet*. I’ll present both methods here, but I’ll leave the theory and deep explanations to the myriad papers and Web pages available on the topic. (For a start, check out [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Verlet\\_integration](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Verlet_integration).)

The regular Verlet method is attractive because it achieves a high order (low error), is relatively simple and inexpensive to evaluate, and produces a solution for position directly in terms of acceleration in one step (as opposed to the two steps normally required to go from acceleration to velocity and then from velocity to position). The formula is derived by adding two Taylor series expansions, one going forward in time and one going backward in time:

$$\mathbf{r}(t_1 + \Delta t) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t + \frac{1}{2}\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t^2 + \frac{1}{6}\mathbf{r}^{(3)}(t_1)\Delta t^3 + O(\Delta t^4);$$

$$\mathbf{r}(t_1 - \Delta t) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) - \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t + \frac{1}{2}\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t_1)\Delta t^2 - \frac{1}{6}\mathbf{r}^{(3)}(t_1)\Delta t^3 + O(\Delta t^4).$$

Adding these expressions causes the negative terms to cancel with the corresponding positive ones. The result gives us the position at the next time step in terms of the acceleration and the two (known) positions at the current and previous time steps. This is the regular Verlet method:

$$\mathbf{r}(t_1 + \Delta t) = 2\mathbf{r}(t_1) - \mathbf{r}(t_1 - \Delta t) + \mathbf{a}(t_1)\Delta t^2 + O(\Delta t^4).$$

In terms of net force, the Verlet method becomes

$$\mathbf{r}(t_1 + \Delta t) = 2\mathbf{r}(t_1) - \mathbf{r}(t_1 - \Delta t) + \frac{\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t_1)}{m}\Delta t^2 + O(\Delta t^4).$$

The velocity is conspicuously absent from this expression. However, it can be found using the following somewhat inaccurate approximation (among other alternatives):

$$\mathbf{v}(t_1 + \Delta t) = \frac{\mathbf{r}(t_1 + \Delta t) - \mathbf{r}(t_1)}{\Delta t} + O(\Delta t).$$

#### 13.4.4.5 Velocity Verlet

The more commonly used *velocity Verlet* method is a four-step process in which the time step is divided into two parts to facilitate the solution. Given that  $\mathbf{a}(t_1) = \frac{1}{m}\mathbf{F}(t_1, \mathbf{r}(t_1), \mathbf{v}(t_1))$  is known, we do the following:

1. Calculate  $\mathbf{r}(t_1 + \Delta t) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \mathbf{v}(t_1)\Delta t + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}(t_1)\Delta t^2$ .
2. Calculate  $\mathbf{v}(t_1 + \frac{1}{2}\Delta t) = \mathbf{v}(t_1) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}(t_1)\Delta t$ .
3. Determine  $\mathbf{a}(t_1 + \Delta t) = \mathbf{a}(t_2) = \frac{1}{m}\mathbf{F}(t_2, \mathbf{r}(t_2), \mathbf{v}(t_2))$ .
4. Calculate  $\mathbf{v}(t_1 + \Delta t) = \mathbf{v}(t_1 + \frac{1}{2}\Delta t) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}(t_1 + \Delta t)\Delta t$ .

Notice in the third step that the force function depends on the position and velocity on the *next* time step,  $\mathbf{r}(t_2)$  and  $\mathbf{v}(t_2)$ . We already calculated  $\mathbf{r}(t_2)$  in step 1, so we have all the information we need as long as the force is not velocity-dependent. If it is velocity-dependent, then we must approximate the next frame's velocity, perhaps using the explicit Euler method.

#### 13.4.5 Angular Dynamics in Two Dimensions

Up until now, we've focused on analyzing the linear motion of a body's center of mass (which acts as if it were a point mass). As I said earlier, an unconstrained rigid body will rotate about its center of mass. This means that we can layer the angular motion of a body on top of the linear motion of its center of mass in order to arrive at a complete description of the body's overall motion. The study of a body's rotational motion in response to applied forces is called *angular dynamics*.

In two dimensions, angular dynamics works almost identically to linear dynamics. For each linear quantity, there's an angular analog, and the mathematics works out quite neatly. So let's investigate two-dimensional angular dynamics first. As we'll see, when we extend the discussion into three dimensions, things get a bit messier, but we'll burn that bridge when we get to it!

##### 13.4.5.1 Orientation and Angular Speed

In two dimensions, every rigid body can be treated as a thin sheet of material. (Some physics texts refer to such a body as a *plane lamina*.) All linear motion occurs in the  $xy$ -plane, and all rotations occur about the  $z$ -axis. (Visualize wooden puzzle pieces sliding about on an air hockey table.)

The orientation of a rigid body in 2D is fully described by an angle  $\theta$ , measured in radians relative to some agreed-upon zero rotation. For example, we

might specify that  $\theta = 0$  when a race car is facing directly down the positive  $x$ -axis in world space. This angle is of course a time-varying function, so we denote it  $\theta(t)$ .

#### 13.4.5.2 Angular Speed and Acceleration

Angular velocity measures the rate at which a body's rotation angle changes over time. In two dimensions, angular velocity is a scalar, more correctly called angular *speed*, since the term "velocity" really only applies to vectors. It is denoted by the scalar function  $\omega(t)$  and measured in radians per second (rad/s). Angular speed is the derivative of the orientation angle  $\theta(t)$  with respect to time:

Angular:	$\omega(t) = \frac{d\theta(t)}{dt} = \dot{\theta}(t)$	Linear:
	$\mathbf{v}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}(t)}{dt} = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t)$	

And as we'd expect, angular acceleration, denoted  $\alpha(t)$  and measured in radians per second squared (rad/s<sup>2</sup>), is the rate of change of angular speed:

Angular:	$\alpha(t) = \frac{d\omega(t)}{dt} = \dot{\omega}(t) = \ddot{\theta}(t)$	Linear:
	$\mathbf{a}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{v}(t)}{dt} = \dot{\mathbf{v}}(t) = \ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t)$	

#### 13.4.5.3 Moment of Inertia

The rotational equivalent of mass is a quantity known as the *moment of inertia*. Just as mass describes how easy or difficult it is to change the linear velocity of a point mass, the moment of inertia measures how easy or difficult it is to change the angular speed of a rigid body about a particular axis. If a body's mass is concentrated near an axis of rotation, it will be relatively easier to rotate about that axis, and it will hence have a smaller moment of inertia than a body whose mass is spread out away from that axis.

Since we're focusing on two-dimensional angular dynamics right now, the axis of rotation is always  $z$ , and a body's moment of inertia is a simple scalar value. Moment of inertia is usually denoted by the symbol  $I$ . We won't get into the details of how to calculate the moment of inertia here. For a full derivation, see [17].

#### 13.4.5.4 Torque

Until now, we've assumed that all forces are applied to the center of mass of a rigid body. However, in general, forces can be applied at arbitrary points on a

body. If the line of action of a force passes through the body's center of mass, then the force will produce linear motion only, as we've already seen. Otherwise, the force will introduce a rotational force known as a *torque* in addition to the linear motion it normally causes. This is illustrated in Figure 13.24.

We can calculate torque using a cross product. First, we express the location at which the force is applied as a vector  $\mathbf{r}$  extending from the body's center of mass to the point of application of the force. (In other words, the vector  $\mathbf{r}$  is in *body space*, where the origin of body space is defined to be the center of mass.) This is illustrated in Figure 13.25. The torque  $\mathbf{N}$  caused by a force  $\mathbf{F}$  applied at a location  $\mathbf{r}$  is

$$\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}. \quad (13.7)$$

Equation (13.7) implies that torque increases as the force is applied farther from the center of mass. This explains why a lever can help us to move a heavy object. It also explains why a force applied directly through the center of mass produces no torque and no rotation—the magnitude of the vector  $\mathbf{r}$  is zero in this case.

When two or more forces are applied to a rigid body, the torque vectors produced by each one can be summed, just as we can sum forces. So in general we are interested in the net torque,  $\mathbf{N}_{\text{net}}$ .

In two dimensions, the vectors  $\mathbf{r}$  and  $\mathbf{F}$  must both lie in the  $xy$ -plane, so  $\mathbf{N}$  will always be directed along the positive or negative  $z$ -axis. As such, we'll denote a two-dimensional torque via the scalar  $N_z$ , which is just the  $z$ -component of the vector  $\mathbf{N}$ .

Torque is related to angular acceleration and moment of inertia in much

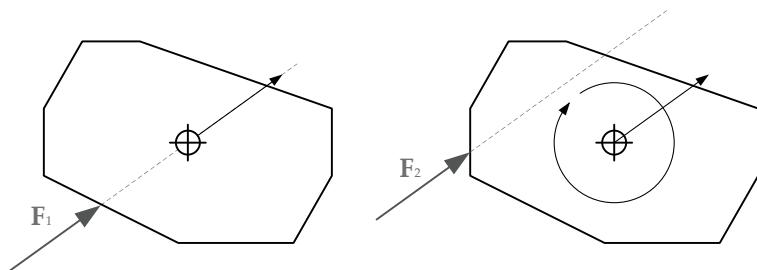


Figure 13.24. On the left, a force applied to a body's CM produces purely linear motion. On the right, a force applied off-center will give rise to a torque, producing rotational motion as well as linear motion.

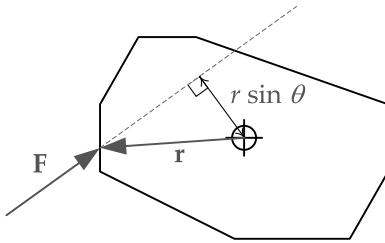


Figure 13.25. Torque is calculated by taking the cross product between a force's point of application in body space (i.e., relative to the center of mass) and the force vector. The vectors are shown here in two dimensions for ease of illustration; if it could be drawn, the torque vector would be directed into the page.

the same way that force is related to linear acceleration and mass:

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} \text{Angular:} & \text{Linear:} \\ N_z(t) = I\alpha(t) = I\dot{\omega}(t) = I\ddot{\theta}(t) & \mathbf{F}(t) = m\mathbf{a}(t) = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}(t) = m\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t). \end{array} \right| \quad (13.8)$$

#### 13.4.5.5 Solving the Angular Equations of Motion in Two Dimensions

For the two-dimensional case, we can solve the angular equations of motion using exactly the same numerical integration techniques we applied to the linear dynamics problem. The pair of ODEs that we wish to solve is as follows:

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} \text{Angular:} & \text{Linear:} \\ N_{\text{net}}(t) = I\dot{\omega}(t) & \mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t) = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}(t) \\ \omega(t) = \dot{\theta}(t) & \mathbf{v}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t), \end{array} \right|$$

and their approximate explicit Euler solutions are

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} \text{Angular:} & \text{Linear:} \\ \omega(t_2) = \omega(t_1) + I^{-1}N_{\text{net}}(t_1)\Delta t & \mathbf{v}(t_2) = \mathbf{v}(t_1) + m^{-1}\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t_1)\Delta t \\ \theta(t_2) = \theta(t_1) + \omega(t_1)\Delta t & \mathbf{r}(t_2) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \mathbf{v}(t_1)\Delta t. \end{array} \right|$$

Of course, we could apply any of the other more-accurate numerical methods as well, such as the velocity Verlet method (I've omitted the linear case here for compactness, but compare this to the steps given in Section 13.4.4.5):

1. Calculate  $\theta(t_1 + \Delta t) = \theta(t_1) + \omega(t_1)\Delta t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha(t_1)\Delta t^2$ .
2. Calculate  $\omega(t_1 + \frac{1}{2}\Delta t) = \omega(t_1) + \frac{1}{2}\alpha(t_1)\Delta t$ .

3. Calculate  $\alpha(t_1 + \Delta t) = \alpha(t_2) = I^{-1}N_{\text{net}}(t_2, \theta(t_2), \omega(t_2))$ .
4. Calculate  $\omega(t_1 + \Delta t) = \omega(t_1 + \frac{1}{2}\Delta t) + \frac{1}{2}\alpha(t_1 + \Delta t)\Delta t$ .

### 13.4.6 Angular Dynamics in Three Dimensions

Angular dynamics in three dimensions is a somewhat more complex topic than its two-dimensional counterpart, although the basic concepts are of course very similar. In the following section, I'll give a very brief overview of how angular dynamics works in 3D, focusing primarily on the things that are typically confusing to someone who is new to the topic. For further information, check out Glenn Fiedler's series of articles on the topic, available at <http://gafferongames.com/game-physics/physics-in-3d/>. Another helpful resource is the paper entitled "An Introduction to Physically Based Modeling" by David Baraff of the Robotics Institute at Carnegie Mellon University, available at <http://www-2.cs.cmu.edu/~baraff/sigcourse/notesd1.pdf>.

#### 13.4.6.1 The Inertia Tensor

A rigid body may have a very different distribution of mass about the three coordinate axes. As such, we should expect a body to have different moments of inertia about different axes. For example, a long thin rod should be relatively easy to make rotate about its long axis because all the mass is concentrated very close to the axis of rotation. Likewise, the rod should be relatively more difficult to make rotate about its short axis because its mass is spread out farther from the axis. This is indeed the case, and it is why a figure skater spins faster when she tucks her limbs in close to her body.

In three dimensions, the rotational mass of a rigid body is represented by a  $3 \times 3$  matrix known as its *inertia tensor*. It is usually represented by the symbol  $\mathbf{I}$  (as before, we won't describe how to calculate the inertia tensor here; see [17] for details):

$$\mathbf{I} = \begin{bmatrix} I_{xx} & I_{xy} & I_{xz} \\ I_{yx} & I_{yy} & I_{yz} \\ I_{zx} & I_{zy} & I_{zz} \end{bmatrix}.$$

The elements lying along the diagonal of this matrix are the moments of inertia of the body about its three principal axes,  $I_{xx}$ ,  $I_{yy}$  and  $I_{zz}$ . The off-diagonal elements are called *products of inertia*. They are zero when the body is symmetrical about all three principal axes (as would be the case for a rectangular box). When they are nonzero, they tend to produce physically realistic yet somewhat unintuitive motions that the average game player would probably think were "wrong" anyway. Therefore, the inertia tensor is often

simplified down to the three-element vector  $[I_{xx} \quad I_{yy} \quad I_{zz}]$  in game physics engines.

### 13.4.6.2 Orientation in Three Dimensions

In two dimensions, we know that the orientation of a rigid body can be described by a single angle  $\theta$ , which measures rotation about the  $z$ -axis (assuming the motion is taking place in the  $xy$ -plane). In three dimensions, a body's orientation could be represented using three Euler angles  $[\theta_x \quad \theta_y \quad \theta_z]$ , each representing the body's rotation about one of the three Cartesian axes. However, as we saw in Chapter 5, Euler angles suffer from gimbal lock problems and can be difficult to work with mathematically. Therefore, the orientation of a body is more often represented using either a  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  or a unit quaternion  $\mathbf{q}$ . We'll use the quaternion form exclusively in this chapter.

Recall that a quaternion is a four-element vector whose  $x$ -,  $y$ - and  $z$ -components can be interpreted as a unit vector  $\mathbf{u}$  lying along the axis of rotation, scaled by the sine of the half-angle and whose  $w$  component is the cosine of the half-angle:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{q} &= [q_x \quad q_y \quad q_z \quad q_w] \\ &= [\mathbf{q} \quad q_w] \\ &= [\mathbf{u} \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \quad \cos \frac{\theta}{2}].\end{aligned}$$

A body's orientation is of course a function of time, so we should write it  $\mathbf{q}(t)$ .

Again, we need to select an arbitrary direction to be our zero rotation. For example, we might say that by default, the front of every object will lie along the positive  $z$ -axis in world space, with  $y$  up and  $x$  to the left. Any non-identity quaternion will serve to rotate the object away from this canonical world-space orientation. The choice of the canonical orientation is arbitrary, but of course it's important to be consistent across all assets in the game.

### 13.4.6.3 Angular Velocity and Momentum in Three Dimensions

In three dimensions, angular velocity is a vector quantity, denoted by  $\boldsymbol{\omega}(t)$ . The angular velocity vector can be visualized as a unit-length vector  $\mathbf{u}$  that defines the axis of rotation, scaled by the two-dimensional angular velocity  $\omega_u = \dot{\theta}_u$  of the body about the  $u$ -axis. Hence,

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}(t) = \omega_u(t)\mathbf{u} = \dot{\theta}_u(t)\mathbf{u}.$$

In linear dynamics, we saw that if there are no forces acting on a body, then the linear acceleration is zero, and linear velocity is constant. In two-dimensional angular dynamics, this again holds true: If there are no torques

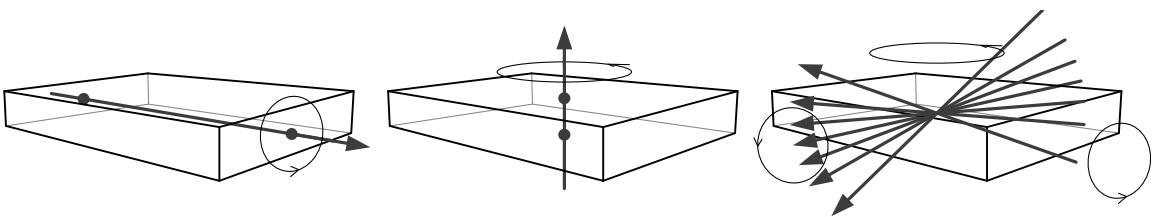


Figure 13.26. A rectangular object that is spun about its shortest or longest axis has a constant angular velocity vector. However, when spun about its medium-sized axis, the direction of the angular velocity vector changes wildly.

acting on a body in two dimensions, then the angular acceleration  $\alpha$  is zero, and the angular speed  $\omega$  about the  $z$ -axis is constant.

Unfortunately, this is *not* the case in three dimensions. It turns out that even when a rigid body is rotating in the absence of all forces, its angular velocity vector  $\omega(t)$  may not be constant because the axis of rotation can continually change direction. You can see this effect in action when you try to spin a rectangular object, like a block of wood, in mid-air in front of you. If you throw the block so that it is rotating about its shortest axis, it will spin in a stable way. The orientation of the axis stays roughly constant. The same thing happens if you try to spin the block about its longest axis. But if you try to spin the block around the remaining axis (the one that's neither the shortest nor the longest), the rotation will be utterly unstable. (Try it! Go steal a wooden block from a baby and spin it in various ways. On second thought, make sure to give it back when you're done.) The axis of rotation itself changes direction wildly as the object spins. This is illustrated in Figure 13.26.

The fact that the angular velocity vector can change in the absence of torques is another way of saying that angular velocity is not *conserved*. However, a related quantity called the *angular momentum* does remain constant in the absence of forces and hence *is* conserved. Angular momentum is the rotational equivalent of linear momentum:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{Angular:} & \text{Linear:} \\ \hline \mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{I}\omega(t) & \mathbf{p}(t) = m\mathbf{v}(t). \end{array}$$

Like the linear case, angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}(t)$  is a three-element vector. However, unlike the linear case, rotational mass (the inertia tensor) is not a scalar but rather a  $3 \times 3$  matrix. As such, the expression  $\mathbf{I}\omega$  is computed via a

matrix multiplication:

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_x(t) \\ L_y(t) \\ L_z(t) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} I_{xx} & I_{xy} & I_{xz} \\ I_{yx} & I_{yy} & I_{yz} \\ I_{zx} & I_{zy} & I_{zz} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \omega_x(t) \\ \omega_y(t) \\ \omega_z(t) \end{bmatrix}.$$

Because the angular velocity  $\omega$  is not conserved, we do not treat it as a primary quantity in our dynamics simulations the way we do the linear velocity  $\mathbf{v}$ . Instead, we treat angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}$  as the primary quantity. The angular velocity is a secondary quantity, determined only after we have determined the value of  $\mathbf{L}$  at each time step of the simulation.

#### 13.4.6.4 Torque in Three Dimensions

In three dimensions, we still calculate torque as the cross product between the radial position vector of the point of force application and the force vector itself ( $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ ). Equation (13.8) still holds, but we always write it in terms of the angular momentum because angular velocity is not a conserved quantity:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{N} &= \mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{\alpha}(t) \\ &= \mathbf{I} \frac{d\boldsymbol{\omega}(t)}{dt} \\ &= \frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{\omega}(t)) \\ &= \frac{d\mathbf{L}(t)}{dt}. \end{aligned}$$

#### 13.4.6.5 Solving the Equations of Angular Motion in Three Dimensions

When solving the equations of angular motion in three dimensions, we might be tempted to take exactly the same approach we used for linear motion and two-dimensional angular motion. We might guess that the differential equations of motion should be written

Angular 3D?	Linear:
$\mathbf{N}_{\text{net}}(t) = \mathbf{I}\dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}(t)$	$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t) = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}(t)$
$\boldsymbol{\omega}(t) = \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(t)$	$\mathbf{v}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t)$ ,

and using the explicit Euler method, we might guess that the approximate solutions to these ODEs would look something like this:

Angular 3D?	Linear:
$\boldsymbol{\omega}(t_2) = \boldsymbol{\omega}(t_1) + \mathbf{I}^{-1}\mathbf{N}_{\text{net}}(t_1)\Delta t$	$\mathbf{v}(t_2) = \mathbf{v}(t_1) + m^{-1}\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t)\Delta t$
$\boldsymbol{\theta}(t_2) = \boldsymbol{\theta}(t_1) + \boldsymbol{\omega}(t_1)\Delta t$	$\mathbf{r}(t_2) = \mathbf{r}(t_1) + \mathbf{v}(t_1)\Delta t$ .

However, this is *not* actually correct. The differential equations of three-dimensional angular motion differ from their linear and two-dimensional angular counterparts in two important ways:

1. Instead of solving for the angular velocity  $\omega$ , we solve for the angular momentum  $\mathbf{L}$  directly. We then calculate the angular velocity vector as a secondary quantity using  $\mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{L}$ . We do this because angular momentum is conserved, while angular velocity is not.
2. When solving for the orientation given the angular velocity, we have a problem: The angular velocity is a three-element *vector*, while the orientation is a four-element *quaternion*. How can we write an ODE relating a quaternion to a vector? The answer is that we cannot, at least not directly. But what we can do is convert the angular velocity vector into quaternion form and then apply a slightly odd-looking equation that relates the orientation quaternion to the angular velocity quaternion.

It turns out that when we express a rigid body's orientation as a quaternion, the derivative of this quaternion is related to the body's angular velocity vector in the following way. First, we construct an *angular velocity quaternion*. This quaternion contains the three components of the angular velocity vector in  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ , with its  $w$ -component set to zero:

$$\omega = [\omega_x \ \omega_y \ \omega_z \ 0].$$

Now the differential equation relating the orientation quaternion to the angular velocity quaternion is (for reasons we won't get into here) as follows:

$$\frac{d\omega(t)}{dt} = \dot{\mathbf{q}}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\omega(t)\mathbf{q}(t).$$

It's important to remember here that  $\omega(t)$  is the angular velocity *quaternion* as described above and that the product  $\omega(t)\mathbf{q}(t)$  is a *quaternion* product (see Section 5.4.2.1 for details).

So, we actually need to write the ODEs of motion as follows (note that I've recast the linear ODEs in terms of linear momentum as well, to underscore the similarities between the two cases):

Angular 3D:	Linear:
$\mathbf{N}_{\text{net}}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{L}}(t)$	$\mathbf{F}_{\text{net}}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{p}}(t)$
$\omega(t) = \mathbf{I}^{-1}\mathbf{L}(t)$	$\mathbf{v}(t) = m^{-1}\mathbf{p}(t)$
$\omega(t) = [\omega(t) \ 0]$	$\mathbf{v}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t).$
$\frac{1}{2}\omega(t)\mathbf{q}(t) = \dot{\mathbf{q}}(t)$	

Using the explicit Euler method, the final approximate solution to the angular ODEs in three dimensions is actually as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{L}(t_2) &= \mathbf{L}(t_1) + \mathbf{N}_{\text{net}}(t_1)\Delta t && \text{(vectors)} \\ &= \mathbf{L}(t_1) + \Delta t \sum_{\forall i} (\mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{F}_i(t_1)); && \text{(vectors)} \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}(t_2) &= [\mathbf{I}^{-1}\mathbf{L}(t_2) \quad 0]; && \text{(quaternions)} \\ \mathbf{q}(t_2) &= \mathbf{q}(t_1) + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\omega}(t_1)\mathbf{q}(t_1)\Delta t. && \text{(quaternions)}\end{aligned}$$

The orientation quaternion  $\mathbf{q}(t)$  should be renormalized periodically to reverse the effects of the inevitable accumulation of floating-point error.

As always, the explicit Euler method is being used here just as an example. In a real engine, we would employ velocity Verlet, RK4 or some other more-stable and more-accurate numerical method.

### 13.4.7 Collision Response

Everything we've discussed so far assumes that our rigid bodies are neither colliding with anything, nor is their motion constrained in any other way. When bodies collide with one another, the dynamics simulation must take steps to ensure that they respond realistically to the collision and that they are never left in a state of interpenetration after the simulation step has been completed. This is known as *collision response*.

#### 13.4.7.1 Energy

Before we discuss collision response, we must understand the concept of *energy*. When a force moves a body over a distance, we say that the force does *work*. Work represents a change in energy—that is, a force either adds energy to a system of rigid bodies (e.g., an explosion) or it removes energy from the system (e.g., friction). Energy comes in two forms. The potential energy  $V$  of a body is the energy it has simply because of where it is relative to a force field such as a gravitational or a magnetic field. (For example, the higher up a body is above the surface of the Earth, the more gravitational potential energy it has.) The kinetic energy of a body  $T$  represents the energy arising from the fact that it is moving relative to other bodies in a system. The total energy  $E = V + T$  of an isolated system of bodies is a *conserved* quantity, meaning that it remains constant unless energy is being drained from the system or added from outside the system.

The kinetic energy arising from linear motion can be written

$$T_{\text{linear}} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2,$$

or in terms of the linear momentum and velocity vectors:

$$T_{\text{linear}} = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Analogously, the kinetic energy arising from a body's rotational motion is as follows:

$$T_{\text{angular}} = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

Energy and its conservation can be extremely useful concepts when solving all sorts of physics problems. We'll see the role that energy plays in the determination of collision responses in the following section.

#### 13.4.7.2 Impulsive Collision Response

When two bodies collide in the real world, a complex set of events takes place. The bodies compress slightly and then rebound, changing their velocities and losing energy to sound and heat in the process. Most real-time rigid body dynamics simulations approximate all of these details with a simple model based on an analysis of the momenta and kinetic energies of the colliding objects, called *Newton's law of restitution for instantaneous collisions with no friction*. It makes the following simplifying assumptions about the collision:

- The collision force acts over an infinitesimally short period of time, turning it into what we call an idealized *impulse*. This causes the velocities of the bodies to change *instantaneously* as a result of the collision.
- There is no friction at the point of contact between the objects' surfaces. This is another way of saying that the impulse acting to separate the bodies during the collision is normal to both surfaces—there is no tangential component to the collision impulse. (This is just an idealization of course; we'll get to friction in Section 13.4.7.5.)
- The nature of the complex submolecular interactions between the bodies during the collision can be approximated by a single quantity known as the *coefficient of restitution*, customarily denoted by the symbol  $\epsilon$ . This coefficient describes how much energy is lost during the collision. When  $\epsilon = 1$ , the collision is perfectly elastic, and no energy is lost. (Picture two billiard balls colliding in mid-air.) When  $\epsilon = 0$ , the collision is perfectly *inelastic*, also known as perfectly *plastic* and the kinetic energy of both bodies is lost. The bodies will stick together after the collision, continuing to move in the direction that their mutual center of mass had been moving before the collision. (Picture pieces of putty being slammed together.)

All collision analysis is based around the idea that linear momentum is conserved. So for two bodies 1 and 2, we can write

$$\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2 = \mathbf{p}'_1 + \mathbf{p}'_2, \quad \text{or}$$

$$m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 = m'_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 + m'_2 \mathbf{v}'_2$$

where the primed symbols represent the momenta and velocities after the collision. The kinetic energy of the system is conserved as well, but we must account for the energy lost due to heat and sound by introducing an additional energy loss term  $T_{\text{lost}}$ :

$$\frac{1}{2} m_1 v_1^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 v_2^2 = \frac{1}{2} m'_1 v'_1^2 + \frac{1}{2} m'_2 v'_2^2 + T_{\text{lost}}.$$

If the collision is perfectly *elastic*, the energy loss  $T_{\text{lost}}$  is zero. If it is perfectly *plastic*, the energy loss is equal to the original kinetic energy of the system, the primed kinetic energy sum becomes zero and the bodies stick together after the collision.

To resolve a collision using Newton's law of restitution, we apply an idealized *impulse* to the two bodies. An impulse is like a force that acts over an infinitesimally short period of time and thereby causes an instantaneous change in the velocity of the body to which it is applied. We could denote an impulse with the symbol  $\Delta \mathbf{p}$ , since it is a change in momentum ( $\Delta \mathbf{p} = m \Delta \mathbf{v}$ ). However, most physics texts use the symbol  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$  (pronounced "p-hat") instead, so we'll do the same.

Because we assume that there is no friction involved in the collision, the impulse vector must be normal to both surfaces at the point of contact. In other words,  $\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \hat{\mathbf{p}} \mathbf{n}$ , where  $\mathbf{n}$  is the unit vector normal to both surfaces. This is illustrated in Figure 13.27. If we assume that the surface normal points toward body 1, then body 1 experiences an impulse of  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ , and body 2 experiences an equal but opposite impulse  $-\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ . Hence, the momenta of the two bodies after the collision can be written in terms of their momenta prior to the collision and the impulse  $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{p}'_1 &= \mathbf{p}_1 + \hat{\mathbf{p}} & \mathbf{p}'_2 &= \mathbf{p}_2 - \hat{\mathbf{p}} \\ m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 &= m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \hat{\mathbf{p}} & m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2 &= m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 - \hat{\mathbf{p}} \\ \mathbf{v}'_1 &= \mathbf{v}_1 + \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}{m_1} \mathbf{n} & \mathbf{v}'_2 &= \mathbf{v}_2 + \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}{m_2} \mathbf{n}. \end{aligned} \tag{13.9}$$

The *coefficient of restitution* provides the key relationship between the relative velocities of the bodies before and after the collision. Given that the centers of mass of the bodies have velocities before the collision and afterward, the coefficient of restitution  $\varepsilon$  is defined as follows:

$$(\mathbf{v}'_2 - \mathbf{v}'_1) = \varepsilon (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1). \tag{13.10}$$

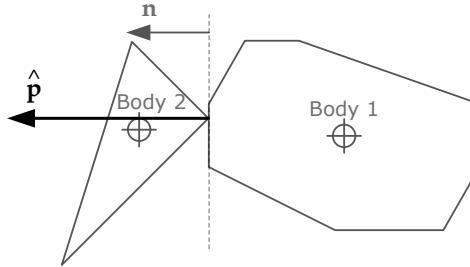


Figure 13.27. In a frictionless collision, the impulse acts along a line normal to both surfaces at the point of contact. This line is defined by the unit normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$ .

Solving Equations (13.9) and (13.10) under the temporary assumption that the bodies cannot rotate yields

$$\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \hat{p}\mathbf{n} = \frac{(\varepsilon + 1)(\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n})}{\frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2}} \mathbf{n}.$$

Notice that if the coefficient of restitution is one (perfectly elastic collision) and if the mass of body 2 is effectively infinite (as it would be for, say, a concrete driveway), then  $(1/m_2) = 0$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 = 0$ , and this expression reduces to a reflection of the other body's velocity vector about the contact normal, as we'd expect:

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\mathbf{p}} &= -2m_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}; \\ \mathbf{v}'_1 &= \frac{\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2}{m_1} \\ &= \frac{m_1\mathbf{v}_1 - 2m_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}}{m_1} \\ &= \mathbf{v}_1 - 2m_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}.\end{aligned}$$

The solution gets a bit hairier when we take the rotations of the bodies into account. In this case, we need to look at the velocities of the points of contact on the two bodies rather than the velocities of their centers of mass, and we need to calculate the impulse in such a way as to impart a realistic rotational effect as a result of the collision. We won't get into the details here, but Chris Hecker's article, available at <http://chrishecker.com/images/e/e7/Gdmphys3.pdf>, does an excellent job of describing both the linear and the rotational aspects of collision response. The theory behind collision response is explained more fully in [17].

### 13.4.7.3 Penalty Forces

Another approach to collision response is to introduce imaginary forces called *penalty forces* into the simulation. A penalty force acts like a stiff damped spring attached to the contact points between two bodies that have just interpenetrated. Such a force induces the desired collision response over a short but finite period of time. Using this approach, the spring constant  $k$  effectively controls the duration of the interpenetration, and the damping coefficient  $b$  acts a bit like the restitution coefficient. When  $b = 0$ , there is no damping—no energy is lost, and the collision is perfectly elastic. As  $b$  increases, the collision becomes more plastic.

Let's take a brief look at some of the pros and cons of the penalty force approach to resolving collisions. On the positive side, penalty forces are easy to implement and understand. They also work well when three or more bodies are interpenetrating each other. This problem is very difficult to solve when resolving collisions one pair at a time. A good example is the Sony PS3 demo in which a huge number of rubber duckies are poured into a bathtub—the simulation was nice and stable despite the very large number of collisions. The penalty force method is a great way to achieve this.

Unfortunately, because penalty forces respond to penetration (i.e., relative position) rather than to relative velocity, the forces may not align with the direction we would intuitively expect, especially during a high-speed collision. A classic example is a car driving head-on into a truck. The car is low while the truck is tall. Using only the penalty force method, it is easy to arrive at a situation in which the penalty force is vertical, rather than horizontal as we would expect given the velocities of the two vehicles. This can cause the truck to pop its nose up into the air while the car drives under it.

In general, the penalty force technique works well for low-speed impacts, but it does not work well at all when objects are moving quickly. It is possible to combine the penalty force method with other collision resolution approaches in order to strike a balance between stability in the presence of large numbers of interpenetrations and responsiveness and more-intuitive behavior at high velocities.

### 13.4.7.4 Using Constraints to Resolve Collisions

As we'll investigate in Section 13.4.8, most physics systems permit various kinds of constraints to be imposed on the motion of the bodies in the simulation. If collisions are treated as constraints that disallow object interpenetration, then they can be resolved by simply running the simulation's general-purpose constraint solver. If the constraint solver is fast and produces high-

quality visual results, this can be an effective way to resolve collisions.

#### 13.4.7.5 Friction

Friction is a force that arises between two bodies that are in continuous contact, resisting their movement relative to one another. There are a number of types of friction. *Static friction* is the resistance one feels when trying to start a stationary object sliding along a surface. *Dynamic friction* is a resisting force that arises when objects are actually moving relative to one another. *Sliding friction* is a type of dynamic friction that resists movement when an object slides along a surface. *Rolling friction* is a type of static or dynamic friction that acts at the point of contact between a wheel or other round object and the surface it is rolling on. When the surface is very rough, the rolling friction is exactly strong enough to cause the wheel to roll without sliding, and it acts as a form of static friction. If the surface is somewhat smooth, the wheel may slip, and a dynamic form of rolling friction comes into play. *Collision friction* is the friction that acts instantaneously at the point of contact when two bodies collide while moving. (This is the friction force that we ignored when discussing Newton's law of restitution in Section 13.4.7.1.) Various kinds of *constraints* can have friction as well. For example, a rusted hinge or axle might resist being turned by introducing a friction torque.

Let's look at an example to understand the essence of how friction works. Linear sliding friction is proportional to the component of an object's weight that is acting normal to the surface on which it is sliding. The weight of an object is just the force due to gravity,  $\mathbf{G} = mg$ , which is always directed downward. The component of this force normal to an inclined surface that makes an angle  $\theta$  with the horizontal is just  $G_N = mg \cos \theta$ . The friction force  $f$  is then

$$f = \mu mg \cos \theta,$$

where the constant of proportionality  $\mu$  is called the *coefficient of friction*. This force acts tangentially to the surface, in a direction opposite to the attempted or actual motion of the object. This is illustrated in Figure 13.28.

Figure 13.28 also shows the component of the gravitational force acting tangent to the surface,  $G_T = mg \sin \theta$ . This force tends to make the object accelerate down the plane, but in the presence of sliding friction, it is counteracted by  $f$ . Hence, the net force tangent to the surface is

$$F_{\text{net}} = G_T - f = mg(\sin \theta - \mu \cos \theta).$$

If the angle of inclination is such that the expression in parentheses is zero, the object will slide at a constant speed (if already moving) or be at rest. If the

expression is greater than zero, the object will accelerate down the surface. If it is less than zero, the object will decelerate and eventually come to rest.

#### 13.4.7.6 Welding

An additional problem arises when an object is sliding across a polygon soup. Recall that a polygon soup is just what its name implies—a soup of essentially unrelated polygons (usually triangles). As an object slides from one triangle of this soup to the next, the collision detection system will generate additional spurious contacts because it will think that the object is about to hit the edge of the next triangle. This is illustrated in Figure 13.29.

There are a number of solutions to this problem. One is to analyze the set of contacts and discard ones that appear to be spurious, based on various heuristics and possibly some knowledge of the object's contacts on a previous frame (e.g., if we know the object was sliding along a surface and a contact normal arises that is due to the object being near the edge of its current triangle, then discard that contact normal). Versions of Havok prior to 4.5 employed this approach.

Starting with Havok 4.5, a new technique was implemented that essentially annotates the mesh with triangle adjacency information. The collision detection system therefore “knows” which edges are interior edges and can discard spurious collisions reliably and quickly. Havok describes this solution as *welding*, because in effect the edges of the triangles in the poly soup are welded to one another.

#### 13.4.7.7 Coming to Rest, Islands and Sleeping

When energy is removed from a simulated system via friction, damping or other means, moving objects will eventually come to rest. This seems like a natural consequence of the simulation—something that would just “fall out” of the differential equations of motion. Unfortunately, in a real computerized

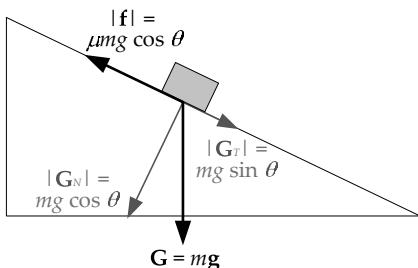


Figure 13.28. The force of friction  $f$  is proportional to the normal component of the object's weight. The proportionality constant  $\mu$  is called the coefficient of friction.

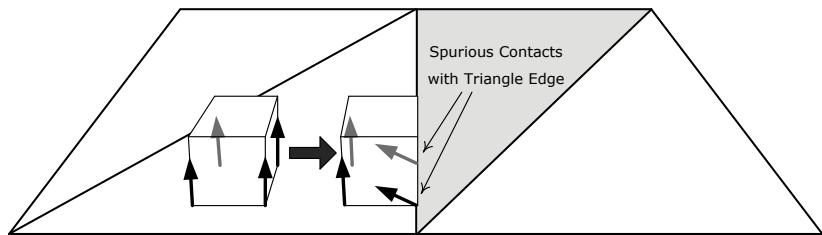


Figure 13.29. When an object slides between two adjacent triangles, spurious contacts with the new triangle's edge can be generated.

simulation, coming to rest is never quite that simple. Various factors such as floating-point error, inaccuracies in the calculation of restitution forces and numerical instability can cause objects to jitter forever rather than coming to rest as they should. For this reason, most physics engines use various heuristic methods to detect when objects are oscillating instead of coming to rest as they should. Additional energy can be removed from the system to ensure that such objects eventually settle down, or they can simply be stopped abruptly once their average velocity drops below a threshold.

When an object really does stop moving (finds itself in a state of equilibrium), there is no reason to continue integrating its equations of motion every frame. To optimize performance, most physics engines allow dynamic objects in the simulation to be *put to sleep*. This excludes them from the simulation temporarily, although sleeping objects are still active from a collision standpoint. If any force or impulse begins acting on a sleeping object, or if the object loses one of the contacts that was holding it in equilibrium, it will be awoken so that its dynamic simulation can be resumed.

### Sleep Criteria

Various criteria can be used to determine whether or not a body qualifies for sleep. It's not always easy to make this determination in a robust manner for all situations. For example, a long pendulum might have very low angular momentum and yet still be moving visibly on-screen.

The most commonly used criteria for equilibrium detection include:

- The body is *supported*. This means it has three or more contact points (or one or more *planar* contacts) that allow it to attain equilibrium with gravity and any other forces that might be affecting it.
- The body's *linear and angular momentum* are below a predefined threshold.

- A *running average* of the linear and angular momentum are below a pre-defined threshold.
- The total *kinetic energy* of the body ( $T = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}$ ) is below a predefined threshold. The kinetic energy is usually mass-normalized so that a single threshold can be used for all bodies regardless of their masses.

The motion of a body that is about to go to sleep might be *progressively damped* so that it comes to a smooth stop rather than stopping abruptly.

### *Simulation Islands*

Both Havok and PhysX further optimize their performance by automatically grouping objects that either are interacting or have the potential to interact in the near future into sets called *simulation islands*. Each simulation island can be simulated independently of all the other islands—an approach that is highly conducive to cache coherency optimizations and parallel processing.

Havok and PhysX both put entire islands to sleep rather than individual rigid bodies. This approach has its pros and cons. The performance boost is obviously larger when a whole group of interacting objects can be put to sleep. On the other hand, if even one object in an island is awake, the entire island is awake. Overall, it seems that the pros tend to outweigh the cons, so the simulation island design is one we're likely to continue to see in future versions of these SDKs.

### 13.4.8 Constraints

An unconstrained rigid body has six degrees of freedom (DOF): It can translate in three dimensions, and it can rotate about the three Cartesian axes. *Constraints* restrict an object's motion, reducing its degrees of freedom either partially or completely. Constraints can be used to model all sorts of interesting behaviors in a game. Here are a few examples:

- a swinging chandelier (point-to-point constraint);
- a door that can be kicked, slammed, blown off its hinges (hinge constraint);
- a vehicle's wheel assembly (axle constraint with damped springs for suspension);
- a train or a car pulling a trailer (stiff spring/rod constraint);
- a rope or chain (chain of stiff springs or rods); and

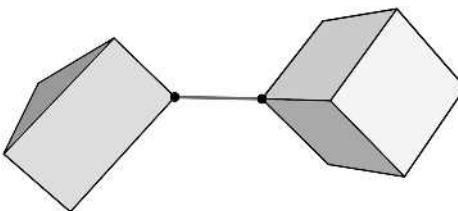


Figure 13.31. A stiff spring constraint requires that a point on body A be separated from a point on body B by a user-specified distance.

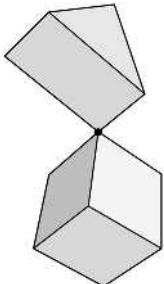


Figure 13.30. A point-to-point constraint requires that a point on body A aligns with a point on body B.

- a rag doll (specialized constraints that mimic the behavior of various joints in the human skeleton).

In the sections that follow, we'll briefly investigate these and some of the other most common kinds of constraints typically provided by a physics SDK.

#### 13.4.8.1 Point-to-Point Constraints

A point-to-point constraint is the simplest type of constraint. It acts like a ball-and-socket joint—bodies can move in any way they like, as long as a specified point on one body lines up with a specified point on the other body. This is illustrated in Figure 13.30.

#### 13.4.8.2 Stiff Springs

A stiff spring constraint is a lot like a point-to-point constraint except that it keeps the two points separated by a specified distance. This kind of constraint acts like an invisible rod between the two constrained points. Figure 13.31 illustrates this constraint.

#### 13.4.8.3 Hinge Constraints

A hinge constraint limits rotational motion to only a single degree of freedom, about the hinge's axis. An *unlimited hinge* acts like an axle, allowing the constrained object to complete an unlimited number of full rotations. It's common to define *limited hinges* that can only move through a predefined range of angles about the one allowed axis. For example, a one-way door can only move through a 180 degree arc, because otherwise it would pass through the adjacent wall. Likewise, a two-way door is constrained to move through a  $\pm 180$  degree arc. Hinge constraints may also be given a degree of friction in the form of a torque that resists rotation about the hinge's axis. A limited hinge constraint is shown in Figure 13.32.

#### 13.4.8.4 Prismatic Constraints

Prismatic constraints act like a piston: A constrained body's motion is restricted to a single translational degree of freedom. A prismatic constraint may or may not permit rotation about the translation axis of the piston. Prismatic constraints can of course be limited or unlimited and may or may not include friction. A prismatic constraint is illustrated in Figure 13.33.

#### 13.4.8.5 Other Common Constraint Types

Many other types of constraints are possible, of course. Here are just a few examples:

- *Planar*. Objects are constrained to move in a two-dimensional plane.
- *Wheel*. This is typically a hinge constraint with unlimited rotation, coupled with some form of vertical suspension simulated via a spring-damper assembly.
- *Pulley*. In this specialized constraint, an imaginary rope passes through a pulley and is attached to two bodies. The bodies move along the line of the rope via a leverage ratio.

Constraints may be breakable, meaning that after enough force is applied, they automatically come apart. Alternatively, the game can turn the constraint on and off at will, using its own criteria for when the constraint should break.

#### 13.4.8.6 Constraint Chains

Long chains of linked bodies are sometimes difficult to simulate in a stable manner because of the iterative nature of the constraint solver. A *constraint chain* is a specialized group of constraints with information that tells the constraint solver how the objects are connected. This allows the solver to deal with the chain in a more stable manner than would otherwise be possible.

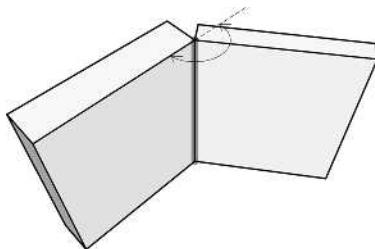


Figure 13.32. A limited hinge constraint mimics the behavior of a door.

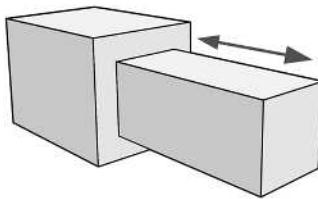


Figure 13.33. A prismatic constraint acts like a piston.

#### 13.4.8.7 Rag Dolls

A rag doll is a physical simulation of the way a human body might move when it is dead or unconscious and hence entirely limp. Rag dolls are created by linking together a collection of rigid bodies, one for each semi-rigid part of the body. For example, we might have capsules for the feet, calves, thighs, hands, upper and lower arms and head and possibly a few for the torso to simulate the flexibility of the spine.

The rigid bodies in a rag doll are connected to one another via constraints. Rag doll constraints are specialized to mimic the kinds of motions the joints in a real human body can perform. We usually make use of constraint chains to improve the stability of the simulation.

A rag doll simulation is always tightly integrated with the animation system. As the rag doll moves in the physics world, we extract the positions and rotations of the rigid bodies, and we use this information to drive the positions and orientations of certain joints in the animated skeleton. So in effect, a rag doll is really just a form of *procedural animation* that happens to be driven by the physics system. (See Chapter 12 for more details on skeletal animation.)

Of course, implementing a rag doll is not quite as simple as I've made it sound here. For one thing, there's usually not a one-to-one mapping between the rigid bodies in the rag doll and the joints in the animated skeleton—the skeleton usually has more joints than the rag doll has bodies. Therefore, we need a system that can map rigid bodies to joints (i.e., one that "knows" to which joint each rigid body in the rag doll corresponds). There may be additional joints between those that are being driven by the rag doll bodies, so the mapping system must also be capable of determining the correct pose transforms for these intervening joints. This is not an exact science. We must apply artistic judgment and/or some knowledge of human biomechanics in order to achieve a natural-looking rag doll.

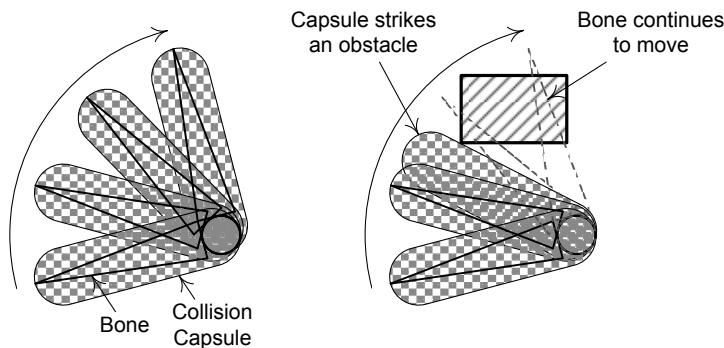


Figure 13.34. With a powered rag doll constraint, and in the absence of any additional forces or torques, a rigid body representing the lower arm can be made to exactly track the movements of an animated elbow joint (left). If an obstacle blocks the motion of the body, it will diverge from that of the animated elbow joint in a realistic way (right).

#### 13.4.8.8 Powered Constraints

Constraints can also be “powered,” meaning that an external engine system such as the animation system can indirectly control the translations and orientations of the rigid bodies in the rag doll.

Let’s take an elbow joint as an example. An elbow acts pretty much like a limited hinge, with a little less than 180 degrees of free rotation. (Actually, an elbow can also rotate axially, but we’ll ignore that for the purposes of this discussion.) To power this constraint, we model the elbow as a *rotational spring*. Such a spring exerts a torque proportional to the spring’s angle of deflection away from some predefined rest angle,  $N = -k(\theta - \theta_{\text{rest}})$ . Now imagine changing the rest angle externally, say by ensuring that it always matches the angle of the elbow joint in an animated skeleton. As the rest angle changes, the spring will find itself out of equilibrium, and it will exert a torque that tends to rotate the elbow back into alignment with  $\theta_{\text{rest}}$ . In the absence of any other forces or torques, the rigid bodies will exactly track the motion of the elbow joint in the animated skeleton. But if other forces are introduced (for example, the lower arm comes in contact with an immovable object), then these forces will play into the overall motion of the elbow joint, allowing it to diverge from the animated motion in a somewhat realistic manner. As illustrated in Figure 13.34, this provides the illusion of a human who is trying her best to move in a certain way (i.e., the “ideal” motion provided by the animation) but who is sometimes unable to do so due to the limitations of the physical world (e.g., her arm gets caught on something as she tries to swing it forward).

### 13.4.9 Controlling the Motions of Rigid Bodies

Most game designs call for a degree of control over the way rigid bodies move over and above the way they would move naturally under the influence of gravity and in response to collisions with other objects in the scene. For example:

- An air vent applies an upward force to any object that enters its shaft of influence.
- A car is coupled to a trailer and exerts a pulling force on it as it moves.
- A tractor beam exerts a force on an unwitting spacecraft.
- An anti-gravity device causes objects to hover.
- The flow of a river creates a force field that causes objects floating in the river to move downstream.

And the list goes on. Most physics engines typically provide their users with a number of ways to exert control over the bodies in the simulation. We'll outline the most common of these mechanisms in the following sections.

#### 13.4.9.1 Gravity

Gravity is ubiquitous in most games that take place on the surface of the Earth or some other planet (or on a spacecraft with simulated gravity). Gravity is technically not a force but rather a (roughly) constant acceleration, so it affects all bodies equally regardless of their mass. Because of its ubiquitous and special nature, the magnitude and direction of the gravitational acceleration is specified via a global setting in most SDKs. (If you're writing a space game, you can always set gravity to zero to eliminate it from the simulation.)

#### 13.4.9.2 Applying Forces

Any number of forces can be applied to the bodies in a game physics simulation. A force always acts over a finite time interval. (If it acted instantaneously, it would be called an *impulse*—more on that in Section 13.4.9.4 below.) The forces in a game are often dynamic in nature—they often change their directions and/or their magnitudes every frame. So the force-application function in most physics SDKs is designed to be called once per frame for the duration of the force's influence. The signature of such a function usually looks something like this: `applyForce (const Vector& forceInNewtons)`, where the duration of the force is assumed to be  $\Delta t$ .

### 13.4.9.3 Applying Torques

When a force is applied such that its line of action passes through the center of mass of a body, no torque is generated, and only the body's linear acceleration is affected. If it is applied off-center, it will induce *both* a linear and a rotational acceleration. A *pure torque* can be applied to a body as well by applying two equal and opposite forces to points equidistant from the center of mass. The linear motions induced by such a pair of forces will cancel each other out (since for the purposes of linear dynamics, the forces both act at the center of mass). This leaves only their rotational effects. A pair of torque-inducing forces like this is known as a *couple* ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Couple\\_\(mechanics\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Couple_(mechanics))). A special function such as `applyTorque(const Vector& torque)` may be provided for this purpose. However, if your physics SDK provides no `applyTorque()` function, you can always write one and have it generate a suitable couple instead.

### 13.4.9.4 Applying Impulses

As we saw in Section 13.4.7.2, an *impulse* is an instantaneous change in velocity (or actually, a change in momentum). Technically speaking, an impulse is a force that acts for an infinitesimal amount of time. However, the shortest possible duration of force application in a time-stepped dynamics simulation is  $\Delta t$ , which is not short enough to simulate an impulse adequately. As such, most physics SDKs provide a function with a signature such as `applyImpulse(const Vector& impulse)` for the purposes of applying impulses to bodies. Of course, impulses come in two flavors—linear and angular—and a good SDK should provide functions for applying both types.

## 13.4.10 The Collision/Physics Step

Now that we've covered the theory and some of the technical details behind implementing a collision and physics system, let's take a brief look at how these systems actually perform their updates every frame.

Every collision/physics engine performs the following basic tasks during its update step. Different physics SDKs may perform these phases in different orders. That said, the technique I've seen used most often goes something like this:

1. The forces and torques acting on the bodies in the physics world are integrated forward by  $\Delta t$  in order to determine their tentative positions and orientations next frame.

2. The collision detection library is called to determine if any new contacts have been generated between any of the objects as a result of their tentative movement. (The bodies normally keep track of their contacts in order to take advantage of temporal coherency. Hence, at each step of the simulation, the collision engine need only determine whether any previous contacts have been lost and whether any new contacts have been added.)
3. Collisions are resolved, often by applying impulses or penalty forces or as part of the constraint-solving step below. Depending on the SDK, this phase may or may not include continuous collision detection (CCD, otherwise known as time of impact detection or TOI).
4. Constraints are satisfied by the constraint solver.

At the conclusion of step 4, some of the bodies may have moved away from their tentative positions as determined in step 1. This movement may cause additional interpenetrations between objects or cause other previously satisfied constraints to be broken. Therefore, steps 1 through 4 (or sometimes only 2 through 4, depending on how collisions and constraints are resolved) are repeated until either (a) all collisions have been successfully resolved and all constraints are satisfied, or (b) a predefined maximum number of iterations has been exceeded. In the latter case, the solver effectively “gives up,” with the hope that things will resolve themselves naturally during subsequent frames of the simulation. This helps to avoid performance spikes by amortizing the cost of collision and constraint resolution over multiple frames. However, it can lead to incorrect-looking behavior if the errors are too large or if the time step is too long or is inconsistent. Penalty forces can be blended into the simulation in order to gradually resolve these problems over time.

#### 13.4.10.1 The Constraint Solver

A constraint solver is essentially an iterative algorithm that attempts to satisfy a large number of constraints simultaneously by *minimizing the error* between the actual positions and rotations of the bodies in the physics world and their ideal positions and rotations as defined by the constraints. As such, constraint solvers are essentially iterative error-minimization algorithms.

Let’s take a look first at how a constraint solver works in the trivial case of a single pair of bodies connected by a single hinge constraint. During each step of the physics simulation, the numerical integrator will find new tentative transforms for the two bodies. The constraint solver then evaluates their

relative positions and calculates the error between the positions and orientations of their shared axis of rotation. If any error is detected, the solver moves the bodies in such a way as to minimize or eliminate it. Since there are no other bodies in the system, the second iteration of the step should discover no new contacts, and the constraint solver will find that the one hinge constraint is now satisfied. Hence the loop can exit without further iterations.

When more than one constraint must be satisfied simultaneously, more iterations may be required. During each iteration, the numerical integrator will sometimes tend to move the bodies out of alignment with their constraints, while the constraint solver tends to put them back into alignment. With luck, and a carefully designed approach to minimizing error in the constraint solver, this feedback loop should eventually settle into a valid solution. However, the solution may not always be exact. This is why, in games with physics engines, you sometimes witness seemingly impossible behaviors, like chains that stretch (opening up little gaps between the links), objects that interpenetrate briefly or hinges that momentarily move beyond their allowable ranges. The goal of the constraint solver is to minimize error—it's not always possible to eliminate it completely.

#### 13.4.10.2 Variations between Engines

The description given above is of course an over-simplification of what really goes on in a physics/collision engine every frame. The way in which the various phases of computation are performed, and their order relative to one another, may vary from physics SDK to physics SDK. For example, some kinds of constraints are modeled as forces and torques that are taken care of by the numerical integration step rather than being resolved by the constraint solver. Collision may be run before the integration step rather than after. Collisions may be resolved in any number of different ways. Our goal here is merely to give you a taste of how these systems work. For a detailed understanding of how any one SDK operates, you'll want to read its documentation and probably also inspect its source code (presuming the relevant bits are available for you to read). The curious and industrious reader can get a good start by downloading and experimenting with Open Dynamics Engine (ODE) and/or PhysX, as these two SDKs are available for free. You can also learn a great deal from ODE's wiki, which is available at [http://opende.sourceforge.net/wiki/index.php/Main\\_Page](http://opende.sourceforge.net/wiki/index.php/Main_Page).

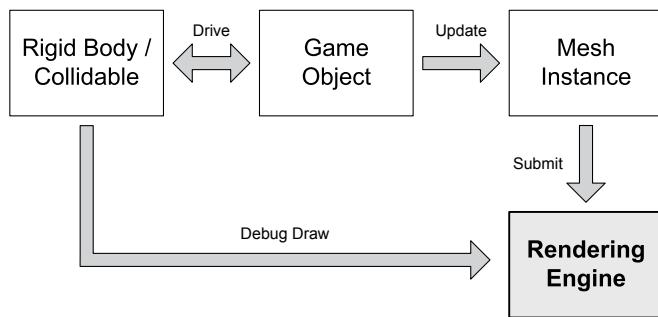


Figure 13.35. Rigid bodies are linked to their visual representations by way of game objects. An optional direct rendering path is usually provided so that the locations of the rigid bodies can be visualized for debugging purposes.

## 13.5 Integrating a Physics Engine into Your Game

Obviously, a collision/physics engine is of little use by itself—it must be integrated into your game engine. In this section, we’ll discuss the most common interface points between the collision/physics engine and the rest of the game code.

### 13.5.1 Linking Game Objects and Rigid Bodies

The rigid bodies and collidables in the collision/physics world are nothing more than abstract mathematical descriptions. In order for them to be useful in the context of a game, we need to link them in some way to their visual representations on-screen. Usually, we don’t draw the rigid bodies directly (except for debugging purposes). Instead, the rigid bodies are used to describe the shape, size, and physical behavior of the logical objects that make up the virtual game world. We’ll discuss game objects in depth in Chapter 16, but for the time being, we’ll rely on our intuitive notion of what a game object is—a logical entity in the game world, such as a character, a vehicle, a weapon, a floating power-up and so on. So the linkage between a rigid body in the physics world and its visual representation on-screen is usually indirect, with the logical game object serving as the hub that links the two together. This is illustrated in Figure 13.35.

In general, a game object is represented in the collision/physics world by zero or more rigid bodies. The following list describes three possible scenarios:

- *Zero rigid bodies.* Game objects without any rigid bodies in the physics

world act as though they are not solid, because they have no collision representation at all. Decorative objects with which the player or non-player characters cannot interact, such as birds flying overhead or portions of the game world that can be seen but never reached, might have no collision. This scenario can also apply to objects whose collision detection is handled manually (without the help of the collision/physics engine) for some reason.

- *One rigid body.* Most simple game objects need only be represented by a single rigid body. In this case, the shape of the rigid body's collidable is chosen to closely approximate the shape of the game object's visual representation, and the rigid body's position and orientation exactly match the position and orientation of the game object itself.
- *Multiple rigid bodies.* Some complex game objects are represented by multiple rigid bodies in the collision/physics world. Examples include characters, machinery, vehicles or any object that is composed of multiple solid pieces that can move relative to one another. Such game objects usually make use of a skeleton (i.e., a hierarchy of affine transforms) to track the locations of their component pieces (although other means are certainly possible as well). The rigid bodies are usually linked to the joints of the skeleton in such a way that the position and orientation of each rigid body corresponds to the position and orientation of one of the joints. The joints in the skeleton might be driven by an animation, in which case the associated rigid bodies simply come along for the ride. Alternatively, the physics system might drive the locations of rigid bodies and hence indirectly control the locations of the joints. The mapping from joints to rigid bodies may or may not be one-to-one—some joints might be controlled entirely by animation, while others are linked to rigid bodies.

The linkage between game objects and rigid bodies must be managed by the engine, of course. Typically, each game object will manage its own rigid bodies, creating and destroying them when necessary, adding and removing them from the physics world as needed, and maintaining the connection between each rigid body's location and the location of the game object and/or one of its joints. For complex game objects consisting of multiple rigid bodies, a wrapper class of some kind may be used to manage them. This insulates the game objects from the nitty-gritty details of managing a collection of rigid bodies and allows different kinds of game objects to manage their rigid bodies in a consistent way.

### 13.5.1.1 Physics-Driven Bodies

If our game has a rigid body dynamics system, then presumably we want the motions of at least some of the objects in the game to be driven entirely by the simulation. Such game objects are called *physics-driven* objects. Bits of debris, exploding buildings, rocks rolling down a hillside, empty magazines and shell casings—these are all examples of physics-driven objects.

A physics-driven rigid body is linked to its game object by stepping the simulation and then querying the physics system for the body's position and orientation. This transform is then applied either to the game object as a whole or to a joint or some other data structure within the game object.

#### *Example: Building a Safe with a Detachable Door*

When physics-driven rigid bodies are linked to the joints of a skeleton, the bodies are often *constrained* to produce a desired kind of motion. As an example, let's look at how a safe with a detachable door might be modeled.

Visually, let's assume that the safe consists of a single triangle mesh with two submeshes, one for the housing and one for the door. A two-joint skeleton is used to control the motions of these two pieces. The root joint is bound to the housing of the safe, while the child joint is bound to the door in such a way that rotating the door joint causes the door submesh to swing open and shut in a suitable way.

The collision geometry for the safe is broken into two independent pieces as well, one for the housing and one for the door. These two pieces are used to create two totally separate rigid bodies in the collision/physics world. The rigid body for the safe's housing is attached to the root joint in the skeleton, and the door's rigid body is linked to the door joint. A hinge constraint is then added to the physics world to ensure that the door body swings properly relative to the housing when the dynamics of the two rigid bodies are simulated. The motions of the two rigid bodies representing the housing and the door are used to update the transforms of the two joints in the skeleton. Once the skeleton's matrix palette has been generated by the animation system, the rendering engine will end up drawing the housing and door submeshes in the locations of the rigid bodies within the physics world.

If the door needs to be blown off at some point, the constraint can be broken, and impulses can be applied to the rigid bodies to send them flying. Visibly, it will appear to the human player that the door and the housing have become separate objects. But in reality, it's still a single game object and a single triangle mesh with two joints and two rigid bodies.

### 13.5.1.2 Game-Driven Bodies

In most games, certain objects in the game world need to be moved about in a non-physical way. The motions of such objects might be determined by an animation or by following a spline path, or they might be under the control of the human player. We often want these objects to participate in collision detection—to be capable of pushing the physics-driven objects out of their way, for example—but we do not want the physics system to interfere with their motion in any way. To accommodate such objects, most physics SDKs provide a special type of rigid body known as a *game-driven body*. (Havok calls these “key framed” bodies.)

Game-driven bodies do not experience the effects of gravity. They are also considered to be infinitely massive by the physics system (usually denoted by a mass of zero, since this is an invalid mass for a physics-driven body). The assumption of infinite mass ensures that forces and collision impulses within the simulation can never change the velocity of a game-driven body.

To move a game-driven body around in the physics world, we cannot simply set its position and orientation every frame to match the location of the corresponding game object. Doing so would introduce discontinuities that would be very difficult for the physical simulation to resolve. (For example, a physics-driven body might find itself suddenly interpenetrating a game-driven body, but it would have no information about the game-driven body’s momentum with which to resolve the collision.) As such, game-driven bodies are usually moved using impulses—instantaneous changes in velocity that, when integrated forward in time, will position the bodies in the desired places at the end of the time step. Most physics SDKs provide a convenience function that will calculate the linear and angular impulses required in order to achieve a desired position and orientation on the next frame. When moving a game-driven body, we do have to be careful to zero out its velocity when it is supposed to stop. Otherwise, the body will continue forever along its last nonzero trajectory.

#### *Example: Animated Safe Door*

Let’s continue our example of the safe with a detachable door. Imagine that we want a character to walk up to the safe, dial the combination, open the door, deposit some money and close and lock the door again. Later, we want a different character to get the money in a rather less-civilized manner—by blowing the door off the safe. To do this, the safe would be modeled with an additional submesh for the dial and an additional joint that allows the dial to be rotated. No rigid body is required for the dial, however, unless of course

we want it to fly off when the door explodes.

During the animated sequence of the person opening and closing the safe, its rigid bodies can be put into game-driven mode. The animation now drives the joints, which in turn drive the rigid bodies. Later, when the door is to be blown off, we can switch the rigid bodies into physics-driven mode, break the hinge constraint, apply the impulse and watch the door fly.

As you've probably already noticed, the hinge constraint is not actually needed in this particular example. It would only be required if the door is to be left open at some point and we want to see the door swinging naturally in response to the safe being moved or the door being bumped.

#### 13.5.1.3 Fixed Bodies

Most game worlds are composed of both static geometry and dynamic objects. To model the static components of the game world, most physics SDKs provide a special kind of rigid body known as a *fixed body*. Fixed bodies act a bit like game-driven bodies, but they do not take part in the dynamics simulation at all. They are, in effect, collision-only bodies. This optimization can give a big performance boost to most games, especially those whose worlds contain only a small number of dynamic objects moving around within a large static world.

#### 13.5.1.4 Havok's Motion Type

In Havok, all types of rigid body are represented by instances of the class `hkpRigidBody`. Each instance contains a field that specifies its *motion type*. The motion type tells the system whether the body is fixed, game-driven (what Havok calls "key framed") or physics-driven (what Havok calls "dynamic"). If a rigid body is created with the fixed motion type, its type can never be changed. Otherwise, the motion type of a body can be changed dynamically at runtime. This feature can be incredibly useful. For example, an object that is in a character's hand would be game-driven. But as soon as the character drops or throws the object, it would be changed to physics-driven so the dynamics simulation can take over its motion. This is easily accomplished in Havok by simply changing the motion type at the moment of release.

The motion type also doubles as a way to give Havok some hints about the inertia tensor of a dynamic body. As such, the "dynamic" motion type is broken into subcategories such as "dynamic with sphere inertia," "dynamic with box inertia" and so on. Using the body's motion type, Havok can decide to apply various optimizations based on assumptions about the internal structure of the inertia tensor.

### 13.5.2 Updating the Simulation

The physics simulation must of course be updated periodically, usually once per frame. This does not merely involve stepping the simulation (numerically integrating, resolving collisions and applying constraints). The linkages between the game objects and their rigid bodies must be maintained as well. If the game needs to apply any forces or impulses to any of the rigid bodies, this must also be done every frame. The following steps are required to completely update the physics simulation:

- *Update game-driven rigid bodies.* The transforms of all game-driven rigid bodies in the physics world are updated so that they match the transforms of their counterparts (game objects or joints) in the game world.
- *Update phantoms.* A phantom shape acts like a game-driven collidable with no corresponding rigid body. It is used to perform certain kinds of collision queries. The locations of all phantoms are updated prior to the physics step, so that they will be in the right places when collision detection is run.
- *Update forces, apply impulses and adjust constraints.* Any forces being applied by the game are updated. Any impulses caused by game events that occurred this frame are applied. Constraints are adjusted if necessary. (For example, a breakable hinge might be checked to determine if it has been broken; if so, the physics engine is instructed to remove the constraint.)
- *Step the simulation.* We saw in Section 13.4.10 that the collision and physics engines must both be updated periodically. This involves *numerically integrating* the equations of motion to find the physical state of all bodies on the next frame, running the *collision detection* algorithm to add and remove contacts from all rigid bodies in the physics world, *solving collisions* and *applying constraints*. Depending on the SDK, these update phases may be hidden behind a single atomic `step()` function, or it may be possible to run them individually.
- *Update physics-driven game objects.* The transforms of all physics-driven objects are extracted from the physics world, and the transforms of the corresponding game objects or joints are updated to match.
- *Query phantoms.* The contacts of each phantom shape are read after the physics step and used to make decisions.
- *Perform collision cast queries.* Ray casts and shape casts are kicked off, either synchronously or asynchronously. When the results of these queries

become available, they are used by various engine systems to make decisions.

These tasks are usually performed in the order shown above, with the exception of ray and shape casts, which can theoretically be done at any time during the game loop. Clearly it makes sense to update game-driven bodies and apply forces and impulses prior to the step, so that the effects will be “seen” by the simulation. Likewise, physics-driven game objects should always be updated after the step, to ensure that we’re using the most up-to-date body transforms. Rendering typically happens after everything else in the game loop. This ensures that we are rendering a consistent view of the game world at a particular instant in time.

### 13.5.2.1 Timing Collision Queries

In order to query the collision system for up-to-date information, we need to run our collision queries (ray and shape casts) after the physics step has run during the frame. However, the physics step is usually run toward the end of the frame, after the game logic has made most of its decisions and the new locations of any game-driven physics bodies have been determined. When, then, should collision queries be run?

This question does not have an easy answer. We have a number of options, and most games end up using some or all of them:

- *Base decisions on last frame’s state.* In many cases, decisions can be made correctly based on last frame’s collision information. For example, we might want to know whether or not the player was standing on something last frame, in order to decide whether or not he should start falling this frame. In this case, we can safely run our collision queries prior to the physics step.
- *Accept a one-frame lag.* Even if we really want to know what is happening *this frame*, we may be able to tolerate a one-frame lag in our collision query results. This is usually only true if the objects in question aren’t moving too fast. For example, we might move one object forward in time and then want to know whether or not that object is now in the player’s line of sight. A one-frame-off error in this kind of query may not be noticeable to the player. If this is the case, we can run the collision query prior to the physics step (returning collision information from the previous frame) and then use these results as if they were an *approximation* to the collision state at the end of the current frame.
- *Run the query after the physics step.* Another approach is to run certain queries after the physics step. This is feasible when the decisions being

made based on the results of the query can be deferred until late in the frame. For example, a rendering effect that depends on the results of a collision query could be implemented this way.

### 13.5.2.2 Single-Threaded Updating

A very simple single-threaded game loop might look something like this:

```
F32 dt = 1.0f/30.0f;

for (;;) // main game loop
{
    g_hidManager->poll();

    g_gameObjectManager->preAnimationUpdate(dt);
    g_animationEngine->updateAnimations(dt);
    g_gameObjectManager->postAnimationUpdate(dt);

    g_physicsWorld->step(dt);
    g_animationEngine->updateRagDolls(dt);

    g_gameObjectManager->postPhysicsUpdate(dt);
    g_animationEngine->finalize();

    g_effectManager->update(dt);

    g_audioEngine->update(dt);

    // etc.

    g_renderManager->render();

    dt = calcDeltaTime();
}
```

In this example, our game objects are updated in three phases: once before animation runs (during which they can queue up new animations, for example), once after the animation system has calculated final local poses and a tentative global pose (but before the final global pose and matrix palette has been generated) and once after the physics system has been stepped.

- The locations of all game-driven rigid bodies are generally updated in `preAnimationUpdate()` or `postAnimationUpdate()`. Each game-driven body's transform is set to match the location of either the game object that owns it or a joint in the owner's skeleton.

- The location of each physics-driven rigid body is generally read in `post-PhysicsUpdate()` and used to update the location of either the game object or one of the joints in its skeleton.

One important concern is the frequency with which you are stepping the physics simulation. Most numerical integrators, collision detection algorithms and constraint solvers operate best when the time between steps ( $\Delta t$ ) is constant. It's usually a good idea to step your physics/collision SDK with an ideal 1/30 second or 1/60 second time delta and then govern the frame rate of your overall game loop. If your game drops below its target frame rate, it's better to let the physics slow down visually than to try to adjust the simulation time step to match the actual frame rate.

### 13.5.3 Example Uses of Collision and Physics in a Game

To make our discussion of collision and physics more concrete, let's take a high-level look at a few common examples of how collision and/or physics simulations are commonly used in real games.

#### 13.5.3.1 Simple Rigid Body Game Objects

Many games include simple physically simulated objects like weapons, rocks that can be picked up and thrown, empty magazines, furniture, objects on shelves that can be shot and so on. Such objects might be implemented by creating a custom game object class and giving it a reference to a rigid body in the physics world (e.g., `hkpRigidBody` if we're using Havok). Or we might create an add-on component class that handles simple rigid body collision and physics, allowing this feature to be added to virtually any type of game object in the engine.

Simple physics objects usually change their motion type at runtime. They are game-driven when being held in a character's hand and physics-driven when in free fall after having been dropped.

#### 13.5.3.2 Bullet Traces

Whether or not you approve of game violence, the fact remains that laser guns and projectile weapons of one form or another are a big part of most games. Let's look at how these are typically implemented.

Sometimes projectiles are implemented using ray casts. On the frame that the weapon is fired, we shoot off a ray cast, determine what object was hit and immediately impart the impact to the affected object.

Unfortunately, the ray cast approach does not account for the travel time of the projectile. It also does not account for the slight downward trajectory

caused by the influence of gravity. If these details are important to the game, we can model our projectiles using real rigid bodies that move through the collision/physics world over time. This is especially useful for slower-moving projectiles, like thrown objects or rockets. The thrown bricks in Naughty Dog's *The Last of Us* used such an approach.

There are plenty of issues to consider and deal with when implementing laser beams and projectiles. A few of the most common ones are discussed below.

### *Bullet Ray Casting*

When using ray casting to check for bullet hits, the question arises: Does the ray come from the camera focal point or from the tip of the gun in the player character's hands? This is especially problematic in a *third-person* shooter, where the ray coming out of the player's gun usually does not align with the ray coming from the camera focal point through the reticle in the center of the screen. This can lead to situations in which the reticle appears to be on top of a target, yet the third-person character is clearly behind an obstacle and would not be able to shoot that target from his point of view. Various "tricks" must usually be employed to ensure that the player feels like he or she is shooting what he or she is aiming at while maintaining plausible visuals on the screen.

### *Mismatches between Collision and Visible Geometry*

Mismatches between collision geometry and visible geometry can lead to situations in which the player can see the target through a small crack or just over the edge of some other object, and yet the collision geometry is solid, so the bullet cannot reach the target. (This is usually only a problem for the player character.) One solution to this problem is to use a render query instead of a collision query to determine if the ray actually hit the target. For example, during one of the rendering passes, we could generate a texture in which each pixel stores the unique identifier of the game object to which it corresponds. We can then query this texture to determine whether or not an enemy character or other suitable target occupies the pixel(s) underneath the weapon's reticle.

### *Aiming in a Dynamic Environment*

AI-controlled characters may need to "lead" their shots if projectiles take a finite amount of time to reach their targets.

### *Impact Effects*

When bullets hit their targets, we may want to trigger a sound or a particle effect, lay down a decal or perform other tasks.

In the Unreal engine, this is accomplished via a system of *physical materials*. Visible geometry can be tagged not only with visual materials, but with physical materials as well. The former defines how the surface looks, the latter defines how it reacts to physical interactions, including impact sounds, bullet “squib” particle effects, decals and so on. (See <http://udn.epicgames.com/Three/PhysicalMaterialSystem.html> for more details.)

At Naughty Dog, we use a very similar system: Collision geometry can be tagged with *polygon attributes* (PATs for short), which define certain physical behaviors like footstep sounds. But bullet impacts are treated in a special way, because we need them to interact directly with visible geometry rather than the crude collision geo. As such, visible materials can be tagged with an optional *bullet effect* that defines which bullet squib, impact sound and decal should be laid down for each possible type of projectile that might impact that surface.

#### 13.5.3.3 Grenades

Grenades in games are sometimes implemented as free-moving physics objects. However, this leads to a significant loss of control. Some control can be regained by imposing various artificial forces or impulses on the grenade. For example, we could apply an extreme air drag once the grenade bounces for the first time, in an attempt to limit the distance it can bounce away from its target.

Some game teams actually go so far as to manage the grenade’s motion entirely manually. The arc of a grenade’s trajectory can be calculated beforehand, using a series of ray casts to determine what target it would hit if released. The trajectory can even be shown to the player via some kind of on-screen display. When the grenade is thrown, the game moves it along its arc and can then carefully control the bounce so that it never goes too far away from its target, while still looking natural.

#### 13.5.3.4 Explosions

In a game, an explosion typically has a few components: some kind of visual effect like a fireball and smoke, audio effects to mimic the sound of the explosion and its impacts with objects in the world, and a growing damage radius that affects any objects in its wake.

When an object finds itself in the radius of an explosion, its health is typically reduced, and we often also want to impart some motion to mimic the effect of the shock wave. This might be done via an animation. (For example, the reaction of a character to an explosion might best be done this way.) We might also wish to allow the impact reaction to be driven entirely by the dynamics simulation. We can accomplish this by having the explosion apply impulses to any suitable objects within its radius. It's pretty easy to calculate direction of these impulses—they are typically radial, calculated by normalizing the vector from the center of the explosion to the center of the impacted object and then scaling this vector by the magnitude of the explosion (and perhaps falling off as the distance from the epicenter increases).

Explosions may interact with other engine systems as well. For example, we might want to impart a “force” to the animated foliage system, causing grass, plants and trees to momentarily bend as a result of the explosion’s shock wave.

#### 13.5.3.5 Destructible Objects

Destructible objects are commonplace in many games. These objects are peculiar because they start out in an undamaged state in which they must appear to be a single cohesive object, and yet they must be capable of breaking into many separate pieces. We may want the pieces to break off one by one, allowing the object to be “whittled down” gradually, or we may only require a single catastrophic explosion.

Deformable body simulations like DMM can handle destruction naturally. However, we can also implement breakable objects using rigid body dynamics. This is typically done by dividing a model into a number of breakable pieces and assigning a separate rigid body to each one. This is the approach taken by Havok Destruction, for example.

For reasons of performance optimization and/or visual quality, we might decide to use special “undamaged” versions of the visual and collision geometry, each of which is constructed as a single solid piece. This model can be swapped out for the damaged version when the object needs to start breaking apart. In other cases, we may want to model the object as separate pieces at all times. This might be appropriate if the object is a stack of bricks or a pile of pots and pans, for example.

To model a multi-piece object, we could simply stack a bunch of rigid bodies and let the physics simulation take care of it. This can be made to work in good-quality physics engines (although it’s not always trivial to get right). However, we may want some Hollywood-style effects that cannot be achieved with a simple stack of rigid bodies.

For example, we may want to define the structure of the object. Some pieces might be *indestructible*, like the base of a wall or the chassis of a car. Others might be *non-structural*—they just fall off when hit by bullets or other objects. Still other pieces might be *structural*—if they are hit, not only do they fall, but they also impart forces to other pieces lying on top of them. Some pieces could be *explosive*—when they are hit, they create secondary explosions or propagate damage throughout the structure. We may want some pieces to act as valid *cover* points for some characters, but not others. This implies that our breakable object system may have some connections to the cover system.

We might also want our breakable objects to have a notion of health. Damage might build up until eventually the whole thing collapses, or each piece might have a health, requiring multiples shots or impacts before it is allowed to break. Constraints might also be employed to allow broken pieces to hang off the object rather than coming away from it completely.

We may also want our structures to take time to collapse completely. For example, if a long bridge is hit by an explosion at one end, the collapse should slowly propagate from one end to the other so that the bridge looks massive. This is another example of a feature the physics system won't give you for free—it would just wake up all rigid bodies in the simulation island simultaneously. These kinds of effects can be implemented through judicious use of the game-driven motion type.

#### 13.5.3.6 Character Mechanics

For a game like bowling, pinball or *Marble Madness*, the “main character” is a ball that rolls around in an imaginary game world. For this kind of game, we could very well model the ball as a free-moving rigid body in the physics simulation and control its movements by applying forces and impulses to it during gameplay.

In character-based games, however, we usually don't take this kind of approach. The locomotion of a humanoid or animal character is usually far too complex to be controlled adequately with forces and impulses. Instead, we usually model characters as a set of game-driven capsule-shaped rigid bodies, each one linked to a joint in the character's animated skeleton. These bodies are primarily used for bullet hit detection or to generate secondary effects such as when a character's arm bumps an object off a table. Because these bodies are game-driven, they won't avoid interpenetrations with immovable objects in the physics world, so it is up to the animator to ensure that the character's movements appear believable.

To move the character around in the game world, most games use sphere or capsule casts to probe in the direction of desired motion. Collisions are

resolved manually. This allows us to do cool stuff like:

- having the character slide along walls when he runs into them at an oblique angle;
- allowing the character to “pop up” over low curbs rather than getting stuck;
- preventing the character from entering a “falling” state when he walks off a low curb;
- preventing the character from walking up slopes that are too steep (most games have a cutoff angle after which the character will slide back rather than being able to walk up the slope); and
- adjusting animations to accommodate collisions.

As an example of this last point, if the character is running directly into a wall at a roughly 90 degree angle, we can let the character “moonwalk” into the wall forever, or we can slow down his animation. We can also do something even more slick, like playing an animation in which the character sticks out his hand and touches the wall and then idles sensibly until the movement direction changes.

Havok provides a character controller system that handles many of these things. In Havok’s system, illustrated in Figure 13.36, a character is modeled as a capsule phantom that is moved each frame to find a potential new location. A collision contact manifold (i.e., a collection of contact planes, cleaned up to eliminate noise) is maintained for the character. This manifold can be analyzed each frame in order to determine how best to move the character, adjust animations and so on.

### 13.5.7 Camera Collision

In many games, the camera follows the player’s character or vehicle around in the game world, and it can often be rotated or controlled in limited ways by the person playing the game. It’s important in such games to never permit the camera to interpenetrate geometry in the scene, as this would break the illusion of realism. The camera system is therefore another important client of the collision engine in many games.

The basic idea behind most camera collision systems is to surround the virtual camera with one or more sphere phantoms or sphere cast queries that can detect when it is getting close to colliding with something. The system can respond by adjusting the camera’s position and/or orientation in some way to avoid the potential collision before the camera actually passes through the object in question.

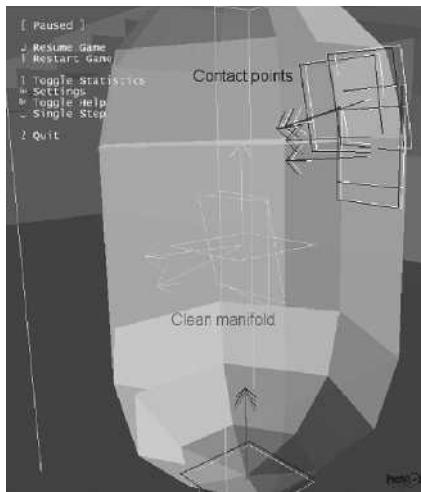


Figure 13.36. Havok's character controller models a character as a capsule-shaped phantom. The phantom maintains a noise-reduced collision manifold (a collection of contact planes) that can be used by the game to make movement decisions.

This sounds simple enough, but it is actually an incredibly tricky problem requiring a great deal of trial and error to get right. To give you a feel for how much effort can be involved, many game teams have a dedicated engineer working on the camera system for the entire duration of the project. We can't possibly cover camera collision detection and resolution in any depth here, but the following list should give you a sense of some of the most pertinent issues to be aware of:

- Zooming the camera in to avoid collisions works well in a wide variety of situations. In a third-person game, you can zoom all the way in to a first-person view without causing too much trouble (other than making sure the camera doesn't interpenetrate the character's head in the process).
- It's usually a bad idea to drastically change the horizontal angle of the camera in response to collisions, as this tends to mess with camera-relative player controls. However, some degree of horizontal adjustment can work well, depending on what the player is expected to be doing at the time. If she is aiming at a target, she'll be angry with you if you throw off her aim to bring the camera out of collision. But if she's just locomoting through the world, the change in camera orientation may feel entirely natural. Because of this, you might want to allow adjustments to the horizontal angle of the camera only when the main character is not

in the heat of a battle.

- You can adjust the vertical angle of the camera to some degree, but it's important not to do too much of this, or the player will lose track of the horizon and end up looking down onto the top of the player character's head!
- Some games allow the camera to move along an arc lying in a vertical plane, perhaps described by a spline. This permits a single HID control such as the vertical deflection of the left thumb stick to control both the zoom and the vertical angle of the camera in an intuitive way. (The camera in the Naughty Dog engine works this way.) When the camera comes into collision with objects in the world, it can be automatically moved along this same arc to avoid the collision, the arc might be compressed horizontally, or any number of other approaches might be taken.
- It's important to consider not only what's behind and beside the camera but what is in front of it as well. For example, what should happen if a pillar or another character comes between the camera and the player character? In some games, the offending object becomes translucent; in others, the camera zooms in or swings around to avoid the collision. This may or may not feel good to the person playing the game! How you handle these kinds of situations can make or break the perceived quality of your game.

Even after taking account of these and many other problematic situations, your camera may not look or feel right! Always budget plenty of time for trial and error when implementing a camera collision system.

#### 13.5.3.8 Rag Doll Integration

In Section 13.4.8.7, we learned how special types of constraints can be used to link a collection of rigid bodies together to mimic the behavior of a limp (dead or unconscious) human body. In this section, we'll investigate a few of the issues that arise when integrating rag doll physics into your game.

As we saw in Section 13.5.3.6, the gross movements of a conscious character are usually determined by performing shape casts or moving a phantom shape around in the game world. The detailed movements of the character's body are typically driven by animations. Game-driven rigid bodies are sometimes attached to the limbs for the purposes of weapons targeting or to allow the character to knock over other objects in the world.

When a character becomes unconscious, the rag doll system kicks in. The character's limbs are modeled as capsule-shaped rigid bodies connected via constraints and linked to joints in the character's animated skeleton. The

physics system simulates the motions of these bodies, and we update the skeletal joints to match, thereby allowing physics to move the character's body.

The set of rigid bodies used for rag doll physics might not be the same ones affixed to the character's limbs when it was alive. This is because the two collision models have very different requirements. When the character is alive, its rigid bodies are game-driven, so we don't care if they interpenetrate. And in fact, we usually want them to overlap, so there aren't any holes through which an enemy character might shoot. But when the character turns into a rag doll, it's important that the rigid bodies do not interpenetrate, as this would cause the collision resolution system to impart large impulses that would tend to make the limbs explode outward! For these reasons, it's actually quite common for characters to have entirely different collision/physics representations depending on whether they're conscious or unconscious.

Another issue is how to transition from the conscious state to the unconscious state. A simple LERP blend between animation-generated and physics-generated poses usually doesn't work very well, because the physics pose very quickly diverges from the animation pose. (A blend between two totally unrelated poses usually doesn't look natural.) As such, we may want to use powered constraints during the transition (see Section 13.4.8.8).

Characters often interpenetrate background geometry when they are conscious (i.e., when their rigid bodies are game-driven). This means that the rigid bodies might be inside another solid object when the character transitions to rag doll (physics-driven) mode. This can give rise to huge impulses that cause rather wild-looking rag doll behavior in-game. To avoid these problems, it is best to author death animations carefully, so that the character's limbs are kept out of collision as best as possible. It's also important to detect collisions via phantoms or collision callbacks during the game-driven mode so that you can drop the character into rag doll mode the moment any part of his body touches something solid.

Even when these steps are taken, rag dolls have a tendency to get stuck inside other objects. Single-sided collision can be an incredibly important feature when trying to make rag dolls look good. If a limb is partly embedded in a wall, it will tend to be pushed out of the wall rather than staying stuck inside it. However, even single-sided collision doesn't solve all problems. For example, when the character is moving quickly or if the transition to rag doll isn't executed properly, one rigid body in the rag doll can end up on the far side of a thin wall. This causes the character to hang in mid-air rather than falling properly to the ground.

Another rag doll feature that can be useful is the ability for unconscious

characters to regain consciousness and get back up. To implement this, we need a way to search for a suitable “stand up” animation. We want to find an animation whose pose on frame zero most closely matches the rag doll’s pose after it has come to rest (which is totally unpredictable in general). This can be done by matching the poses of only a few key joints, like the upper thighs and the upper arms. Another approach is to manually guide the rag doll into a pose suitable for getting up by the time it comes to rest, using powered constraints.

As a final note, we should mention that setting up a rag doll’s constraints can be a tricky business. We generally want the limbs to move freely but without doing anything biomechanically impossible. This is one reason specialized types of constraints are often used when constructing rag dolls. Nonetheless, you shouldn’t assume that your rag dolls will look great without some effort. High-quality physics engines like Havok provide a rich set of content creation tools that allow an artist to set up constraints within a DCC package like Maya and then test them in real time to see how they might look in-game.

All in all, getting rag doll physics to *work* in your game isn’t particularly difficult, but getting it to look *good* can take a lot of work! As with many things in game programming, it’s a good idea to budget plenty of time for trial and error, especially when it’s your first time working with rag dolls.

## 13.6 Advanced Physics Features

A rigid body dynamics simulation with constraints can cover an amazing range of physics-driven effects in a game. However, such a system clearly has its limitations. Recent research and development is seeking to expand physics engines beyond constrained rigid bodies. Here are just a few examples:

- *Deformable bodies.* As hardware capabilities improve and more-efficient algorithms are developed, physics engines are beginning to provide support for deformable bodies. DMM is an excellent example of such an engine.
- *Cloth.* Cloth can be modeled as a sheet of point masses, connected by stiff springs. Cloth is notoriously difficult to get right, as many difficulties arise with respect to collision between cloth and other objects, numerical stability of the simulation, etc. That being said, many games and third-party physics SDKs like Havok now provide powerful and well-behaved cloth simulations for use in games and other real-time applications.

- *Hair.* Hair can be modeled by a large number of small physically simulated filaments, or a simpler approach can be used in which sheets of cloth are texture-mapped to look like hair, and the cloth simulation is tuned to make the character’s hair move in a believable way. This is how Chloe’s hair in *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy* works. Hair simulation and rendering remains an active area of research, and the quality of hair in games will certainly continue to improve.
- *Water surface simulations and buoyancy.* Games have been doing water surface simulations and buoyancy for some time now. Buoyancy can be implemented via a special-case system (not part of the physics engine *per se*), or it can be modeled via forces within the physics simulation. Organic movement of the water surface is often a rendering effect only and does not affect the physics simulation at all. From the point of view of physics, the water surface is often modeled as a plane. For large displacements in the water surface, the entire plane might be moved. However, some game teams and researchers are pushing the limits of these simulations, allowing for dynamic water surfaces, waves that crest, realistic current simulations and more. One good example is the water in the god game *From Dust*.
- *General fluid dynamics simulations.* Right now, fluid dynamics falls primarily into the realm of specialized simulation libraries. However, this is an active area of research and development, and some games already make use of fluid simulations to produce some astounding visual effects. For example, the *LittleBigPlanet* series makes use of a 2D fluid simulation for its smoke and fire effects; and the PhysX SDK offers a 3D *position based* fluid simulation that produces stunningly realistic results.
- *Physically based audio synthesis.* When physically simulated objects collide, bounce, roll and slide, it’s important to be able to generate appropriate audio to reinforce the believability of the simulation. These sounds can be created in games via controlled playback of pre-recorded audio clips. But dynamic synthesis of such sounds is becoming a viable alternative, and is currently an active area of research.
- *GPGPU.* As GPUs become more and more powerful, there has been a shift toward harnessing their awesome parallel processing power for tasks other than graphics. One obvious application of general-purpose GPU (GPGPU) computing is for collision and physics simulation. For example, Naughty Dog’s cloth simulation engine was ported to run entirely on the GPU for PlayStation 4.

# 14

## Audio

If you've ever watched a horror film with your speakers muted, you know just how important audio is to immersiveness. (If not, try it! It's a real ear-opener.) Be it a film or a video game, sound can quite literally make the difference between a gripping, emotional, unforgettable multimedia experience and a lackluster yawnfest.

Modern games immerse the player in a realistic (or a semi-realistic but stylized) virtual environment. The graphics engine is charged with the task of reproducing as accurately and believably as possible what the player would actually see, if he or she were present within this virtual environment (while remaining true to the art style of the game). In exactly the same sense, the audio engine is charged with the task of accurately and believably reproducing what the player would actually hear, if he or she were present in the game world (while remaining true to the fiction and tonal style of the game). Sound programmers today use the term *audio rendering* engine to underscore its many parallels with the graphics rendering engine.

In this chapter, we're going to explore both the theory and practice of creating audio for a triple-A game. We'll introduce an area of mathematics called *signal processing theory* that underlies almost every aspect of digital audio technology, including digital sound recording and playback, filtering, reverb and other digital signal processor (DSP) effects. We'll explore game audio from a software engineering standpoint, by investigating a number of widely used

audio APIs, breaking down the components that comprise a typical audio rendering engine and learning how the audio system is interconnected with other game engine systems. We'll also see how environmental acoustic modeling and character dialog were handled in Naughty Dog's popular game *The Last of Us*. So hold on tight, keep your hands inside the car at all times and enjoy the noisy ride!

## 14.1 The Physics of Sound

Sound is a compression wave that travels through the air (or some other compressible medium). A sound wave gives rise to alternating regions of air compression and decompression (also known as *rarefaction*) relative to the average atmospheric pressure. As such, we measure the *amplitude* of a sound wave in units of *pressure*. In SI units, pressure is measured in Pascals, abbreviated Pa. One Pascal is the force of one Newton applied over an area of one square meter ( $1 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ N/m}^2 = 1 \text{ kg}/(\text{m} \cdot \text{s}^2)$ ).

The *instantaneous acoustic pressure* is the ambient atmospheric pressure (considered a constant for our purposes) plus the perturbation caused by the sound wave at one specific instant in time:

$$p_{\text{inst}} = p_{\text{atmos}} + p_{\text{sound}}.$$

Of course, sound is a dynamic phenomenon—the sound pressure varies over time. We can plot the instantaneous sound pressure as a function of time,  $p_{\text{inst}}(t)$ . In *signal processing theory*—the area of mathematics that underlies virtually every aspect of digital audio technology—such a time-varying function is called a *signal*. Figure 14.1 illustrates a typical sound wave signal  $p(t)$ , oscillating about the average atmospheric pressure.

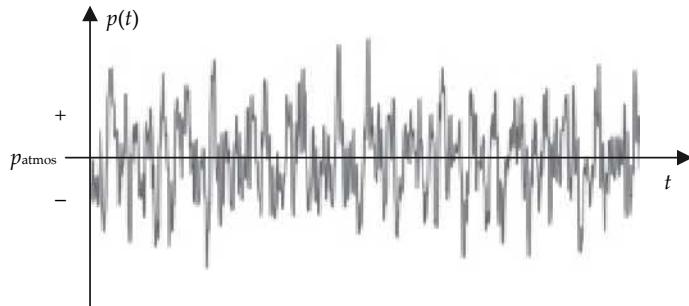


Figure 14.1. A signal  $p(t)$  can be used to model the time-varying acoustic pressure of a sound.

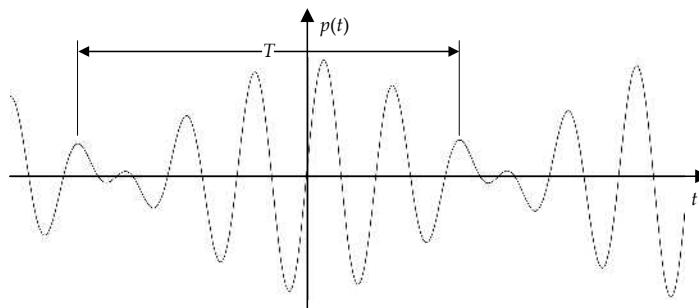


Figure 14.2. The period  $T$  of an arbitrary periodic signal is the minimum time between repeated patterns in the waveform.

### 14.1.1 Properties of Sound Waves

When a musical instrument plays a long steady note, the resulting sound pressure signal is *periodic*, meaning the waveform consists of a *repeating pattern* characteristic to that particular kind of instrument. The *period*  $T$  of any repeating pattern describes the minimum amount of time that passes between successive instances of the pattern. For example, for a sinusoidal sound wave the period measures the time between successive peaks or troughs. In SI units, period is typically measured in seconds (s). This is illustrated in Figure 14.2.

The *frequency* of a wave is just the inverse of its period ( $f = 1/T$ ). Frequency is measured in Hertz (Hz), which means “cycles per second.” A “cycle” is technically a dimensionless quantity, so the Hertz is the inverse of the second (Hz = 1/s).

Many scientists and mathematicians make use of a quantity known as the *angular frequency*, typically denoted by the symbol  $\omega$ . The angular frequency is just the rate of oscillation measured in *radians* per second instead of *cycles* per second. Since one complete circular rotation is  $2\pi$  radians,  $\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi/T$ . Angular frequency is very useful when analyzing sinusoidal waves, because a circular motion in two dimensions gives rise to a sinusoidal motion when projected onto a single dimensional axis.

The amount by which a periodic signal such as a sine wave is *shifted* left or right along the time axis is known as its *phase*. Phase is a relative term. For example,  $\sin(t)$  is really just a version of  $\cos(t)$  that has been *phase-shifted* by  $+\frac{\pi}{2}$  along the  $t$  axis (i.e.,  $\sin(t) = \cos(t - \frac{\pi}{2})$ ). Likewise  $\cos(t)$  is just  $\sin(t)$  phase-shifted by  $-\frac{\pi}{2}$  (i.e.,  $\cos(t) = \sin(t + \frac{\pi}{2})$ ). Phase is illustrated in Figure 14.3.

The *speed*  $v$  at which a sound wave propagates through its medium depends upon the material and physical properties of the medium, including phase (solid, gas or liquid), temperature, pressure and density. In 20°C dry

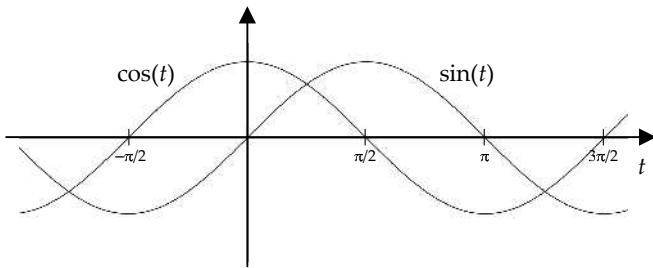


Figure 14.3. The sine and cosine functions are just phase-shifted versions of one another.

air, the speed of sound is approximately 343.2 m/s, which is 767.7 mph or 1235.6 km/h.

The *wavelength*  $\lambda$  of a sinusoidal wave measures the spatial distance between successive peaks or troughs. It depends in part on the frequency of the wave, but because it is a *spatial* measurement it also depends on the speed of the wave. Specifically,  $\lambda = v/f$  where  $v$  is the speed of the wave (measured in m/s) and  $f$  is the frequency (measured in Hz or 1/s). The seconds in the numerator and denominator cancel one another, and we are left with wavelength measured in units of meters.

### 14.1.2 Perceived Loudness and the Decibel

In order to judge the “loudness” of the sounds we hear, our ears continuously *average* the amplitude of the incoming sound signal over a short, sliding time window. This averaging effect is modeled well by a quantity known as the *effective sound pressure*. This is defined as the *root mean square* (RMS) of the instantaneous sound pressure measured over a specific interval of time.

If we were to take a series of  $n$  discrete sound pressure measurements  $p_i$ , equally spaced in time, the RMS sound pressure  $p_{\text{rms}}$  would be

$$p_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n p_i^2}. \quad (14.1)$$

However, our ears take pressure measurements continuously, rather than at discrete points in time. If we imagine measuring the instantaneous sound pressure continuously, starting at time  $T_1$  and lasting until time  $T_2$ , the summation in Equation (14.1) would become an integral as follows:

$$p_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T_2 - T_1} \int_{T_1}^{T_2} (p(t))^2 dt}. \quad (14.2)$$

However, the story doesn't end here. Perceived loudness is actually proportional to the *acoustic intensity*  $I$ , which is itself proportional to the *square* of the RMS sound pressure:

$$I \propto p_{\text{rms}}^2.$$

Humans can perceive a very wide range of sound pressure variations—from the flutter of a piece of paper falling to the ground to the boom of an aircraft breaking mach one. In order to manage such a wide dynamic range, we normally measure sound intensity in units of *decibels* (dB). The decibel is a *logarithmic* unit that expresses the *ratio* between two values. By employing a logarithmic scale, the decibel allows a wide range of measurements to be represented by a relatively narrow range of values. A decibel is actually one-tenth of a *bel*, a unit named in honor of Alexander Graham Bell.

When sound intensity is measured in decibels, it is called *sound pressure level* (SPL) and represented by the symbol  $L_p$ . Sound pressure level is defined as the ratio of the acoustic intensity (i.e., the squared pressure) of a sound relative to a reference intensity  $p_{\text{ref}}$  that represents the lower limit of human hearing. So we have:

$$\begin{aligned} L_p &= 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{p_{\text{rms}}^2}{p_{\text{ref}}^2} \right) \text{ dB} \\ &= 20 \log_{10} \left( \frac{p_{\text{rms}}}{p_{\text{ref}}} \right) \text{ dB}, \end{aligned}$$

where the 20 arises because when we take the square outside the logarithm, it becomes a multiplication by two. The commonly used reference sound pressure in air is  $p_{\text{ref}} = 20 \mu\text{Pa}$  (RMS). For more information on sound pressure, the physics of sound and human aural perception, see [6].

By the way, if you're feeling a bit rusty, the following identities may help to refresh your memory on logarithms. In Equations (14.3),  $b$ ,  $x$  and  $y$  are positive real numbers with  $b \neq 1$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  are any real numbers,  $c = \log_b x$ , and  $d = \log_b y$  (or written another way,  $b^c = x$  and  $b^d = y$ ).

$$\begin{array}{llll} \log_b x = c & \text{when} & b^c = x & \text{(definition);} \\ \log_b 1 = 0 & \text{because} & b^0 = 1; & \\ \log_b b = 1 & \text{because} & b^1 = b; & \\ \log_b(x \cdot y) = \log_b x + \log_b y & \text{because} & b^c \cdot b^d = b^{c+d}; & (14.3) \\ \log_b(x/y) = \log_b x - \log_b y & \text{because} & b^c / b^d = b^{c-d}; & \\ \log_b x^d = d \log_b x & \text{because} & (b^c)^d = b^{cd}. & \end{array}$$

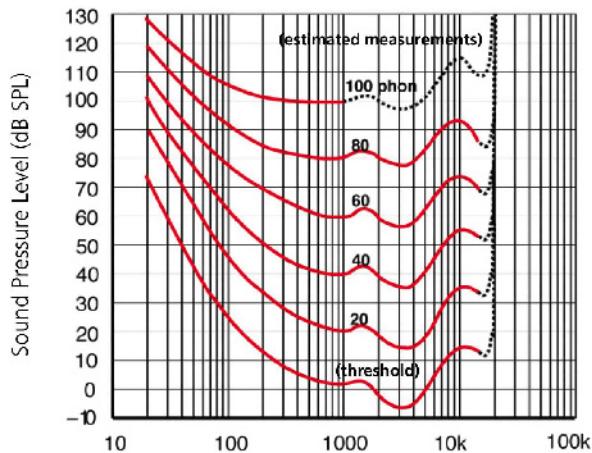


Figure 14.4. The human ear is most sensitive in the frequency range between 2 and 5 kHz. As the frequency decreases or increases beyond this range, more and more acoustic pressure is required to produce the same perception of “loudness.”

#### 14.1.2.1 Equal-Loudness Contours

The human ear does not have the same response to sound waves of different frequencies. The human ear is most sensitive in the frequency range between 2 and 5 kHz. As the frequency decreases or increases beyond this range, more and more acoustic intensity (i.e., pressure) is required to produce the same perception of “loudness.”

Figure 14.4 shows a number of equal-loudness contours, each corresponding to a different perceived loudness level. These curves show that more pressure is required at low and high frequencies to achieve the same perceived loudness than is needed at mid-range frequencies. Or put another way, if we were to keep the amplitude of an acoustic pressure wave the same while varying the frequency, the human ear would actually perceive the lower and higher frequencies as “less loud” than the mid-range frequencies. The lowest equal-loudness contour represents the quietest audible tone and is also known as the absolute threshold of hearing. The highest contour passes through the human threshold of pain, which lies roughly at the 120 dB level for audible sounds.

For more information on equal-loudness contours, and the Fletcher-Munson curves on which they are based, see <https://bit.ly/2HfCjCs>.

### 14.1.2.2 The Audible Frequency Band

A typical adult can hear sounds with frequencies as low as 20 Hz and as high as 20,000 Hz (20 kHz) (although the upper limit generally decreases with age). The equal-loudness contours help to explain why the human ear can perceive sounds only within this limited “band” of frequencies. As the frequency becomes lower or higher, more and more acoustic pressure is required to produce the same perceived loudness. As the frequency approaches the lower or upper limits of human hearing, the contours become asymptotically vertical, meaning we’d need an effectively infinite acoustic pressure to produce any perception of loudness at all. Or put another way, human audio perception drops off to effectively zero outside the audible frequency band.

### 14.1.3 Sound Wave Propagation

Like any kind of wave, an acoustic pressure wave propagates through space and can be *absorbed* or *reflected* by surfaces, *diffracted* around corners and through narrow “slits,” and *refracted* as it passes across the boundary between different transmission media. Sound waves exhibit no *polarization*<sup>1</sup> because the acoustic pressure oscillation occurs in the direction of wave travel (this is known as a *longitudinal* wave), rather than perpendicular to it as with light waves (a *transverse* wave). In games, we typically model the absorption, reflection and sometimes the diffraction (e.g., bending slightly around corners) of our virtual sound waves, but we generally ignore refraction effects because these effects are not easily noticed by a human listener.

#### 14.1.3.1 Fall-Off with Distance

In an open space with otherwise perfectly still air, and assuming a sound source that radiates equally in all directions, the intensity of the sound pressure wave it produces falls off with distance, following a  $1/r^2$  law, while pressure follows a  $1/r$  law.

$$p(r) \propto \frac{1}{r};$$

$$I(r) \propto \frac{1}{r^2}.$$

Here,  $r$  measures the radial distance of the listener or microphone from the sound source, and both pressure and intensity are expressed as functions of  $r$ .

---

<sup>1</sup>Sound waves in solids can be transverse and therefore can exhibit polarization.

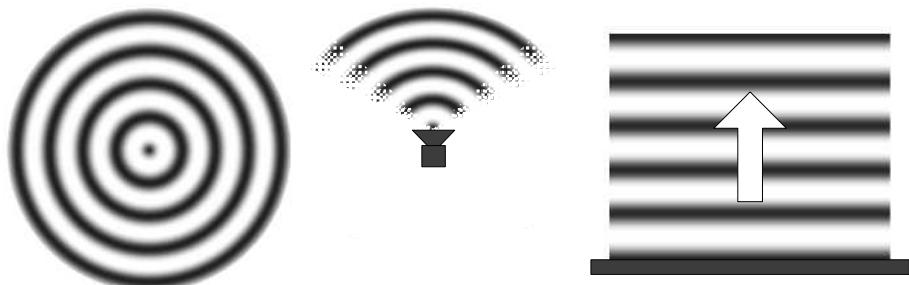


Figure 14.5. Three types of sound sources and their sound radiation patterns (in two dimensions for ease of illustration). From left to right: omnidirectional, conical and directional.

More precisely, the sound pressure level for a spherically radiating (omnidirectional) sound wave in open space can be written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} L_p(r) &= L_p(0) + 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} \right) \text{ dB} \\ &= L_p(0) - 10 \log_{10} (4\pi r^2) \text{ dB}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $L_p(r)$  is the SPL at the listener as a function of its radial distance from the sound source, and  $L_p(0)$  represents the unattenuated or “natural” sound intensity of the source.

Sound sources are not always omnidirectional. For example, when a large, flat wall reflects sound waves, it acts like a purely *directional* sound source—the reflected waves propagate in a single direction, and the pressure wavefronts are essentially parallel.

A bullhorn projects sound in a particular direction but with a *conical* fall-off, meaning that the intensity of the sound waves is maximum along the centerline of the projection “cone,” but falls off as the angle between the listener and this centerline increases.

Various sound radiation patterns are illustrated in Figure 14.5.

#### 14.1.3.2 Atmospheric Absorption

The  $1/r$  fall-off of sound pressure with distance arises because energy is dissipated as the waveform expands geometrically. This fall-off affects sounds of all frequencies equally. Sound intensity also falls off with distance due to energy absorption by the atmosphere. Atmospheric absorption effects are *not* uniform across the entire frequency spectrum. In general, the absorption effect becomes greater as the frequency of the sound increases.

I’m reminded of a story I heard when I was in high school: A woman was walking down a quiet village street at night. She heard a sporadic sequence of

low tones with long, silent gaps between them. Curious what might be making these strange tones, she walked toward them. As she walked, the tones became louder and the spaces between the tones seemed to get shorter. After a few minutes' walk, the tones had resolved into a beautiful piece of music. The woman arrived at an open window to discover a viola player practicing within. The musician stopped playing to say "hello," and the woman asked him why he had been playing random notes a few minutes before. He replied, "I haven't been playing random notes—I've been playing this piece the whole time." The explanation for what the woman heard, of course, is that lower-frequency sounds can be heard over longer distances than higher-frequency sounds due to atmospheric absorption. You can learn more about sound wave propagation at [http://www.sfu.ca/sonic-studio/handbook/Sound\\_Propagation.html](http://www.sfu.ca/sonic-studio/handbook/Sound_Propagation.html).

Other factors also affect the intensity of sound waves as they propagate through their medium. In general, fall-off depends on distance, frequency, temperature and humidity. See <http://sengpielaudio.com/calculator-air.htm> for an online calculator that lets you experiment with the effects of these factors.

#### 14.1.3.3 Phase Shift and Interference

When multiple sound waves overlap in space, their amplitudes add together—this is called *superposition*. Consider two periodic sound waves with the same frequency. (The simplest example would be two sinusoids.) If the waves are *in phase*—that is, their peaks and troughs line up—then the waves will *positively reinforce* each other, and the result is a wave with larger amplitude than either of the original waves. Likewise, if the waves are *out of phase*, the peaks of one wave can tend to *cancel* the troughs of the other and vice versa, and the result is a wave with lower (or even zero) amplitude.

When multiple waves interact, we call this *interference*. *Constructive interference* describes the case in which the waves reinforce one another and the amplitude increases. *Destructive interference* occurs when the waves cancel each other out, resulting in lower amplitude.

The frequency of the waves has an important effect on this phenomenon: If the frequencies of the two waves match closely, the interference simply increases or decreases the overall amplitude. If the frequencies differ significantly, we can get an effect called *beating*, wherein the frequency difference causes alternating periods of the waves being in and out of phase, resulting in alternating periods of higher and lower amplitude.

Interference can occur between two totally unrelated sound signals, or it can occur if a single sound signal takes multiple paths from the source to the

listener. In the latter case, the difference in path lengths introduces a phase shift that can cause either constructive or destructive interference, depending on the amount of the phase shift.

### *Comb Filtering*

Interference can lead to an effect known as *comb filtering*. This is caused when sound waves reflect off surfaces in such a way as to either almost completely cancel or completely reinforce certain frequencies. The result is a *frequency response* (see Section 14.2.5.7) with lots of narrow peaks and troughs, which when plotted look a bit like a comb (hence the name). This effect can have a big impact on audio reproduction and recording—sometimes it is an undesirable artifact, and sometimes it is used as a tool. The existence of comb filtering is also one of the key reasons why it is generally better to spend money on acoustic room treatment than to spend money on high-end audio equipment: If the room exhibits comb effects, you’re wasting your time trying to get a flat response from your gear. See [http://www.realtraps.com/video\\_comb.htm](http://www.realtraps.com/video_comb.htm) for a great video by Ethan Winer on the subject.

#### 14.1.3.4 Reverb and Echo

In any environment containing sound-reflective surfaces, a listener generally receives three kinds of sound waves from a sound source:

- *Direct (dry)*. Sound waves that arrive at the listener via a direct, unobstructed path from the source are collectively known as *direct* or *dry* sound.
- *Early reflections (echo)*. Sound waves that arrive at the listener via an indirect path, after being reflected from and partially absorbed by surrounding surfaces, take a longer time to reach the listener because their path is longer. As such, there will be a *delay* between the arrival of the direct sound waves and the arrival of the reflected waves. The first group of reflected sound waves arriving at the ear have only interacted with one or two surfaces. As such, they are relatively “clean” signals, and we perceive them as distinct new “copies” of the sound or *echos*.
- *Late reverberations (tail)*. Once the sound waves have bounced around the listening space more than a few times, they superimpose and interfere with one another so much that the brain can no longer detect distinct echos. These are known as *late reverberations* or the *diffuse tail*. The properties of the reflective surfaces cause the amplitudes of the waves to be attenuated by varying amounts. And because the reflected sound waves

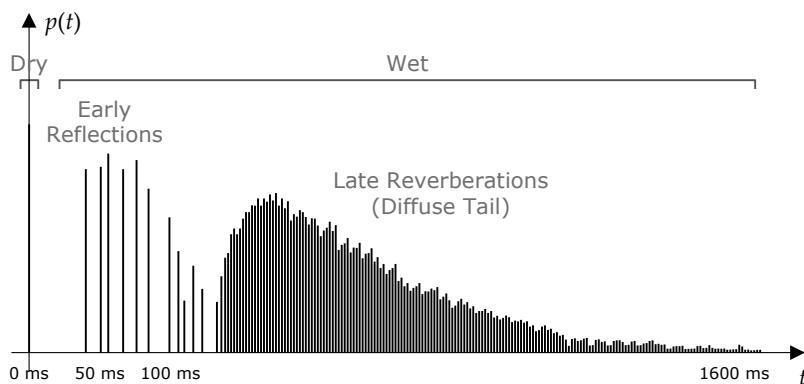


Figure 14.6. Direct sound waves, early reflections and late reverberations.

are delayed, phase shifts occur causing the waves to interfere with one another. This causes certain frequencies to be attenuated relative to the others. When we speak of the *acoustics* of a space, we are largely speaking about the effects of late reverberations on the perceived “quality” or “timbre” of the sound.

Collectively, the echos and the tail combine with the dry sound to create what is known as *wet* sound. Figure 14.6 illustrates the wet and dry components of a single abrupt clap.

The early reflections and late reverberations provide the brain with a wealth of cues that tell us quite a lot about the type of space we’re in. The *pre-delay* is the time interval between the arrival of the direct sound waves and the arrival of the very first reflected waves. From the pre-delay, the brain can determine the approximate size of the room or space in which we are listening. The *decay* is the time it takes for the reflected sound waves to die away. This tells our brains how much of the sound has been absorbed by the surroundings, and so indirectly tells us something about the materials that make up the space we’re in. For example, a small tiled bathroom would produce late reverberations with a very short pre-delay (due to its small size) and a long decay (due to the tile’s ability to reflect sound waves efficiently, with little absorption). A large granite-walled room like Grand Central Terminal (a.k.a. Grand Central Station) in New York City will have a much longer pre-delay and a lot more echos, but the decay will be similar to that of the tiled bathroom.

If we were to hang curtains in that bathroom, or if the walls were covered with wood panels instead of tile, the pre-delay would remain the same, but

the decay, along with other factors such as *density* (how closely spaced in time the individual reflections are) and *diffusion* (the rate at which the reflections increase in density over time), would change. This explains how a person can guess where they are even when blindfolded, or how the blind can learn to navigate with only a cane to aid them. Sound provides us with a *lot* of information about our surroundings!

The term *reverb* is used to describe the quality of a sound in terms of its wet components. In the early days of audio recording, sound engineers had little control over reverb, relying entirely on the shape and construction of the room in which the recording was made. Later, simple artificial reverb devices were created, from the use of a speaker and microphone in a bathroom by Bill Putman Sr. (founder of Universal Audio), to the use of a long metal plate or spring to introduce a delay in a sound signal, to modern digital techniques. Today, digital signal processor (DSP) chips and/or software are used not only to recreate natural reverb effects in recorded sound effects and music, but also to augment recordings with all sorts of interesting effects that are not normally heard in nature. We'll learn more about digital signal processing in Section 14.2. You can read more about reverb at <http://www.uaudio.com/blog/the-basics-of-reverb>.

An *anechoic chamber* is a room especially designed to entirely eliminate reflected sound waves. This is accomplished by lining the walls, floor and ceiling of the room with thick corrugated foam padding that absorbs essentially all of the reflected sound waves. As a result, only the direct (dry) sound reaches the listener or microphone. Sound in an anechoic chamber has a completely "dead" timbre. Anechoic chambers are useful for recording "pure" sounds that contain no reverb. Such pure sounds are often perfect candidates for input into a digital signal processing pipeline, giving a sound designer maximum flexibility to control the timbre of the sound.

#### 14.1.3.5 Sound in Motion: The Doppler Effect

If you've ever stood at a railway crossing when a train goes by, you've heard the *Doppler effect* in action. The sound of the train seems higher pitched when it is approaching you, and becomes lower pitched as it races off into the distance. Sound waves travel at a roughly constant speed through the air, but the sound source (in this case, the train) is also moving. The sound waves that are moving in the same direction as the train become "squashed together," and the waves that are moving opposite to the motion of the train become "spread out," each by an amount proportional to the difference between the speed of sound in air and the speed of the train through the air. The frequency of the squashed waves is therefore increased, because the space between the peaks and troughs

of the sound waves has been effectively reduced, resulting in a higher-pitched sound. Likewise, the frequency of the spread-out waves is decreased, resulting in a lower-pitched sound. The Doppler effect was named after the Austrian physicist Christian Doppler, who identified it in 1842.

The Doppler effect also occurs when the listener is moving but the sound source is stationary. In general, the Doppler shift is dependent upon the *relative velocity* (as a vector) between the listener and the sound source. In one dimension, the Doppler shift amounts to a change in frequency, and can be quantified as follows:

$$f' = \left( \frac{c + v_l}{c + v_s} \right) f,$$

where  $f$  is the original frequency,  $f'$  is the Doppler-shifted (observed) frequency at the listener,  $c$  is the speed of sound in air and  $v_l$  and  $v_s$  are the speeds of the listener and sound source, respectively. If the speeds of the sound sources are very small relative to the speed of sound, we can approximate this relationship as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f' &= \left( \frac{1 + (v_l - v_s)}{c} \right) f \\ &= \left( \frac{1 + \Delta v}{c} \right) f. \end{aligned}$$

This expression makes the relative velocity,  $\Delta v$ , apparent. The Doppler effect can be easily visualized by looking at the following animated GIF: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Dopplereffectssourcемovingrightatmach0.7.gif>.

#### 14.1.4 Perception of Position

The human auditory system has evolved to allow a reasonably accurate perception of the position of sounds in the space around us. A number of factors contribute to our perception of sound position:

- *Fall-off with distance* provides us with a rough idea of how far away the source of a sound is. In order for this to work, we must have some idea of the loudness of the sound when heard at close range to serve as a “baseline.”
- *Atmospheric absorption* causes the higher frequencies in a sound to drop out as the source moves farther away from the listener. This can serve as an important cue in perceiving the difference between, for example, a person speaking at normal volume but far away and a person speaking at reduced volume up close.

- *Having two ears*, one on the left and one on the right, gives us a great deal of positional information. A sound that is to our right will sound louder in the right ear than in the left. An *interaural time difference* (ITD) of approximately one millisecond also arises, because a sound to one side of your head will take just a little bit longer to reach the opposite ear. Finally, the head itself obstructs sounds, so the ear opposite to the sound source will perceive a slightly muffled version of the sound reaching the near ear. This is known as *interaural intensity difference* (IID).
- *Ear shape* has an effect as well. Our ears are cupped slightly forward, so sounds coming from behind us are very slightly muffled relative to those coming from in front of us.
- *The head-related transfer function* (HRTF) is a mathematical model of the minute effects that the folds of our ears (the *pinnæ*) have on sounds coming from different directions.

## 14.2 The Mathematics of Sound

Signal processing and systems theory is the area of mathematics that lies at the heart of virtually all modern audio technology. It is also extensively used in a wide variety of other technological and engineering endeavors, including image processing and machine vision, aeronautics, electronics, fluid dynamics, and the list goes on. In this section, we'll embark on a whirlwind tour of the key concepts in signals and systems theory, because it will help us to understand some of the more advanced topics in game audio later in the chapter. (It's also an important area of mathematical theory that can benefit any game programmer—so what the heck!) An in-depth treatment of the topic can be obtained from [41].

### 14.2.1 Signals

A *signal* is any function of one or more independent variables, typically describing the behavior of some kind of physical phenomenon. In Section 14.1, we used the signal  $p(t)$  to represent the time-varying acoustic pressure of an audio compression wave. Of course, many other kinds of signals are possible. A signal  $v(t)$  might represent the voltage produced by a microphone over time, while  $w(t)$  might model the time-varying water pressure in a system of pipes, or we could use  $f(t)$  to represent the varying population of foxes in an ecosystem.

In studying signal theory, we often refer to the independent variable as “time” and represent it with the symbol  $t$ —but of course the independent vari-

able might represent some other quantity, and there may be more than one independent variable. For example, one can think of a 2D greyscale image as a signal  $i(x, y)$ , where the two independent variables,  $x$  and  $y$ , represent the orthogonal coordinate axes, and the signal value  $i$  represents the intensity of the greyscale image at each pixel. A color image could be similarly represented by three signals,  $r(x, y)$  for the red channel,  $g(x, y)$  for the green channel and  $b(x, y)$  for the blue channel.

#### 14.2.1.1 Be Discrete, Continuously

The 2D image examples above bring to light an important distinction between two fundamental kinds of signal: *continuous* and *discrete*.

- If the independent variable is a *real number* ( $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ), we call the signal a *continuous-time signal*. In this chapter, we'll use the symbol  $t$  to represent continuous "time," and we'll use round parentheses for our functional notation (e.g.,  $x(t)$ ) to remind us that we're working with a continuous-time signal.
- If the independent variable(s) is an *integer* ( $n \in \mathbb{I}$ ), we call the signal a *discrete-time signal*. We'll use the symbol  $n$  to represent discrete "time," and we'll use square brackets for our functional notation (e.g.,  $x[n]$ ) to remind us that we're working with a discrete-time signal. Note that the *value* of a discrete-time signal might still be a real number ( $x[n] \in \mathbb{R}$ )—the only thing the term "discrete-time signal" prescribes is that the *independent variable* is an integer ( $n \in \mathbb{I}$ ).

In Figure 14.1, we saw that we can visualize a continuous-time signal as an ordinary function plot, with time  $t$  on the horizontal axis and the signal value  $p(t)$  on the vertical axis. We can plot a discrete-time signal  $x[n]$  in similar fashion, although the function's values are only defined for integer values of the independent variable  $n$  (see Figure 14.7). One common way to think of a discrete-time signal is as a *sampled* version of a continuous-time signal. The sampling process (also known as *digitization* or *analog-to-digital conversion*) lies at the heart of digital audio recording and playback. See Section 14.3.2.1 for more information on sampling.

#### 14.2.2 Manipulating Signals

It will be important in the following discussions for us to understand some basic ways to manipulate a signal by making changes to its independent variable. For example, to *reflect* a signal about  $t = 0$ , we simply replace  $t$  with  $-t$  in the signal's equation. To *time-shift* the entire signal to the *right* (i.e., in the

*positive* direction) by a distance  $s$ , we replace  $t$  with  $t - s$  in the signal's equation. (Time shifting to the *left/negative* direction is accomplished by replacing  $t$  with  $t + s$ .) We can also expand or compress the domain of the signal by scaling the independent variable. These simple transformations are illustrated in Figure 14.8.

### 14.2.3 Linear Time-Invariant (LTI) Systems

In the context of signal processing theory, a *system* is defined as any device or process that transforms an *input* signal into a new *output* signal. The mathematical concept of a system can be used to describe, analyze and manipulate many real-world systems that arise in audio processing, including microphones, speakers, analog-to-digital converters, reverb units, equalizers and filters and even the acoustics of a room.

As a simple example, an *amplifier* is a system that increases the amplitude of its input signal by a factor  $A$  known as the *gain* of the amp. Given an input signal  $x(t)$ , such an amplification system would produce an output signal  $y(t) = Ax(t)$ .

A *time-invariant* system is one for which a time shift in the input signal causes an equal time shift in the output signal. In other words, the behavior of the system does not change over time.

A *linear* system is one that possesses the property of *superposition*. This means that if an input signal consists of a *weighted sum* of other signals, then the output is a weighted sum of the individual outputs that would have been produced, had each of the other signals been fed through the system independently.

*Linear time-invariant* (LTI) systems are extremely useful for two reasons.

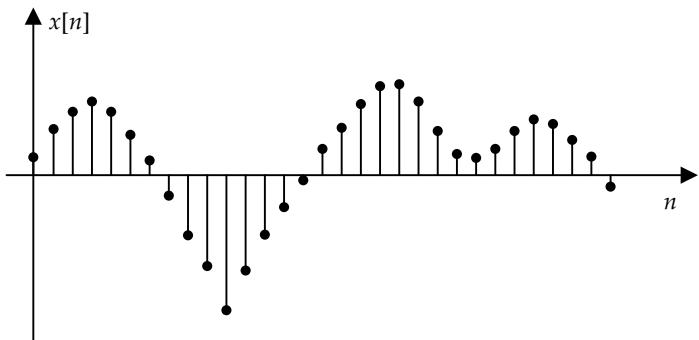


Figure 14.7. The value of a discrete-time signal  $x[n]$  is defined only for integer values of  $n$ .

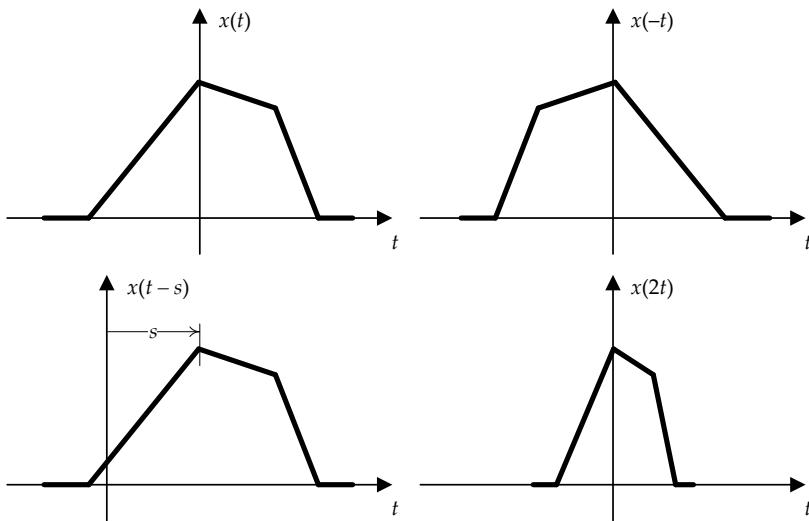


Figure 14.8. Simple manipulations of a signal's independent variable.

First, their behaviors are well understood and relatively easy to work with mathematically. Second, many real physical systems in the fields of audio propagation theory, electronics, mechanics, fluid flow, etc. can be modeled accurately using LTI systems. As such, we will restrict ourselves to a discussion of LTI systems for our purposes of understanding audio technology.

We can visualize any system as a black box with an input signal and an output signal, as shown in Figure 14.9.

Using this black-box notation, simple systems can be conveniently interconnected to construct more complex systems. For example:

- The output of system A could be connected to the input of system B, yielding a composite system that performs operation A followed by operation B. This is called a *serial connection*.
- The outputs of two systems could be added together.
- The output of a system could be *fed back* into an earlier input, yielding what is known as a *feedback loop*.

See Figure 14.10 for examples of all of these kinds of connections.

One very important property of all LTI systems is that their interconnections are *order-independent*. So if we have a serial connection of system A followed by system B, we can reverse the order of the two systems and the output will remain unchanged.



Figure 14.9. A system as a black box.

#### 14.2.4 Impulse Response of an LTI System

It's all fine and dandy to talk about systems that convert an input signal into an output signal, and it's even pretty intuitive to draw diagrams of system interconnections. But how can we describe the operation of a system mathematically?

Recall from Section 14.2.3 that for a *linear* system, if the input consists of a linear combination (weighted sum) of input signals, the output will be a linear combination (weighted sum) of the individual outputs (had each of the input signals been fed into the system independently). So, if we can figure out a way to represent an arbitrary input signal as a weighted sum of very simple signals, we should be able to describe the behavior of the system by describing *only* its response to those very simple signals.

##### 14.2.4.1 The Unit Impulse

If we are going to describe an input signal as a linear combination of simple signals, the question arises: Which simple signal shall we use? For reasons that will become clear in a moment, our signal of choice is going to be the *unit impulse*. This signal is one of a family of related functions known as *singularity functions* because they all contain at least one discontinuity or "singularity."

In discrete time, the unit impulse  $\delta[n]$  is as simple as it gets: It is a signal whose value is zero everywhere except at  $n = 0$ , where its value is one:

$$\delta[n] = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The discrete-time unit impulse is illustrated in Figure 14.11.

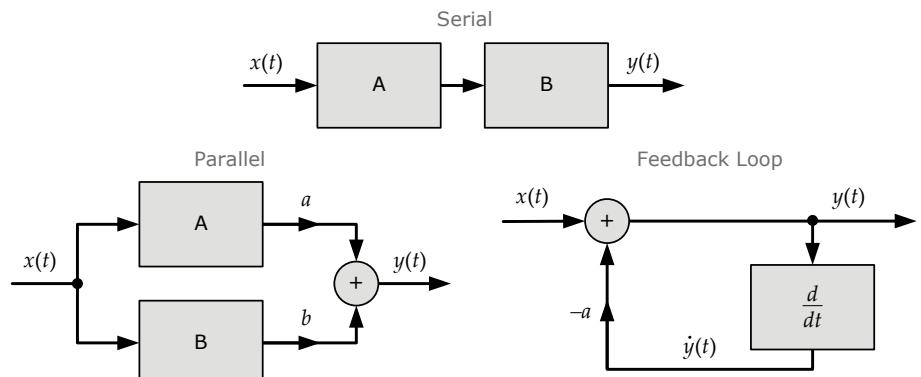


Figure 14.10. Various ways to interconnect systems. In the serial connection,  $y(t) = B(A(x(t)))$ . In the parallel connection,  $y(t) = aA(x(t)) + bB(x(t))$ . In the feedback loop,  $y(t) = x(t) - a\dot{y}(t)$ .

In continuous time, the unit impulse  $\delta(t)$  is a bit trickier to define. It is a function whose value is zero everywhere except at  $t = 0$ , where its value is infinite—but the *area* under the curve is equal to one.

To see how such a strange beast of a function might be formally defined, imagine a “box” function  $b(t)$ , whose value is zero everywhere except in the interval  $[0, T]$ , where its value is  $1/T$ . The area under this curve is just the area of the box, width times height, or  $T \times \frac{1}{T} = 1$ . Now imagine the limit as  $T \rightarrow 0$ . As this happens, the width of the box approaches zero and its height approaches infinity, but its area remains equal to 1. This is shown in Figure 14.12.

The unit impulse function is typically denoted by the symbol  $\delta(t)$ . It can be formally defined as follows:

$$\delta(t) = \lim_{T \rightarrow 0} b(t),$$

where

$$b(t) = \begin{cases} 1/T & \text{if } t \geq 0 \text{ and } t < T, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

As shown in Figure 14.13, we typically plot the unit impulse by drawing an arrow whose height represents the area under the curve (since the actual “height” of the function at  $t = 0$  is infinite).

#### 14.2.4.2 Using an Impulse Train to Represent a Signal

Now that we know what the unit impulse signal is, let’s see if we can describe an arbitrary signal  $x[n]$  as a linear combination of unit impulses. (Spoiler alert: It turns out we can.)

The function  $\delta[n - k]$  is a time-shifted discrete unit impulse, whose value is zero everywhere except at time  $n = k$ , where it is equal to one. In other words, the unit impulse  $\delta[n - k]$  is “positioned” at time  $k$ . Consider an impulse at one particular value of  $k$  (say,  $k = 3$ ). Let’s make sure that the “height” of that impulse matches the value of the original function at  $k = 3$  by “scaling” the impulse by  $x[3]$ , yielding  $x[3]\delta[n - 3]$ . If we rinse and repeat for all possible

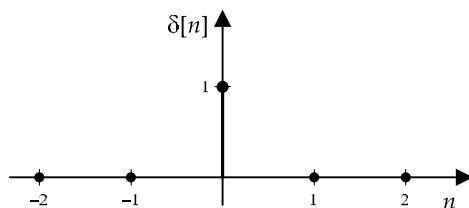


Figure 14.11. The unit impulse in discrete time.

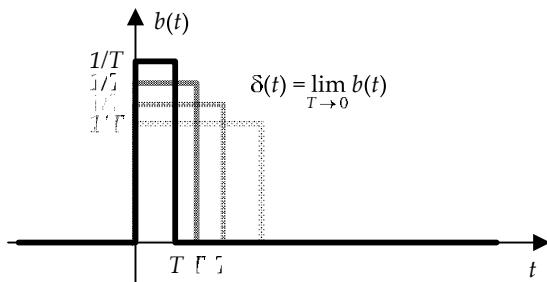


Figure 14.12. The unit impulse can be defined as the limit of a box function  $b(t)$  whose width approaches zero.

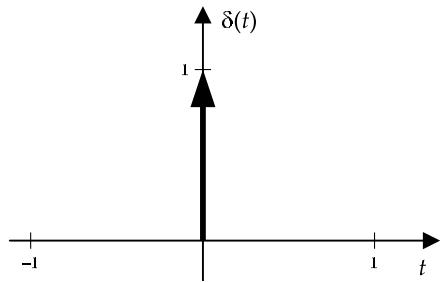


Figure 14.13. The value of the unit impulse function  $\delta(t)$  is zero everywhere except at  $t = 0$ , where it is infinite. It is drawn as an arrow of unit height to indicate that the area under the curve is 1.

values of  $k$ , we get a train of impulses of the form  $x[k]\delta[n - k]$ . Adding all these scaled, time-shifted impulse functions together is just another way of writing the original signal  $x[n]$ :

$$x[n] = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} x[k]\delta[n - k]. \quad (14.4)$$

We won't give a rigorous proof here, but it's probably not too hard to believe that doing this in continuous time works in pretty much the same way. The only difficulty is that for continuous time, the sum in Equation (14.4) becomes an integral. Let's imagine an infinite sequence of time-shifted unit impulses  $\delta(t - \tau)$ , each one located at a different time  $\tau$ . We can build up an arbitrary signal  $x(t)$  in an analogous fashion to the discrete-time case, as follows:

$$x(t) = \int_{\tau=-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\tau)\delta(t - \tau) d\tau. \quad (14.5)$$

#### 14.2.4.3 Convolution

Equation (14.4) tells us how to represent a signal  $x[n]$  as a *linear combination* of simple, time-shifted unit impulse signals  $\delta[n - k]$ . Let's imagine putting just *one* of these weighted impulse inputs ( $x[k]\delta[n - k]$ ) through the system. It doesn't matter which one we choose, so let's select the one at  $k = 0$ . This gives us the input signal  $x[0]\delta[n]$ .

We'll use the notation  $x[n] \implies y[n]$  to indicate that an input signal  $x[n]$  is being transformed by an LTI system into an output signal  $y[n]$ . So we can write:

$$x[0]\delta[n] \implies y[n].$$

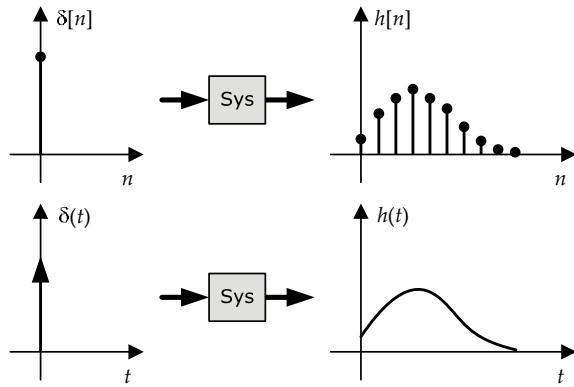


Figure 14.14. Examples of the impulse response of a system in discrete and continuous time.

The value of  $x[0]$  is just a constant, so because we're dealing with a linear system, the output  $y[n]$  will just be that same constant times the system's response to the unit impulse  $\delta[n]$ . Let's use the signal  $h[n]$  to represent the system's response to a "bare" unit impulse:  $\delta[n] \implies h[n]$ . The signal  $h[n]$  is called the *impulse response* of the system. So we can write the system's response to our simple input signal as follows:

$$x[0]\delta[n] \implies x[0]h[n].$$

The concept of impulse response is illustrated in Figure 14.14.

The response of an LTI system to a time-shifted unit impulse is just a time-shifted impulse response ( $\delta[n - k] \implies h[n - k]$ ). So for values of  $k$  other than zero, everything works out exactly the same except that now the input and output signals are both *time-shifted* by  $k$ :

$$x[k]\delta[n - k] \implies x[k]h[n - k].$$

To find the system's response to the entire input signal  $x[n]$ , we just sum up the responses to each individual time-shifted component, like this:

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} x[k] \delta[n - k] \implies \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} x[k] h[n - k].$$

In other words, the output of our system can be written as follows:

$$y[n] = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} x[k] h[n - k]. \quad (14.6)$$

This very important equation is known as the *convolution sum*. It's convenient to introduce a new mathematical operator  $*$  to represent the operation

of convolution:

$$x[n] * h[n] = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} x[k] h[n-k]. \quad (14.7)$$

Equations (14.6) and (14.7) give us a way to calculate an LTI system's response  $y[n]$  to any arbitrary input signal  $x[n]$ , given only the *impulse response* of the system,  $h[n]$ . In other words, for LTI systems, the impulse response signal  $h[n]$  *completely describes the system*. Pretty cool stuff.

### Convolution in Continuous Time

In our discussions above, we worked in discrete time to keep things simple. In continuous time, everything works out in pretty much the same way. The only difference is that summations become integrals, and we need to remember to include the differential  $d\tau$  in our equations.

When we apply an arbitrary signal  $x(t)$  to the input of a continuous-time LTI system, the output signal can be written as follows:

$$y(t) = \int_{\tau=-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\tau) h(t-\tau) d\tau. \quad (14.8)$$

As before, we'll use the operator  $*$  as a shorthand for convolution:

$$x(t) * h(t) = \int_{\tau=-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\tau) h(t-\tau) d\tau. \quad (14.9)$$

Analogous to the convolution sum, the integral in Equations (14.8) and (14.9) is known as the *convolution integral*.

#### 14.2.4.4 Visualizing Convolution

Let's try to visualize the convolution operation in the continuous time case. To evaluate  $y(t) = x(t) * h(t)$  for one specific value of  $t$  (say,  $t = 4$ ), we perform the following steps as illustrated in Figure 14.15:

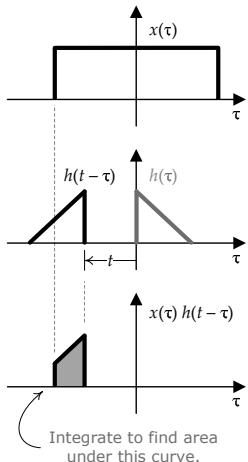


Figure 14.15. Visualization of the convolution operation in continuous time.

1. Plot  $x(\tau)$ , using  $\tau$  as the time variable because  $t$  is fixed (at  $t = 4$  in this example).
2. Plot  $h(t - \tau)$ . We can rewrite this as  $h(-\tau + t)$ . Because  $\tau$  is negated, we know that the impulse response has been flipped about  $\tau = 0$ . And because we've added  $t$  to the independent variable, we know the signal has been shifted to the *left* by  $t = 4$  units.
3. Multiply the two signals together across the entire  $\tau$  axis.

4. Integrate from  $-\infty$  to  $+\infty$  along the  $\tau$  axis to find the area under the resulting curve. This is the value of  $y(t)$  at this one specific value of  $t$  (in this example,  $t = 4$ ).

Remember that we must repeat this procedure for every possible value of  $t$  in order to determine the complete output signal  $y(t)$ .

#### 14.2.4.5 Some Properties of Convolution

The properties of the convolution operation are surprisingly analogous to those of ordinary multiplication. Convolution is:

- *commutative*:  $x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t)$ ;
- *associative*:  $x(t) * (h_1(t) * h_2(t)) = (x(t) * h_1(t)) * h_2(t)$ ; and
- *distributive*:  $x(t) * (h_1(t) + h_2(t)) = (x(t) * h_1(t)) + (x(t) * h_2(t))$ .

#### 14.2.5 The Frequency Domain and the Fourier Transform

In order to arrive at the concepts of impulse response and convolution, we described a signal as a weighted sum of unit impulses. We can also represent a signal as a weighted sum of sinusoids. Representing a signal in this manner essentially breaks it up into its *frequency components*. This will allow us to derive another incredibly powerful mathematical tool—the *Fourier transform*.

##### 14.2.5.1 The Sinusoidal Signal

A sinusoidal signal is produced when a circular motion in two dimensions is projected onto a single axis. An audio signal in the form of a sinusoid produces a “pure” tone at one specific frequency.

The most basic sinusoidal signal is the sine (or cosine) function. The signal  $x(t) = \sin t$  takes on the value 0 at  $t = 0, \pi$  and  $2\pi$ , has a value of 1 at  $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$  and has a value of  $-1$  at  $t = \frac{3\pi}{2}$ .

The most general form of a real-valued sinusoidal signal is

$$x(t) = A \cos(\omega_0 t + \phi). \quad (14.10)$$

Here,  $A$  represents the *amplitude* of the sine wave (i.e., the peaks and troughs of the cosine wave hit maximum and minimum values of  $A$  and  $-A$ , respectively). The *angular frequency* is  $\omega_0$ , measured in radians/second (see Section 14.1.1 for a discussion of frequency and angular frequency).  $\phi$  represents a *phase offset* (also measured in radians) that shifts the cosine wave to the left or right along the time axis.

When  $A = 1$ ,  $\omega_0 = 1$  and  $\phi = 0$ , Equation (14.10) reduces to  $x(t) = \cos t$ . When  $\phi = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , the expression becomes  $x(t) = \sin t$ . The cos function represents the projection of a circular motion onto the horizontal axis, while sin represents its projection onto the vertical axis.

#### 14.2.5.2 The Complex Exponential Signal

The cosine function isn't actually the best tool for representing a signal as a sum of sinusoids. The math is much simpler and more elegant if we make use of *complex numbers* instead. In order to understand how this works, we need to review complex math, and take a look at how multiplication of complex numbers works. So bear with me here—all will become clear by the time we're done.

#### *A Brief Review of Complex Numbers*

You'll probably remember from high-school math class that a complex number is a kind of two-dimensional quantity consisting of a real part and an imaginary part. Any complex number can be written as follows:  $c = a + jb$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers and  $j = \sqrt{-1}$  is the *imaginary unit*. The real part of  $c$  is  $a = \Re(c)$ , and its imaginary part is  $b = \Im(c)$ .

You can visualize a complex number as a kind of “vector”  $[a, b]$  in a two-dimensional space known as the *Argand plane*. It's important to remember, however, that complex numbers and vectors are *not* interchangeable—their mathematical behaviors are quite different.

We define the *magnitude* of a complex number as the length of its 2D “vector” representation in the complex plane:  $|c| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ . The angle the vector makes with the real axis is known as its *argument*:  $\arg c = \tan^{-1}(b/a)$ . (The argument of a complex number is sometimes called its *phase*. As we'll see, the term “phase” is closely related to the *phase offset*  $\phi$  in Equation (14.10).) The magnitude and argument of a complex number are depicted in Figure 14.16.

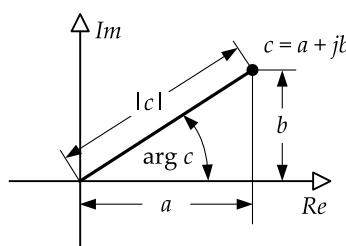


Figure 14.16. The magnitude  $|c| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$  of a complex number is its length in the complex plane, and its argument  $\arg c = \tan^{-1}(b/a)$  is the angle it makes with the  $\Re$  axis.

### Complex Multiplication and Rotation

We won't get into all of the properties of complex numbers here. Check out <http://www.math.wisc.edu/~angenent/Free-Lecture-Notes/freecomplexnumbers.pdf> for an in-depth discussion of complex number theory. However, there is one mathematical operation that does concern us here: the operation of complex *multiplication*.

Complex numbers are multiplied algebraically (no dot or cross products here):

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 c_2 &= (a_1 + jb_1)(a_2 + jb_2) \\ &= (a_1 a_2) + j(a_1 b_2 + a_2 b_1) + j^2 b_1 b_2 \\ &= (a_1 a_2 - b_1 b_2) + j(a_1 b_2 + a_2 b_1). \end{aligned} \quad (14.11)$$

If you work out<sup>2</sup> the magnitude and argument (angle) of the product  $c_1 c_2$ , you'll find that the magnitude is equal to the *product* of the two input magnitudes, and the argument is the *sum* of the input arguments:

$$\begin{aligned} |c_1 c_2| &= |c_1| |c_2|; \\ \arg(c_1 c_2) &= \arg c_1 + \arg c_2. \end{aligned} \quad (14.12)$$

The fact that multiplication of complex numbers causes their angles (arguments) to *add* means that complex multiplication produces a *rotation* in the complex plane. If the magnitude of  $c_1$  is unity ( $|c_1| = 1$ ), then the magnitude of the product will be equal to the magnitude of  $c_2$  ( $|c_1 c_2| = |c_2|$ ). In this case, the product represents a *pure rotation* of  $c_2$  by an angle equal to  $\arg c_1$  (see Figure 14.17). If  $|c_1| \neq 1$ , then the product's magnitude will be *scaled* by  $|c_1|$ , and the result is that  $c_2$  undergoes a *spiral motion* in the complex plane.

This explains why *unit-length* quaternions operate as rotations in 3D space! A quaternion is essentially a four-dimensional complex number, with one real part and three imaginary parts. So a quaternion follows the same basic rules in three dimensions that a regular complex number follows in two dimensions.

The fact that complex multiplication produces a rotation makes sense when we consider what happens when we multiply  $j$  by itself many times:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \times j &= j, \\ j \times j &= \sqrt{-1} \sqrt{-1} = -1, \\ -1 \times j &= -j, \\ -j \times j &= 1, \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

<sup>2</sup>Yikes—this sounds an awful lot like an exercise for the reader...

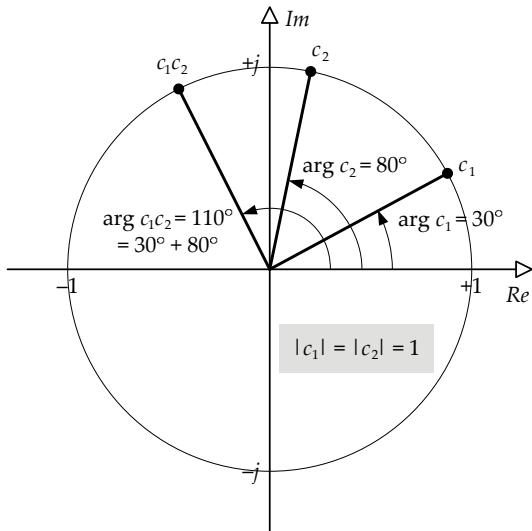


Figure 14.17. Multiplying two complex numbers together that both have magnitudes of 1 produces a *pure rotation* in the complex plane.

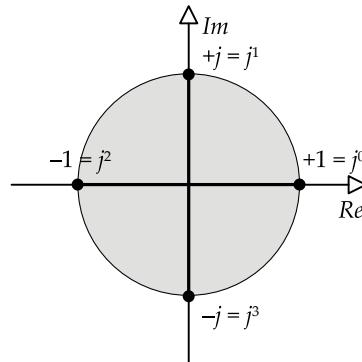


Figure 14.18. Multiplying the imaginary number  $j = \sqrt{-1}$  by itself acts like rotating a unit vector by 90 degrees in the complex plane.

So multiplying  $j$  by itself is like *rotating* a unit vector by 90 degrees in the complex plane. In fact, multiplying *any* complex number by  $j$  has the effect of rotating it by 90 degrees. This is illustrated in Figure 14.18.

### *The Complex Exponential and Euler's Formula*

For any complex number  $c$  with  $|c| = 1$ , the function  $f(n) = c^n$ , with  $n$  taking on a sequence of increasing positive real values, will trace out a *circular path* in

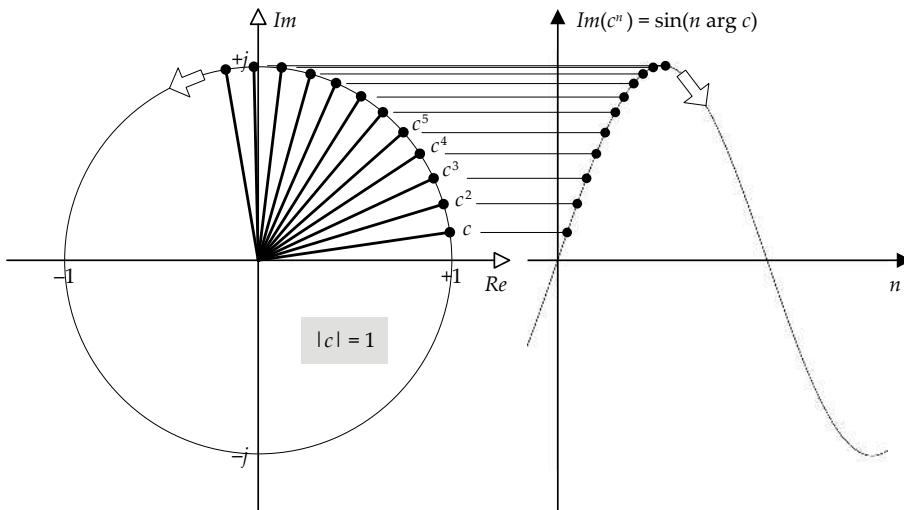


Figure 14.19. Multiplying a complex number by itself repeatedly traces out a circular path in the Argand plane, producing a sinusoid when projected onto any axis through the origin.

the complex plane. Any circular path in two dimensions traces out a sine curve along the vertical axis, and a corresponding cosine curve along the horizontal axis. This is illustrated in Figure 14.19.

Raising a *complex* number to a *real* power ( $c^n$ ) produces rotation in the complex plane, and therefore yields a sinusoid when projected onto any axis in the plane. As it turns out, we can also get this rotational effect by raising a *real* number to a *complex* power ( $n^c$ ). This means that we can write Equation (14.10) in terms of complex numbers as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} e^{j\omega_0 t} &= \cos \omega_0 t + j \sin \omega_0 t, \quad t \in \mathbb{R}; \\ \Re[e^{j\omega_0 t}] &= \cos \omega_0 t; \\ \Im[e^{j\omega_0 t}] &= \sin \omega_0 t, \end{aligned} \tag{14.13}$$

where  $e \approx 2.71828$  is the real transcendental number that defines the base of the natural logarithm function.

Equation (14.13) is one of the most important equations in all of mathematics. It is known as *Euler's formula*. Why it works is a bit of a mystery (even to some seasoned mathematicians). The theorem can be explained by looking at the Taylor series expansion of  $e^{jt}$ , or by considering the derivative of  $e^x$  and then allowing  $x$  to become a complex number. But for our purposes, it should suffice to rely on the intuitions we gained from looking at how complex multiplication results in rotation in the complex plane.

### 14.2.5.3 The Fourier Series

Now that we have the mathematical tools we need to represent sinusoids as complex numbers, let's turn our attention again to the task of representing a signal as a sum of sinusoids.

Doing this is easiest when the signal is *periodic*. In this case, we can write the signal as a sum of *harmonically related* sinusoids:

$$x(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty} a_k e^{j(k\omega_0)t}. \quad (14.14)$$

We call this the *Fourier series* representation of the signal. Here, the complex exponential functions  $e^{j(k\omega_0)t}$  are the sinusoidal components from which we are building up the signal. These components are *harmonically related*, in that each one has a frequency that is an integer multiple  $k$  of the so-called *fundamental frequency*  $\omega_0$ . The coefficients  $a_k$  represent the “amount” of each harmonic present in the signal  $x(t)$ .

### 14.2.5.4 The Fourier Transform

A full explanation of this topic is beyond the scope of this book, but for our purposes it will suffice to state (without any proof whatsoever!) that *any* reasonably well-behaved signal,<sup>3</sup> even signals that are *non-periodic*, can be represented as a linear combination of sinusoids. In general, an arbitrary signal may contain components at *any* frequency, not just frequencies that are harmonically related. As such, the discrete set of harmonic coefficients  $a_k$  in Equation (14.14) becomes a continuum of values representing “how much” of each frequency the signal contains.

We can envision a new function  $X(\omega)$  whose independent variable is the frequency  $\omega$  rather than time  $t$ , and whose value represents the amount of each frequency present in the original signal  $x(t)$ . We say that  $x(t)$  is the *time domain* representation of the signal, while  $X(\omega)$  is its *frequency domain* representation.

Mathematically, we can find the frequency domain representation of a signal from its time domain representation, and vice versa, by using the *Fourier transform*:

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt; \quad (14.15)$$

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega. \quad (14.16)$$

---

<sup>3</sup>All signals that meet the so-called *Dirichlet conditions* have Fourier transforms and are therefore “reasonably well-behaved” for our purposes.

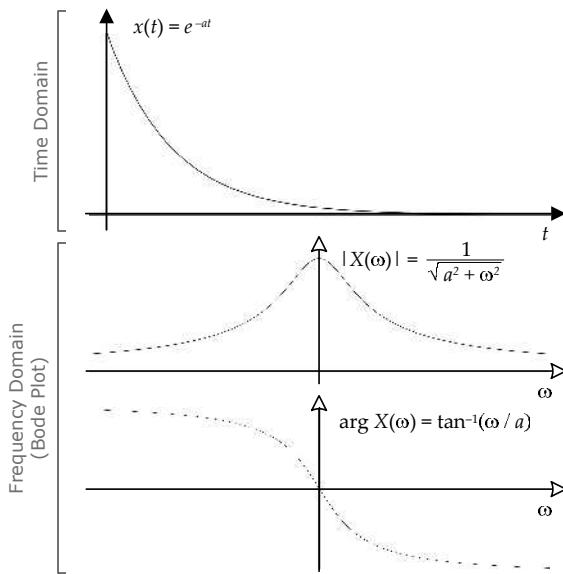


Figure 14.20. The Fourier transform yields a complex-valued frequency domain signal. A Bode plot is used to visualize this complex-valued signal in terms of its magnitude and its phase (or argument).

If you compare Equation (14.16) to the Fourier series from Equation (14.14), you can see the similarity. Rather than describing the “amounts” of the frequency components via a discrete series of coefficients  $a_k$ , we’re now describing them using the continuous function  $X(\omega)$ . But in both cases we’re representing  $x(t)$  as a “sum” of sinusoids.

#### 14.2.5.5 Bode Plots

In general the Fourier transform of a real-valued signal is a *complex-valued* signal ( $X(\omega) \in \mathbb{C}$ ). When visualizing the Fourier transform, we often draw it using two plots. For example, we might plot its real and imaginary components. Or we might plot its magnitude and its argument (angle) on two different plots—a visualization known as a *Bode plot* (pronounced “Boh-dee”). Figure 14.20 shows an example of a signal and its Bode plot.

#### 14.2.5.6 The Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)

A collection of fast algorithms exist for calculating the Fourier transform in discrete time. This family of algorithms is called, aptly enough, the *fast Fourier transform* or FFT. You can read more about the FFT at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fast\\_Fourier\\_transform](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fast_Fourier_transform).

#### 14.2.5.7 Fourier Transforms and Convolution

It is interesting to note that convolution in the time domain corresponds to multiplication in the frequency domain and vice versa. Given a system whose impulse response is  $h(t)$ , we know that we can find the output of the system  $y(t)$  in response to an input  $x(t)$  as follows:

$$y(t) = x(t) * h(t).$$

In the frequency domain, given the Fourier transforms of the impulse response  $H(\omega)$  and the input  $X(\omega)$ , we can find the Fourier transform of the output as follows:

$$Y(\omega) = X(\omega)H(\omega).$$

This result is pretty incredible, and it's also very handy. Sometimes it is more convenient to perform a convolution on the time axis using a system's impulse response  $h(t)$ , while at other times it's more convenient to perform a multiplication in the frequency domain using the system's *frequency response*  $H(\omega)$ .

As it turns out, LTI systems exhibit a property called *duality*, which says that you can reverse the roles of time and frequency and virtually the same mathematical rules continue to apply. So, for example, we can understand how signal *modulation* (the multiplication of one signal by another) works in the time domain by looking at what happens when we convolve the Fourier transforms of the two signals on the frequency axis. Having two ways of tackling a problem is always better than one!

#### 14.2.5.8 Filtering

The Fourier transform allows us to visualize the set of frequencies that make up virtually any audio signal. A *filter* is an LTI system that attenuates a selected range of input frequencies while leaving all other frequencies unaltered. A *low-pass* filter retains low frequencies while attenuating high frequencies. A *high-pass* filter does the opposite, retaining high frequencies and attenuating lower frequencies. A *band-pass* filter attenuates both low and high frequencies but retains frequencies within a limited *passband*. A *notch* filter does the opposite, retaining low and high frequencies but attenuating frequencies within a limited *stopband*.

Filters are used in a stereo system's *equalizer*, by attenuating or boosting specific frequencies based on user inputs. Filters can also be used to attenuate noise, if the spectra of the noise signal and the desirable signal occupy different regions of the frequency axis. For example, if a high-frequency noise signal is

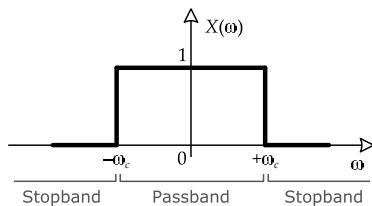


Figure 14.21. The frequency response  $H(\omega)$  for an ideal filter has a value of one in the passband and zero in the stopband.

adversely affecting a lower-frequency voice or music signal, a low-pass filter could be used to eliminate the noise.

The frequency response  $H(\omega)$  of an ideal filter looks like a rectangular box, with a value of one in the passband and zero in the stopband. When we multiply this by the Fourier transform of our input signal  $X(\omega)$ , the output  $Y(\omega) = X(\omega)H(\omega)$  will have its passband frequencies preserved exactly, and its stopband frequencies all set to zero. The frequency response for an ideal filter is shown in Figure 14.21.

Of course, an ideal filter that completely passes certain frequencies and completely suppresses others may not be desirable. The frequency responses of most real-world filters have a gradual fall-off between the passband and stopband. This aids filtering in situations where there is no single, clear-cut line between the desirable frequencies and the unwanted frequencies. The frequency response of a low-pass filter with a gradual fall-off is shown in Figure 14.22.

The *equalizer* (EQ) found on most high-fidelity audio equipment permits the user to adjust the amount of bass, mid-range and treble that is output. An EQ is really just a collection of filters tuned to different frequency ranges and applied in series to an audio signal.

Filtering theory is an immense field of study, so we can't possibly do it justice here. For a great deal more information, see [41, Chapter 6].

## 14.3 The Technology of Sound

Before we can fully understand the software that comprises a game's audio engine, we need a firm grasp of audio hardware and technology and of the terminology used by industry professionals to describe it.

### 14.3.1 Analog Audio Technology

The earliest audio hardware was based on analog electronics. This was the easiest way to record, manipulate and play back audio compression waves, because sound is itself an analog physical phenomenon. In this section, we'll briefly explore some key analog audio technologies.

#### 14.3.1.1 Microphones

A microphone (also known as a “mic” or “mike”) is a transducer that converts an audio compression wave into an electronic signal. Microphones make use of various technologies in order to convert the mechanical pressure variations of a sound wave into an equivalent signal based on variations in electric voltage. A *dynamic microphone* uses electromagnetic induction, while a *condenser microphone* utilizes changes in capacitance. Other types of mics use piezoelectric generation or light modulation to produce a voltage signal.

Different microphones have different sensitivity patterns, known as *polar patterns*. These patterns describe how sensitive the mic is to sound at various angles about its central axis. An omnidirectional mic is equally sensitive in all directions. A bidirectional mic has two sensitivity “lobes” in the shape of a figure eight. A cardioid mic has essentially a unidirectional sensitivity profile, so named because of its somewhat heart-shaped polar pattern. Some common

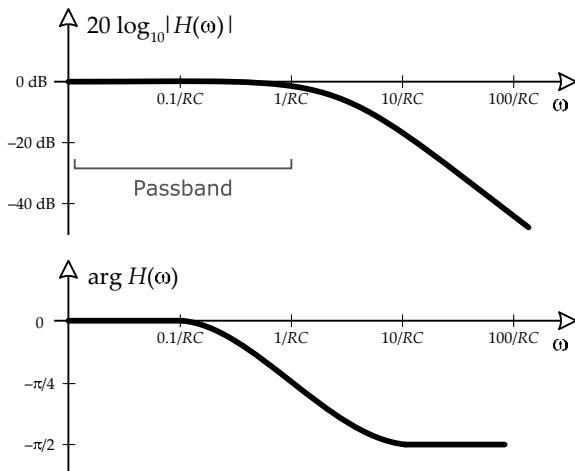


Figure 14.22. The frequency response  $H(\omega)$  for an RC (resistor-capacitor) low-pass filter with a gradual fall-off. Both the horizontal and vertical axes of both plots are drawn using a logarithmic scale.

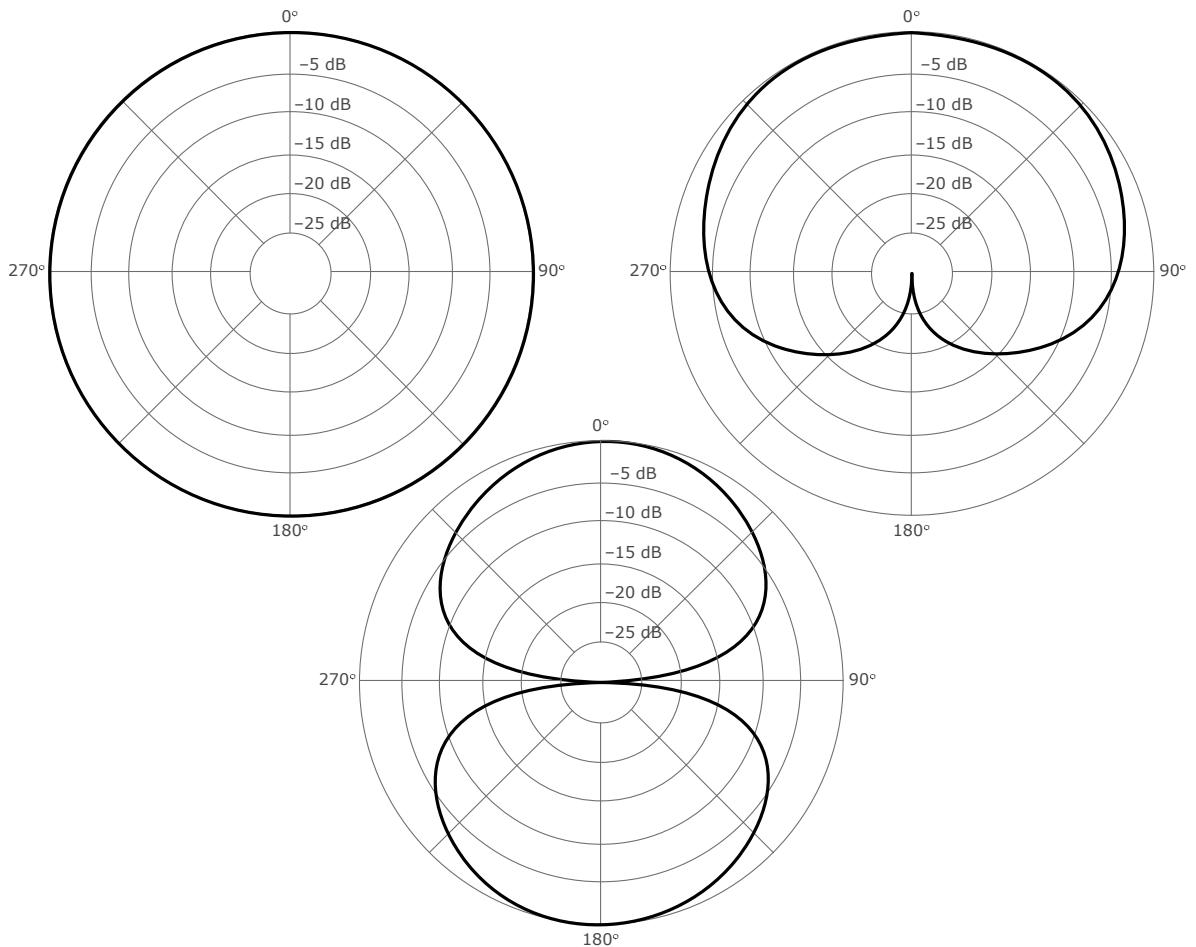


Figure 14.23. Three typical microphone polar patterns, clockwise from upper left: omnidirectional, cardioid and bidirectional.

microphone polar patterns are illustrated in Figure 14.23.

#### 14.3.1.2 Speakers

A *speaker* is basically a microphone operated in reverse—it is a transducer that converts a varying input voltage signal into vibrations in a membrane, which in turn gives rise to air pressure variations that result in a sound pressure wave.

### 14.3.1.3 Speaker Layouts: Stereo

Sound systems usually support multiple speaker output channels. A stereo device such as an iPod, the sound system in your car or your grandpa’s portable “boom box” supports at least two speakers for the left and right stereo channels. Some high-fidelity stereo systems also boast two additional “tweeters”—tiny speakers that are capable of reproducing the highest-frequency sounds within the left and right channels. This allows the two main speakers to be larger, and therefore better at covering the bass. Some stereo systems also support a subwoofer or LFE (low-frequency effects) speaker. Such systems are sometimes called 2.1 systems—two for the left and right, and “dot one” for the LFE speaker.

#### *Headphones versus Speakers*

It’s important to distinguish between stereo speakers in an open room and stereo headphones. Stereo speakers in a room will typically be positioned in front of the listener and offset to either side. This means that the sound waves coming from the *left* speaker are actually received by the *right* ear as well, and vice versa. The waves from the more-distant speaker will arrive at the ear with a slight time delay (phase shift) and a slight attenuation. The phase-shifted sound waves from the more-distant speaker will tend to *interfere* with those coming from the closer speaker. The sound system should take this interference into account in order to produce the highest quality sound.

Headphones, on the other hand, come in direct contact with the ears, so the left and right channels are perfectly isolated and do not interfere with one another. Also, because headphones deliver sound almost directly to the ear canal, the head-related transfer effects (HRTF) of the shape of the ears themselves do not come into play (see Section 14.1.4), meaning that somewhat less spatial information is received by the listener.

### 14.3.1.4 Speaker Layouts: Surround Sound

Home theater *surround sound* systems typically come in two flavors: 5.1 and 7.1. As you undoubtedly guessed, these numbers refer to the five or seven “main” speakers, plus the one subwoofer. The goal of a surround sound system is to immerse the listener in a realistic soundscape, by providing *positional* information as well as high-fidelity sound reproduction (see Section 14.1.4). The main speaker channels in a 5.1 system are: center, front left, front right, rear left and rear right. A 7.1 system adds two additional speakers, surround left and surround right, which are intended to be placed directly to either side of the listener. Dolby Digital AC-3 and DTS are two popular surround sound

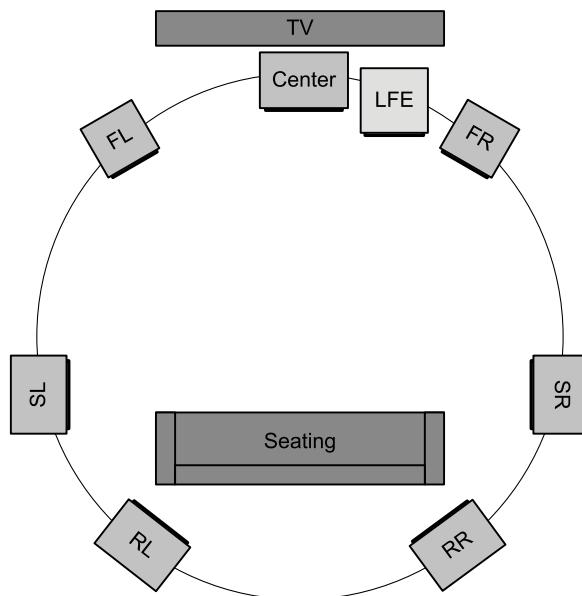


Figure 14.24. Speaker arrangement for a 7.1 surround sound home theater system.

technologies. The speaker layout of a typical 7.1 home theater is shown in Figure 14.24.

Dolby Surround, Dolby Pro Logic and Dolby Pro Logic II are technologies for expanding a stereo source signal into 5.1 surround sound. A stereo signal lacks the positional information necessary to drive the 5.1 speaker configuration directly. But using these Dolby technologies, an approximation of the missing positional information can be generated heuristically using various cues found within the original stereo source signal.

#### 14.3.1.5 Analog Signal Levels

Audio voltage signals may be transmitted at various voltage levels. A microphone usually produces a low-amplitude voltage signal—these are called *mic-level* signals. For connections between components, higher-voltage *line-level* signals are used. There's a big difference between professional audio equipment and consumer electronics when it comes to line-level voltages. Professional gear is usually designed to work with line levels ranging from 2.191 V (volts) peak-to-peak for a nominal signal up to a maximum voltage of 3.472 V peak-to-peak. The peak-to-peak voltage of a “line level” signal on consumer equipment varies quite a bit, but most consumer devices output up to 1.0 V peak-to-peak, and have inputs that can handle up to 2.0 V signals. It's impor-

tant to match the levels of input and output signals when connecting audio equipment. Passing a voltage that is too high for the device to handle will cause clipping of the signal. And passing a voltage that is too low will result in audio that sounds quieter than it should.

#### 14.3.1.6 Amplifiers

The small voltages produced by a microphone must be *amplified* in order to drive speakers with enough force to produce audible sound waves. An *amplifier* is an analog electronic circuit that produces at its output a nearly exact replica of its input signal, but with the *amplitude* of the signal increased significantly. An amp essentially increases the *power* content of a signal. It does this by drawing from some kind of power source, and driving the increased voltage produced by this power source in such a way as to mimic the behavior of the input signal over time. In other words, an amp *modulates* the output of its power source to match its much lower-voltage input signal.

The core technology behind an amplifier is the *transistor*—that well-known and utterly ingenious device that sits at the heart of many modern electronic devices, including its crowning achievement—the computer. A transistor makes use of a semiconducting material in order to link the voltages between two otherwise isolated, independent circuits. As such, a low-voltage signal can be used to drive a higher-voltage circuit. This is exactly what is required of an amplifier. We won't get into the details of how transistors and amplifiers work under the hood here. But if you're curious, you can whet your whistle with this great YouTube video on how the very first transistor worked: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RdYHljZi7ys>. And you can read more about amplifier circuits here: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Amplifier>.

The *gain*  $A$  of an amplification system is defined as the ratio of output power  $P_{\text{out}}$  to input power  $P_{\text{in}}$ . Like sound pressure level, gain is typically measured in decibels:

$$A = 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{P_{\text{out}}}{P_{\text{in}}} \right) \text{ dB.}$$

#### 14.3.1.7 Volume/Gain Controls

A *volume control* is basically an inverse amplifier, also known as an *attenuator*. Rather than increasing the amplitude of an electrical signal, it *decreases* the amplitude, while keeping all other aspects of the waveform intact. In a home theater system, the D/A converter produces a voltage signal with a very small amplitude. The power amp boosts this signal up to the maximum “safe” output power, beyond which the sound produced by your speakers would begin to clip and distort (or even damage your hardware). The volume control then

attenuates this maximum output power to produce sound at the desired listening volume.

A volume control is much simpler to make than an amplifier. One can be constructed by introducing a variable resistor, also known as a *potentiometer*, into the circuit somewhere between the amplifier's output and the speakers. When the resistance is at its minimum (at or very close to zero), the amplitude of the input signal isn't changed, and a sound of maximum volume is produced. When the resistance is at its maximum setting, the input signal's amplitude is maximally attenuated, and a sound of minimum volume is produced.

If your stereo system at home reports the volume in decibels, you've probably noticed that the values are always negative. This is because the volume control is attenuating the output of the power amp. The volume meter is still measured like a gain, but the "input" power is the maximum power of the amp, and the "output" power is the volume selected by the user:

$$A = 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{P_{\text{volume}}}{P_{\text{max}}} \right) \text{ dB},$$

which will be negative as long as  $P_{\text{volume}} < P_{\text{max}}$ .

#### 14.3.1.8 Analog Wiring and Connectors

An analog monophonic audio voltage signal can be carried by a pair of wires; a stereo signal requires three wires (two channels plus a common ground). The wiring can be internal to a device, in which case it is usually called a *bus*. Wiring can also be external, for use in connecting different devices to one another.

External wiring is typically connected to audio hardware either via a direct "clip" or screw-post connector, of the kind found on high-end speakers, or via various standardized connectors. Examples include RCA jacks, large TRS (tip/ring/sleeve) jacks (the kind used by telephone operators in the early 1900s), TRS mini-jacks (found on your iPod, mobile phone and most PC sound cards), keyed jacks (found most often on high-quality microphones and power amps), and the list goes on.

Audio wiring is available in a wide range of quality levels. Thicker-gauge wiring offers less resistance and therefore can transmit signals over farther distances without unacceptable levels of attenuation. Optional shielding can help reduce noise. And of course the choice of which metal to use in the construction of the wires and connectors can make a difference in the quality of the wiring as well.

### 14.3.2 Digital Audio Technology

The introduction of the compact disc (CD) marked a turning point in the audio industry toward digital audio storage and processing. Digital technology opens up a great many new possibilities, from reducing the size and increasing the capacity of storage media, to using powerful computer hardware and software to synthesize and manipulate audio in previously unimagined ways. Today, analog audio storage devices are a thing of the past, and analog audio signals are typically employed only where necessary—at the microphone and the speaker.

As we saw in Section 14.2.1.1, the distinction between analog and digital audio technologies corresponds exactly to the distinction between *continuous-time* and *discrete-time* signals in the study of signal processing theory.

#### 14.3.2.1 Analog-to-Digital Conversion: Pulse-Code Modulation

To record audio for use in a digital system, such as a computer or game console, the time-varying voltage of an analog audio signal must first be converted into digital form. Pulse-code modulation (PCM) is the standard method for encoding a sampled analog sound signal so that it can be stored in a computer's memory, transmitted over a digital telephony network or burned onto a compact disc.

In pulse-code modulation, voltage measurements are taken at regular time intervals. The voltage measurements may be stored in floating-point format, or they may be *quantized* so that each measurement can be stored in an integer with a fixed number of bits (typically 8, 16, 24 or 32). The sequence of measured voltage values is then stored into an array in memory, or written out to a long-term storage medium. The process of measuring a single analog voltage and converting it to quantized numeric form is called *analog-to-digital conversion* or A/D conversion. Specialized hardware is typically used to perform A/D conversions. When we repeat this process at regular time intervals, it is called *sampling*. A hardware or software component that performs A/D conversion and/or sampling is referred to as an A/D converter or ADC.

In math terms, given the continuous-time audio signal  $p(t)$ , we construct the *sampled* version  $p[n]$  such that for each sample,  $p[n] = p(nT_s)$ , where  $n$  is a non-negative integer used to index the samples, and  $T_s$  is the amount of time between each sample, known as the *sampling period*. The basics of sampling are illustrated in Figure 14.25.

The digital signal that results from PCM sampling has two important properties:

- *Sampling rate*. This is the frequency at which the voltage measurements

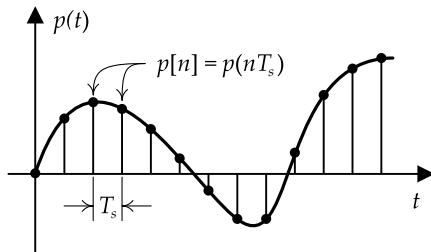


Figure 14.25. A discrete-time signal can be thought of as a sampled version of a continuous-time signal.

(samples) are taken. In principle an analog signal can be recorded digitally without *any* loss of fidelity, provided that it is sampled at a frequency *twice* that of the highest-frequency component present in the original signal. This somewhat astounding and incredibly useful fact is known as the *Shannon-Nyquist sampling theorem*. As we saw in Section 14.1.2.2, humans can only hear sounds within a limited band of frequencies (from 20 Hz to 20 kHz). So all audio signals of interest to human beings are *band-limited*, and can be faithfully recorded using a sampling rate of a little over 40 kHz. (Voice signals occupy a narrower band of frequencies, from 300 Hz to 3.4 kHz, so digital telephony systems can get away with a sampling frequency of only 8 kHz.)

- *Bit depth*. This describes the number of bits used to represent each quantized voltage measurement. *Quantization error* is the error introduced by rounding the measured voltage values to the nearest quantized value. All other things being equal, a greater bit depth results in lower quantization error, and therefore yields a higher-quality audio recording. A bit depth of 16 is typical among uncompressed audio data formats. Bit depth is sometimes referred to as *resolution*.

### *The Shannon-Nyquist Sampling Theorem*

The *Shannon-Nyquist sampling theorem* states that if a *band-limited* continuous-time signal (i.e., a signal whose Fourier transform is zero everywhere outside a limited band of frequencies) is sampled to produce its discrete-time counterpart, the original continuous-time signal can be recovered *exactly* from the discrete signal, provided that the sampling rate is high enough. The minimum sampling frequency for which this relation holds is called the *Nyquist*

frequency.

$$\omega_s > 2\omega_{\max},$$

where

$$\omega_s = \frac{2\pi}{T_s}.$$

Clearly, it is the existence of this theorem that allows digital technology to be used in audio processing. Without it, digital audio would be doomed never to sound as good as analog audio, and computers would not be playing the significant role in the production of high-fidelity audio that they do today.

We won't get into all of the gory details of why the sampling theorem works. But we can gain some insight by realizing that the act of sampling a signal at regularly spaced intervals in time causes its frequency spectrum (Fourier transform) to be duplicated over and over along the frequency axis. The higher the sampling frequency, the more "spaced out" these copies of the signal's frequency spectrum will be. So if the original signal is band-limited,

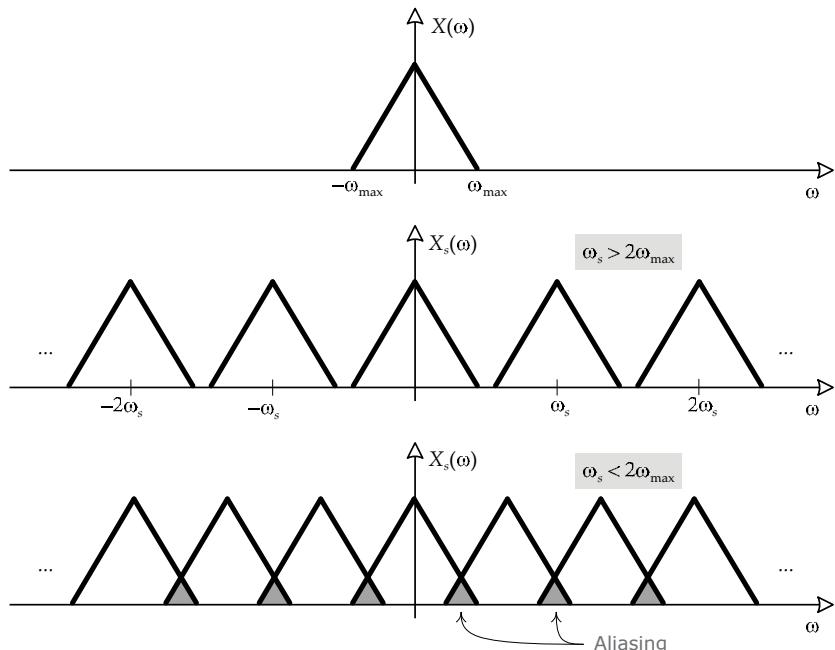


Figure 14.26. The frequency spectrum of a band-limited signal is zero everywhere except within a limited frequency band (top). If the sampling frequency exceeds the Nyquist frequency, the spectrum copies do not overlap and the original signal can be recovered exactly (middle). If the sampling frequency is too low, the spectrum copies overlap and aliasing results (bottom).

and if the sampling frequency is high enough, we can guarantee that the copies of the frequency spectrum will be spaced far enough apart so as not to overlap with one another. When this happens, we can recover the original frequency spectrum exactly via a low-pass filter that filters out all of the copies of the spectrum except the original. However, if the sampling frequency is too low, the spectrum copies will overlap with one another. This is called *aliasing*, and it prevents us from exactly recovering the original signal's spectrum. See Figure 14.26 for an illustration of aliased and unaliased sampling.

#### 14.3.2.2 Digital-to-Analog Conversion: Demodulation

When a digital sound signal is to be played back, a process opposite to that of analog-to-digital conversion is required. We call this, sensibly enough, *digital-to-analog conversion* or D/A conversion for short. It is also termed *demodulation* because it undoes the effects of pulse-code modulation. A digital-to-analog conversion circuit is called a DAC.

D/A conversion hardware generates an analog voltage corresponding to each sampled voltage value in a digital signal, as represented by an array of quantized PCM values in memory. If we drive this hardware with new values periodically, at the rate at which the samples were measured during PCM, and presuming that the sample rate was high enough as per the Shannon-Nyquist sampling theorem, the analog voltage signal produced should exactly match the original voltage signal.

Practically speaking, when we drive an analog voltage circuit with a sequence of discrete voltage levels, unwanted high-frequency oscillations are often introduced as the hardware tries to rapidly change from one voltage level to another. D/A hardware typically includes a low-pass or band-pass filter to remove these unwanted oscillations, thereby ensuring an accurate reproduction of the original analog signal. For more information on filtering, see Section 14.2.5.8.

#### 14.3.2.3 Digital Audio Formats and Codecs

Various data formats exist for storing PCM audio data on disc or transmitting it over the Internet. Each format has its history, and its pros and cons. Some formats such as AVI are actually “container” formats, which can encapsulate digital audio signals in more than one data format.

Some audio formats store the PCM data in an uncompressed form. Others utilize various forms of data compression to reduce the required file size or transmission bandwidth. Some compression schemes are *lossy*, meaning that some of the fidelity of the original signal is lost in the compression/decompression process. Other compression schemes are *lossless*, meaning that

the original PCM data can be recovered exactly after a round-trip compression/decompression cycle.

Let's take a look at a few of the most common audio data formats.

- *Raw header-less PCM* data is sometimes used in situations where the meta-information about the signal, such as the sample rate and bit depth, is known a priori.
- *Linear PCM (LPCM)* is an uncompressed audio format that can support up to eight channels of audio at a 48 kHz or 96 kHz sampling frequency, and 16, 20 or 24 bits per sample. The “linear” in LPCM refers to the fact that the amplitude measurements are taken on a linear scale (as opposed to, say, a logarithmic scale).
- *WAV* is an uncompressed file format created by Microsoft and IBM. Its use is commonplace on the Windows operating system. Its correct name is “waveform audio file format” although it is also rarely referred to as “audio for windows.” The WAV file format is actually one of a family of formats known as *resource interchange file format* (RIFF). The contents of a RIFF file are arranged in chunks, each with a four-character code (FOURCC) that defines the contents of the chunk and a chunk size field. The bitstream in a WAV file conforms to the linear pulse-code modulation (LPCM) format. WAV files can also contain compressed audio, but they are most commonly used for storing uncompressed audio data.
- *WMA* (Windows Media Audio) is proprietary audio compression technology designed by Microsoft as an alternative to MP3. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Windows\\_Media\\_Audio](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Windows_Media_Audio) for details.
- *AIFF* (audio interchange file format) is a format developed by Apple Computer, Inc. and used widely on Macintosh computers. Like a WAV/RIFF file, an AIFF file typically contains uncompressed PCM data, and is comprised of chunks, each prefaced by a four-character code and a size field. AIFF-C is a compressed variant of the AIFF format.
- *MP3* is a lossy compressed audio file format that has become the de facto standard on most digital audio players, and is also widely used by games and multimedia systems and services. The full name of this format is actually MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 audio layer III. MP3 compression can result in files that are one-tenth the size, but with very little perceptual difference from the original uncompressed audio. These results are achieved by making use of *perceptual coding*—a technique that eliminates portions of the audio signal that are beyond the perception of most people anyway.

- *ATRAC* stands for Adaptive Transform Acoustic Coding—a family of proprietary audio compression techniques developed by Sony. The format was originally developed to allow Sony’s MiniDisc media to contain audio with the same running time as a CD while occupying significantly less space and undergoing an imperceptible degradation in quality. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adaptive\\_Transform\\_Acoustic\\_Coding](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adaptive_Transform_Acoustic_Coding) for more details.
- *Ogg Vorbis* is an open source file format that offers lossy compression. Ogg refers to a “container” format that is commonly used in conjunction with the Vorbis data format.
- *Dolby Digital (AC-3)* is a lossy compression format supporting channel formats from mono to 5.1 surround sound.
- *DTS* is a collection of theater audio technologies developed by DTS, Inc. DTS Coherent Acoustics is a digital audio format transportable through S/PDIF interfaces (see Section 14.3.2.5) and used on DVDs and Laserdiscs.
- *VAG* is a proprietary audio file format available for use by all PlayStation 3 developers. It makes use of *adaptive differential PCM* (ADPCM), an analog-to-digital conversion scheme based on PCM. Differential PCM (DPCM) stores the deltas between samples rather than the absolute values of the samples themselves, in order to allow the signal to be compressed more effectively. Adaptive DPCM varies the sample rate dynamically in order to further improve the achievable compression ratio.
- *MPEG-4 SLS*, *MPEG-4 ALS* and *MPEG-4 DST* are formats that offer lossless compression.

This list is by no means comprehensive. In fact, there are a dizzying number of audio file formats, and an even longer list of compression/decompression algorithms. For an introduction to the fascinating world of audio data formats, check out our old friend Wikipedia: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Digital\\_audio\\_format](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Digital_audio_format). The “PlayStation 3 Secrets” website also provides some excellent information on audio formats: <https://bit.ly/2HOVtvR>.

#### 14.3.2.4 Parallel and Interleaved Audio Data

One way to organize multi-channel audio data is to store the samples for each monophonic channel into a separate buffer. In this case, you’d need six parallel buffers to describe a 5.1 audio signal. This arrangement is shown in Figure 14.27.

Multi-channel audio data can also be *interleaved* within a single buffer. In this case, all of the samples for each time index are grouped together in a pre-

**Interleaved**

C[n]
FL[n]
FR[n]
RL[n]
RR[n]
LFE[n]
C[n+1]
FL[n+1]
FR[n+1]
...

Figure 14.28. Six-channel (5.1) PCM bus data in interleaved format.

defined order. Figure 14.28 depicts an interleaved PCM buffer containing a six-channel (5.1) audio signal.

#### 14.3.2.5 Digital Wiring and Connectors

S/PDIF (Sony/Philips Digital Interconnect Format) is an interconnect technology that transmits audio signals *digitally*, thereby eliminating the possibility of noise being introduced by analog wiring. The S/PDIF standard is physically realized either via a coaxial cable connection (also called S/PDIF) or a fiber-optic connection (known as TOSLINK).

Regardless of the physical interface (S/PDIF coaxial or TOSLINK optical), the S/PDIF transport protocol is limited to 2-channel 24-bit LPCM uncompressed audio at standard sampling rates ranging from 32 kHz to 192 kHz. However, not all equipment works at all sample rates. The same physical interfaces can be also be used to transport bitstream-encoded audio (e.g., Dolby Digital or DTS lossy compressed data) at bitrates ranging from 32 kbps to 640 kbps for Dolby Digital and 768 kbps to 1536 kbps for DTS, respectively.

Uncompressed multi-channel LPCM (i.e., greater than two stereo channels) can only be sent over an HDMI (high-definition multimedia interface) connection on consumer audio equipment. HDMI connectors are used for transmission of both uncompressed digital video and either compressed or uncompressed digital audio signals. HDMI supports up to a 36.86 Mbps bitrate for multi-channel or bitstream audio. However, HDMI bitrates for audio vary depending on the video mode—only 720 p/50 Hz modes or higher are capable of utilizing the full audio bandwidth. See the HDMI specification under the section “video dependency” for more information on this. Apple’s DisplayPort and Thunderbolt connectors are other high-bandwidth alternatives similar in many respects to HDMI.

USB connections are sometimes used to send audio signals. On most game consoles, the USB output is intended only to drive headphones.

Wireless audio connections are also possible. The Bluetooth standard is the

**Parallel**

C[n]	FL[n]	FR[n]	RL[n]	RR[n]	LFE[n]
C[n+1]	FL[n+1]	FR[n+1]	RL[n+1]	RR[n+1]	LFE[n+1]
C[n+2]	FL[n+2]	FR[n+2]	RL[n+2]	RR[n+2]	LFE[n+2]
...	...	...	...	...	...

Figure 14.27. Six-channel (5.1) PCM bus data in parallel format.

most commonly used method of transmitting audio signals wirelessly.

## 14.4 Rendering Audio in 3D

Thus far, we've learned about the physics of sound, the mathematics of signal processing and the various technologies that are used to record and play back sounds. In this section, we'll explore how all of this theory and technology can be put to use in a game engine, in order to produce realistic, immersive soundscapes for our games.

Any game that takes place in a virtual 3D world requires some sort of *3D audio rendering engine*. A high-quality 3D audio system should provide the player with a rich, immersive and believable soundscape that matches what's going on in this 3D world, while supporting the story and remaining true to the tonal design of the game.

- The inputs to this system are the myriad *3D sounds* that emanate from all over the game world: footsteps, speech, the sound of objects bumping into one another, gunfire, ambient sounds like wind or rainfall and so on.
- Its output is a handful of sound channels that, when played in the speakers, reproduce as believably as possible what the player would actually hear if he or she were really there in the virtual game world.

Ideally we'd like our audio engine to produce its output in full 7.1 or 5.1 surround sound, because this gives the ears the richest possible set of positional cues. However, audio engines must also support stereo output for players who don't have fancy home theater systems—or who just want to play their game using headphones so they don't wake their neighbors.

A game's audio engine is also responsible for playing sounds that do not originate in the virtual world. Examples include the music track, sounds made by the in-game menu system, a narrator's voice-over, the voice of the player character (especially in first-person shooters) and possibly certain ambient sounds. We call these *2D sounds*. Such sounds are designed to be played "directly" in the speakers, after having been mixed with the outputs of the 3D spatialization engine.

### 14.4.1 Overview of 3D Sound Rendering

The primary tasks performed by the 3D audio engine are as follows:

- *Sound synthesis* is the process of generating the sound signals that correspond to the events occurring in the game world. These might be produced by playing back pre-recorded sound *clips*, or they might be *procedurally* generated at runtime.
- *Spatialization* produces the illusion that each 3D sound is coming from the proper location in the game world, from the point of view of the listener. Spatialization is accomplished by controlling the *amplitude* of each sound wave (i.e., its gain or volume) in two ways:
  - *Distance-based attenuation* controls the *overall volume* of a sound in order to provide an indication of its *radial distance* from the listener.
  - *Pan* controls a sound's relative volume in each of the available speakers in order to provide an indication of *direction* from which the sound is arriving.
- *Acoustical modeling* heightens the realism of the rendered soundscape by mimicking the early reflections and late reverberations that characterize the listening space, and by accounting for the presence of obstacles that partially or completely block the path between the sound source and the listener. Some sound engines also model the frequency-dependent effects of *atmospheric absorption* (Section 14.1.3.2) and/or HRTF effects (Section 14.1.4).
- *Doppler shifting* may also be applied to account for any relative movement between a sound source and the listener.
- *Mixing* is the process of controlling the relative volumes of all the 2D and 3D sounds in our game. The mix is driven in part by physics and in part by aesthetic choices made by the game's sound designers.

#### 14.4.2 Modeling the Audio World

In order to render the soundscape of a virtual world, we must first describe that world to the engine. The “audio world model” consists of the following elements:

- *3D sound sources*. Each 3D sound in the game world consists of a monophonic audio signal, emanating from a specific *position*. We must also provide the engine with its *velocity*, *radiation pattern* (omnidirectional, conical, planar) and *range* (beyond which the sound is inaudible).
- *Listener*. The listener is a “virtual microphone” located in the game world. It is defined by its *position*, *velocity* and *orientation*.

- *Environmental model.* This model either describes the *geometry and properties* of the surfaces and objects present in the virtual world, and/or it describes the *acoustic properties* of the listening spaces in which gameplay takes place.

The *positions* of the source and listener are used for *distance-based attenuation*; the *radiation pattern* of the sound source also factors into the distance-based attenuation calculation. The *orientation* of the listener defines a reference frame in which the *angular position* of the sound is calculated. This angle in turn determines the *pan*—the relative volumes of the sound in the five or seven main speakers of 5.1 or 7.1 surround sound, respectively. The *relative velocity* of source and listener is used when applying a *Doppler shift*. And last but not least, the *environmental model* is used for modeling the acoustics of the listening space and to account for partial or complete blockage of the sound path.

### 14.4.3 Distance-Based Attenuation

Distance-based attenuation reduces the volume of a 3D sound as the radial distance between it and the listener increases.

#### 14.4.3.1 Fall-Off Min and Max

The number of sound sources in a typical game world is very large. Due to hardware and CPU bandwidth limitations, we couldn't possibly render them all. And we wouldn't want to, because thanks to distance-based fall-off all sounds beyond a certain distance from the listener can't be heard anyway. For this reason, each sound source is usually annotated with fall-off (FO) parameters.

The *fall-off min* ("FO min" for short) is a minimum radius, which we'll denote  $r_{\min}$ , within which the sound doesn't fall off at all and is heard at full volume. The *fall-off max* or "FO max" is a maximum radius, denoted  $r_{\max}$ , beyond which the sound source is considered to be silent and can therefore be ignored. Between the FO min and FO max, we need to blend smoothly from full volume down to zero.

#### 14.4.3.2 Blending to Zero

One way to blend from maximum volume down to zero is to use a linear ramp between FO min and FO max. Depending on the type of sound, a linear fall-off might sound just fine.

In Section 14.1.3.1, we learned that sound intensity, which is closely related to our perception of "loudness," falls off with radial distance according to a

$1/r^2$  rule. Gain, which is proportional to the amplitude of the sound pressure, falls off as  $1/r$ . So really the right thing to do is to use a  $1/r$  curve to blend the gain of a sound from full volume down to zero.

One problem with the function  $1/r$  is that it is asymptotic—it never quite reaches zero, no matter how large  $r$  gets. We can fix this by shifting the curve slightly downward so that it crosses the  $r$  axis at  $r_{\max}$ . Or we can simply clamp the sound intensity to zero for all  $r > r_{\max}$ .

#### 14.4.3.3 Bending the Rules

When making *The Last of Us*, Naughty Dog's sound department discovered that attenuating character dialog using the  $1/r^2$  rule caused speech to become unintelligible too quickly for characters that were only a modest distance away. This was a serious problem, especially during the stealth sections of gameplay, where hearing the enemies' ambient conversations was important both as a tactical tool and as a means of advancing the storyline.

To solve this problem, the sound department at Naughty Dog utilized a sophisticated fall-off curve that causes dialog to roll off more slowly near the listener, more quickly in the mid-range, and then more slowly again as the distance to the listener grows very large. This allows speech to be audible over longer distances, while still retaining a natural-sounding fall-off.

The dialog fall-off curves were also adjusted dynamically at runtime, based on the current “tension level” of the game (i.e., whether the enemies are unaware of the player, are searching for him or are engaged in direct combat with him). This is what allows the voices in *The Last of Us* to project over longer distances during stealth gameplay, while not rising to overpowering levels when combat breaks out.

Finally, a “sweetener” reverb could be optionally enabled to allow character voices to bleed around corners, even when the direct path is 100% obstructed. This tool is incredibly helpful in situations where modeling realistic fall-off is less important than ensuring that the player can hear a conversation clearly.

There are all sorts of ways to “cheat” when designing your 3D audio model. But no matter what you do, always remember this simple lesson: Never be afraid to do whatever it takes to satisfy the *needs of your game*. Don't worry—the laws of physics won't be offended!

#### 14.4.3.4 Atmospheric Attenuation

As we saw in Section 14.1.3.2, low-pitched sounds are attenuated by the atmosphere less than high-pitched sounds. Some games, including Naughty Dog's *The Last of Us*, model this phenomenon by applying a low-pass filter to each

3D sound whose passband slides toward lower and lower frequencies as the distance between the sound source and the listener increases.

#### 14.4.4 Pan

*Panning* is a technique used to provide the illusion that a 3D sound is coming from a particular direction. By controlling the volume (i.e., gain) of the sound in each of the available speakers, we can induce the perception of a *phantom image* of the sound in three-dimensional space. This method of panning is called *amplitude panning* because we are providing angular information to the listener by adjusting only the amplitudes of the sound waves produced at each speaker (as opposed to using phase offsets, reverb or filtering to provide positional cues). It is sometimes referred to as *IID panning* because it relies on the perceptual effects of interaural intensity difference (IID) to produce a sound's phantom image.

The term "pan" comes from early technology that used a "panoramic potentiometer" (variable resistor) or "pan pot" to control the relative volumes of the left and right speakers of a stereo system. Dialing the pan pot to one extreme would produce sound only in the left speaker; dialing it to the other extreme would drive the right speaker exclusively; and centering the pan pot dial would distribute the sound equally to both speakers.

To understand how pan works, we envision our listener located at the center of a circle. The speakers are positioned at various points on the circumference of this circle, so we'll call it the *speaker circle* in this book. The radius of the circle approximates the average distance between the listener and any one speaker.

For a stereo sound system, the front and right speakers are located roughly at  $\pm 45$  degrees to the left and right of center. For stereo headphones, they are positioned at  $\pm 90$  degrees (and the radius is much smaller). For 7.1 surround sound, we consider only the seven "main" speakers, as the LFE channel provides no positional cues. These speakers are located roughly as shown in Figure 14.29. When panning to a 5.1 system, we simply omit the surround left and surround right speakers.

For the time being, let's treat each 3D sound as a point source. To pan a sound, we first determine its *azimuthal* (horizontal) angle. The azimuthal angle must be measured in the local space of the listener, so that an angle of zero corresponds to the position directly in front of the listener. Next, we figure out which two speakers around the circumference of our circle are *adjacent* to this azimuthal angle. We convert the angle into a percentage of the arc between the two speakers. Finally, we use this percentage to determine the gains of the

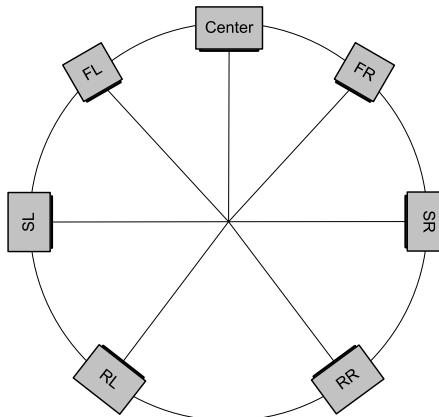


Figure 14.29. Speaker layout for 7.1 pan.

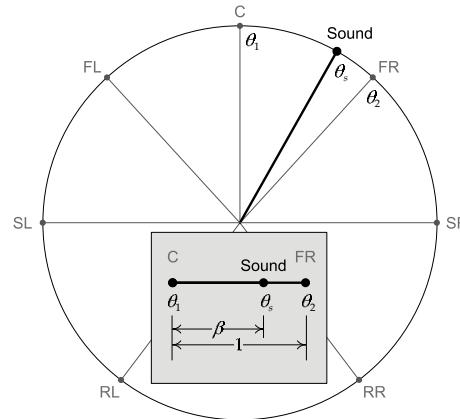


Figure 14.30. Treating the sound as a point source, the pan blend percentage  $\beta$  is calculated between the two speakers immediately adjacent to the source.

sound in each speaker.

To formulate this mathematically, let's use the symbol  $\theta_s$  for the azimuthal angle of the sound. We'll call the angles of the two adjacent speakers  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ . The percentage  $\beta$  is then calculated as follows:

$$\beta = \frac{\theta_s - \theta_1}{\theta_2 - \theta_1}.$$

This calculation is illustrated in Figure 14.30.

#### 14.4.4.1 Constant Gain Panning

Our first instinct might be to use the percentage  $\beta$  to perform a simple linear interpolation between the gains of the two speakers. Given the gain  $A$  of the unpanned sound, the gains of that sound as played in each speaker would be calculated as follows:

$$A_1 = (1 - \beta)A; \\ A_2 = \beta A.$$

This is known as *constant gain* panning, because the net gain  $A = A_1 + A_2$  is constant, independent of the values of  $\theta_s$  and  $\beta$ .

The main problem with constant gain panning is that it does *not* produce the perception of constant *loudness* as the sound moves around the acoustic field. Gain controls the amplitude of the sound pressure wave, and therefore controls the *sound pressure level* (SPL). However, as we learned in Section 14.1.2, human perception of loudness is actually proportional to the *intensity* or *power* of a sound wave, both of which vary as the *square* of the SPL.

As an illustration of the problem, imagine that our sound is panned to the halfway point between our two speakers. Constant gain panning would have us set the gains  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  to  $\frac{1}{2}A$  each. But this yields a total power of  $A_1^2 + A_2^2 = (\frac{1}{2}A)^2 + (\frac{1}{2}A)^2 = \frac{1}{2}A^2$ . In other words, the loudness of the sound will be *one-half* of what it would have been, had the sound been panned to only the left or the right speaker.

#### 14.4.4.2 The Constant Power Pan Law

Clearly in order to keep the perception of loudness constant as a sound's image moves about the listener, we need to keep the *power* constant. This rule is known as the *constant power pan law*, or just the *pan law* for short.

There's a very easy way to implement the constant power pan law. Instead of linearly interpolating the gains, we use the sine and cosine of the blend percentage  $\beta$  to calculate them:

$$A_1 = \sin(\frac{\pi}{2}\beta)A; \\ A_2 = \cos(\frac{\pi}{2}\beta)A.$$

Consider again a sound image that is panned to halfway between the two speakers ( $\beta = \frac{1}{2}$ ). With constant power panning, the two speakers' gains will be set to  $A_1 = A_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}A$ . This yields a total power of  $A_1^2 + A_2^2 = (\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}A)^2 + (\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}A)^2 = A^2$ . This works for any value of  $\beta$ , so the power  $A^2$  is constant no matter where our sound image is placed around the circle.

Sound designers often apply a “3 dB rule” to account for the pan law: If a sound is to be mixed equally to two speakers, the gain in each speaker should be reduced by 3 dB relative to the gain that would be used if the sound were to be played in only one speaker. The value  $-3$  dB arises because  $\log_{10}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \approx -0.15$ . Voltage gain (or amplitude gain) is defined as  $20 \log_{10}(A_{\text{out}}/A_{\text{in}})$ , and  $20 \times -0.15 = -3$  dB. (The 20 in front of the logarithm arises because a decibel is one-tenth of a bel, multiplied by two to account for the fact that we’re dealing with  $A^2$  and not  $A$ .)

#### 14.4.4.3 Headroom

Panning causes sounds to be rendered entirely by one speaker in some situations, and by two (or more, as we’ll see) speakers in others. Let’s say a sound is being played equally by two adjacent speakers, and its volume is so loud that each speaker is outputting its maximum power. What happens when that sound pans around to only one speaker? The answer is that we’d probably blow out the speaker, because our constant power pan law requires us to use more gain for one speaker than for two.

To prevent this problem, we need to artificially lower the maximum gains of our sounds across the board, such that the worst-case scenario of playing the sound in one speaker won’t overdrive that speaker. The practice of artificially reducing the maximum range of volume is known as “leaving oneself some *headroom*.”

The concept of headroom also applies to *mixing*. When two or more sounds are mixed, their amplitudes add up. By leaving some headroom in our mix, we can accommodate worst-case scenarios where a large number of high-volume sounds play simultaneously.

#### 14.4.4.4 To Center or Not to Center?

In cinema, the center channel was historically used for speech; only the sound effects would be panned to the other speakers around the room. The idea behind this practice was that the characters in the movie are usually on-screen when they speak, so the audience expects to hear their voices front-and-center. This approach has the nice side-effect of separating out the speech from the rest of the sounds in the film, meaning that loud sound effects won’t use up all the available headroom and drown out the dialog.

In 3D games, the situation is quite different. The player generally wants to hear dialog coming from the “correct” location around him or her. If the player swings the camera by 180 degrees, the dialog should likewise swing about the

sound field by 180 degrees. As such, games usually do not assign all dialog to the center speaker; instead, it is included in the pan for both sound effects and dialog.

Of course, this brings us back to the headroom problem—loud gunfire can now completely drown out the speech. At Naughty Dog, we overcame this problem by “splitting the difference” and always playing *some* of the dialog in the center channel, as well as panning some of it to the rest of the speakers along with the sound effects.

#### 14.4.4.5 Focus

When the source of a sound is far away from the listener, we can treat it as a point source. We simply calculate a single azimuthal angle and feed it into our constant power panning system. However, when a sound source approaches or actually enters into the circle that defines the radial distance of the speakers from the listener, it can no longer be accurately modeled as a point source represented by a single angle.

Consider the case of moving toward and past a sound source. At first, the sound source appears entirely in the front speakers. As it passes the listener, we somehow need to transfer the sound to the rear speakers. If we model the sound as a point source, our only option is to “pop” the sound from the fronts to the rears.

Ideally we’d like the sound’s image to gradually “spread out” around the speaker circle as it approaches. That way, as it nears the listener, we can start playing more of it in the side speakers. When the sound source is coincident with the listener, it can be played in all seven (or five) speakers. And once it passes, we can smoothly transition the sound to the rears, dropping the front gains to zero as it recedes behind the listener.

We can do this kind of thing and more if we model a sound source not as a point on the speaker circle but as an *arc*. Looking at it another way, we can think of each sound source as having an arbitrary shape in 3D space, and its *projection* onto the speaker circle *subtends* a certain angle, defining a “pie wedge” shape within the circle. This is analogous to the concept of *solid angle* often used in the calculation of ambient occlusion in 3D graphics—see [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solid\\_angle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solid_angle) for details.

We’ll call the angle subtended by an extended sound source the *focus angle*, and we’ll denote it  $\alpha$ . A point source can be thought of as an “edge case” in which  $\alpha = 0$ . The focus angle is depicted in Figure 14.31.

To render a sound with a nonzero focus angle, we must first determine the subset of speakers that either intersect its projected arc on the speaker circle, or are immediately adjacent to the arc. Then we must divide the sound’s

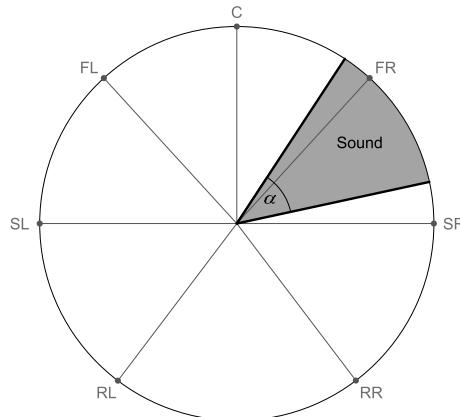


Figure 14.31. The focus angle  $\alpha$  defines the projection of an extended sound source on the speaker circle.

intensity/power among these speakers in order to induce the perception of a phantom image that extends across the projected arc.

We can divide the sound amongst the relevant speakers in various ways. For example, we could arrange for all the speakers that lie *within* the focus “pie slice” to receive equal maximum power, and then apportion less of the sound to the two speakers immediately adjacent the arc to create a fall-off. But no matter how we do it, we must remember to always obey the constant power pan law. So, we must set the gains in such a way that the sum of their squares (i.e., the sum of their powers) equals the squared gain of the original unpanned sound source.

#### 14.4.4.6 Dealing with Verticality

In both stereo and surround sound set-ups, the speakers all lie roughly in a horizontal plane. This arrangement makes it tricky to position sounds above or below the plane of the listener’s ears.

The ideal of course would be to model a true “periphonic” sound field by using a spherical speaker arrangement. A technology known as *Ambisonics* (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ambisonics>) is capable of accommodating both planar and spherical speaker arrangements. However, it is not supported by any game console—at least not yet. Sony now offers a 3D audio technology in their Platinum Wireless Headset for PS4, and games are beginning to support it. But even in the presence of 3D audio technology, games still need to support a planar speaker arrangement for 5.1 and 7.1 sound systems.

It turns out that the concept of *focus* can be leveraged to simulate some de-

gree of verticality in our sound imagery. We simply *project* all sounds onto the horizontal plane, and then use a nonzero focus angle for any sounds whose projections fall too close to or within the speaker circle. An elevated sound that is far away will be rendered in virtually the same way as one that is not elevated. But as the elevated sound passes overhead, we blend it across multiple speakers, thereby producing a phantom image within the speaker circle. If we combine this with distance-based attenuation and frequency-dependent atmospheric absorptions, we can provide the listener with enough cues to make the sound seem to be located above or below the listener.

#### 14.4.4.7 Further Reading on Pan

The basics of the constant power pan law can be found here: <http://www.rs-met.com/documents/tutorials/PanRules.pdf>. The following site is also a great resource on the topic: [http://www.music.miami.edu/programs/mue/Research/jwest/Chap\\_3/Chap\\_3\\_IID\\_Based\\_Panning\\_Methods.html](http://www.music.miami.edu/programs/mue/Research/jwest/Chap_3/Chap_3_IID_Based_Panning_Methods.html).

The paper entitled “Spatial Sound Generation and Perception by Amplitude Panning Techniques” by Ville Pukki of the Helsinki University of Technology, available at <https://aaltodoc.aalto.fi/bitstream/handle/123456789/2345/isbn9512255324.pdf?sequence=1>, provides a clear description of the spatialization problem and outlines the vector based amplitude panning (VBAP) method, as well as providing an extensive bibliography for further reading.

David Griesinger’s paper, “Stereo and Surround Panning in Practice,” also makes for a very interesting read; it is available at [http://www.davidgriesinger.com/pan\\_laws.pdf](http://www.davidgriesinger.com/pan_laws.pdf). David’s website is chock full of research on sound perception and audio reproduction technologies.

#### 14.4.5 Propagation, Reverb and Acoustics

Even if we were to implement distance-based attenuation, pan and Doppler, our 3D sound engine still wouldn’t be able to generate a realistic soundscape. This is because a lot of the auditory cues we humans use to sort out what kind of space we’re in come from the early reflections, late reverberations and head-related transfer function (HRTF) effects caused by sound waves taking multiple paths to reach our ears. The term “*sound propagation modeling*” can be applied to any technique that is designed to take into account the ways in which sound waves propagate through a space.

Many different approaches are used, both in research and in interactive media and games. These technologies fall into three basic categories:

- *geometric analysis* attempts to model the actual pathways taken by sound waves,

- *perceptually based models* focus on reproducing what the ear perceives using an LTI system model of the acoustics of a listening space, and
- *ad hoc methods* employ various kinds of approximations to produce reasonably accurate acoustics with minimal data and/or processing bandwidth.

The following paper does a good job of surveying many of the techniques that fall into the first two categories: <http://www-sop.inria.fr/revès/Nicolas.Tsingos/publis/presence03.pdf>. In this section, we'll briefly discuss LTI systems modeling, and then turn our attention to a few ad hoc methods, because they tend to be more practical for use in real games.

#### 14.4.5.1 Modeling Propagation Effects with an LTI System

Imagine that I am standing in a room containing various objects made of various materials. A sound is made in the room. It reflects and diffracts and bounces around the room, and eventually reaches my ears. If you think about it, it doesn't really matter which specific paths those sound waves took. The only thing that affects my perception is the specific superposition of the dry direct sound waves and the various time-shifted and possibly muffled or otherwise altered wet indirect waves.

It turns out that all of these effects can be modeled with a linear time-invariant (LTI) system. Theoretically, if we could measure the *impulse response* of the room for a given pair of points that represent the source of the sound and the listener, we can determine exactly how *any* sound we might play at that source location should sound if heard at the listener position. All we need to do is convolve the dry sound with the impulse response!

$$p_{\text{wet}}(t) = p_{\text{dry}}(t) * h(t).$$

This technique seems like a silver bullet at first blush. However, it is actually more difficult and less practical than it may at first seem. It's pretty easy to determine the impulse response of a space in real life—you can record the sound of a short “click” that approximates the unit impulse  $\delta(t)$ , and the recorded signal will approximate  $h(t)$ . But in a virtual space, we'd need to perform a complex and expensive simulation of each play space in order to determine  $h(t)$ . Also, to model the room's acoustics accurately, we'd need to perform this calculation for a large number of source-listener point pairs throughout the game world, and once calculated the size of this data would be immense. Finally, the operation of convolution is itself not inexpensive, and game consoles and sound cards have in the past lacked the horsepower to do this for every sound in the game in real time.

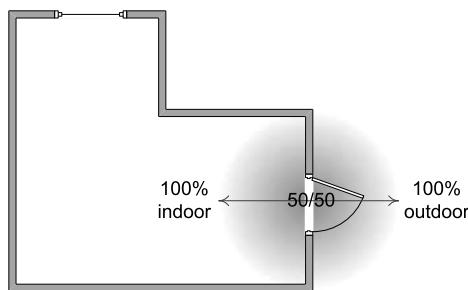


Figure 14.32. It's a good idea to cross-blend between reverb settings based on the position of the listener.

Modern gaming hardware is getting more powerful all the time, and a convolution-based approach to propagation modeling is becoming more feasible. For example, Micah Taylor et al. created a real-time demo of convolution reverb that produced promising results—see <https://intel.ly/2J8Gpsu>. That said, most games still don't use this approach, but instead they rely on various ad hoc methods and approximations to model environmental reverb.

#### 14.4.5.2 Reverb Regions

One common approach to modeling the wet characteristics of a play space is to annotate the game world with manually placed regions, each of which is tagged with appropriate reverb settings such as pre-delay, decay, density and diffusion. See Section 14.1.3.4 for a discussion of these parameters. As the virtual listener moves through these regions, we can light up the appropriate reverb mode: If the player enters a large tiled room, we can bump up the echos; when the player enters a small closet, we can virtually eliminate the reverb to produce a very dry sound.

It's a good idea to smoothly cross-blend between reverb settings as the listener moves through the play space. We can use simple linear interpolation to perform this cross-blend for each parameter. The blend percentage is best calculated using a measure of how far "into" the region the listener is. For example, imagine moving between an outdoor space and an indoor space through a doorway. We could define a region around the doorway within which the blend occurs. If the listener is entirely outside the blend region, the blend percentage should yield 100% of the outdoor reverb settings and 0% of the indoor settings. If the listener is standing at the halfway point within the blend region, we'd want a 50/50 mix of the reverb settings. Once the listener passes out of the blend region inside the building, we'll have reached a 0% outdoor / 100% indoor blend. This idea is illustrated in Figure 14.32.

#### 14.4.5.3 Obstruction, Occlusion and Exclusion

When using regions to define the acoustics of our play spaces, we typically assign a *single* impulse response function or a *single* collection of reverb settings to each region. This captures the essence of each play space (e.g., large tiled hall, small closet lined with coats, flat outdoor plain, etc.). But it results in a less-than-perfect reproduction of the acoustics that arise due to obstacles. For example, imagine a square room with a large pillar in the center. If a sound source is located in the corner of the room, a listener will perceive a very different timbre as he or she moves about the room, depending on whether the direct path is obstructed by the pillar or not. If we use a single set of reverb parameters for this room, we cannot capture these subtleties.

To address this problem, we can attempt to model the geometry and material properties of the environment in some way, determine how sound waves are affected by the obstacles in their path, and then use the results of this analysis to alter the “base” reverb settings associated with the room.

Figure 14.33 shows the three ways in which the objects and surfaces in the game world can affect the transmission of sound waves:

- *Occlusion*. This describes a situation in which there exists no unfettered path from the sound source to the listener. A listener might still be able to hear a fully occluded sound, if for example there is only a thin wall or door between it and the source of the sound. Either the dry and wet components of an occluded sound are both attenuated and/or muffled, or the sound is entirely silent from the point of view of the listener.
- *Obstruction*. This describes a case in which the direct path between the sound and the listener is blocked, but an indirect path is available. Obstruction can occur for example when a sound source passes behind a car, pillar or other obstacle. The dry component of an obstructed sound is either entirely absent or greatly muffled, and the wet component may be altered as well to account for the sound waves having to take a longer, more reflected path to the listener.
- *Exclusion*. This describes a case in which there is a free direct path between source and listener, but the indirect path is compromised in some way. This can happen if a sound is produced in one room and passes through a narrow opening such as a door or window to reach the listener. In an exclusion situation, the dry component of the sound remains unaltered but the wet component is attenuated, muffled or, for very narrow openings, entirely absent.

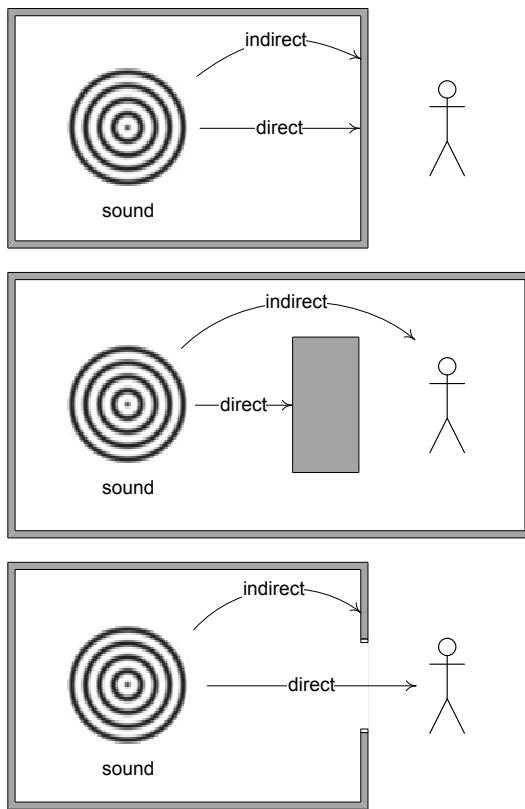


Figure 14.33. From top to bottom: occlusion, obstruction and exclusion.

### Analyzing the Direct Path

Determining whether the direct path is blocked or not is not difficult. We simply cast a ray (see Section 13.3.7.1) from the listener to each sound source. If it is blocked, the direct path is occluded. If not, it is free.

If we wish to model sound transmission *through* walls and other obstacles, ray casting can still be used. We cast a ray from source to listener, and for each contact we query the material properties of the impacted surface to determine how much of the sound's energy it absorbs. If it allows some energy to pass through, we can cast another ray starting on the other side of the obstacle and continue tracing the path to the listener. Once all of the sound's energy has been absorbed, we can conclude that the sound cannot be heard. But if the ray makes it all the way to the listener without losing all sound energy, we can attenuate the gain of the dry sound component by the corresponding amount to simulate transmission of the sound.

### Analyzing the Indirect Path

Determining whether the indirect path is occluded is a much more difficult problem. Ideally, we'd perform some kind of search (A\* perhaps) to determine whether or not a path exists from the source to the listener, and also how much attenuation and reflection is introduced by each viable path. In practice, this *path tracing* method is rarely used because it is processor- and memory-intensive. And at the end of the day, we game programmers aren't really interested in creating physically accurate simulations that will win us Nobel prizes in physics. We merely want to produce a soundscape that is *immersive* and *believable*.

Never fear, all is not lost. There are all sorts of ways in which we can obtain an *approximate* model of the indirect path of a sound. For example, if we are using *reverb regions* to model the overall acoustics of the various spaces in our game (see Section 14.4.5.2), we could leverage these regions to determine whether an indirect path exists. For example, we could use some simple rules of thumb:

1. If the source and listener are in the same region, assume an indirect path exists.
2. If the source and listener are in different regions, assume the indirect path is occluded.

Using these assumptions combined with the results of our direct path ray cast, we can differentiate between the four cases: free, occluded, obstructed or excluded.

### Accounting for Diffraction

When any wave passes through a narrow opening or interacts with a corner, it spreads out as shown in Figure 14.34. We call this phenomenon *diffraction*. Because of diffraction, sounds can be heard around corners as if a direct path existed, as long as the angular difference between the direct path and curved path is not too great.

One way to determine whether sound can diffract in order to reach the listener is to cast a few “curved” rays around the central “direct” ray. Most collision engines don't support curved path tracing, but we can emulate a curved path by using multiple straight-line ray casts. Figure 14.35 shows a simple example, in which five rays are cast from the sound source to the listener—one direct ray, plus two “curved” traces comprised of two straight-line ray casts each. Technically speaking we're employing a *piecewise-linear approximation* to each curved path we wish to trace.

If the direct ray is occluded but the curved traces can “see” the listener, this tells us that the listener is within the “diffraction region” around a nearby corner, and should hear the sound as if it is not occluded.

### Applying the Model Using Reverb and Gain

Thus far, we’ve discussed how to determine whether the direct and indirect paths are blocked or not. This analysis can also tell us something about the acoustic impact of an occlusion or obstruction. (For example, sound passing through a wall can be muffled; sound taking a long “bouncy” path might introduce a lot of reverb.) The question now is: How do we apply this knowledge when rendering the sound?

One simple approach is to simply attenuate the dry and wet components of the sound individually, based on whether the direct or indirect paths are totally or partially blocked, respectively. To finesse the results, we can also apply more or less reverb to each component of the sound, based on whatever heuristic information we gathered when determining the path(s) taken by the sound. The needs of every game are different, so this is one of those times when trial and error is your best and only option!

### Blending Obstructed Sounds

If you were to go off and implement everything we talked about in the sections above, you’d notice a glaring problem. As a sound source moves between the four states described above—for example, from being free to being obstructed—the timbre and loudness of the sound will seem to “pop.” There are a number of ways to smooth out such transitions. You could apply a little *hysteresis*, meaning that you delay the response of the sound system to changes in the obstructed state of each sound, and then use this short delay window to smoothly cross-blend between the two sets of reverb settings. But the delay

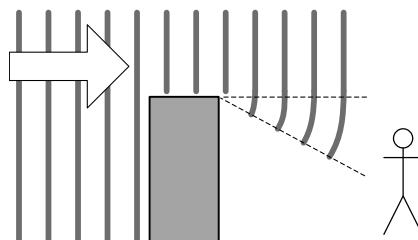


Figure I4.34. Diffraction causes the dry component of a sound to be clearly audible even when the direct path is blocked.

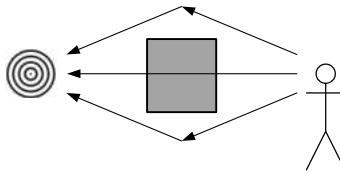


Figure 14.35. Curved ray casts can be approximated using multiple straight-line rays.

might be noticeable, so this isn't an ideal solution.

For the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series, Naughty Dog's senior sound programmer Jonathan Lanier invented a proprietary system that he called *stochastic propagation modeling*. Without giving away any trade secrets, I can tell you that this system involves casting a bunch of rays to each sound source, some direct and some indirect, and accumulating these hit/miss results over many frames. From this data, we generate a probabilistic model of the degree of occlusion experienced by both the dry and wet components of each sound source. This allows us to smoothly transition a sound from being fully obstructed to fully free without noticeable "pops."

#### 14.4.5.4 Sound Portals in *The Last of Us*

For *The Last of Us*, Naughty Dog needed a way to model the actual pathways that sounds take through the environment. If an enemy NPC is speaking while standing in a long hallway that connects to the room the player is in, we wanted to be able to hear the sound of his voice coming from the *doorway*, not "through the wall" along a straight-line path.

To do this, we used a network of interconnected regions. There were two kinds of regions: *rooms* and *portals*. For each sound source, we found a path from the listener to the sound by using connectivity information provided by the sound designer when laying out the regions. If both the sound source and listener were in the same room, we'd use the tried and true method of performing obstruction/occlusion/exclusion analysis that we used on the *Uncharted* series. But if the sound source was in a room directly connected to the listener's room via a portal, we would play the sound *as if* it were located in the portal region. We found that we only needed to go "one hop" in the room connectivity graph to make this work for all real situations that arose in the game. Obviously I'm leaving out a lot of important details here, but Figure 14.36 illustrates the basics of how this system worked.

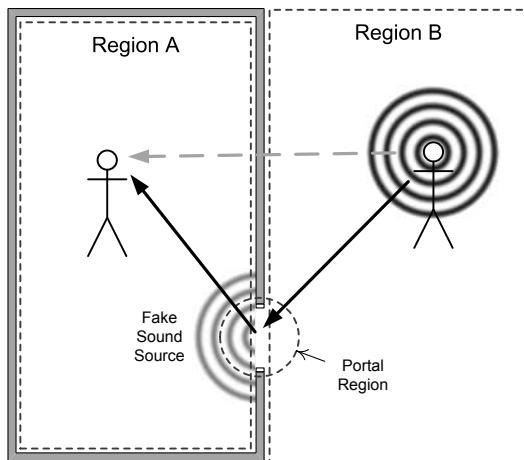


Figure 14.36. The portal-based audio propagation model used in *The Last of Us* by Naughty Dog, Inc.

#### 14.4.5.5 Further Reading on Environmental Acoustics

Audio propagation modeling and acoustics analysis are areas of active research, and more and more advanced techniques are being applied in the game industry as hardware capabilities continue to improve. A few links are listed below to whet your appetite, but a Google search for “sound propagation” or “acoustics modeling” will provide many more hours of enjoyment!

- “Real-Time Sound Propagation in Video Games” by Jean-François Guay of Ubisoft Montreal (<https://bit.ly/2HdBiLc>);
- “Modern Audio Technologies in Games” presented at GDC 2003 by A. Menshikov (<https://bit.ly/2J7FYyD>);
- “3D Sound in Games” by Jake Simpson (<https://bit.ly/2HfVFTU>).

#### 14.4.6 Doppler Shift

As we saw in Section 14.1.3.5, the Doppler effect is a change in frequency that’s dependent upon the *relative velocity* between source and listener:  $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v}_{\text{source}} - \mathbf{v}_{\text{listener}}$ . This frequency change can be approximated by simply time-scaling the sound signal. This results in the “chipmunk effect” with which Alvin and the Chipmunks have made us all so familiar—by speeding up a sound, the pitch also rises. Because our sound signals are digital (i.e., sampled discrete-time signals), this kind of time scaling can be accomplished via sample rate conversion (see Section 14.5.4.4). However, this is not strictly the

correct thing to do, because the speeding up or slowing down of the sound can become noticeable.

The ideal solution is to apply a pitch shift without affecting the time axis. This can be done in a number of ways, including the *phase vocoder* and *time domain harmonic scaling* approaches. A complete description of these techniques is beyond our scope here, but you can read more about them at <http://www.dspdimension.com/admin/time-pitch-overview>.

Time-independent pitch shifting technology is an extremely powerful thing to have in your audio engine, in part because it also allows you to perform frequency-independent time scaling. So not only can you alter the pitch of sounds without changing timing for Doppler, you can also speed up or slow down sounds without altering their pitch for all sorts of other cool effects.

## 14.5 Audio Engine Architecture

To this point, we've discussed the concepts and methodologies behind 3D sound rendering, and the theory and technologies that underlie them. In this section, we'll turn our attention to the architecture of the software and hardware components used to implement a 3D audio rendering engine.

As with most computer systems, a game engine's audio rendering software is typically arranged into a "stack" of layered hardware and software components (see Figure 14.37).

- *Hardware* inevitably serves as the foundation of this structure, providing at minimum the necessary circuitry to drive the digital or analog speaker outputs that connect our PC or game console to a pair of headphones, a TV or a surround sound home theater system. Audio hardware may also provide "acceleration" to the software above it in the stack by supplying codecs, mixers, reverb tanks, effects units, waveform synthesizers and/or DSP chips in silicon. This hardware is often called the *sound card*

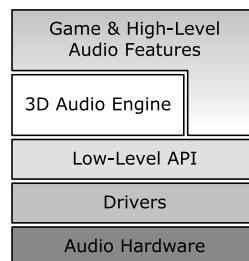


Figure 14.37. The audio hardware/software "stack."

because PCs sometimes provide their audio capabilities via a plug-in peripheral card.

- On a personal computer, the hardware is typically encapsulated in a *driver* layer, allowing the OS to support sound cards from a wide range of vendors.
- On both PCs and game consoles, the hardware and drivers are usually wrapped in a low-level *application programming interface* (API) designed to free the programmer from having to deal with the minutia of controlling the hardware and drivers directly.
- The *3D audio engine* itself is built on top of these foundations.

The feature set presented to the programmer by the audio hardware/software stack is usually modeled after the feature set of a *multi-channel mixer console* ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mixing\\_console](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mixing_console)) of the sort used in recording studios and at live concerts (see Figure 14.38). A mixer board can accept a relatively large number of audio inputs obtained from microphones and/or electronic instruments. The input sounds can be filtered and equalized, and reverb and other effects can be applied to them. The console is then used to mix all of the signals together, setting the relative volumes of the sounds as desired by the sound designer. The final mixed output is routed to the speakers (for a live performance) or to the individual channels of a multi-track recording.

In the same sense, the audio HW/SW stack must accept a large number of inputs (2D and 3D sounds), process them in various ways, mix them together so that their relative gains are set appropriately and finally pan these signals to the speaker output channels to produce the illusion of a three-dimensional soundscape for the human player.

#### 14.5.1 The Audio Processing Pipeline

As we learned in Section 14.4.1, the process of rendering a 3D sound involves a number of discrete steps:

- For each 3D sound, a “dry” digital (PCM) signal must be *synthesized*.
- Distance-based attenuation is applied to provide a sense of distance from the listener, and *reverb* is applied to the signal to model the acoustics of the virtual listening space and to provide spatialization cues to the listener. This produces a new “wet” signal.
- The wet and dry signals are *panned* (independently) to one or more speakers in order to produce the final “image” of each signal in three-dimensional space.



Figure 14.38. A multi-channel mixer console by Focusrite with support for 72 inputs and 48 outputs.

- The panned multi-channel signals of all the 3D sounds are *mixed* together into a single multi-channel signal, which is either sent through a parallel bank of DACs and amps to drive the analog speaker outputs or sent directly to a digital output such as HDMI or S/PDIF.

Clearly, we think of the process of rendering 3D audio as a *pipeline*. And because a game world typically contains a large number of sound sources, multiple instances of this pipeline are in flight simultaneously. For this reason,

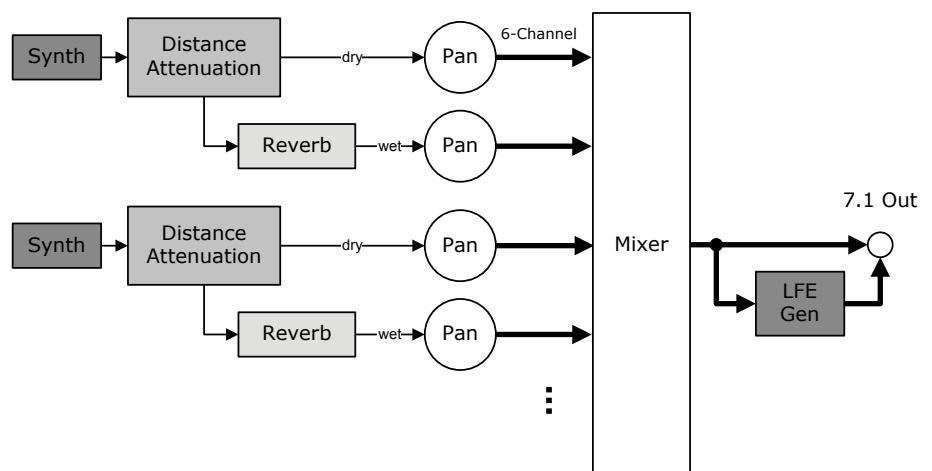


Figure 14.39. The audio processing graph (pipeline).

the audio processing pipeline is sometimes called the *audio processing graph*. It truly is a graph of interconnected components, ultimately culminating in the handful of speaker channels that comprise the final mixed, panned output. Figure 14.39 presents a high-level view of the audio graph.

## 14.5.2 Concepts and Terminology

Before we can explore the audio processing pipeline in any depth, we need to become familiar with a few concepts and the terminology used to describe them.

### 14.5.2.1 Voices

Each 2D or 3D sound passing through the audio rendering graph is called a *voice*. This term comes from the early days of electronic music: A synthesizer would produce musical notes via a set of waveform generators called “voices.”

A synthesizer contains a limited number of waveform generator circuits, so electronic musicians speak of how many simultaneous voices their synth can produce. In the same sense, a game’s audio rendering engine typically has a limited number of codecs, reverb units and so on. The maximum number of voices supported by a particular audio HW/SW stack is dictated by the number of independent parallel pathways through the audio graph. This number is generally bounded by limited memory resources, limited hardware resources and/or processing power limitations. This number is sometimes referred to as the degree of *polyphony* supported by the system.

#### 2D Voices

A game’s audio rendering pipeline must also be capable of handling 2D sounds, such as music, menu sound effects, narrator voice-overs and so on. 2D voices are also processed by the audio rendering pipeline. The main things that differentiate 2D sound processing from 3D processing are:

- 2D sounds originate as multi-channel signals, one for each available speaker, whereas 3D sounds originate as dry monophonic signals. As such, 2D sounds do not pass through a pan pot.
- A 2D sound may contain “baked” reverb or other effects. If so, the sound may not make use of the reverb capabilities of the rendering engine.

As such, 2D sounds typically enter the pipeline just prior to the master mixer, where they are combined with the 3D sounds to produce the final “mix.”

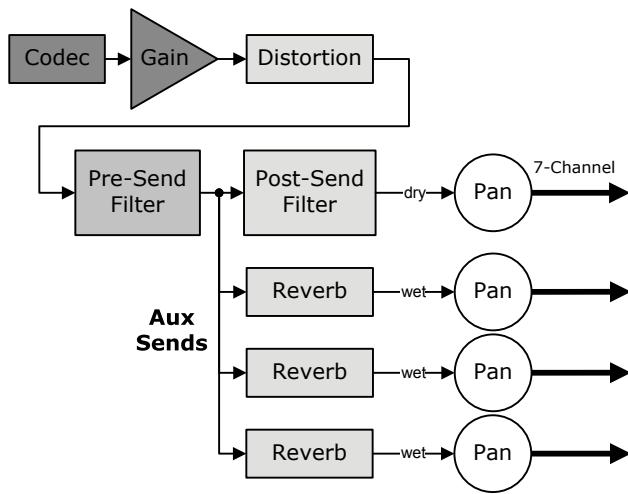


Figure 14.40. The pipeline through which an individual 3D voice passes on its way through the audio graph.

#### 14.5.2.2 Buses

The interconnections between the components that make up the audio graph are called *buses*. In electronics, a bus is a circuit whose primary purpose is to connect other circuits to one another. In software, a bus is nothing more than a logical construct that describes the presence of an interconnection between components.

#### 14.5.3 The Voice Bus

Figure 14.40 presents a more-detailed view of the pipeline of components through which a single 3D voice passes as it is rendered by the audio engine. In the following sections, we'll explore each of these components in detail and learn why they are interconnected in the way that they are.

##### 14.5.3.1 Sound Synthesis: Codecs

An audio signal passes through the rendering graph in digital form. The term *synthesis* describes the process of generating these digital signals. Audio signals may be synthesized by simply “playing back” a pre-recorded audio clip. They might also be procedurally generated, perhaps by combining one or more fundamental waveforms (sinusoid, square wave, sawtooth, etc.), and/or by applying various filters to a harmonically rich noise signal. Since

most games use pre-recorded audio clips almost exclusively, we'll restrict our discussion to them here.

Pre-recorded audio clips can be provided to the game engine in any one of the myriad compressed and uncompressed audio file formats in use today (see Section 14.3.2.3). Raw PCM data is the “canonical” format accepted by the various components in the audio processing graph. Therefore, a device or software component known as a *codec* is used to convert each source audio clip into a raw PCM data stream. The codec interprets the source data format, decompresses the data if necessary, and then transmits it onto the voice bus for its journey through the audio processing graph.

#### 14.5.3.2 Gain Control

The loudness of each source sound in the 3D world can be controlled in a number of ways: When recording the audio clip, we can set the recording levels to produce a sound at the desired loudness. We can process the clip in an offline tool to adjust its gain. At runtime, we can also dynamically adjust the volume of the clip using a *gain control* component within the audio graph. See Section 14.3.1.7 for a detailed discussion of gain control.

#### 14.5.3.3 Aux Sends

When a sound engineer at a recording studio or live concert wants to apply effects to a sound, he or she can route the sound out of the multi-channel mixing console, through an effects “pedal,” and then back into the mixing board for further processing. These outputs are known as *auxiliary send* outputs, or *aux sends* for short.

Within the audio processing graph, the term “aux send” is used in an analogous manner: It describes a bifurcation point in the pipeline, splitting the signal into two parallel signals. One of these signals is for the dry component of the sound. The other is piped through a reverb/effects component to create the wet component of the sound.

#### 14.5.3.4 Reverb

The wet signal path is typically routed through a component that adds early reflections and late reverberations. Reverb might be implemented using a convolution, as described in Section 14.4.5.1. If convolution is not practical in real time, either because the console or PC lacks DSP hardware or because the game's CPU and/or memory budgets are insufficient, reverb can be implemented using a *reverb tank*. This is essentially a buffering system that caches time-delayed copies of a sound that are then mixed with the original to mimic early reflections and/or late reverberations, combined with a *filter* to mimic the

interference effects and general attenuation of high-frequency components in the reflected sound waves.

#### 14.5.3.5 Pre-Send Filter

The voice pipeline typically includes a filter that is applied before the aux send bifurcation, and therefore applies to both the dry and wet components of the sound. This is called a *pre-send filter*. It is generally used to model phenomena that occur at the source of the sound. For example, we could mimic the sound of someone wearing a gas mask with a pre-send filter.

#### 14.5.3.6 Post-Send Filter

Another filter is typically provided after the aux send bifurcation. As such, this filter only applies to the dry component of the sound. This filter can be useful for modeling the muffling effect of an obstruction/occlusion on the direct sound path. At Naughty Dog, we also use a post-send filter to implement the frequency-specific fall-off that occurs due to atmospheric absorption (see Section 14.1.3.2).

#### 14.5.3.7 Pan Pots

The dry and wet components of a 3D sound are monophonic signals throughout their journey along the voice bus. At the very end of the pipeline, each one of these two mono signals must be panned to the two stereo speakers/headphones or the five or seven surround sound speakers. For this reason, every 3D voice bus terminates in two or more pan pots, one for the dry signal and one or more for the wet. The components may be panned differently. The dry signal is panned according to the actual location of the source. The wet signal, however, may be panned with a wider focus to simulate the way in which reflected sound waves tend to impinge on the listener's head from various directions. If the sound is coming from a narrow doorway, the focus of the wet signal might be only a few degrees. But if the listener is standing in the center of a cavernous hall, the wet signal should probably be given a 360-degree focus (i.e., it should be rendered in all speakers equally).

#### 14.5.4 Master Mixer

Each pan pot's output is a multi-channel bus, containing signals for each of the desired output channels (stereo or surround sound). A game typically has a large number of 3D sounds playing simultaneously. The *master mixer* takes all of these multi-channel inputs and mixes them together into a single multi-channel signal for output to the speakers.

Depending on the specifics of the implementation, the master mixer might be implemented in hardware, or it might live entirely in software. If the master mix is performed in hardware, the sound card designer has the option of performing an analog mix or a digital mix. (Software can only do digital mixing, for obvious reasons.)

#### 14.5.4.1 Analog Mixing

An analog mixer is essentially just a summation circuit—the amplitudes of the individual input signals are added together, and the resultant wave’s amplitude is then attenuated to fall back within the desired signal voltage range.

#### 14.5.4.2 Digital Mixing

Mixing can also be performed *digitally* by software running on a dedicated DSP chip or a general-purpose CPU. A digital mixer takes multiple PCM data streams as its inputs, and produces a single PCM data stream at its output.

A digital mixer’s job is a little more complicated than that of an analog mixer, because the collection of PCM channels it is combining may have been recorded at different sample rates and/or different bit depths. Two processes known as *sample depth conversion* and *sample rate conversion* must be executed on all of the mixer’s input signals to bring them into a common format. Once this has been done, mixing again becomes trivial. At each time index, the values of all the input samples are simply added together, and the final output amplitude is adjusted if necessary to bring the combined signal into the desired volume range.

#### 14.5.4.3 Sample Depth Conversion

If the *bit depths* of the mixer’s input signals differ, *sample depth conversion* can be used to convert them to a common format. This operation is trivial. We simply de-quantize the input sample values into floating-point format, and then re-quantize each one at the desired output bit depth. See Section 12.8.2 for all the gory details on quantization.

#### 14.5.4.4 Sample Rate Conversion

If the *sample rates* of the input signals differ, *sample rate conversion* must be used to convert them all into the desired output sample rate prior to mixing. In principle, this involves converting the signal into analog form, and then resampling it at the desired rate (which could be done using D/A and A/D hardware). In practice, analog sample rate conversion tends to introduce unwanted noise, so the conversion is almost always accomplished by running a direct digital-to-digital algorithm directly on the PCM data stream.

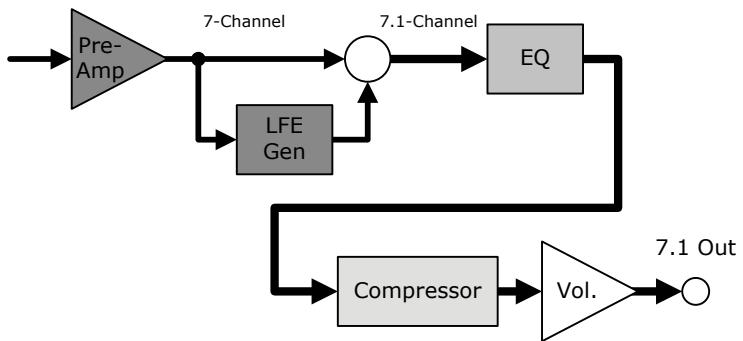


Figure 14.41. A typical master output bus.

An understanding of signal processing theory (see Section 14.2) is necessary to fully understand how these algorithms function, and a full discussion is beyond our scope here. But in certain simple cases, the concept is easy enough to grasp. For example, if we are *doubling* the sample rate, we can interpolate adjacent samples and insert these values as new samples, thereby doubling the number of samples. It's not quite as simple as this—one must take care to avoid introducing aliasing into the resulting signal, for example. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sample\\_rate\\_conversion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sample_rate_conversion) for a detailed discussion of sample rate conversion.

#### 14.5.5 The Master Output Bus

Once the voices have been mixed, they are processed by the *master output bus*. This is a collection of components that process the output prior to sending it to the speakers. A typical master output bus is depicted in Figure 14.41, and its components are described briefly below. Every audio engine does things a bit differently, and not all engines support all of the components described below. Some engines may also introduce additional components not shown here.

- *Pre-amp*. The pre-amp allows the master signal's gain to be trimmed prior to passing through the remainder of the output bus.
- *LFE generator*. As we mentioned in Section 14.4.4, a pan pot only drives the two, five or seven “main” speakers of a stereo or surround sound system. The LFE (subwoofer) channel does not contribute to the positioning of a sound’s 3D image. An *LFE generator* is a component that extracts the very lowest frequencies of the final mixed signal and uses this to drive the LFE channel.

- *Equalizer*. Most audio engines provide some kind of *equalizer* (EQ). As described in Section 14.2.5.8, an EQ allows specific frequency bands in the signal to be boosted or attenuated individually. A typical EQ divides the spectrum up into anywhere from four to tens of individually tunable bands.
- *Compressor*. A compressor performs *dynamic range compression* (DRC) on the audio signal. A compressor reduces the volume of the loudest portions of the signal and/or increases the volume of the quietest moments. It does this automatically by analyzing the input signal's volume characteristics and adjusting the compression dynamically. See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dynamic\\_range\\_compression](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dynamic_range_compression) for a detailed discussion of DRC.
- *Master gain control*. This component allows the overall volume of the entire game to be controlled.
- *Outputs*. The output of the master bus is a collection of line-level analog signals corresponding to the speaker channels and/or a digital HDMI or S/PDIF multi-channel signal, suitable for transmission to a TV or a home theater system.

## 14.5.6 Implementing a Bus

### 14.5.6.1 Analog Buses

An analog bus is implemented via a number of parallel electronic connections. To carry a monophonic audio signal, we need two parallel wires or “lines” on the circuit board: one to carry the voltage signal itself, and one to serve as ground.

An analog bus operates pretty much instantaneously. The output signal from an upstream component is immediately consumed by the next downstream component, because the signal is a continuous physical phenomenon. Such circuits are quite simple. The only real complication is ensuring that the voltage levels and impedances of the input and output signals match.

### 14.5.6.2 Digital Buses

One could imagine using simple digital circuitry to build instantaneous connections between our digital components. However, this would require the connected components to run in perfect lock-step: At the exact moment that the sender produces a byte of data, the receiver would have to consume it. Otherwise, the byte would be lost.

To overcome the synchronization problems inherent in connecting two digital components, *ring buffers* are typically used at the input and/or output of

each component. A ring buffer is a buffer that can be shared by two clients—one *reader* and one *writer*. To make this work, we maintain two pointers or indices within the buffer, called the *read head* and the *write head*. The reader consumes data at the read head, advancing it forward in the buffer as data is consumed, and wrapping when the end of the buffer is reached. The writer stores data into the buffer at the write head, advancing and wrapping as well. Neither head is permitted to “pass” the other, which guarantees that the two clients cannot conflict with one other (i.e., reading data that hasn’t been written yet, or writing over top of data that is currently being read).

The simplest way to connect, say, the digital output of a codec to the digital input of a DAC is to use a *shared* ring buffer. The codec writes to the exact same buffer read by the DAC.

While simple, the shared buffer approach only works when the two components have access to the same physical memory. This is trivial to do when the components are running in threads on a single CPU. To make a shared memory approach work between two separate operating system *processes*, each of which has its own private virtual memory space, the OS needs to provide a mechanism for mapping the same physical memory into each process’s virtual address space. This is usually only possible when the two processes are running on the same core, or on different cores within a multicore computer.

If the two components are running on different cores that cannot share memory (as would be the case if one were running on the PC and the other on a plug-in sound card, for example), then each component needs its own input or output buffer. Data must be *copied* from the output buffer of one component to the input buffer of the other. This might be accomplished via a *direct memory access controller* (DMAC), as is the case when transferring data between the PPU and the SPUs on the PS3. It might also be accomplished via a specialized bus, such as the ubiquitous PCI Express (PCIe) bus that is used to connect the main CPU core(s) to plug-in peripheral cards on a PC.

#### 14.5.6.3 Bus Latency

In order to play sound, the game or application must feed audio data periodically into the codecs that ultimately drive the speaker outputs. We call this *servicing* the audio. The rate at which the game or app services its audio is crucial to proper sound production: If packets are sent too infrequently, the buffers will *underflow*, meaning that the device consumes all of the data before a new packet arrives. This causes the audio to drop out briefly while the software catches up. If packets are sent too often, the PCM buffers can *overflow*, causing packets to be lost. This causes the audio to seem to “skip.”

The size of the input and output buffers that comprise a digital bus dictates the *latency* of the sound system—in other words, how much delay is introduced by the bus. If the buffers are very small, latency is minimized, but this places a greater burden on the CPU because it must feed the buffers more frequently. Likewise, larger buffers translate into less CPU load but also higher latency. We usually measure the latency of a piece of audio hardware in milliseconds, rather than measuring the size of the buffers in bytes. This is done because buffer size depends upon the data format and the degree of compression supported by the codec, but the latency is really what we care about when trying to produce high-fidelity sound.

How much latency is acceptable? This depends on the application. Professional audio systems require very short latencies—on the order of 0.5 ms. This is because audio signals are often fed through a network of audio hardware before being synchronized with each other and often to a video signal as well. Every time latency is introduced by the hardware, accurate synchronization becomes more difficult.

Game consoles, on the other hand, can tolerate a longer latency. In a game, all we care about is synchronizing the audio and the graphics. If the game is rendering at 60 FPS, this translates into  $1/60 = 16.6$  ms per frame. As long as the audio isn't delayed by more than 16 ms, we know it will be in sync with graphics rendered for that same frame. (In fact, many games use double or triple buffering for their rendering engines, which introduces one or two frames of delay between the time the game requests that a frame be drawn and when that frame will actually appear on the TV screen. The television may also introduce a delay. As such, a triple-buffered 60 Hz game can actually tolerate an audio latency of  $3 \times 16 = 48$  ms or more.) The PlayStation 3's DMA controller runs every 5.5 ms, so PS3 audio systems are typically configured such that the audio buffers can hold an integer multiple of 5.5 ms worth of audio.

## 14.5.7 Asset Management

### 14.5.7.1 Audio Clips

The most atomic audio asset is a *clip*—a single digital sound asset with its own local timeline (analogous to an animation clip). A clip is sometimes called a *sound buffer*, because the digital sample data is stored in a buffer. A clip might encapsulate monophonic audio data (typical for 3D sound assets), or it might contain multi-channel audio (typically used for 2D assets or stereo sound sources in 3D). A clip may be stored in any of the audio file formats supported by your engine.

### 14.5.7.2 Sound Cues

A *sound cue* is a collection of audio clips plus metadata that describes how they should be processed and played. Cues are usually the primary means by which the game can request sounds to be played. (Playing individual clips may or may not be supported by the engine.) Cues also serve as a convenient division-of-labor mechanism: The sound designers can craft the cues using an offline tool, without having to worry about how or when they'll be played in-game. And the game programmers can play the cues conveniently in response to relevant events in the game, without having to worry about micromanaging the details of playback.

There are many ways in which the collection of clips in a cue could be interpreted and played back. A cue might contain clips representing the six channels of a pre-mixed 5.1 music recording. A cue might also collect up a set of raw sounds, from which a random selection can be made, for the sake of variety. A cue might also be set up to play its collection of raw sounds in a predefined sequence. A cue typically specifies whether the sound(s) it encapsulates represent a one-shot sound or a looping sound.

Some audio engines permit a cue to provide one or more optional sound clips that only play if the main sound is *interrupted* midway through playing. For example, a vocal cue might include a “glottal stop” sound that is played only if the person’s line of dialog is interrupted. This feature can also be used to provide a distinct “tail” sound that is played when a looping cue is stopped. For example, a looping machine gun sound cue might use this “tail” clip feature to produce a suitable echoing fall-off sound when the firing ceases.

A cue’s metadata might include whether it is intended to be played in 3D or 2D; the FO min, FO max and fall-off curve of the sound source; group membership (see Section 14.5.8.1); and possibly any special effects, filtering or equalization that should be applied when the sound is played. In Sony’s Scream engine—the sound engine used by Naughty Dog in its *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series—a cue can contain arbitrary script code that allows a sound designer to completely control how the encapsulated sound asset(s) are played when the cue plays.

#### *Playing a Cue*

Every audio engine that supports the concept of cues provides an API for playing them. This API is usually the primary way—and sometimes the *only* way—for the game code to request that a sound be played.

The cue playing API generally allows the programmer to specify whether the cue should be played as a 2D or 3D sound, to provide 3D position and

velocity parameters, to specify whether the sound should loop or play only once, and to specify whether the source buffer is in-memory or streamed. The API usually also allows us to control the volume of the sound and possibly other aspects of playback.

Most APIs return a *sound handle* to the caller. This handle allows the program to keep track of a sound as it is playing, so that it can be modified or canceled before the sound ends. A sound handle is usually implemented under the hood as an index into a global handle table, rather than as a raw pointer to the data that describes the sound instance. That way, if the sound ends naturally, the handle can be “nulled out” automatically. A handle mechanism can also be used to make the system thread-safe—if one thread kills the sound, other threads that have handles to the sound will automatically see their handles become invalid.

#### 14.5.7.3 Sound Banks

A 3D audio engine manages a *lot* of assets. The game world contains a large number of objects. Each object can generate a variety of sounds. And in addition to 3D sound effects, we have music, speech, menu sound effects and so on.

All of this audio data takes up an immense amount of space, so we can’t keep it all in memory at once. On the other hand, the individual audio clips are too fine-grained and too numerous for them to be managed on an individual basis. As such, most game engines package their sound clips and cues into coarse units called *sound banks*.

Some sound banks are loaded when the game starts up and left in memory forever. For example, the collection of sounds made by the player character are always needed, so we could keep them in memory indefinitely. Other banks might be loaded and unloaded dynamically as the needs of the game change. For example, the sounds in level A might not be used in level B, so we can load the “A” bank only when level A is being played. For example, in Naughty Dog’s *The Last of Us*, the sounds of rain, flowing water and the creaking of beams on the verge of collapse were only loaded when the player was in the tilted building in Boston.

Some sound engines permit banks to be *relocated* in memory. This feature can entirely eliminate the memory fragmentation problems that would otherwise arise as lots of differently sized banks are loaded and unloaded during gameplay. See Section 6.2.2.2 for more information on memory relocation.

#### 14.5.7.4 Streaming Sounds

Some sounds are so long in duration that they cannot be conveniently stored in memory all at once. Music and speech are common examples. For these kinds of sounds, many game engines support *streaming audio*.

Streaming audio is possible because when playing a sound, the only information we actually need is the signal data at and around the current time index. To implement streaming, we maintain a relatively small ring buffer for each streaming sound. Prior to playing the sound, we pre-load a small chunk of it into the buffer, then play the sound normally. The audio pipeline consumes the data from the ring buffer as it plays, making room for us to load more data. As long as we keep filling the buffer with data before it is all consumed, our sound will play seamlessly.

#### 14.5.8 Mixing Your Game

If we were to play every sound coming from every game object, properly attenuated and spatialized and acoustically modeled, using all the techniques and technology we've discussed thus far, what would be the result? We might expect the answer to this question to be "an incredibly immersive and believable soundscape that wins awards and makes us rich!" But what we'd actually get is cacophony.

What separates a good game from a great game is the *mix*—what you hear, how much of it you hear, and just as importantly what you don't hear. The goal of a game's sound designer is to produce a final mix that:

- sounds realistic and emersive;
- isn't too distracting, annoying or difficult to listen to;
- conveys all information relevant to gameplay and/or story effectively; and
- maintains a mood and tonal color that is always appropriate, given the events taking place in the game and the overall design of the game.

All sorts of different kinds of sounds must come together in the game's mix. These include music, speech, ambient sounds like rain, wind, insects or the creak of an old building, sound effects such as weapons fire, explosions and vehicles, and the bumps, slides and rolling sounds made by physically simulated objects.

Various techniques are employed to ensure the mix of the game meets these goals. We'll explore a few of them in the following sections.

### 14.5.8.1 Groups

The most obvious thing we can do to improve the mix of our game is to set the levels of all the source sounds in the 3D world appropriately. The important thing here is to ensure that each sound's gain is appropriate *relative* to the other sounds in the game. For example, footsteps should be quieter than gunfire.

In some games, the loudness of certain sounds needs to change dynamically. Often we want to control an entire category of sounds at once. For example, during a frenetic fight sequence, we might want to bring up the levels of the music and the weapons, and drop the volume of ancillary sound effects. Or during a quiet moment with characters talking to one another, we might want to boost the speech a little and tone down ambient sounds to ensure the dialog can be heard.

For this reason, many audio engines support the concept of *groups*—a concept “stolen” from our old friend the multi-channel mixing console. On a mixing board, a collection of sound inputs can be routed to an intermediate mixer circuit, combining them into a single “group signal.” The gain of this signal can then be controlled with a single knob on the board, thereby allowing the sound engineer to control the loudness of all input signals at once.

In the software world, groups are implemented by simply categorizing sound cues, rather than physically mixing their signals together. For example, we can classify a cue as being music, a sound effect, a weapon, a line of speech and so on. Then, the engine can provide a means of controlling the gains of all sounds in each category with a single control value. Groups usually also allow entire categories of sound to be paused, restarted and muted conveniently with a simple API call.

Some sound engines do also provide a mechanism for physically mixing groups of audio signals into a single signal, just as is done when working with groups on a mixing console. In Sony's Scream engine, this is called generating a *pre-master submix*. After the relative gains of the signals in the group have been locked down by the submix, the resulting signal can be routed through additional filters or other processing stages. This gives the sound designer even more control over the mix of the game.

### 14.5.8.2 Ducking

*Ducking* is a technique in which the volume/gain of certain sounds are temporarily reduced in order to make other sounds more audible. For example, when a character is speaking, the level of background noise could be reduced automatically to make the dialog more audible.

Ducking can be triggered in numerous ways. The presence of one particular type of sound might be used to duck another category of sounds. A game event might trigger a duck programmatically. Any triggering mechanism that is deemed appropriate can be used to initiate a duck.

The reduction of volume caused by a duck is typically accomplished via the group categorization system: When one category of sound is playing, it can automatically duck one or more other categories by various amounts. Or the game code can call a function to duck a group of sounds programmatically.

Ducking can also be performed by routing one sound signal into the *side-chain* input of the dynamic range compressor (DRC) on a different voice's bus. Recall from Section 14.5.5 that a DRC analyzes the volume characteristics of a signal and automatically compresses the loudness of the signal appropriately. When a side-chain input is connected to a DRC, it analyzes the *side-chain* signal when deciding how to adjust the volume. So, we can arrange for increased loudness in one signal to cause a decrease in the dynamic range of another signal.

#### 14.5.8.3 Bus Presets and Mix Snapshots

Many sound engines allow the sound designer to set up configuration parameters, save them off and then recall and apply them conveniently at runtime. In Sony's Scream engine, these come in two basic flavors: *bus presets* and *mix snapshots*.

A bus preset is a set of configuration parameters that control aspects of the components on a single bus (voice bus or master output bus). For example, a bus preset might describe one particular reverb set-up that mimics, say, the acoustics of a large open hall, or the interior of a car, or a small broom closet. Or a bus preset might control the DRC settings on the master output bus. Many such presets can be created by the sound designer, and the appropriate ones activated at runtime as the game requires.

A mix snapshot is the same kind of idea applied to gain control. The gains of the various channels within a group can be established *a priori* and then applied at runtime as needed.

#### 14.5.8.4 Instance Limiting

*Instance limiting* is a means of controlling the number of sounds that are permitted to play simultaneously. For example, even though 20 NPCs are all firing their guns at once, we might only play the three or four gun sounds that are nearest to the listener. Instance limiting is important for two reasons: First, it's a great way to prevent cacophony. Second, a sound engine typically supports only a fixed number of simultaneous voices, either because of hardware

limitations (e.g., the sound card only has  $N$  codecs) or because of memory or processor bandwidth limitations in the software, so we must use them wisely.

### *Per-Group Limits*

Instance limiting is sometimes applied differently to different groups of sounds. For example, we might specify that we should play up to four guns simultaneously, hear up to three people speaking at a time and allow up to five other sound effects to play at once, plus up to two overlapping music tracks.

### *Prioritization and Voice Stealing*

In a 3D game with lots of dynamic elements, there may be more sounds playing at any given time than the system has voices for. Some sound engines support a large number (or even an infinite number) of *virtual voices*. Each virtual voice represents a sound that is technically playing, but that can be muted or stopped temporarily so it ceases to occupy valuable hardware or software resources. The engine uses various criteria to dynamically determine which virtual voices should be mapped to “real” voices at any given moment.

One of the simplest ways to limit the number of sounds playing simultaneously is to assign a maximum radius to every 3D sound source. As we saw in Section 14.4.3.1, this is the FO max radius. If the listener is beyond this distance from the sound, it is considered inaudible and its virtual voice is temporarily muted or stopped, freeing its resources for use by other voices. The process of automatically silencing virtual voices is called *voice stealing*.

Another common approach is to assign each cue or group of cues a *priority*. When too many virtual voices are playing at once, those with lower priorities can be silenced (stolen) in favor of higher priority voices.

Sound engines may also provide various other mechanisms for controlling the details of the voice stealing algorithm. For example, a cue might be given a minimum play time, after which its voice is permitted to be stolen. Sounds might be faded out rather than cut off abruptly when their voice is stolen. And some cues might be temporarily marked as “unstealable” to ensure that they play, even despite their priority settings.

#### 14.5.8.5 Mixing In-Game Cinematics

Under normal gameplay conditions, the listener or “virtual microphone” is typically positioned at or near the location of the camera, and the sound sources are modeled where they really are in the environment. Distance-based attenuation, direct and indirect sound path determination, voice limiting—all

are determined using these realistic positions.

However, during an *in-game cinematic*—a portion of the game in which player control is suspended so that a story moment can take place—the camera often pans out away from the player’s head. This kind of thing tends to wreak havoc with our 3D audio system. We could just keep the listener/mic locked to the location of the camera; but this is not always appropriate. For example, if there’s a long shot of two characters speaking, we probably still want to mix so that the characters’ voices can be heard, even though physically speaking they are too far away to be heard. In this case, we might want to detach the listener from the camera, and artificially position it nearer to the characters.

Mixing in-game cinematics is a lot closer to mixing a film. As such, a sound engine needs to be capable of “breaking the rules” and doing things that aren’t necessarily physically realistic.

### 14.5.9 Audio Engine Survey

It should be evident by now that creating a 3D audio engine is a massive undertaking. Luckily for us, lots of people have already put a great deal of effort into this task, and the result is a wide range of audio software that we can use pretty much out of the box. This ranges from low-level sound libraries all the way to fully featured 3D audio rendering engines.

In the following sections, we’ll survey a few of the most common audio libraries and engines. Some of these are specific to a particular target platform, while others are cross-platform.

#### 14.5.9.1 Windows: The Universal Audio Architecture

In the early days of PC gaming, the feature set and architecture of PC sound cards varied a great deal from platform to platform and vendor to vendor. Microsoft attempted to encapsulate all of this diversity within its DirectSound API, supported by the Windows Driver Model (WDM) and the Kernel Audio Mixer (KMixer) driver. However, because vendors could not agree on a common feature set or set of standard interfaces, the same functionality would often be realized in very different ways on different sound cards. This required the operating system to manage a very large number of incompatible driver interfaces.

For Windows Vista and beyond, Microsoft introduced a new standard called the Universal Audio Architecture (UAA). Only a limited set of hardware features are supported by the standard UAA driver API—all remaining features are implemented in software (although hardware manufacturers

are still free to provide additional “hardware acceleration” features, as long as they provide custom drivers to expose them). Although the introduction of UAA limited the competitive advantage of prominent sound card vendors like Creative Labs, it did have the desired effect of creating a solid, feature-rich standard, which could be used by games and PC applications in a convenient way.

The UAA standard had another positive effect on the user’s aural experience. In the old DirectSound days, a game could take complete control of the sound card, meaning that sounds coming from the OS or other applications such as an email program would be “locked out” and their sounds would not play while the game was running. The new UAA architecture allowed the OS to claim ultimate control over the final mix heard through the PC’s speakers. Multiple applications could finally share the sound card in a reasonable and consistent way. Search online for “Universal Audio Architecture” to find more information on UAA.

The UAA is implemented on Windows by the so-called Windows Audio Session API, or WASAPI for short. This API is not really intended for use by games. It supports most advanced audio processing features in software only, with limited support for hardware acceleration. Instead, games usually make use of the XAudio2 API, which is described in the next section.

#### 14.5.9.2 XAudio2

XAudio 2 is the high-powered low-level API that provides access to the audio hardware on Xbox 360, Xbox One and Windows. It replaces DirectAudio and provides access to a wide range of hardware-accelerated features including programmable DSP effects, submixing, support for a wide range of compressed and uncompressed audio formats, and multirate processing to lighten the load on the main CPU(s).

Atop the XAudio2 API sits a 3D audio rendering library called X3DAudio. These APIs are also available on the Windows platform for use by PC games. Microsoft used to offer a powerful audio authoring tool called the “cross-platform audio creation tool” or XACT for short, which was intended for use with XNA Game Studio, but neither XNA nor XACT are supported any longer.

#### 14.5.9.3 Scream and BoomRangBuss

On the PS3 and PS4, Naughty Dog uses Sony’s 3D audio engine Scream and its synth library, BoomRangBuss.

The audio hardware on a PlayStation 3 is very much like a UAA-compliant audio device, supporting up to eight channels of audio for full 7.1 surround

sound support, plus a hardware mixer and HDMI, S/PDIF, analog and USB/Bluetooth outputs. This audio hardware is encapsulated by a collection of OS-level libraries including libaudio, libsynth and libmixer. On top of these libraries, game makers are free to implement their own audio software stacks. Sony also provides a powerful 3D-capable audio stack of its own called *Scream* which game studios can use “out of the box.” *Scream* is available on the PS3, PS4 and PSVita platforms. Its architecture mimics a fully featured multi-channel mixer console.

On top of *Scream*, Naughty Dog implemented a proprietary 3D environmental audio system for use on the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series. This system provides stochastic obstruction/occlusion modeling and a portal-based audio rendering system that permits rendering a highly realistic soundscape.

#### *Advanced Linux Sound Architecture*

The Linux equivalent of the UAA driver model is called the Advanced Linux Sound Architecture (ALSA). This Linux kernel component replaced the original Open Sound System (OSSv3) as the standard way to expose audio functionality to applications and games. See [http://www.alsa-project.org/main/index.php/Main\\_Page](http://www.alsa-project.org/main/index.php/Main_Page) for more information on ALSA.

#### *QNX Sound Architecture*

QNX Sound Architecture (QSA) is a driver-level audio API for the QNX Neutrino real-time OS. As a game programmer, you’ll probably never use QNX. But its documentation does provide an excellent picture of the concepts and the typical feature set of audio hardware. See [http://www.qnx.com/developers/docs/6.5.0/index.jsp?topic=%2Fcom.qnx.doc.neutrino\\_audio%2Fmixer.html](http://www.qnx.com/developers/docs/6.5.0/index.jsp?topic=%2Fcom.qnx.doc.neutrino_audio%2Fmixer.html) for these docs.

#### 14.5.9.4 Multiplatform 3D Audio Engines

A number of powerful, ready-to-use cross-platform 3D audio engines are available. We’ll outline the most well-known of these below.

- *OpenAL* is a cross-platform 3D audio rendering API that has been deliberately designed to mimic the design of the OpenGL graphics library. Early versions of the library were open source, but it is now licensed software. A number of vendors provide implementations of the OpenAL API spec, including OpenAL Soft (<http://kcat.strangesoft.net/openal.html>) and AeonWave-OpenAL (<http://www.adalin.com>).

- *AeonWave 4D* is a low-cost audio library for Windows and Linux by Adalin B.V.
- *FMOD Studio* is an audio authoring tool that features a “pro audio” look and feel (<http://www.fmod.org>). A full-featured runtime 3D audio API allows assets created in FMOD Studio to be rendered in real time on the Windows, Mac, iOS and Android platforms.
- *Miles Sound System* is a popular audio middleware solution by Rad Game Tools (<http://www.radgametools.com/miles.htm>). It provides a powerful audio processing graph and is available on virtually every gaming platform imaginable.
- *Wwise* is a 3D audio rendering engine by Audiokinetic (<https://www.audiokinetic.com>). It is notably not based around the concepts and features of a multi-channel mixing console, but rather presents the sound designer and programmer with a unique interface based on game objects and events.
- The *Unreal Engine* of course provides its own 3D audio engine and powerful integrated tool chain (<http://www.unrealengine.com>). For an in-depth look at Unreal’s audio feature set and tools, see [45].

## 14.6 Game-Specific Audio Features

On top of the 3D audio rendering pipeline, games typically implement all sorts of game-specific features and systems. Some examples include:

- *Split-screen support*. Multiplayer games that support split-screen play must provide some mechanism that allows *multiple listeners* in the 3D game world to *share* a single set of speakers in the living room.
- *Physics-driven audio*. Games that support dynamic, physically simulated objects like debris, destructible objects and rag dolls require a means of playing appropriate audio in response to impacts, sliding, rolling and breaking.
- *Dynamic music system*. Many story-driven games require the music to adapt in real time to the mood and tension of events in the game.
- *Character dialog system*. AI-driven characters seem a great deal more realistic when they speak to one another and to the player’s character.
- *Sound synthesis*. Some engines continue to provide the ability to synthesize sounds “from scratch” by combining various kinds of waveforms (sinusoid, square, sawtooth, etc.) at various volumes and frequencies. Advanced synthesis techniques are also becoming practical for use in real-time games. For example:

- *Musical instrument synthesizers* reproduce the natural sound of an analog musical instrument without the use of pre-recorded audio.
  - *Physically based sound synthesis* encompasses a broad range of techniques that attempt to accurately reproduce the sound that would be made by an object as it physically interacts with a virtual environment. Such systems make use of the contact, momentum, force, torque and deformation information available from a modern physics simulation engine, in concert with the properties of the material from which the object is made and its geometric shape, in order to synthesize suitable sounds for impacts, sliding, rolling, bending and so on. Here are just a few links to research on this fascinating topic: <http://gamma.cs.unc.edu/research/sound>, [http://gamma.cs.unc.edu/AUDIO\\_MATERIAL](http://gamma.cs.unc.edu/AUDIO_MATERIAL), <http://www.cs.cornell.edu/projects/sound>, and <https://ccrma.stanford.edu/~bilbao/booktop/node14.html>.
  - *Vehicle engine synthesizers* aim to reproduce the sounds made by a vehicle, given inputs such as the acceleration, RPM and load placed on a virtual engine, and the mechanical movements of the vehicle. (The vehicle chase sequences in Naughty Dog's three *Uncharted* games all used various forms of dynamic engine modeling, although technically these systems were not synthesizers, because they produced their output by cross-fading between various pre-recorded sounds.)
  - *Articulatory speech synthesizers* produce human speech "from scratch" via a 3D model of the human vocal tract. VocalTractLab (<http://www.vocaltractlab.de>) is a free tool that allows students to learn about and experiment with vocal synthesis.
- 
- *Crowd Modeling*. Games that feature crowds of people (audiences, city dwellers, etc.) require some means of rendering the sound of that crowd. This is not as simple as playing lots and lots of human voices over top of one another. Instead, it is usually necessary to model the crowd as multiple layers of sounds, including a background ambience plus individual vocalizations.

We can't possibly cover everything from the above list in one chapter. But let's spend a few more pages covering some of the most common game-specific features.

### 14.6.1 Supporting Split-Screen

Supporting split-screen multiplayer is a tricky problem, because you have *multiple listeners* in the virtual game world, but they must *share* a single set of speakers in the player’s living room. If you simply pan the sounds multiple times, once for each listener, and then mix the results into the speakers evenly, the result won’t always sound sensible. There is no perfect solution: For example, if player A is standing right next to an explosion and player B is standing far away, the person playing player B will still hear the explosion loud and clear. The best a game can do is cobble together a hybrid solution, in which some sounds are handled in a “physically correct” way and others are “fudged” in order to produce the most sensible-sounding experience for the players.

### 14.6.2 Character Dialog

Even if we’ve created characters for our game that look like photographs of real human beings, and even if they move in astoundingly realistic ways, they still won’t seem real to the player until they can *speak* realistically. Speech communicates information crucial to gameplay. It’s a central story-telling tool. And it cements the emotional bond between the human player and the characters in the game. Speech can also be the deciding factor in the player’s perception of *intelligence* among the AI-controlled characters in a game.

At the Game Developer’s Conference (GDC) in 2002, Chris Butcher and Jaime Griesemer of Bungie gave a talk entitled, “The Illusion of Intelligence: The Integration of AI and Level Design in *Halo*” (<http://bit.ly/1g7FbhD>). In their talk, they shared an anecdote about how important speech can be to communicating the motivations of an AI-driven character to the player. In *Halo*, when the Elite leader of a squad of Covenant was killed, the grunts would all run away in fear. In playtest after playtest, no one seemed to understand that it was the killing of the Elite that had triggered the grunts to flee. Finally, the grunts were given lines of dialog saying something to the effect of, “Leader dead—run away!” Only then did play testers start to really grok what was going on!

In this section, we’ll explore some of the fundamental subsystems you’ll find in the character dialog system of pretty much any character-based game. We’ll also discuss some of the specific techniques and technologies used by Naughty Dog to create rich, realistic conversations in *The Last of Us*. For more information and in-game videos of Naughty Dog’s character dialog system in action, check out the talk I gave at GDC 2014 entitled, “Context-Aware Character Dialog in *The Last of Us*,” available in PDF and QuickTime formats at

<http://www.gameenginebook.com>.

#### 14.6.2.1 Giving a Character a Voice

It's easy enough to give a game character a voice—simply play an appropriate pre-recorded sound whenever the character needs to speak. However, things are never quite that simple. The dialog system in a game engine is typically a reasonably complex beast. Here are just a few of the reasons why:

- We need a way to catalog all the possible lines of dialog that each character might be called upon to say, and give each of these lines some kind of unique id so that the game can trigger them when needed.
- We need to make sure that each uniquely identifiable character in the game speaks with a recognizable and consistent voice. For example, each of the hunters in the Pittsburgh section of *The Last of Us* was assigned to one of eight unique voices, so that no two hunters in a battle would sound the same.
- We may not know *a priori* which character is going to be called upon to say a specific line, so we often need to record the same line multiple times, spoken by various voice actors, so that the appropriate voice can be used to say the line when needed.
- We also usually want a lot of variety in the things that are said. So most dialog systems provide a means of selecting specific lines at random from a pool of possibilities.
- Speech audio assets tend to be of relatively long duration, which means they occupy a lot of memory. Many lines of dialog are part of cinematic sequences, and hence are only spoken once in the entire game. For these reasons, it's usually wasteful to store speech assets in memory. Instead, it's typical for speech audio assets to be *streamed* on demand (see Section 14.5.7.4).

Usually other vocal sounds, like the “efforts” made when lifting something heavy, jumping over an obstacle or getting punched in the gut, are handled by the same system that handles spoken dialog. This is done largely because a character’s efforts need to match his or her spoken voice. So we may as well leverage the dialog system to produce effort sounds as well.

#### 14.6.2.2 Defining a Line of Dialog

Most dialog systems introduce a level of indirection between a *request* to speak and the choice of the particular *audio clip* to play. The game programmer or designer requests *logical* lines of dialog, each of which is represented by a unique

identifier such as a string, or better yet a hashed string id (see Section 6.4.3.1). The sound designers can then “fill out” each logical line with one or more audio clips in order to provide the necessary variety both in voice quality and in terms of what exactly is said.

For example, let’s imagine a logical line in which the character says something to the effect of, “I’m out of ammo.” We’ll assign this logical dialog line the unique id `'line-out-of-ammo`, where the leading single quote indicates a hashed string id. Let’s assume also that there are ten different characters that might say this line: the player character (call him “drake”), the player’s sidekick (call her “elena”) and up to eight enemy characters (call them “pirate-a” through “pirate-h”). We’ll need some kind of data structure to define all the physical audio assets that make up this one logical line of dialog.

At Naughty Dog, sound designers use the Scheme programming language to define logical dialog lines using a custom syntax. We’ll use a similar syntax in our example below. However, the specifics of the implementation are not important here. All we’re interested in is the structure of the data itself:

```
(define-dialog-line 'line-out-of-ammo
  (character 'drake
    (lines
      drk-out-of-ammo-01    ; ; "Dammit, I'm out!"
      drk-out-of-ammo-02    ; ; "Crap, need more bullets."
      drk-out-of-ammo-03    ; ; "Oh, now I'm REALLY mad."
    )
  )
  (character 'elena
    (lines
      eln-out-of-ammo-01    ; ; "Help, I'm out!"
      eln-out-of-ammo-02    ; ; "Got any more bullets?"
    )
  )
  (character 'pirate-a
    (lines
      pira-out-of-ammo-01  ; ; "I'm out!"
      pira-out-of-ammo-02  ; ; "Need more ammo!"
      ; ; ...
    )
  )
  ; ; ...
  (character 'pirate-h
    (lines
      pirh-out-of-ammo-01  ; ; "I'm out!"
      pirh-out-of-ammo-02  ; ; "Need more ammo!"
```

```
    )  i i  ...
    )
    )
```

Rather than define your dialog lines in one monolithic data structure like the one shown above, it's usually better to break the lines out into separate files by character. For example, all of Drake's lines can be managed in one file, Elena's in another file and all the pirates' lines can be stored in a third file. This helps to prevent the sound designers from stepping on each others' toes. It also means that we can manage our memory more efficiently. For example, if there are no pirates in a given section of the game, there's no need to keep the data for the pirates' dialog lines in memory. It's also a good idea to split the dialog data up by level, for the same reason.

#### 14.6.2.3 Playing a Line of Dialog

Given this data, the dialog system can easily convert a request for a logical line of dialog such as `'line-out-of-ammo'` into a specific audio clip. It simply looks up the character's specific voice id in the table, and then makes a random choice amongst the various possible lines for that character.

It's usually a good idea to put in place some kind of mechanism to ensure that lines aren't repeated too often. One way to accomplish this is to store the indices of the various lines in an array and then randomly shuffle its contents. To select a line, we simply cycle through the shuffled array in order. Once all possible lines have been exhausted, we reshuffle the array, taking care that the most recently played line doesn't end up in the first slot. This prevents all repetition while keeping the line selections sounding random.

Dialog line requests are typically made by gameplay code in C++, Java, C# or whatever language your game is written in. Game designers may also request lines of dialog via script (Lua, Python, etc.). The dialog system's API is usually designed with simplicity of use in mind. If an AI programmer or game designer has to jump through a lot of hoops just to get a line of dialog to play, you may discover that your characters are uncannily silent! It's best to provide a simple, fire-and-forget interface. Leave all the hard work to the programmer who is crafting the dialog system.

For example, in *Uncharted 3: Drake's Deception*, C++ code could request a character to play a line of dialog by calling a simple `PlayDialog()` member function of the `Npc` class. These calls would be peppered throughout the AI decision-making code in order to trigger appropriate lines of dialog at key moments in the game. For example:

```
void Skill::OnEvent(const Event& evt)
{
    Npc* pNpc = GetSelf(); // grab a pointer to the NPC

    switch (evt.GetMessage())
    {
        case SID("player-seen"):
            // play a line of dialog...
            pNpc->PlayDialog(SID("line-player-seen"));
            // ... and move to closest cover
            pNpc->MoveTo(GetClosestCover());
            break;
        // ...
    }

    // ...
}
```

#### 14.6.2.4 Priority and Interruption

What happens if a character is asked to speak while he's already speaking? What if he receives more than one speech command on the same frame? In both cases, a *priority system* is a good way to resolve ambiguities.

To implement such a system, we simply assign each line of dialog to a priority level. When a request to say a line of dialog comes in, the system looks at the priority of the currently playing line if any, and the priorities of the line or lines that have been requested this frame. It finds the highest priority line among these. If the currently playing line "wins," it continues to play and the requested lines are ignored. If one of the requested lines is higher priority than the current line, or if the character isn't speaking yet, the new line plays, interrupting the current line if necessary.

Implementing the interruption of the speech itself is actually a bit tricky. We can't perform a cross-fade (i.e., fade the volume of the playing sound down and the new sound up) because this sounds strange and wrong when applied to the speech of a single character. Ideally, we'd want to play at least some kind of glottal stop sound just prior to starting the new line. It might even be appropriate to play a short phrase indicating that the character is surprised and/or annoyed by the interruption, and *then* play the new line of dialog. The dialog system in *The Last of Us* doesn't do any of these fancy things. It simply stops the current line and immediately plays the new one. This sounds pretty good most of the time. Of course, each game has its own unique speech patterns, and what works in one game may not work well in another. So as the saying goes, "Your mileage may vary."

#### 14.6.2.5 Conversations

In *The Last of Us*, Naughty Dog wanted the enemy NPCs to sound like they're having real conversations with one another. This meant that the characters would need to be capable of saying relatively long chains of lines, with back-and-forth banter between two or more characters. Likewise, in *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End* and *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy*, we wanted the characters to have conversations while driving around Madagascar and India in their jeep. These conversations could even be interrupted (for example by the player deciding to exit the jeep to explore the area), and would continue where they left off when the player returned to the vehicle.

Conversations in *The Last of Us*, *Uncharted 4* and *The Lost Legacy* are constructed from logical *segments*. Each segment corresponds to one logical line, spoken by one particular actor in the conversation. Each segment is given a unique id, and the segments are *chained* together into a conversation via these ids. As an example, let's see how we would define the following conversation:

- A:** "Hey, did you find anything?"
- B:** "No, I've been looking for an hour and I ain't found nothin'."
- A:** "Well then shut up and keep looking!"

This conversation could be expressed in the Naughty Dog conversation system as follows:

```
(define-conversation-segment 'conv-searching-for-stuff-01
  :rule []
  :line 'line-did-you-find-anything
        ;; "Hey, did you find anything?"
  :next-seg 'conv-searching-for-stuff-02
)
(define-conversation-segment 'conv-searching-for-stuff-02
  :rule []
  :line 'line-nope-not-yet
        ;; "I've been looking for an hour..."
  :next-seg 'conv-searching-for-stuff-03
)
(define-conversation-segment 'conv-searching-for-stuff-03
  :rule []
  :line 'line-shut-up-keep-looking
        ;; "Well then shut up and keep looking!"
)
```

This syntax might seem a bit verbose at first glace. But as we'll see in Section 14.6.2.8, breaking the conversation out like this gives us a great deal of

flexibility. For example, it allows branching conversations to be defined in a natural and reasonably convenient way.

#### 14.6.2.6 Interrupting Conversations

We saw in Section 14.6.2.4 that a simple priority system can be used to handle interruptions and to resolve contention when more than one logical line is requested simultaneously.

When *conversations* are in play, a priority system can still be used. But its implementation is a bit more complex in this case. For example, imagine a conversation between characters A and B. A says his line, then B says her line while A waits his turn. During the time that B is speaking, A is asked to play an entirely different line of dialog. He's not technically speaking, so by the rules for dialog prioritization, applied to each character individually, there would be no problem and the line would play. But this could sound very jarring, depending on what's being said.

- A:** "Hey, did you find anything?"
- B:** "No, I've been looking for an hour and..."
- A:** "Look, a shiny object!"  
*(interruption by an unrelated line of dialog)*
- B:** "...I ain't found nothin'."

To overcome this issue on *The Last of Us*, we introduced the concept of conversations as "first-class entities." When a conversation is started, the system "knows" that each of the characters is involved in that conversation, even when he or she isn't speaking. Each conversation has a priority, and the prioritization rules are applied to entire conversations, not the individual lines on a per-character basis. So for example, when character A is asked to say, "Look, a shiny object!" the system knows that he is currently involved in the "Hey, did you find anything?" conversation. Presumably the line "Look, a shiny object!" is at the same or lower priority as the current conversation, so the interruption isn't allowed.

If the interrupting line is something higher priority like, "Holy cow, he's pointing a gun at us!" then the line is allowed to interrupt the existing conversation. In that case, all of the characters in the conversation are interrupted. The result is an interruption that sounds natural and intelligent.

- A:** "Hey, did you find anything?"
- B:** "No, I've been looking for an hour and..."

**A:** “Holy cow, he’s pointing a gun at us!”  
(*interruption by a higher-priority conversation*)

**B:** “Get him!”  
(*The original conversation is interrupted by the new one, and A and B go into combat mode.*)

#### 14.6.2.7 Exclusivity

On *The Last of Us*, we also introduced the concept of *exclusivity*. Any line of dialog or conversation can be marked as either *non-exclusive*, *faction-exclusive* or *globally exclusive*. This mark-up controls how interruptions work for the given line or conversation.

- A *non-exclusive* line or conversation is permitted to play *over top* of other lines or conversations. For example, during a search for the player, it’s not a big problem if one hunter is mumbling to himself, “Huh, there’s nothing over here.” while another hunter is saying, “I’m getting tired of this.” The two hunters aren’t speaking to each other, so the overlap sounds perfectly natural.
- A *faction-exclusive* line or conversation interrupts all other lines or conversations within that character’s faction. For example, if the player (Joel) is spotted during a search, the hunter that saw him might say, “He’s over here!” The other hunters should immediately stop speaking, because we want to make it seem as if the hunters can hear one another, and also to communicate to the player that their collective focus has shifted. However, if Joel’s companion Ellie is whispering a warning to him at the time, we probably do not want to interrupt her. She is not part of the hunter gang, and what she has to say to Joel is relevant whether or not the hunters have spotted him.
- A *globally exclusive* line or conversation interrupts all other lines, across faction boundaries. This is useful in situations in which *every* character within earshot should react to hearing whatever is being said.

#### 14.6.2.8 Choices and Branching Conversations

It’s often desirable to allow conversations to play out in different ways depending on what the player does, on what decisions the AI characters make and/or on other aspects of game world state. When authoring or editing conversations, the writers and sound designers would like to have control not only over which lines are said, but also over the logical conditions that control which branch of the conversation will be taken at any given moment during

gameplay. This puts the creative power in the hands of the people who need it, instead of forcing them to work through a programmer.

Naughty Dog implemented such a system for use on *The Last of Us*. It was inspired in part by an earlier system developed by Valve and described by Elan Ruskin in his talk, “Rule Databased for Contextual Dialog and Game Logic,” which he delivered at the Game Developer’s Conference in 2012. The talk is available here: <http://www.gdcvault.com/play/1015317/AI-driven-Dynamic-Dialog-through>. Naughty Dog’s conversation system differs from Valve’s in a number of significant ways, but the core idea behind both systems is similar. We’ll describe the Naughty Dog system here, since that’s the system with which the author has the most experience.

In Naughty Dog’s conversation system, each segment of a conversation can consist of one or more alternative lines of dialog. Each alternative within the segment carries with it a *selection rule*. If the rule evaluates to true, that alternative is selected; if the rule evaluates to false, the alternative is ignored.

A rule is comprised of one or more criteria. Each criterion is a simple logical expression that evaluates to a Boolean. The expressions ('health > 5) and ('player-death-count == 1) are examples of criteria. If more than one criterion is provided within a rule, they are logically combined using the Boolean AND operator. A rule only evaluates to true when *all* of its criteria evaluate to true.

Here’s an example of one segment of a conversation, with three alternatives that depend upon the health of the character doing the talking:

```
(define-conversation-segment 'conv-player-hit-by-bullet
  (
    :rule [ ('health < 25) ]
    :line 'line-i-need-a-doctor
          ;; "I'm bleeding bad... need a doctor!"
  )
  (
    :rule [ ('health < 75) ]
    :line 'line-im-in-trouble
          ;; "Now I'm in real trouble."
  )
  (
    :rule [ ] ;; no criteria acts as an "else" case
    :line 'line-that-was-close
          ;; "Ah! Can't let that happen again!"
  )
)
```

### Branching Dialog

By breaking a conversation into segments, each of which contains one or more alternative lines, we open up the possibility of crafting branching conversations. For example, let's consider a conversation in which Ellie (the player's companion in *The Last of Us*) asks Joel (the player character) if he's all right when he's been shot at. If the player wasn't actually hit by the bullet, the conversation goes like this:

**Ellie:** "Are you OK?"  
**Joel:** "Yeah, I'm fine."  
**Ellie:** "Geez. Keep your head down!"

If Joel has been hit, the conversation plays out differently:

**Ellie:** "Are you OK?"  
**Joel:** "(panting) Not exactly."  
**Ellie:** "You're bleeding!"

We can express this branching conversation using the conversation syntax described above:

```
(define-conversation-segment 'conv-shot-at--start
  (
    :rule []
    :line 'line-are-you-ok ;; "Are you OK?"
    :next-seg 'conv-shot-at--health-check
    :next-speaker 'listener ;; *** see comments below
  )
)

(define-conversation-segment 'conv-shot-at--health-check
  (
    :rule [ (('>speaker 'shot-recently) == false) ]
    :line 'line-yeah-im-fine ;; "Yeah, I'm fine."
    :next-seg 'conv-shot-at--not-hit
    :next-speaker 'listener ;; *** see comments below
  )
  (
    :rule [ (('>speaker 'shot-recently) == true) ]
    :line 'line-not-exactly ;; "(panting) Not exactly."
    :next-seg 'conv-shot-at--hit
    :next-speaker 'listener ;; *** see comments below
  )
)
```

```
(define-conversation-segment 'conv-shot-at--not-hit
  (
    :rule []
    :line 'line-keep-head-down ;; "Geez. Keep your head down!"
  )
)

(define-conversation-segment 'conv-shot-at--hit
  (
    :rule []
    :line 'line-youre-bleeding ;; "You're bleeding!"
  )
)
```

### *Speaker and Listener*

There's a subtle aspect to what's going on in the branching conversation above. At any given moment in a two-person conversation, one person is the speaker and the other is the listener. The roles of speaker and listener ping-pong back and forth as the conversation progresses. In the first segment of the conversation, 'conv-shot-at--start', Ellie is the speaker and Joel is the listener. When we chain to the next segment, 'conv-shot-at--health-check', we specify the value 'listener' for the field :next-speaker. This tells the system to use the current listener (Joel) as the next segment's speaker, thereby reversing the roles. In that segment, we check whether the speaker has been shot recently via the criteria `(('speaker 'shot-recently) == false)` and `(('speaker 'shot-recently) == true)`. But now Joel is the speaker, so everything works out as we'd expect.

An abstract speaker/listener system doesn't seem all that useful for a conversation between two principal characters like Joel and Ellie. But by keeping the definition of the conversation abstract, we gain a significant amount of flexibility. For one thing, we could use the same conversation specification to define a conversation in which Joel asks Ellie if she's OK. This works because the entire conversation is defined in a way that is independent of which character is saying each line. Moreover, for enemy characters it's absolutely essential that conversations be defined in a generic manner, because we don't know which specific characters will be doing the speaking *a priori*. For enemy battle chatter, we typically select a pair of characters dynamically and fire off the conversation. It has to work, no matter which two characters are selected.

The speaker/listener system can be extended to two- or three-person conversations. The Naughty Dog conversation system supported up to three listeners, although the vast majority of our conversations were between only

two characters.

### Fact Dictionaries

The criteria within a rule reference symbolic quantities like `'health` and `'player-death-count`. These symbolic quantities are implemented under the hood as entries in a *dictionary* data structure—basically a table containing key-value pairs. We call these *fact dictionaries*. An example of a fact dictionary is shown in Table 14.1.

You may have noticed in Table 14.1 that each value in the dictionary has an associated data type. In other words, the values in the dictionary are *variants*. A variant is a data object that is capable of holding values of various types, much like a union in C or C++. However, unlike a union, a variant also stores information about the type of data it currently contains. This allows us to validate the type of a value prior to using it. It also lets us convert data from one type to another. For example, if our variant holds the integer value 42, we could ask the variant to return it to us as the floating-point value `42.0f` instead.

In *The Last of Us*, each character has its own fact dictionary containing facts about the character itself like `health`, `weapon type`, `awareness level` and so on. Each “faction” of characters also has a fact dictionary. This allows us to express facts about the faction as a whole, like how many characters remain alive within the group. Finally, there is a singleton “global” fact dictionary that contains information about the game as a whole, without respect to faction. Things like the amount of time spent playing, the name of the current level or how many times the player has retried a particular task are all things that can go into the global fact dictionary.

### Criterion Syntax

When writing a criterion, the syntax allows for facts to be pulled from any dictionary by name. For example, `(('self 'health) > 5)` tells the sys-

Key	Value	Data Type
<code>'name</code>	<code>'ellie</code>	<code>StringId</code>
<code>'faction</code>	<code>'buddy</code>	<code>StringId</code>
<code>'health</code>	<code>82</code>	<code>int</code>
<code>'is-joels-friend</code>	<code>true</code>	<code>bool</code>
...	...	...

Table 14.1. An example of a fact dictionary.

tem to grab the fact dictionary of the character itself, look up the value of the 'health fact in that dictionary and then check if it is greater than 5. Likewise, `(('global 'seconds-playing) <= 23.5)` instructs the system to look up the 'seconds-playing fact from the global fact dictionary, and check that it is less than or equal to 23.5 seconds.

If the user doesn't specify a dictionary explicitly, as in `('health > 5)`, the system searches for the named fact by following a predefined search order. Check the character's fact dictionary first. If that fails, try to find it in the dictionary that matches the character's faction. Finally, if all else fails, look for the fact in the global dictionary. This "search path" feature allows sound designers to be as brief as possible when writing criteria (albeit with the loss of some specificity and clarity in the rules).

#### 14.6.2.9 Context-Sensitive Dialog

In *The Last of Us*, we wanted to have enemy characters call out the location of the player in an intelligent way. If the player is hiding in a store, the enemies should shout, "He's in the store!" If he's hiding behind a car, we want the bad guys to say, "He's behind that car!" This makes the characters sound incredibly intelligent, yet it turns out to be a relatively simple thing to implement.

To make this work, the sound designers mark up our game worlds with regions. Each region is tagged with one of two kinds of *location tags*. A *specific* tag marks the region with a very specific location like "behind the counter" or "by the cash register." A *general* tag marks the region with a more general location like "in the store" or "in the street."

To determine which line of dialog to play, the system determines within which region the player is located, and within which region the enemy NPC is located. If they are both in the same *general* region, the player's *specific* tag is used to select dialog lines. When the NPC and player reside in *different* general regions, we fall back to using the player's general region tag to select the line. So if the enemy and the player are both in the store, we might select a line like, "He's by the window!" But if the NPC is in the store and the player is out in the street, we might hear the NPC say, "He's out in the street! Get him!" See Figure 14.42 for an illustration of how this system works.

This very simple system proved incredibly powerful. It was difficult to set up due to the sheer number of combinations of lines that had to be recorded and configured, but the final result in-game was worth the effort.

#### 14.6.2.10 Dialog Actions

Lines of dialog delivered without body language usually look uncanny and unrealistic. Some dialog lines are delivered as part of a full-body animation—an in-game cinematic for example. But some lines must be delivered while the

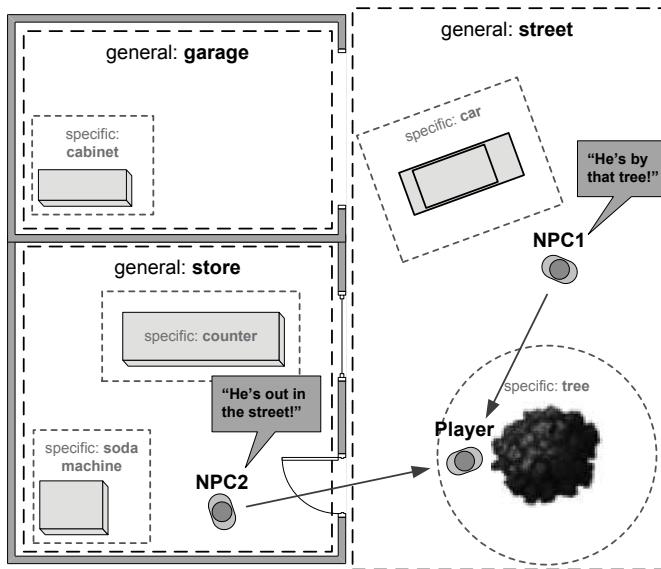


Figure 14.42. General and specific regions for context-sensitive dialog line selection.

character is busy doing something else, like walking, running or firing their weapon. Ideally we'd like to spice up such lines of dialog with some gestures to breathe life into them.

On *The Last of Us*, we implemented a gesture system using additive animation technology (see Section 12.6.5). These gestures could be explicitly called out by C++ code or script. In addition, each line of dialog could have a script associated with it whose timeline was synchronized with the audio. This allowed us to trigger gestures at precise moments during key lines of dialog.

### 14.6.3 Music

Music is an incredibly important aspect of pretty much any good game. It sets the tone, drives the player's sense of tension, and can make (or break) an emotional scene. A game engine's music system is typically charged with the following duties:

- Provide the ability to play back music tracks as streaming audio clips (because music clips are almost always too large to fit in memory).
- Provide musical variety.
- Match the music to the events occurring in the game.
- Seamlessly transition from one piece of music to the next.

- Mix the audio with the other sounds in the game in a suitable and pleasing manner.
- Allow music to be temporarily ducked to enhance the audibility of specific sounds or conversations in-game.
- Permit brief pieces of music or sound effects known as *stingers* to temporarily interrupt the currently playing music track.
- Allow music to be paused and restarted. (You don't need a full orchestra playing a grandiose theme during every single second of gameplay, you know!)

We generally expect the music to change to match the changing levels of tension and/or emotional moods of the events happening in the game. One way to accomplish this is to create multiple *playlists*, each of which is intended for a different level of tension or emotional mood in the game. Each playlist contains one or more pieces of music, from which selections may be made randomly or sequentially. As the tension and mood change in the game—as battles begin and end, touching cutscenes come and go and so on—the music system detects these changes and selects new music playlists as appropriate. Some games implement a “stack” of music selections at increasing tension levels—calm music for when no enemies are around, tense music when the player is approaching an unsuspecting group of enemies, startling music at first contact and fast-paced music during battle.

*Stingers* are another way to match the music to the events in the game. A stinger is a short musical clip or sound effect that can temporarily interrupt the currently playing music track, or play over top of it while the main track's volume is ducked down. For example, the first time the player makes line-of-sight with a new enemy, we might want to play an ominous “rumbling” sound to give the player a cue that danger is near. Or when the player dies, we may want to quickly switch to a snippet of “death music.” Both of these are situations in which a stinger might be used.

Transitioning smoothly between different music streams is somewhat of a challenge. We cannot blindly cross-blend between totally unrelated pieces of music and expect it to always sound good. The tempos of the two pieces may not match, and the “beat” of one piece of music might not line up with that of the next. The key is to time each transition properly. A rapid cross-fade can be useful if the tempos don't match; a longer cross-fade might work well if the tempos are nearly identical. This takes some trial and error to get right. Even getting a piece of music to loop properly requires some tweaking by the sound engineer.

The topic of game music is a broad one, and we can't really do it justice here. If you are interested in learning more, [45] is a great book to start with.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Part IV

## Gameplay



Taylor & Francis  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 15

## Introduction to Gameplay Systems

Up until now, everything we've talked about in this book has focused on technology. We've learned that a game engine is a complex, layered software system built on top of the hardware, drivers and operating system of the target machine. We've seen how low-level engine systems provide services that are required by the rest of the engine; how human interface devices such as joypads, keyboards, mice and other devices can allow a human player to provide inputs to the engine; how the rendering engine produces 3D images on-screen; how the animation system allows characters and objects to move naturally; how the collision system detects and resolves interpenetrations between shapes; how the physics simulation causes objects to move in physically realistic ways; how the 3D audio engine renders a believable and immersive soundscape for our game world. But despite the wide range of powerful features provided by these components, if we were to put them all together, we *still* wouldn't have a game!

A game is defined not by its technology but by its *gameplay*. Gameplay can be defined as the overall experience of playing a game. The term *game mechanics* pins down this idea a bit more concretely—it is usually defined as the set of *rules* that govern the interactions between the various entities in the game. It also defines the *objectives* of the player(s), *criteria* for success and failure, the player character's *abilities*, the number and types of *non-player entities*

that exist within the game's virtual world and the *overall flow* of the gaming experience as a whole. In many games, these elements are intertwined with a compelling story and a rich cast of characters. However, story and characters are definitely not a necessary part of every video game, as evidenced by wildly successful puzzle games like *Tetris*. In their paper, "A Survey of 'Game' Portability" (<http://www.dcs.shef.ac.uk/intranet/research/resmes/CS0705.pdf>), Ahmed BinSubaih, Steve Maddock and Daniela Romano of the University of Sheffield refer to the collection of software systems used to implement gameplay as a game's *G-factor*. In the next three chapters, we'll explore the crucial tools and engine systems that define and manage the *game mechanics* (a.k.a. *gameplay*, a.k.a. *G-factor*) of a game.

## 15.1 Anatomy of a Game World

Gameplay designs vary widely from genre to genre and from game to game. That said, most 3D games, and a good number of 2D games as well, conform more or less to a few basic structural patterns. We'll discuss these patterns in the following sections, but please keep in mind that there are bound to be games out there that do not fit neatly into this mold.

### 15.1.1 World Elements

Most video games take place in a two- or three-dimensional virtual *game world*. This world is typically comprised of numerous discrete elements. Generally, these elements fall into two categories: static elements and dynamic elements. Static elements include terrain, buildings, roads, bridges and pretty much anything that doesn't move or interact with gameplay in an active way. Dynamic elements include characters, vehicles, weaponry, floating power-ups and health packs, collectible objects, particle emitters, dynamic lights, invisible regions used to detect important events in the game, splines that define the paths of objects and so on. This breakdown of the game world is illustrated in Figure 15.1.

Gameplay is generally concentrated within the dynamic elements of a game. Clearly, the layout of the static background plays a crucial role in how the game plays out. For example, a cover-based shooter wouldn't be very much fun if it were played in a big, empty, rectangular room. However, the software systems that implement gameplay are primarily concerned with updating the locations, orientations and internal states of the dynamic elements, since they are the elements that change over time. The term *game state* refers to the current state of all dynamic game world elements taken as a whole.



Figure 15.1. A game world from *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy* (© 2017/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) showing static and dynamic elements.

The ratio of dynamic to static elements also varies from game to game. Most 3D games consist of a relatively small number of dynamic elements moving about within a relatively large static background area. Other games, like the arcade classic *Asteroids* or the Xbox 360 retro hit *Geometry Wars*, have no static elements to speak of (other than a black screen). The dynamic elements of a game are usually more expensive than the static elements in terms of CPU resources, so most 3D games are constrained to a limited number of dynamic elements. However, the higher the ratio of dynamic to static elements, the more “alive” the game world can seem to the player. As gaming hardware becomes more and more powerful, games are achieving higher and higher dynamic-to-static ratios.

It’s important to note that the distinction between the dynamic and static elements in a game world is often a bit blurry. For example, in the arcade game *Hydro Thunder*, the waterfalls were dynamic in the sense that their textures were animated, they had dynamic mist effects at their bases, and they could be placed into the game world and positioned by a game designer independently of the terrain and water surface. However, from an engineering standpoint, waterfalls were treated as static elements because they did not interact with the

boats in the race in any way (other than to obscure the player’s view of hidden boost power-ups and secret passageways). Different game engines draw different lines between static and dynamic elements, and some don’t draw a distinction at all (i.e., everything is potentially a dynamic element).

The distinction between static and dynamic serves primarily as an optimization tool—we can do less work when we know that the state of an object isn’t going to change. For example, when we know a mesh is static and will never move, its lighting can be precomputed in the form of static vertex lighting, light maps, shadow maps, static ambient occlusion information or pre-computed radiance transfer (PRT) spherical harmonics coefficients. Virtually any computation that must be done at runtime for a dynamic world element is a good candidate for precomputation or omission when applied to a static element.

Games with destructible environments are an example of how the line between the static and dynamic elements in a game world can blur. For instance, we might define three versions of every static element—an undamaged version, a damaged version, and a fully destroyed version. These background elements act like static world elements most of the time, but they can be swapped dynamically during an explosion to produce the illusion of becoming damaged. In reality, static and dynamic world elements are just two extremes along a gamut of possible optimizations. Where we draw the line between the two categories (if we draw one at all) shifts as our optimization methodologies change and adapt to the needs of the game design.

#### 15.1.1.1 Static Geometry

The geometry of a static world element is often defined in a tool like Maya. It might be one giant triangle mesh, or it might be broken up into discrete pieces. The static portions of the scene are sometimes built out of *instanced geometry*. Instancing is a memory conservation technique in which a relatively small number of unique triangle meshes are rendered multiple times throughout the game world, at different locations and orientations, in order to provide the illusion of variety. For example, a 3D modeler might create five different kinds of short wall sections and then piece them together in random combinations in order to construct miles of unique-looking walls.

Static visual elements and collision data might also be constructed from *brush geometry*. This kind of geometry originated with the Quake family of engines. A *brush* describes a shape as a collection of convex volumes, each bounded by a set of planes. Brush geometry is fast and easy to create and integrates well into a BSP-tree-based rendering engine. Brushes can be really useful for rapidly blocking out the contents of a game world. This allows

gameplay to be tested early, when it is cheap to do so. If the layout proves its worth, the art team can either texture map and fine-tune the brush geometry or replace it with more-detailed custom mesh assets. On the other hand, if the level requires redesign, the brush geometry can be easily revised without creating a lot of extra work for the art team.

### 15.1.2 World Chunks

When a game takes place in a very large virtual world, it is typically divided into discrete playable regions, which we'll call *world chunks*. Chunks are also known as *levels*, *maps*, *stages* or *areas*. The player can usually see only a handful of chunks at any given moment while playing the game, and he or she progresses from chunk to chunk as the game unfolds.

Originally, the concept of “levels” was invented as a mechanism to provide greater variety of gameplay within the memory limitations of early gaming hardware. Only one level could exist in memory at a time, but the player could progress from level to level for a much richer overall experience. Since then, game designs have branched out in many directions, and linear level-based games are much less common today. Some games are essentially still linear, but the delineations between world chunks are usually not as obvious to the player as they once were. Other games use a star topology, in which the player starts in a central hub area and can access other areas at random from the hub (perhaps only after they have been unlocked). Others use a graph-like topology, where areas are connected to one another in arbitrary ways. Still others provide the illusion of a vast, open world, and use level-of-detail (LOD) techniques to reduce memory overhead and improve performance.

Despite the richness of modern game designs, all but the smallest of game worlds are still divided into chunks of some kind. This is done for a number of reasons. First of all, memory limitations are still an important constraint (and will be until game machines with infinite memory hit the market!). World chunks are also a convenient mechanism for controlling the overall flow of the game. Chunks can serve as a division-of-labor mechanism as well; each chunk can be constructed and managed by a relatively small group of designers and artists. World chunks are illustrated in Figure 15.2.

### 15.1.3 High-Level Game Flow

A game's *high-level flow* defines a sequence, tree or graph of player *objectives*. Objectives are sometimes called *tasks*, *stages*, *levels* (a term that can also apply to world chunks) or *waves* (if the game is primarily about defeating hordes of attacking enemies). The high-level flow also provides the definition of success for each objective (e.g., clear all the enemies and get the key) and the penalty

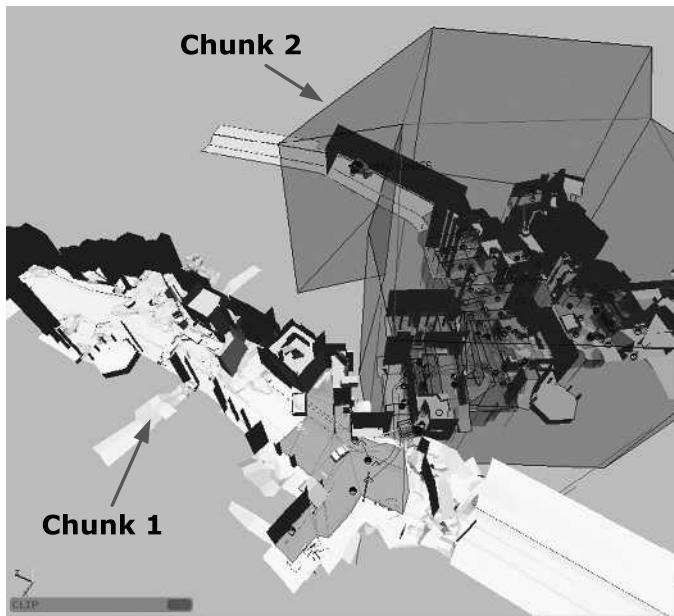


Figure 15.2. Many game worlds are divided into chunks for various reasons, including memory limitations, the need to control the flow of the game through the world, and as a division-of-labor mechanism during development.

for failure (e.g., go back to the start of the current area, possibly losing a “life” in the process). In a story-driven game, this flow might also include various in-game movies that serve to advance the player’s understanding of the story as it unfolds. These sequences are sometimes called *cut-scenes*, *in-game cinematics* (IGC) or *noninteractive sequences* (NIS). When they are rendered offline and played back as a full-screen movie, such sequences are usually called *full-motion videos* (FMV).

Early games mapped the objectives of the player one-to-one to particular world chunks (hence the dual meaning of the term “level”). For example, in *Donkey Kong*, each new level presents Mario with a new objective (namely, to reach the top of the structure and progress to the next level). However, this one-to-one mapping between world chunks and objectives is less popular in modern game design. Each objective is associated with one or more world chunks, but the coupling between chunks and objectives remains deliberately loose. This kind of design offers the flexibility to alter game objectives and world subdivision independently, which is extremely helpful from a logistic and practical standpoint when developing a game. Many games group their objectives into coarser sections of gameplay, often called *chapters* or *acts*. A typical gameplay architecture is shown in Figure 15.3.

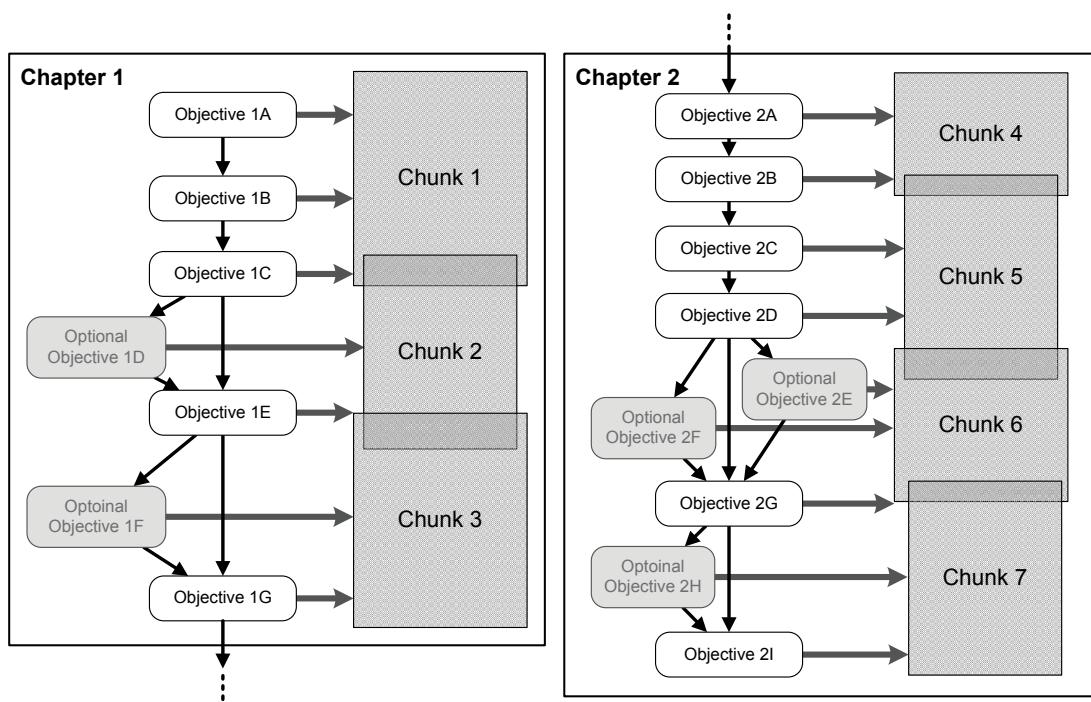


Figure 15.3. Gameplay objectives are typically arranged in a sequence, a tree, or a generalized graph, and each one maps to one or more game world chunks.

## 15.2 Implementing Dynamic Elements: Game Objects

The dynamic elements of a game are usually designed in an object-oriented fashion. This approach is intuitive and natural and maps well to the game designer's notion of how the world is constructed. He or she can visualize characters, vehicles, floating health packs, exploding barrels and myriad other dynamic objects moving about in the game. So it is only natural to want to be able to create and manipulate these elements in the game world editor. Likewise, programmers usually find it natural to implement dynamic elements as largely autonomous agents at runtime. In this book, we'll use the term *game object* (GO) to refer to virtually any dynamic element within a game world. However, this terminology is by no means standard within the industry. Game objects are commonly referred to as *entities*, *actors* or *agents*, and the list of terms goes on.

As is customary in object-oriented design, a game object is essentially a collection of *attributes* (the current state of the object) and *behaviors* (how the state changes over time and in response to events). Game objects are usually classified by *type*. Different types of objects have different attribute schemas and different behaviors. All *instances* of a particular type share the same attribute schema and the same set of behaviors, but the *values* of the attributes differ from instance to instance. (Note that if a game object's *behavior* is data-driven, say through script code or via a set of data-driven rules governing the object's responses to events, then behavior too can vary on an instance-by-instance basis.)

The distinction between a *type* and an *instance* of a type is a crucial one. For example, the game of *Pac-Man* involves four game object types: ghosts, pellets, power pills and *Pac-Man*. However, at any moment in time, there may be up to four instances of the type "ghost," 50–100 instances of the type "pellet," four "power pill" instances and one instance of the "Pac-Man" type.

Most object-oriented systems provide some mechanism for the *inheritance* of attributes, behavior or both. Inheritance encourages code and design reuse. The specifics of how inheritance works vary widely from game to game, but most game engines support it in some form.

### 15.2.1 Game Object Models

In computer science, the term *object model* has two related but distinct meanings. It can refer to the set of features provided by a particular programming language or formal design language. For example, we might speak of the *C++ object model* or the *OMT object model*. It can also refer to a specific object-oriented programming interface (i.e., a collection of classes, methods and interrelationships designed to solve a particular problem). One example of this latter usage is the *Microsoft Excel object model*, which allows external programs to control Excel in various ways. (See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Object\\_model](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Object_model) for further discussion of the term *object model*.)

In this book, we will use the term *game object model* to describe the facilities provided by a game engine in order to permit the dynamic entities in the virtual game world to be modeled and simulated. In this sense, the term *game object model* has aspects of *both* of the definitions given above:

- A game's object model is a specific object-oriented programming interface intended to solve the particular problem of simulating the specific set of entities that make up a particular game.
- Additionally, a game's object model often extends the programming language in which the engine was written. If the game is implemented

in a non-object-oriented language like C, object-oriented facilities can be added by the programmers. And even if the game is written in an object-oriented language like C++, advanced features like reflection, persistence and network replication are often added. A game object model sometimes melds the features of multiple languages. For example, a game engine might combine a compiled programming language such as C or C++ with a scripting language like Python, Lua or Pawn and provide a unified object model that can be accessed from either language.

### 15.2.2 Tool-Side Design versus Runtime Design

The object model presented to the designers via the world editor (discussed in Section 15.4) needn't be the same object model used to implement the game at runtime.

- The tool-side game object model might be implemented at runtime using a language with no native object-oriented features at all, like C.
- A single GO type on the tool side might be implemented as a collection of classes at runtime (rather than as a single class as one might at first expect).
- Each tool-side GO might be nothing more than a unique id at runtime, with all of its state data stored in tables or collections of loosely coupled objects.

Therefore, a game really has two distinct but closely interrelated object models:

- The *tool-side object model* is defined by the set of *game object types* seen by the designers within the world editor.
- The *runtime object model* is defined by whatever set of language constructs and software systems the programmers have used to implement the tool-side object model at runtime. The runtime object model might be identical to the tool-side model or map directly to it, or it might be entirely different than the tool-side model under the hood.

In some game engines, the line between the tool-side and runtime designs is blurred or nonexistent. In others, it is very well delineated. In some engines, the implementation is actually shared between the tools and the runtime. In others, the runtime implementation looks almost totally alien relative to the tool-side view of things. Some aspects of the implementation almost always creep up into the tool-side design, and game designers must be cognizant of the performance- and memory-consumption impacts of the game worlds they

construct and the gameplay rules and object behaviors they design. That said, virtually all game engines have some form of tool-side object model and a corresponding runtime implementation of that object model.

### 15.3 Data-Driven Game Engines

In the early days of game development, games were largely hard-coded by programmers. Tools, if any, were primitive. This worked because the amount of content in a typical game was minuscule, and the bar wasn't particularly high, thanks in part to the primitive graphics and sound of which early game hardware was capable.

Today, games are orders of magnitude more complex, and the quality bar is so high that game content is often compared to the computer-generated effects in Hollywood blockbusters. Game teams have grown much larger, but the amount of game content is growing faster than team size. In the eighth generation of consoles, defined by the Xbox One and the PlayStation 4, game teams routinely speak of the need to produce ten times the content with teams that are not that much larger than in the previous generation. This trend means that a game team must be capable of producing very large amounts of content in an extremely efficient manner.

Engineering resources are often a production bottleneck because high-quality engineering talent is limited and expensive and because engineers tend to produce content much more slowly than artists and game designers (due to the complexities inherent in computer programming). Most teams now believe that it's a good idea to put at least some of the power to create content directly into the hands of the folks responsible for producing that content—namely the designers and the artists. When the behavior of a game can be controlled, in whole or in part, by *data* provided by artists and designers rather than exclusively by *software* produced by programmers, we say the engine is *data driven*.

Data-driven architectures can improve team efficiency by fully leveraging all staff members to their fullest potential and by taking some of the heat off the engineering team. It can also lead to improved *iteration times*. Whether a developer wants to make a slight tweak to the game's content or completely revise an entire level, a data-driven design allows the developer to see the effects of the changes quickly, ideally with little or no help from an engineer. This saves valuable time and can permit the team to polish their game to a very high level of quality.

That being said, it's important to realize that data-driven features often come at a heavy cost. Tools must be provided to allow game designers and

artists to define game content in a data-driven manner. The runtime code must be changed to handle the wide range of possible inputs in a robust way. Tools must also be provided in-game to allow artists and designers to preview their work and troubleshoot problems. All of this software requires significant time and effort to write, test and maintain.

Sadly, many teams make a mad rush into data-driven architectures without stopping to study the impacts of their efforts on their particular game design and the specific needs of their team members. In their haste, such teams often dramatically overshoot the mark, producing overly complex tools and engine systems that are difficult to use, bug-ridden and virtually impossible to adapt to the changing requirements of the project. Ironically, in their efforts to realize the benefits of a data-driven design, a team can easily end up with significantly lower productivity than the old-fashioned hard-coded methods.

Every game engine should have some data-driven components, but a game team must exercise extreme care when selecting which aspects of the engine to data-drive. It's crucial to weigh the costs of creating a data-driven or rapid-iteration feature against the amount of time the feature is expected to save the team over the course of the project. It's also incredibly important to keep the KISS mantra ("keep it simple, stupid") in mind when designing and implementing data-driven tools and engine systems. To paraphrase Albert Einstein, everything in a game engine should be made as simple as possible, but no simpler.

## 15.4 The Game World Editor

We've already discussed data-driven asset-creation tools, such as Maya, Photoshop, Havok content tools and so on. These tools generate individual assets for consumption by the rendering engine, animation system, audio system, physics system and so on. The analog to these tools in the gameplay space is the *game world editor*—a tool (or a suite of tools) that permits game world chunks to be defined and populated with static and dynamic elements.

All commercial game engines have some kind of world editor tool.

- A well-known tool called *Radiant* is used to create maps for the *Quake* and *Doom* family of engines. A screenshot of Radiant is shown in Figure 15.4.
- Valve's *Source* engine, the engine that drives *Half-Life 2*, *The Orange Box*, *Team Fortress 2*, the *Portal* series, the *Left 4 Dead* series and *Titanfall*, provides an editor called *Hammer* (previously distributed under the names *Worldcraft* and *The Forge*). Figure 15.5 shows a screenshot of Hammer.

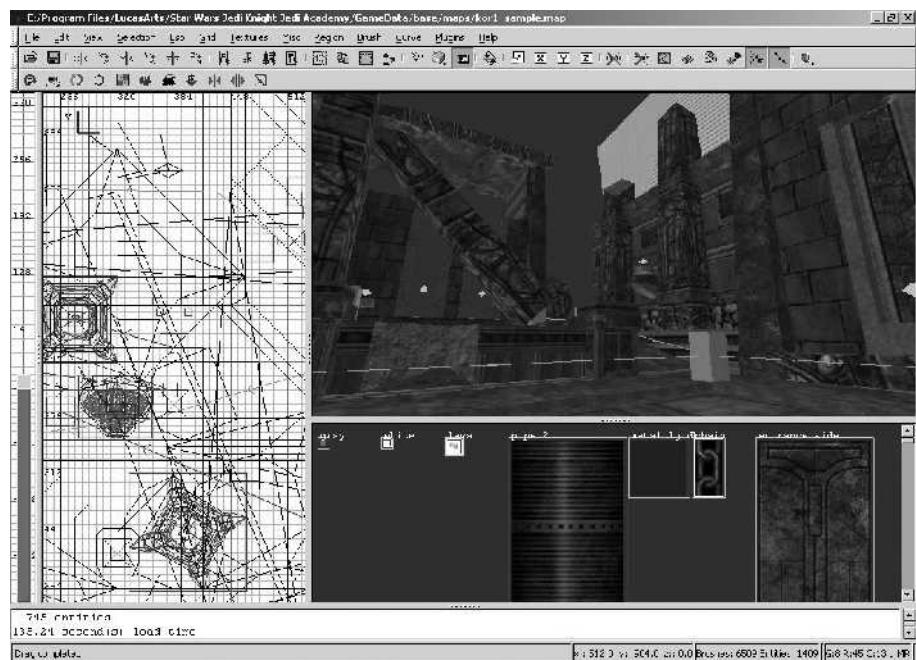


Figure 15.4. The RADIANT world editor for the Quake and Doom family of engines.

- Crytek's CRYENGINE provides a powerful suite of world creation and editing tools. These tools support real-time editing of multiplatform game environments simultaneously, both in 2D and true stereoscopic 3D. Crytek's Sandbox editor is depicted in Figure 15.6.

The game world editor generally permits the initial states of game objects (i.e., the values of their attributes) to be specified. Most game world editors also give their users some sort of ability to control the *behaviors* of the dynamic objects in the game world. This control might be via data-driven configuration parameters (e.g., object A should start in an invisible state, object B should immediately attack the player when spawned, object C is flammable, etc.), or behavioral control might be via a scripting language, thereby shifting the game designers' tasks into the realm of programming. Some world editors even allow entirely new types of game objects to be defined, with little or no programmer intervention.

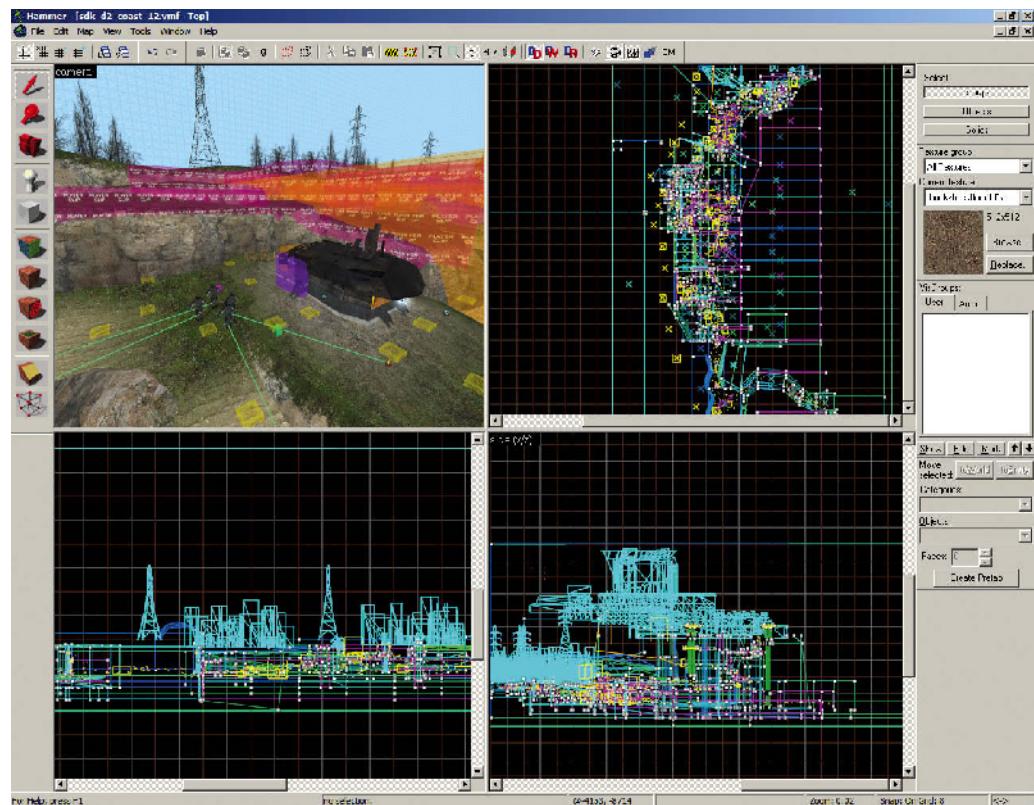


Figure 15.5. Valve's Hammer editor for the Source engine.

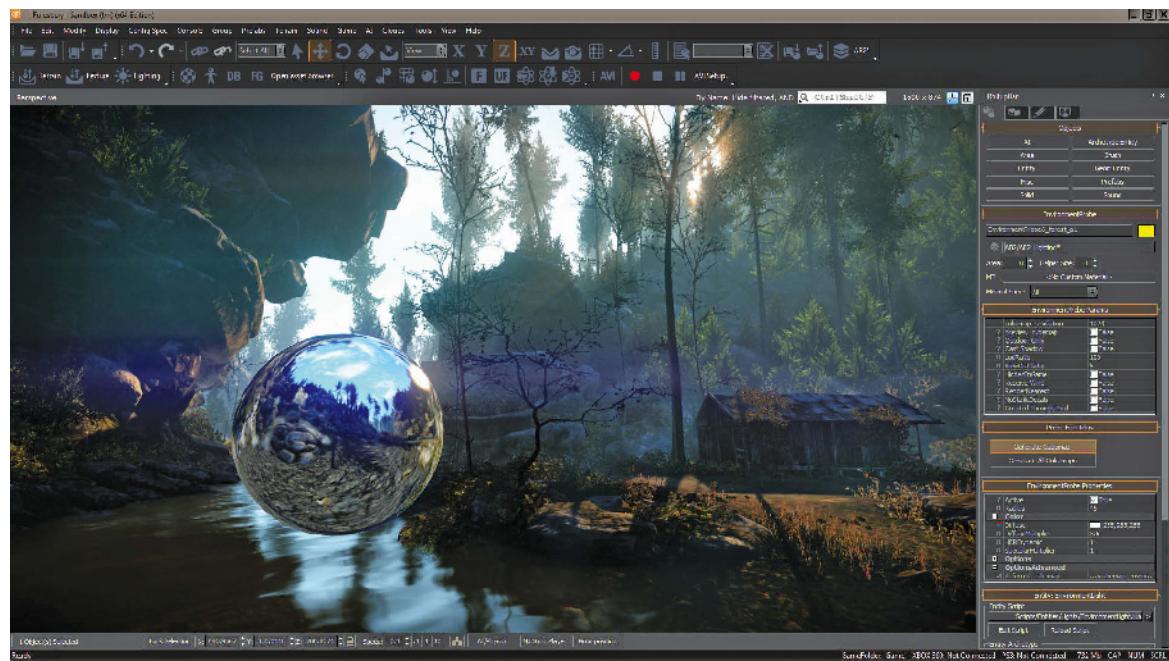


Figure I5.6. The Sandbox editor for CRYENGINE. (See Color Plate XXV.)

### 15.4.1 Typical Features of a Game World Editor

The design and layout of game world editors vary widely, but most editors provide a reasonably standard set of features. These include, but are certainly not limited to, the following.

#### 15.4.1.1 World Chunk Creation and Management

The unit of world creation is usually a chunk (also known as a level or map—see Section 15.1.2). The game world editor typically allows new chunks to be created and existing chunks to be renamed, broken up, combined or destroyed. Each chunk can be linked to one or more static meshes and/or other static data elements such as AI navigation maps, descriptions of ledges that can be grabbed by the player, cover point definitions and so on. In some engines, a chunk is defined by a single background mesh and cannot exist without one. In other engines, a chunk may have an independent existence, perhaps defined by a bounding volume (e.g., AABB, OBB or arbitrary polygonal region), and can be populated by zero or more meshes and/or brush geometry (see Section 1.7.2.1).

Some world editors provide dedicated tools for authoring terrain, water and other specialized static elements. In other engines, these elements might be authored using standard DCC applications but tagged in some way to indicate to the asset conditioning pipeline and/or the runtime engine that they are special. (For example, in the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series, water was authored as a triangle mesh, but it was mapped with a special material that indicated that it was to be treated as water.) Sometimes, special world elements are created and edited in a separate, stand-alone tool. For example, the height field terrain in *Medal of Honor: Pacific Assault* was authored using a customized version of a tool obtained from another team within Electronic Arts because this was more expedient than trying to integrate a terrain editor into Radiant, the world editor being used on the project at the time.

#### 15.4.1.2 Game World Visualization

It's important for the user of a game world editor to be able to visualize the contents of the game world. As such, virtually all game world editors provide a three-dimensional perspective view of the world and/or a two-dimensional orthographic projection. It's common to see the view pane divided into four sections, three for top, side and front orthographic elevations and one for the 3D perspective view.

Some editors provide these world views via a custom rendering engine integrated directly into the tool. Other editors are themselves integrated into

a 3D geometry editor like Maya or 3ds Max, so they can simply leverage the tool's viewports. Still other editors are designed to communicate with the actual game engine and use it to render the 3D perspective view. Some editors are even integrated into the engine itself.

#### 15.4.1.3 Navigation

Clearly, a world editor wouldn't be of much use if the user weren't able to move around within the game world. In an orthographic view, it's important to be able to scroll and zoom in and out. In a 3D view, various camera control schemes are used. It may be possible to focus on an individual object and rotate around it. It may also be possible to switch into a "fly through" mode where the camera rotates about its own focal point and can be moved forward, backward, up and down and panned left and right.

Some editors provide a host of convenience features for navigation. These include the ability to select an object and focus in on it with a single key press, the ability to save various relevant camera locations and then jump between them, various camera movement speed modes for coarse navigation and fine camera control, a Web-browser-like navigation history that can be used to jump around the game world and so on.

#### 15.4.1.4 Selection

A game world editor is primarily designed to allow the user to populate a game world with static and dynamic elements. As such, it's important for the user to be able to select individual elements for editing. Some editors only allow a single object to be selected at a time, while more-advanced editors permit multiobject selections. Objects might be selected via a rubber-band box in the orthographic view or by ray cast style picking in the 3D view. Many editors also display a list of all world elements in a scrolling list or tree view so that objects can be found and selected by name. Some world editors also allow selections to be named and saved for later retrieval.

Game worlds are often quite densely populated. As such, it can sometimes be difficult to select a desired object because other objects are in the way. This problem can be overcome in a number of ways. When using a ray cast to select objects in 3D, the editor might allow the user to cycle through all of the objects that the ray is currently intersecting rather than always selecting the nearest one. Many editors allow the currently selected object(s) to be temporarily hidden from view. That way, if you don't get the object you want the first time, you can always hide it and try again. As we'll see in the next section, layers can also be an effective way to reduce clutter and improve the user's ability to select objects successfully.

### 15.4.1.5 Layers

Some editors also allow objects to be grouped into predefined or user-defined *layers*. This can be an incredibly useful feature, allowing the contents of the game world to be organized sensibly. Entire layers can be hidden or shown to reduce clutter on-screen. Layers might be color-coded for easy identification. Layers can be an important part of a division-of-labor strategy, as well. For example, when the lighting team is working on a world chunk, they can hide all of the elements in the scene that are not relevant to lighting.

What's more, if the game world editor is capable of loading and saving layers individually, conflicts can be avoided when multiple people are working on a single world chunk at the same time. For example, all of the lights might be stored in one layer, all of the background geometry in another and all AI characters in a third. Since each layer is totally independent, the lighting, background and NPC teams can all work simultaneously on the same world chunk.

### 15.4.1.6 Property Grid

The static and dynamic elements that populate a game world chunk typically have various properties (also known as attributes) that can be edited by the user. Properties might be simple key-value pairs and be limited to simple atomic data types like Booleans, integers, floating-point numbers and strings. In some editors, more complex properties are supported, including arrays of data and nested compound data structures. More complex data types may be supported too, such as vectors, RGB colors and references to external assets (audio files, meshes, animations, etc.)

Most world editors display the attributes of the currently selected object(s) in a scrollable property grid view. An example of a property grid is shown in Figure 15.7. The grid allows the user to see the current values of each attribute and edit the values by typing, using check boxes or drop-down combo boxes, dragging spinner controls up and down and so on.

#### *Editing Multiobject Selections*

In editors that support multiobject selection, the property grid may support multiobject editing as well. This advanced feature displays an amalgam of the attributes of all objects in the selection. If a particular attribute has the same value across all objects in the selection, the value is shown as-is, and editing the value in the grid causes the property value to be updated in all selected objects. If the attribute's value differs from object to object within the selection, the property grid typically shows no value at all. In this case, if a new value

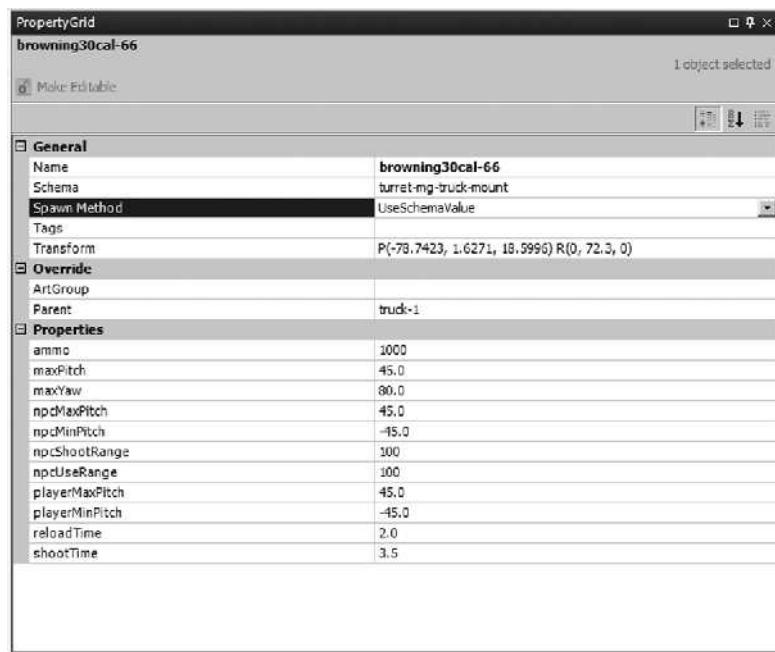


Figure 15.7. A typical property grid.

is typed into the field in the grid, it will overwrite the values in all selected objects, bringing them all into agreement.

Another problem arises when the selection contains a heterogeneous collection of objects (i.e., objects whose types differ). Each type of object can potentially have a different set of attributes, so the property grid must display only those attributes that are common to all object types in the selection. This can still be useful, however, because game object types often inherit from a common base type. For example, most objects have a position and orientation. In a heterogeneous selection, the user can still edit these shared attributes even though more-specific attributes are temporarily hidden from view.

### *Free-Form Properties*

Normally, the set of properties associated with an object, and the data types of those properties, are defined on a per-object-type basis. For example, a renderable object has a position, orientation, scale and mesh, while a light has position, orientation, color, intensity and light type. Some editors also allow additional “free-form” properties to be defined by the user on a per-instance basis.

These properties are usually implemented as a flat list of key-value pairs. The user is free to choose the name (key) of each free-form property, along with its data type and its value. This can be incredibly useful for prototyping new gameplay features or implementing one-off scenarios.

#### 15.4.1.7 Object Placement and Alignment Aids

Some object properties are treated in a special way by the world editor. Typically the position, orientation and scale of an object can be controlled via special handles in the orthographic and perspective viewports, just like in Maya or Max. In addition, asset linkages often need to be handled in a special way. For example, if we change the mesh associated with an object in the world, the editor should display this mesh in the orthographic and 3D perspective viewports. As such, the game world editor must have special knowledge of these properties—it cannot treat them generically, as it can most object properties.

Many world editors provide a host of object placement and alignment aids in addition to the basic translation, rotation and scale tools. Many of these features borrow heavily from the feature sets of commercial graphics and 3D modeling tools like Photoshop, Maya, Visio and others. Examples include snap to grid, snap to terrain, align to object and many more.

#### 15.4.1.8 Special Object Types

Just as some object properties must be handled in a special way by the world editor, certain types of objects also require special handling. Examples include:

- *Lights*. The world editor usually uses special icons to represent lights, since they have no mesh. The editor may attempt to display the light's approximate effect on the geometry in the scene as well, so that designers can move lights around in real time and get a reasonably good feel for how the scene will ultimately look.
- *Particle emitters*. Visualization of particle effects can also be problematic in editors that are built on a stand-alone rendering engine. In this case, particle emitters might be displayed using icons only, or some attempt might be made to emulate the particle effect in the editor. Of course, this is not a problem if the editor is in-game or can communicate with the running game for live tweaking.
- *Sound sources*. As we discussed in Chapter 14, a 3D rendering engine models sound sources as 3D points or volumes. It may be convenient to provide specialized editing tools for these in the world editor. For example, sound designers will find it helpful if they can visualize the

maximum radius of an omnidirectional sound emitter, or the direction vector and cone of a directional emitter.

- *Regions*. A region is a volume of space that is used by the game to detect relevant events such as objects entering or leaving the volume or to demarcate areas for various purposes. Some game engines restrict regions to being modeled as spheres or oriented boxes, while others may permit arbitrary convex polygonal shapes when viewed from above, with strictly horizontal sides. Still others might allow regions to be constructed out of more complex geometry, such as  $k$ -DOPs (see Section 13.3.4.5). If regions are always spherical then the designers might be able to make do with a “Radius” property in the property grid, but to define or modify the extents of an arbitrarily shaped region, a special-case editing tool is almost certainly required.
- *Splines*. A spline is a three-dimensional curve defined by a set of control points and possibly tangent vectors at the points, depending on the type of mathematical curve used. Catmull-Rom splines are commonly used because they are fully defined by a set of control points (without tangents), and the curve always passes through all of the control points. But no matter what type of splines are supported, the world editor typically needs to provide the ability to display the splines in its viewports, and the user must be able to select and manipulate individual control points. Some world editors actually support two selection modes—a “coarse” mode for selecting objects in the scene and a “fine” mode for selecting the individual components of a selected object, such as the control points of a spline or the vertices of a region.
- *Nav meshes for AI*. In many games, NPCs navigate by running pathfinding algorithms within the navigable regions of the game world. These navigable regions must be defined, and the world editor usually plays a central role in allowing AI designers to create, visualize and edit these regions. For example, a *nav mesh* is a 2D triangle mesh that provides a simple description of the boundaries of the navigable region, as well as providing connectivity information to the path finder.
- *Other custom data*. Of course, every game has its own specific data requirements. The world editor may be called upon to provide custom visualization and editing facilities for these pieces of data. Examples include a description of the “affordances” (windows, doorways, possible points of attack or defense) within a play space for use by the AI system, or geometric features that describe things like cover points or grabbable ledges for use by the player character and/or NPCs.

#### 15.4.1.9 Saving and Loading World Chunks

Of course, no world editor would be complete if it were unable to load and save world chunks. The granularity with which world chunks can be loaded and saved differs widely from engine to engine. Some engines store each world chunk in a single file, while others allow individual layers to be loaded and saved independently. Data formats also vary across engines. Some use custom binary formats, others text formats like XML or JSON. Each design has its pros and cons, but every editor provides the ability to load and save world chunks in some form—and every game engine is capable of loading world chunks so that they can be played at runtime.

#### 15.4.1.10 Rapid Iteration

A good game world editor usually supports some degree of dynamic tweaking for rapid iteration. Some editors run within the game itself, allowing the user to see the effects of his or her changes immediately. Others provide a live connection from the editor to the running game. Still other world editors operate entirely offline, either as a stand-alone tool or as a plug-in to a DCC application like Lightwave or Maya. These tools sometimes permit modified data to be reloaded dynamically into the running game. The specific mechanism isn't important—all that matters is that users have a reasonably short *round-trip iteration time* (i.e., the time between making a change to the game world and seeing the effects of that change in-game). It's important to realize that iterations don't have to be instantaneous. Iteration times should be commensurate with the scope and frequency of the changes being made. For example, we might expect tweaking a character's maximum health to be a very fast operation, but when making major changes to the lighting environment for an entire world chunk, a much longer iteration time might be acceptable.

### 15.4.2 Integrated Asset Management Tools

In some engines, the game world editor is integrated with other aspects of game asset database management, such as defining mesh and material properties, defining animations, blend trees, animation state machines, setting up collision and physical properties of objects, managing texture resources and so on. (See Section 7.2.1.2 for a discussion of the game asset database.)

Perhaps the best-known example of this design in action is *UnrealEd*, the editor used to create content for games built on the Unreal Engine. *UnrealEd* is integrated directly into the game engine, so any changes made in the editor are made directly to the dynamic elements in the running game. This makes rapid iteration very easy to achieve. But *UnrealEd* is much more than a game

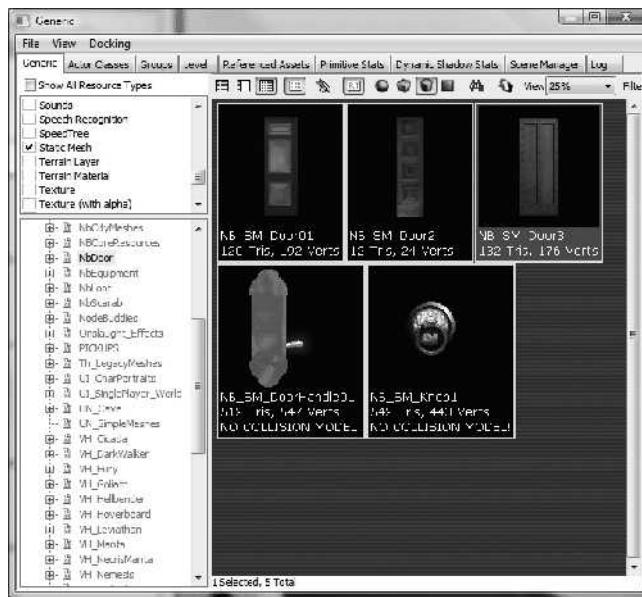


Figure 15.8. UnrealEd’s Generic Browser provides access to the entire game asset database.

world editor—it is actually a complete content-creation package. It manages the entire database of game assets, from animations to audio clips to triangle meshes to textures to materials and shaders and much more. UnrealEd provides its user with a unified, real-time, WYSIWYG view into the entire asset database, making it a powerful enabler of any rapid, efficient game development process. A few screenshots from UnrealEd are shown in Figures 15.8 and 15.9.

#### 15.4.2.1 Data Processing Costs

In Section 7.2.1, we learned that the asset conditioning pipeline (ACP) converts game assets from their various source formats into the formats required by the game engine. This is typically a two-step process. First, the asset is exported from the DCC application to a platform-independent intermediate format that only contains the data that is relevant to the game. Second, the asset is processed into a format that is optimized for a specific platform. On a project targeting multiple gaming platforms, a single platform-independent asset gives rise to multiple platform-specific assets during this second phase.

One of the key differences between tools pipelines is the point at which this second platform-specific optimization step is performed. UnrealEd performs it when assets are first imported into the editor. This approach pays off in

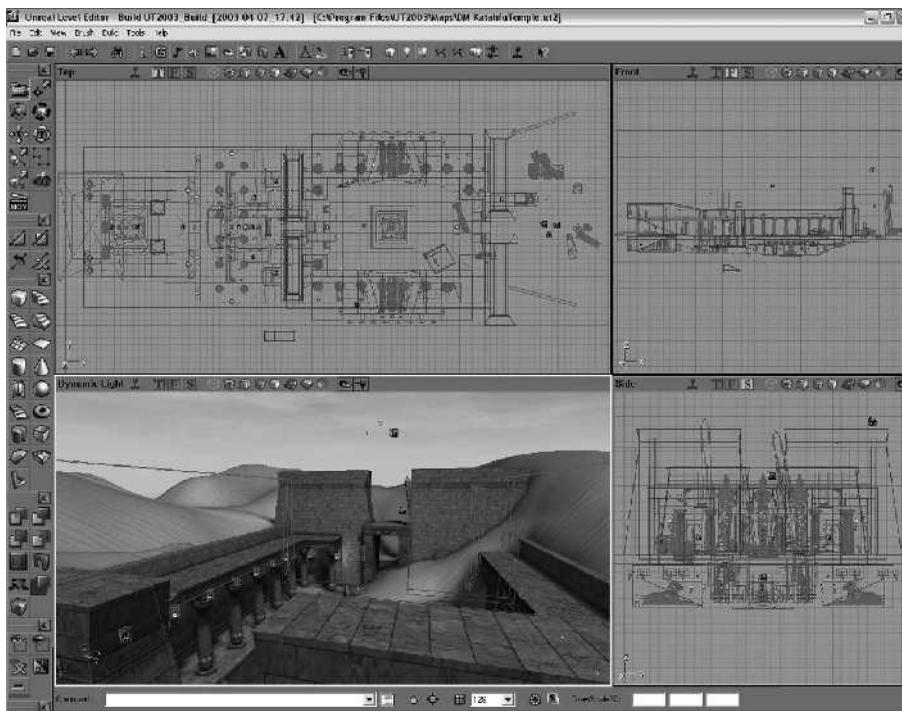


Figure 15.9. UnrealEd also provides a world editor.

rapid iteration time when iterating on level design. However, it can make the cost of changing source assets like meshes, animations, audio assets and so on more painful. Other engines like the Source engine and the *Quake* engine pay the asset optimization cost when baking out the level prior to running the game. *Halo* gives the user the option to change raw assets at any time; they are converted into an optimized form when they are first loaded into the engine, and the results are cached to prevent the optimization step from being performed needlessly every time the game is run.



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 16

## Runtime Gameplay Foundation Systems

### 16.1 Components of the Gameplay Foundation System

Most game engines provide a suite of runtime software components that together provide a framework upon which a game's unique rules, objectives and dynamic world elements can be constructed. There is no standard name for these components within the game industry, but we will refer to them collectively as the engine's *gameplay foundation system*. If a line between engine and game can reasonably be drawn between the game engine and the game itself, then these systems lie just beneath this line. In theory, one can construct gameplay foundation systems that are for the most part game-agnostic. However, in practice, these systems almost always contain genre- or game-specific details. In fact, the line between the engine and the game can probably be best visualized as one big blur—a gradient that arcs across these components as it links the engine to the game. In some game engines, one might even go so far as to consider the gameplay foundation systems as lying entirely *above* the engine-game line. The differences between game engines are most acute when it comes to the design and implementation of their gameplay components. That said, there are a surprising number of common patterns across engines, and those commonalities will be the topic of our discussions here.

Every game engine approaches the problem of gameplay software design a bit differently. However, most engines provide the following major subsystems in some form:

- *Runtime game object model.* This is an implementation of the abstract game object model advertised to the game designers via the world editor.
- *Level management and streaming.* This system loads and unloads the contents of the virtual worlds in which gameplay takes place. In many engines, level data is streamed into memory during gameplay, thus providing the illusion of a large seamless world (when in fact it is broken into discrete chunks).
- *Real-time object model updating.* In order to permit the game objects in the world to behave autonomously, each object must be updated periodically. This is where all of the disparate systems in a game engine truly come together into a cohesive whole.
- *Messaging and event handling.* Most game objects need to communicate with one another. This is usually done via an abstract messaging system. Inter-object messages often signal changes in the state of the game world called *events*. So the messaging system is referred to as the *event system* in many studios.
- *Scripting.* Programming high-level game logic in a language like C or C++ can be cumbersome. To improve productivity, allow rapid iteration, and put more power into the hands of the non-programmers on the team, a scripting language is often integrated into the game engine. This language might be text-based, like Python or Lua, or it might be a graphical language, like Unreal’s Blueprints.
- *Objectives and game flow management.* This subsystem manages the player’s objectives and the overall flow of the game. This is usually described by a sequence, a tree, or a generalized graph of player objectives. Objectives are often grouped into chapters, especially if the game is highly story-driven as many modern games are. The game flow management system manages the overall flow of the game, tracks the player’s accomplishment of objectives and gates the player from one area of the game world to the next as the objectives are accomplished. Some designers refer to this as the “spine” of the game.

Of these major systems, the runtime object model is probably the most complex. It typically provides most, if not all, of the following features:

- *Spawning and destroying game objects dynamically.* The dynamic elements in a game world often need to come and go during gameplay. Health

packs disappear once they have been picked up, explosions appear and then dissipate and enemy reinforcements mysteriously come from around a corner just when you think you've cleared the level. Many game engines provide a system for managing the memory and other resources associated with dynamically spawned game objects. Other engines simply disallow dynamic creation or destruction of game objects altogether.

- *Linkage to low-level engine systems.* Every game object has some kind of linkage to one or more underlying engine systems. Most game objects are visually represented by renderable triangle meshes. Some have particle effects. Many generate sounds. Some animate. Many have collision, and some are dynamically simulated by the physics engine. One of the primary responsibilities of the gameplay foundation system is to ensure that every game object has access to the services of the engine systems upon which it depends.
- *Real-time simulation of object behaviors.* At its core, a game engine is a real-time dynamic computer simulation of an agent-based model. This is just a fancy way of saying that the game engine needs to update the states of all the game objects dynamically over time. The objects may need to be updated in a very particular order, dictated in part by dependencies between the objects, in part by their dependencies on various engine subsystems, and in part because of the interdependencies between those engine subsystems themselves.
- *Ability to define new game object types.* Every game's requirements change and evolve as the game is developed. It's important that the game object model be flexible enough to permit new object types to be added easily and exposed to the world editor. In an ideal world, it should be possible to define a new type of object in an entirely data-driven manner. However, in many engines, the services of a programmer are required in order to add new game object types.
- *Unique object ids.* Typical game worlds contain hundreds or even thousands of individual game objects of various types. At runtime, it's important to be able to identify or search for a particular object. This means each object needs some kind of unique identifier. A human-readable name is the most convenient kind of id, but we must be wary of the performance costs of using strings at runtime. Integer ids are the most efficient choice, but they are very difficult for human game developers to work with. Arguably the best solution is to use hashed string ids (see Section 6.4.3.1) as our object identifiers, as they are as efficient as integers

but can be converted back into string form for ease of reading.

- *Game object queries.* The gameplay foundation system must provide some means of finding objects within the game world. We might want to find a specific object by its unique id, or all the objects of a particular type, or we might want to perform advanced queries based on arbitrary criteria (e.g., find all enemies within a 20 m radius of the player character).
- *Game object references.* Once we've found the objects, we need some mechanism for holding *references* to them, either briefly within a single function or for much longer periods of time. An object reference might be as simple as a pointer to a C++ class instance, or it might be something more sophisticated, like a handle or a reference-counted smart pointer.
- *Finite state machine support.* Many types of game objects are best modeled as finite state machines (FSM). Some game engines provide the ability for a game object to exist in one of many possible states, each with its own attributes and behavioral characteristics.
- *Network replication.* In a networked multiplayer game, multiple game machines are connected together via a LAN or the Internet. The state of a particular game object is usually owned and managed by one machine. However, that object's state must also be *replicated* (communicated) to the other machines involved in the multiplayer game so that all players have a consistent view of the object.
- *Saving and loading / object persistence.* Many game engines allow the current states of the game objects in the world to be saved to disk and later reloaded. This might be done to support a "save anywhere" save-game system or as a way of implementing network replication, or it might simply be the primary means of loading game world chunks that were authored in the world editor tool. Object persistence usually requires certain language features, such as *runtime type identification* (RTTI), *reflection* and *abstract construction*. RTTI and reflection provide software with a means of determining an object's *type*, and what *attributes* and *methods* its class provides, dynamically at runtime. Abstract construction allows instances of a class to be created without having to hard-code the name of the class—a very useful feature when serializing an object instance into memory from disk. If RTTI, reflection and abstract construction are not natively supported in your language of choice, these features can be added manually.

We'll spend the remainder of this chapter delving into each of these subsystems in depth.

## 16.2 Runtime Object Model Architectures

In the world editor, the game designer is presented with an abstract game object model, which defines the various types of dynamic elements that can exist in the game, how they behave and what kinds of attributes they have. At runtime, the gameplay foundation system must provide a concrete implementation of this object model. This is by far the largest component of any gameplay foundation system.

The runtime object model implementation may or may not bear any resemblance to the abstract tool-side object model. For example, it might not be implemented in an object-oriented programming language at all, or it might use a collection of interconnected class instances to represent a single abstract game object. Whatever its design, the runtime object model must provide a faithful reproduction of the object types, attributes and behaviors advertised by the world editor.

The runtime object model is the in-game manifestation of the abstract tool-side object model presented to the designers in the world editor. Designs vary widely, but most game engines follow one of two basic architectural styles:

- *Object-centric*. In this style, each tool-side game object is represented at runtime by a single class instance or a small collection of interconnected instances. Each object has a set of *attributes* and *behaviors* that are encapsulated within the class (or classes) of which the object is an instance. The game world is just a collection of game objects.
- *Property-centric*. In this style, each tool-side game object is represented only by a unique id (implemented as an integer, hashed string id or string). The *properties* of each game object are distributed across many data tables, one per property type, and keyed by object id (rather than being centralized within a single class instance or collection of interconnected instances). The properties themselves are often implemented as instances of hard-coded classes. The *behavior* of a game object is implicitly defined by the collection of properties of which it is composed. For example, if an object has the “Health” property, then it can be damaged, lose health and eventually die. If an object has the “MeshInstance” property, then it can be rendered in 3D as an instance of a triangle mesh.

There are distinct advantages and disadvantages to each of these architectural styles. We’ll investigate each one in some detail and note where one style has significant potential benefits over the other as they arise.

## 16.2.1 Object-Centric Architectures

In an *object-centric* game world object architecture, each logical game object is implemented as an instance of a class, or possibly a collection of interconnected class instances. Under this broad umbrella, many different designs are possible. We'll investigate a few of the most common designs in the following sections.

### 16.2.1.1 A Simple Object-Based Model in C: *Hydro Thunder*

Game object models needn't be implemented in an object-oriented language like C++ at all. For example, the arcade hit *Hydro Thunder*, by Midway Home Entertainment in San Diego, was written entirely in C. *Hydro* employed a very simple game object model consisting of only a few object types:

- boats (player- and AI-controlled),
- floating blue and red boost icons,
- ambient animated objects (animals on the side of the track, etc.),
- the water surface,
- ramps,
- waterfalls,
- particle effects,
- race track sectors (two-dimensional polygonal regions connected to one another that together define the watery region in which boats could race),
- static geometry (terrain, foliage, buildings along the sides of the track, etc.), and
- two-dimensional heads-up display (HUD) elements.

A few screenshots of *Hydro Thunder* are shown in Figure 16.1. Notice the hovering boost icons in both screenshots and the shark swimming by in the left image (an example of an ambient animated object).

*Hydro* had a C struct named `World_t` that stored and managed the contents of a game world (i.e., a single race track). The world contained pointers to arrays of various kinds of game objects. The static geometry was a single mesh instance. The water surface, waterfalls and particle effects were each represented by custom data structures. The boats, boost icons and other dynamic objects in the game were represented by instances of a general-purpose struct called `WorldOb_t` (i.e., a world object). This was *Hydro*'s equivalent of a *game object* as we've defined it in this chapter.



Figure I6.1. Screenshots from the arcade game *Hydro Thunder*, developed by Midway Home Entertainment in San Diego.

The `WorldOb_t` data structure contained data members encoding the position and orientation of the object, the 3D mesh used to render it, a set of collision spheres, simple animation state information (*Hydro* only supported rigid hierarchical animation), physical properties like velocity, mass and buoyancy, and other data common to all of the dynamic objects in the game. In addition, each `WorldOb_t` contained three pointers: a `void*` “user data” pointer, a pointer to a custom “update” function and a pointer to a custom “draw” function. So while *Hydro Thunder* was not object-oriented in the strictest sense, the *Hydro* engine did extend its non-object-oriented language (C) to support rudimentary implementations of two important OOP features: *inheritance* and *polymorphism*. The user data pointer permitted each type of game object to maintain custom state information specific to its type while inheriting the features common to all world objects. For example, the *Banshee* boat had a different booster mechanism than the *Rad Hazard*, and each booster mechanism required different state information to manage its deployment and stowing animations. The two function pointers acted like *virtual functions*, allowing world objects to have polymorphic behaviors (via their “update” functions) and polymorphic visual appearances (via their “draw” functions).

```
struct WorldOb_s
{
    Orient_t m_transform;      /* position/rotation */
    Mesh3d* m_pMesh;          /* 3D mesh */
    /* ... */
    void* m_pUserData;        /* custom state */
    void    (*m_pUpdate)();    /* polymorphic update */
    void    (*m_pDraw)();      /* polymorphic draw */
};

typedef struct WorldOb_s WorldOb_t;
```

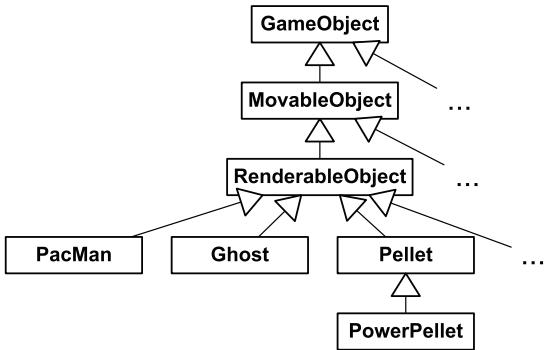


Figure 16.2. A hypothetical class hierarchy for the game *Pac-Man*.

### 16.2.1.2 Monolithic Class Hierarchies

It's natural to want to classify game object types taxonomically. This tends to lead game programmers toward an object-oriented language that supports inheritance. A class hierarchy is the most intuitive and straightforward way to represent a collection of interrelated game object types. So it is not surprising that the majority of commercial game engines employ a class hierarchy based technique.

Figure 16.2 shows a simple class hierarchy that could be used to implement the game *Pac-Man*. This hierarchy is rooted (as many are) at a common class called `GameObject`, which might provide some facilities needed by all object types, such as RTTI or serialization. The `MovableObject` class represents any object that has a position and orientation. `RenderableObject` gives the object an ability to be rendered (in the case of traditional *Pac-Man*, via a sprite, or in the case of a modern 3D *Pac-Man* game, perhaps via a triangle mesh). From `RenderableObject` are derived classes for the ghosts, Pac-Man, pellets and power pills that make up the game. This is just a hypothetical example, but it illustrates the basic ideas that underlie most game object class hierarchies—namely that common, generic functionality tends to exist at the root of the hierarchy, while classes toward the leaves of the hierarchy tend to add increasingly specific functionality.

A game object class hierarchy usually begins small and simple, and in that form, it can be a powerful and intuitive way to describe a collection of game object types. However, as class hierarchies grow, they have a tendency to deepen and widen simultaneously, leading to what I call a *monolithic class hierarchy*. This kind of hierarchy arises when virtually all classes in the game object model inherit from a single, common base class. The Unreal Engine's game object model is a classic example, as Figure 16.3 illustrates.

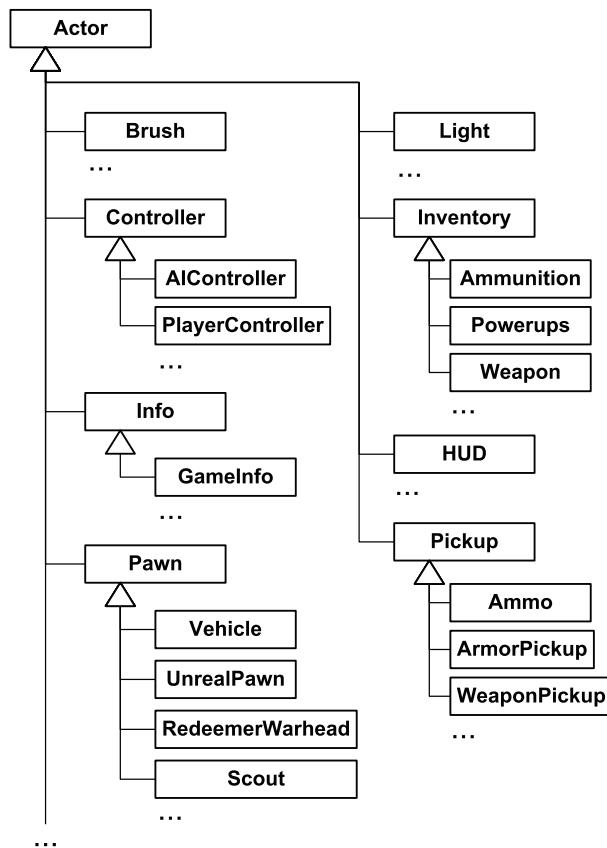


Figure 16.3. An excerpt from the game object class hierarchy in the *Unreal* engine.

### 16.2.1.3 Problems with Deep, Wide Hierarchies

Monolithic class hierarchies tend to cause problems for the game development team for a wide range of reasons. The deeper and wider a class hierarchy grows, the more extreme these problems can become. In the following sections, we'll explore some of the most common problems caused by wide, deep class hierarchies.

## *Understanding, Maintaining and Modifying Classes*

The deeper a class lies within a class hierarchy, the harder it is to understand, maintain and modify. This is because to understand a class, you really need to understand all of its parent classes as well. For example, modifying the

behavior of an innocuous-looking virtual function in a derived class could violate the assumptions made by any one of the many base classes, leading to subtle, difficult-to-find bugs.

### *Inability to Describe Multidimensional Taxonomies*

A hierarchy inherently classifies objects according to a particular system of criteria known as a *taxonomy*. For example, *biological taxonomy* (also known as *alpha taxonomy*) classifies all living things according to genetic similarities, using a tree with eight levels: domain, kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus and species. At each level of the tree, a different criterion is used to divide the myriad life forms on our planet into more and more refined groups.

One of the biggest problems with any hierarchy is that it can only classify objects along a single “axis”—according to one particular set of criteria—at each level of the tree. Once the criteria have been chosen for a particular hierarchy, it becomes difficult or impossible to classify along an entirely different set of “axes.” For example, biological taxonomy classifies objects according to genetic traits, but it says nothing about the colors of the organisms. In order to classify organisms by color, we’d need an entirely different tree structure.

In object-oriented programming, this limitation of hierarchical classification often manifests itself in the form of wide, deep and confusing class hierarchies. When one analyzes a real game’s class hierarchy, one often finds that its structure attempts to meld a number of different classification criteria into a single class tree. In other cases, concessions are made in the class hierarchy to accommodate a new type of object whose characteristics were not anticipated when the hierarchy was first designed. For example, imagine the seemingly logical class hierarchy describing different types of vehicles, depicted in Figure 16.4.

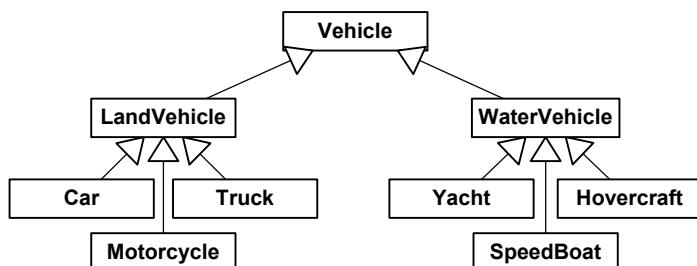


Figure 16.4. A seemingly logical class hierarchy describing various kinds of vehicles.

What happens when the game designers announce to the programmers that they now want the game to include an *amphibious* vehicle? Such a vehicle does not fit into the existing taxonomic system. This may cause the programmers to panic or, more likely, to “hack” their class hierarchy in various ugly and error-prone ways.

### *Multiple Inheritance: The Deadly Diamond*

One solution to the amphibious vehicle problem is to utilize C++’s multiple inheritance (MI) features, as shown in Figure 16.5. At first glance, this seems like a good solution. However, multiple inheritance in C++ poses a number of practical problems. For example, multiple inheritance can lead to an object that contains multiple copies of its base class’ members—a condition known as the “deadly diamond” or “diamond of death.” (See Section 3.1.1.3 for more details.)

The difficulties in building an MI class hierarchy that works and that is understandable and maintainable usually outweigh the benefits. As a result, most game studios prohibit or severely limit the use of multiple inheritance in their class hierarchies.

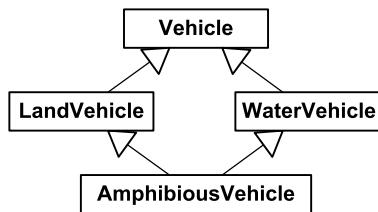


Figure 16.5. A diamond-shaped class hierarchy for amphibious vehicles.

### *Mix-In Classes*

Some teams do permit a limited form of MI, in which a class may have any number of parent classes but only *one* grandparent. In other words, a class may inherit from one and only one class in the main inheritance hierarchy, but it may also inherit from any number of *mix-in classes* (stand-alone classes with no base class). This permits common functionality to be factored out into a mix-in class and then spot-patched into the main hierarchy wherever it is needed. This is shown in Figure 16.6. However, as we’ll see below, it’s usually better to *compose* or *aggregate* such classes than to *inherit* from them.

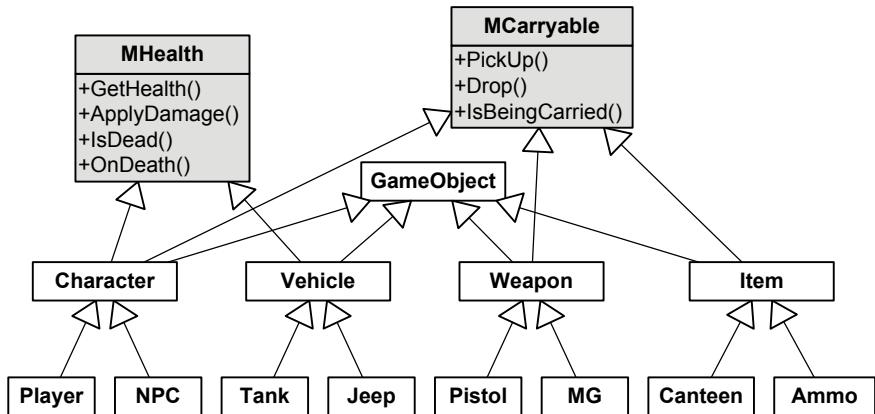


Figure 16.6. A class hierarchy with mix-in classes. The MHealth mix-in class adds the notion of health and the ability to be killed to any class that inherits it. The MCARRYABLE mix-in class allows an object that inherits it to be carried by a Character.

### *The Bubble-Up Effect*

When a monolithic class hierarchy is first designed, the root class or classes are usually very simple, each one exposing only a minimal feature set. However, as more and more functionality is added to the game, the desire to *share code* between two or more *unrelated* classes begins to cause features to “bubble up” the hierarchy.

For example, we might start out with a design in which only wooden crates can float in water. However, once our game designers see those cool floating crates, they begin to ask for other kinds of floating objects, like characters, bits of paper, vehicles and so on. Because “floating versus non-floating” was not one of the original classification criteria when the hierarchy was designed, the programmers quickly discover the need to add flotation to classes that are totally unrelated within the class hierarchy. Multiple inheritance is frowned upon, so the programmers decide to move the flotation code up the hierarchy, into a base class that is common to all objects that need to float. The fact that some of the classes that derive from this common base class *cannot float* is seen as less of a problem than duplicating the flotation code across multiple classes. (A Boolean member variable called something like `m_bCanFloat` might even be added to make the distinction clear.) The ultimate result is that flotation eventually becomes a feature of the root object in the class hierarchy (along with pretty much every other feature in the game).

The Actor class in Unreal is a classic example of this “bubble-up effect.” It contains data members and code for managing rendering, animation, physics, world interaction, audio effects, network replication for multiplayer games,

object creation and destruction, actor iteration (i.e., the ability to iterate over all actors meeting a certain criteria and perform some operation on them), and message broadcasting. Encapsulating the functionality of various engine subsystems is difficult when features are permitted to “bubble up” to the root-most classes in a monolithic class hierarchy.

#### 16.2.1.4 Using Composition to Simplify the Hierarchy

Perhaps the most prevalent cause of monolithic class hierarchies is over-use of the “is-a” relationship in object-oriented design. For example, in a game’s GUI, a programmer might decide to derive the class `Window` from a class called `Rectangle`, using the logic that GUI windows are always rectangular. However, a window *is not a* rectangle—it *has a* rectangle, which defines its boundary. So a more workable solution to this particular design problem is to embed an instance of the `Rectangle` class inside the `Window` class, or to give the `Window` a pointer or reference to a `Rectangle`.

In object-oriented design, the “has-a” relationship is known as *composition*. In composition, a class A either contains an *instance* of class B directly, or contains a *pointer* or *reference* to an instance of B. Strictly speaking, in order for the term “composition” to be applicable, class A must *own* class B. This means that when an instance of class A is created, it automatically creates an instance of class B as well; when that instance of A is destroyed, its instance of B is destroyed, too. We can also link classes to one another via a pointer or reference *without* having one of the classes manage the other’s lifetime. In that case, the technique is usually called *aggregation*.

#### Converting Is-A to Has-A

Converting “is-a” relationships into “has-a” relationships can be a useful technique for reducing the width, depth and complexity of a game’s class hierarchy. To illustrate, let’s take a look at the hypothetical monolithic hierarchy shown in Figure 16.7. The root `GameObject` class provides some basic functionality required by all game objects (e.g., RTTI, reflection, persistence via serialization, network replication, etc.). The `MovableObject` class represents any game object that has a *transform* (i.e., a position, orientation and optional scale). `RenderableObject` adds the ability to be rendered on-screen. (Not all game objects need to be rendered—for example, an invisible `TriggerRegion` class could be derived directly from `MovableObject`.) The `CollidableObject` class provides collision information to its instances. The `AnimatingObject` class grants to its instances the ability to be animated via a skeletal joint hierarchy. Finally, the `PhysicalObject` gives its instances the

ability to be physically simulated (e.g., a rigid body falling under the influence of gravity and bouncing around in the game world).

One big problem with this class hierarchy is that it limits our design choices when creating new types of game objects. If we want to define an object type that is physically simulated, we are forced to derive its class from `PhysicalObject` even though it may not require skeletal animation. If we want a game object class with collision, it must inherit from `CollidableObject` even though it may be invisible and hence not require the services of `RenderableObject`.

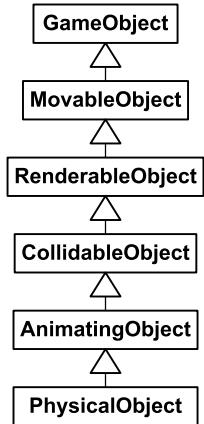


Figure 16.7. A hypothetical game object class hierarchy using only inheritance to associate the classes.

A second problem with the hierarchy shown in Figure 16.7 is that it is difficult to extend the functionality of the existing classes. For example, let's imagine we want to support morph target animation, so we derive two new classes from `AnimatingObject` called `SkeletalObject` and `MorphTargetObject`. If we wanted both of these new classes to have the ability to be physically simulated, we'd be forced to refactor `PhysicalObject` into two nearly identical classes, one derived from `SkeletalObject` and one from `MorphTargetObject`, or turn to multiple inheritance.

One solution to these problems is to isolate the various features of a `GameObject` into independent classes, each of which provides a single, well-defined service. Such classes are sometimes called *components* or *service objects*. A componentized design allows us to select only those features we need for each type of game object we create. In addition, it permits each feature to be maintained, extended or refactored without affecting the others. The individual components are also easier to understand, and easier to test, because they are decoupled from one another. Some component classes correspond directly to a single engine subsystem, such as rendering, animation, collision, physics, audio, etc. This allows these subsystems to remain distinct and well-encapsulated when they are integrated together for use by a particular game object.

Figure 16.8 shows how our class hierarchy might look after refactoring it into components. In this revised design, the `GameObject` class acts like a hub, containing pointers to each of the optional components we've defined. The `MeshInstance` component is our replacement for the `RenderableObject` class—it represents an instance of a triangle mesh and encapsulates the knowledge of how to render it. Likewise, the `AnimationController` component replaces `AnimatingObject`, exposing skeletal animation services to the `GameObject`. Class `Transform` replaces `MovableObject` by maintaining the position, orientation and scale of the object. The `RigidBody` class represents the collision geometry of a game object and provides its `GameObject` with an interface into the low-level collision and physics systems, replacing

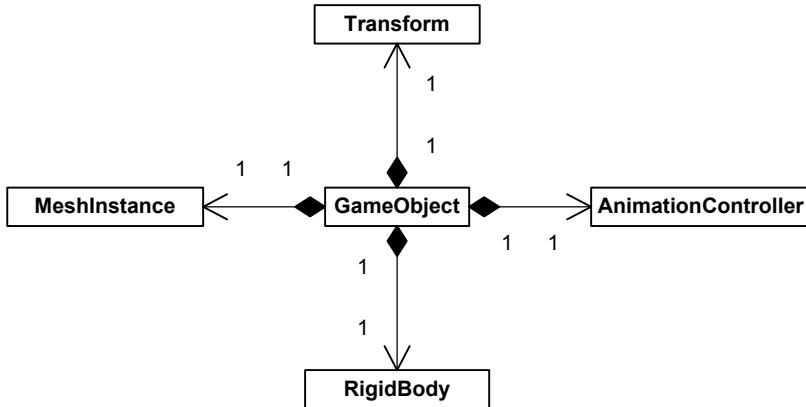


Figure 16.8. Our hypothetical game object class hierarchy, refactored to favor class composition over inheritance.

`CollidableObject` and `PhysicalObject`.

#### *Component Creation and Ownership*

In this kind of design, it is typical for the “hub” class to *own* its components, meaning that it manages their *lifetimes*. But how should a `GameObject` “know” which components to create? There are numerous ways to solve this problem, but one of the simplest is to provide the root `GameObject` class with pointers to all possible components. Each unique type of game object is defined as a derived class of `GameObject`. In the `GameObject` constructor, all of the component pointers are initially set to `nullptr`. Each derived class’s constructor is then free to create whatever components it may need. For convenience, the default `GameObject` destructor can clean up all of the components automatically. In this design, the hierarchy of classes derived from `GameObject` serves as the primary taxonomy for the kinds of objects we want in our game, and the component classes serve as optional add-on features.

One possible implementation of the component creation and destruction logic for this kind of hierarchy is shown below. However, it’s important to realize that this code is just an example—implementation details vary widely, even between engines that employ essentially the same kind of class hierarchy design.

```

class GameObject
{
protected:

```

```
// My transform (position, rotation, scale).
Transform           m_transform;

// Standard components:
MeshInstance*       m_pMeshInst;
AnimationController* m_pAnimController;
RigidBody*          m_pRigidBody;

public:
    GameObject()
{
    // Assume no components by default.
    // Derived classes will override.
    m_pMeshInst = nullptr;
    m_pAnimController = nullptr;
    m_pRigidBody = nullptr;
}

~GameObject()
{
    // Automatically delete any components created by
    // derived classes. (Deleting null pointers OK.)
    delete m_pMeshInst;
    delete m_pAnimController;
    delete m_pRigidBody;
}

// ...
};

class Vehicle : public GameObject
{
protected:
    // Add some more components specific to Vehicles...
    Chassis* m_pChassis;
    Engine*  m_pEngine;
    // ...

public:
    Vehicle()
{
    // Construct standard GameObject components.
    m_pMeshInst = new MeshInstance;
    m_pRigidBody = new RigidBody;

    // NOTE: We'll assume the animation controller
    // must be provided with a reference to the mesh
```

```
// instance so that it can provide it with a
// matrix palette.
m_pAnimController
    = new AnimationController(*m_pMeshInst);

// Construct vehicle-specific components.
m_pChassis = new Chassis(*this,
                         *m_pAnimController);

m_pEngine = new Engine(*this);
}

~Vehicle()
{
    // Only need to destroy vehicle-specific
    // components, as GameObject cleans up the
    // standard components for us.
    delete m_pChassis;
    delete m_pEngine;
}
};
```

#### 16.2.1.5 Generic Components

Another more flexible (but also trickier to implement) alternative is to provide the root game object class with a generic linked list of components. The components in such a design usually all derive from a common base class—this allows us to iterate over the linked list and perform polymorphic operations, such as asking each component what type it is or passing an event to each component in turn for possible handling. This design allows the root game object class to be largely oblivious to the component types that are available and thereby permits new types of components to be created without modifying the game object class in many cases. It also allows a particular game object to contain an arbitrary number of instances of each type of component. (The hard-coded design permits only a fixed number, determined by how many pointers to each component exist within the game object class.)

This kind of design is illustrated in Figure 16.9. It is trickier to implement than a hard-coded component model because the game object code must be written in a totally generic way. The component classes can likewise make no assumptions about what other components might or might not exist within the context of a particular game object. The choice between hard-coding the component pointers or using a generic linked list of components is not an easy one to make. Neither design is clearly superior—they each have their pros and cons, and different game teams take different approaches.

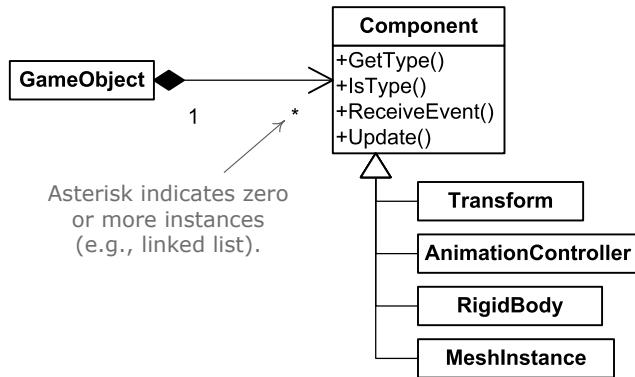


Figure 16.9. A linked list of components can provide flexibility by allowing the hub game object to be unaware of the details of any particular component.

#### 16.2.1.6 Pure Component Models

What would happen if we were to take the componentization concept to its extreme? We would move literally *all* of the functionality out of our root `GameObject` class into various component classes. At this point, the game object class would quite literally be a behavior-less container, with a unique id and a bunch of pointers to its components, but otherwise containing no logic of its own. So why not eliminate the class entirely? One way to do this is to give each component a copy of the game object's unique id. The components are now linked together into a logical grouping by id. Given a way to quickly look up any component by id, we would no longer need the `GameObject` "hub" class at all. I will use the term *pure component model* to describe this kind of architecture. It is illustrated in Figure 16.10.

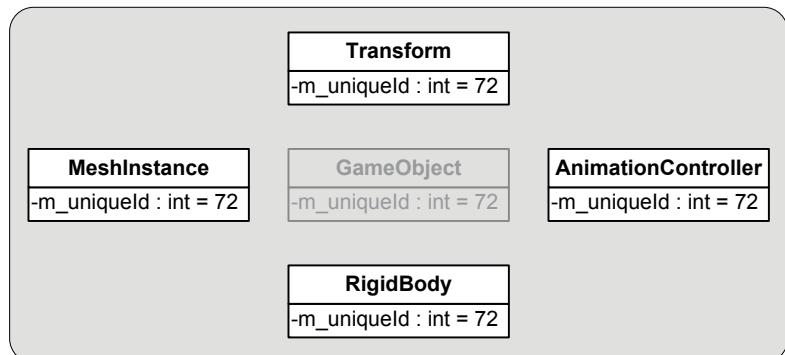


Figure 16.10. In a pure component model, a logical game object is comprised of many components, but the components are linked together only indirectly, by sharing a unique id.

A pure component model is not quite as simple as it first sounds, and it is not without its share of problems. For one thing, we still need some way of defining the various concrete types of game objects our game needs and then arranging for the correct component classes to be instantiated whenever an instance of the type is created. Our `GameObject` hierarchy used to handle construction of components for us. Instead, we might use a factory pattern, in which we define factory classes, one per game object type, with a virtual construction function that is overridden to create the proper components for each game object type. Or we might turn to a data-driven model, where the game object types are defined in a text file that can be parsed by the engine and consulted whenever a type is instantiated.

Another issue with a components-only design is inter-component communication. Our central `GameObject` acted as a “hub,” marshalling communications between the various components. In pure component architectures, we need an efficient way for the components making up a single game object to talk to one another. This could be done by having each component look up the other components using the game object’s unique id. However, we probably want a much more efficient mechanism—for example the components could be prewired into a circular linked list.

In the same sense, sending messages from one game object to another is difficult in a pure componentized model. We can no longer communicate with the `GameObject` instance, so we either need to know *a priori* with which component we wish to communicate, or we must multicast to all components that make up the game object in question. Neither option is ideal.

Pure component models can and have been made to work on real game projects. These kinds of models have their pros and cons, but again, they are not clearly better than any of the alternative designs. Unless you’re part of a research and development effort, you should probably choose the architecture with which you are most comfortable and confident, and which best fits the needs of the particular game you are building.

### 16.2.2 Property-Centric Architectures

Programmers who work frequently in an object-oriented programming language tend to think naturally in terms of objects that contain attributes (data members) and behaviors (methods, member functions). This is the *object-centric view*:

- Object1
  - Position = (0, 3, 15)
  - Orientation = (0, 43, 0)

- Object2
  - Position =  $(-12, 0, 8)$
  - Health = 15
- Object3
  - Orientation =  $(0, -87, 10)$

However, it is possible to think primarily in terms of the attributes, rather than the objects. We define the set of all properties that a game object might have. Then for each property, we build a table containing the values of that property corresponding to each game object that has it. The property values are keyed by the objects' unique ids. This is what we will call the *property-centric view*:

- Position
  - Object1 =  $(0, 3, 15)$
  - Object2 =  $(-12, 0, 8)$
- Orientation
  - Object1 =  $(0, 43, 0)$
  - Object3 =  $(0, -87, 10)$
- Health
  - Object2 = 15

Property-centric object models have been used very successfully on many commercial games, including *Deus Ex 2* and the *Thief* series of games. See Section 16.2.2.5 for more details on exactly how these projects designed their object systems.

A property-centric design is more akin to a relational database than an object model. Each attribute acts like a table in a relational database, with the game objects' unique id as the *primary key*. Of course, in object-oriented design, an object is defined not only by its *attributes*, but also by its *behavior*. If all we have are tables of properties, then where do we implement the behavior? The answer to this question varies somewhat from engine to engine, but most often the behaviors are implemented in one or both of the following places:

- in the properties themselves, and/or
- via script code.

Let's explore each of these ideas further.

### 16.2.2.1 Implementing Behavior via Property Classes

Each type of property can be implemented as a *property class*. Properties can be as simple as a single Boolean or floating-point value or as complex as a renderable triangle mesh or an AI “brain.” Each property class can provide behaviors via its hard-coded methods (member functions). The overall behavior of a particular game object is determined by the aggregation of the behaviors of all its properties.

For example, if a game object contains an instance of the `Health` property, it can be damaged and eventually destroyed or killed. The `Health` object can respond to any attacks made on the game object by decrementing the object’s health level appropriately. A property object can also communicate with other property objects within the same game object to produce cooperative behaviors. For example, when the `Health` property detects and responds to an attack, it could possibly send a message to the `AnimatedSkeleton` property, thereby allowing the game object to play a suitable hit reaction animation. Similarly, when the `Health` property detects that the game object is about to die or be destroyed, it can talk to the `RigidBodyDynamics` property to activate a physics-driven explosion or a “rag doll” dead body simulation.

### 16.2.2.2 Implementing Behavior via Script

Another option is to store the property values as raw data in one or more database-like tables and use script code to implement a game object’s behaviors. Every game object could have a special property called something like `ScriptId`, which, if present, specifies the block of script code (script function, or script object if the scripting language is itself object-oriented) that will manage the object’s behavior. Script code could also be used to allow a game object to respond to events that occur within the game world. See Section 16.8 for more details on event systems and Section 16.9 for a discussion of game scripting languages.

In some property-centric engines, a core set of hard-coded property classes is provided by the engineers, but a facility is provided allowing game designers and programmers to implement new property types entirely in script. This approach was used successfully on the *Dungeon Siege* project, for example.

### 16.2.2.3 Properties versus Components

It’s important to note that many of the authors cited in Section 16.2.2.5 use the term “component” to refer to what I call a “property object” here. In Section 16.2.1.4, I used the term “component” to refer to a subobject in an object-centric design, which isn’t quite the same as a property object.

However, property objects are very closely related to components in many ways. In both designs, a single logical game object is made up of multiple subobjects. The main distinction lies in the roles of the subobjects. In a property-centric design, each subobject defines a particular attribute of the game object itself (e.g., health, visual representation, inventory, a particular magic power, etc.), whereas in a component-based (object-centric) design, the subobjects often represent linkages to particular low-level engine subsystems (renderer, animation, collision and dynamics, etc.) This distinction is so subtle as to be virtually irrelevant in many cases. You can call your design a *pure component model* (Section 16.2.1.6) or a *property-centric design* as you see fit, but at the end of the day, you'll have essentially the same result—a logical game object that is comprised of, and derives its behavior from, a collection of subobjects.

#### 16.2.2.4 Pros and Cons of Property-Centric Designs

There are a number of potential benefits to an attribute-centric approach. It tends to be more memory-efficient, because we need only store attribute data that is actually in use (i.e., there are never game objects with unused data members). It is also easier to construct such a model in a data-driven manner—designers can define new attributes easily, without recompiling the game, because there are no game object class definitions to be changed. Programmers need only get involved when entirely new types of properties need to be added (presuming the property cannot be added via script).

A property-centric design can also be more cache-friendly than an object-centric model, because data of the same type is stored *contiguously* in memory. This is a commonplace optimization technique on modern gaming hardware, where the cost of accessing memory is far higher than the cost of executing instructions and performing calculations. (For example, on the PlayStation 3, the cost of a single cache miss is equivalent to the cost of executing literally thousands of CPU instructions.) By storing data contiguously in RAM, we can reduce or eliminate cache misses, because when we access one element of a data array, a large number of its neighboring elements are loaded into the same cache line. This approach to data design is sometimes called the *struct of arrays* technique, in contrast to the more-traditional *array of structs* approach. The differences between these two memory layouts are illustrated by the code snippet below. (Note that we wouldn't really implement a game object model in exactly this way—this example is meant only to illustrate the way in which a property-centric design tends to produce many contiguous arrays of like-typed data, rather than a single array of complex objects.)

```
static const U32 MAX_GAME_OBJECTS = 1024;
```

```
// Traditional array-of-structs approach.

struct GameObject
{
    U32      m_uniqueId;
    Vector    m_pos;
    Quaternion m_rot;
    float     m_health;

    // ...
};

GameObject g_aAllGameObjects[MAX_GAME_OBJECTS];

// Cache-friendlier struct-of-arrays approach.

struct AllGameObjects
{
    U32      m_aUniqueId[MAX_GAME_OBJECTS];
    Vector    m_aPos[MAX_GAME_OBJECTS];
    Quaternion m_aRot[MAX_GAME_OBJECTS];
    float     m_aHealth[MAX_GAME_OBJECTS];

    // ...
};

AllGameObjects g_allGameObjects;
```

Attribute-centric models have their share of problems as well. For example, when a game object is just a grab bag of properties, it becomes much more difficult to enforce relationships between those properties. It can be hard to implement a desired large-scale behavior merely by cobbling together the fine-grained behaviors of a group of property objects. It's also much trickier to debug such systems, as the programmer cannot slap a game object into the watch window in the debugger in order to inspect all of its properties at once.

#### 16.2.2.5 Further Reading

A number of interesting PowerPoint presentations on the topic of property-centric architectures have been given by prominent engineers in the game industry at various game development conferences.

- Rob Fermier, “Creating a Data Driven Engine,” Game Developer’s Conference, 2002.
- Scott Bilas, “A Data-Driven Game Object System,” Game Developer’s Conference, 2002.

- Alex Duran, “Building Object Systems: Features, Tradeoffs, and Pitfalls,” Game Developer’s Conference, 2003.
- Jeremy Chatelaine, “Enabling Data Driven Tuning via Existing Tools,” Game Developer’s Conference, 2003.
- Doug Church, “Object Systems,” presented at a game development conference in Seoul, Korea, 2003; conference organized by Chris Hecker, Casey Muratori, Jon Blow and Doug Church. <http://chrishecker.com/images/6/6f/ObjSys.ppt>.

### 16.3 World Chunk Data Formats

As we’ve seen, a world chunk generally contains both *static* and *dynamic* world elements. The static geometry might be represented by one big triangle mesh, or it might be comprised of many smaller meshes. Each mesh might be *instanced* multiple times—for example, a single door mesh might be reused for all of the doorways in the chunk. The static data usually includes collision information stored as a triangle soup, a collection of convex shapes and/or other simpler geometric shapes like planes, boxes, capsules or spheres. Other static elements include volumetric *regions* that can be used to detect events or delineate areas within the game world, an AI *navigation mesh*, a set of line segments delineating *edges* within the background geometry that can be grabbed by the player character and so on. We won’t get into the details of these data formats here, because we’ve already discussed most of them in previous sections.

The dynamic portion of the world chunk contains some kind of representation of the game objects within that chunk. A game object is defined by its *attributes* and its *behaviors*, and an object’s behaviors are determined either directly or indirectly by its *type*. In an object-centric design, the object’s type directly determines which class(es) to instantiate in order to represent the object at runtime. In a property-centric design, a game object’s behavior is determined by the amalgamation of the behaviors of its properties, but the type still determines which properties the object should have (or one might say that an object’s properties define its type). So, for each game object, a world chunk data file generally contains:

- *The initial values of the objects’ attributes.* The world chunk defines the state of each game object as it should exist when first spawned into the game world. An object’s attribute data can be stored in a number of different formats. We’ll explore a few popular formats below.

- *Some kind of specification of the object's type.* In an object-centric engine, this might be a string, a hashed string id or some other unique type id. In a property-centric design, the type might be stored explicitly, or it might be defined implicitly by the collection of properties/attributes of which the object is comprised.

### 16.3.1 Binary Object Images

One way to store a collection of game objects into a disk file is to write a binary image of each object into the file, exactly as it looks in memory at runtime. This makes spawning game objects trivial. Once the game world chunk has been loaded into memory, we have ready-made images of all our objects, so we simply let them fly.

Well, not quite. Storing binary images of “live” C++ class instances is problematic for a number of reasons, including the need to handle *pointers* and *virtual tables* in a special way, and the possibility of having to *endian-swap* the data within each class instance. (These techniques are described in detail in Section 7.2.2.9.) Moreover, binary object images are inflexible and not robust to making changes. Gameplay is one of the most dynamic and unstable aspects of any game project, so it is wise to select a data format that supports rapid development and is robust to frequent changes. As such, the binary object image format is not usually a good choice for storing game object data (although this format can be suitable for more stable data structures, like mesh data or collision geometry).

### 16.3.2 Serialized Game Object Descriptions

*Serialization* is another means of storing a representation of a game object’s internal state to a disk file. This approach tends to be more portable and simpler to implement than the binary object image technique. To serialize an object out to disk, the object is asked to produce a stream of data that contains enough detail to permit the original object to be reconstructed later. When an object is serialized back into memory from disk, an instance of the appropriate class is created, and then the stream of attribute data is read in order to initialize the new object’s internal state. If the original serialized data stream was complete, the new object should be identical to the original for all intents and purposes.

Serialization is supported natively by some programming languages. For example, C# and Java both provide standardized mechanisms for serializing object instances to and from an XML text format. The C++ language unfortunately does not provide a standardized serialization facility. However, many C++ serialization systems have been successfully built, both inside and out-

side the game industry. We won't get into all the details of how to write a C++ object serialization system here, but we'll describe the data format and a few of the main systems that need to be written in order to get serialization to work in C++.

Serialization data isn't a binary image of the object. Instead, it is usually stored in a more-convenient and more-portable format. XML is a popular format for object serialization because it is well-supported and standardized, it is somewhat human-readable and it has excellent support for hierarchical data structures, which arise frequently when serializing collections of interrelated game objects. Unfortunately, XML is notoriously slow to parse, which can increase world chunk load times. For this reason, some game engines use a proprietary binary format that is faster to parse and more compact than XML text.

Many game engines (and non-game object serialization systems) have turned to the text-based JSON data format (<http://www.json.org>) as an alternative to XML. JSON is also used ubiquitously for data communication over the World Wide Web. For example, the Facebook API communicates exclusively using JSON.

The mechanics of serializing an object to and from disk are usually implemented in one of two basic ways:

- We can introduce a pair of virtual functions called something like `SerializeOut()` and `SerializeIn()` in our base class and arrange for each derived class to provide custom implementations of them that "know" how to serialize the attributes of that particular class.
- We can implement a *reflection* system for our C++ classes. We can then write a generic system that can automatically serialize any C++ object for which reflection information is available.

*Reflection* is a term used by the C# language, among others. In a nutshell, reflection data is a runtime description of the contents of a class. It stores information about the name of the class, what data members it contains, the types of each data member and the offset of each member within the object's memory image, and it also contains information about all of the class's member functions. Given reflection information for an arbitrary C++ class, we could quite easily write a general-purpose object serialization system.

The tricky part of a C++ reflection system is generating the reflection data for all of the relevant classes. This can be done by encapsulating a class's data members in `#define` macros that extract relevant reflection information by providing a virtual function that can be overridden by each derived class in

order to return appropriate reflection data for that class, by hand-coding a reflection data structure for each class, or via some other inventive approach.

In addition to attribute information, the serialization data stream invariably includes the name or unique id of each object's *class* or *type*. The class id is used to instantiate the appropriate class when the object is serialized into memory from disk. A class id can be stored as a string, a hashed string id, or some other kind of unique id.

Unfortunately, C++ provides no way to instantiate a class given only its name as a string or id. The class name must be known at compile time, and so it must be hard-coded by a programmer (e.g., `new ConcreteClass`). To work around this limitation of the language, C++ object serialization systems invariably include a *class factory* of some kind. A factory can be implemented in any number of ways, but the simplest approach is to create a data table that maps each class name/id to some kind of function or functor object that has been hard-coded to instantiate that particular class. Given a class name or id, we simply look up the corresponding function or functor in the table and call it to instantiate the class.

### 16.3.3 Spawners and Type Schemas

Both binary object images and serialization formats have an Achilles heel. They are both defined by the runtime implementation of the game object types they store, and hence they both require the world editor to contain intimate knowledge of the game engine's runtime implementation. For example, in order for the world editor to write out a binary image of a heterogeneous collection of game objects, it must either link directly with the runtime game engine code, or it must be painstakingly hand-coded to produce blocks of bytes that exactly match the data layout of the game objects at runtime. Serialization data is less-tightly coupled to the game object's implementation, but again, the world editor either needs to link with runtime game object code in order to gain access to the classes' `SerializeIn()` and `SerializeOut()` functions, or it needs access to the classes' reflection information in some way.

The coupling between the game world editor and the runtime engine code can be broken by abstracting the descriptions of our game objects in an implementation-independent way. For each game object in a world chunk data file, we store a little block of data, often called a *spawner*. A spawner is a lightweight, data-only representation of a game object that can be used to instantiate and initialize that game object at runtime. It contains the id of the game object's tool-side *type*. It also contains a table of simple key-value pairs that describe the initial attributes of the game object. These attributes

often include a model-to-world transform, since most game objects have a distinct position, orientation and scale in world space. When the game object is spawned, the appropriate class or classes are instantiated, as determined by the spawner's type. These runtime objects can then consult the dictionary of key-value pairs in order to initialize their data members appropriately.

A spawner can be configured to spawn its game object immediately upon being loaded, or it can lie dormant until asked to spawn at some later time during the game. Spawners can be implemented as first-class objects, so they can have a convenient functional interface and can store useful metadata in addition to object attributes. A spawner can even be used for purposes other than spawning game objects. For example, in the Naughty Dog engine, designers used spawners to define important points or coordinate axes in the game world. These were called *position spawners* or *locator spawners*. Locators have many uses in a game, such as:

- defining points of interest for an AI character,
- defining a set of coordinate axes relative to which a set of animations can be played in perfect synchronization,
- defining the location at which a particle effect or audio effect should originate,
- defining waypoints along a race track,

and the list goes on.

#### 16.3.3.1 Object Type Schemas

A game object's attributes and behaviors are defined by its type. In a game world editor that employs a spawner-based design, a game object type can be represented by a data-driven *schema* that defines the collection of attributes that should be visible to the user when creating or editing an object of that type. At runtime, the tool-side object type can be mapped in either a hard-coded or data-driven way to a class or collection of classes that must be instantiated in order to spawn a game object of the given type.

Type schemas can be stored in a simple text file for consumption by the world editor and for inspection and editing by its users. For example, a schema file might look something like this:

```
enum LightType
{
    Ambient, Directional, Point, Spot
}
```

```
type Light
{
    String      UniqueId;
    LightType   Type;
    Vector      Pos;
    Quaternion  Rot;
    Float       Intensity : min(0.0), max(1.0);
    ColorARGB   DiffuseColor;
    ColorARGB   SpecularColor;
    // ...
}

type Vehicle
{
    String      UniqueId;
    Vector      Pos;
    Quaternion  Rot;
    MeshReference Mesh;
    Int         NumWheels : min(2), max(4);
    Float       TurnRadius;
    Float       TopSpeed : min(0.0);
    // ...
}

//...
```

The above example brings a few important details to light. You'll notice that the *data types* of each attribute are defined, in addition to their names. These can be simple types like strings, integers and floating-point values, or they can be specialized types like vectors, quaternions, ARGB colors, or references to special asset types like meshes, collision data and so on. In this example, we've even provided a mechanism for defining enumerated types, like `LightType`. Another subtle point is that the object type schema provides additional information to the world editor, such as what type of GUI element to use when editing the attribute. Sometimes an attribute's GUI requirements are implied by its data type—strings are generally edited with a text field, Booleans via a check box, vectors via three text fields for the *x*-, *y*- and *z*-coordinates or perhaps via a specialized GUI element designed for manipulating vectors in 3D. The schema can also specify meta-information for use by the GUI, such as minimum and maximum allowable values for integer and floating-point attributes, lists of available choices for drop-down combo boxes and so on.

Some game engines permit object type schemas to be inherited, much like

classes. For example, every game object needs to know its *type* and must have a *unique id* so that it can be distinguished from all the other game objects at runtime. These attributes could be specified in a top-level schema, from which all other schemas are derived.

### 16.3.3.2 Default Attribute Values

As you can well imagine, the number of attributes in a typical game object schema can grow quite large. This translates into a lot of data that must be specified by the game designer for each instance of each game object type he or she places into the game world. It can be extremely helpful to define *default values* in the schema for many of the attributes. This permits game designers to place “vanilla” instances of a game object type with little effort but still permits him or her to fine-tune the attribute values on specific instances as needed.

One inherent problem with default values arises when the default value of a particular attribute changes. For example, our game designers might have originally wanted Orcs to have 20 hit points. After many months of production, the designers might decide that Orcs should be more powerful and have 30 hit points by default. Any new Orcs placed into a game world will now have 30 hit points unless otherwise specified. But what about all the Orcs that were placed into game world chunks prior to the change? Do we need to find all of these previously created Orcs and manually change their hit points to 30?

Ideally, we’d like to design our spawner system so that changes in default values automatically propagate to all preexisting instances that have not had their default values overridden explicitly. One easy way to implement this feature is to simply omit key-value pairs for attributes whose value does not differ from the default value. Whenever an attribute is missing from the spawner, the appropriate default can be used. (This presumes that the game engine has access to the object type schema file, so that it can read in the attributes’ default values. Either that or the tool can do it—in which case, propagating new default values requires a simple rebuild of all world chunk(s) affected by the change.) In our example, most of the preexisting Orc spawners would have had no `HitPoints` key-value pair at all (unless of course one of the spawner’s hit points had been changed from the default value manually). So when the default value changes from 20 to 30, these Orcs will automatically use the new value.

Some engines allow default values to be overridden in derived object types. For example, the schema for a type called `Vehicle` might define a default `TopSpeed` of 80 miles per hour. A derived `Motorcycle` type schema could override this `TopSpeed` to be 100 miles per hour.

### 16.3.3.3 Some Benefits of Spawners and Type Schemas

The key benefits of separating the spawner from the implementation of the game object are *simplicity*, *flexibility* and *robustness*. From a data management point of view, it is much simpler to deal with a table of key-value pairs than it is to manage a binary object image with pointer fix-ups or a custom serialized object format. The key-value pairs approach also makes the data format extremely flexible and robust to changes. If a game object encounters key-value pairs that it is not expecting to see, it can simply ignore them. Likewise, if the game object is unable to find a key-value pair that it needs, it has the option of using a default value instead. This makes a key-value pair data format extremely robust to changes made by both the designers and the programmers.

Spawners also simplify the design and implementation of the game world editor, because it only needs to know how to manage lists of key-value pairs and object type schemas. It doesn't need to share code with the runtime game engine in any way, and it is only very loosely coupled to the engine's implementation details.

Spawners and archetypes give game designers and programmers a great deal of flexibility and power. Designers can define new game object type schemas within the world editor with little or no programmer intervention. The programmer can implement the runtime implementation of these new object types whenever his or her schedule allows it. The programmer does not need to immediately provide an implementation of each new object type as it is added in order to avoid breaking the game. New object data can exist safely in the world chunk files with or without a runtime implementation, and runtime implementations can exist with or without corresponding data in the world chunk file.

## 16.4 Loading and Streaming Game Worlds

To bridge the gap between the offline world editor and our runtime game object model, we need a way to load world chunks into memory and unload them when they are no longer needed. The game world loading system has two main responsibilities: to manage the file I/O necessary to load game world chunks and other needed assets from disk into memory and to manage the allocation and deallocation of memory for these resources. The engine also needs to manage the *spawning* and *destruction* of game objects as they come and go in the game, both in terms of allocating and deallocating memory for the objects and ensuring that the proper classes are instantiated for each game object. In the following sections, we'll investigate how game worlds

are loaded and also have a look at how object spawning systems typically work.

#### 16.4.1 Simple Level Loading

The most straightforward game world loading approach, and the one used by all of the earliest games, is to allow one and only one game world chunk (a.k.a. level) to be loaded at a time. When the game is first started, and between pairs of levels, the player sees a static or simply animated two-dimensional loading screen while he or she waits for the level to load.

Memory management in this kind of design is quite straightforward. As we mentioned in Section 7.2.2.7, a stack-based allocator is very well-suited to a one-level-at-a-time world loading design. When the game first runs, any resource data that is required across all game levels is loaded at the bottom of the stack. We'll call these *load and stay resident* assets (LSR) for the purposes of this discussion. The location of the stack pointer is recorded after the LSR assets have been fully loaded. Each game world chunk, along with its associated mesh, texture, audio, animation and other resource data, is loaded on top of the LSR assets on the stack. When the level has been completed by the player, all of its memory can be freed by simply resetting the stack pointer to the top of the LSR asset block. At this point, a new level can be loaded in its place. This is illustrated in Figure 16.11.

While this design is very simple, it has a number of drawbacks. For one thing, the player only sees the game world in discrete chunks—there is no way to implement a vast, contiguous, seamless world using this technique. Another problem is that during the time the level's resource data is being loaded, there is no game world in memory. So, the player is forced to watch a two-dimensional loading screen of some sort.

#### 16.4.2 Toward Seamless Loading: Air Locks

The best way to avoid boring level-loading screens is to permit the player to continue playing the game while the next world chunk and its associated resource data are being loaded. One simple approach would be to divide the memory that we've set aside for game world assets into two equally sized blocks. We could load level A into one memory block, allow the player to start playing level A and then load level B into the other block using a streaming file I/O library (i.e., the loading code would run in a separate thread). The big problem with this technique is that it cuts the size of each level in half relative to what would be possible with a one-level-at-a-time approach.

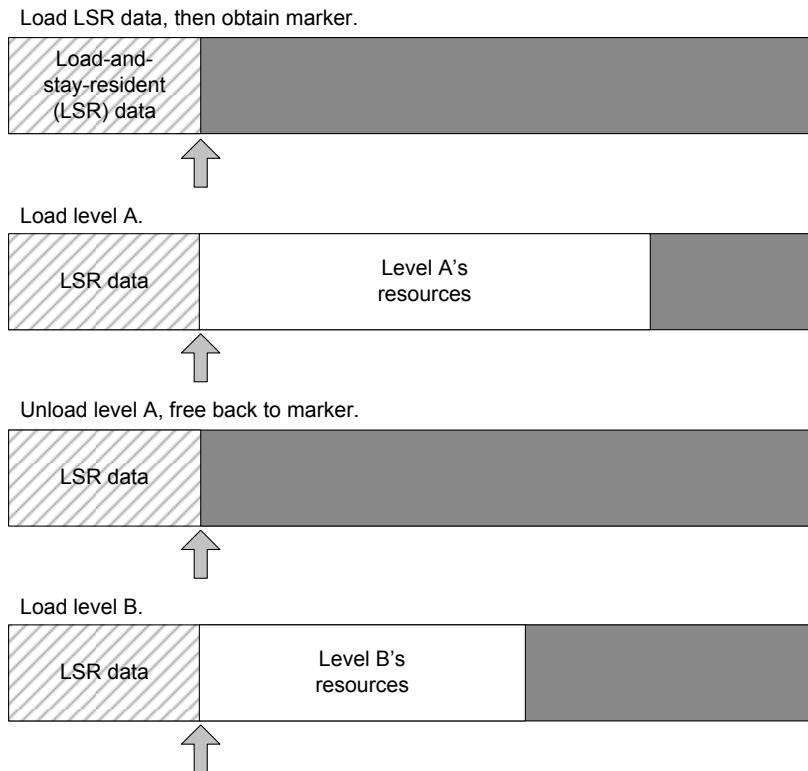


Figure I6.11. A stack-based memory allocator is extremely well-suited to a one-level-at-a-time world loading system.

We can achieve a similar effect by dividing the game world memory into two unequally sized blocks—a large block that can contain a “full” game world chunk and a small block that is only large enough to contain a tiny world chunk. The small chunk is sometimes known as an “air lock.”

When the game starts, a “full” chunk and an “air lock” chunk are loaded. The player progresses through the full chunk and into the air lock, at which point some kind of gate or other impediment ensures that the player can neither see the previous full world area nor return to it. The full chunk can then be un-loaded, and a new full-sized world chunk can be loaded. During the load, the player is kept busy doing some task within the air lock. The task might be as simple as walking from one end of a hallway to the other, or it could be something more engaging, like solving a puzzle or fighting some enemies.

Asynchronous file I/O is what enables the full world chunk to be loaded while the player is simultaneously playing in the air lock region. See Section 7.1.3 for more details. It's important to note that an air lock system does *not* free us from displaying a loading screen whenever a new game is started, because during the initial load there is no game world in memory in which to play. However, once the player is in the game world, he or she needn't see a loading screen ever again, thanks to air locks and asynchronous data loading.

*Halo* for the Xbox used a technique similar to this. The large world areas were invariably connected by smaller, more confined areas. As you play *Halo*, watch for confined areas that prevent you from back-tracking—you'll find one roughly every 5–10 minutes of gameplay. *Jak 2* for the PlayStation 2 used the air lock technique as well. The game world was structured as a hub area (the main city) with a number of offshoot areas, each of which was connected to the hub via a small, confined air lock region.

#### 16.4.3 Game World Streaming

Many game designs call for the player to feel like he or she is playing in a huge, contiguous, seamless world. Ideally, the player should not be confined to small air lock regions periodically—it would be best if the world simply unfolded in front of the player as naturally and believably as possible.

Modern game engines support this kind of seamless world by using a technique known as *streaming*. World streaming can be accomplished in various ways. The main goals are always (a) to load data while the player is engaged in regular gameplay tasks and (b) to manage the memory in such a way as to eliminate *fragmentation* while permitting data to be loaded and unloaded as needed as the player progresses through the game world.

Recent consoles and PCs have a lot more memory than their predecessors, so it is now possible to keep multiple world chunks in memory simultaneously. We could imagine dividing our memory space into, say, three equally sized buffers. At first, we load world chunks A, B and C into these three buffers and allow the player to start playing through chunk A. When he or she enters chunk B and is far enough along that chunk A can no longer be seen, we can unload chunk A and start loading a new chunk D into the first buffer. When B can no longer be seen, it can be dumped and chunk E loaded. This recycling of buffers can continue until the player has reached the end of the contiguous game world.

The problem with a coarse-grained approach to world streaming is that it places onerous restrictions on the size of a world chunk. All chunks in the entire game must be roughly the same size—large enough to fill up the majority of one of our three memory buffers but never any larger.

One way around this problem is to employ a much finer-grained subdivision of memory. Rather than streaming relatively large chunks of the world, we can divide every game asset, from game world chunks to foreground meshes to textures to animation banks, into equally sized blocks of data. We can then use a chunky, pool-based memory allocation system like the one described in Section 7.2.2.7 to load and unload resource data as needed without having to worry about memory fragmentation. This is essentially the technique employed by Naughty Dog’s engine. (Although Naughty Dog’s implementation also employs some sophisticated techniques for making use of what would otherwise be unused space at the ends of under-full chunks.)

#### 16.4.3.1 Determining Which Resources to Load

One question that arises when using a fine-grained chunky memory allocator for world streaming is how the engine will know what resources to load at any given moment during gameplay. In the Naughty Dog engine, we use a relatively simple system of *level load regions* to control the loading and unloading of assets.

All of the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* games are set in multiple, geographically distinct, contiguous game worlds. For example, *Uncharted: Drake’s Fortune* takes place in a jungle and on an island. Each of these worlds exists in a single, consistent world space, but they are divided up into numerous geographically adjacent chunks. A simple convex volume known as a *region* encompasses each of the chunks; the regions overlap each other somewhat. Each region contains a list of the world chunks that should be in memory when the player is in that region.

At any given moment, the player is within one or more of these regions. To determine the set of world chunks that should be in memory, we simply take the *union* of the chunk lists from each of the regions enclosing the Nathan Drake character. The level loading system periodically checks this master chunk list and compares it against the set of world chunks that are currently in memory. If a chunk disappears from the master list, it is unloaded, thereby freeing up all of the allocation blocks it occupied. If a new chunk appears in the list, it is loaded into any free allocation blocks that can be found. The level load regions and world chunks are designed in such a way as to ensure that the player never sees a chunk disappear when it is unloaded and that there’s enough time between the moment at which a chunk starts loading and the moment its contents are first seen by the player to permit the chunk to be fully streamed into memory. This technique is illustrated in Figure 16.12.

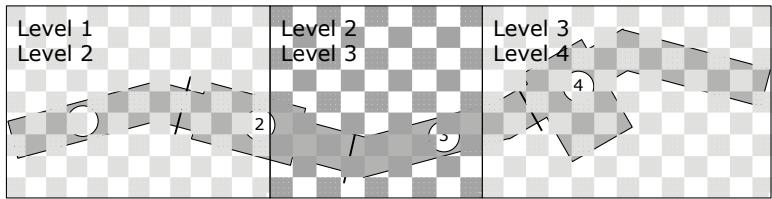


Figure 16.12. A game world divided into chunks. Level load regions, each with a requested chunk list, are arranged in such a way as to guarantee that the player never sees a chunk pop in or out of view.

#### 16.4.3.2 PlayGo on the PlayStation 4

The PlayStation 4 includes a new feature called PlayGo that makes the process of downloading a game (as opposed to buying it on Blu-ray) a lot less painful than it has traditionally been. PlayGo works by downloading only the minimum subset of data required in order to play the first section of the game. The PS4 downloads the rest of the game's content in the background, while the player continues to experience the game without interruption. In order for this to work well, the game must of course support seamless level streaming, as we've described above.

#### 16.4.4 Memory Management for Object Spawning

Once a game world has been loaded into memory, we need to manage the process of *spawning* the dynamic game objects in the world. Most game engines have some kind of game object spawning system that manages the instantiation of the class or classes that make up each game object and handles destruction of game objects when they are no longer needed. One of the central jobs of any object spawning system is to manage the dynamic allocation of memory for newly spawned game objects. Dynamic allocation can be slow, so steps must be taken to ensure allocations are as efficient as possible. And because game objects come in a wide variety of sizes, dynamically allocating them can cause memory to become fragmented, leading to premature out-of-memory conditions. There are a number of different approaches to game object memory management. We'll explore a few common ones in the following sections.

##### 16.4.4.1 OffLine Memory Allocation for Object Spawning

Some game engines solve the problems of allocation speed and memory fragmentation in a rather draconian way, by simply disallowing dynamic memory allocation during gameplay altogether. Such engines permit game world

chunks to be loaded and unloaded dynamically, but they spawn in all dynamic game objects immediately upon loading a chunk. Thereafter, no game objects can be created or destroyed. You can think of this technique as obeying a “law of conservation of game objects.” No game objects are created or destroyed once a world chunk has been loaded.

This technique avoids memory fragmentation because the memory requirements of all the game objects in a world chunk are (a) known *a priori* and (b) bounded. This means that the memory for the game objects can be allocated offline by the world editor and included as part of the world chunk data itself. All game objects are therefore allocated out of the same memory used to load the game world and its resources, and they are no more prone to fragmentation than any other loaded resource data. This approach also has the benefit of making the game’s memory usage patterns highly predictable. There’s no chance that a large group of game objects is going to spawn into the world unexpectedly, and cause the game to run out of memory.

On the downside, this approach can be quite limiting for game designers. Dynamic object spawning can be simulated by allocating a game object in the world editor but instructing it to be invisible and dormant when the world is first loaded. Later, the object can “spawn” by simply activating itself and making itself visible. But the game designers have to predict the total number of game objects of each type that they’ll need when the game world is first created in the world editor. If they want to provide the player with an infinite supply of health packs, weapons, enemies or some other kind of game object, they either need to work out a way to recycle their game objects, or they’re out of luck.

#### 16.4.4.2 Dynamic Memory Management for Object Spawning

Game designers would probably prefer to work with a game engine that supports true dynamic object spawning. Although this is more difficult to implement than a static game object spawning approach, it can be implemented in a number of different ways.

Again, the primary problem is memory fragmentation. Because different types of game objects (and sometimes even different instances of the same type of object) occupy different amounts of memory, we cannot use our favorite fragmentation-free allocator—the pool allocator. And because game objects are generally destroyed in a different order than that in which they were spawned, we cannot use a stack-based allocator either. Our only choice appears to be a fragmentation-prone heap allocator. Thankfully, there are many ways to deal with the fragmentation problem. We’ll investigate a few common ones in the following sections.

### *One Memory Pool per Object Type*

If the individual instances of each game object type are all guaranteed to occupy the same amount of memory, we could consider using a separate memory pool for each object type. Actually, we only need one pool per *unique game object size*, so object types of the same size can share a single pool.

Doing this allows us to completely avoid memory fragmentation, but one limitation of this approach is that we need to maintain lots of separate pools. We also need to make educated guesses about how many of each type of object we'll need. If a pool has too many elements, we end up wasting memory; if it has too few, we won't be able to satisfy all of the spawn requests at runtime, and game objects will fail to spawn.

### *Small Memory Allocators*

We can transform the idea of one pool per game object type into something more workable by allowing a game object to be allocated out of a pool whose elements are larger than the object itself. This can reduce the number of unique memory pools we need significantly, at the cost of some potentially wasted memory in each pool.

For example, we might create a set of pool allocators, each one with elements that are twice as large as those of its predecessor—perhaps 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256 and 512 bytes. We can also use a sequence of element sizes that conforms to some other suitable pattern or base the list of sizes on allocation statistics collected from the running game.

Whenever we try to allocate a game object, we search for the smallest pool whose elements are larger than or equal to the size of the object we're allocating. We accept that for some objects, we'll be wasting space. In return, we alleviate all of our memory fragmentation problems—a reasonably fair trade. If we ever encounter a memory allocation request that is larger than our largest pool, we can always turn it over to the general-purpose heap allocator, knowing that fragmentation of large memory blocks is not nearly as problematic as fragmentation involving tiny blocks.

This type of allocator is sometimes called a *small memory allocator*. It can eliminate fragmentation (for allocations that fit into one of the pools). It can also speed up memory allocations significantly for small chunks of data, because a pool allocation involves two pointer manipulations to remove the element from the linked list of free elements—a much less-expensive operation than a general-purpose heap allocation.

### Memory Relocation

Another way to eliminate fragmentation is to attack the problem directly. This approach is known as *memory relocation*. It involves shifting allocated memory blocks down into adjacent free holes to remove fragmentation. Moving the memory is easy, but because we are moving “live” allocated objects, we need to be very careful about fixing up any pointers into the memory blocks we move. See Section 6.2.2.2 for more details.

### 16.4.5 Saved Games

Many games allow the player to save his or her progress, quit the game and then load up the game at a later time in exactly the state he or she left it. A saved game system is similar to the world chunk loading system in that it is capable of loading the state of the game world from a disk file or memory card. But the requirements of this system differ somewhat from those of a world loading system, so the two are usually distinct (or overlap only partially).

To understand the differences between the requirements of these two systems, let’s briefly compare world chunks to saved game files. World chunks specify the initial conditions of all dynamic objects in the world, but they also contain a full description of all static world elements. Much of the static information, such as background meshes and collision data, tends to take up a lot of disk space. As such, world chunks are sometimes comprised of multiple disk files, and the total amount of data associated with a world chunk is usually large.

A saved game file must also store the current state information of the game objects in the world. However, it does not need to store a duplicate copy of any information that can be determined by reading the world chunk data. For example, there’s no need to save out the static geometry in a saved game file. A saved game need not store every detail of every object’s state either. Some objects that have no impact on gameplay can be omitted altogether. For the other game objects, we may only need to store partial state information. As long as the player can’t tell the difference between the state of the game world before and after it has been saved and reloaded (or if the differences are irrelevant to the player), then we have a successful saved game system. As such, saved game files tend to be much smaller than world chunk files and may place more of an emphasis on data compression and omission. Small file sizes are especially important when numerous saved game files must fit onto the tiny memory cards that were used on older consoles. But even today, with consoles that are equipped with large hard drives and linked to a cloud save system, it’s still a good idea to keep the size of a saved game file as small as

possible.

#### 16.4.5.1 Checkpoints

One approach to save games is to limit saves to specific points in the game, known as *checkpoints*. The benefit of this approach is that most of the knowledge about the state of the game is saved in the current world chunk(s) in the vicinity of each checkpoint. This data is always exactly the same, no matter which player is playing the game, so it needn't be stored in the saved game. As a result, saved game files based on checkpoints can be extremely small. We might need to store only the name of the last checkpoint reached, plus perhaps some information about the current state of the player character, such as the player's health, number of lives remaining, what items he has in his inventory, which weapon(s) he has and how much ammo each one contains. Some games based on checkpoints don't even store this information—they start the player off in a known state at each checkpoint. Of course, the downside of a game based on checkpoints is the possibility of user frustration, especially if checkpoints are few and far between.

#### 16.4.5.2 Save Anywhere

Some games support a feature known as *save anywhere*. As the name implies, such games permit the state of the game to be saved at literally any point during play. To implement this feature, the size of the saved game data file must increase significantly. The current locations and internal states of every game object whose state is relevant to gameplay must be saved and then restored when the game is loaded again later.

In a save-anywhere design, a saved game data file contains basically the same information as a world chunk, minus the world's static components. It is possible to utilize the same data format for both systems, although there may be factors that make this infeasible. For example, the world chunk data format might be designed for flexibility, but the saved game format might be compressed to minimize the size of each saved game.

As we've mentioned, one way to reduce the amount of data that needs to be stored in a saved game file is to omit certain irrelevant game objects and to omit some irrelevant details of others. For example, we needn't remember the exact time index within every animation that is currently playing or the exact momentums and velocities of every physically simulated rigid body. We can rely on the imperfect memories of human gamers and save only a rough approximation to the game's state.

## 16.5 Object References and World Queries

Every game object generally requires some kind of unique id so that it can be distinguished from the other objects in the game, found at runtime, serve as a target of inter-object communication and so on. Unique object ids are equally helpful on the tool side, as they can be used to identify and find game objects within the world editor.

At runtime, we invariably need various ways to find game objects. We might want to find an object by its unique id, by its type, or by a set of arbitrary criteria. We often need to perform proximity-based queries, for example finding all enemy aliens within a 10 m radius of the player character.

Once a game object has been found via a query, we need some way to refer to it. In a language like C or C++, object references might be implemented as pointers, or we might use something more sophisticated, like handles or smart pointers. The lifetime of an object reference can vary widely, from the scope of a single function call to a period of many minutes. In the following sections, we'll first investigate various ways to implement object references. Then we'll explore the kinds of queries we often require when implementing gameplay and how those queries might be implemented.

### 16.5.1 Pointers

In C or C++, the most straightforward way to implement an object reference is via a pointer (or a reference in C++). Pointers are powerful and are just about as simple and intuitive as you can get. However, pointers suffer from a number of problems:

- *Orphaned objects*. Ideally, every object should have an *owner*—another object that is responsible for managing its lifetime—creating it and then deleting it when it is no longer needed. But pointers don't give the programmer any help in enforcing this rule. The result can be an *orphaned* object—an object that still occupies memory but is no longer needed or referenced by any other object in the system.
- *Stale pointers*. If an object is deleted, ideally we should null-out any and all pointers to that object. If we forget to do so, however, we end up with a stale pointer—a pointer to a block of memory that used to be occupied by a valid object but is now free memory. If anyone tries to read or write data through a stale pointer, the result can be a crash or incorrect program behavior. Stale pointers can be difficult to track down because they may continue to work for some time after the object has deleted. Only much later, when a new object is allocated on top of the stale memory block, does the data actually change and cause a crash.

- *Invalid pointers.* A programmer is free to store any address in a pointer, including a totally invalid address. A common problem is dereferencing a null pointer. These problems can be guarded against by using assertion macros to check that pointers are never null prior to dereferencing them. Even worse, if a piece of data is misinterpreted as a pointer, dereferencing it can cause the program to read or write an essentially random memory address. This usually results in a crash or other major problem that can be very tough to debug.

Many game engines make heavy use of pointers, because they are by far the fastest, most efficient and easiest-to-work-with way to implement object references. However, experienced programmers are always wary of pointers, and some game teams turn to more sophisticated kinds of object references, either out of a desire to use safer programming practices or out of necessity. For example, if a game engine relocates allocated data blocks at runtime to eliminate memory fragmentation (see Section 6.2.2.2), simple pointers cannot be used. We either need to use a type of object reference that is robust to memory relocation, or we need to manually fix up any pointers into every relocated memory block at the time it is moved.

### 16.5.2 Smart Pointers

A *smart pointer* is a small object that acts like a pointer for most intents and purposes but avoids most of the problems inherent with native C/C++ pointers. At its simplest, a smart pointer contains a native pointer as a data member and provides a set of overloaded operators that make it act like a pointer in most ways. Pointers can be dereferenced, so the `*` and `->` operators are overloaded to return a reference and a pointer to the referenced object, respectively, as you'd expect. Pointers can undergo arithmetic operations, so the `+`, `-`, `++` and `--` operators are also overloaded appropriately.

Because a smart pointer is an object, it can contain additional metadata and/or take additional steps not possible with a regular pointer. For example, a smart pointer might contain information that allows it to recognize when the object to which it points has been deleted and start returning a null address if so.

Smart pointers can also help with object lifetime management by cooperating with one another to determine the number of references to a particular object. This is called *reference counting*. When the number of smart pointers that reference a particular object drops to zero, we know that the object is no longer needed, so it can be automatically deleted. This can free the programmer from having to worry about object ownership and orphaned objects.

Reference counting usually also lies at the core of the “garbage collection” systems found in modern programming languages like Java and Python.

Smart pointers have their share of problems. For one thing, they are relatively easy to implement, but they are tough to get right. There are a great many cases to handle, and the `std::auto_ptr` class provided by the original C++ standard library is widely recognized to be inadequate in many situations. Thankfully most of these issues were resolved in C++11 with the introduction of three smart pointer classes: `std::shared_ptr`, `std::weak_ptr` and `std::unique_ptr`.

The C++11 smart pointer classes were modeled after the rich smart pointer facilities provided by the Boost C++ template library. It defines six different varieties of smart pointers:

- `boost::scoped_ptr`. A pointer to a single object with one owner.
- `boost::scoped_array`. A pointer to an array of objects with a single owner.
- `boost::shared_ptr`. A pointer to an object whose lifetime is shared by multiple owners.
- `boost::shared_array`. A pointer to an array of objects whose lifetimes are shared by multiple owners.
- `boost::weak_ptr`. A pointer that does not own or automatically destroy the object it references (whose lifetime is assumed to be managed by a `shared_ptr`).
- `boost::intrusive_ptr`. A pointer that implements reference counting by assuming that the pointed-to object will maintain the reference count itself. Intrusive pointers are useful because they are the same size as a native C++ pointer (because no reference-counting apparatus is required) and because they can be constructed directly from native pointers.

Properly implementing a smart pointer class can be a daunting task. Have a glance at the Boost smart pointer documentation ([http://www.boost.org/doc/libs/1\\_36\\_0/libs/shared\\_ptr/shared\\_ptr.htm](http://www.boost.org/doc/libs/1_36_0/libs/shared_ptr/shared_ptr.htm)) to see what I mean. All sorts of issues come up, including:

- type safety of smart pointers,
- the ability for a smart pointer to be used with an incomplete type,
- correct smart pointer behavior when an exception occurs, and
- runtime costs, which can be high.

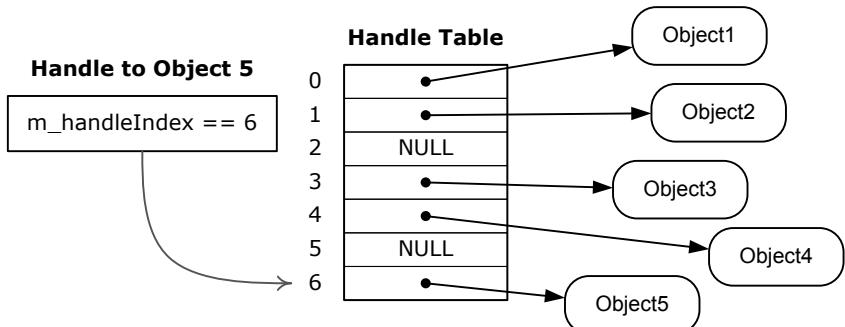


Figure 16.13. A handle table contains raw object pointers. A handle is simply an index into this table.

I worked on a project that attempted to implement its own smart pointers, and we were fixing all sorts of nasty bugs with them up until the very end of the project. My personal recommendation is to stay away from smart pointers; if you must use them, use a mature implementation such as the C++11 standard library or Boost, rather than rolling your own.

### 16.5.3 Handles

A *handle* acts like a smart pointer in many ways, but it is simpler to implement and tends to be less prone to problems. A handle is basically an integer index into a global *handle table*. The handle table, in turn, contains pointers to the objects to which the handles refer. To create a handle, we simply search the handle table for the address of the object in question and store its index in the handle. To dereference a handle, the calling code simply indexes the appropriate slot in the handle table and dereferences the pointer it finds there. This is illustrated in Figure 16.13.

Because of the simple level of indirection afforded by the handle table, handles are much safer and more flexible than raw pointers. If an object is deleted, it can simply null out its entry in the handle table. This causes all existing handles to the object to be immediately and automatically converted to null references. Handles also support memory relocation. When an object is relocated in memory, its address can be found in the handle table and updated appropriately. Again, all existing handles to the object are automatically updated as a result.

A handle can be implemented as a raw integer. However, the handle table index is usually wrapped in a simple class so that a convenient interface for creating and dereferencing the handle can be provided.

Handles are prone to the possibility of referencing a stale object. For example, let's say we create a handle to object A, which occupies slot 17 in the handle table. Later, object A is deleted, and slot 17 is nulled out. Later still, a new object B is created, and it just happens to occupy slot 17 in the handle table. If there are still any handles to object A lying around when object B is created, they will suddenly start referring to object B (instead of null). This is certainly not desirable behavior.

One simple solution to the stale handle problem is to include a unique object id in each handle. That way, when a handle to object A is created, it contains not only slot index 17, but the object id "A." When object B takes A's place in the handle table, any leftover handles to A will agree on the handle index but disagree on the object id. This allows stale object A handles to continue to return null when dereferenced rather than returning a pointer to object B unexpectedly.

The following code snippet shows how a simple handle class might be implemented. Notice that we've also included the handle index in the `GameObject` class itself—this allows us to create new handles to a `GameObject` very quickly without having to search the handle table for its address to determine its handle index.

```
// Within the GameObject class, we store a unique id,
// and also the object's handle index, for efficient
// creation of new handles.

class GameObject
{
private:
    // ...

    GameObjectId m_uniqueId;           // object's unique id
    U32           m_handleIndex;       // speedier handle
                                       // creation

    friend class GameObjectHandle;    // access to id and
                                       // index

    // ...

public:
    GameObject() // constructor
    {
        // The unique id might come from the world editor,
        // or it might be assigned dynamically at runtime.
        m_uniqueId = AssignUniqueId();
    }
}
```

```
// The handle index is assigned by finding the
// first free slot in the handle table.
m_HandleIndex = FindFreeSlotInHandleTable();

        // ...
}
// ...

};

// This constant defines the size of the handle table,
// and hence the maximum number of game objects that can
// exist at any one time.
static const U32 MAX_GAME_OBJECTS = 2048;

// This is the global handle table -- a simple array of
// pointers to GameObjects.
static GameObject* g_apGameObject[MAX_GAME_OBJECTS];

// This is our simple game object handle class.
class GameObjectHandle
{
private:
    U32 m_HandleIndex;           // index into the handle
                                // table
    GameObjectId m_UniqueId;    // unique id avoids stale
                                // handles

public:
    explicit GameObjectHandle(GameObject& object) :
        m_HandleIndex(object.m_HandleIndex),
        m_UniqueId(object.m_UniqueId)
    {
    }

    // This function dereferences the handle.
    GameObject* ToObject() const
    {
        GameObject* pObject
        = g_apGameObject[m_HandleIndex];

        if (pObject != nullptr
            && pObject->m_UniqueId == m_UniqueId)
        {
            return pObject;
        }
    }
}
```

```
        return nullptr;
    }
};
```

This example is functional but incomplete. We might want to implement copy semantics, provide additional constructor variants and so on. The entries in the global handle table might contain additional information, not just a raw pointer to each game object. And of course, a fixed size handle table implementation like this one isn't the only possible design; handle systems vary somewhat from engine to engine.

We should note that one fortunate side benefit of a global handle table is that it gives us a ready-made list of all active game objects in the system. The global handle table can be used to quickly and efficiently iterate over all game objects in the world, for example. It can also make implementing other kinds of queries easier in some cases.

#### 16.5.4 Game Object Queries

Every game engine provides at least a few ways to find game objects at runtime. We'll call these searches *game object queries*. The simplest type of query is to find a particular game object by its unique id. However, a real game engine makes many other types of game object queries. Here are just a few examples of the kinds of queries a game developer might want to make:

- Find all enemy characters with line of sight to the player.
- Iterate over all game objects of a certain type.
- Find all destructible game objects with more than 80% health.
- Transmit damage to all game objects within the blast radius of an explosion.
- Iterate over all objects in the path of a bullet or other projectile, in nearest-to-farthest order.

This list could go on for many pages, and of course its contents are highly dependent upon the design of the particular game being made.

For maximum flexibility in performing game object queries, we could imagine a general-purpose game object database, complete with the ability to formulate arbitrary queries using arbitrary search criteria. Ideally, our game object database would perform all of these queries extremely efficiently and rapidly, making maximum use of whatever hardware and software resources are available.

In reality, such an ideal combination of flexibility and blinding speed is generally not possible. Instead, game teams usually determine which types of queries are most likely to be needed during development of the game, and specialized data structures are implemented to accelerate those particular types of queries. As new queries become necessary, the engineers either leverage preexisting data structures to implement them, or they invent new ones if sufficient speed cannot be obtained. Here are a few examples of specialized data structures that can accelerate specific types of game object queries:

- *Finding game objects by unique id.* Pointers or handles to the game objects could be stored in a hash table or binary search tree keyed by unique id.
- *Iterating over all objects that meet a particular criterion.* The game objects could be presorted into linked lists based on various criteria (presuming the criteria are known *a priori*). For example, we might construct a list of all game objects of a particular type, maintain a list of all objects within a particular radius of the player, etc.
- *Finding all objects in the path of a projectile or with line of sight to some target point.* The collision system is usually leveraged to perform these kinds of game object queries. Most collision systems provide fast ray casts, and some also provide the ability to cast other shapes such as spheres or arbitrary convex volumes into the world to determine what they hit. (See Section 13.3.7.)
- *Finding all objects within a given region or radius.* We might consider storing our game objects in some kind of spatial hash data structure. This could be as simple as a horizontal grid placed over the entire game world or something more sophisticated, such as a quadtree, octree, kd-tree or other data structure that encodes spatial proximity.

## 16.6 Updating Game Objects in Real Time

Every game engine, from the simplest to the most complex, requires some means of updating the internal state of every game object over time. The *state* of a game object can be defined as the values of all its *attributes* (sometimes called its *properties*, and called *data members* in the C++ language). For example, the state of the ball in *Pong* is described by its  $(x, y)$  position on the screen and its velocity (speed and direction of travel). Because games are dynamic, time-based simulations, a game object's state describes its configuration at *one specific instant in time*. In other words, a game object's notion of time is *discrete* rather than *continuous*. (However, as we'll see, it's helpful to think of the ob-

jects' states as changing continuously and then being sampled discretely by the engine, because it helps you to avoid some common pitfalls.)

In the following discussions, we'll use the symbol  $\mathbf{S}_i(t)$  to denote the state of object  $i$  at an arbitrary time  $t$ . The use of vector notation here is not strictly mathematically correct, but it reminds us that a game object's state acts like a heterogeneous  $n$ -dimensional vector, containing all sorts of information of various data types. We should note that this usage of the term "state" is not the same as the states in a *finite state machine*. A game object may very well be implemented in terms of one—or many—finite state machines, but in that case, a specification of the current state of each FSM would merely be a part of the game object's overall state vector  $\mathbf{S}(t)$ .

Most low-level engine subsystems (rendering, animation, collision, physics, audio and so on) require periodic updating, and the game object system is no exception. As we saw in Chapter 8, updating is usually done via a single master loop called the *game loop*. Virtually all game engines update game object states as part of their main game loop—in other words, they treat the game object model as just another engine subsystem that requires periodic servicing.

Game object updating can therefore be thought of as the process of determining the state of each object at the current time  $\mathbf{S}_i(t)$  given its state at a previous time  $\mathbf{S}_i(t - \Delta t)$ . Once all object states have been updated, the current time  $t$  becomes the new previous time ( $t - \Delta t$ ), and this process repeats for as long as the game is running. Usually, one or more *clocks* are maintained by the engine—one that tracks real time exactly and possibly others that may or may not correspond to real time. These clocks provide the engine with the absolute time  $t$  and/or with the change in time  $\Delta t$  from iteration to iteration of the game loop. The clock that drives the updating of game object states is usually permitted to diverge from real time. This allows the behaviors of the game objects to be paused, slowed down, sped up or even run in reverse—whatever is required in order to suit the needs of the game design. These features are also invaluable for debugging and development of the game.

As we learned in Chapter 1, a game object updating system is an example of what is known as a *dynamic, real-time, agent-based computer simulation* in computer science. Game object updating systems also exhibit some aspects of *discrete event simulations* (see Section 16.8 for more details on events). These are well-researched areas of computer science, and they have many applications outside the field of interactive entertainment. Games are one of the more complex kinds of agent-based simulation—as we'll see, updating game object states over time in a dynamic, interactive virtual environment can be surprisingly difficult to get right. Game programmers can learn a lot about game

object updating by studying the wider field of agent-based and discrete event simulations. And researchers in those fields can probably learn a thing or two from game engine design as well!

As with all high-level game engine systems, every engine takes a slightly (or sometimes radically) different approach. However, as before, most game teams encounter a common set of problems, and certain design patterns tend to crop up again and again in virtually every engine. In this section, we'll investigate these common problems and some common solutions to them. Please bear in mind that game engines may exist that employ very different solutions to the ones described here, and some game designs face unique problems that we can't possibly cover here.

### 16.6.1 A Simple Approach (That Doesn't Work)

The simplest way to update the states of a collection of game objects is to iterate over the collection and call a virtual function, named something like `Update()`, on each object in turn. This is typically done once during each iteration of the main game loop (i.e., once per *frame*). Game object classes can provide custom implementations of the `Update()` function in order to perform whatever tasks are required to advance the state of that type of object to the next discrete time index. The time delta from the previous frame can be passed to the update function so that objects can take proper account of the passage of time. At its simplest, then, our `Update()` function's signature might look something like this:

```
virtual void Update(float dt);
```

For the purposes of the following discussions, we'll assume that our engine employs a monolithic object hierarchy, in which each game object is represented by a single instance of a single class. However, we can easily extend the ideas here to virtually any object-centric design. For example, to update a component-based object model, we could call `Update()` on every component that makes up each game object, or we could call `Update()` on the "hub" object and let it update its associated components as it sees fit. We can also extend these ideas to property-centric designs, by calling some sort of `Update()` function on each property instance every frame.

They say that the devil is in the details, so let's investigate two important details here. First, how should we maintain the collection of all game objects? And second, what kinds of things should the `Update()` function be responsible for doing?

### 16.6.1.1 Maintaining a Collection of Active Game Objects

The collection of active game objects is often maintained by a singleton manager class, perhaps named something like `GameWorld` or `GameObjectManager`. The collection of game objects generally needs to be dynamic, because game objects are spawned and destroyed as the game is played. Hence a *linked list* of pointers, smart pointers or handles to game objects is one simple and effective approach. (Some game engines disallow dynamic spawning and destroying of game objects; such engines can use a statically sized *array* of game object pointers, smart pointers or handles rather than a linked list.) As we'll see below, most engines use more complex data structures to keep track of their game objects rather than just a simple, flat linked list. But for the time being, we can visualize the data structure as a linked list for simplicity.

### 16.6.1.2 Responsibilities of the `Update()` Function

A game object's `Update()` function is primarily responsible for determining the state of that game object at the current discrete time index  $S_i(t)$  given its previous state  $S_i(t - \Delta t)$ . Doing this may involve applying a rigid body dynamics simulation to the object, sampling a preauthored animation, reacting to events that have occurred during the current time step and so on.

Most game objects interact with one or more engine subsystems. They may need to animate, be rendered, emit particle effects, play audio, collide with other objects and static geometry and so on. Each of these systems has an internal state that must also be updated over time, usually once or a few times per frame. It might seem reasonable and intuitive to simply update all of these subsystems directly from within the game object's `Update()` function. For example, consider the following hypothetical update function for a `Tank` object:

```
virtual void Tank::Update(float dt)
{
    // Update the state of the tank itself.
    MoveTank(dt);
    DeflectTurret(dt);
    FireIfNecessary();

    // Now update low-level engine subsystems on behalf
    // of this tank. (NOT a good idea... see below!)
    m_pAnimationComponent->Update(dt);
    m_pCollisionComponent->Update(dt);
    m_pPhysicsComponent->Update(dt);
    m_pAudioComponent->Update(dt);
    m_pRenderingComponent->draw();
```

```
}
```

Given that our `Update()` functions are structured like this, the game loop could be driven almost entirely by the updating of the game objects, like this:

```
while (true)
{
    PollJoypad();

    float dt = g_gameClock.CalculateDeltaTime();

    for (each gameObject)
    {
        // This hypothetical Update() function updates
        // all engine subsystems!
        gameObject.Update(dt);
    }

    g_renderingEngine.SwapBuffers();
}
```

However attractive the simple approach to object updating shown above may seem, it is usually not viable in a commercial-grade game engine. In the following sections, we'll explore some of the problems with this simplistic approach and investigate common ways in which each problem can be solved.

### 16.6.2 Performance Constraints and Batched Updates

Most low-level engine systems have extremely stringent performance constraints. They operate on a large quantity of data, and they must do a large number of calculations every frame as quickly as possible. As a result, most engine systems benefit from *batched updating*. For example, it is usually far more efficient to update a large number of animations in one batch than it is to update each object's animation interleaved with other unrelated operations, such as collision detection, physical simulation and rendering.

In most commercial game engines, each engine subsystem is updated directly or indirectly by the main game loop rather than being updated on a per-game object basis from within each object's `Update()` function. If a game object requires the services of a particular engine subsystem, it asks that subsystem to allocate some subsystem-specific state information on its behalf. For example, a game object that wishes to be rendered via a triangle mesh might request the rendering subsystem to allocate a *mesh instance* for its use. (As described in Section 11.1.1.5, a mesh instance represents a single instance of a

triangle mesh—it keeps track of the position, orientation and scale of the instance in world space whether or not it is visible, per-instance material data and any other per-instance information that may be relevant.) The rendering engine maintains a collection of mesh instances internally. It can manage the mesh instances however it sees fit in order to maximize its own runtime performance. The game object controls *how* it is rendered by manipulating the properties of the mesh instance object, but the game object does not control the rendering of the mesh instance directly. Instead, after all game objects have had a chance to update themselves, the rendering engine draws all visible mesh instances in one efficient batch update.

With batched updating, a particular game object's `Update()` function, such as that of our hypothetical tank object, might look more like this:

```
virtual void Tank::Update(float dt)
{
    // Update the state of the tank itself.
    MoveTank(dt);
    DeflectTurret(dt);
    FireIfNecessary();

    // Control the properties of my various engine
    // subsystem components, but do NOT update
    // them here...

    if (justExploded)
    {
        m_pAnimationComponent->PlayAnimation("explode");
    }

    if (isVisible)
    {
        m_pCollisionComponent->Activate();
        m_pRenderingComponent->Show();
    }
    else
    {
        m_pCollisionComponent->Deactivate();
        m_pRenderingComponent->Hide();
    }

    // etc.
}
```

The game loop then ends up looking more like this:

```
while (true)
{
```

```
PollJoypad();

float dt = g_gameClock.CalculateDeltaTime();

for (each gameObject)
{
    gameObject.Update(dt);
}

g_animationEngine.Update(dt);
g_physicsEngine.Simulate(dt);
g_collisionEngine.DetectAndResolveCollisions(dt);
g_audioEngine.Update(dt);
g_renderingEngine.RenderFrameAndSwapBuffers();
}
```

Batched updating provides many performance benefits, including but not limited to:

- *Maximal cache coherency.* Batched updating allows an engine subsystem to achieve maximum cache coherency because its per-object data is maintained internally and can be arranged in a single, contiguous region of RAM.
- *Minimal duplication of computations.* Global calculations can be done once and reused for many game objects rather than being redone for each object.
- *Reduced reallocation of resources.* Engine subsystems often need to allocate and manage memory and/or other resources during their updates. If the update of a particular subsystem is interleaved with those of other engine subsystems, these resources must be freed and reallocated for each game object that is processed. But if the updates are batched, the resources can be allocated once per frame and reused for all objects in the batch.
- *Efficient pipelining.* Many engine subsystems perform a virtually identical set of calculations on each and every object in the game world. When updates are batched, a scatter/gather approach can be employed to divide large workloads across multiple CPU cores. This kind of parallelism cannot be achieved when processing each object in isolation.

Performance benefits aren't the only reason to favor a batch updating approach. Some engine subsystems simply don't work at all when updated on a per-object basis. For example, if we are trying to resolve collisions within a system of multiple dynamic rigid bodies, a satisfactory solution cannot be

found in general by considering each object in isolation. The interpenetrations between these objects must be resolved as a group, either via an iterative approach or by solving a linear system.

### 16.6.3 Object and Subsystem Interdependencies

Even if we didn't care about performance, a simplistic per-object updating approach breaks down when game objects *depend* on one another. For example, a human character might be holding a cat in her arms. In order to calculate the world-space pose of the cat's skeleton, we first need to calculate the world-space pose of the human. This implies that the *order* in which objects are updated is important to the proper functioning of the game.

Another related problem arises when engine *subsystems* depend on one another. For example, a rag doll physics simulation must be updated in concert with the animation engine. Typically, the animation system produces an intermediate, local-space skeletal pose. These joint transforms are converted to world space and applied to a system of connected rigid bodies that approximate the skeleton within the physics system. The rigid bodies are simulated forward in time by the physics system, and then the final resting places of the joints are applied back to their corresponding joints in the skeleton. Finally, the animation system calculates the world-space pose and skinning matrix palette. So once again, the updating of the animation and physics systems must occur in a particular order in order to produce correct results. These kinds of inter-subsystem dependencies are commonplace in game engine design.

#### 16.6.3.1 Phased Updates

To account for inter-subsystem dependencies, we can explicitly code our engine subsystem updates in the proper order within the main game loop. For example, to handle the interplay between the animation system and rag doll physics, we might write something like this:

```
while (true) // main game loop
{
    // ...

    g_animationEngine.CalculateIntermediatePoses(dt);
    g_ragdollSystem.ApplySkeletonsToRagDolls();
    g_physicsEngine.Simulate(dt); // runs ragdolls too
    g_collisionEngine.DetectAndResolveCollisions(dt);
    g_ragdollSystem.ApplyRagDollsToSkeletons();
    g_animationEngine.FinalizePoseAndMatrixPalette();
```

```
    // ...
}
```

We must be careful to update the states of our game objects at the right time during the game loop. This is often not as simple as calling a single `Update()` function per game object per frame. Game objects may depend upon the intermediate results of calculations performed by various engine subsystems. For example, a game object might request that animations be played prior to the animation system running its update. However, that same object may also want to procedurally adjust the intermediate pose generated by the animation system prior to that pose being used by the rag doll physics system and/or the final pose and matrix palette being generated. This implies that the object must be updated twice, once before the animation calculates its intermediate poses and once afterward.

Many game engines allow their game objects to run update logic at multiple points during the frame. For example, the Naughty Dog engine (the engine that drives the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* game series) updates game objects three times—once before animation blending, once after animation blending but prior to final pose generation and once after final pose generation. This can be accomplished by providing each game object class with three virtual functions that act as “hooks.” In such a system, the game loop ends up looking something like this:

```
while (true) // main game loop
{
    // ...

    for (each gameObject)
    {
        gameObject.PreAnimUpdate(dt);
    }

    g_animationEngine.CalculateIntermediatePoses(dt);

    for (each gameObject)
    {
        gameObject.PostAnimUpdate(dt);
    }

    g_ragdollSystem.ApplySkeletonsToRagDolls();
    g_physicsEngine.Simulate(dt); // runs ragdolls too
    g_collisionEngine.DetectAndResolveCollisions(dt);
    g_ragdollSystem.ApplyRagDollsToSkeletons();
```

```
g_animationEngine.FinalizePoseAndMatrixPalette();  
  
for (each gameObject)  
{  
    gameObject.FinalUpdate(dt);  
}  
  
// ...  
}
```

We can provide our game objects with as many update phases as we see fit. But we must be careful, because iterating over all game objects and calling a virtual function on each one can be expensive. Also, not all game objects require all update phases—iterating over objects that don't require a particular phase is a pure waste of CPU bandwidth.

Actually, the above example isn't completely realistic. Iterating directly over all game objects to call their `PreAnimUpdate()`, `PostAnimUpdate()` and `FinalUpdate()` hook functions would be highly inefficient, because only a small percentage of the objects might actually need to perform any logic in each hook. It's also an inflexible design, because only game objects are supported—if we wanted to update a particle system during the post-animation phase, we'd be out of luck. Finally, such a design would lead to unnecessary *coupling* between the low-level engine systems and the game object system.

A generic callback mechanism would be a much better design choice. In such a design, the animation system would provide a facility by which any client code (game objects or any other engine system) could *register a callback function* for each of the three update phases (pre-animation, post-animation and final). The animation system would iterate through all registered callbacks and call them, without any “knowledge” of game objects *per se*. This design maximizes performance, because only those clients that actually *need* updates register callbacks and are called each frame. It also maximizes flexibility and eliminates unnecessary coupling between the game object system and other engine subsystems, because any client is allowed to register a callback, not just game objects.

### 16.6.3.2 Bucketed Updates

In the presence of *inter-object* dependencies, the phased updates technique described above must be adjusted a little. This is because inter-object dependencies can lead to conflicting rules governing the order of updating. For example, let's imagine that object B is being held by object A. Further, let's assume that we can only update object B after A has been *fully* updated, including the

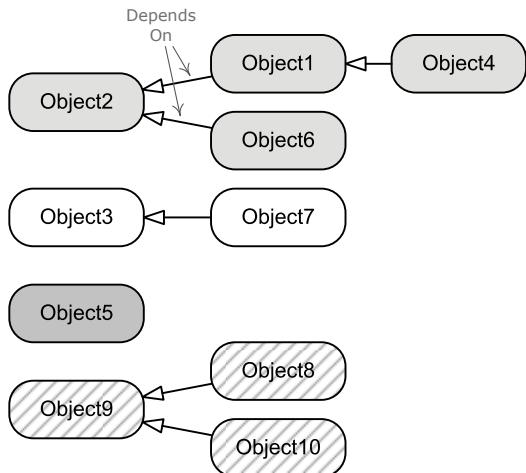


Figure 16.14. Inter-object update order dependencies can be viewed as a forest of dependency trees.

calculation of its final world-space pose and matrix palette. This conflicts with the need to batch animation updates of all game objects together in order to allow the animation system to achieve maximum throughput.

Inter-object dependencies can be visualized as a forest of dependency trees. The game objects with no parents (no dependencies on any other object) represent the roots of the forest. An object that depends directly on one of these root objects resides in the first tier of children in one of the trees in the forest. An object that depends on a first-tier child becomes a second-tier child and so on. This is illustrated in Figure 16.14.

One solution to the problem of conflicting update order requirements is to collect objects into independent groups, which we'll call *buckets* here for lack of a better name. The first bucket consists of all root objects in the forest. The second bucket is comprised of all first-tier children. The third bucket contains all second-tier children and so on. For each bucket, we run a complete update of the game objects and the engine systems, complete with all update phases. Then we repeat the entire process for each bucket until there are no more buckets.

In theory, the depths of the trees in our dependency forest are unbounded. However, in practice, they are usually quite shallow. For example, we might have characters holding weapons, and those characters might or might not be riding on a moving platform or a vehicle. To implement this, we only need three tiers in our dependency forest, and hence only three buckets: one for

platforms/vehicles, one for characters and one for the weapons in the characters' hands. Many game engines explicitly limit the depth of their dependency forest so that they can use a fixed number of buckets (presuming they use a bucketed approach at all—there are of course many other ways to architect a game loop).

Here's what a bucketed, phased, batched update loop might look like:

```
enum Bucket
{
    kBucketVehiclesPlatforms,
    kBucketCharacters,
    kBucketAttachedObjects,
    kBucketCount
};

void UpdateBucket(Bucket bucket)
{
    // ...

    for (each gameObject in bucket)
    {
        gameObject.PreAnimUpdate(dt);
    }

    g_animationEngine.CalculateIntermediatePoses
    (bucket, dt);

    for (each gameObject in bucket)
    {
        gameObject.PostAnimUpdate(dt);
    }

    g_ragdollSystem.ApplySkeletonsToRagDolls(bucket);
    g_physicsEngine.Simulate(bucket, dt); // ragdolls etc.
    g_collisionEngine.DetectAndResolveCollisions
    (bucket, dt);
    g_ragdollSystem.ApplyRagDollsToSkeletons(bucket);
    g_animationEngine.FinalizePoseAndMatrixPalette
    (bucket);

    for (each gameObject in bucket)
    {
        gameObject.FinalUpdate(dt);
    }
}
```

```

        // ...
    }

    void RunGameLoop()
    {
        while (true)
        {
            // ...

            UpdateBucket(kBucketVehiclesAndPlatforms) ;
            UpdateBucket(kBucketCharacters) ;
            UpdateBucket(kBucketAttachedObjects) ;

            // ...

            g_renderingEngine.RenderSceneAndSwapBuffers() ;
        }
    }
}

```

In practice, things might be a bit more complex than this. For example, some engine subsystems like the physics engine might not support the concept of buckets, perhaps because they are third-party SDKs or because they cannot be practically updated in a bucketed manner. However, this bucketed update is essentially what we used at Naughty Dog to implement all of the games in the *Uncharted* series as well as *The Last of Us*. So it's a method that has proven to be practical and reasonably efficient.

#### 16.6.3.3 Object State Inconsistencies and One-Frame-Off Lag

Let's revisit game object updating, but this time thinking in terms of each object's local notion of time. We said in Section 16.6 that the state of game object  $i$  at time  $t$  can be denoted by a state vector  $\mathbf{S}_i(t)$ . When we update a game object, we are converting its previous state vector  $\mathbf{S}_i(t_1)$  into a new current state vector  $\mathbf{S}_i(t_2)$  (where  $t_2 = t_1 + \Delta t$ ).

In theory, the states of all game objects are updated from time  $t_1$  to time  $t_2$  instantaneously and in parallel, as depicted in Figure 16.15. However, presuming that our game update loop is single-threaded, we actually update the objects one by one—we loop over each game object and call some kind of update function on each one in turn. If we were to stop the program halfway through this update loop, half of our game objects' states would have been updated to  $\mathbf{S}_i(t_2)$ , while the remaining half would still be in their previous states  $\mathbf{S}_i(t_1)$ . This implies that if we were to ask two of our game objects what the current time is during the update loop, they may or may not agree! What's more, depending on where exactly we interrupt the update loop, the objects

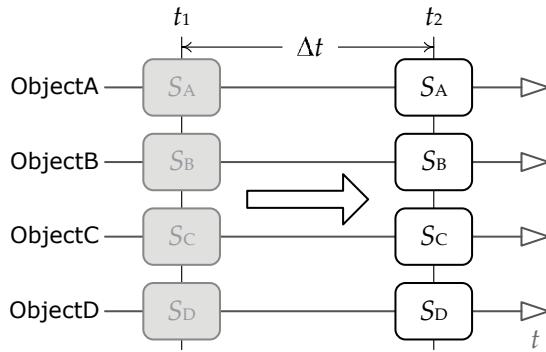


Figure 16.15. In theory, the states of all game objects are updated instantaneously and in parallel during each iteration of the game loop.

may all be in a partially updated state. For example, animation pose blending may have been run, but physics and collision resolution may not yet have been applied. This leads us to the following rule:

The states of all game objects are consistent *before* and *after* the update loop, but they may be inconsistent *during* it.

This is illustrated in Figure 16.16.

The inconsistency of game object states during the update loop is a major source of confusion and bugs, even among professionals within the game in-

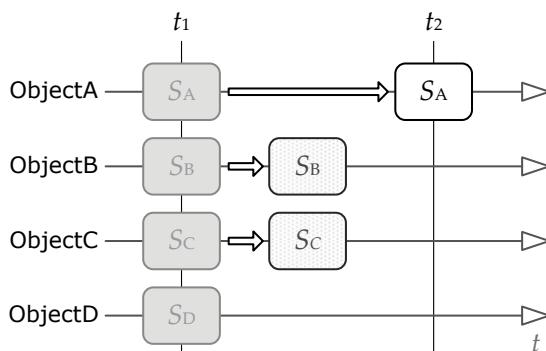


Figure 16.16. In practice, the states of the game objects are updated one by one. This means that at some arbitrary moment during the update loop, some objects will think the current time is  $t_2$  while others think it is still  $t_1$ . Some objects may be only partially updated, so their states will be internally inconsistent. In effect, the state of such an object lies at a point between  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ .

dustry. The problem rears its head most often when game objects query one another for state information during the update loop (which implies that there is a dependency between them). For example, if object B looks at the velocity of object A in order to determine its own velocity at time  $t$ , then the programmer must be clear about whether he or she wants to read the *previous* state of object A,  $\mathbf{S}_A(t_1)$ , or the *new* state,  $\mathbf{S}_A(t_2)$ . If the new state is needed but object A has not yet been updated, then we have an update order problem that can lead to a class of bugs known as *one-frame-off lags*. In this type of bug, the state of one object lags one frame behind the states of its peers, which manifests itself on-screen as a lack of synchronization between game objects.

#### 16.6.3.4 Object State Caching

As described above, one solution to this problem is to group the game objects into buckets (Section 16.6.3.2). One problem with a simple bucketed update approach is that it imposes somewhat arbitrary limitations on the way in which game objects are permitted to query one another for state information. If a game object A wants the *updated* state vector  $\mathbf{S}_B(t_2)$  of another object B, then object B must reside in a *previously updated* bucket. Likewise, if object A wants the *previous* state vector  $\mathbf{S}_B(t_1)$  of object B, then object B must reside in a *yet-to-be-updated* bucket. Object A should never ask for the state vector of an object within its own bucket, because, as we stated in the rule above, those state vectors may be only partially updated. Or at best, there's some uncertainty as to whether you're accessing the other object's state at time  $t_1$  or time  $t_2$ .

One way to improve consistency is to arrange for each game object to *cache* its previous state vector  $\mathbf{S}_i(t_1)$  while it is calculating its new state vector  $\mathbf{S}_i(t_2)$  rather than *overwriting* it in-place during its update. This has two immediate benefits. First, it allows any object to safely query the previous state vector of any other object without regard to update order. Second, it guarantees that a totally consistent state vector ( $\mathbf{S}_i(t_1)$ ) will always be available, even during the update of the new state vector. To my knowledge there is no standard terminology for this technique, so I'll call it *state caching* for lack of a better name.

Another benefit of state caching is that we can linearly interpolate between the previous and next states in order to approximate the state of an object at any moment between these two points in time. The Havok physics engine maintains the previous and current state of every rigid body in the simulation for just this purpose.

The downside of state caching is that it consumes twice the memory of the update-in-place approach. It also only solves half the problem, because while

the previous states at time  $t_1$  are fully consistent, the new states at time  $t_2$  still suffer from potential inconsistency. Nonetheless, the technique can be useful when applied judiciously.

This technique is influenced strongly by the design principles of pure *functional programming* (see Section 16.9.2). In a pure functional programming language, all operations are performed by functions with a clear input and output, and no side-effects. All data is considered constant and immutable—rather than mutating an input datum in place, a brand new datum is always produced.

#### 16.6.3.5 Time-Stamping

One easy and low-cost way to improve the consistency of game object states is to time-stamp them. It is then a trivial matter to determine whether a game object's state vector corresponds to its configuration at a previous time or the current time. Any code that queries the state of another game object during the update loop can assert or explicitly check the time stamp to ensure that the proper state information is being obtained.

Time-stamping does not address the inconsistency of states during the update of a bucket. However, we can set a global or static variable to reflect which bucket is currently being updated. Presumably every game object “knows” in which bucket it resides. So we can check the bucket of a queried game object against the currently updating bucket and assert that they are not equal in order to guard against inconsistent state queries.

## 16.7 Applying Concurrency to Game Object Updates

In Chapter 4 we explored *hardware parallelism* and how to take advantage of the explicitly parallel computing hardware that has become the norm in recent gaming hardware. This is done via *concurrent programming* techniques. In Section 8.6, we introduced a number of approaches that allow a game engine to take advantage of the parallel processing resources. In this section, we'll take a look at ways in which concurrency and parallelism can be applied to the problem of updating the states of our game objects.

### 16.7.1 Concurrent Engine Subsystems

Clearly, the most performance-critical parts of our engine—such as rendering, animation, audio and physics—are the ones that will benefit most from parallel processing. So, whether or not our game object model is being updated in a

single thread or across multiple cores, it needs to be able to *interface* with low-level engine systems that are almost certainly multithreaded.

If our engine supports a general-purpose *job system* (see Section 8.6.4), we can use that job system to make our engine subsystems execute concurrently. In this scenario, each subsystem's frame update might be kicked off as a single job each frame. However, it's probably a better idea for each subsystem to kick off multiple jobs to perform its work each frame. For example, an animation system might kick off one job for each object in the game world that requires animation blending. Later in the frame, when the animation system performs its world matrix and skinning matrix computations, it could potentially employ a scatter/gather approach to divide this work across the available cores.

When making our low-level engine systems update concurrently, we need to ensure that their *interfaces* are *thread-safe*. We want to be sure that no external code can get into a data race situation, either in contention with other external clients, or in contention with the inner workings of the subsystem itself. This typically involves using locks on all external calls into each subsystem.

If our job system employs *user-level threads* (coroutines or fibers), then we will need to use spin locks to make our subsystems thread-safe. However, if our subsystems are updated by OS threads, then mutexes are also a viable option for this purpose.

If we can be certain that a particular engine subsystem only ever runs during one particular phase of the game loop, we may be able to employ *lock-not-needed assertions* rather than actually having to lock certain parts of the subsystem. See Section 4.9.7.5 for more information on these useful assertions.

Of course, another option is to attempt to use *lock-free* data structures to implement our engine subsystems critical (shared) data. Lock-free data structures are tricky to implement, and some data structures still have no known lock-free implementation. As such, if you opt for a lock-free approach, it's probably wise to restrict your efforts only to engine subsystems with the most stringent performance requirements.

### 16.7.2 Asynchronous Program Design

When interfacing with concurrent engine subsystems (for example from within a game object update), we must begin thinking *asynchronously*. When a time-consuming operation is to be performed, we should therefore avoid calling a *blocking function*—a function that does its work directly in the context of the calling thread, thereby blocking that thread or job until the work has been completed. Instead, whenever possible, large or expensive jobs should be requested by calling a *non-blocking function*—a function that sends the request

to be executed by another thread, core or processor and then immediately returns control to the calling function. The calling thread or job can proceed with other unrelated work, perhaps including updating other game objects, while we wait for the results of our request. Later in the same frame, or in next frame, we can pick up the results of the request and make use of them.

For example, a game might request that a ray be cast into the world in order to determine whether the player has line-of-sight to an enemy character. In a synchronous design, the ray cast would be done immediately in response to the request, and when the ray casting function returned, the results would be available, as shown below.

```
SomeGameObject::Update()
{
    // ...

    // Cast a ray to see if the player has line of sight
    // to the enemy.
    RayCastResult r = castRay(playerPos, enemyPos);

    // Now process the results...
    if (r.hitSomething() && isEnemy(r.getHitObject()))
    {
        // Player can see the enemy.
        // ...
    }

    // ...
}
```

In an asynchronous design, a ray cast request would be made by calling a function that simply sets up and enqueues a ray cast job, and then returns immediately. The calling thread or job can continue doing other unrelated work while the job is being processed by another CPU or core. Later, once the ray cast job has been completed, the calling thread or job can pick up the results of the ray cast query and process them:

```
SomeGameObject::Update()
{
    // ...

    // Cast a ray to see if the player has line of sight
    // to the enemy.
    RayCastResult r;
    requestRayCast(playerPos, enemyPos, &r);
```

```
// Do other unrelated work while we wait for the
// other CPU to perform the ray cast for us.

// ...

// OK, we can't do any more useful work. Wait for the
// results of our ray cast job. If the job is
// complete, this function will return immediately.
// Otherwise, the main thread will idle until the
// results are ready...
waitForRayCastResults(&r);

// Process results...
if (r.hitSomething() && isEnemy(r.getHitObject()))
{
    // Player can see the enemy.
    // ...
}

// ...
}
```

In many instances, asynchronous code can kick off a request on one frame, and pick up the results on the next. In this case, you may see code that looks like this:

```
RayCastResult r;
bool rayJobPending = false;

SomeGameObject::Update()
{
    // ...

    // Wait for the results of last frame's ray cast job.
    if (rayJobPending)
    {
        waitForRayCastResults(&r);

        // Process results...
        if (r.hitSomething() && isEnemy(r.getHitObject()))
        {
            // Player can see the enemy.
            // ...
        }
    }
}
```

```
// Cast a new ray for next frame.  
rayJobPending = true;  
requestRayCast(playerPos, enemyPos, &r);  
  
// Do other work...  
// ...  
}
```

### 16.7.2.1 When to Make Asynchronous Requests

One particularly tricky aspect of converting synchronous, unbatched code to use an asynchronous, batched approach is determining *when* during the game loop (a) to kick off the request and (b) to wait for and utilize the results. In doing this, it is often helpful to ask ourselves the following questions:

- *How early can we kick off this request?* The earlier we make the request, the more likely it is to be done when we actually need the results—and this maximizes CPU utilization by helping to ensure that the main thread is never idle waiting for an asynchronous request to complete. So for any given request, we should determine the earliest point during the frame at which we have enough information to kick it off, and kick it there.
- *How long can we wait before we need the results of this request?* Perhaps we can wait until later in the update loop to do the second half of an operation. Perhaps we can tolerate a one-frame lag and use last frame's results to update the object's state this frame. (Some subsystems like AI can tolerate even longer lag times because they update only every few seconds.) In many circumstances, code that uses the results of a request can in fact be deferred until later in the frame, given a little thought, some code refactoring, and possibly some additional caching of intermediate data.

### 16.7.3 Job Dependencies and Degree of Parallelism

In order to make the best use of a parallel computing platform, we'd like to keep all cores busy at all times. Presuming we're using a job system to parallelize our engine, each iteration of our game loop will be comprised of hundreds or even thousands of jobs running concurrently. However, *dependencies* between these jobs can lead to less-than-ideal utilization of the available cores. If job B takes as its input some data that is produced by job A, then job B cannot begin until job A is done. This creates a *dependency* between job B and job A.

The *degree of parallelism* (DOP) of a system, also known as its *degree of concurrency* (DOC), measures the theoretical maximum number of jobs that can

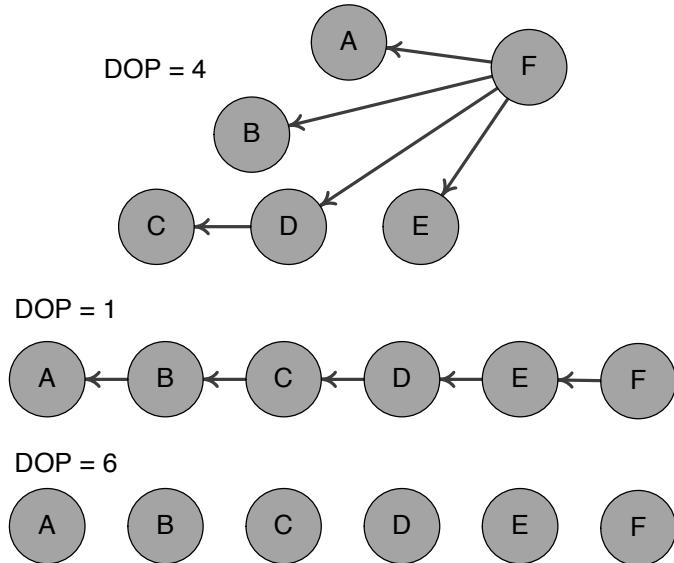


Figure 16.17. Three job dependency trees. The nodes of the tree are jobs, and the arrows represent dependencies between them. The number of leaves in such a tree indicates the system's degree of parallelism (DOP).

be running in parallel at any given moment in time. The degree of parallelism of a group of jobs can be determined by drawing a *dependency graph*. In such a graph, the jobs form the nodes of the tree, and the parent-child relationships represent dependencies. The number of leaves of the tree tells us the degree of parallelism of that collection of jobs. Figure 16.17 illustrates a few examples of job dependency trees and their corresponding degrees of parallelism.

In order to achieve full utilization of CPU resources in an explicitly parallel computer, we would like the DOP of our system to match or exceed the number of available cores. If the DOP of the software exactly equals the number of cores, we get maximum throughput. When the DOP of our system is higher than the number of cores, throughput is reduced because some jobs must run serially, but no core is idle. But when our system's DOP is less than the number of cores, some cores won't have any work to do.

Whenever a job is forced to wait for the jobs on which it depends to complete their tasks, a *synchronization point* (or “sync point” for short) is introduced into the system. Each sync point represents an opportunity for valuable CPU resources to be wasted while a job waits for its dependent jobs to complete their work. This is illustrated in Figure 16.18.

To maximize hardware utilization, we can attempt to increase the DOP of

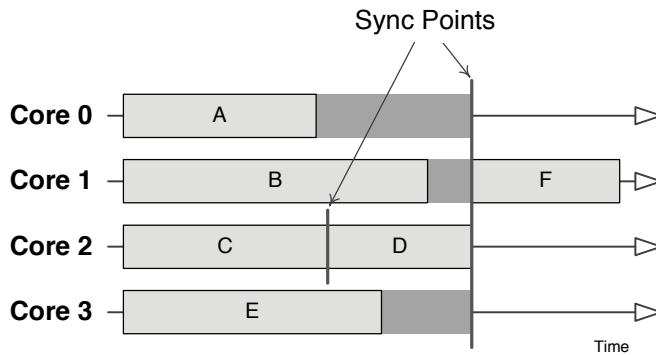


Figure 16.18. A synchronization point is introduced whenever one job is dependent upon the completion of one or more other jobs. Here, job D depends on job C, and job F depends on jobs A, B, D and E.

our system by reducing dependencies between jobs. We could also try to find some other unrelated work to do during idle periods. We can also reduce or eliminate the impact of a sync point by *deferring* it. For example, let's say that job D cannot commence its work until jobs A, B and C are done. If we try to schedule job D before A, B and C are all done, then it will obviously have to sit idle for some time. But if we defer job D so that it runs well after A, B and C are done, then we can be confident that D will never have to wait. This idea is illustrated in Figure 16.19. In his talk entitled “Diving Down the Concurrency Rabbit Hole” ([http://cellperformance.beyond3d.com/articles/public/concurrency\\_rabbit\\_hole.pdf](http://cellperformance.beyond3d.com/articles/public/concurrency_rabbit_hole.pdf)), Mike Acton says, “The secret of optimized concurrent design is *delay*.” This is what he’s talking about: Deferring sync points as a means of reducing or eliminating idle time in a concurrent system.

#### 16.7.4 Parallelizing the Game Object Model Itself

Game object models are notoriously difficult to parallelize for a few reasons. Game objects tend to be highly interdependent, and are typically dependent on numerous engine subsystems as well. Inter-object dependencies arise because game objects routinely communicate with one another and query one another’s states during their updates. These interactions tend to occur multiple times during the update loop, and the pattern of communication can be unpredictable and highly sensitive to the inputs of the human player and the events that are occurring in the game world. This makes it difficult to process game object updates *concurrently* (using multiple threads or multiple CPU cores).

That being said, it certainly is possible to update a game object model con-

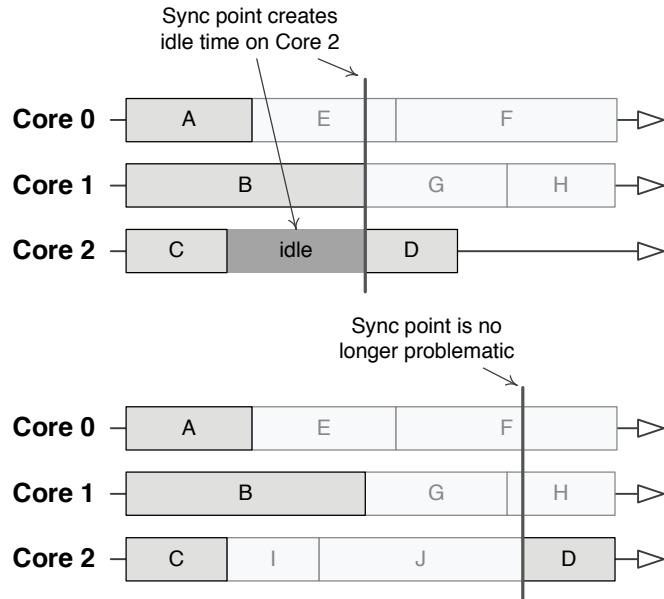


Figure 16.19. Job D depends on jobs A, B and C. Top: If we attempt to schedule job D immediately after job C on Core 2, the core will sit idle waiting for job B to complete. Bottom: If we delay job D's invocation until well after jobs A, B and C have completed, we free up Core 2 to run other jobs, thereby avoiding the idle time that had been caused by the sync point.

currently. As one example, Naughty Dog implemented a concurrent game object model when we ported our engine from PS3 to PS4 for *The Last of Us: Remastered*. In this section, we'll explore some of the problems one encounters when updating game objects concurrently, and we'll have a look at some of the solutions that Naughty Dog uses in our engine. Of course, these techniques are just one possible way to tackle the problem—other engines may use different approaches. And who knows? Perhaps *you* will invent a novel way of solving some of the vexing problems of concurrent game object model updates!

#### 16.7.4.1 Game Object Updates as Jobs

If our game engine has a job system, it will very likely be used to parallelize the various low-level subsystems in our engine, such as animation, audio, collision/physics, rendering, file I/O, and so on. So why not parallelize our game object updates by making them jobs, too? This is the approach used in the Naughty Dog engine. It works, but getting it to work correctly, and efficiently, is a non-trivial undertaking.

We discussed in Section 16.6.3.2 that, due to interdependencies between game objects, we need to control the order in which they update. One way to achieve this is to divide all of the objects in the game into  $N$  buckets, such that the objects in bucket  $B$  depend only on objects in buckets 0 through  $B - 1$ . If we take this approach, we could update all the game objects in each bucket by kicking them off as jobs, and let the job system schedule them across the available cores (and interspersed with whatever other jobs happen to be running at the time). This is roughly the technique employed in the Naughty Dog engine.

```

void UpdateBucket(int iBucket)
{
    job::Declaration aDecl[kMaxObjectsPerBucket];
    const int count = GetNumObjectsInBucket(iBucket);
    for (int jObject = 0; jObject < count; ++jObject)
    {
        job::Declaration& decl = aDecl[jObject];
        decl.m_pEntryPoint = UpdateGameObjectJob;
        decl.m_param = reinterpret_cast<uintptr_t>(
            GetGameObjectInBucket(iBucket, jObject));
    }
    job::KickJobsAndWait(aDecl, count);
}

```

Another way to deal with inter-object dependencies is to make them explicit. In this case, we would presumably have some way of declaring that game object A depends on game objects B, C and D, for example. These dependencies would form a simple *directed graph*. To update the game objects, we'd start by kicking off update jobs for all of the game objects with no dependencies on any other game object (i.e., those nodes of the dependency graph with no outgoing edges). As each job completes, we would walk to each dependent game object, and wait until all of its dependent objects' update jobs are complete. This process would repeat until the entire graph of game objects has been updated.

We can get into trouble with a graph of game object dependencies if the graph contains any *cycles*. A dependency cycle involving two or more game objects indicates that those objects cannot simply be updated in dependency order. To handle cycles, we either need to eliminate them by changing the way the objects interact (turning our graph into a *directed acyclic graph* or DAG), or we need to isolate these "clumps" of cyclically-dependent game objects and update each clump serially on a single core.

#### 16.7.4.2 Asynchronous Game Object Updates

We said in Section 16.7.1 that game object updates are usually done asynchronously. For example, rather than calling a *blocking function* to cast a ray, we would kick off an asynchronous *request* for a ray cast, and the collision subsystem would process this request at some future time during the frame. Later in the frame, or next frame, we would pick up the results of the ray cast, and act on them.

This approach continues to work well when the game objects themselves are also updating concurrently (across multiple cores). However, if our job system is based on *user-level threads* (coroutines or fibers), then *blocking calls* become a viable option, too. This works because a coroutine has the unique property of being able to *yield* (to another coroutine) and then continue where it left off at some later time (when another coroutine yields back to it). In a fiber-based job system (like the one used in the Naughty Dog engine), jobs aren't coroutines *per se*, but they do have this same property: A fiber-based job is able to "go to sleep" midway through its execution, and later to be "woken up" to continue execution where it left off.

Here's an example ray cast implemented using a blocking call, in a coroutine- or fiber-based job system:

```
SomeGameObject::Update()
{
    // ...

    // Cast a ray to see if the player has line of sight
    // to the enemy.
    RayCastResult r = castRayAndWait(playerPos, enemyPos);

    // zzz...

    // Wake up when ray cast result is ready!

    // Now process the results...
    if (r.hitSomething() && isEnemy(r.getHitObject()))
    {
        // Player can see the enemy.
        // ...
    }

    // ...
}
```

Notice that this implementation looks nearly identical to the example of what *not to do* that we presented in Section 16.7.2! Thanks to user-level threads, the

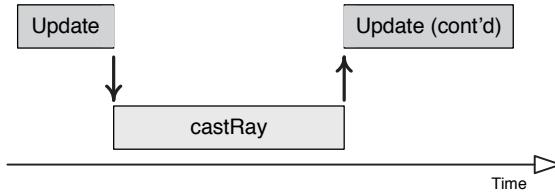


Figure 16.20. If our job system is implemented with user-level threads, a job can be interrupted part-way through its execution in order to perform an asynchronous operation, and resumed once that operation has been completed.

execution of our job can make use of blocking function calls after all! Figure 16.20 illustrates what is happening: The job has effectively been cleaved into two parts—the portion that runs before the blocking ray cast call, and the portion that runs after.

This mechanism is what allows us to implement job system functions like `WaitForCounter()` `KickJobsAndWait()`. These functions *block* their jobs, putting them to sleep and permitting other jobs to execute while they wait for the counter(s) in question to hit zero.

#### 16.7.4.3 Locking During Game Object Updates

Bucketed updates go a long way to solving the problems that arise due to inter-object dependencies. They ensure that the game objects are updated in the correct global order (e.g., the train car updates before the objects sitting on it). And they help with inter-object state queries. An object in bucket  $B$  can safely query the state of objects in buckets  $B - \Delta$ , and those in buckets  $B + \Delta$  (where  $\Delta > 0$ ), because in both cases we know that those objects won't be updating concurrently with the objects in bucket  $B$ . There is still a one-frame-off issue, however: If on frame  $N$ , an object in bucket  $B$  queries an object in bucket  $B - \Delta$ , it will see the state of that object on frame  $N$ ; however, if it queries an object in bucket  $B + \Delta$ , it will see the state of that object as it was last frame (on frame  $N - 1$ ) because it won't have updated yet.

So, with a bucketed updating system, we can safely access game objects in *other* buckets without needing any kind of lock. However, what about when game objects in the *same* bucket need to interact or query one another? Here, we are once again prone to concurrent race conditions, so we can't just do nothing and cross our fingers.

We might be tempted to introduce a single, global lock (mutex or spin lock) into the game object system. Every game object within one particular bucket could acquire this lock, perform its update (possibly interacting with other

game objects in the process), and then release the lock when it's done. This would certainly guarantee that inter-object communication would be free from data races. However, it would also have the highly undesirable effect of *serializing* the updates of all game objects within the bucket, reducing our "concurrent" game object update in effect to a single-threaded update! This occurs because the lock would prevent any two game objects from ever updating concurrently, even when those two objects don't interact in any way.

There are all sorts of other ways to tackle this problem. One approach we tried early on at Naughty Dog was to introduce a global locking system, but to only acquire the lock whenever a game object handle was *dereferenced* within a game object's update function. Game objects in our engine are referenced by handle rather than by raw pointers, to support memory defragmentation. So to get a raw pointer to a game object, one must first dereference its handle. This is a perfect opportunity to detect that one game object intends to interact with another. By only taking locks when interactions are actually likely to happen, we were able to recover some degree of concurrency. However, this locking system was complex, difficult to work with, and still led to inefficient use of the CPU cores during bucket updates.

#### 16.7.4.4 Object Snapshots

Upon analyzing the inter-dependencies between the game objects in a real game engine, we can make an observation: A large majority of the interactions between game objects during their updates are state queries. In other words, game object A reaches out and queries the current state of game objects B, C, and so on. When game object A does this, it really only needs to have access to a *read-only copy* of the states of these other game objects. It needn't interact with the objects themselves (which might or might not be concurrently updating at the moment of such interactions).

Given this state of affairs, it makes sense to arrange for each game object to provide a *snapshot* of its relevant state information—a read-only copy which can be queried, without locks or fear of data races, by any other game object in the system. Snapshots are really just an example of the *state caching* technique we described in Section 16.6.3.4. We used this approach at Naughty Dog for *The Last of Us: Remastered*, *Uncharted 4: A Thief's End* and *Uncharted: The Lost Legacy*.

Here's how snapshots work in the Naughty Dog engine: At the start of each bucket update, we ask each game object to update its snapshot. These updates never query the state of other game objects, so they can be run concurrently without locks. Once all updates are complete, we kick off concurrent jobs to update the game objects' internal states. These too run concurrently.

Whenever a game object in bucket  $B$  needs to query the state of another object, it now has three options:

1. When querying an object in buckets  $B - \Delta$ , it can query it directly or query the object's snapshot.
2. When querying an object in bucket  $B$ , it queries the snapshot.
3. When querying an object in buckets  $B + \Delta$ , it again can query either the object itself, or its snapshot.

#### 16.7.4.5 Handling Inter-Object Mutation

Snapshots allow us to avoid locks when game objects *read* one another's game state. However, they do nothing to address the data races that can occur when one game object needs to *mutate* the state of another object in the same bucket. To handle these situations, Naughty Dog applied a combination of the following rules of thumb and techniques:

- Minimize inter-object mutation wherever possible.
- Inter-object mutation *between* buckets is safe, but
- inter-object mutation *within* a bucket must be handled carefully...
  - with locks,
  - or by requesting mutations by placing them onto a request queue, rather than applying the mutations immediately. The request queue is itself protected by a lock, and the handling of the requests in the queue is deferred until after the bucket update has completed.

Another option for inter-object mutation within a single bucket is to spawn a job in the *next* bucket whose job it is to synchronize these mutation operations. By deferring the action to a later bucket, we can be certain that the objects in question have completed their update and will not be updating concurrently with our work. We did this at Naughty Dog to handle synchronized melee moves involving the player and an NPC.

#### 16.7.4.6 Future Improvements

The bucketed updating system we've described in this section isn't perfect by any means. Bucketed updates aren't as efficient as they could be, because each transition between buckets introduces a *sync point* into the game loop. At these sync points, some CPU cores may sit idle while we wait for all game objects in the bucket to complete their updates.

Snapshotting is also an imperfect solution to within-bucket dependency problems, because it only handles read-only queries; locks are still required for inter-object mutations. The snapshots themselves can be expensive to update as well (although one easy-to-apply optimization here is to only generate snapshots for objects on an as-needed basis).

There are lots of other ways to tackle these problems. The best way to discover how to update game objects concurrently is to experiment. Hopefully we've presented some useful ideas in this section that will pave the way forward as you experiment for yourself!

## 16.8 Events and Message-Passing

Games are inherently event-driven. An *event* is anything of interest that happens during gameplay. An explosion going off, the player being sighted by an enemy, a health pack getting picked up—these are all events. Games generally need a way to (a) notify interested game objects when an event occurs and (b) arrange for those objects to respond to interesting events in various ways—we call this *handling* the event. Different types of game objects will respond in different ways to an event. The way in which a particular type of game object responds to an event is a crucial aspect of its behavior, just as important as how the object's state changes over time in the absence of any external inputs. For example, the behavior of the ball in *Pong* is governed in part by its velocity, in part by how it reacts to the event of striking a wall or paddle and bouncing off, and in part by what happens when the ball is missed by one of the players.

### 16.8.1 The Problem with Statically Typed Function Binding

One simple way to notify a game object that an event has occurred is to simply call a method (member function) on the object. For example, when an explosion goes off, we could query the game world for all objects within the explosion's damage radius and then call a virtual function named something like `OnExplosion()` on each one. This is illustrated by the following pseudocode:

```
void Explosion::Update()
{
    // ...

    if (ExplosionJustWentOff())
    {
        GameObjectCollection damagedObjects;
```

```
    g_world.QueryObjectsInSphere(GetDamageSphere(),
                                  damagedObjects);

    for (each object in damagedObjects)
    {
        object.OnExplosion(*this);
    }
}

// ...
}
```

The call to `OnExplosion()` is an example of *statically typed late function binding*. Function binding is the process of determining which function implementation to invoke at a particular call location—the implementation is, in effect, bound to the call. Virtual functions, such as our `OnExplosion()` event-handling function, are said to be *late-bound*. This means that the compiler doesn't actually know *which* of the many possible implementations of the function is going to be invoked at compile time—only at runtime, when the type of the target object is known, will the appropriate implementation be invoked. We say that a virtual function call is *statically typed* because the compiler *does* know which implementation to invoke given a particular object type. It knows, for example, that `Tank::OnExplosion()` should be called when the target object is a `Tank` and that `Crate::OnExplosion()` should be called when the object is a `Crate`.

The problem with statically typed function binding is that it introduces a degree of inflexibility into our implementation. For one thing, the virtual `OnExplosion()` function requires all game objects to inherit from a common base class. Moreover, it requires that base class to *declare* the virtual function `OnExplosion()`, even if not all game objects can respond to explosions. In fact, using statically typed virtual functions as event handlers would require our base `GameObject` class to declare virtual functions for *all possible events* in the game! This would make adding new events to the system difficult. It precludes events from being created in a data-driven manner—for example, within the world editing tool. It also provides no mechanism for certain types of objects, or certain individual object instances, to register interest in certain events but not others. Every object in the game, in effect, “knows” about every possible event, even if its response to the event is to do nothing (i.e., to implement an empty, do-nothing event handler function).

What we really need for our event handlers, then, is *dynamically typed late function binding*. Some programming languages support this feature natively (e.g., C#'s delegates). In other languages, the engineers must implement it

manually. There are many ways to approach this problem, but most boil down to taking a data-driven approach. In other words, we encapsulate the notion of a function call in an object and pass that object around at runtime in order to implement a dynamically typed late-bound function call.

### 16.8.2 Encapsulating an Event in an Object

An event is really comprised of two components: its *type* (explosion, friend injured, player spotted, health pack picked up, etc.) and its *arguments*. The arguments provide specifics about the event. (How much damage did the explosion do? Which friend was injured? Where was the player spotted? How much health was in the health pack?) We can encapsulate these two components in an object, as shown by the following rather over-simplified code snippet:

```
struct Event
{
    const U32 MAX_ARGS = 8;

    EventType m_type;
    U32 m_numArgs;
    EventArg m_aArgs[MAX_ARGS];
};
```

Some game engines call these things *messages* or *commands* instead of *events*. These names emphasize the idea that informing objects about an event is essentially equivalent to sending a message or command to those objects.

Practically speaking, event objects are usually not quite this simple. We might implement different types of events by deriving them from a root event class, for example. The arguments might be implemented as a linked list or a dynamically allocated array capable of containing arbitrary numbers of arguments, and the arguments might be of various data types.

Encapsulating an event (or message) in an object has many benefits:

- *Single event handling function.* Because the event object encodes its type internally, any number of different event types can be represented by an instance of a single class (or the root class of an inheritance hierarchy). This means that we only need *one* virtual function to handle *all* types of events (e.g., `virtual void OnEvent(Event& event);`).
- *Persistence.* Unlike a function call, whose arguments go out of scope after the function returns, an event object stores both its type and its arguments as data. An event object therefore has persistence. It can be stored in a queue for handling at a later time, copied and broadcast to multiple receivers and so on.

- *Blind event forwarding.* An object can forward an event that it receives to another object without having to “know” anything about the event. For example, if a vehicle receives a Dismount event, it can forward it to all of its passengers, thereby allowing them to dismount the vehicle, even though the vehicle itself knows nothing about dismounting.

This idea of encapsulating an event/message/command in an object is commonplace in many fields of computer science. It is found not only in game engines but in other systems like graphical user interfaces, distributed communication systems and many others. The well-known “Gang of Four” design patterns book [19] calls this the Command design pattern.

### 16.8.3 Event Types

There are many ways to distinguish between different types of events. One simple approach in C or C++ is to define a global enum that maps each event type to a unique integer.

```
enum EventType
{
    EVENT_TYPE_LEVEL_STARTED,
    EVENT_TYPE_PLAYER_SPAWNED,
    EVENT_TYPE_ENEMY_SPOTTED,
    EVENT_TYPE_EXPLOSION,
    EVENT_TYPE_BULLET_HIT,
    // ...
}
```

This approach enjoys the benefits of simplicity and efficiency (since integers are usually extremely fast to read, write and compare). However, it also suffers from two problems. First, knowledge of *all* event types in the entire game is centralized, which can be seen as a form of broken encapsulation (for better or for worse—opinions on this vary). Second, the event types are hard-coded, which means new event types cannot easily be defined in a data-driven manner. Third, enumerators are just indices, so they are order-dependent. If someone accidentally adds a new event type in the middle of the list, the indices of all subsequent event ids change, which can cause problems if event ids are stored in data files. As such, an enumeration-based event typing system works well for small demos and prototypes but does not scale very well at all to real games.

Another way to encode event types is via strings. This approach is totally free-form, and it allows a new event type to be added to the system by merely thinking up a name for it. But it suffers from many problems, including a

strong potential for event name conflicts, the possibility of events not working because of a simple typo, increased memory requirements for the strings themselves, and the relatively high cost of comparing strings relative to that of comparing integers. Hashed string ids can be used instead of raw strings to eliminate the performance problems and increased memory requirements, but they do nothing to address event name conflicts or typos. Nonetheless, the extreme flexibility and data-driven nature of a string- or string-id-based event system is considered worth the risks by many game teams, including Naughty Dog.

Tools can be implemented to help avoid some of the risks involved in using strings to identify events. For example, a central database of all event type names could be maintained. A user interface could be provided to permit new event types to be added to the database. Naming conflicts could be automatically detected when a new event is added, and the user could be disallowed from adding duplicate event types. When selecting a preexisting event, the tool could provide a sorted list in a drop-down combo box rather than requiring the user to remember the name and type it manually. The event database could also store metadata about each type of event, including documentation about its purpose and proper usage and information about the number and types of arguments it supports. This approach can work really well, but we should not forget to account for the costs of setting up and maintaining such a system, as they are not insignificant.

#### 16.8.4 Event Arguments

The arguments of an event usually act like the argument list of a function, providing information about the event that might be useful to the receiver. Event arguments can be implemented in all sorts of ways.

We might derive a new type of `Event` class for each unique type of event. The arguments can then be hard-coded as data members of the class. For example:

```
class ExplosionEvent : public Event
{
    Point  m_center;
    float  m_damage;
    float  m_radius;
};
```

Another approach is to store the event's arguments as a collection of *variants*. A variant is a data object that is capable of holding more than one type of data. It usually stores information about the data type that is currently being stored, as well as the data itself. In an event system, we might want our argu-

ments to be integers, floating-point values, Booleans or hashed string ids. So in C or C++, we could define a variant class that looks something like this:

```
struct Variant
{
    enum Type
    {
        TYPE_INTEGER,
        TYPE_FLOAT,
        TYPE_BOOL,
        TYPE_STRING_ID,
        TYPE_COUNT // number of unique types
    };

    Type m_type;

    union
    {
        I32    m_asInteger;
        F32    m_asFloat;
        bool   m_asBool;
        U32    m_asStringId;
    };
};
```

The collection of variants within an Event might be implemented as an array with a small, fixed maximum size (say 4, 8 or 16 elements). This imposes an arbitrary limit on the number of arguments that can be passed with an event, but it also side-steps the problems of dynamically allocating memory for each event's argument payload, which can be a big benefit, especially in memory-constrained console games.

The collection of variants might be implemented as a dynamically sized data structure, like a dynamically sized array (like `std::vector`) or a linked list (like `std::list`). This provides a great deal of additional flexibility over a fixed size design, but it incurs the cost of dynamic memory allocation. A pool allocator could be used to great effect here, presuming that each Variant is the same size.

#### 16.8.4.1 Event Arguments as Key-Value Pairs

A fundamental problem with an *indexed* collection of event arguments is order dependency. Both the sender and the receiver of an event must “know” that the arguments are listed in a specific order. This can lead to confusion and bugs. For example, a required argument might be accidentally omitted or an extra one added.

This problem can be avoided by implementing event arguments as key-value pairs. Each argument is uniquely identified by its key, so the arguments can appear in any order, and optional arguments can be omitted altogether. The argument collection might be implemented as a closed or open hash table, with the keys used to hash into the table, or it might be an array, linked list or binary search tree of key-value pairs. These ideas are illustrated in Table 16.1. The possibilities are numerous, and the specific choice of implementation is largely unimportant as long as the game's particular requirements have been effectively and efficiently met.

### 16.8.5 Event Handlers

When an event, message or command is received by a game object, it needs to respond to the event in some way. This is known as *handling* the event, and it is usually implemented by a function or a snippet of script code called an *event handler*. (We'll have more to learn about game scripting later on.)

Often an event handler is a single native virtual function or script function that is capable of handling all types of events (e.g., `virtual void OnEvent(Event& event)`). In this case, the function usually contains some kind of switch statement or cascaded if/else-if clause to handle the various types of events that might be received. A typical event handler function might look something like this:

```
virtual void SomeObject::OnEvent(Event& event)
{
    switch (event.GetType())
    {
        case SID("EVENT_ATTACK") :
            RespondToAttack(event.GetAttackInfo());
            break;

        case SID("EVENT_HEALTH_PACK") :
```

Key	Type	Value
"event"	stringid	"explosion"
"radius"	float	10.3
"damage"	int	25
"grenade"	bool	true

Table 16.1. The arguments of an event object can be implemented as a collection of key-value pairs. The keys prevent order-dependency problems because each event argument is uniquely identified by its key.

```
    AddHealth(event.GetHealthPack().GetHealth());
    break;

    // ...

default:
    // Unrecognized event.
    break;
}
```

Alternatively, we might implement a suite of handler functions, one for each type of event (e.g., `OnThis()`, `OnThat()`, ...). However, as we discussed above, a proliferation of event handler functions can be problematic.

A Windows GUI toolkit called Microsoft Foundation Classes (MFC) was well-known for its *message maps*—a system that permitted any Windows message to be bound at runtime to an arbitrary non-virtual or virtual function. This avoided the need to declare handlers for all possible Windows messages in a single root class, while at the same time avoiding the big switch statement that is commonplace in non-MFC Windows message-handling functions. But such a system is probably not worth the hassle—a switch statement works really well and is simple and clear.

### 16.8.6 Unpacking an Event's Arguments

The example above glosses over one important detail—namely, how to extract data from the event's argument list in a type-safe manner. For example, `event.GetHealthPack()` presumably returns a `HealthPack` game object, which in turn we presume provides a member function called `GetHealth()`. This implies that the root `Event` class “knows” about health packs (as well as, by extension, every other type of event argument in the game). This is probably an impractical design. In a real engine, there might be derived `Event` classes that provide convenient data-access APIs such as `GetHealthPack()`. Or the event handler might have to unpack the data manually and cast them to the appropriate types. This latter approach raises type safety concerns, although practically speaking it usually isn't a huge problem because the type of the event is always known when the arguments are unpacked.

### 16.8.7 Chains of Responsibility

Game objects are almost always dependent upon one another in various ways. For example, game objects usually reside in a transformation hierarchy, which allows an object to rest on another object or be held in the hand of a character. Game objects might also be made up of multiple interacting components,

leading to a star topology or a loosely connected “cloud” of component objects. A sports game might maintain a list of all the characters on each team. In general, we can envision the interrelationships between game objects as one or more *relationship graphs* (remembering that a list and a tree are just special cases of a graph). A few examples of relationship graphs are shown in Figure 16.21.

It often makes sense to be able to pass events from one object to the next within these relationship graphs. For example, when a vehicle receives an event, it may be convenient to pass the event to all of the passengers riding on the vehicle, and those passengers may wish to forward the event to the objects in their inventories. When a multicomponent game object receives an event, it may be necessary to pass the event to all of the components so that they all get a crack at handling it. Or when an event is received by a character in a sports game, we might want to pass it on to all of his or her teammates as well.

The technique of forwarding events within a graph of objects is a common design pattern in object-oriented, event-driven programming, sometimes referred to as *Chain of Responsibility* [19]. Usually, the order in which the event is passed around the system is predetermined by the engineers. The event is passed to the first object in the chain, and the event handler returns a Boolean or an enumerated code indicating whether or not it recognized and handled the event. If the event is consumed by a receiver, the process of event forwarding stops; otherwise, the event is forwarded on to the next receiver in the chain. An event handler that supports Chain of Responsibility style event forwarding might look something like this:

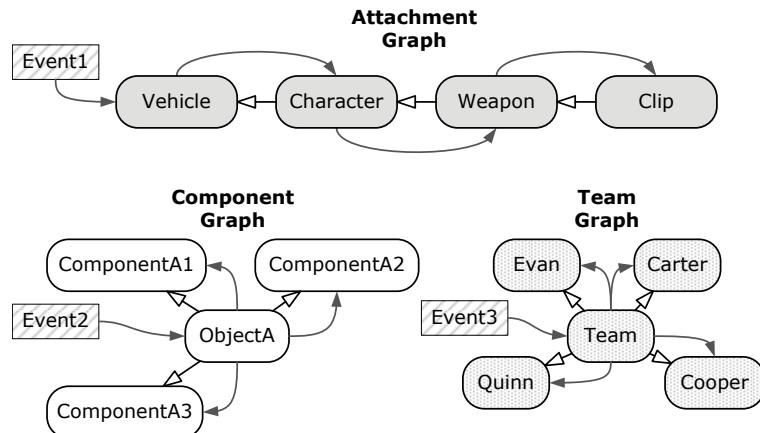


Figure 16.21. Game objects are interrelated in various ways, and we can draw graphs depicting these relationships. Any such graph might serve as a distribution channel for events.

```
virtual bool SomeObject::OnEvent(Event& event)
{
    // Call the base class' handler first.
    if (BaseClass::OnEvent(event))
    {
        return true;
    }

    // Now try to handle the event myself.
    switch (event.GetType())
    {
        case SID("EVENT_ATTACK"):
            RespondToAttack(event.GetAttackInfo());
            return false; // OK to forward this event to others.

        case SID("EVENT_HEALTH_PACK"):
            AddHealth(event.GetHealthPack().GetHealth());
            return true; // I consumed the event; don't forward.

        // ...

        default:
            return false; // I didn't recognize this event.
    }
}
```

When a derived class overrides an event handler, it can be appropriate to call the base class's implementation as well if the class is augmenting but not replacing the base class's response. In other situations, the derived class might be entirely replacing the response of the base class, in which case the base class's handler should not be called. This is another kind of responsibility chain.

Event forwarding has other applications as well. For example, we might want to multicast an event to all objects within a radius of influence (for an explosion, for example). To implement this, we can leverage our game world's object query mechanism to find all objects within the relevant sphere and then forward the event to all of the returned objects.

#### 16.8.8 Registering Interest in Events

It's reasonably safe to say that most objects in a game do not need to respond to every possible event. Most types of game objects have a relatively small set of events in which they are "interested." This can lead to inefficiencies when multicasting or broadcasting events, because we need to iterate over a group

of objects and call each one's event handler, even if the object is not interested in that particular kind of event.

One way to overcome this inefficiency is to permit game objects to *register interest* in particular kinds of events. For example, we could maintain one linked list of interested game objects for each distinct type of event, or each game object could maintain a bit array, in which the setting of each bit corresponds to whether or not the object is interested in a particular type of event. By doing this, we can avoid calling the event handlers of any objects that do not care about the event.

Even better, we might be able to restrict our original game object query to include only those objects that are interested in the event we wish to multicast. For example, when an explosion goes off, we can ask the collision system for all objects that are within the damage radius *and* that can respond to Explosion events. This can save time overall, because we avoid iterating over objects that we know aren't interested in the event we're multicasting. Whether or not such an approach will produce a net gain depends on how the query mechanism is implemented and the relative costs of filtering the objects during the query versus filtering them during the multicast iteration.

### 16.8.9 To Queue or Not to Queue

Most game engines provide a mechanism for handling events immediately when they are sent. In addition to this, some engines also permit events to be queued for handling at an arbitrary future time. Event queuing has some attractive benefits, but it also increases the complexity of the event system significantly and poses some unique problems. We'll investigate the pros and cons of event queuing in the following sections and learn how such systems are implemented in the process.

#### 16.8.9.1 Some Benefits of Event Queuing

The following sections outline some of the benefits of event queuing.

##### *Control over When Events Are Handled*

We have seen that we must be careful to update engine subsystems and game objects in a specific order to ensure correct behavior and maximize runtime performance. In the same sense, certain kinds of events may be highly sensitive to exactly when within the game loop they are handled. If all events are handled immediately upon being sent, the event handler functions end up being called in unpredictable and difficult-to-control ways throughout the course of the game loop. By deferring events via an event queue, the engi-

neers can take steps to ensure that events are only handled when it is safe and appropriate to do so.

### *Ability to Post Events into the Future*

When an event is sent, the sender can usually specify a delivery time—for example, we might want the event to be handled later in the same frame, next frame or some number of seconds after it was sent. This feature amounts to an ability to post events into the future, and it has all sorts of interesting uses. We can implement a simple alarm clock by posting an event into the future. A periodic task, such as blinking a light every two seconds, can be executed by posting an event whose handler performs the periodic task and then posts a new event of the same type one time period into the future.

To implement the ability to post events into the future, each event is stamped with a desired delivery time prior to being queued. An event is only handled when the current game clock matches or exceeds its delivery time. An easy way to make this work is to sort the events in the queue in order of increasing delivery time. Each frame, the first event on the queue can be inspected and its delivery time checked. If the delivery time is in the future, we abort immediately because we know that all subsequent events are also in the future. But if we see an event whose delivery time is now or in the past, we extract it from the queue and handle it. This continues until an event is found whose delivery time is in the future. The following pseudocode illustrates this process:

```
// This function is called at least once per frame. Its
// job is to dispatch all events whose delivery time is
// now or in the past.

void EventQueue::DispatchEvents(F32 currentTime)
{
    // Look at, but don't remove, the next event on the
    // queue.
    Event* pEvent = PeekNextEvent();

    while (pEvent
        && pEvent->GetDeliveryTime() <= currentTime)
    {
        // Remove the event from the queue.
        RemoveNextEvent();

        // Dispatch it to its receiver's event handler.
        pEvent->Dispatch();

        // Peek at the next event on the queue (again
```

```
    // without removing it).
    pEvent = PeekNextEvent();
}
}
```

### *Event Prioritization*

Even if our events are sorted by delivery time in the event queue, the order of delivery is still ambiguous when two or more events have exactly the same delivery time. This can happen more often than you might think, because it is quite common for events' delivery times to be quantized to an integral number of frames. For example, if two senders request that events be dispatched "this frame," "next frame" or "in seven frames from now," then those events will have identical delivery times.

One way to resolve these ambiguities is to assign *priorities* to events. Whenever two events have the same time stamp, the one with higher priority should always be serviced first. This is easily accomplished by first sorting the event queue by increasing delivery times and then sorting each group of events with identical delivery times in order of decreasing priority.

We could allow up to four billion unique priority levels by encoding our priorities in a raw, unsigned 32-bit integer, or we could limit ourselves to only two or three unique priority levels (e.g., low, medium and high). In every game engine, there exists some minimum number of priority levels that will resolve all real ambiguities in the system. It's usually best to aim as close to this minimum as possible. With a very large number of priority levels, it can become a small nightmare to figure out which event will be handled first in any given situation. However, the needs of every game's event system are different, and your mileage may vary.

#### 16.8.9.2 Some Problems with Event Queuing

##### *Increased Event System Complexity*

In order to implement a queued event system, we need more code, additional data structures and more complex algorithms than would be necessary to implement an immediate event system. Increased complexity usually translates into longer development times and a higher cost to maintain and evolve the system during development of the game.

##### *Deep-Copying Events and Their Arguments*

With an immediate event handling approach, the data in an event's arguments need only persist for the duration of the event handling function (and any

functions it may call). This means that the event and its argument data can reside literally anywhere in memory, including on the call stack. For example, we could write a function that looks something like this:

```
void SendExplosionEventToObject(GameObject& receiver)
{
    // Allocate event args on the call stack.
    Point centerPoint(-2.0f, 31.5f, 10.0f);
    F32    damage = 5.0f;
    F32    radius = 2.0f;

    // Allocate the event on the call stack.
    Event event("Explosion");
    event.SetArgFloat("Damage", damage);
    event.SetArgPoint("Center", &centerPoint);
    event.SetArgFloat("Radius", radius);

    // Send the event, which causes the receiver's event
    // handler to be called immediately, as shown below.
    event.Send(receiver);
    //{
    //    receiver.OnEvent(event);
    //}
}
```

When an event is queued, its arguments must persist beyond the scope of the sending function. This implies that we must copy the entire event object prior to storing the event in the queue. We must perform a *deep-copy*, meaning that we copy not only the event object itself but its entire argument payload as well, including any data to which it may be pointing. Deep-copying the event ensures that there are no dangling references to data that exist only in the sending function's scope, and it permits the event to be stored indefinitely. The example event-sending function shown above still looks basically the same when using a queued event system, but as you can see in the italicized code below, the implementation of the `Event::Queue()` function is a bit more complex than its `Send()` counterpart:

```
void SendExplosionEventToObject(GameObject& receiver)
{
    // We can still allocate event args on the call
    // stack.
    Point centerPoint(-2.0f, 31.5f, 10.0f);
    F32    damage = 5.0f;
    F32    radius = 2.0f;
```

```
// Still OK to allocate the event on the call stack
Event event("Explosion"
event.SetFloat("Damage", damage);
event.SetArgPoint("Center", &centerPoint);
event.SetFloat("Radius", radius);

// This stores the event in the receiver's queue for
// handling at a future time. Note how the event
// must be deep-copied prior to being enqueued, since
// the original event resides on the call stack and
// will go out of scope when this function returns.
event.Queue(receiver);
//{
//    Event* pEventCopy = DeepCopy(event);
//    receiver.EnqueueEvent(pEventCopy);
//}
}
```

### *Dynamic Memory Allocation for Queued Events*

Deep-copying of event objects implies a need for dynamic memory allocation, and as we've already noted many times, dynamic allocation is undesirable in a game engine due to its potential cost and its tendency to fragment memory. Nonetheless, if we want to queue events, we'll need to dynamically allocate memory for them.

As with all dynamic allocation in a game engine, it's best if we can select a fast and fragmentation-free allocator. We might be able to use a *pool allocator*, but this will only work if all of our event objects are the same size and if their argument lists are comprised of data elements that are themselves all the same size. This may well be the case—for example, the arguments might each be a *Variant*, as described above. If our event objects and/or their arguments can vary in size, a *small memory allocator* might be applicable. (Recall that a small memory allocator maintains multiple pools, one for each of a few pre-determined small allocation sizes.) When designing a queued event system, always be careful to take dynamic allocation requirements into account.

Other designs are possible, of course. For example, at Naughty Dog we allocate queued events as relocatable memory blocks. See Section 6.2.2.2 for more information on relocatable memory.

### *Debugging Difficulties*

With queued events, the event handler is not called directly by the sender of that event. So, unlike in immediate event handling, the call stack does not tell us where the event came from. We cannot walk up the call stack in the debugger to inspect the state of the sender or the circumstances under which the event was sent. This can make debugging deferred events a bit tricky, and

things get even more difficult when events are forwarded from one object to another.

Some engines store debugging information that forms a paper trail of the event's travels throughout the system, but no matter how you slice it, event debugging is usually much easier in the absence of queuing.

Event queuing also leads to interesting and hard-to-track-down *race condition* bugs. We may need to pepper multiple event dispatches throughout our game loop, to ensure that events are delivered without incurring unwanted one-frame delays yet still ensuring that game objects are updated in the proper order during the frame. For example, during the animation update, we might detect that a particular animation has run to completion. This might cause an event to be sent whose handler wants to play a new animation. Clearly, we want to avoid a one-frame delay between the end of the first animation and the start of the next. To make this work, we need to update animation clocks first (so that the end of the animation can be detected and the event sent); then we should dispatch events (so that the event handler has a chance to request a new animation), and finally we can start animation blending (so that the first frame of the new animation can be processed and displayed). This is illustrated in the code snippet below:

```
while (true) // main game loop
{
    // ...

    // Update animation clocks. This may detect the end
    // of a clip, and cause EndOfAnimation events to
    // be sent.
    g_animationEngine.UpdateLocalClocks(dt);

    // Next, dispatch events. This allows an
    // EndOfAnimation event handler to start up a new
    // animation this frame if desired.
    g_eventSystem.DispatchEvents();

    // Finally, start blending all currently playing
    // animations (including any new clips started
    // earlier this frame).
    g_animationEngine.StartAnimationBlending();

    // ...
}
```

### 16.8.10 Some Problems with Immediate Event Sending

Not queuing events also has its share of issues. For example, immediate event handling can lead to extremely deep call stacks. Object A might send object B an event, and in its event handler, B might send another event, which might send another event, and another and so on. In a game engine that supports immediate event handling, it's not uncommon to see a call stack that looks something like this:

```
...
ShoulderAngel::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Character::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Car::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
HandleSoundEffect()
AnimationEngine::PlayAnimation()
Event::Send()
Character::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Character::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Character::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Car::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Car::OnEvent()
Event::Send()
Car::Update()
GameWorld::UpdateObjectsInBucket()
Engine::GameLoop()
main()
```

A deep call stack like this can exhaust available stack space in extreme cases (especially if we have an infinite loop of event sending), but the real crux of the problem here is that every event handler function must be written to be fully *re-entrant*. This means that the event handler can be called recursively without any ill side-effects. As a contrived example, imagine a function that increments the value of a global variable. If the global is supposed to be incremented only once per frame, then this function is *not* re-entrant, because multiple recursive calls to the function will increment the variable multiple times.

### 16.8.11 Data-Driven Event/Message-Passing Systems

Event systems give the game programmer a great deal of flexibility over and above what can be accomplished with the statically typed function calling mechanisms provided by languages like C and C++. However, we can do better. In our discussions thus far, the logic for sending and receiving events is still hard-coded and therefore under the exclusive control of the engineers. If we could make our event system data-driven, we could extend its power into the hands of our game designers.

There are many ways to make an event system data-driven. Starting with the extreme of an entirely hard-coded (non-data-driven) event system, we could imagine providing some simple data-driven configurability. For example, designers might be allowed to configure how individual objects, or entire classes of object, respond to certain events. In the world editor, we can imagine selecting an object and then bringing up a scrolling list of all possible events that it might receive. For each one, the designer could use drop-down combo boxes and check boxes to control if, and how, the object responds, by selecting from a set of hard-coded, predefined choices. For example, given the event “PlayerSpotted,” AI-controlled characters might be configured to do one of the following actions: run away, attack or ignore the event altogether. The event systems of some real commercial game engines are implemented in essentially this way.

At the other end of the gamut, our engine might provide the game designers with a simple scripting language (a topic we’ll explore in detail in Section 16.9). In this case, the designer can literally write code that defines how a particular kind of game object will respond to a particular kind of event. In a scripted model, the designers are really just programmers (working with a somewhat less powerful but also easier-to-use and hopefully less error-prone language than the engineers), so anything is possible. Designers might define new types of events, send events and receive and handle events in arbitrary ways. This is what we do at Naughty Dog.

The problem with a simple, configurable event system is that it can severely limit what the game designers are capable of doing on their own, without the help of a programmer. On the other hand, a fully scripted solution has its own share of problems: Many game designers are not professional software engineers by training, so some designers find learning and using a scripting language a daunting task. Designers are also probably more prone to introducing bugs into the game than their engineer counterparts, unless they have practiced scripting or programming for some time. This can lead to some nasty surprises during alpha.

As a result, some game engines aim for a middle ground. They employ sophisticated graphical user interfaces to provide a great deal of flexibility without going so far as to provide users with a full-fledged, free-form scripting language. One approach is to provide a flowchart-style graphical programming language. The idea behind such a system is to provide the user with a limited and controlled set of atomic operations from which to choose but with plenty of freedom to wire them up in arbitrary ways. For example, in response to an event like “PlayerSpotted,” the designer could wire up a flowchart that causes a character to retreat to the nearest cover point, play an animation, wait 5 seconds, and then attack. A GUI can also provide error-checking and validation to help ensure that bugs aren’t inadvertently introduced. Unreal’s Blueprints is an example of such a system—see the following section for more details.

#### 16.8.11.1 Data Pathway Communication Systems

One of the problems with converting a function-call-like event system into a data-driven system is that different types of events tend to be incompatible. For example, let’s imagine a game in which the player has an electromagnetic pulse gun. This pulse causes lights and electronic devices to turn off, scares small animals and produces a shock wave that causes any nearby plants to sway. Each of these game object types may already have an event response that performs the desired behavior. A small animal might respond to the “Scare” event by scurrying away. An electronic device might respond to the “TurnOff” event by turning itself off. And plants might have an event handler for a “Wind” event that causes them to sway. The problem is that our EMP gun is not compatible with any of these objects’ event handlers. As a result, we end up having to implement a new event type, perhaps called “EMP,” and then write custom event handlers for every type of game object in order to respond to it.

One solution to this problem is to take the event type out of the equation and to think solely in terms of *sending streams of data* from one game object to another. In such a system, every game object has one or more *input ports* to which a data stream can be connected, and one or more output ports through which data can be sent to other objects. Provided we have some way of wiring these ports together, such as a graphical user interface in which ports can be connected to each other via rubber-band lines, then we can construct arbitrarily complex behaviors. Continuing our example, the EMP gun would have an output port, perhaps named “Fire,” that sends a Boolean signal. Most of the time, the port produces the value 0 (false), but when the gun is fired, it sends a brief (one-frame) pulse of the value 1 (true). The other game objects in

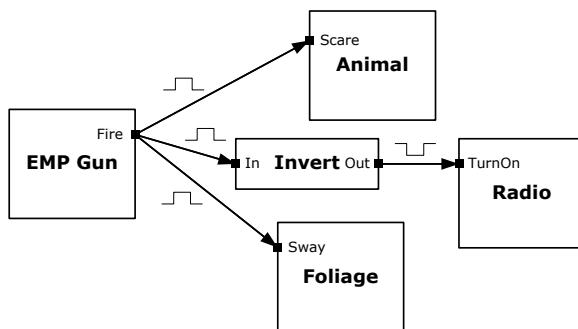


Figure 16.22. The EMP gun produces a 1 at its “Fire” output when fired. This can be connected to any input port that expects a Boolean value, in order to trigger the behavior associated with that input.

the world have binary input ports that trigger various responses. The animals might have a “Scare” input, the electronic devices a “TurnOn” input and the foliage objects a “Sway” input. If we connect the EMP gun’s “Fire” output port to the input ports of these game objects, we can cause the gun to trigger the desired behaviors. (Note that we’d have to pipe the gun’s “Fire” output through a node that *inverts* its input, prior to connecting it to the “TurnOn” input of the electronic devices. This is because we want them to turn *off* when the gun is firing.) The wiring diagram for this example is shown in Figure 16.22.

Programmers decide what kinds of port(s) each type of game object will have. Designers using the GUI can then wire these ports together in arbitrary ways in order to construct arbitrary behaviors in the game. The programmers also provide various other kinds of nodes for use within the graph, such as a node that inverts its input, a node that produces a sine wave or a node that outputs the current game time in seconds.

Various types of data might be sent along a data pathway. Some ports might produce or expect Boolean data, while others might be coded to produce or expect data in the form of a unit float. Still others might operate on 3D vectors, colors, integers and so on. It’s important in such a system to ensure that connections are only made between ports with compatible data types, or we must provide some mechanism for automatically converting data types when two differently typed ports are connected together. For example, connecting a unit-float output to a Boolean input might automatically cause any value less than 0.5 to be converted to false, and any value greater than or equal to 0.5 to be converted to true. This is the essence of GUI-based event systems like Unreal Engine 4’s Blueprints. A screenshot of Blueprints is shown in Figure 16.23.

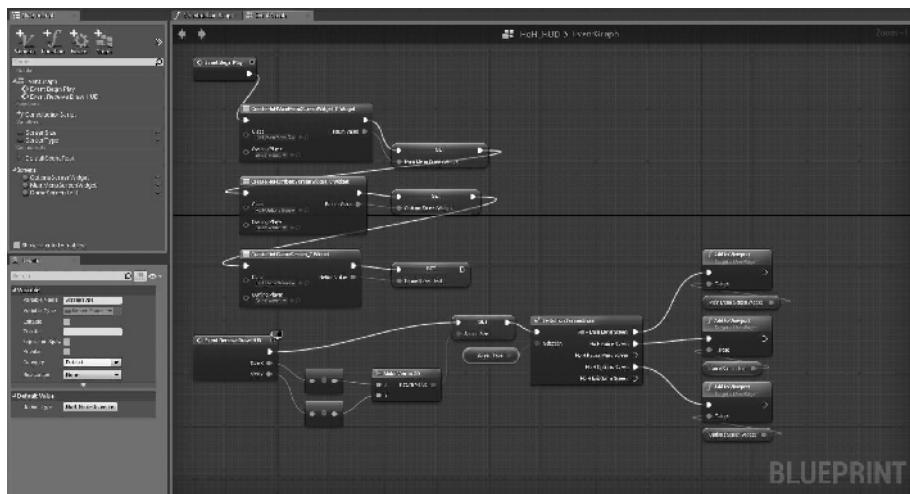


Figure 16.23. Unreal Engine 4's Blueprints.

### 16.8.11.2 Some Pros and Cons of GUI-Based Programming

The benefits of a graphical user interface over a straightforward, text-file-based scripting language are probably pretty obvious: ease of use, a gradual learning curve with the potential for in-tool help and tool tips to guide the user, and plenty of error-checking. The downsides of a flowchart style GUI include the high cost to develop, debug, and maintain such a system, the additional complexity, which can lead to annoying or sometimes schedule-killing bugs, and the fact that designers are sometimes limited in what they can do with the tool. A text-file-based programming language has some distinct advantages over a GUI-based programming system, including its relative simplicity (meaning that it is much less prone to bugs), the ability to easily search and replace within the source code, and the freedom of each user to choose the text editor with which they are most comfortable.

## 16.9 Scripting

A *scripting language* can be defined as a programming language whose primary purpose is to permit users to control and customize the behavior of a software application. For example, the Visual Basic language can be used to customize the behavior of Microsoft Excel; both MEL language and Python language can be used to customize the behavior of Maya. In the context of game engines, a

*scripting language* is a high-level, relatively easy-to-use programming language that provides its users with convenient access to most of the commonly used features of the engine. As such, a scripting language can be used by programmers and non-programmers alike to develop a new game or to customize—or “mod”—an existing game.

### 16.9.1 Runtime versus Data Definition

We should be careful to make an important distinction here. Game scripting languages generally come in two flavors:

- *Data-definition languages*. The primary purpose of a data-definition language is to permit users to create and populate data structures that are later consumed by the engine. Such languages are often declarative (see below) and are either executed or parsed offline or at runtime when the data is loaded into memory.
- *Runtime scripting language*. Runtime scripting languages are intended to be executed within the context of the engine at runtime. These languages are usually used to extend or customize the hard-coded functionality of the engine’s game object model and/or other engine systems.

In this section, we’ll focus primarily on using a runtime scripting language for the purpose of implementing gameplay features by extending and customizing the game’s object model.

### 16.9.2 Programming Language Characteristics

In our discussion of scripting languages, it will be helpful for us all to be on the same page with regard to programming language terminology. There are all sorts of programming languages out there, but they can be classified approximately according to a relatively small number of criteria. Let’s take a brief look at these criteria:

- *Interpreted versus compiled languages*. The source code of a *compiled* language is translated by a program called a compiler into machine code, which can be executed directly by the CPU. In contrast, the source code of an *interpreted* language is either parsed directly at runtime or is pre-compiled into platform-independent *byte code*, which is then executed by a *virtual machine* (VM) at runtime. A virtual machine acts like an emulation of an imaginary CPU, and byte code acts like a list of machine

language instructions that are consumed by this virtual CPU. The benefit of a virtual machine is that it can be quite easily ported to almost any hardware platform and embedded within a host application like a game engine. The biggest cost we pay for this flexibility is execution speed—a virtual machine usually executes its byte code instructions much more slowly than the native CPU executes its machine language instructions.

- *Imperative languages.* In an imperative language, a program is described by a sequence of instructions, each of which performs an operation and / or changes the state of data in memory. C and C++ are imperative languages.
- *Declarative languages.* A declarative language describes *what* is to be done but does not specify exactly *how* the result should be obtained. That decision is left up to the people implementing the language. Prolog is an example of a declarative language. Mark-up languages like HTML and TeX can also be classified as declarative languages.
- *Functional languages.* Functional languages, which are technically a subset of declarative languages, aim to avoid state altogether. In a functional language, programs are defined by a collection of functions. Each function produces its results with no side-effects (i.e., it causes no observable changes to the system, other than to produce its output data). A program is constructed by passing input data from one function to the next until the final desired result has been generated. These languages tend to be well-suited to implementing data processing pipelines. They also offer distinct advantages when implementing multithreaded applications, because with no mutable state, a functional language requires no mutex locking. OCaml, Haskell and F# are examples of functional languages.
- *Procedural versus object-oriented languages.* In a procedural language, the primary atom of program construction is the *procedure* (or *function*). These procedures and functions perform operations, calculate results and / or change the state of various data structures in memory. In contrast, an object-oriented language's primary unit of program construction is the *class*, a data structure that is tightly coupled with a set of procedures/functions that "know" how to manage and manipulate the data within that data structure.
- *Reflective languages.* In a reflective language, information about the data types, data member layouts, functions and hierarchical class relationships in the system is available for inspection at runtime. In a non-reflective language, the majority of this meta-information is known only

at compile time; only a very limited amount of it is exposed to the run-time code. C# is an example of a reflective language, while C and C++ are examples of non-reflective languages.

#### 16.9.2.1 Typical Characteristics of Game Scripting Languages

The characteristics that set a game *scripting* language apart from its *native* programming language brethren include:

- *Interpreted*. Most game scripting languages are interpreted by a virtual machine, not compiled. This choice is made in the interest of flexibility, portability and rapid iteration (see below). When code is represented as platform-independent byte code, it can easily be treated like data by the engine. It can be loaded into memory just like any other asset rather than requiring help from the operating system (as is necessary with a DLL on a PC platform or a PRX on the PlayStation 3, for example). Because the code is executed by a virtual machine rather than directly by the CPU, the game engine is afforded a great deal of flexibility regarding how and when script code will be run.
- *Lightweight*. Most game scripting languages have been designed for use in an embedded system. As such, their virtual machines tend to be simple, and their memory footprints tend to be quite small.
- *Support for rapid iteration*. Whenever native code is changed, the program must be recompiled and relinked, and the game must be shut down and rerun in order to see the effects of the changes (unless your development environment supports some form of edit-and-continue). On the other hand, when script code is changed, the effects of the changes can usually be seen very rapidly. Some game engines permit script code to be reloaded on the fly, without shutting down the game at all. Others require the game to be shut down and rerun. But either way, the turnaround time between making a change and seeing its effects in-game is usually much faster than when making changes to the native language source code.
- *Convenience and ease of use*. Scripting languages are often customized to suit the needs of a particular game. Features can be provided that make common tasks simple, intuitive and less error-prone. For example, a game scripting language might provide functions or custom syntax for finding game objects by name, sending and handling events, pausing or manipulating the passage of time, waiting for a specified amount of time to pass, implementing finite state machines, exposing tweakable param-

eters to the world editor for use by the game designers, or even handling network replication for multiplayer games.

### 16.9.3 Some Common Game Scripting Languages

When implementing a runtime game scripting system, we have one fundamental choice to make: Do we select a third-party commercial or open source language and customize it to suit our needs, or do we design and implement a custom language from scratch?

Creating a custom language from scratch is usually not worth the hassle and the cost of maintenance throughout the project. It can also be difficult or impossible to hire game designers and programmers who are already familiar with a custom, in-house language, so there's usually a training cost as well. However, this is clearly the most flexible and customizable approach, and that flexibility can be worth the investment.

For many studios, it is more convenient to select a reasonably well-known and mature scripting language and extend it with features specific to your game engine. There are a great many third-party scripting languages from which to choose, and many are mature and robust, having been used in a great many projects both within and outside the game industry.

In the following sections, we'll explore a number of custom game scripting languages and a number of game-agnostic languages that are commonly adapted for use in game engines.

#### 16.9.3.1 QuakeC

Id Software's John Carmack implemented a custom scripting language for *Quake*, known as *QuakeC* (QC). This language was essentially a simplified variant of the C programming language with direct hooks into the *Quake* engine. It had no support for pointers or defining arbitrary structs, but it could manipulate *entities* (*Quake*'s name for game objects) in a convenient manner, and it could be used to send and receive/handle game events. QuakeC is an interpreted, imperative, procedural programming language.

The power that QuakeC put into the hands of gamers is one of the factors that gave birth to what is now known as the *mod community*. Scripting languages and other forms of data-driven customization allow gamers to turn many commercial games into all sorts of new gaming experiences—from slight modifications on the original theme to entirely new games.

#### 16.9.3.2 UnrealScript

Probably the best-known example of an entirely custom scripting language is Unreal Engine's *UnrealScript*. This language is based on a C++-like syntactic

cal style, and it supports most of the concepts that C and C++ programmers have become accustomed to, including classes, local variables, looping, arrays and structs for data organization, strings, hashed string ids (called FName in Unreal) and object references (but not free-form pointers). UnrealScript is an interpreted, imperative, object-oriented language.

Epic no longer supports the UnrealScript language. Instead, developers customize game behavior either via the Blueprints graphical “scripting” system, or by writing C++ code.

#### 16.9.3.3 Lua

Lua is a well-known and popular scripting language that is easy to integrate into an application such as a game engine. The Lua website (<http://www.lua.org/about.html>) calls the language the “leading scripting language in games.”

According to the Lua website, Lua’s key benefits are:

- *Robust and mature.* Lua has been used on numerous commercial products, including Adobe’s *Photoshop Lightroom*, and many games, including *World of Warcraft*.
- *Good documentation.* Lua’s reference manual [25] is complete and understandable and is available online and in book formats. A number of books have been written about Lua, including [26] and [50].
- *Excellent runtime performance.* Lua executes its byte code more quickly and efficiently than many other scripting languages.
- *Portable.* Out of the box, Lua runs on all flavors of Windows and UNIX, mobile devices and embedded microprocessors. Lua is written in a portable manner, making it easy to adapt to new hardware platforms.
- *Designed for embedded systems.* Lua’s memory footprint is very small (approximately 350 KiB for the interpreter and all libraries).
- *Simple, powerful and extensible.* The core Lua language is very small and simple, but it is designed to support meta-mechanisms that extend its core functionality in virtually limitless ways. For example, Lua itself is not an object-oriented language, but OOP support can and has been added via a meta-mechanism.
- *Free.* Lua is open source and is distributed under the very liberal MIT license.

Lua is a dynamically typed language, meaning that variables don’t have types—only values do. (Every value carries its type information along with it.) Lua’s primary data structure is the *table*, also known as an associative array. A

table is essentially a list of key-value pairs with an optimized ability to index into the array by key.

Lua provides a convenient interface to the C language—the Lua virtual machine can call and manipulate functions written in C as easily as it can those written in Lua itself.

Lua treats blocks of code, called *chunks*, as first-class objects that can be manipulated by the Lua program itself. Code can be executed in source code format or in precompiled byte code format. This allows the virtual machine to execute a string that contains Lua code, just as if the code were compiled into the original program. Lua also supports some powerful advanced programming constructs, including *coroutines*. This is a simple form of cooperative multitasking, in which each thread must yield the CPU to other threads explicitly (rather than being time-sliced as in a preemptive multithreading system).

Lua does have some pitfalls. For example, its flexible function binding mechanism makes it possible (and quite easy) to redefine an important global function like `sin()` to perform a totally different task (which is usually not something one intends to do). But all in all, Lua has proven itself to be an excellent choice for use as a game scripting language.

#### 16.9.3.4 Python

Python is a procedural, object-oriented, dynamically typed scripting language designed with ease of use, integration with other programming languages, and flexibility in mind. Like Lua, Python is a common choice for use as a game scripting language. According to the official Python website (<http://www.python.org>), some of Python's best features include:

- *Clear and readable syntax.* Python code is easy to read, in part because the syntax enforces a specific indentation style. (It actually parses the whitespace used for indentation in order to determine the scope of each line of code.)
- *Reflective language.* Python includes powerful runtime introspection facilities. Classes in Python are first-class objects, meaning they can be manipulated and queried at runtime, just like any other object.
- *Object-oriented.* One advantage of Python over Lua is that OOP is built into the core language. This makes integrating Python with a game's object model a little easier.
- *Modular.* Python supports hierarchical packages, encouraging clean system design and good encapsulation.

- *Exception-based error handling.* Exceptions make error-handling code in Python simpler, more elegant and more localized than similar code in a non-exception-based language.
- *Extensive standard libraries and third-party modules.* Python libraries exist for virtually every task imaginable. (Really!)
- *Embeddable.* Python can be easily embedded into an application, such as a game engine.
- *Extensive documentation.* There's plenty of documentation and tutorials on Python, both online and in book form. A good place to start is the Python website, <http://www.python.org>.

Python syntax is reminiscent of C in many respects (for example, its use of the `=` operator for assignment and `==` for equality testing). However, in Python, *code indentation* serves as the only means of defining *scope* (as opposed to C's opening and closing braces). Python's primary data structures are the *list*—a linearly indexed sequence of atomic values or other nested lists—and the *dictionary*—a table of key-value pairs. Each of these two data structures can hold instances of the other, allowing arbitrarily complex data structures to be constructed easily. In addition, *classes*—unified collections of data elements and functions—are built right into the language.

Python supports *duck typing*, which is a style of dynamic typing in which the functional interface of an object determines its type (rather than being defined by a static inheritance hierarchy). In other words, any class that supports a particular interface (i.e., a collection of functions with specific signatures) can be used interchangeably with any other class that supports that same interface. This is a powerful paradigm: In effect, Python supports polymorphism without requiring the use of inheritance. Duck typing is similar in some respects to C++ template metaprogramming, although it is arguably more flexible because the bindings between caller and callee are formed dynamically, at runtime. Duck typing gets its name from the well-known phrase (attributed to James Whitcomb Riley), "If it walks like a duck and quacks like a duck, I would call it a duck." See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Duck\\_typing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Duck_typing) for more information on duck typing.

In summary, Python is easy to use and learn, embeds easily into a game engine, integrates well with a game's object model, and can be an excellent and powerful choice as a game scripting language.

#### 16.9.3.5 Pawn/Small/Small-C

*Pawn* is a lightweight, dynamically typed, C-like scripting language created by Marc Peter. The language was formerly known as *Small*, which itself was

an evolution of an earlier subset of the C language called *Small-C*, written by Ron Cain and James Hendrix. It is an interpreted language—the source code is compiled into byte code (also known as P-code), which is interpreted by a virtual machine at runtime.

Pawn was designed to have a small memory footprint and to execute its byte code very quickly. Unlike C, Pawn’s variables are dynamically typed. Pawn also supports finite state machines, including state-local variables. This unique feature makes it a good fit for many game applications. Good online documentation is available for Pawn (<http://www.compuphase.com/pawn/pawn.htm>). Pawn is open source and can be used free of charge under the Zlib/libpng license (<http://www.opensource.org/licenses/zlib-license.php>).

Pawn’s C-like syntax makes it easy to learn for any C/C++ programmer and easy to integrate with a game engine written in C. Its finite state machine support can be very useful for game programming. It has been used successfully on a number of game projects, including *Freaky Flyers* by Midway. Pawn has shown itself to be a viable game scripting language.

#### 16.9.4 Architectures for Scripting

Script code can play all sorts of roles within a game engine. There’s a gamut of possible architectures, from tiny snippets of script code that perform simple functions on behalf of an object or engine system to high-level scripts that manage the operation of the game. Here are just a few of the possible architectures:

- *Scripted callbacks*. In this approach, the engine’s functionality is largely hard-coded in the native programming language, but certain key bits of functionality are designed to be customizable. This is often implemented via a *hook function* or *callback*—a user-supplied function that is called by the engine for the purpose of allowing customization. Hook functions can be written in the native language, of course, but they can also be written in a scripting language. For example, when updating game objects during the game loop, the engine might call an optional callback function that can be written in script. This gives users the opportunity to customize the way in which the game object updates itself over time.
- *Scripted event handler*. An event handler is really just a special type of hook function whose purpose is to allow a game object to respond to some relevant occurrence within the game world (e.g., responding to an explosion going off) or within the engine itself (e.g., responding to

an out-of-memory condition). Many game engines allow users to write event handler hooks in script as well as in the native language.

- *Extending game object types, or defining new ones, with script.* Some scripting languages allow game object types that have been implemented in the native language to be extended via script. In fact, callbacks and event handlers are examples of this on a small scale, but the idea can be extended even to the point of allowing entirely new types of game objects to be defined in script. This might be done via *inheritance* (i.e., deriving a class written in script from a class written in the native language) or via *composition* (i.e., attaching an instance of a scripted class to a native game object).
- *Scripted components or properties.* In a component- or property-based game object model, it only makes sense to permit new components or property objects to be constructed partially or entirely in script. This approach was used by Gas Powered Games for *Dungeon Siege*. The game object model was property-based, and it was possible to implement properties in either C++ or Gas Powered Games' custom scripting language, *Skrit* (<http://ds.heavengames.com/library/dstk/skrit/skrit>). By the end of the project, they had approximately 148 scripted property types and 21 native C++ property types.
- *Script-driven engine.* Script might be used to drive an entire engine system. For example, the game object model could conceivably be written entirely in script, calling into the native engine code only when it requires the services of lower-level engine components.
- *Script-driven game.* Some game engines actually flip the relationship between the native language and the scripting language on its head. In these engines, the script code runs the whole show, and the native engine code acts merely as a library that is called to access certain high-speed features of the engine. The Panda3D engine (<http://www.panda3d.org>) is an example of this kind of architecture. Panda3D games can be written entirely in the Python language, and the native engine (implemented in C++) acts like a library that is called by script code. (Panda3D games can also be written entirely in C++.)

### 16.9.5 Features of a Runtime Game Scripting Language

The primary purpose of many game scripting languages is to implement gameplay features, and this is often accomplished by augmenting and customizing a game's object model. In this section, we'll explore some of the most common requirements and features of such a scripting system.

### 16.9.5.1 Interface with the Native Programming Language

In order for a scripting language to be useful, it must not operate in a vacuum. It's imperative for the game engine to be able to execute script code, and it's usually equally important for script code to be capable of initiating operations within the engine as well.

A runtime scripting language's virtual machine (VM) is generally embedded within the game engine. The engine initializes the virtual machine, runs script code whenever required, and manages those scripts' execution. The unit of execution varies depending on the specifics of the language and the game's implementation.

- In a functional scripting language, the *function* is often the primary unit of execution. In order for the engine to call a script function, it must look up the byte code corresponding to the name of the desired function and spawn a virtual machine to execute it (or instruct an existing VM to do so).
- In an object-oriented scripting language, *classes* are typically the primary unit of execution. In such a system, objects can be spawned and destroyed, and methods (member functions) can be invoked on individual class instances.

It's usually beneficial to allow two-way communication between script and native code. Therefore, most scripting languages allowing native code to be invoked from script as well. The details are language- and implementation-specific, but the basic approach is usually to allow certain script functions to be implemented in the native language rather than in the scripting language. To call an engine function, script code simply makes an ordinary function call. The virtual machine detects that the function has a native implementation, looks up the corresponding native function's address (perhaps by name or via some other kind of unique function identifier), and calls it. For example, some or all of the member functions of a Python class or module can be implemented using C functions. Python maintains a data structure, known as a *method table*, that maps the name of each Python function (represented as a string) to the address of the C function that implements it.

#### *Case Study: Naughty Dog's DC Language*

As an example, let's have a brief look at how Naughty Dog's runtime scripting language, a language called DC, was integrated into the engine.

DC is a variant of the Scheme language (which is itself a variant of Lisp language). Chunks of executable code in DC are known as *script lambdas*, which

are the approximate equivalent of functions or code blocks in the Lisp family of languages. A DC programmer writes script lambdas and identifies them by giving them globally unique names. The DC compiler converts these script lambdas into chunks of byte code, which are loaded into memory when the game runs and can be looked up by name using a simple functional interface in C++.

Once the engine has a pointer to a chunk of script lambda byte code, it can execute the code by calling a “virtual machine execution” function in the engine and passing the byte code pointer to it. The function itself is surprisingly simple. It spins in a loop, reading byte code instructions one-by-one, and executing each instruction. When all instructions have been executed, the function returns.

The virtual machine contains a bank of registers, which can hold any kind of data the script may want to deal with. This is implemented using a *variant* data type—a union of all the data types (see Section 16.8.4 for a discussion of variants). Some instructions cause data to be loaded into a register; others cause the data held in a register to be looked up and used. There are instructions for performing all of the mathematical operations available in the language, as well as instructions for performing conditional checks—implementations of DC’s `(if ...)`, `(when ...)` and `(cond ...)` instructions and so on.

The virtual machine also supports a *function call stack*. Script lambdas in DC can call other script lambdas (i.e., functions) that have been defined by a script programmer via DC’s `(defun ...)` syntax. Just like any procedural programming language, a stack is needed to keep track of the states of the registers and the return address when one function calls another. In the DC virtual machine, the call stack is literally a stack of register banks—each new function gets its own private bank of registers. This prevents us from having to save off the state of the registers, call the function, and then restore the registers when the called function returns. When the virtual machine encounters a byte code instruction that tells it to call another script lambda, the byte code for that script lambda is looked up by name, a new stack frame is pushed, and execution continues at the first instruction of that script lambda. When the virtual machine encounters a return instruction, the stack frame is popped from the stack, along with the return “address” (which is really just the index of the byte code instruction in the calling script lambda after the one that called the function in the first place).

The following pseudocode should give you a feel for what the core instruction-processing loop of the DC virtual machine looks like:

```
void DcExecuteScript(DCByteCode* pCode)
{
    DCStackFrame* pCurStackFrame
        = DcPushStackFrame(pCode);

    // Keep going until we run out of stack frames (i.e.,
    // the top-level script lambda "function" returns).
    while (pCurStackFrame != nullptr)
    {
        // Get the next instruction. We will never run
        // out, because the return instruction is always
        // last, and it will pop the current stack frame
        // below.
        DCInstruction& instr
            = pCurStackFrame->GetNextInstruction();

        // Perform the operation of the instruction.
        switch (instr.GetOperation())
        {
            case DC_LOAD_REGISTER_IMMEDIATE:
            {
                // Grab the immediate value to be loaded
                // from the instruction.
                Variant& data = instr.GetImmediateValue();

                // Also determine into which register to
                // put it.
                U32 iReg = instr.GetDestRegisterIndex();

                // Grab the register from the stack frame.
                Variant& reg
                    = pCurStackFrame->GetRegister(iReg);

                // Store the immediate data into the
                // register.
                reg = data;
            }
            break;

            // Other load and store register operations...

            case DC_ADD_REGISTERS:
            {
                // Determine the two registers to add. The
                // result will be stored in register A.
                U32 iRegA = instr.GetDestRegisterIndex();
                U32 iRegB = instr.GetSrcRegisterIndex();
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
// Grab the 2 register variants from the
// stack.
Variant& dataA
= pCurStackFrame->GetRegister(iRegA);

Variant& dataB
= pCurStackFrame->GetRegister(iRegB);

// Add the registers and store in
// register A.
dataA = dataA + dataB;
}

break;

// Other math operations...

case DC_CALL_SCRIPT_LAMBDA:
{
    // Determine in which register the name of
    // the script lambda to call is stored.
    // (Presumably it was loaded by a previous
    // load instr.)
    U32 iReg = instr.GetSrcRegisterIndex();

    // Grab the appropriate register, which
    // contains the name of the lambda to call.
    Variant& lambda
    = pCurStackFrame->GetRegister(iReg);

    // Look up the byte code of the lambda by
    // name.
    DCByteCode* pCalledCode
    = DcLookUpByteCode(lambda.AsStringId());

    // Now "call" the lambda by pushing a new
    // stack frame.
    if (pCalledCode)
    {
        pCurStackFrame
        = DcPushStackFrame(pCalledCode);
    }
}
break;

case DC_RETURN:
{
```

```

        // Just pop the stack frame. If we're in
        // the top lambda on the stack, this
        // function will return nullptr, and the
        // loop will terminate.
        pCurStackFrame = DcPopStackFrame();
    }
    break;

    // Other instructions...

    // ...

} // end switch
} // end while
}

```

In the above example, we assume that the global functions `DcPushStackFrame()` and `DcPopStackFrame()` manage the stack of register banks for us in some suitable way and that the global function `DcLookUpByteCode()` is capable of looking up any script lambda by name. We won't show implementations of those functions here, because the purpose of this example is simply to show how the inner loop of a script virtual machine might work, not to provide a complete functional implementation.

DC script lambdas can also call native functions—i.e., global functions written in C++ that serve as hooks into the engine itself. When the virtual machine comes across an instruction that calls a native function, the address of the C++ function is looked up by name using a global table that has been hardcoded by the engine programmers. If a suitable C++ function is found, the arguments to the function are taken from registers in the current stack frame, and the function is called. This implies that the C++ function's arguments are always of type `Variant`. If the C++ function returns a value, it too must be a `Variant`, and its value will be stored into a register in the current stack frame for possible use by subsequent instructions.

The global function table might look something like this:

```

typedef Variant DcNativeFunction(U32 argCount,
                                 Variant* aArgs);

struct DcNativeFunctionEntry
{
    StringId           m_name;
    DcNativeFunction* m_pFunc;
};

```

```
DcNativeFunctionEntry g_aNativeFunctionLookupTable[] =  
{  
    { SID("get-object-pos"), DcGetObjectPos },  
    { SID("animate-object"), DcAnimateObject },  
    // etc.  
};
```

A native DC function implementation might look something like the following. Notice how the Variant arguments are passed to the function as an array. The function must verify that the number of arguments passed to it equals the number of arguments it expects. It must also verify that the types of the argument(s) are as expected and be prepared to handle errors that the DC script programmer may have made when calling the function. At Naughty Dog, we wrote an argument iterator which allows us to extract and verify the arguments one by one in a convenient manner.

```
Variant DcGetObjectPos(U32 argCount, Variant* aArgs)  
{  
    // Argument iterator expecting at most 2 args.  
    DcArgIterator args(argCount, aArgs, 2);  
  
    // Set up a default return value.  
    Variant result;  
    result.SetAsVector(Vector(0.0f, 0.0f, 0.0f));  
  
    // Use iterator to extract the args. It flags missing  
    // or invalid arguments as errors automatically.  
    StringId objectName = args.NextStringId();  
    Point* pDefaultPos = args.NextPoint(kDcOptional);  
  
    GameObject* pObject  
        = GameObject::LookUpByName(objectName);  
    if (pObject)  
    {  
        result.SetAsVector(pObject->GetPosition());  
    }  
    else  
    {  
        if (pDefaultPos)  
        {  
            result.SetAsVector(*pDefaultPos);  
        }  
        else  
        {  
            DcErrorMessage("get-object-pos: "  
                "Object '%s' not found.\n",  
                objectName.ToString());  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```
    }  
  
    return result;  
}
```

Note that the function `StringId::ToDebugString()` performs a reverse look-up to convert a string id back to its original string. This requires the game engine to maintain some kind of database mapping each string id to its original string. During development such a database can make life much easier, but because it consumes a lot of memory, the database should be omitted from the final shipped product. (The function name `ToDebugString()` reminds us that the reverse conversion from string id back to string should only be performed for debugging purposes—the game itself must *never* rely on this functionality!)

#### 16.9.5.2 Game Object References

Script functions often need to interact with game objects, which themselves may be implemented partially or entirely in the engine’s native language. The native language’s mechanisms for referencing objects (e.g., pointers or references in C++) won’t necessarily be valid in the scripting language. (It may not support pointers at all, for example.) Therefore, we need to come up with some reliable way for script code to reference game objects.

There are a number of ways to accomplish this. One approach is to refer to objects in script via opaque numeric *handles*. The script code can obtain object handles in various ways. It might be passed a handle by the engine, or it might perform some kind of query, such as asking for the handles of all game objects within a radius of the player or looking up the handle that corresponds to a particular object name. The script can then perform operations on the game object by calling native functions and passing the object’s handle as an argument. On the native language side, the handle is converted back into a pointer to the native object, and then the object can be manipulated as appropriate.

Numeric handles have the benefit of simplicity and should be easy to support in any scripting language that supports integer data. However, they can be unintuitive and difficult to work with. Another alternative is to use the names of the objects, represented as strings, as our handles. This has some interesting benefits over the numeric handle technique. For one thing, strings are human-readable and intuitive to work with. There is a direct correspondence to the names of the objects in the game’s world editor. In addition, we can choose to reserve certain special object names and give them “magic”

meanings. For example, in Naughty Dog’s scripting language, the reserved name “self” always refers to the object to which the currently running script is attached. This allows game designers to write a script, attach it to an object in the game, and then use the script to play an animation on the object by simply writing (`animate 'self name-of-animation`).

Using strings as object handles has its pitfalls, of course. Strings typically occupy more memory than integer ids. And because strings vary in length, dynamic memory allocation is required in order to copy them. String comparisons are slow. Script programmers are apt to make mistakes when typing the names of game objects, which can lead to bugs. In addition, script code can be broken if someone changes the name of an object in the game world editor but forgets to update the name of the object in script.

Hashed string ids overcome most of these problems by converting any strings (regardless of length) into an integer. In theory, hashed string ids enjoy the best of both worlds—they can be read by users just like strings, but they have the runtime performance characteristics of an integer. However, for this to work, your scripting language needs to support hashed string ids in some way. Ideally, we’d like the script compiler to convert our strings into hashed ids for us. That way, the runtime code doesn’t have to deal with the strings at all, only the hashed ids (except possibly for debugging purposes—it’s nice to be able to see the string corresponding to a hashed id in the debugger). However, this isn’t always possible in all scripting languages. Another approach is to allow the user to use strings in script and convert them into hashed ids at runtime, whenever a native function is called.

Naughty Dog’s DC scripting language leverages the concept of “symbols,” which are native to the Scheme programming language, to encode its string ids. Writing `'foo`—or more verbosely, `(quote foo)`—in DC/Scheme corresponds to the string id `SID("foo")` in C++.

#### 16.9.5.3 Receiving and Handling Events in Script

Events are a ubiquitous communication mechanism in most game engines. By permitting event handler functions to be written in script, we open up a powerful avenue for customizing the hard-coded behavior of our game.

Events are usually sent to individual objects and handled within the context of that object. Hence, scripted event handlers need to be associated with an object in some way. Some engines use the game object type system for this purpose—scripted event handlers can be registered on a per-object-type basis. This allows different types of game objects to respond in different ways to the same event but ensures that all instances of each type respond in a consistent and uniform way. The event handler functions themselves can be simple script functions, or they can be members of a class if the scripting language is

object-oriented. In either case, the event handler is typically passed a handle to the particular object to which the event was sent, much as C++ member functions are passed the `this` pointer.

In other engines, scripted event handlers are associated with individual object instances rather than with object types. In this approach, different instances of the same type might respond differently to the same event.

There are all sorts of other possibilities, of course. For example, in Naughty Dog’s engine (used to create the *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* series), scripts are objects in their own right. They can be associated with individual game objects, they can be attached to regions (convex volumes that are used to trigger game events), or they can exist as stand-alone objects in the game world. Each script can have multiple states (that is, scripts are finite state machines in the Naughty Dog engine). In turn, each state can have one or more event handler code blocks. When a game object receives an event, it has the option of handling the event in native C++. It also checks for an attached script object, and if one is found, the event is sent to that script’s current state. If the state has an event handler for the event, it is called. Otherwise, the script simply ignores the event.

#### 16.9.5.4 Sending Events

Allowing scripts to handle game events that are generated by the engine is certainly a powerful feature. Even more powerful is the ability to generate and send events from script code either back to the engine or to other scripts.

Ideally, we’d like to be able not only to send predefined types of events from script but to define entirely new event types in script. Implementing this is trivial if event types are strings or string ids. To define a new event type, the script programmer simply comes up with a new event type name and types it into his or her script code. This can be a highly flexible way for scripts to communicate with one another. Script A can define a new event type and send it to Script B. If Script B defines an event handler for this type of event, we’ve implemented a simple way for Script A to “talk” to Script B. In some game engines, event- or message-passing is the only supported means of inter-object communication in script. This can be an elegant yet powerful and flexible solution.

#### 16.9.5.5 Object-Oriented Scripting Languages

Some scripting languages are inherently object-oriented. Others do not support objects directly but provide mechanisms that can be used to implement classes and objects. In many engines, gameplay is implemented via an object-

oriented game object model of some kind. So it makes sense to permit some form of object-oriented programming in script as well.

### *Defining Classes in Scripts*

A class is really just a bunch of data with some associated functions. So any scripting language that permits new data structures to be defined, and provides some way to store and manipulate functions, can be used to implement classes. For example, in Lua, a class can be built out of a table that stores data members and member functions.

### *Inheritance in Script*

Object-oriented languages do not necessarily support inheritance. However, if this feature is available, it can be extremely useful, just as it is in native programming languages like C++.

In the context of game scripting languages, there are two kinds of inheritance: deriving scripted classes from other scripted classes and deriving scripted classes from native classes. If your scripting language is object-oriented, chances are the former is supported out of the box. However, the latter is tough to implement even if the scripting language supports inheritance. The problem is bridging the gap between two languages and two low-level object models. We won't get into the details of how this might be implemented here, as the implementation is bound to be specific to the pair of languages being integrated. UnrealScript is the only scripting language I've encountered that allows scripted classes to derive from native classes in a seamless way.

### *Composition/Aggregation in Script*

We don't need to rely on inheritance to extend a hierarchy of classes—we can also use composition or aggregation to similar effect. In script, then, all we really need is a way to define classes and associate instances of those classes with objects that have been defined in the native programming language. For example, a game object could hold a pointer or reference to an optional component written entirely in script. We can delegate certain key functionality to the script component, if it exists. The script component might have an `Update()` function that is called whenever the game object is updated, and the scripted component might also be permitted to register some of its member functions/methods as event handlers. When an event is sent to the game object, it calls the appropriate event handler on the scripted component, thus giving the script programmer an opportunity to modify or extend the behavior

of the natively implemented game object.

#### 16.9.5.6 Scripted Finite State Machines

Many problems in game programming can be solved naturally using finite state machines (FSMs). For this reason, some engines build the concept of FSMs right into the core game object model. In such engines, every game object can have one or more states, and it is the states—not the game object itself—that contain the update function, event handler functions and so on. Simple game objects can be created by defining a single state, but more complex game objects have the freedom to define multiple states, each with a different update and event-handling behavior.

If your engine supports a state-driven game object model, it makes a lot of sense to provide finite state machine support in the scripting language as well. And of course, even if the core game object model doesn't support finite state machines natively, one can still provide state-driven behavior by using a state machine on the script side. An FSM can be implemented in any programming language by using class instances to represent states, but some scripting languages provide tools especially for this purpose. An object-oriented scripting language might provide custom syntax that allows a class to contain multiple states, or it might provide tools that help the script programmer easily aggregate state objects together within a central hub object and then delegate the update and event-handling functions to it in a straightforward way. But even if your scripting language provides no such features, you can always adopt a methodology for implementing FSMs and follow those conventions in every script you write.

#### 16.9.5.7 Multithreaded Scripts

It's often useful to be able to execute multiple scripts in parallel. This is especially true on today's highly parallelized hardware architectures. If multiple scripts can run at the same time, we are in effect providing *parallel threads of execution* in script code, much like the threads provided by most multitasking operating systems. Of course, the scripts may not actually run in parallel—if they are all running on a single CPU, the CPU must take turns executing each one. However, from the point of view of the script programmer, the paradigm is one of parallel programming.

Most scripting systems that provide parallelism do so via *cooperative multitasking*. This means that a script will execute until it explicitly yields to another script. This is in contrast with a *preemptive multitasking* approach, in which the execution of any script could be interrupted at any time to permit another

script to execute.

One simple approach to cooperative multitasking in script is to permit scripts to explicitly go to sleep, waiting for something relevant to happen. A script might wait for a specified number of seconds to elapse, or it might wait until a particular event is received. It might wait until another thread of execution has reached a predefined synchronization point. Whatever the reason, whenever a script goes to sleep, it puts itself on a list of sleeping script threads and tells the virtual machine that it can start executing another eligible script. The system keeps track of the conditions that will wake up each sleeping script—when one of these conditions becomes true, the script or scripts waiting on the condition are woken up and allowed to continue executing.

To see how this works in practice, let's look at an example of a multi-threaded script. This script manages the animations of two characters and a door. The two characters are instructed to walk up to the door—each one might take a different, and unpredictable, amount of time to reach it. We'll put the script's threads to sleep while they wait for the characters to reach the door. Once they both arrive at the door, one of the two characters opens the door, which it does by playing an “open door” animation. Note that we don't want to hard-code the duration of the animation into the script itself. That way, if the animators change the animation, we won't have to go back and modify our script. So we'll put the threads to sleep again while the wait for the animation to complete. A script that accomplishes this is shown below, using a simple C-like pseudocode syntax.

```
procedure DoorCinematic()
{
    thread Guy1()
    {
        // Ask guy1 to walk to the door.
        CharacterWalkToPoint(guy1, doorPosition);

        // Go to sleep until he gets there.
        WaitUntil(CHARACTER_ARRIVAL);

        // OK, we're there. Tell the other threads
        // via a signal.
        RaiseSignal("Guy1Arrived");

        // Wait for the other guy to arrive as well.
        WaitUntil(SIGNAL, "Guy2Arrived");

        // Now tell guy1 to play the "open door"
        // animation.
        CharacterAnimate(guy1, "OpenDoor");
    }
}
```

```

        WaitUntil(ANIMATION_DONE) ;

        // OK, the door is open. Tell the other threads.
        RaiseSignal("DoorOpen") ;

        // Now walk thru the door.
        CharacterWalkToPoint(guy1, beyondDoorPosition) ;
    }

    thread Guy2()
    {
        // Ask guy2 to walk to the door.
        CharacterWalkToPoint(guy2, doorPosition) ;

        // Go to sleep until he gets there.
        WaitUntil(CHARACTER_ARRIVAL) ;

        // OK, we're there. Tell the other threads
        // via a signal.
        RaiseSignal("Guy2Arrived") ;

        // Wait for the other guy to arrive as well.
        WaitUntil(SIGNAL, "Guy1Arrived") ;

        // Now wait until guy1 opens the door for me.
        WaitUntil(SIGNAL, "DoorOpen") ;

        // OK, the door is open. Now walk thru the door.
        CharacterWalkToPoint(guy2, beyondDoorPosition) ;
    }
}

```

In the above, we assume that our hypothetical scripting language provides a simple syntax for defining threads of execution within a single function. We define two threads, one for Guy1 and one for Guy2.

The thread for Guy1 tells the character to walk to the door and then goes to sleep waiting for his arrival. We're hand-waving a bit here, but let's imagine that the scripting language magically allows a thread to go to sleep, waiting until a character in the game arrives at a target point to which he was requested to walk. In reality, this might be implemented by arranging for the character to send an event back to the script and then waking the thread up when the event arrives.

Once Guy1 arrives at the door, his thread does two things that warrant further explanation. First, it raises a signal called "Guy1Arrived." Second, it goes to sleep waiting for another signal called "Guy2Arrived." If we look at the thread for Guy2, we see a similar pattern, only reversed. This pattern of

raising a signal and then waiting for another signal is to synchronize the two threads.

In our hypothetical scripting language, a *signal* is just a Boolean flag with a name. The flag starts out false, but when a thread calls `RaiseSignal (name)`, the named flag's value changes to true. Other threads can go to sleep, waiting for a particular named signal to become true. When it does, the sleeping thread(s) wake up and continue executing. In this example, the two threads are using the “Guy1Arrived” and “Guy2Arrived” signals to synchronize with one another. Each thread raises its signal and then waits for the other thread's signal. It does not matter which signal is raised first—only when both signals have been raised will the two threads wake up. And when they do, they will be in perfect synchronization. Two possible scenarios are illustrated in Figure 16.24, one in which Guy1 arrives first, the other in which Guy2 arrives first. As you can see, the order in which the signals are raised is irrelevant, and the threads always end up in sync after both signals have been raised.

## 16.10 High-Level Game Flow

A game object model provides the foundations upon which a rich and entertaining collection of game object types can be implemented with which to populate our game worlds. However, by itself, a game object model only permits us to define the kinds of objects that exist in our game world and how they behave individually. It says nothing of the player's objectives, what happens if he or she completes them, and what fate should befall the player if he or she fails.

For this, we need some kind of system to control high-level game flow. This is often implemented as a finite state machine. Each state usually represents a

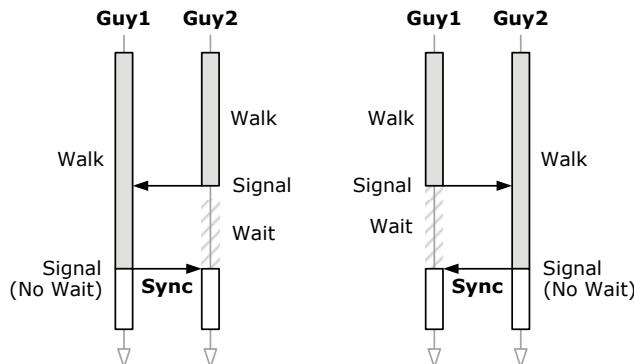


Figure 16.24. Two examples showing how a simple pattern of raising one signal and then waiting on another can be used to synchronize a pair of script threads.

single player objective or encounter and is associated with a particular locale within the virtual game world. As the player completes each task, the state machine advances to the next state, and the player is presented with a new set of goals. The state machine also defines what should happen in the event of the player’s failure to accomplish the necessary tasks or objectives. Often, failure sends the player back to the beginning of the current state, so he or she can try again. Sometimes after enough failures, the player has run out of “lives” and will be sent back to the main menu, where he or she can choose to play a new game. The flow of the entire game, from the menus to the first “level” to the last, can be controlled through this high-level state machine.

The task system used in Naughty Dog’s *Jak and Daxter*, *Uncharted* and *The Last of Us* franchises is an example of such a state-machine-based system. It allows for linear sequences of states (called *tasks* at Naughty Dog). It also permits parallel tasks, where one task branches out into two or more parallel tasks, which eventually merge back into the main task sequence. This parallel task feature sets the Naughty Dog task graph apart from a regular state machine, since state machines typically can only be in one state at a time.

# Part V

## Conclusion



Taylor & Francis  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# 17

## You Mean There's More?

**C**ongratulations! You've reached the end of your journey through the landscape of game engine architecture in one piece (and hopefully none the worse for wear). With any luck, you've learned a great deal about the major components that comprise a typical game engine. But of course, every journey's end is another's beginning. There's a great deal more to be learned about each and every topic covered within these pages. As technology and computing hardware continue to improve, more things will become possible in games—and more engine systems will be invented to support them. What's more, this book's focus was on the game engine itself. We haven't even begun to discuss the rich world of gameplay programming, a topic that could fill many more volumes.

In the following brief sections, I'll identify a few of the engine and gameplay systems we didn't have room to cover in any depth in this book, and I'll suggest some resources for those who wish to learn more about them.

### 17.1 Some Engine Systems We Didn't Cover

#### 17.1.1 Movie Player

Most games include a movie player for displaying prerendered movies, also known as full-motion video (FMV). The basic components of the movie player

are an interface to the streaming file I/O system (see Section 7.1.3), a codec to decode the compressed video stream, and some form of synchronization with the audio playback system for the sound track.

A number of different video encoding standards and corresponding codecs are available, each one suited to a particular type of application. For example, video CDs (VCD) and DVDs use MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 (H.262) codecs, respectively. The H.261 and H.263 standards are designed primarily for online video conferencing applications. Games often use standards like MPEG-4 part 2 (e.g., DivX), MPEG-4 Part 10 / H.264, Windows Media Video (WMV) or Bink Video (a standard designed specifically for games by Rad Game Tools, Inc.). See [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Video\\_codec](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Video_codec) and <http://www.radgame-tools.com/bnkmain.htm> for more information on video codecs.

### 17.1.2 Multiplayer Networking

Although the concepts of concurrent programming covered in Chapter 4 are relevant to multiplayer game architecture and distributed network programming, this book doesn't address either topic directly. For an in-depth treatment of multiplayer networking, see [4].

## 17.2 Gameplay Systems

A game is of course much more than just its engine. On top of the gameplay foundation layer (discussed in Chapter 16), you'll find a rich assortment of genre- and game-specific gameplay systems. These systems tie the myriad game engine technologies described in this book together into a cohesive whole, breathing life into the game.

### 17.2.1 Player Mechanics

*Player mechanics* are of course the most important gameplay system. Each genre is defined by a general style of player mechanics and gameplay, and of course every game within a genre has its own specific designs. As such, player mechanics is a huge topic. It involves the integration of human interface device systems, motion simulation, collision detection, animation and audio, not to mention integration with other gameplay systems like the game camera, weapons, cover, specialized traversal mechanics (ladders, swinging ropes, etc.), vehicle systems, puzzle mechanics and so on.

Clearly, player mechanics are as varied as the games themselves, so there's no one place you can go to learn all about them. It's best to tackle this topic by studying a single genre at a time. Play games and try to reverse-engineer

their player mechanics. Then try to implement them yourself! And as a very modest start on reading, you can check out [9, Section 4.11] for a discussion of Mario-style platformer player mechanics.

### 17.2.2 Cameras

A game's camera system is almost as important as the player mechanics. In fact, the camera can make or break the gameplay experience. Each genre tends to have its own camera control style, although of course every game within a particular genre does it a little bit differently (and some *very* differently). See [8, Section 4.3] for some basic game camera control techniques. In the following paragraphs, I'll briefly outline some of the most prevalent kinds of cameras in 3D games, but please note that this is far from a complete list.

- *Look-at cameras*. This type of camera rotates about a target point and can be moved in and out relative to this point.
- *Follow cameras*. This type of camera is prevalent in platformer, third-person shooter and vehicle-based games. It acts much like a look-at camera focused on the player character/avatar/vehicle, but its motion typically lags the player. A follow camera also includes advanced collision detection and avoidance logic and provides the human player with some degree of control over the camera's orientation relative to the player avatar.
- *First-person cameras*. As the player character moves about in the game world, a first-person camera remains affixed to the character's virtual eyes. The player typically has full control over the direction in which the camera should be pointed, either via mouse or joypad control. The look direction of the camera also translates directly into the aim direction of the player's weapon, which is typically indicated by a set of disembodied arms and a gun attached to the bottom of the screen, and a reticle at the center of the screen.
- *RTS cameras*. Real-time strategy and god games tend to employ a camera that floats above the terrain, looking down at an angle. The camera can be panned about over the terrain, but the pitch and yaw of the camera are usually not under direct player control.
- *Cinematic cameras*. Most three-dimensional games have at least some cinematic moments in which the camera flies about within the scene in a more filmic manner rather than being tethered to an object in the game. These camera movements are typically controlled by the animators.

### 17.2.3 Artificial Intelligence

Another major component of most character-based games is *artificial intelligence* (AI). At its lowest level, an AI system is usually founded in technologies like basic path finding (which commonly makes use of the well-known A\* algorithm), perception systems (line of sight, vision cones, knowledge of the environment, etc.) and some form of memory or knowledge.

On top of these foundations, character control logic is implemented. A character control system determines how to make the character perform specific actions like locomoting, navigating unusual terrain features, using weapons, driving vehicles, taking cover and so on. It typically involves complex interfaces to the collision, physics and animation systems within the engine. Character control is discussed in detail in Section 12.10.

Above the character control layer, an AI system typically has goal setting and decision making logic, and possibly also emotional state modeling, group behaviors (coordination, flanking, crowd and flocking behaviors, etc.), and perhaps some advanced features like an ability to learn from past mistakes or adapt to a changing environment.

Of course, the term “artificial intelligence” is one of the biggest misnomers around in the game industry. Game AI is always more of a smoke and mirrors job than an attempt at truly mimicking human intelligence. Your AI characters might have all sorts of complex internal emotional states and finely tuned perception of the game world. But if the player cannot *perceive* the characters’ motivations, it’s all for naught.

AI programming is a rich topic, and we certainly have not done it justice in this book. For more information, see [18], [8, Section 3], [9, Section 3] and [47, Section 3]. Another good starting point is the GDC 2002 talk entitled, “The Illusion of Intelligence: The Integration of AI and Level Design in Halo,” by Chris Butcher and Jaime Griesemer of Bungie (<http://bit.ly/1g7FbhD>). And while you’re online, search for “game AI programming” too. You’ll find all sorts of links to talks, papers and books on game AI. The websites <http://aigamedev.com> and <http://www.gameai.com> are great resources as well.

### 17.2.4 Other Gameplay Systems

Clearly there’s a lot more to a game than just player mechanics, cameras and AI. Some games have drivable vehicles, implement specialized types of weaponry, allow the player to destroy the environment with the help of a dynamic physics simulation, let the player create his or her own characters, build custom levels, require the player to solve puzzles, .... Of course, the list of genre- and game-specific features, and all of the specialized software systems

that implement them, could go on forever. Gameplay systems are as rich and varied as games are. Perhaps this is where your next journey as a game programmer will begin!



**Taylor & Francis**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Bibliography

- [1] Michael Abrash. *Michael Abrash's Graphics Programming Black Book (Special Edition)*. Scottsdale, AZ: Coriolis Group Books, 1997. (Available online at <http://www.jagregory.com/abrush-black-book>.)
- [2] Tomas Akenine-Moller, Eric Haines and Naty Hoffman. *Real-Time Rendering*, Third Edition. Wellesley, MA: A K Peters, 2008.
- [3] Andrei Alexandrescu. *Modern C++ Design: Generic Programming and Design Patterns Applied*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2001.
- [4] Grenville Armitage, Mark Claypool and Philip Branch. *Networking and Online Games: Understanding and Engineering Multiplayer Internet Games*. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons, 2006.
- [5] James Arvo (editor). *Graphics Gems II*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 1991.
- [6] David A. Bies and Colin H. Hansen. *Engineering Noise Control*, Fourth Edition. New York, NY: CRC Press, 2014.
- [7] Grady Booch, Robert A. Maksimchuk, Michael W. Engel, Bobbi J. Young, Jim Conallen and Kelli A. Houston. *Object-Oriented Analysis and Design with Applications*, Third Edition. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2007.
- [8] Mark DeLoura (editor). *Game Programming Gems*. Hingham, MA: Charles River Media, 2000.
- [9] Mark DeLoura (editor). *Game Programming Gems 2*. Hingham, MA: Charles River Media, 2001.

- [10] Philip Dutré, Kavita Bala and Philippe Bekaert. *Advanced Global Illumination*, Second Edition. Wellesley, MA: A K Peters, 2006.
- [11] David H. Eberly. *3D Game Engine Design: A Practical Approach to Real-Time Computer Graphics*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2001.
- [12] David H. Eberly. *3D Game Engine Architecture: Engineering Real-Time Applications with Wild Magic*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2005.
- [13] David H. Eberly. *Game Physics*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2003.
- [14] Christer Ericson. *Real-Time Collision Detection*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2005.
- [15] Randima Fernando (editor). *GPU Gems: Programming Techniques, Tips and Tricks for Real-Time Graphics*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2004.
- [16] James D. Foley, Andries van Dam, Steven K. Feiner and John F. Hughes. *Computer Graphics: Principles and Practice in C*, Second Edition. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1995.
- [17] Grant R. Fowles and George L. Cassiday. *Analytical Mechanics*, Seventh Edition. Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks Cole, 2005.
- [18] John David Funge. *AI for Games and Animation: A Cognitive Modeling Approach*. Wellesley, MA: A K Peters, 1999.
- [19] Erich Gamma, Richard Helm, Ralph Johnson and John M. Vlissides. *Design Patterns: Elements of Reusable Object-Oriented Software*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1994.
- [20] Andrew S. Glassner (editor). *Graphics Gems I*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 1990.
- [21] Ananth Grama, Anshul Gupta, George Karypis, Vipin Kumar. *Introduction to Parallel Computing*, Second Edition. Reading, MA: Addison Wesley, 2003. (Available online at [http://srmcse.weebly.com/uploads/8/9/0/9/8909020/introduction\\_to\\_parallel\\_computing\\_second\\_edition-ananth\\_grama..pdf](http://srmcse.weebly.com/uploads/8/9/0/9/8909020/introduction_to_parallel_computing_second_edition-ananth_grama..pdf) [sic].)
- [22] Paul S. Heckbert (editor). *Graphics Gems IV*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 1994.
- [23] John L. Hennessey and David A. Patterson. *Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2011.
- [24] Maurice Herlihy and Nir Shavit. *The Art of Multiprocessor Programming*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2008.
- [25] Roberto Ierusalimschy, Luiz Henrique de Figueiredo and Waldemar Celes. *Lua 5.1 Reference Manual*. Lua.org, 2006.
- [26] Roberto Ierusalimschy. *Programming in Lua*, Second Edition. Lua.org, 2006.
- [27] Isaac Victor Kerlow. *The Art of 3-D Computer Animation and Imaging (Second Edition)*. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons, 2000.
- [28] David Kirk (editor). *Graphics Gems III*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 1994.

- [29] Danny Kodicek. *Mathematics and Physics for Game Programmers*. Hingham, MA: Charles River Media, 2005.
- [30] Raph Koster. *A Theory of Fun for Game Design*. Phoenix, AZ: Paraglyph, 2004.
- [31] John Lakos. *Large-Scale C++ Software Design*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1995.
- [32] Eric Lengyel. *Mathematics for 3D Game Programming and Computer Graphics*, Second Edition. Hingham, MA: Charles River Media, 2003.
- [33] Gary B. Little. *Inside the Apple //e*. Bowie, MD: Brady Communications Company, Inc., 1985. (Available online at <http://www.apple2scans.net/files/InsidetheIle.pdf>.)
- [34] Tuoc V. Luong, James S. H. Lok, David J. Taylor and Kevin Driscoll. *Internationalization: Developing Software for Global Markets*. New York, NY: John Wiley & Sons, 1995.
- [35] Steve Maguire. *Writing Solid Code: Microsoft's Techniques for Developing Bug-Free C Programs*. Bellevue, WA: Microsoft Press, 1993.
- [36] Scott Meyers. *Effective C++: 55 Specific Ways to Improve Your Programs and Designs*, Third Edition. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2005.
- [37] Scott Meyers. *More Effective C++: 35 New Ways to Improve Your Programs and Designs*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1996.
- [38] Scott Meyers. *Effective STL: 50 Specific Ways to Improve Your Use of the Standard Template Library*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2001.
- [39] Ian Millington. *Game Physics Engine Development*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2007.
- [40] Hubert Nguyen (editor). *GPU Gems 3*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2007.
- [41] Alan V. Oppenheim and Alan S. Willsky. *Signals and Systems*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1983.
- [42] Alan W. Paeth (editor). *Graphics Gems V*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 1995.
- [43] C. Michael Pilato, Ben Collins-Sussman and Brian W. Fitzpatrick. *Version Control with Subversion*, Second Edition. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly Media, 2008. (Commonly known as "The Subversion Book." Available online at <http://svnbook.red-bean.com/>.)
- [44] Matt Pharr (editor). *GPU Gems 2: Programming Techniques for High-Performance Graphics and General-Purpose Computation*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2005.
- [45] Richard Stevens and Dave Raybould. *The Game Audio Tutorial: A Practical Guide to Sound and Music for Interactive Games*. Burlington, MA: Focal Press, 2011.
- [46] Bjarne Stroustrup. *The C++ Programming Language*, Special Edition (Third Edition). Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 2000.
- [47] Dante Treglia (editor). *Game Programming Gems 3*. Hingham, MA: Charles River Media, 2002.

- [48] Gino van den Bergen. *Collision Detection in Interactive 3D Environments*. San Francisco, CA: Morgan Kaufmann, 2003.
- [49] Alan Watt. *3D Computer Graphics*, Third Edition. Reading, MA: Addison Wesley, 1999.
- [50] James Whitehead II, Bryan McLemore and Matthew Orlando. *World of Warcraft Programming: A Guide and Reference for Creating WoW Addons*. New York, NY: John Wiley & Sons, 2008.
- [51] Richard Williams. *The Animator's Survival Kit*. London, UK: Faber & Faber, 2002.

# Index

- #include, 148
- \_DEBUG, 82
- \_m128, *see* single instruction multiple data
- 2-blade, 373
- 2D sound, 955
- 3-blade, 374
- 3D Studio Max, 62, 669
- 3D sound, 955
- 80/20 rule, 99, 216, 317, 608
- A\* algorithm, 1164
- AABB, *see* bounding box
- ABA problem, 297
- ABI, *see* application binary interface
- absorption
  - atmospheric, 918, 923, 956, 958, 964, 980
  - light, 633
  - sound, 917
- abstract factory, *see* design pattern
- AC-3, *see* audio, file formats
- accelerated processing unit, 227
- acoustic intensity, 915, 961
- acoustic pressure, *see* sound
- acoustical modeling, 956
- acoustics, 920
- ACP, *see* asset conditioning pipeline
- acquire fence, *see* memory ordering semantics
- acquire memory order, *see* memory ordering semantics
- action state machine
  - state layer, 787, 794
  - transition, 786
- ADC, *see* analog-to-digital conversion
- adding across a register, *see* single instruction multiple data
- additive blending, 769
- addressing mode, *see* CPU
- ADPCM, *see* pulse-code modulation
- Advanced Linux Sound Architecture, 994
- advanced vector extensions, 331
- affinity, *see* thread
- aggregation, 111, 1049, 1051, 1153
- AI, *see* artificial intelligence
- AIFF, *see* audio, file formats

- albedo map, 640  
algebra, 359  
algebraic simplification, *see* compiler, optimizations  
aliasing, 683, 950  
Alienbrain, *see* version control  
alignment, *see* memory  
allocation  
    chunky, 451, 514  
    delete operator (C++), 156  
    double-buffered, 435  
    dynamic, 155, 156, 426  
    heap memory, 156, 511  
    janitor, *see also* design pattern, 112  
    new operator (C++), 156  
    optimization, 426  
    pool, 430, 438, 512  
    resource chunk allocator, 514  
    single-frame allocator, 435  
    stack, 112  
    stack-based, 427, 438, 512  
    static, 155  
alpha, 623, 635  
    blending function, 676  
    testing, 676  
ALSA, *see* Advanced Linux Sound Architecture  
Altivec, *see* single instruction multiple data  
ALU, *see* arithmetic/logic unit  
ambient lighting, *see* lighting  
ambient occlusion, *see* lighting  
Ambisonics, 964  
amplifier, 926, 946, 982  
amplitude, 912, 933, 946, *see also* audio  
analog-to-digital conversion, 925, 948  
analytical geometry, 836  
anechoic chamber, 922  
angular frequency, 913, 933  
angular momentum, 872  
angular velocity, 867  
animation, 52, *see also* action state  
    machine  
    additive blending, 769  
    attach point, 800, 808  
    blending, 755, 763  
    camera, 747  
    cel, 722  
    channel, 744, 747  
    clip, 734  
    constraint, 806, 816  
    cross-fade, 758, 759  
    difference clip, 769  
    ease curve, 759  
    Endorphin, 43  
    Euphoria, 43  
    event trigger, 746  
    film, 734, 736  
    flat weighted average, 788  
    floating-point channel, 747  
    frame, 722, 737  
    global timeline, 739  
    Granny, 42, 507, 516, 783, 790  
    hand-drawn, 722  
    Havok Animation, 42  
    idle, 722  
    instancing, 754  
    interobject registration, 808  
    joint, *see* joint  
    look-at, 816  
    looping, 722, 734, 738  
    metachannel, 746  
    morph target, 724  
    motion capture, 6  
    OrbisAnim library, 42  
    particle, 711  
    per-vertex, 724  
    phase, 738  
    playback rate, 739  
    post-processing, 774  
    procedural, 775  
    retargeting, 748  
    rigid, 723  
    run cycle, 734  
    sample, 737  
    skeletal, 62  
    socket, *see* animation, attach point  
    synchronization, 742  
    texture, 723  
    time scaling, 736, 739  
    traditional, 722  
    transition, 758, 759  
    updating, 1089  
    walk cycle, 734

- animation compression, 726, 777  
channel omission, 778  
curve-based, 783  
key omission, 782  
quantization, 778  
sampling frequency, 782  
wavelet compression, 783
- anisotropic, *see* texture, filtering  
ANSI, 462  
anti-commutative, 372  
antialiasing, 48, 683  
API, *see* application programming interface  
application binary interface, 176  
application programming interface, 40, 43, 975  
approximation  
piecewise-linear, 746, 970  
architecture  
runtime, 38  
archive file, 505  
area light, *see* lighting  
Argand plane, 934  
argument (complex), 934  
arithmetic/logic unit, 166  
array of structs, 1060  
articulatory speech synthesizer, 996  
artificial intelligence, 58, 538, 597, 822, 849, 901, 997, 1000, 1004, 1029, 1034, 1044, 1059, 1062, 1066, 1105, 1131, 1164  
ASM, *see* action state machine  
assembly language, 105  
assertion, 44, 86, 122, 125–127, 325  
compile-time, 128, 129  
lock-not-needed, 325, 1102  
static, 128, 129  
asset conditioning pipeline, 59, 61, 499, 501, 668, 671, 1036  
associative, *see also* cache  
array, 1139  
property, 933  
asymmetric multiprocessing, 228  
asynchronous, *see* multitasking  
atomic, 262, 264, 267, 289  
instruction, 292  
operation, 262, 276, 549, 555  
variable, 314
- ATRAC, *see* audio, file formats  
attach point, *see* animation  
attenuation  
distance-based, 956, 957  
audible frequency band, 917  
audio, *see also* sound, 54  
amplitude panning, 959  
analog, 942  
beating, 919  
decay, 921  
density, 921  
diffuse tail, 920  
diffusion, 921  
ducking, 989  
early reflections, 920  
exclusion, 968  
file formats, 951, 952  
group, 989  
instance limiting, 990  
jack, 947  
late reverberations, 920  
mixing, 956, 962, 975, 980, 981, 988  
obstruction, 968  
occlusion, 968  
pan, 956, 957, 975  
constant gain, 961  
constant power, 961  
focus, 963, 964  
pan pot, 980  
perceived loudness, 914  
perception of position, 923  
pre-delay, 921  
processing graph, 976  
rendering, 54, 911, 955  
spatialization, 956  
updating, 1089  
voice, 977  
voice stealing, 991
- audio engine, 975  
Quake, 54  
Scream, 54  
Unreal, 54  
X3DAudio, 993  
XACT, 993  
XAudio2, 54, 993
- augmented reality, 27

- auxiliary send, 979  
 average  
     weighted, 765  
 AVX, *see* advanced vector extensions  
 axis+angle rotation, 404  
 azimuthal angle, 959  
  
 band-limited, 948, 949  
 bandwidth, *see* pipeline  
 bank, *see* sound, bank  
 barrier  
     compiler, 303  
     memory, 310  
 barycentric coordinates, 766  
 base, *see also* numeric base  
 baseline, 717  
 batched updating, 1090  
 battle royale, *see* genre  
 beating, *see* audio  
 bel, *see* decibel  
 Bézier triangle, 624  
 “big O” notation, 445  
 big-endian, *see* endian  
 bilinear, *see* texture, filtering  
 billboard, 49, 711, 714  
 binary, *see* numeric base, 131  
 binary heap, 442  
 binary search tree, 442  
 binary semaphore, 276  
 binary space partitioning tree, 1018, *see* tree  
 Bink Video, 1162  
 biomechanical models, 43  
 bit depth, 949  
 bitwise operator, 176, 346  
 bivector, 373  
 bleach bypass, 48  
 blend tree, 788, 792–796, 798, 801, 806  
 blending, *see also* animation  
     audio, 957, 971  
     stage (graphics), 676  
 Blinn-Phong lighting model, *see* lighting  
 blocking algorithm, 289  
 blocking function, 245–247, 251, 268,  
     270, 273, 289, 1102, 1110, 1111  
 bloom, *see* lighting  
  
 Blueprints, *see* Unreal Engine 4  
 Bluetooth, 562  
 Bode plot, 939  
 Boost library, 40, 45, 253, 254, 447–449,  
     1081  
 bounding box  
     axis-aligned, 411, 831  
     oriented, 411, 832  
 bounding sphere tree, *see* tree  
 bounding volume, 688  
 branch dependency, 218  
 branch penalty, 218  
 branch prediction, 218, 219  
 brawler, *see* genre  
 BRDF, *see* lighting  
 breakpoint, *see* debugger  
 brush geometry, 62, 1018  
 BSP tree, *see* tree  
 BSS segment, *see* executable file  
 BSSRDF, *see* lighting  
 bubble-up effect, 1050  
 build configuration  
     debug build, 86  
     development build, 86  
     hybrid build, 86  
     release build, 82  
     ship build, 86  
 build rules, 502  
 Bullet, 824  
 bullet through paper, *see* tunneling  
 bump mapping, *see* rendering  
 bus  
     address, 174  
     audio, 947, 978  
         analog, 983  
         digital, 983  
         implementation, 983  
         latency, 984  
         master output, 982  
         preset, 990  
         voice, 978  
     data, 174  
 busy-wait, 245, 251, 270, 273, 289, 294,  
     298, 328, 555  
 byte, 132  
 byte code, 1135, 1145

- C standard library, 43, 89, 412, 465, 486–488, 539, 589
- C++, 4
- best practices, 105
  - bitwise operator, 176, 346
  - class, 106
  - declaration, 146–148, 150
  - definition, 146, 148
  - `delete`, 156
  - header file, 79
  - inheritance, 106
  - initialization order, 418
  - managed, 489
  - multiple inheritance, 107
  - new, 156
  - object model, 1022
  - postincrement, 445
  - preincrement, 445
  - preprocessor, 79
  - private, 149
  - public, 149
  - source file, 79
  - standard library, 40, 89, 114, 269, 448
  - standardization, 113
  - static, 149, 157
  - translation unit, 79, 144
  - user-defined literals, 459
  - versions of, 113
  - virtual inheritance, 107
  - `volatile`, *see* volatile
- C4 Engine, *see* Tombstone Engine
- C#, 34, 531, 1063
- delegate, 1115
  - reflection, 1064, 1136
- cache, 191
- coherency, 197, 630, 1092
  - coherency domain, 308
  - coherency protocol, 307
  - copy-back, 196
  - direct-mapped, 195
  - eviction, 195
  - friendly design, 1060
  - hit, 191
  - hit rate, 196
  - line, 192
- MESI protocol, 307
- miss, 191, 198
- MOESI protocol, 307
- multilevel, 196
- replacement policy, 196
- set associativity, 195
- write-back, 196
- write-through, 196
- call stack, 92, 153, 610
- stack frame, 153
- callback function, 489, 492, 530
- camera, 47, 622, 655, 1163
- debug, 605
  - imaging rectangle, 655
- Camtasia, 607
- Cartesian coordinates, 360
- Castle Wolfenstein 3D, 31, 625
- caustics, *see* lighting
- CCD, *see* continuous collision detection
- CD, *see* compact disc
- cel animation, 722
- cell broadband engine, 228
- center of mass, 857
- central arbitor, 285
- central processing unit, *see* CPU
- Cg, 672
- CgFX, 682
- Chain of Responsibility, 1122
- Chandra-Misra, 285
- change of basis, 388
- channel, *see* animation
- character dialog, 997
- character set
- ANSI, 462
  - Unicode, 462
- cheats, 606
- circular wait, 282
- class, 106, 156
- aggregation, 1049, 1051
  - composition, 1049, 1051
  - constructor, 520
  - coupling, *see* coupling
  - diagram, 107
  - hierarchy, 1046
  - bubble-up effect, 1050
  - monolithic, 1046
  - Unreal, 1046
- instance, 106, 156

- memory layout, 158  
mix-in, 107, 1049  
packing, 159  
pure virtual function, 163  
reflection, 1064  
scripted, 1153  
virtual function, 162  
classical mechanics, 854  
ClearCase, *see* version control  
clip, *see* animation, sound  
clipping, 411, 659, 674  
clipping plane, 46  
clock  
    global, 741  
    local, 741  
closed hash table, *see* container  
cloth  
    rendering, 649, 670  
    simulation, 674, 818, 909  
cloud computing, 225  
clouds, 714  
CLR, *see* Common Language Runtime  
CM, *see* center of mass  
code reuse, 38  
code segment, *see* executable file  
codec, 979  
    video, 1162  
coding standards, 118  
coefficient of restitution, 877  
Coffman conditions, 282  
COLLADA, 682  
collection, *see* container  
collinear vectors, 369  
collision, *see also* hashing  
    contact, 830, 849  
    detection, 42, 51, 52, 207, 359, 384, 411, 527, 595, 823, 825  
    shape, 829  
    sweep and prune algorithm, 847  
    updating, 1089  
color, 622, 633  
    channel, 634  
    log-LUV, 634, 702  
    model, 634  
    RGB, 634  
    space, 634  
    spectral, 633  
colorization, 719  
command line arguments, 473, 477  
Common Language Runtime, 34, 489  
commutative property, 368, 372, 933  
compact disc, 948  
compare-and-swap instruction, 295  
compile-time assertion, *see* assertion  
compiled language, 1135  
compiler, 78  
    build configurations, 81  
    debugging information, 83  
    GNU compiler, 83  
    optimizations, 81, 84, *see also* linker  
        algebraic simplification, 85  
        code inlining, 85  
        compile-time vs. link-time, 85  
        constant folding, 85  
        constant propagation, 85  
        dead code elimination, 85  
        instruction reordering, 85  
        local vs. global, 84  
        loop unrolling, 85  
        operator strength reduction, 85  
        peep-hole, 84  
        profile-guided, 85  
    optimizing, 316  
project configuration tutorial, 88  
project files, 80  
solution files, 80  
unresolved symbol error, 144  
warnings, 81  
compiler barrier, *see* barrier  
compiler intrinsic, 294, 295, 333  
complex exponential, 934  
complex instruction set, 223  
complex number, 934  
    multiplication, 935  
    rotation, 935  
composition, 111, 1049, 1051, 1052, 1153  
compression, *see also* animation  
    compression  
        lossless, 951  
        quantization, 564, 778, 948, 949  
        texture, 642  
compressor, 983  
compute shader, 348, 350, 351, 672  
concurrency, 204, 205, 256, 544

- message passing, 257  
monitor, 288  
progress, 289  
shared memory, 204, 257  
condition variable, 273, 278, 548, 555  
configuration file, 471  
configuration space, 776  
conical sound source, 918  
consensus problem, 300  
conservative advancement, 845  
consistency model, *see* data-centric consistency model  
console  
    gaming platform, 8  
    in-game, 50, 604  
constant folding, *see* compiler, optimizations  
constant power pan law, *see* audio  
constant propagation, *see* compiler, optimizations  
constant register, *see* GPU  
constraint, 407, 806, 816, 854, 879, 883  
consume memory order, *see* memory ordering semantics  
contact, *see* collision  
container, 40, 441  
    array, 441  
    binary heap, 442  
    binary search tree, 442, 452  
    building custom, 447  
    deque, 442  
    dictionary, 442, 452, 508, 1008, 1065, 1141  
    dynamic array, 442, 451  
    graph, 443  
    hash table, 442, 452  
        open & closed, 452  
    list, 41, 442, 1141  
    map, 442  
    priority queue, 442  
    queue, 442  
    set, 443  
    stack, 442  
    tree, 442  
    vector (STL), 41, 442  
contention, 287  
context switch, 553  
continuity  
    C0, C1, C2, 758  
    motion, 758  
continuous collision detection, 845  
continuous-time signal, *see* signal  
control dependency, 218  
controller, *see* human interface device  
convergence, 863  
conversation, 1002  
    action, 1009  
    branching, 1004  
    context-sensitive, 1009  
    criterion, 1008  
    exclusivity, 1004  
    rule, 1008  
    speaker and listener, 1007  
convex polyhedron, 412  
convolution, 719, 930, 932, 933  
cooperative multitasking, 1140, 1154  
coordinate system, 384  
    Cartesian, 360  
    cylindrical, 360  
    hierarchy, 388  
    homogeneous clip space, 659  
    left-handed, 361  
    light space, 655, 703, 704  
    model space, 385, 630, 751  
    right-handed, 361  
    screen space, 663, 716  
    spherical, 360  
    tangent space, 635  
    texture space, 641  
    view space, 387, 656  
    world space, 386, 631  
copy on write, 457  
copy-back cache, 196  
core, *see* CPU  
coroutine, 204, 554, 1140  
coupling, 38, 46, 53, 66, 144, 1020, 1052, 1095  
CPU, 166  
    addressing mode, 178, 180  
    core, 226, 353  
    CPU-dependent game, 536  
    micro-operations, 172  
    out-of-order execution, 171, 217, 222, 224, 225, 239, 291,

- 300–302, 304, 309, 311, 315, 355  
pipelined, 171, *see also* pipeline, 211, 213, 217, 221, 225, 445  
register, 153  
speculative execution, 239  
stage, 212, *see also* GPU, stage  
superscalar, 211, 221  
utilization, 1105  
very long instruction word, 211, 224  
crash report, 594  
critical  
    operation, 262, 264, 267, 289, 302, 303, 325, 327  
    race, 258  
    section, 270  
cross product, *see* vector  
cross-fade, 758, 759, 786, 1001  
crowd modeling, 996  
Crystal Space, 36  
CSV file, 467, 614  
cube map, 700  
cue, *see* sound  
culling, 15, 47  
    antiportal, 689  
    back-face, 627  
    frustum, 688, *see* frustum  
    occlusion, 15, 18, 47, 688  
    portal, 15, 689  
    potentially visible set, 688  
    visibility determination, 688  
curve, 759  
cvar, 474  
CVS, *see* version control  
cylindrical coordinates, 360  
  
D-cache, *see* data cache  
DAC, *see* digital-to-analog conversion  
DAG, *see* directed acyclic graph  
damping, 860  
dashpot, *see* damping  
data cache, 196  
data definition language, 1135  
data dependency, *see* dependencies  
data parallelism, *see* parallelism  
data pathway, 1132  
  
data race, 205, 259, 281  
data segment, *see* executable file  
data type, 138, 146  
data-centric consistency model, 266  
data-driven, 12, 1024  
    cost of, 1024  
DCC, *see* digital content creation app  
dead code elimination, *see* compiler, optimizations  
deadlock, 275, 281  
debug build, *see* build configuration  
debug drawing, 50, 595  
debugger, 50, *see also* call stack  
    breakpoint, 92, 95–97  
    debugging optimized builds, 97  
    single-step, 92  
    watch window, 93  
decal, 48, 712  
decay, *see* audio  
decibel, 914, 915  
decimal, *see* numeric base  
declaration, *see* C++  
declarative language, 1136  
decode, *see* CPU, stage  
decomposition, *see* task decomposition  
deep copy, 1127  
deferred rendering, 709  
definition, *see* C++  
deformable body, 825, 903, 909  
degree of parallelism, 1105  
degrees of freedom, 406, 856, 883  
Delaunay triangulation, 766  
delay slot, 215, 225  
delegate (C#), 1115  
delete, *see* C++  
demodulation, 951  
denormalized, *see* floating-point  
density, *see* audio  
dependencies, 214, 222  
    cycle, 38  
    data, 215  
    engine subsystems, 1093  
    game objects, 1093  
    thread, *see* thread  
dependency graph, 1105  
depth buffer, 664, 704  
    shadow mapping, 704

- testing, 676, 716  
z-testing, 675, 692, 693
- depth of field blur, 719
- deque, 442
- derivative of a vector, 858
- design pattern, 111
- abstract factory, 111, 1042
  - Chain of Responsibility, 1122
  - command, 1117
  - factory, 1065
  - iterator, 111, 118, 430, 443, 445, 1149
  - janitor, 111, 112, 320, 327
  - RAII, 111, 125, 320, 327
  - singleton, 111, 418
- destructible objects, 903, 1018
- development build, *see* build configuration
- development kit, 461, 616
- device driver, 975
- dialog action, 1009
- dialog system, 997
- diamond inheritance problem, 1049
- dictionary, *see* container
- difference clip, 769
- diffraction, *see* lighting, 917, 970
- diffuse
- lighting, *see* lighting
  - tail, 920
  - texture map, 640
- diffusion, *see* audio
- digital content creation app, 59, 62, 501, 669
- Digital Molecular Matter, 825
- digital signal processing, *see* signal processing
- digital-to-analog conversion, 951
- dining philosophers, 285
- direct lighting, *see* lighting
- direct memory access controller, 984
- directed acyclic graph, 61, 443, 1109
- directed graph, 1109
- direction vector, 365
- directional light, *see* lighting
- directional sound source, 918
- DirectX, 41, 46, 91
- perspective projection matrix, 660
- view space, 387
- Dirichlet conditions, 938
- disassembly, 98
- discrete-time signal, *see* signal
- disk operating systems, 233
- dispatching, 224
- displacement mapping, *see* rendering
- display device, 622
- distance field, *see* signed distance field
- distance-based attenuation, *see* attenuation
- distributed computing, 229
- distributed shared memory, 257
- distributive property, 368, 372, 933
- division by  $w$ , 381
- DivX, 1162
- DMAC, *see* direct memory access controller
- DMM, *see* Digital Molecular Matter
- DOC, *see* degree of parallelism
- DOF, *see* degrees of freedom, depth of field
- Dolby Digital, *see* audio, file formats
- Doom, 11, 31, 625, 1025
- DOP, *see* degree of parallelism
- Doppler effect, 922, 956, 957, 973
- dot product, *see* vector
- double dispatch, 842
- DRC, *see* dynamic range compression
- dry sound, *see* sound
- DSP, *see* signal processing
- DTS, *see* audio, file formats, *see* surround sound
- duality, 940
- duck typing, 1141
- ducking, *see* audio
- dynamic allocation, *see* allocation
- dynamic array, 442
- dynamic link library, 80
- dynamic range compression, 983
- dynamics (physics), 854
- early reflections, 920
- ease curve, 759
- echo, 920
- Edge, *see* PlayStation Edge library
- effect file, *see* shader

- effective sound pressure, *see* sound  
 ELF, *see* executable  
 elision, 115  
 emissive, *see* lighting  
 encapsulation, 106  
 endian, 140
  - big, 140
  - little, 140, 334
  - multibyte quantity, 140
  - swapping, 141
 Endorphin, 43  
 energy, 875  
 engine, 11
  - line between engine and game, 11
  - reusability gamut, 12
 engine configuration, 470
  - OGRE, 475
  - Quake, 474
  - Uncharted/TLOU, 475
 environment map, 48, 700, 706  
 environment variable, 236, 473  
 EQ, *see* equalizer  
 equal-loudness contour, 916  
 equalizer, 940, 941, 982  
 equilibrium, 882  
 error, *see also* compiler
  - conditions, 119
  - numerical methods, 863
  - quantization, 949
 Euler angles, 386, 403  
 Euler's formula, 936, 937  
 Euphoria, 43  
 event, 57, 531, 1040, 1114
  - animation trigger, 746
  - arguments, 1118
  - data-driven, 1131
  - debugging, 1128
  - driven, 37, 57, 1114, 1122
  - forwarding, 1116, 1122
  - GUI-based, 1133
  - handling, 1120, 1151
  - memory allocation, 1128
  - object, 279
  - priorities, 1126
  - queuing, 1124
  - registering interest, 1123
  - sending, 1152
 trigger, 746  
 types, 1117  
 evict, *see* cache  
 exception handling, 123
  - exception object, 123
 exchange instruction, 295  
 exclusion, *see* audio  
 executable
  - BSS segment, 152
  - code segment, 151
  - data segment, 151
  - ELF format, 151
  - file, 79, 151
  - read-only data segment, 152
  - rodata segment, 152
  - segment, 151
  - text segment, 151
 explicit parallelism, 206, 225  
 explosions, 902  
 exponent, *see* floating-point  
 expression tree, 792  
 F#, 1136  
 facing, 369  
 fact dictionary, 1008  
 factory, *see* design pattern  
 fall-off, *see* sound, pressure  
 fan, *see* triangle  
 fast Fourier transform, 939  
 feedback, 927  
 fence, *see also* barrier, *see* memory
  - ordering semantics
 fetch, *see* CPU, stage  
 FFT, *see* fast Fourier transform  
 fiber, 204, 554  
 field of view, 46  
 fighting game, *see* genre  
 file I/O
  - asynchronous, 489, 1072
  - buffered, 486
  - deadline, 492
  - synchronous, 488
 file scope, *see* scope  
 file system, 482
  - path, 458, 482, 484
  - search path, 485
  - wrapping, 487

- filter, 940, 979  
  comb, 920  
  low-pass, 940  
  notch, 940  
  passband, 940  
  post-send, 980  
  pre-send, 980  
  stopband, 940  
  texture, *see* texture, filtering  
finite state machine, 786, 1042, 1087, 1154, 1157  
first-person shooter, *see* genre  
fixed-function pipeline, 672  
fixed-point, *see* integer, 133  
flashlight, *see* lighting  
flat weighted average, *see* animation  
floating-point, 133  
  denormalized, 136  
  exponent, 134  
  infinity, 135  
  machine epsilon, 136  
  magnitude, 134  
  mantissa, 134  
  not-a-number, 135  
  precision, 134  
  significant digits, 134, 135  
  subnormal, 136  
  unit in the last place, 137  
floating-point unit, 166  
flow control, 1157  
FLT\_MAX, 135  
fluid dynamics, 715, 910, 924  
fluid simulation  
  position based, 910  
flushed, 218  
Flynn's taxonomy, 207  
FMOD Studio, 995  
FMV, *see* full-motion video  
FName, 459  
FO min and max, *see* sound, fall-off  
focus, *see* audio  
Folly library, 40, 45, 450  
font rendering, *see* text rendering  
foot sliding, 813, 815  
force, 373, 859  
  as a function, 860  
forward kinematics, 775  
Fourier transform, 933, 938, 940  
FPS, *see* genre, *see* frame rate  
FPU, *see* floating-point unit  
fragment, 664  
frame, *see* animation  
frame buffer, 663  
  back buffer, 538  
  double buffering, 663  
  front buffer, 538  
  swapping, 538  
  triple buffering, 664  
frame rate, 10, 534, 736  
  governing, 537, 538  
frame-to-frame coherency, *see* temporal coherency  
framework, 529  
Fraps, 607  
free store, *see also* allocation, 156  
frequency, 913  
  angular, 913  
  domain, 933, 938  
  fundamental, 938  
  response, 920, 940  
friction, 880  
frustum, 47  
FSM, *see* finite state machine  
full fence, 310, *see* memory ordering semantics  
full-motion video, 49, 735, 1019, 1161  
function  
  signature, 146  
functional language, *see* language  
Fusion, 37  
futex, 271  
Fx Composer, 670  
G-buffer, 709  
G-factor, 1015  
gain, 926, 946, 979, 983  
game  
  definition of, 8  
game controller, *see* human interface device  
game development team  
  artist, 6  
  composer, 6  
  engineer, 5

- game designer, 7
- producer, 7
- publisher, 8
- sound designer, 6
- voice actor, 6
- writer, 7
- game engine, *see* engine
- game flow control, 1157
- game loop, 526, 544, 899
  - parallelizing, 545
  - pausing, 605
  - Pong*, 527
  - single-stepping, 532, 605
  - sleep, 537
  - slow motion, 605
- game object, 1021
  - asynchronous updating, 1102
  - attribute, 1021
  - batched updating, 1090
  - behavior, 1021, 1041
  - dependencies, 1093
  - instance, 1021
  - linkage to engine, 1041
  - persistence, 1042
  - queries, 1042
  - query, 1085
  - reference, 1150
  - references, 1042, 1079
  - spawning, 1040
  - state, 1087, 1100
  - state caching, 1100
  - time-stamping, 1101
  - type, 1021
  - types, 1041
  - unique id, 458, 1041, 1079, 1086
  - updating, 527, 1040, 1086, 1093, 1095
- game object model, *see* object model
- game state, 1016
- game world, 9, 56, 64, 1016, 1018
  - chunk, 1019, 1029, 1062
  - editor, 59, 64, 714, 1021, 1023, 1025, 1030–1033, 1035, 1043
  - Hammer, 64, 1025
  - Radiant, 64, 1025
  - Sandbox, 1025
  - UnrealEd, 64, 66, 1025
- gameplay, 1015
  - flow, 1015, 1019, 1040
  - foundation system, 55, 1039
  - hub, 1019
  - linear, 1019
  - objectives, 1015, 1019, 1040
  - open world, 1019
  - player mechanics, 55, 1015, 1162
  - region, 1033
  - task, 1019
  - water, 715
- GameSalad, 37
- gamma
  - correction, 718
  - response curve, 718
- gamut, *see* lighting
- garbage collection, 1081
- Gaussian elimination, 378
- gcc, *see* GNU C/C++ compiler
- general-purpose GPU programming,  
*see* GPGPU
- genre, 13
  - battle royale, 24
  - brawler, 19
  - fighting, 17
  - first-person shooter, 14
  - massively multiplayer online game, 9, 13, 23
  - platformer, 15
  - racing, 19
  - real-time strategy, 21
  - simulation, 31
  - strategy, 21
  - turn-based strategy, 21
- geometry, *see also* mesh
  - brush, *see* brush geometry
- gimbal lock, 403, 404, 871
- git, *see* version control
- GJK algorithm, 839
- Glide, 41
- global illumination model, *see* lighting
- global namespace, 118
- global optimizations, *see* compiler, optimizations
- globally unique identifier, 458, 507, 517
- gloss map, 699
- glyph atlas, 716

- GNU C/C++ compiler, 78, 336  
Gouraud shading, 637  
GPGPU, 41, 348, 672  
GPU, 672  
    command list, 692  
    compute unit, 353, 354  
    kernel, 350  
    lock step execution, 355  
    register, 678  
    SIMD unit, 350, 354  
    stage, 355  
    thread, 354, 355  
    thread block, 353  
    thread group, 353, 354  
    warp, 355  
    wavefront, 355  
grammar, 792  
Granny, 42, 507, 516, 783, 790  
graphical shading language, 670  
graphical user interface, 49  
graphics processing unit, *see* GPU  
gravity, 856, 875, 888  
grenade physics, 902  
group, *see* audio  
GUI, *see* graphical user interface  
GUID, *see* globally unique identifier
- H.26x, 1162  
Hadamard product, 364, 676  
hair, 647, 674, 710, 909  
Half-Life 2, 32, 33  
Hammer, *see* game world editor  
handle, 440, 554, 1042, 1079, 1082  
    sound, 987  
    stale, 1083  
hardware T&L, 41, 672  
harmonic, 938  
    scaling in time domain, 974  
hashing, *see also* container, 453  
    chaining, 453  
    collision, 452, 455, 459  
    linear probing, 455  
    open addressing, 453  
    quadratic probing, 455  
    Robin Hood hashing, 456  
Haskell, 1136  
Havok, 42, 824
- Havok Animation, 42  
HDMI, 954  
head-related transfer function, 924  
header file, *see* C++  
headphones, 944  
headroom, 962  
heads-up display, 49  
heap memory, 156  
height field, *see* terrain  
heightmap, *see* texture  
HeroEngine, 35  
Hertz, 534  
heterogeneous system architecture, 678  
hex editor, 102  
hexadecimal, *see* numeric base, 132  
HID, *see* human interface device  
hierarchy, *see also* coordinate system, *see also* joint  
    high dynamic range, *see* lighting  
    high water mark, 451, 616  
    hit rate, *see* cache  
    hold and wait, 282  
    homogeneous coordinates, 379  
    horizontal add, *see* single instruction  
        multiple data  
Houdini, 64  
HRTF, *see* head-related transfer function  
HSA, *see* heterogeneous system  
    architecture  
HTML, 1136  
HUD, *see* heads-up display  
hUMA, *see* heterogeneous system  
    architecture  
human interface device, 53, 559  
    abstract control indices, 584  
    accelerometer, 566, 567  
    actuator, 570  
    analog axis, 564  
    analog input, 564  
    and game loop, 527  
    audio, 570  
    button, 563, 564  
    chord, 575  
    context-sensitive controls, 585  
    control mapping, 584  
    cross-platform, 582  
    dead zone, 571

- disabling, 586
- DualShock, 562, 566, 567
- force-feedback, 53, 570
- gesture, 577
- infrared sensor, 567
- input event, 574
- interrupt, 562
- keyboard, 54
- mouse, 566
- multiplayer, 582
- PlayStation Eye, 568
- polling, 561
- relative axis, 566
- rumble, 569
- sequence, 577
- signal filtering, 572
- system requirements, 571
- Wiimote, 559, 566, 567
- XInput, 562, 563
- hybrid build, *see* build configuration
- Hydro Thunder*, 1044
- hyperthreading, 225
- hysteresis, 971
- I-cache, *see* instruction cache
- I-Collide, 52
- IDE, *see* integrated development environment
- IGC, *see* in-game cinematic
- IID, *see* interaural intensity difference
- IK, *see* inverse kinematics
- image
  - bitmapped, 634
  - bits per pixel, 634
  - of program, 151
  - sampling, 683
- image-based lighting, *see* lighting
- imaginary number, 934
- imperative language, 1136
- implicit parallelism, 206, 211
- impulse
  - physics, 876, 877
  - response, 928, 932, 966
  - unit, *see* unit impulse
- impulse response, 931
- in-game cinematic, 49, 735, 991, 1019
- independent variable, 924
- index buffer, 628, 630
- indirect lighting, *see* lighting
- inertia tensor, 870
- inheritance, 106, 162, 1022, 1067, 1153
  - deadly diamond, 107
  - diamond problem, 1049
  - multiple, 107, 162, 1049
  - virtual, 107
- initialization order (C++), 418
- inline function, 83, *see* compiler optimizations, 148
- inner product, 367
- input register, *see* GPU
- instance limiting, *see* audio
- instanced geometry, 1018
- instancing, *see* animation
- instantaneous acoustic pressure, *see* sound
- instruction cache, 196
- instruction reordering, *see* compiler optimizations
- instruction stream, 354
- instruction-level parallelism, 214
- Insure++, 50, 102
- integer, 132
  - fixed-point, 133
  - sign and magnitude, 132
  - sign bit, 132
  - signed, 132
  - two's complement, 132
  - unsigned, 132
- integrated development environment, 78
- integration
  - explicit Euler, 366, 535
  - numerical, 10, 535
- intensity, *see* lighting
- inter-object communication, *see* event system
- interaural
  - intensity difference, 959
  - time difference, 923
- interconnect bus, 308
- interface, 118
- interference, 919, 944
  - constructive and destructive, 919
- interpolation

- linear, 375, 400, 546, 755
- spherical linear interpolation, 401
- temporal, 757
- vertex attributes, 635
- interpreted language, 1135
- interrupt, 95, 186, 232, 234, 247, 292
  - service routine, 177, 562
- interruption
  - of character dialog, 1001, 1003, 1004
  - of critical operation, 261, 264, 291
- intersection, *see also* collision, 829
  - AABB versus AABB, 838
  - point versus sphere, 836
  - sphere versus sphere, 836
- intrinsic, *see* compiler intrinsic
- inverse kinematics, 775, 811
- invocation, 262
- Irrlicht, 36
- ISR, *see* interrupt, service routine
- ITD, *see* interaural time difference
- iterator, *see* design pattern
- janitor, *see* design pattern
- Java, 1063
- job, 549
  - counter, 554
  - declaration, 549
  - kicking, 549
  - synchronization, 555
  - system, 545, 549, 1102
- join, *see* thread
- joint, *see also* animation
  - coordinate, 730
  - index, 728
  - name, 728
  - nonuniform scale, 731
  - parent, 728
  - root, 728
  - scale, 731
- joystick, *see* human interface device
- kd-tree, 47, 695
- kernel, *see* GPU
- kernel call, 267
- kerning, 717
- key frame, 736
- key-value pair, 452, 508, 1031, 1032, 1065, 1119, 1139
- keyboard, *see* human interface device
- kicking a job, *see* job
- Killzone 2, 709
- kinematics, 785
  - end effector, 775
  - forward, 775
  - inverse, 775, 811
- Kismet, *see* Unreal Engine 4, Blueprints
- Kynapse, *see* artificial intelligence
- L1 cache, *see* cache
- lambda, 1144
- lane, *see* single instruction multiple data language, 106
  - compiled, 1135
  - declarative, 1136
  - functional, 1101, 1136
  - imperative, 1136
  - interpreted, 1135
  - object-oriented, 106, 1136
  - procedural, 1136
  - reflection, 1022, 1042, 1052, 1064, 1065, 1136
- late function binding, 1115
- late reverberations, 920
- latency
  - audio bus, 984
  - memory access, 188
  - pipeline, 214
- LeadWerks Engine, 35
- left-hand rule, 371
- level of detail, 625, 714, 715
- lexically scoped, *see* scope
- LFE, *see* low-frequency effects
- libgcm, 41
- library, 79, 529
- lifetime
  - debug primitive, 597
  - resource, 503
- light map, 48, 653, 672
- lighting, 633, 647
  - absorption, 633
  - ambient, 649, 654
  - ambient occlusion, 705
  - area light, 655

- Blinn-Phong lighting model, 652  
bloom, 48, 655, 702  
BRDF, 652  
BSSRDF, 707  
caustics, 706  
diffraction, 633  
diffuse, 649  
direct, 647  
directional, 654  
emissive, 655  
flashlight, 655  
gamut, 633  
global illumination model, 648, 702  
high dynamic range, 634, 655, 702  
image-based, 698  
indirect, 648, 702  
intensity, 633  
interactions with matter, 633  
local illumination model, 647  
medium, 633  
per-pixel shading, 637  
Phong reflection model, 649  
point light, 654  
precomputed radiance transfer, 708  
radiosity, 648  
ray tracing, 648  
reflection, 633, 706  
refraction, 633  
scattering, 634, 707  
source, 622, 653  
spec map, 699  
specular, 649  
specular power map, 670, 699  
spot light, 654  
static, 653, 672  
transmission, 633  
transport model, 622, 647  
viewing direction, 650  
wavelength, 633  
Lightwave, 669  
line, 408  
line of sight, 595, 849, 1103  
line-level, 945  
linear, 926  
algebra, 359  
approximation, 625, 745  
momentum, 859  
probing, *see* hashing  
time-invariant system, 926  
velocity, 858  
linearizability, 266  
link register, 297  
linkage, 149  
    external, 149  
    internal, 149, 151, 153  
linker, 78  
    optimizations, 85  
Lisp, 477, 797, 1144  
list, *see* triangle, *see* container  
listener, 956  
little-endian, *see* endian  
livelock, 283  
load linked/store conditional, 297  
local illumination model, *see* lighting  
local optimizations, *see* compiler, optimizations  
local variable, *see* variable  
localization, 456, 462, 466  
location tag, 1009  
location-based entertainment, 30  
locator, 747  
lock-free algorithm, 267, 287, 290, 328, 1102  
lock-not-needed assertion, *see* assertion  
locomotion  
    cycle, 722  
    noise, 773  
    pivotal, 761  
    targeted, 761  
LOD, *see* level of detail  
logarithmic, 915  
logging, 589  
    channel, 592  
    to file, 593  
    verbosity, 591  
Loki library, 40, 450  
look-up table, 517, 521, 522, 640, 674  
loop unrolling, *see* compiler, optimizations  
looping, *see* animation  
lossless compression, *see* compression  
loudness, *see* audio

- low-frequency effects, 944, 959, 982  
low-pass filter, 572  
LPCM, *see* pulse-code modulation  
LTI system, *see* linear time-invariant system  
LU decomposition, 378  
Lua, 1139  
Lumberyard, 36  
LUT, *see* look-up table
- machine epsilon, *see* floating-point macro, 333  
Macromedia Fusion, 37  
madd instruction, 340  
magnitude, *see also* floating-point complex, *see* complex number vector, *see* vector  
make, 86  
managed C++, 489  
manager, 418  
manifest constants, 152  
mantissa, *see* floating-point  
manycore, *see also* GPU, 210  
mass, 857  
massively multiplayer online game, *see* genre  
material, 682  
    editor, 670  
    system, 46  
    visual, 646, 670  
math library, 44  
matrix, 375  
     $3 \times 3$ , 380, 404  
     $4 \times 3$ , 384  
     $4 \times 4$ , 343, 363, 376, 380, 382, 390, 430, 730, 756, 769  
    affine, 376  
    camera-to-world, 46  
    column matrix, 377  
    conversion to quaternion, 399  
    identity, 378  
    in-memory representation, 392  
    inverse, 378  
    isotropic, 376  
    joint-to-model, 752  
    model-to-world, 369, 390, 631, 754  
    orthographic projection, 662  
    orthonormal, 376  
    perspective projection matrix, 660  
    product, 376  
    pure rotation, 404  
    row matrix, 377  
    special orthogonal, 376  
    transpose, 379  
    view-to-world, 656  
    world-to-view, 656  
matrix palette, 753  
Maya, 62, 669  
mechanics  
    classical, 854  
medium, *see also* lighting  
MEL language, 502, 1134  
Meltdown exploit, 239  
memory  
    access cycle, 293  
    access patterns, 426  
    alignment, 159, 333, 431  
    cache, *see* cache  
    card, 570  
    controller, 160, 166, 176, 184, 212, 227, 291, 356  
    corruption, 101  
    debug memory, 461  
    defragmentation, 439, 1077  
    fence, 304, *see also* barrier, 316  
    fragmentation, 437  
    in-game statistics, 615  
    leak, 101, 615  
    management, 44, 426, 511  
    management unit, *see* memory, controller  
    ordering bugs, 291  
    ordering semantics, 305, 311, 315  
        acquire, 311, 312, 316  
        consume, 316  
        full fence, 311, 316  
        relaxed, 315  
        release, 311, 312, 316  
    relocation, 439, 987, 1077  
    shared, *see* concurrency  
    small memory allocator, 1076  
    stick, 487  
    virtual, 437, 615  
menu

- in-game, 50, 475, 601
- mesh, 61, 121, 625
  - constructing, 627
  - instance, 631, 1090
  - progressive, 626
  - static, 1018, 1029
  - submesh, 646
- MESI, 197
- MESIF, 197
- message, *see also* event
  - map, 1121
  - passing, *see* concurrency
  - pump, 46, 529
- metric, *see* SI units
- mic-level, 945
- micro-operations, 172
- microphone, 942
- Microsoft Excel, 467, 614
- Microsoft Visual Studio, 70, 78
- Miles Sound System, 995
- MIMD, *see* multiple instruction multiple data
- Minkowski sum/difference, 839
- mipmapping, 643, 679
- MISD, *see* multiple instruction single data
- mix snapshot, 990
- mix-in class, 1049
- mixed reality, 27
- mixing, *see* audio
- MKS system of units, 856
- MMO, *see* genre
- MMX, *see* streaming SIMD extensions
- mod community, 11
- model
  - 3D, *see* mesh
  - analytic, 10
  - closed-form, 10
  - mathematical, 9
  - numerical, 10
- modeler (3D), 6
- modulation, 940
- MOESI, 197
- moiré pattern, 643
- moment of inertia, 867
- momentum
  - angular, 872
- linear, 859
- monitor, *see* concurrency
- MonoGame, 34
- monolithic class hierarchy, 1046
- motion blur, 719
- motion capture, 6
- movie capture, 607
- movie player, 1161
- moving average, 537, 572
- MP3, *see* audio, file formats
- MPEG, 1162, *see also* audio, file formats
- multibyte quantity, *see* endian
- multicore, 210, 226, 437
- multilevel cache, *see* cache
- multiplayer, 55
  - human interface devices, 582
  - networked, 55, 1162
  - replication, 1042
  - split-screen, 55
- multiple inheritance, 1049
- multiple instruction multiple data, 207, 348
- multiple instruction single data, 207
- multiplication as complex rotation, 935
- multiply defined symbol error, 146
- multitasking, 540, 545
  - asynchronous programming, 1102
  - cooperative, 234, 250, 554, 1140, 1154
  - GPU, 672
  - interfacing with game object update, 1102
  - job, 545
  - preemptive, 40, 230, 234, 247, 250, 554, 1140
  - pthreads, 545
  - sleep, 492, 537, 546
  - SPURS, 545
  - thread, 487, 492, 545
  - music, 1010
- mutex, 112, 245, 264, 267–269, 271, 273, 282, 292, 555
- mutual exclusion, *see* mutex
- namespace, 118
- natural number, 132
- NDEBUG, 82

- nearest neighbor, *see* texture, filtering  
negative reinforcement, 919  
*new*, *see* C++  
Newton's law of restitution, 876  
Newton's laws of motion, 859  
Newtonian mechanics, 854  
non-blocking algorithm, 289, 290  
    lock-free, 289  
    obstruction-free, 289  
    wait-free, 289  
non-blocking function, 268, *see also*  
    blocking function, 1102  
non-player character, 15, 56, 734, 742  
noninteractive sequence, 735  
nonuniform rational B-spline, 624  
normal, *see also* vector  
    map, *see* texture  
    of plane, 369  
Novodex, *see* PhysX  
NPC, *see* non-player character  
NTSC, 534, 542, 663  
numeric base  
    binary, 131  
    decimal, 131  
    hexadecimal, 132  
numerical methods, 863  
NURBS, *see* nonuniform rational  
    B-spline  
Nyquist frequency, 949
- OBB, *see* bounding box  
object file, 79  
object model, *see also* game object model  
    C++, 1022  
    component, 1052, 1055  
    component creation, 1053  
    component ownership, 1053  
    Excel, 1022  
    game, 56, 1022, 1040  
    *Hydro Thunder*, 1044  
    interface, 1022  
    multitasking, 1107  
    object-centric, 1043, 1044  
    OMT, 1022  
    property-centric, 1043, 1060  
    runtime, 1023, 1043  
    software, 1022
- tool-side, 1023  
    unique ids, 1056  
object-oriented, *see* language  
obstruction, *see* audio  
obstruction-free algorithm, 290  
Ocaml, 1136  
occlusion, *see* audio  
octal, *see* numeric base  
octree, 47, 694  
ODE, *see* Open Dynamics Engine  
Ogg Vorbis, 953  
OGRE, 36, 45, 47, 91, 139, 140, 789  
one-frame-off bug, 1099  
OOO execution, *see* CPU  
opacity, 623  
open addressing, *see* hashing  
Open Dynamics Engine, 42, 823  
open hash table, *see* container  
open-source software, 34  
OpenAL, 994  
OpenGL, 41, 46  
    perspective projection matrix, 660  
    view space, 387  
    view volume, 659  
OpenTissue, 825  
operating system, 40, 43, 79, 80,  
    151–153, 156  
    DOS, 483  
    Mac OS, 483  
    Microsoft Windows, 483  
    UNIX, 483  
operator overloading, 445  
operator strength reduction, *see*  
    compiler, optimizations  
optical audio connector, 954  
optimization, *see also* compiler,  
    optimizations, 99, 165, 216,  
    317, 447, 608  
OrbisAnim library, *see* animation  
ordinary differential equation, 860, 869,  
    873  
orthogonal, 363  
OS, *see* operating system  
out-of-order execution, *see* CPU  
outer product, 367, 370  
output register, *see* GPU  
overdraw, 692

- overlay, 49, 657, 716, *see* rendering
- graphical user interface, 32, 80, 111
- heads-up display, 657
- package file, 497, 499, 506
- page fault, 186, 239
- painter's algorithm, 664
- PAL, 534, 542, 663
- pan, *see* audio
- Panda3D, 36, 1143
- parallax occlusion mapping, *see* rendering
- parallelism, 203, 205
  - data, 207, 348, 544, 546
  - explicit, 206, 225
  - implicit, 206, 211
  - task, 207, 544, 545
- parallelogram
  - area of, 371
- parametric equation, 408, 848
  - surface, 624
- Pareto principle, *see* 80/20 rule
- particle system, 46, 48, 64, 711, 1089
- passing
  - of reads and writes, 310
- patch, 624
  - Bézier, 624
  - bicubic, 624
  - N-patch, 624
  - nonuniform rational B-spline, 624
- path tracing, 970
- Pawn, 1141
- PCM, *see* pulse-code modulation
- peep-hole optimization, *see* compiler optimizations
- penumbra, 655, 703
- per-pixel shading, *see* lighting
- per-user options, 474
- perceived loudness, *see* audio
- perception of position, *see* audio
- perceptual coding, 952
- Perforce, *see* version control
- periodic, 913, 938
- periphonic, 964
- perpendicular
  - axes, 360, 837
  - distance, 410, 658, 688
- vectors, 363, 369, 370, 392, 635, 638
- wave, 917
- persistence, 1042
- perspective, 657
- phantom image, 959
- phase, *see also* animation
  - of complex number, 934
  - shift, 913, 919
  - vocoder, 974
- Phong reflection model, *see* lighting
- photorealism, 622
- PhyreEngine, 34
- physically based sound synthesis, 996
- physics, *see also* collision, 51, 527, 674
  - and fun, 819
  - Havok, 52
  - library, 42
    - Havok, 42
    - Open Dynamics Engine, 42
    - PhysX, 42
  - Open Dynamics Engine, 52
  - PhysX, 52
  - rigid body dynamics, 51, 726, 854
  - simulation, 51
  - updating, 1089
  - water, 715
  - world, 828
- Physics Abstraction Layer, 825
- PhysX, 42, 824
- piecewise-linear approximation, 746, 970, *see* approximation
- pinnae, 924
- pipeline, 213, 667, 672, 976, 1092
  - asset conditioning, *see* asset conditioning pipeline
  - bandwidth, 214
  - latency, 214, 667
  - throughput, 214, 667
  - tools, *see* asset conditioning pipeline
- pitch, 386
- pixel, 622, 655
- placement new, 520
- plain old data structure, 114, 520
- plan view, 657
- plane, 369, 409, 658
  - distance to origin, 409

- point-normal form, 409, 658  
platform independence layer, 43  
platformer, *see* genre  
player I/O, *see* human interface device  
playlist, 1011  
PlayStation Edge library, 41, 42  
PlayStation Network, 481, 487  
POD, *see* plain old data structure  
point, 360  
    arithmetic, 365  
point light, *see* lighting  
pointer fix-up, 519  
polar pattern, 942  
polarization, 917  
polygon  
    rendering, 624, 625  
    soup, 854  
polyhedron  
    convex, 412  
polymorphism, 109, 162  
polyphony, 977  
Portable Network Graphics, 642  
portal, 47  
    culling, 689  
    sound, 972  
pose  
    as change of basis, 732  
    bind pose, 728, 729, 751  
    current, 729  
    current pose, 751  
    global, 733  
    in-memory representation, 732  
    interpolation, 736  
    local, 730  
    T-pose, 729  
position based fluid simulation, 910  
positive reinforcement, 919  
post effect, 48, 719  
post-load initialization, 521  
postincrement (C++), 445  
potentially visible set, 47  
potentiometer, 947  
power, 961  
power processing unit, *see* PPU  
pre-amp, 982  
pre-delay, *see* audio  
precision, *see* floating-point  
precomputed radiance transfer, *see*  
    lighting  
predication, 221, 346  
    vector, 344, 346, 347  
preemption, *see* multitasking  
preincrement (C++), 445  
preprocessor, *see* C++  
pressure, *see also* sound, 912  
primitive  
    debug drawing, 597  
    geometric, 46, 646  
    mesh-material pair, 646  
    submission, 691  
primitive data type, 146  
printf debugging, 589  
priority, *see also* thread  
    dialog, 1001  
    inversion, 284  
    voice, 991  
private, *see* C++  
procedural language, 1136  
processor utilization, 545, 1105  
producer-consumer problem, 271  
profile trap, 557  
profile-guided optimizations, *see*  
    compiler, optimizations  
profiling tools, 50, 99  
    hierarchical, 609  
    in-game, 608  
    instrumenting, 100, 611  
    statistical, 100  
program order, 262  
program stack, *see* call stack  
progress, *see* concurrency  
projection, 368, 657  
    orthographic, 21, 657, 662, 716,  
        1029  
    perspective, 22, 657, 660, 661, 1029  
    perspective foreshortening, 657,  
        661  
Prolog, 1136  
propagation modeling, 965  
    with LTI system, 966  
property class, 1059  
property grid, 1031  
property object, 1059  
    versus component, 1059

- property-centric, *see* object model
- pseudovector, 362
- PUBG, *see* genre, battle royale
- public, *see* C++
- pulse-code modulation, 948
- punning, *see* type punning
- pure component model, 1056
- Purify, 50
- push lock, 324
- PVS, *see* potentially visible set
- Python, 1134, 1140
  - method table, 1144
- quadratic probing, *see* hashing
- quadtree, 47, 694
- Quake C, 1138
- Quake Engine, 11, 31, 35, 45, 64, 1018, 1025
- Quantify, 50
- quantization, 136, *see* compression
- quaternion, 394, 405
  - concatenation, 398
  - conjugate, 397
  - conversion to matrix, 399
  - dual, 406
  - inverse, 396
  - product, 396
  - rotating vectors with, 397
- queue, 442
- quick time event, 735
- race, *see* data race
- race condition, 205, 258
- racing game, *see* genre
- Radiant, *see* game world editor
- radiosity, *see* lighting
- rag doll, 777, 886
- RAGE, *see* Rockstar Advanced Game Engine
- RAII, *see* design pattern
- random number, 412
  - Diehard tests, 413
  - KISS99, 414
  - linear congruential, 412
  - Mersenne Twister, 413
  - Mother of All, 413
  - PCG, 414
- Xorshift, 414
- RAPID, 52
- rapid iteration, 1024
- rarefaction, 912
- rasterization, 664, 675
- Rational Purify, 101
- ray, 408
- ray cast, 1103
- ray tracing, *see* lighting
- RC filter, *see* filter
- RCA jack, *see* audio
- RCS, *see* version control
- RCU, *see* read-copy-update
- read-acquire, 311, 312, 319
- read-copy-update, 324
- read-modify-write, 259
- read-only data segment, *see* executable file, 151
- readers-writer lock, 324
- real-time strategy, *see* genre
- reality, *see* virtual reality
- record and play back, 50, 538
- rectangle invalidation, 525
- Redis, 67
- reduced instruction set, 223
- reference counting, 510, 1080
- referential integrity, 495, 498, 503, 516
- reflection, *see also* lighting, 1042, *see also*
  - language
  - anisotropic, 634
  - diffuse, 634
  - reflectivity, 650
  - specular, 634
  - wave, 917
- refraction, *see* lighting, 917
- register, *see also* CPU
- registry (Microsoft Windows), 473
- relative velocity, *see* velocity
- relaxed memory order, *see* memory ordering semantics
- release build, *see* build configuration
- release fence, *see* memory ordering semantics
- release memory order, *see* memory ordering semantics
- relief mapping, *see* rendering
- render loop, 526

- render state, 691, 692  
  leak, 691  
render target, 664  
rendering  
  audio, *see* audio  
  billboard, *see* billboard  
  bump mapping, 699  
  deferred, 709  
  displacement mapping, 698  
  G-buffer, 709  
  parallax occlusion mapping, 698  
  relief mapping, 698  
rendering engine, 45  
  graphics device interface, 46  
  low-level renderer, 46, 47  
  render packet, 46  
  scene graph, 47, 622, 693, 697  
rendering equation, 622, 649  
rendering pipeline  
  application stage, 668, 687  
  asset conditioning stage, 668, 671  
  data transformation, 669  
  geometry processing stage, 668  
  GPU pipeline, 672  
  merging, 676  
  rasterization stage, 668  
  stream output, 674  
  tools stage, 668  
  triangle set-up, 675  
  triangle traversal, 675  
replacement policy, *see* cache  
repository, 69  
resource, 59  
  binary, 520  
  compiler, 502  
  composite, 516, 521  
  database, 494, 1035  
  dependencies, 502, 516  
  directory organization, 504  
  exporting, 499, 502  
  file formats, 507  
  GUID, 507  
  linker, 502  
  memory, 511  
  metadata, 494  
  registry, 508  
  sectioned files, 516  
  source asset, 59, 495, 501  
resource acquisition is initialization, *see*  
  design pattern, RAII  
resource dependency, 222  
resource interchange file format, 952  
resource manager, 45, 481, 493  
  OGRE, 501  
  runtime, 503  
  Uncharted/TLOU, 498  
  Unreal, 496  
  XNA, 501  
response, 262  
restitution, *see* Newton's law of  
retargeting, *see* animation  
return address, 153  
reverb, 920, 922, 975  
  region, 967  
  tank, 979  
RIFF, *see* resource interchange file  
  format  
right-hand rule, 371, 395  
rigid body dynamics, *see* physics  
ring buffer, 983  
RMS, *see* root mean square  
RMW, *see* read-modify-write  
Robin Hood hashing, *see* hashing  
Rockstar Advanced Game Engine, 33  
rodata segment, *see* executable file  
roll, 386  
root mean square, 914  
rope simulation, 818  
RTS, *see* genre  
RTTI, 1042  
run cycle, 734  
runtime scripting language, 1135  
runtime type identification, 1042  
S/PDIF, 954  
sampling, 683, *see also* animation, 737,  
  925, 948  
  depth conversion, 981  
  rate conversion, 981  
Sandbox, *see* game world editor  
saved games, 1042, 1078  
scalar, 221, 362  
scatter/gather, 546, 547  
scattering, *see* lighting

- SCCS, *see* version control  
 scene graph, *see* rendering engine  
 schema, 1066  
     inheritance, 1067  
 Scheme, 477, 797, 1144  
 scope, 152, 153  
     file, 152  
     lexical, 153  
 scoped lock, 320  
 Scream, *see* audio engine  
 screen  
     aspect ratio, 659, 663  
     mapping, 663, 675  
     resolution, 659  
 screenshot, 606  
 scripting language, 58, 1040, 1134  
     class, 1153  
     data definition, 477, 1135  
     interface to native language, 1144  
     lambda, 1144  
     Lua, 1139  
     multitasking, 1154  
     object-oriented, 1152  
     Pawn, 1141  
     Python, 502, 1140  
     Quake C, 11, 1138  
     runtime, 1135  
     UnrealScript, 1138  
 SDK, *see* software development kit  
 SECAM, 534, 542, 663  
 segment, *see* executable file  
 select, 221  
 semaphore, 275, 278, 492, 548, 555  
     binary, 276  
 separating axis theorem, 837  
 separating vector, 830  
 sequential lock, 324  
 sequential programming, 204, 544  
 serial computer, 233  
 serialization, 1063  
 set associativity, *see* cache  
 shader, 672  
     architecture, 677  
     Cg, 680  
     effect file, 670, 682  
     geometry, 674  
     High-Level Shading Language, 677  
     memory access, 678  
     OpenGL shader language, 680  
     pass, 682  
     pixel, 675  
     pixel shader, 46  
     register, 678  
     semantic, 680  
     shader model 4.0, 677  
     technique, 682  
     texture access, 679  
     texture sampler, 681  
     uniform declaration, 680  
     vertex, 629, 673  
 shader resource table, 678  
 shading, 633, 647  
 shading language, 351  
 shadow, 48, 655, 703  
     contact, 705  
     mapping, 703, 704  
     volume, 703  
 Shannon-Nyquist sampling theorem, 948, 949  
 shape, *see also* collision  
     sphere, 408  
 shaping, *see* text rendering  
 shared memory, *see* concurrency  
 shared-exclusive lock, 324  
 ship build, *see* build configuration  
 shuffle, *see* SIMD instruction  
 SI units, 912  
 side-chain input, 990  
 sign bit, *see* integer, *see also*  
     floating-point, 134  
 signal, 912, 924  
     between threads, 276  
     continuous-time, 925, 948  
     discrete-time, 925, 948  
     manipulating, 925  
     periodic, 913, 938  
     processing theory, 783, 924  
 signaled kernel object, 268, 276  
 signed distance field, 717  
 significant digits, *see* floating-point  
 silhouette edge, 625, 689, 703

- SIMD, *see* single instruction multiple data  
SIMD unit, *see* GPU  
simplex, 840  
SIMT, *see* single instruction multiple thread  
simulation, 9, 51  
    agent-based, 9, 1041  
    discrete event, 1087  
    game genre, *see* genre  
    hard real-time, 10  
    interactive, 9, 525  
    physics, 10  
    real-time, 9, 525, 532, 1041  
    soft real-time, 10  
    temporal, 9  
single instruction multiple data, 160, 168, 170, 207, 221, 331, 336, 341, 348, 355, 393, 408, 413, 431, 548, 672, 678, 831  
     $\_m128$ , 332, 350  
    AltiVec, 336  
    horizontal add, 338  
    instruction, 334  
    lanes, 343  
    shuffle, 341, 342  
    vector float, 336, 350  
    VF32, 139  
single instruction multiple thread, 209, 331, 348, 355  
single instruction single data, 207  
single-step, *see* debugger  
singleton, *see* design pattern  
singularity function, 928  
sinusoid, 933  
SISD, *see* single instruction single data  
skeletal animation, *see* animation  
skeleton, 670  
    in memory, 728  
SketchUp, 669  
skinning, 62, 670, 750  
    to multiple joints, 754  
    weights, 635, 725, 750  
sky, 713  
    box, 714  
    dome, 714  
small memory allocator, 1076  
smart pointer, 440, 1042, 1079, 1080  
smoothing, 639  
SMP, *see* symmetric multiprocessing  
snapshot, 1112  
SoC, *see* system on a chip  
socket, *see* animation  
Softimage/XSI, 62, 669  
software development kit, 40  
software object model, *see* object model  
solid angle, 963  
sorting, 443  
    for rendering, 692  
sound, *see also* audio, 912  
    2D, 955  
    3D, 955  
    bank, 987  
    card, 974  
    clip, 955, 985, 998  
    cue, 986  
    dry, 920  
    fall-off of pressure, 917, 923, 957  
    portals, 972  
    pressure, 912, 914  
    pressure level, 915, 961  
    radiation patterns, 918  
    synthesis, 955, 975, 978, 995  
    wave, 913  
    wet, 921  
Sound Forge, 63  
Source engine, 33  
source file, *see* C++  
SourceSafe, *see* version control  
spatial hash, 693, 846, 1086  
spatial partitioning, 693  
spatialization, *see* audio  
spawner, 1065  
    pros and cons, 1069  
speakers, 943  
    speaker circle, 959  
spectral plot, 633  
Spectre exploit, 239  
specular, *see* lighting  
specular lighting, *see* lighting  
speculative execution, 218, *see* CPU  
speech, 997  
speed, 535  
    of sound, 913

sphere hierarchy, *see* tree  
 sphere map, 700  
 spherical  
     coordinates, 360  
     harmonic basis function, 708  
 spin lock, 271, 290, 294, 555  
 spin-wait, *see* busy-wait  
 SPL, *see* sound, pressure level  
 spline, 624, 1033  
     B-spline, 624, 783  
     Bézier, 624  
 split-screen, 995, 997  
 spot light, *see* lighting  
 spring, 884  
 SPU, 545  
 SQL Server, 498  
 SQT transform, 405  
 SRT, *see also* shader resource table  
     transform, 405, 729  
 SSE, *see* streaming SIMD extensions  
     compiler intrinsics, 333  
 stability (numerical), 863  
 stack (data structure), 442  
 stack frame, *see* call stack  
 stage, *see* CPU, stage  
 stall, 215  
 stance variation, 772  
 standard C library, *see* C standard  
     library  
 standard C++ library, *see* C++  
 standard template library, 40, 41, 442,  
     448  
     std::list, 41  
     std::string, 457, 465  
     std::vector, 41  
 start-up and shut-down  
     construct on demand, 419  
     engine subsystem, 417  
     manual, 420  
     OGRE, 422  
     *Uncharted/TLOU*, 424  
 starvation, 284  
 state caching, 1100  
 static  
     allocation, *see* allocation  
     assertion, *see* assertion  
     lights, *see* lighting  
     variable, 149, 157  
 stencil buffer, 664, 703  
     testing, 676  
 stereo, 944  
 stinger, 1011  
 STL, *see* standard template library  
 stochastic propagation modeling, 972  
 strategy game, *see* genre  
 streaming  
     audio streaming, 988  
     dialog streaming, 998  
     level streaming, 1040  
 streaming SIMD extensions, 331  
 strict aliasing, 143  
 string, 456  
     class, 457, 465  
     database, 467  
 string id, 459, 1138, 1151  
 strip, *see* triangle  
 struct of arrays, 1060  
 structured bindings, 115  
 studio, 5  
     first-party developer, 8  
 subdivision surface, 624  
 subnormal, *see* floating-point  
 Subversion, *see* version control  
 subwoofer, *see* low-frequency effects  
 superposition, 919, 926  
 superscalar, *see* CPU  
 surface, 622, 623  
     visual properties, 622, 632  
 surround sound, 944  
 sweep and prune algorithm, 847  
 SWIFT, 52  
 symbolic link, 494  
 symmetric multiprocessing, 227  
 synchronization point, 1106, 1113  
 synergistic processing unit, *see* SPU  
 syntax tree, 792  
 synthesizer, 995  
 system, *see* linear time-invariant system  
 system on a chip, 678  
 T&L, *see* hardware T&L  
 table (data structure), 1139  
 Tagged Image File Format, 642  
 Targa, 642

target hardware, 38  
Target Manager, 590  
task decomposition, 544  
task parallelism, *see* parallelism  
taxonomy, 1048  
tearing, 537, 538, 663  
technical requirements checklist, 587  
template metaprogramming, 118  
temporal coherency, 537, 846  
temporal multithreading, 234  
temporary register, *see* GPU  
terrain, 714  
    height field, 60, 714, 1029  
tessellation, 625, 674  
    dynamic, 626, 714  
test-and-set instruction, 294  
testability, 87  
TeX, 1136  
texel, 639  
    density, 643, 644  
text rendering, *see also* signed distance field, 716  
    shaping, 717  
text segment, *see* executable file  
texture, 46, 121, 639, 670, 678, 679  
    1D, 641  
    3D, 701  
    addressing modes, 641  
    albedo map, 640  
    animated, 52, 723  
    compression, 642  
    coordinates, 641  
    cube map, 700  
    diffuse map, 640  
    environment map, 48, 700, 706  
    filtering, 645, 679  
    formats, 642  
    gloss map, 699  
    heightmap, 698  
    light map, 48, 653, 672  
    normal map, 698  
    rendering to, 680, 706  
    scrolling, 691  
    shadow map, 703  
    specular map, 699  
    specular power map, 699  
    sphere map, 700

thread, 204, *see also* GPU  
    affinity, 227, 248  
    dependencies, 548, 1105  
    group, *see* GPU  
    join, 243, 554, 557  
    priority, 248  
    safety, 288, 321, 1102  
    synchronization primitive, 265,  
        267, 555  
    user-level, 253, 1102, 1110  
throughput, *see* pipeline  
timbre, 920  
time  
    abstract timeline, 532  
    clock, 532  
    clock drift, 540  
    clock variable, 540  
    delta, 535–537, 572  
    domain, 924, 938, 974  
    floating-point, 541  
    game, 525, 532  
    high-resolution timer, 539  
    index, 735  
    local, 533  
    measuring, 539, 543  
    of impact, 845  
    scaling, 739  
    shift, 925  
    units, 540  
time-invariant, 926  
time-slicing, *see also* multitasking, 208,  
    234, 356, 545  
timeline  
    global, 739  
    local, 735  
TLB, *see* translation lookaside buffer  
TOI, *see* time of impact  
Tokamak, 825  
Tombstone Engine, 35  
tone mapping, 702  
tool, 59, 61, 669  
tools pipeline, *see* asset conditioning  
    pipeline  
torque, 373, 867  
    in three dimensions, 873  
Torque Engine, 36  
TOSLINK, 954

- transaction, 287, 328  
    committing, 328  
transformation, 376  
    and lighting, 672  
    coordinate axes, 384, 390  
    matrix, 376  
    rotation, 376, 382, 403  
    scale, 364, 376, 383  
    translation, 376, 382  
transistor, 946  
transition, *see* animation  
translation unit, *see* C++, 148  
translucency, 623  
transmission, *see* lighting  
transparency, 623  
transport model, *see* lighting  
transpose  
    matrix, 339  
tree, 442, *see also* blend tree  
    binary space partitioning tree, 47, 695  
    bounding sphere, 695, 846  
    kd-tree, 47, 695  
    octree, 47, 694  
    quadtree, 47, 694  
    sphere hierarchy, 47  
triangle, 625  
    area of, 371  
    face normal, 627  
    fan, 629, 630  
    indexed list, 628  
    list, 628, 630  
    mesh, *see* mesh  
    occlusion, 664  
    strip, 629, 630  
    winding order, 627  
triangulation, 625  
trilinear, *see* texture, filtering  
TRS jack, *see* audio  
TrueAxis, 824, 825  
TTY, 590  
tunneling, 843  
turbo button, 536  
turn-based strategy, *see* genre  
two's complement, *see* integer  
type punning, 143  
UAA, *see* Universal Audio Architecture  
UDN, 11, *see* Unreal Developer Network  
ULP, *see* floating-point  
umbra, 655  
UNC, 483  
Unicode, 462  
    UTF-16, 463  
    UTF-32, 463  
    UTF-8, 463  
Unified Modeling Language, 107  
unit impulse, 928  
unit in the last place, *see* floating-point  
Unity, 35  
Universal Audio Architecture, 992  
universal serial bus, *see* USB  
Unreal Developer Network, 33  
Unreal Engine, 11, 32, 35, 45, *see also*  
    audio engine  
    Blueprints, 32, 1133  
Unreal Tournament 2004, 32  
UnrealEd, 496, 1035, *see* game world editor  
UnrealScript, 1138  
unresolved symbol error, *see* compiler, 146  
USB, 570, 954  
user-defined literals, *see* C++  
user-level thread, *see* thread  
UTF-*x*, *see* Unicode  
V-Collide, 52  
VAG, *see* audio, file formats  
Valgrind, 50, 102  
variable  
    class static, 157  
    global, 151  
    local, 153  
    member, 156  
    static, 151  
variant, 1008, 1118, 1145  
vector, 362, *see also* perpendicular  
    addition, 364  
    arithmetic, 365  
    basis, 363, 390  
    collinear, 369  
    cross product, 367, 370

- direction, 363, 381
- dot product, 367
- front, left and up, 385, 631
- magnitude, 365
- multiplication by scalar, 364
- normal, 367, 369, 392, 638
- normalization, 367
- perpendicular, 635
- position, 363
- projection, 368
- quaternion form, 397
- squared magnitude, 367
- STL, 442
- subtraction, 365
- unit, 363, 367
- vector processing unit, 168, 208, 224, *see also* GPU, SIMD unit, 350, 672
- vector unit (PS2), 224
- vectorization, 168, 337, 344, 348, 548
- vehicle engine sound, 996
- velocity, 366, 528, 535
  - angular, 867
  - animation, 758
  - linear, 858
  - relative, 923, 957, 973
  - screen space, 719
- version control, 69
  - Alienbrain, 70, 494
  - assets, 493
  - checking in and out, 75
  - ClearCase, 70
  - committing, 75
  - CVS, 70
  - deleting files, 78
  - diff, 75
  - exclusive check-out, 76
  - git, 70
    - history, 74
    - hosting, 72
    - locking, 76
    - merging, 76
    - multiple check-out, 76
  - Perforce, 70, 493
  - RCS, 70
  - rebasing, 70
  - repository, 72
  - resources, 493
- SCCS, 70
- SourceSafe, 70
- submitting, 75
- Subversion, 70
- three-way merge, 76, 102
- TortoiseSVN, 73
- updating, 74
- vertex, 635
  - attribute interpolation, 637, 662, 675
  - attributes, 635
  - binormal, 635
  - bitangent, 635
  - cache optimization, 629, 679
  - formats, 636
  - normal, 635
  - tangent, 635
- vertex buffer, 628
- vertical blanking interval, 538, 663
- view volume, 658, 674
  - far plane, 658
  - frustum, 411, 658, 674
  - near plane, 658
- viewing direction, *see* lighting
- viewport, 46
- vignette, 719
- virtual machine, 317, 1135, 1144
- virtual reality, 27, 35
- visibility determination, 47, 157
- Visual Basic, 1134
- visual effects, 48, 64
- VLIW, *see* CPU
- voice, *see* audio
- VoIP, 570
- volatile, 302, 318, 326
- volume control, 946, 979, 983
- Voodoo, 672
- VPU, *see* vector processing unit
- VR, *see* virtual reality
- VTune, 50
- VU0 (PS2), 224
- Vulkan, 41, 46, 692
- w* buffer, 664, 666, 704
- wait-free algorithm, 290
- wait-free consensus problem, *see* consensus problem

walk cycle, 734  
*warp*, *see* GPU  
*WASAPI*, *see* Windows Audio Session API  
water, 626, 632, 647, 648, 673, 706, 710, 715, 910, 1017, 1029, 1044  
*WAV*, *see* audio, file formats  
wave  
    longitudinal, 917  
    propagation, 917  
    transverse, 917  
*wavefront*, *see* GPU  
wavelength, 633, *see also* lighting, 914  
*WDM*, *see* Windows Driver Model  
weighted average, 375, 635, 676, 765, 788  
wet sound, *see* sound  
whole number, 132  
Wiimote, 53  
Windows  
    Audio Session API, 993  
    Bitmap, 642  
    Driver Model, 992  
    Media Video (WMV), 1162  
*WMA*, *see* audio, file formats  
*WMV*, 1162  
woofer, *see* low-frequency effects  
work, 875  
world, *see* game world  
world-space texel density, 644  
write  
    back, 196, *see also* CPU, stage, 306, 307, 309  
    release, 311, 312, 319  
    through, 196, 306  
*Wwise*, 995  
  
*X3DAudio*, *see* audio engine  
*XACT*, *see* audio engine  
*XAudio2*, *see* audio engine  
Xbox Live, 34, 473, 481, 487  
XML, 1136  
XNA Game Studio, 34, 993  
  
Yake, 36  
yaw, 386  
yielding



Plate I. *Overwatch* by Blizzard Entertainment (Xbox One, PlayStation 4, Windows). (See Figure I.2 on page 14.)



Plate II. *Jak II* by Naughty Dog (Jak, Daxter, Jak and Daxter, and Jak II © 2003, 2013™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 2). (See Figure I.3 on page I6.)



Plate III. *Gears of War 4* by The Coalition (Xbox One). (See Figure 1.4 on page 17.)



Plate IV. *Tekken 3* by Namco (PlayStation). (See Figure 1.5 on page 18.)



Plate V. *Injustice 2* by NetherRealm Studios (PlayStation 4, Xbox One, Android, iOS, Microsoft Windows). (See Figure 1.6 on page 19.)



Plate VI. *Gran Turismo Sport* by Polyphony Digital (PlayStation 4). (See Figure I.7 on page 20.)



Plate VII. *Age of Empires* by Ensemble Studios (Windows). (See Figure 1.8 on page 21.)



Plate VIII. *Total War: Warhammer 2* by Creative Assembly (Windows). (See Figure I.9 on page 22.)



Plate IX. *World of Warcraft* by Blizzard Entertainment (Windows, MacOS). (See Figure I.10 on page 23.)



Plate X. *Destiny 2* by Bungie, © 2018 Bungie Inc. (Xbox One, PlayStation 4, PC). (See Figure I.II on page 24.)



Plate XI. *LittleBigPlanet™ 2* by Media Molecule, © 2014 Sony Interactive Entertainment (PlayStation 3). (See Figure 1.12 on page 25.)



Plate XII. *Dreams* by Media Molecule, © 2017 Sony Interactive Entertainment (PlayStation 4). (See Figure 1.13 on page 26.)



Plate XIII. *Minecraft* by Markus “Notch” Persson / Mojang AB (Windows, MacOS, Xbox 360, PlayStation 3, PlayStation Vita, iOS). (See Figure I.14 on page 26.)



Plate XIV. *Accounting* by Squanchtendo and Crows Crows Crows (HTC Vive). (See Figure 1.15 on page 29.)



Plate XV. A scene from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) rendered without textures. (See Figure II.20 on page 647.)



Plate XVI. The same scene from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) with only diffuse textures applied. (See Figure II.21 on page 648.)



Plate XVII. Scene from *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) with full lighting. (See Figure II.22 on page 648.)



Plate XVIII. The flashlight in *Luigi's Mansion* by Nintendo (Wii) is composed of numerous visual effects, including a cone of translucent geometry for the beam, a dynamic spot light to cast light into the scene, an emissive texture on the lens and camera-facing cards for the lens flare. (See Figure II.30 on page 656.)

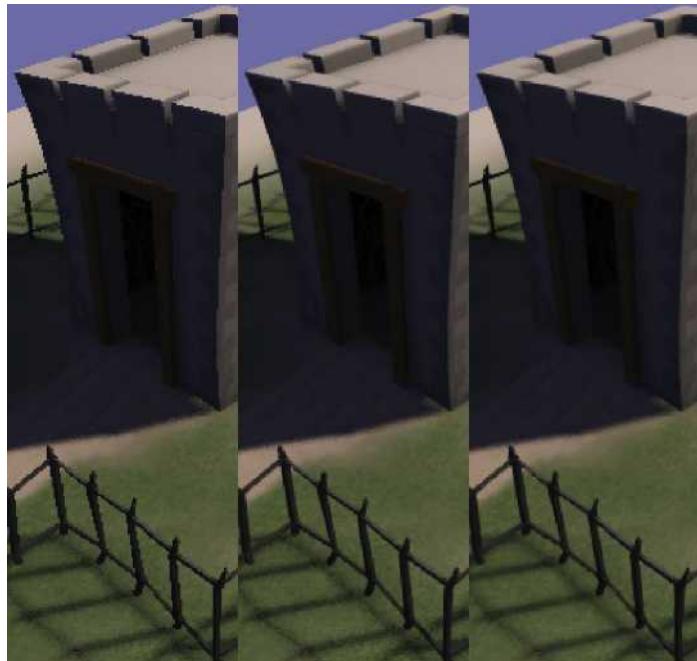


Plate XIX. Left: No antialiasing. Center: 4× MSAA. Right: Nvidia's FXAA, preset 3. Image from Nvidia's FXAA white paper by Timothy Lottes (<http://bit.ly/lmlzCTv>). (See Figure II.45 on page 683.)



Plate XX. This screenshot from EA's *Fight Night Round 3* shows how a gloss map can be used to control the degree of specular reflection that should be applied to each texel of a surface. (See Figure II.55 on page 701.)



Plate XXI. Mirror reflections in *The Last of Us: Remastered* (© 2014/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 4) implemented by rendering the scene to a texture that is subsequently applied to the mirror's surface. (See Figure II.59 on page 707.)

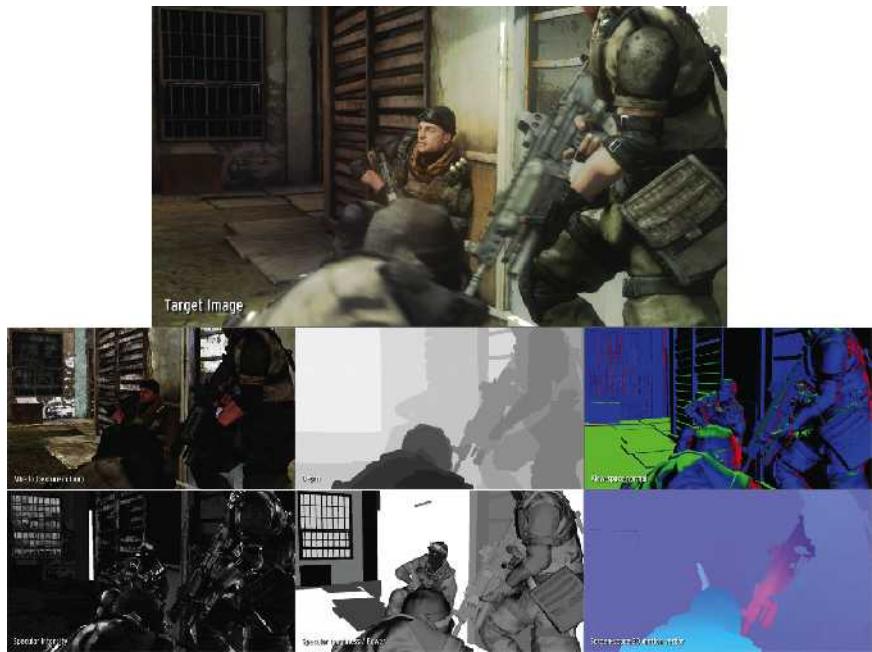


Plate XXII. Screenshots from *Killzone 2* by Guerrilla Games, showing some of the typical components of the G-buffer used in deferred rendering. The upper image shows the final rendered image. Below it, clockwise from the upper left, are the albedo (diffuse) color, depth, view-space normal, screen-space 2D motion vector (for motion blurring), specular power and specular intensity. (See Figure II.62 on page 710.)



Plate XXIII. Flame, smoke and bullet tracer particle effects in *Uncharted 3: Drake's Deception* (© 2011/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 3). (See Figure II.63 on page 712.)



Plate XXIV. Parallax-mapped decals from *Uncharted 3: Drake's Deception* (© 2011/™ SIE. Created and developed by Naughty Dog, PlayStation 3). (See Figure II.64 on page 713.)

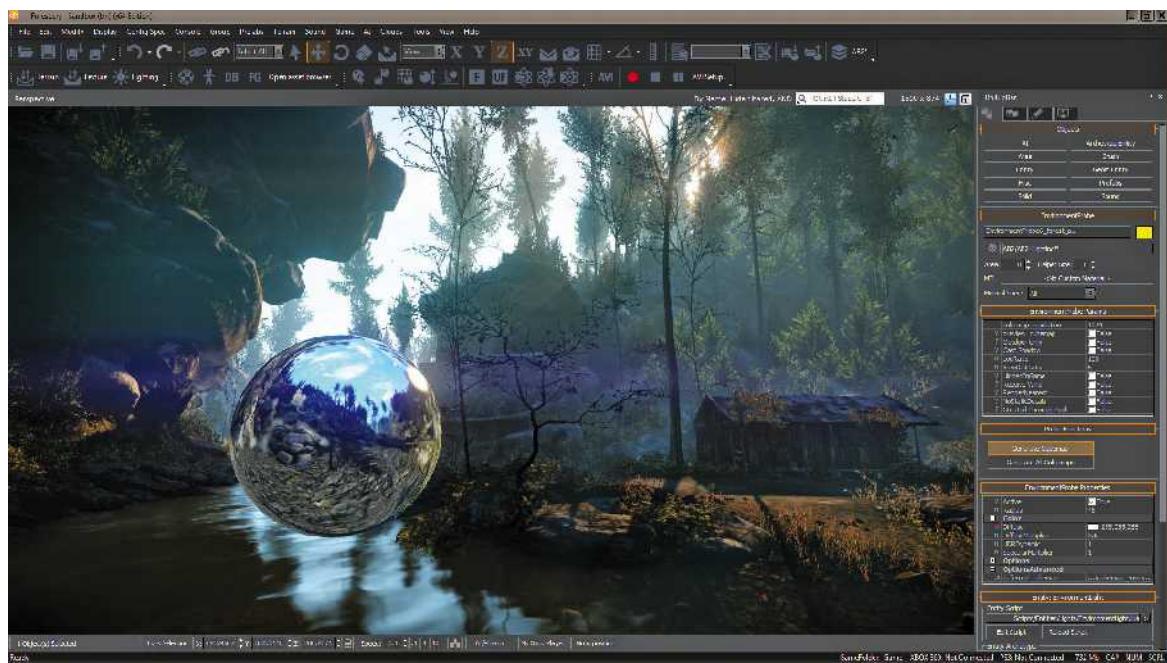


Plate XXV. The Sandbox editor for CRYENGINE. (See Figure I5.6 on page 1028.)

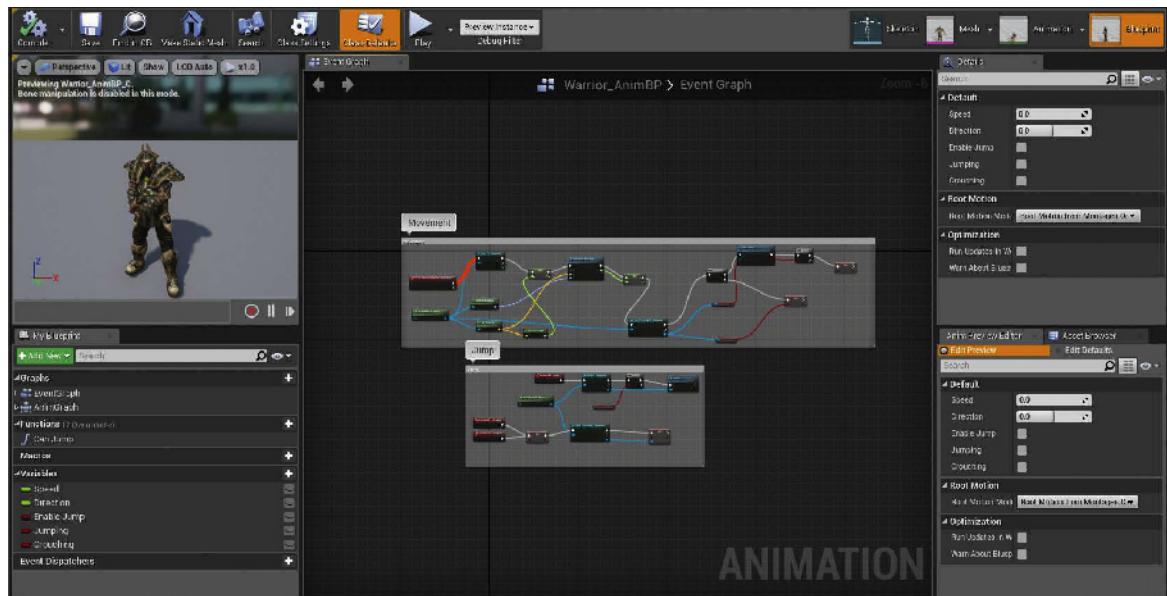


Plate XXVI. The Unreal Engine 4 animation Blueprint editor. (See Figure I2.58 on page 801.)